User Guide

Table of contents

1 User Guide. Introduction 30
1.1 General Information 30
1.2 Purpose of the Document 30
1.3 Purpose and functionality of Axxon Next 30
2 Software Lifecycle Policy 32
2.1 Software Lifecycle Phases 32
2.2 Software Technical Support 32
2.3 Standard Period for Release of Software Updates 32
2.4 Licensing Policy with Regard to Software Updates 32
3 Description of the Software Package 33
3.1 Basic principles of building a security system based on the Axxon Next software package 33
3.2 Axxon Next features: reference information 33
3.2.1 Micromodule architecture 33
3.2.2 Support for IP cameras 34
3.2.3 Support for analog cameras in Axxon Next 34
3.2.4 Video and Audio Detection Tools 34
3.2.5 Video archive 35
3.2.6 Interactive 3D Map 35
3.2.7 User Interface 36
3.2.8 Face Recognition 36
3.2.9 Number Plate Recognition 36
3.2.10 Receiving Events from External Systems 36
3.3 Functions of the Distributed Security System 36
3.4 Network Topologies of the Axxon Next Software Package 37
3.5 Specifications of the Axxon Next Software Package 37
3.6 Implementation Requirements for the Axxon Next Software Package 39
3.6.1 Limitations of the Axxon Next Software Package 39
3.6.2 Operating system requirements 40
3.6.3 Disk storage subsystem requirements 42
3.6.3.1 General requirements 43
3.6.3.2 Storage requirements 43
3.6.3.2.1 Minimum requirements 43

3.6.3.2.2 Size of archives ... 43
3.6.3.2.3 Database of the system log ... 44
3.6.3.2.4 Metadata database ... 45
3.6.3.2.5 Self-diagnostics service ... 45
3.6.4 Hardware requirements ... 45
3.6.4.1 General hardware requirements ... 45
3.6.4.1.1 Minimal RAM requirements ... 45
3.6.4.1.2 Minimum and recommended requirements for graphics cards ... 45
3.6.4.2 Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation ... 46
3.6.4.3 Hardware requirements for GPU based video decoding ... 47
3.6.4.4 Hardware requirements for License plate recognition (RR) ... 47
3.6.4.5 Hardware requirements for face detection ... 48
3.6.4.6 Hardware requirements for License plate recognition (VT) ... 48
3.6.5 TCP/IP Network Bandwidth Requirements ... 48
3.6.6 BIOS configuration requirements ... 48
3.6.7 Running Axxon Next VMS in Virtual Machines ... 49
3.7 Interface of the Axxon Next Software Package ... 49
3.8 Ports used by the Axxon Next Software Package ... 50
3.9 Requirements for Personnel Quantity and Qualifications ... 51
4 Installing the Axxon Next Software Package ... 52
4.1 Installing equipment ... 52
4.1.1 Types of Devices Used ... 52
4.1.2 Connecting IP Devices ... 52
4.1.3 Configuring IP Devices in Windows ... 53
4.1.4 Video capture cards pins ... 53
4.1.4.1 WS-216 video capture card pins ... 53
4.2 Installation the Axxon Next Software Package ... 54
4.2.1 Installation ... 54
4.2.2 Installing DetectorPack addons ... 65
4.2.3 Repairing Installation ... 66
4.2.4 Removal ... 68
4.2.5 Update ... 70
4.2.6 Silent install (Quiet Mode) ... 71
4.2.7 Updating Drivers Pack ... 74
4.2.8 Automatic update of a remote Client ... 74

5 Licensing of the software product 76
5.1 Axxon Next license types 76
5.2 Licensing methods 79
5.3 Product Activation Utility 79
5.4 License Activation 81
6 Launching and Closing the Axxon Next Software Package 82
6.1 Startup 82
6.1.1 Starting a Server 82
6.1.2 Starting an Axxon Next Client 82
6.1.3 Running multiple Axxon Next Clients 86
6.1.4 Axxon Next in demo mode 86
6.1.5 Automatic Start of the Client 87
6.2 Shutdown 87
6.2.1 Shutting down an Axxon Next Client 87
6.2.2 Shutting down a Server 88
6.3 Automatic Server restart 88
6.4 Switching Users Quickly 88
6.5 Cross-System Client 89
6.6 Connecting LDAP users 90
6.7 Connecting to Another Server Quickly 90
7 Configuration of the Axxon Next Software Package 91
7.1 General information on system configuration 91
7.1.1 System configuration: stages 91
7.1.2 Applying and resetting settings 91
7.1.3 Display of parameters in interface 92
7.1.4 System objects 92
7.1.5 Object search 93
7.2 Hardware configuration 94
7.2.1 Configuring Axxon domains 94
7.2.1.1 Axxon-domain object 95
7.2.1.2 Axxon Domain operations 96
7.2.1.2.1 Creating a new domain 96
7.2.1.2.2 Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain 96
7.2.1.2.3 Removing a Server from an Axxon Domain 98

7.2.1.3 Cases of Axxon Domain configuration ... 98
7.2.2 Adding and removing IP devices ... 99
7.2.2.1 Bulk creation of IP devices ... 104
7.2.3 Configuring System Objects for Devices ... 105
7.2.3.1 The Server Object ... 105
7.2.3.1.1 Configuring the web server ... 106
7.2.3.1.2 Configuring an RTSP Server ... 107
7.2.3.2 The Video Camera Object ... 107
7.2.3.2.1 Restoring default camera settings ... 112
7.2.3.2.2 Mass configuration ... 112
7.2.3.2.3 Configuring fisheye cameras ... 113
7.2.3.2.4 Connecting and configuring cameras over standard protocols ... 115
7.2.3.2.4.1 Notes on configuring video cameras connected via ONVIF ... 115
7.2.3.2.4.2 Configuring connection of devices via RTSP ... 116
7.2.3.2.4.3 Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol ... 118
7.2.3.2.4.4 Generic Drivers (General device, generic) ... 128
7.2.3.2.4.5 Connecting and setting up devices with FFmpeg driver ... 129
7.2.3.2.5 Configuring connection of video cameras with dynamic IP addresses ... 134
7.2.3.2.6 Configuring virtual video cameras ... 135
7.2.3.2.7 Privacy mask settings ... 135
7.2.3.2.8 Putting a text over the camera window ... 137
7.2.3.3 The IP Server Object ... 139
7.2.3.3.1 Configuring Virtual IP Servers ... 140
7.2.3.4 The Microphone Object ... 141
7.2.3.5 The PTZ Object ... 142
7.2.3.5.1 Configure HTTP-CGI commands to control Wash&Wiper ... 143
7.2.3.6 The Channel object ... 144
7.2.3.7 The Input Object ... 144
7.2.3.7.1 Configure Virtual Inputs ... 145
7.2.3.7.1.1 Creating and configuring Virtual Inputs ... 146
7.2.3.7.1.2 Switching Virtual Inputs ... 146
7.2.3.7.1.3 Virtual Inputs' status on map ... 147
7.2.3.8 The Output Object ... 147
7.2.3.9 The Speaker Object ... 148
7.2.3.9.1 Creating and Configuring an Object ... 149
7.2.3.9.2 Configuring a Speaker Object ... 150

7.2.3.9.3 Checking Audio Notification ... 151
7.2.3.10 The Embedded storage object ... 152
7.2.4 Particulars of Configuration of Devices ... 153
7.2.4.1 AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS Sensor-Relay cards ... 153
7.2.4.1.1 Connecting AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS Sensor-Relay cards ... 153
7.2.4.1.2 Electrical and technical specifications of AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS devices ... 154
7.2.4.1.3 Special features of configuring AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS card in Axxon Next ... 155
7.2.4.2 Axis IP Devices ... 155
7.2.4.2.1 Serial number check ... 155
7.2.4.2.2 Bonjour function ... 156
7.2.4.2.3 Video streams ... 156
7.2.4.3 CCTV Keyboards ... 156
7.2.4.3.1 General Information about CCTV Keyboards ... 156
7.2.4.3.2 Axis T8310 specific configuration features ... 157
7.2.4.3.2.1 Setting up on a Server ... 157
7.2.4.3.2.2 Setting up on a Client ... 157
7.2.4.3.3 Hikvision DS-1100KI specific configuration features ... 158
7.2.4.3.4 UNIVIEW KB-1100 specific configuration features ... 158
7.2.4.3.4.1 General description of the UNIVIEW KB-1100 PTZ control device ... 158
7.2.4.3.4.2 Configuring a remote control before adding it to Axxon Next ... 159
7.2.4.3.4.3 Configuring UNIVIEW KB-1100 in Axxon Next ... 159
7.2.4.3.5 Hikvision DS-1200KI specific configuration features ... 160
7.2.4.3.5.1 Configuring the Hikvision DS-1200KI control device before adding it to Axxon Next ... 160
7.2.4.3.5.2 Features of the Hikvision DS-1200KI control device operation in Axxon Next ... 161
7.2.4.3.6 Dahua DH-NKB1000 specific configuration features ... 162
7.2.4.3.6.1 Keyboard operating modes ... 162
7.2.4.3.6.2 Specific OS settings ... 162
7.2.4.3.6.3 Specific Axxon Next settings ... 162
7.2.4.4 CH VM-Desktop USB multifunction controller ... 162
7.2.4.5 Configuring Vivotek Panoramic PTZ ... 162
7.2.4.6 Video capture cards ... 163
7.2.4.6.1 WS-216 video capture cards ... 163
7.2.4.6.2 YUAN PD652 cards ... 163
7.2.4.7 Joysticks ... 164
7.2.4.8 Sony IP Devices ... 164
7.2.4.9 Setting up Tibbo relay/loop boards ... 164

7.2.5 Configuring object tracking ... 167
7.2.5.1 Configuring Tag & Track Lite ... 167
7.2.5.2 Configuring Tag & Track Pro ... 168
7.2.5.2.1 Camera requirements for Tag & Track Pro ... 168
7.2.5.2.2 Configuring Smooth Motion for PTZ cameras ... 168
7.2.5.2.3 Linking panoramic cameras to a PTZ camera ... 169
7.2.5.2.4 Mapping PTZ positions to panoramic field of view (calibration) ... 169
7.2.5.2.5 Setting PTZ mode for Tag & Track Pro ... 171
7.2.6 Receiving Events from External Systems ... 171
7.2.6.1 Event Source Object ... 171
7.2.6.2 Configuring POS devices ... 172
7.2.6.2.1 Connecting POS devices ... 172
7.2.6.2.2 Configuring titles view ... 172
7.2.6.2.3 Configuring receipt beginning / end ... 174
7.2.6.2.4 Configuring keywords ... 175
7.2.6.2.5 Importing parcers ... 176
7.2.6.3 Receiving Intellect Events ... 177
7.2.6.4 Configuring Receiving Events from CommaxComplexServer ... 178
7.2.6.4.1 Configuring CommaxComplexServer via Event Source ... 178
7.2.6.4.2 Configuring CommaxComplexServer via virtual IP server ... 178
7.2.7 Configuring video camera groups ... 180
7.2.7.1 Procedure for configuring video camera groups ... 181
7.2.7.2 Creating a Group object ... 181
7.2.7.3 Adding video cameras created in the system to Group objects ... 182
7.2.7.4 Creating a system of groups and subgroups ... 183
7.2.7.5 Managing Group and Video camera objects ... 183
7.2.8 Autocopy data from local to centralized servers ... 185
7.3 Configuring Archives ... 186
7.3.1 General information of configuring archives ... 186
7.3.2 General information of SolidStore file system ... 188
7.3.3 General information about the object archive ... 188
7.3.4 Creating archives ... 189
7.3.4.1 Creating a local archive ... 189
7.3.4.2 Creating a network archive ... 191
7.3.4.3 Creating an archive based on existing archive volumes ... 193

7.3.4.4 Creating the object archive ... 193
7.3.5 Configuring recording to an archive ... 193
7.3.6 Setting the default archive ... 195
7.3.7 Configuring data replication ... 195
7.3.8 Configuring access restrictions to older footage ... 197
7.3.9 How to preserve Video Footage continuity after replacing a video source ... 197
7.3.10 Protecting video footage from FIFO overwriting ... 198
7.3.10.1 Setting up a macro for automatic copying of protected records ... 198
7.3.10.2 Setting up record protection ... 199
7.3.11 Increasing capacity of an archive volume ... 200
7.3.11.1 Increasing capacity of an archive volume as a partition ... 200
7.3.11.2 Increasing capacity of an archive volume as a file ... 200
7.3.12 Editing archives ... 200
7.3.13 Deleting and formatting archive volumes ... 200
7.3.14 Deleting archives ... 201
7.3.15 View information about the size of archives and Server disk space. ... 202
7.3.16 Saving the archive when replacing a video source ... 203
7.4 Configuring detection tools ... 204
7.4.1 General Information on Configuring Detection ... 204
7.4.2 General information on metadata ... 206
7.4.3 General information on Neural Analytics ... 207
7.4.3.1 Data collection requirements for neural network training ... 208
7.4.4 Detection tools implementation on processors ... 209
7.4.5 Creating Detection Tools ... 210
7.4.6 Mass configuration of detections tools ... 213
7.4.6.1 Mass creation of detection tools ... 213
7.4.6.2 Mass configure detection tools ... 214
7.4.6.3 Mass removal of tools ... 215
7.4.7 VMD (video motion detection) ... 215
7.4.7.1 Video requirements for VMD ... 215
7.4.7.2 VMD features and specifications ... 216
7.4.7.3 Configuring VMD ... 216
7.4.8 Tampering Detection ... 217
7.4.8.1 Functions of tampering detection ... 217
7.4.8.2 Video requirements for tampering detection ... 218

7.4.8.3 Configuring tampering detection ... 218
7.4.9 Service Audio Detection Tools ... 220
7.4.9.1 Functions of Service Audio Detection Tools ... 220
7.4.9.2 Set Parameters of Audio Detection ... 220
7.4.10 Scene Analytics ... 221
7.4.10.1 General information on Scene Analytics ... 221
7.4.10.2 Functions of Scene Analytics ... 222
7.4.10.3 Video requirements for scene analytics detection ... 223
7.4.10.3.1 Video requirements for object tracker-based scene analytics ... 223
7.4.10.3.2 Video requirements for object tracker (with neural filter)-based scene analytics ... 223
7.4.10.3.3 Video requirements for VMD-based scene analytics ... 224
7.4.10.3.4 Video stream and scene requirements for neural tracker operation ... 224
7.4.10.3.5 Objects image requirements for neural tracker ... 225
7.4.10.3.6 Camera requirements for abandoned objects detection ... 227
7.4.10.3.7 Camera requirements for neural filter operation ... 228
7.4.10.4 Configuring Scene Analytics Detection Tools ... 228
7.4.10.4.1 Setting up Tracker-based Scene Analytics ... 228
7.4.10.4.1.1 Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics ... 228
7.4.10.4.1.2 Settings Specific to Cross Line Detection ... 237
7.4.10.4.1.3 Settings specific to Abandoned object detection ... 239
7.4.10.4.1.4 Settings Specific to Loitering Detection ... 241
7.4.10.4.1.5 Settings Specific to Multiple objects ... 242
7.4.10.4.1.6 Settings Specific to Stop in area detection ... 242
7.4.10.4.1.7 Settings specific to Move from area to area detection tool ... 243
7.4.10.4.2 Setting up Neural Tracker-based Scene Analytics ... 243
7.4.10.4.3 Setting up VMD-based Scene Analytics ... 246
7.4.10.4.4 Examples of configuring neural tracker for solving typical tasks ... 247
7.4.11 Face detection tools ... 247
7.4.11.1 Functions of face detection tools ... 248
7.4.11.2 Requirements for face detection tools ... 248
7.4.11.3 Configuring Face detection ... 249
7.4.11.3.1 Fine-tuning the face detection tool ... 250
7.4.11.4 Configuring Face detection (VL) ... 252
7.4.11.4.1 Fine-tuning the face detection (VL) ... 253
7.4.11.4.2 License activation for Face detection (VL) ... 254
7.4.11.5 Configuring additional face detection tools ... 258

7.4.11.5.1 Configuring masks detection ... 258
7.4.11.5.2 Configuring appearance in area and loitering in area detection ... 259
7.4.11.5.2.1 Appearance in area detection ... 259
7.4.11.5.2.2 Loitering in area detection ... 260
7.4.11.5.3 Face Detection and Temperature Control with Mobotix M16 TR cameras ... 260
7.4.11.5.3.1 Functional parameters of the Face Detection and Temperature Control ... 260
7.4.11.5.3.2 Camera requirements for face detection and temperature control ... 261
7.4.11.5.3.3 Temperature screening protocol ... 261
7.4.11.5.3.4 Pre-configuration of the Mobotix M16 TR camera ... 262
7.4.11.5.3.5 Configuring Face Detection and Temperature Control ... 264
7.4.11.6 Configuring real-time facial recognition ... 266
7.4.11.6.1 Configuring macros when working with lists of Facial Templates ... 266
7.4.11.6.1.1 Target face shows up in the selected List of Facial Templates ... 267
7.4.11.6.1.2 The target face does not show up in the selected List of Facial Templates ... 267
7.4.11.6.1.3 Recognition of a specific face from the selected List of Facial Templates ... 267
7.4.11.6.1.4 The target number does not show up in all available Lists of Facial Templates ... 268
7.4.11.6.1.5 In this case, configure the macro as follows: ... 268
7.4.11.6.1.6 Recognition of any number from any List of Facial Templates ... 268
7.4.11.6.1.7 Examples of macros used for working with face lists ... 268
7.4.11.6.2 Configuring FaceCube integration ... 272
7.4.12 Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools ... 273
7.4.12.1 License plate recognition (VT) ... 273
7.4.12.1.1 License plate recognition (VT) features and specifications ... 273
7.4.12.1.2 Camera requirements for License plate recognition (VT) ... 274
7.4.12.1.3 Configuring License plate recognition (VT) ... 275
7.4.12.1.4 Fine-tuning the VT number plate detection tool ... 278
7.4.12.1.5 Activating a software license key for the ANPR ... 280
7.4.12.1.6 Activating the trial version of the ANPR via a software key ... 282
7.4.12.2 License plate recognition (IV) ... 282
7.4.12.2.1 License plate recognition (IV) features and specifications ... 282
7.4.12.2.2 Camera requirements for License plate recognition (IV) ... 283
7.4.12.2.2.1 Examples of correct and incorrect video images ... 283
7.4.12.2.3 Configuring License plate recognition (IV) ... 284
7.4.12.3 License plate recognition (RR) ... 287
7.4.12.3.1 License plate recognition (RR) features and specifications ... 287
7.4.12.3.2 Camera requirements for License plate recognition (RR) ... 287

7.4.12.3.3 Configuring License plate recognition (RR) ... 288
7.4.12.4 Configuring real-time vehicle license plate recognition ... 290
7.4.12.4.1 Configuring macros when working with ANPR lists ... 290
7.4.12.4.1.1 Target number shows up in the selected ANPR list ... 290
7.4.12.4.1.2 The target number does not show up in the selected ANPR list ... 291
7.4.12.4.1.3 Recognition of a specific number from the selected ANPR list ... 291
7.4.12.4.1.4 The target number does not show up in all available ANPR lists ... 291
7.4.12.4.1.5 Recognition of any number from any ANPR list ... 291
7.4.13 Neural Counter ... 292
7.4.13.1 Video stream and scene requirements for neural counter operation ... 292
7.4.13.2 Functions of the neural counter ... 292
7.4.13.3 Configuring a Neurocounter ... 293
7.4.13.4 Example of configuring neural counter for solving typical task ... 295
7.4.13.5 Objects image requirements for neural counter ... 296
7.4.14 Fire and Smoke Detection Tools ... 298
7.4.14.1 Functions of Fire and Smoke detection ... 298
7.4.14.2 Camera requirements for Fire and Smoke Detection ... 298
7.4.14.3 Configuring Smoke and Fire Detection Tools ... 298
7.4.15 Equipment detection tool (PPE) ... 301
7.4.15.1 Functions of the Equipment detection tool (PPE) ... 301
7.4.15.2 Video stream and scene requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE) operation ... 301
7.4.15.3 Configuring equipment detection tool (PPE) ... 302
7.4.15.4 Objects image requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE) ... 305
7.4.15.5 Examples of configuring Equipment detection tool (PPE) for solving typical tasks ... 305
7.4.15.6 Example of providing a list of valid equipment at the facility ... 306
7.4.16 Person-based privacy masking ... 309
7.4.16.1 Person-based privacy mask functions ... 309
7.4.16.2 Camera requirements for privacy masking ... 310
7.4.16.3 Person-based privacy mask configuration ... 310
7.4.17 Pose detection tools ... 311
7.4.17.1 Functions of Pose Detection ... 311
7.4.17.2 Video stream and scene requirements for pose detection tool ... 312
7.4.17.3 Configure Pose Detection ... 312
7.4.17.3.1 Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools ... 312
7.4.17.3.2 Specific settings for People Counter ... 314

7.4.17.3.3 Specific settings for the Man Down detection tool ... 315
7.4.17.3.4 Specific settings for the Sitting person detection tool ... 316
7.4.17.3.5 Specific settings for handrail holding detection ... 318
7.4.17.3.6 Specific settings for people masking ... 319
7.4.17.3.7 Specific settings for close-standing people detection ... 319
7.4.17.3.8 Specific settings for hands up detection ... 321
7.4.17.4 Objects image requirements for pose detection tool ... 321
7.4.18 Retail Analytics ... 322
7.4.18.1 Functions of retail analytics ... 322
7.4.18.2 Camera requirements for queue detection ... 322
7.4.18.3 Camera requirements for Visitor Counter operation ... 323
7.4.18.3.1 Requirements for the person size in the frame ... 324
7.4.18.4 Configuring retail analytics detection tools ... 325
7.4.18.4.1 Configuring the queue detection tool ... 325
7.4.18.4.2 Configuring the visitors counter ... 327
7.4.19 Water Level Detection ... 330
7.4.19.1 Camera requirements for water level detection ... 330
7.4.19.2 Configuring water level detection ... 330
7.4.20 Embedded Detection Tools ... 332
7.4.20.1 Embedded Temperature Detection Tool ... 333
7.4.20.2 Obtaining metadata ... 333
7.4.20.3 ANPR ... 334
7.4.20.4 AxxonSoft tracking in Axis devices ... 334
7.4.21 Configuring Inputs ... 336
7.4.22 Checking the Triggering of a Detection Tool ... 337
7.4.23 Automatic Rules ... 338
7.4.24 Acceleration of the neural network analytics launch on GPU ... 339
7.4.25 Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics ... 339
7.5 Configuring Macros and Counters ... 339
7.5.1 General information about the macros ... 339
7.5.2 General information about the counters ... 340
7.5.3 Create Macros ... 341
7.5.4 Creating and configuring counters ... 343
7.5.5 Configuring filters for event-driven macros ... 345
7.5.5.1 Specific parameters for triggering a face recognition macro ... 348

7.5.5.2 Triggering macros by statistical data ... 349
7.5.6 Settings specific to actions ... 350
7.5.6.1 Wait for event ... 350
7.5.6.2 Wait for timeout ... 351
7.5.6.3 Wait till previous action finishes ... 352
7.5.6.4 Record to archive ... 353
7.5.6.5 Trigger an alarm ... 356
7.5.6.6 Switch output ... 357
7.5.6.7 Arm /disarm a camera ... 357
7.5.6.8 Switch to a PTZ camera preset ... 358
7.5.6.9 View camera ... 358
7.5.6.10 Open layout ... 359
7.5.6.11 Show map ... 360
7.5.6.12 Starting export ... 361
7.5.6.13 Start replication ... 363
7.5.6.14 Play audio on Server ... 365
7.5.6.15 E-mail notification ... 366
7.5.6.15.1 The E-mail Object ... 367
7.5.6.15.1.1 Creating the E-mail Object ... 367
7.5.6.15.1.2 Configuring the E-mail Object ... 367
7.5.6.15.1.3 Checking E-mail Notification ... 368
7.5.6.16 SMS notification ... 369
7.5.6.16.1 The SMS Object ... 370
7.5.6.16.1.1 Procedure of configuring SMS notifications ... 370
7.5.6.16.1.2 Creating the SMS Object ... 370
7.5.6.16.1.3 Configuring the SMS Object ... 371
7.5.6.16.1.4 Checking SMS notifications ... 372
7.5.6.17 Push notification ... 372
7.5.6.18 Starting an external program on Clients ... 372
7.5.6.19 Starting an external program on Servers ... 373
7.5.6.20 Start/stop slideshow of layouts ... 375
7.5.6.21 Enable/disable a component ... 376
7.5.6.22 Checking for archive video recordings ... 376
7.5.6.23 Switching to Forensic Search results ... 377
7.5.6.24 Voice notification from Client ... 377
7.5.6.25 Voice notification on Client ... 378

7.5.6.26 Executing a macro ... 379
7.5.6.27 Alarm dispatch ... 379
7.5.6.28 Executing a web query ... 379
7.5.6.29 Text templates in macros ... 380
7.5.6.30 Managing the counter ... 382
7.5.6.31 Checking whether the camera is in armed mode ... 383
7.5.7 Cyclical macros ... 383
7.6 Configuring user permissions ... 385
7.6.1 Creating and configuring roles ... 386
7.6.2 Connecting to an LDAP catalog ... 391
7.6.3 Working with users ... 393
7.6.3.1 Creating local users ... 393
7.6.3.2 Locking a user account ... 395
7.6.3.3 Creating LDAP connections ... 395
7.6.3.4 Synchronize LDAP users ... 396
7.6.3.5 Deleting users ... 396
7.6.4 Configuring the user security policy ... 397
7.7 Configuring Layouts ... 398
7.7.1 Creating and deleting layouts ... 398
7.7.2 Rename Layouts ... 399
7.7.3 Reorder Layouts ... 400
7.7.4 Layout copying ... 400
7.7.5 Editing layouts ... 400
7.7.5.1 Switching to layout editing mode ... 400
7.7.5.2 Selecting a layout for editing ... 402
7.7.5.3 Configuring layout cells ... 402
7.7.5.3.1 Adding new cells to a layout ... 402
7.7.5.3.2 Resizing cells ... 404
7.7.5.3.3 Moving cells ... 405
7.7.5.3.4 Adding cameras to cells ... 405
7.7.5.3.5 Adding information boards to cells ... 406
7.7.5.3.6 Linking cells ... 407
7.7.5.3.7 Merging videos from adjacent cameras (FrameMerge) ... 407
7.7.5.3.8 Clearing cells ... 410
7.7.5.4 Configuring viewing tiles ... 410

7.7.5.4.1 Selecting default functions for viewing tiles ... 410
7.7.5.4.2 Select the default video stream for each camera within your layout ... 410
7.7.5.4.3 Selecting the default video mode for a camera ... 410
7.7.5.4.4 Moving input and output icons in a viewing tile ... 411
7.7.5.4.5 Configuring default zoom levels (the Fit screen function) ... 411
7.7.5.4.6 Configuring pan/tilt angle for video cameras with Immervision lenses in 180º Panorama display format ... 412
7.7.5.4.7 Configuring display of water level detection ... 413
7.7.5.4.8 Adding links to other cameras to the Camera Window ... 414
7.7.5.5 Configuring information boards ... 416
7.7.5.5.1 Configuring information board templates ... 416
7.7.5.5.2 Configuring Events Boards ... 416
7.7.5.5.3 Configuring a Health Board ... 418
7.7.5.5.4 Configuring a Statistics Board ... 419
7.7.5.5.5 Configure the Web Board ... 420
7.7.5.5.6 Configure the Dialog Board ... 421
7.7.5.6 Configuring Alarms Panel on a layout ... 425
7.7.5.7 Exiting layout editing mode ... 425
7.7.6 Share Layouts ... 425
7.7.7 Configuring special layouts ... 426
7.7.7.1 Creating special layouts ... 426
7.7.7.2 Configuring Alerted Cameras layouts ... 427
7.7.7.3 Configuring Selected Cameras layout ... 429
7.7.8 Configuring user-defined slide shows ... 431
7.7.9 Setting the default layout ... 431
7.7.10 Setting a layout ID ... 432
7.8 Configuring Video Wall ... 432
7.9 Configuring the Interactive Map ... 434
7.9.1 Creating a new map ... 434
7.9.2 Adding system objects to the map ... 436
7.9.2.1 Adding video cameras and changing size of their icons on the map ... 437
7.9.2.2 Adding inputs and outputs ... 437
7.9.2.3 Adding switches to another map ... 437
7.9.2.4 Adding counters ... 438
7.9.2.5 Adding macros ... 439

7.9.3 Configuring cameras on the map ... 440
7.9.3.1 Configuring a camera in standard map viewing mode ... 440
7.9.3.2 Configuring cameras in immersion mode ... 442
7.9.3.3 Configuring cameras with a built-in GPS tracker ... 443
7.9.4 Attaching a map to a layout ... 444
7.9.5 Removing objects from the map ... 444
7.9.6 Configuring the floors ... 445
7.9.6.1 Creating a floor ... 445
7.9.6.2 Configuring floor location on the map ... 446
7.9.6.3 Editing a floor ... 447
7.9.6.4 Removing a floor ... 447
7.9.7 Setting keywords for geo map search ... 448
7.9.8 Changing map type and display ... 448
7.9.9 Renaming the map ... 449
7.9.10 Sorting of map lists ... 449
7.9.11 Deleting a map ... 449
7.10 System preferences ... 450
7.10.1 Server settings ... 450
7.10.1.1 Configuring Forensic Search MomentQuest in Archive ... 450
7.10.1.1.1 Turning on the video stream metadata recording ... 450
7.10.1.1.2 Configuring user permissions for Forensic Search in archive ... 451
7.10.1.1.3 Video suitability for Forensic Search of recorded video (requirements) ... 451
7.10.1.2 Setting up privacy masking ... 451
7.10.1.2.1 Masking faces ... 451
7.10.1.2.2 Setting up privacy masking in Video Footage ... 452
7.10.1.3 Analyzing video from external systems (Offline Analytics) ... 455
7.10.1.3.1 Importing video to Axxon Next ... 455
7.10.1.3.2 Indexing video from external sources ... 457
7.10.1.3.3 How to set a folder to import videos from ... 459
7.10.1.4 Configuring hardware video decoding for display on the Client ... 459
7.10.1.4.1 Hardware-based decoding with Intel Quick Sync Video ... 459
7.10.1.4.2 Hardware-based decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips ... 461
7.10.1.4.3 Parallel decoding with both Intel's Quick Sync Video and NVidia's NVDEC ... 462
7.10.1.5 Configuring automatic response when Axxon Next VMS PC integrity check fails ... 462
7.10.1.6 Configuring storage of the system log and metadata ... 463

7.10.1.7 Configuring Alarm Management Mode ... 465
7.10.1.8 Configuring PTZ control ... 465
7.10.1.9 Configuring schedules ... 466
7.10.1.9.1 Creating schedules ... 466
7.10.1.9.2 Deleting a schedule ... 467
7.10.1.10 Configuring the Server ports ... 468
7.10.1.10.1 Changing the gRPC API port ... 468
7.10.1.10.2 Changing the port range of the Server ... 468
7.10.1.10.3 Changing the PostgreSQL database port ... 468
7.10.1.10.3.1 Changing the PostgreSQL database port by removing Axxon Next completely ... 469
7.10.1.10.3.2 Changing the PostgreSQL database port in the configuration ... 469
7.10.1.11 Configuring Server logging ... 472
7.10.1.12 Configuring NTP synchronization ... 472
7.10.2 Client settings ... 473
7.10.2.1 Configuring the user interface ... 473
7.10.2.1.1 Selecting the interface language ... 473
7.10.2.1.2 Selecting the calendar type ... 475
7.10.2.1.3 Configuring Slideshow parameters ... 476
7.10.2.1.4 Hiding tooltips ... 476
7.10.2.1.5 Configuring animation ... 477
7.10.2.1.6 Configuring Display of Video Statistics ... 477
7.10.2.1.7 Configuring previews of alarm events ... 478
7.10.2.1.8 Configuring map autozoom ... 479
7.10.2.1.9 Configuring the Client screen mode (full screen or window) ... 479
7.10.2.1.10 Configuring the Appearance of the Viewing Tile ... 480
7.10.2.1.11 Configure Time Display ... 481
7.10.2.1.12 Configuring the display of the camera ID ... 482
7.10.2.1.13 Prune Video to Window Resolution ... 484
7.10.2.1.14 Configuring tiles on the layout ... 484
7.10.2.1.15 Configuring video display on the map ... 488
7.10.2.1.16 Configuring camera sorting on Object Panel ... 489
7.10.2.2 Configuring how Axxon Next starts ... 490
7.10.2.2.1 Configuring Axxon Next instead of the standard Windows OS shell ... 490
7.10.2.2.2 Configuring Cross-System Client and autologon ... 491
7.10.2.2.3 Configuring automatic exiting and locking of the Client ... 494

7.10.2.2.4 IP address filtering configuration ... 495
7.10.2.2.5 Selecting Preferred Servers ... 495
7.10.2.3 Configuring export ... 496
7.10.2.3.1 Configuring export options ... 496
7.10.2.3.2 Configuring an Export Agent ... 500
7.10.2.4 Configuring audio on the Client ... 501
7.10.2.5 Configuring hot keys ... 502
7.10.2.5.1 Introduction to hot keys in Axxon Next ... 502
7.10.2.5.2 Assigning hot keys ... 502
7.10.2.5.3 Exporting and importing hot keys ... 503
7.10.2.5.4 Notes regarding hot key actions ... 504
7.10.2.5.5 Joystick Configuration ... 506
7.10.2.6 Configuring video capturing on operator monitor ... 507
7.10.2.7 Configuring Client logging and statistics collection ... 510
7.11 Configuring Failover VMS ... 511
7.11.1 General information about a failover system ... 511
7.11.2 Ports used by the failover system ... 512
7.11.3 Supervisor Web Interface ... 513
7.11.4 Creating a Cluster ... 514
7.11.5 Failover Database ... 516
7.11.6 Configure a Failover System Cluster ... 517
7.11.6.1 Setting up basic configuration ... 517
7.11.6.2 Setting up a configuration with the backup Server ... 521
7.11.6.3 Creating and configuring independent nodes ... 524
7.11.6.4 1+1 Cluster Configuration ... 527
7.11.6.5 Suspending a Server within a cluster ... 528
7.11.6.6 Disbanding a cluster ... 529
7.11.7 Set up access to a supervisor ... 529
7.11.8 Configuration backup and restore for failover VMS ... 531
7.11.9 Cluster Monitoring ... 532
7.11.10 Connecting to a Node and Configuring of an Axxon domain ... 533
7.11.11 Configuring automatic connections to nodes ... 534
7.11.12 Upgrading Servers within a cluster ... 535
7.11.13 Setting network interfaces for system nodes operation ... 536
7.12 Self-diagnostics service ... 537

7.12.1 What is the self-diagnostics service ... 537
7.12.2 Starting and stopping the self-diagnostics service ... 537
7.12.3 Viewing metrics in the Self-diagnostics Service ... 537
8 Working with the Axxon Next Software Package ... 542
8.1 Main Elements of the User Interface ... 542
8.1.1 Viewing Tile ... 542
8.1.1.1 Color Coding of Frames ... 544
8.1.1.2 Viewing Tile Context Menu ... 545
8.1.1.3 Time Display ... 545
8.1.1.4 Display of Video Statistics ... 546
8.1.1.5 Video Surveillance Mode Selection Tabs ... 547
8.1.1.6 Advanced archive navigation panel ... 548
8.1.2 Information boards ... 549
8.1.3 The Archive Navigation Panel ... 550
8.1.3.1 Show and Hide the Archive Navigation Panel ... 550
8.1.3.2 The Structure and Function of the Archive Navigation Panel ... 551
8.1.3.3 Events filter ... 552
8.1.3.4 The Timeline ... 553
8.1.3.5 Events List ... 556
8.1.3.6 The Playback Panel ... 557
8.1.4 Video Wall Panel ... 558
8.1.5 Monitor Panel ... 558
8.1.6 The Layouts panel ... 559
8.1.7 Interactive Map ... 559
8.1.8 Camera Search Panel ... 560
8.1.9 Alarms Panel ... 561
8.1.10 Objects Panel ... 563
8.1.11 The PTZ Control Panel ... 564
8.1.12 Story board ... 566
8.2 Video Surveillance ... 567
8.2.1 Video Surveillance Modes ... 567
8.2.2 Functions Available in All Video Surveillance Modes ... 567
8.2.2.1 Scaling the Viewing Tile ... 568
8.2.2.2 Digitally Zooming Video Images ... 569
8.2.2.2.1 Enlarging a video image using the digital zoom scale ... 569

8.2.2.2.2 Enlarging a video image through area selection ... 570
8.2.2.2.3 Enlarging a video image using the mouse scroll wheel ... 572
8.2.2.3 Video image processing ... 572
8.2.2.3.1 Changing the Contrast Level ... 573
8.2.2.3.2 Setting the Sharpness Level ... 573
8.2.2.3.3 Using Deinterlacing ... 574
8.2.2.4 Rotate Video Image ... 575
8.2.2.5 Tracking objects ... 577
8.2.2.6 Operator comments ... 580
8.2.2.6.1 Adding comments in different surveillance modes ... 580
8.2.2.6.2 Adding a comment ... 581
8.2.2.7 Switching to other camera via a link in the Camera window ... 583
8.2.2.8 Viewing titles from POS terminals ... 584
8.2.2.9 Partial decoding of video ... 586
8.2.2.10 Extra information overlay (Masks) ... 586
8.2.3 Real-time video surveillance ... 587
8.2.3.1 Switching to Live Video Mode ... 587
8.2.3.2 Video Surveillance Functions Available in Live Video Mode ... 588
8.2.3.3 Arming and Disarming a Video Camera ... 588
8.2.3.4 Controlling a PTZ Camera ... 589
8.2.3.4.1 Presets ... 590
8.2.3.4.1.1 Creating and editing presets ... 590
8.2.3.4.1.2 Selecting a preset ... 592
8.2.3.4.2 PTZ Tours ... 593
8.2.3.4.2.1 Creating and editing PTZ tours ... 593
8.2.3.4.2.2 Launching a PTZ tour ... 594
8.2.3.4.3 Control using step buttons and virtual joystick ... 594
8.2.3.4.4 Patrolling ... 595
8.2.3.4.5 Controlling Focus, Iris and Optical Zoom ... 596
8.2.3.4.6 Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode ... 596
8.2.3.4.7 Control using Point&Click ... 597
8.2.3.4.8 Control using Areazoom ... 597
8.2.3.5 Functions for tracking of moving objects ... 599
8.2.3.5.1 Tag & Track Pro ... 599
8.2.3.5.2 Tag & Track Lite ... 600

8.2.3.5.3 Simultaneously using Tag & Track Pro and Tag & Track Lite ... 600
8.2.3.6 Managing Outputs ... 601
8.2.3.7 Displaying the input status ... 602
8.2.3.8 Selecting video stream quality in a viewing tile (GreenStream) ... 603
8.2.3.9 Autozoom ... 605
8.2.3.10 Autoreplace Offline Cameras on Layouts ... 606
8.2.3.11 Snapshot ... 606
8.2.3.12 Viewing selected camera's detection tool triggering events ... 607
8.2.3.13 Removing a camera from a layout ... 608
8.2.4 Video surveillance in archive mode ... 609
8.2.4.1 Switching to Archive Mode ... 609
8.2.4.2 Video Surveillance Functions Available in Archive Mode ... 611
8.2.4.3 Selecting an Archive ... 611
8.2.4.4 Viewing a combined Archive ... 612
8.2.4.5 Synchronized playback of archives ... 613
8.2.4.6 Compressed playback of archives (TimeCompressor) ... 613
8.2.4.6.1 Switching to TimeCompressor mode ... 614
8.2.4.6.2 Playback control ... 615
8.2.4.6.3 Switching back to the original recording of an object ... 616
8.2.4.7 Viewing recorded video with operator comments ... 617
8.2.4.8 Viewing External Archives ... 619
8.2.4.9 Delete a part of an archive ... 619
8.2.4.10 Navigating in the Archive ... 620
8.2.4.10.1 Navigating Using the Timeline ... 620
8.2.4.10.2 Navigation using the advanced panel ... 622
8.2.4.10.3 Navigating Using the Events list ... 623
8.2.4.10.4 Navigating Using the Playback Panel ... 623
8.2.4.10.5 Navigation via the time indicator ... 624
8.2.4.10.6 Keyboard navigation ... 624
8.2.4.11 Displaying the causes of triggered situation analysis detection units ... 625
8.2.4.12 Viewing the results of a saved search query ... 625
8.2.4.13 Manual Archive Replication ... 627
8.2.4.14 Tag & Track Lite in Archive mode ... 628
8.2.5 Video surveillance in Alarm Management mode ... 629
8.2.5.1 Video surveillance functions available in Alarm Management mode ... 629

8.2.5.2 Switch to Alarm Management mode ... 629
8.2.5.3 Initiating an Alarm ... 630
8.2.5.3.1 Manual Initiation ... 630
8.2.5.3.2 Automatic Initiation ... 631
8.2.5.4 Working with Alarms Panel ... 632
8.2.5.4.1 Viewing Alarms in Event Preview ... 632
8.2.5.4.2 Outlining Objects that Triggered Detection ... 632
8.2.5.4.3 Selecting Events for Alarm Management ... 632
8.2.5.5 Working with the Alarm Management window ... 633
8.2.5.5.1 Alarm Handling Tile Interface Elements ... 633
8.2.5.5.2 Alarm Playback ... 633
8.2.5.5.3 Processing an Alarm ... 634
8.2.5.6 Limitations when working with alarm events in case of multi-user processing ... 635
8.2.6 Video surveillance in Archive Search mode ... 636
8.2.6.1 Switching to Archive Search mode ... 636
8.2.6.2 Archive Search mode interface ... 637
8.2.6.3 Video surveillance functions available in Archive Search mode ... 639
8.2.6.4 Search in an archive of a single video camera ... 640
8.2.6.4.1 Selecting the search type ... 640
8.2.6.4.2 Setting a search interval ... 640
8.2.6.4.3 Events search ... 641
8.2.6.4.4 Time search for video fragments (TimeSlice) ... 642
8.2.6.4.5 Searching comments ... 643
8.2.6.4.6 Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest) ... 644
8.2.6.4.6.1 Motion in Area ... 645
8.2.6.4.6.2 Loitering of an object in a specific area ... 646
8.2.6.4.6.3 Simultaneous presence of a large number of objects in a specific area ... 646
8.2.6.4.6.4 Motion from one area to another ... 647
8.2.6.4.6.5 Crossing of a virtual line by an object's trajectory ... 648
8.2.6.4.6.6 Configure the search parameters ... 649
8.2.6.4.7 Titles search ... 653
8.2.6.4.8 LPR search ... 654
8.2.6.4.9 Face search ... 655
8.2.6.4.9.1 Search for similar face ... 655
8.2.6.4.9.2 Tell "friend" from "foe" by a picture ... 657
8.2.6.4.10 Search for contacts with a person ... 658

8.2.6.4.11 Saving search queries ... 659
8.2.6.4.12 Switching between search results ... 660
8.2.6.4.13 Working with search results ... 660
8.2.6.4.13.1 Viewing search results ... 660
8.2.6.4.13.2 Viewing Search Results In TimeCompressor ... 662
8.2.6.4.13.3 Playback of video fragments ... 662
8.2.6.4.13.4 Enlargement of found moments ... 664
8.2.6.4.13.5 Exporting the video fragments and repeated search ... 665
8.2.6.4.14 Heat map ... 665
8.2.6.4.15 Image Search ... 667
8.2.6.5 Simultaneous search in an archive of several video cameras ... 670
8.2.7 Working with fisheye cameras ... 671
8.2.7.1 Viewing modes for video from fisheye cameras ... 671
8.2.7.1.1 Selecting viewing mode for videos from a fisheye camera ... 671
8.2.7.1.2 360 degree Panorama and Regional view (virtual PTZ) ... 672
8.2.7.1.3 180 degree Panorama ... 673
8.2.7.2 Fisheye cameras on an interactive map ... 674
8.2.7.2.1 Viewing video and controlling a fisheye camera from the map ... 674
8.2.7.2.2 Fisheye cameras in immersive mode ... 675
8.2.8 Facial recognition and search ... 675
8.2.9 Vehicle number plate recognition and search ... 678
8.2.10 Temperature screening ... 679
8.3 Working with information boards ... 680
8.3.1 Resizing information boards ... 680
8.3.2 Hiding information boards ... 681
8.3.3 Automatically switching to layouts with information boards ... 681
8.3.4 Working with Events Boards ... 682
8.3.4.1 Options for displaying information on Events Boards ... 682
8.3.4.2 Switching a camera linked to an Events Board to the archives ... 684
8.3.5 Working with Health Boards ... 684
8.3.5.1 Viewing server status ... 686
8.3.5.2 Viewing camera status ... 687
8.3.6 Working with Statistics Boards ... 689
8.3.7 Working with Web Boards ... 691
8.3.8 Working with Dialog Board ... 692

8.4 Layouts Management ... 694
8.4.1 Changing cameras within a layout ... 695
8.4.2 Selection and Slideshow of Layouts ... 695
8.4.3 Working with Special layouts ... 697
8.5 Monitor Management ... 698
8.5.1 Managing monitors on a local Client ... 698
8.5.2 Managing monitors on remote Clients within the Axxon domain ... 700
8.6 Audio Monitoring ... 701
8.6.1 General Information ... 701
8.6.2 Listening on the Client to sound from a camera microphone ... 701
8.6.3 Playing back sound from Client microphone on camera speakers ... 703
8.7 Working with the Interactive Map ... 704
8.7.1 Opening and closing the map ... 705
8.7.2 Geo map search ... 706
8.7.3 Changing the map tilt ... 707
8.7.4 Scaling and focusing of map ... 709
8.7.5 Customizing an Interactive Map ... 709
8.7.6 Switching between maps ... 711
8.7.7 Immersive mode ... 712
8.7.8 Controlling devices from the map ... 713
8.7.9 Displaying device status ... 715
8.7.10 Displaying the counters ... 716
8.7.11 Selecting Cameras for a Temporary Layout ... 717
8.8 Exporting Frames and Video Recordings ... 718
8.8.1 Frame export ... 718
8.8.2 Exporting Video Recordings ... 720
8.8.2.1 Standard video export ... 720
8.8.2.2 Instant video export ... 722
8.8.2.3 Simultaneous export of video from multiple cameras ... 722
8.8.2.4 Exporting all event videos ... 723
8.8.3 Configuring export area and masks ... 724
8.8.4 Viewing export progress ... 727
8.9 Macros control ... 727
8.10 Event Control ... 728
8.10.1 Control in Live Video Mode ... 728

8.10.2 The System Log ... 728
8.10.2.1 Setting Event Search Filters ... 728
8.10.2.2 Event search procedure ... 729
8.10.2.3 Refreshing Event Search Results ... 730
8.10.2.4 Viewing Event Search Results ... 730
8.10.2.5 Exporting Event Search Results ... 731
8.10.2.6 Switching to archive video of specific events ... 732
8.11 Changing user password ... 732
8.12 Working with Axxon Next Through the Mobile Clients ... 733
9 Description of utilities ... 734
9.1 Axxon Next Tray Tool ... 734
9.2 Activation Utility ... 734
9.3 Axxon Support Tool ... 736
9.3.1 Purpose of the Support.exe Utility ... 736
9.3.2 Launching and Closing the Utility ... 736
9.3.3 Description of the Support.exe utility interface ... 737
9.3.4 The Processes Service ... 738
9.3.5 Collecting Data on the Configuration of Servers and Clients Using the Support ... 739
9.4 Log Management Utility ... 742
9.4.1 Starting and closing the utility ... 742
9.4.2 Configuring a Log Archive ... 742
9.4.3 Configuring Logging Levels ... 743
9.4.4 Set the size and maximum number of logs ... 744
9.4.5 Configuring Client RAM usage logging ... 745
9.5 Digital Signature Verification Utility ... 746
9.6 Backup and Restore Utility ... 748
9.6.1 Purpose of BackupTool.exe ... 748
9.6.2 Starting and quitting BackupTool.exe ... 748
9.6.3 Roll back the local configuration to a selected restore point ... 749
9.6.4 Roll back the global configuration to a selected restore point ... 751
9.6.5 Backing up a configuration ... 752
9.6.6 Restoring a configuration ... 754
9.6.7 Changing the Server Name ... 756
9.7 POS-terminal log collection utility ... 758

9.8 Console utility for working with archives 759
9.9 Network settings utility 761
10 Appendices 763
10.1 Appendix 1. Glossary 763
10.2 Appendix 2. Known issues in the Axxon Next Software Package 765
10.2.1 Possible Errors During Installation 765
10.2.1.1 Error starting NGP Host Service 765
10.2.1.2 Errors Connecting to the Postgres Database 765
10.2.1.3 Error installing Drivers Pack 766
10.2.1.4 Window OS 10 installation error 766
10.2.1.5 An error occurred while installing on Windows with the language pack Norsk (bokmål) 766
10.2.1.6 Error uninstalling Axxon Next on systems with Videoinspector installed 766
10.2.2 Possible Errors During Start-Up 767
10.2.2.1 The Client cannot be connected to the Server 767
10.2.3 Possible Errors During Operation 767
10.2.3.1 All video channels or archives stop working once the license maximum is reached 767
10.2.3.2 No signal from video cameras and failure to connect to other Servers 768
10.2.3.3 Incorrect display of Client interface elements 768
10.2.3.4 Server error on Windows Server 2012 768
10.2.3.5 Emergency shutdown of the Client on Windows 8.1 768
10.2.3.6 Error creating new archives even when license restriction on total capacity is observed 768
10.2.3.7 Axxon Next VMS operation with Windows Defender software 768
10.2.3.8 Upper panel display problem 769
10.2.3.9 High CPU load during OpenGL software emulation 769
10.2.3.10 Axxon Next operation with NetLimiter 2 769
10.2.3.11 Exported videos' playback in Movies and TV application 769
10.2.3.12 Axxon Next operation on Windows N and KN editions 769
10.3 Appendix 3. Assigning of the domain takes place when the Axxon Next server is installed 769
10.4 Appendix 4. Using Axxon Next with anti-virus software 770
10.4.1 NOD32 770
10.4.2 ESET Smart Security 770
10.4.3 AVG 770
10.4.4 DrWeb 771
10.5 Appendix 5. Using CH VM-Desktop USB multifunction controllers with Axxon Next 771

10.6 Appendix 6. Hotkeys in Axxon Next ... 773
10.7 Appendix 7. Automated configuration backup and restore ... 776
10.8 Appendix 8. Configuring and operating the Axxon Next in Linux OS ... 777
10.8.1 Linux OS supported versions ... 777
10.8.2 Axxon Next limitations in Linux OS ... 778
10.8.3 Installing sudo ... 778
10.8.4 Installing the Axxon Next in Linux OS ... 778
10.8.4.1 Installing the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS ... 778
10.8.4.1.1 Installing from repository ... 778
10.8.4.1.2 Manual installation ... 779
10.8.4.2 Installing the Axxon Next Client on Linux OS ... 781
10.8.4.3 Configuration and log folders ... 784
10.8.4.4 Axxon Next Server launch using Docker ... 784
10.8.4.4.1 Docker installation ... 784
10.8.4.4.2 Specifics of Docker installation on Ubuntu ... 785
10.8.4.4.3 Creating the Axxon Next container ... 787
10.8.4.4.4 Working with the Axxon Next container ... 787
10.8.4.5 Updating the Axxon Next software in Linux OS ... 788
10.8.4.6 Uninstalling the Axxon Next software in Linux OS ... 788
10.8.5 Moving the Axxon Next configuration from Windows OS to Linux OS ... 789
10.8.6 Starting and stopping the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS ... 789
10.8.7 Archive creation features in Linux OS ... 790
10.8.7.1 Archive as a disk creation features in Linux OS ... 790
10.8.7.2 Archive as a file creation features in Linux OS ... 791
10.8.7.3 Features of archives with ext and xfs file systems ... 792
10.8.7.4 Features of NAS archives ... 792
10.8.8 Axxon Next Server configuration change ... 792
10.8.9 Configuring the metadata storage in NAS on Linux OS ... 794
10.8.10 Configuring the Axxon Next Client logging parameters on Linux OS ... 794
10.8.11 License activation for the LP recognition detection in Linux OS ... 795
10.8.12 System data collection in Linux OS ... 796
10.8.13 Potential problems with Linux OS ... 796
10.8.13.1 Problem with displaying a dialog box or drop-down list ... 796
10.9 Appendix 9. Using Axxon Next with NAT ... 796
10.9.1 Consolidating the Servers from different networks into Axxon domain ... 796

10.9.2 Connecting the Client to the Server behind NAT ... 799
10.9.3 Connecting the web and mobile Clients to the Server behind NAT ... 801
10.9.4 Audio transmission from the Client's microphone behind NAT to the Server's or camera's loudspeaker ... 802
10.10 Appendix 10. Creating system variable ... 803
11 Working with Axxon Next Through the Web Client ... 805
11.1 Web client overview ... 805
11.2 Hardware and software requirements for the Web Client operation ... 805
11.3 Starting the web client ... 805
11.4 Web client's GUI ... 807
11.5 Web Client Configuration ... 808
11.6 Searching for video cameras in the web client ... 810
11.7 Working with layouts in Web Client ... 812
11.7.1 Summary of how to work with layouts in Web Client ... 812
11.7.2 Selecting and searching for a layout ... 812
11.7.3 Creating a new layout in Web Client ... 813
11.7.4 Editing and deleting layouts in Web Client ... 815
11.7.5 Selecting the default layout in Web Client ... 816
11.7.6 Copying layouts in Web Client ... 817
11.7.7 Sharing layouts in Web Client ... 817
11.8 Real-time video surveillance via the Web Client ... 817
11.9 Controlling PTZ cameras through the web client ... 819
11.9.1 Controlling a PTZ camera through the web client by using presets ... 820
11.9.2 Changing the optical zoom of a PTZ camera in the web client ... 820
11.9.3 Changing the positioning speed of a PTZ camera in the web client ... 821
11.9.4 Changing the tilt of a PTZ camera in the web client ... 821
11.10 Viewing video archives through the web client ... 821
11.11 Archive position selection panel for the web client ... 822
11.12 Archive search through the web client ... 824
11.12.1 Types of Archive search available via the Web Client ... 825
11.12.2 Building a Heat Map ... 826
11.12.3 Simultaneous search in multiple camera Video Footage via the web Client ... 827
11.12.4 Reporting the search results ... 828
11.13 Alarm Monitoring via the Web Client ... 829

11.14 Listening to a camera's microphone via the web client 830
11.15 Digital video zoom in the web client 831
11.16 Export in Web Client 831
11.17 Viewing Camera and Archive Statistics 832
11.18 Working with bookmarks in the Web Client 833
11.18.1 Editing a bookmark 833
11.18.2 Deleting a bookmark 834
11.18.3 Un-protecting a video 834
11.18.4 Deleting a protected video 834

1 User Guide. Introduction

On page:

- General Information
- Purpose of the Document
- Purpose and functionality of Axxon Next

1.1 General Information

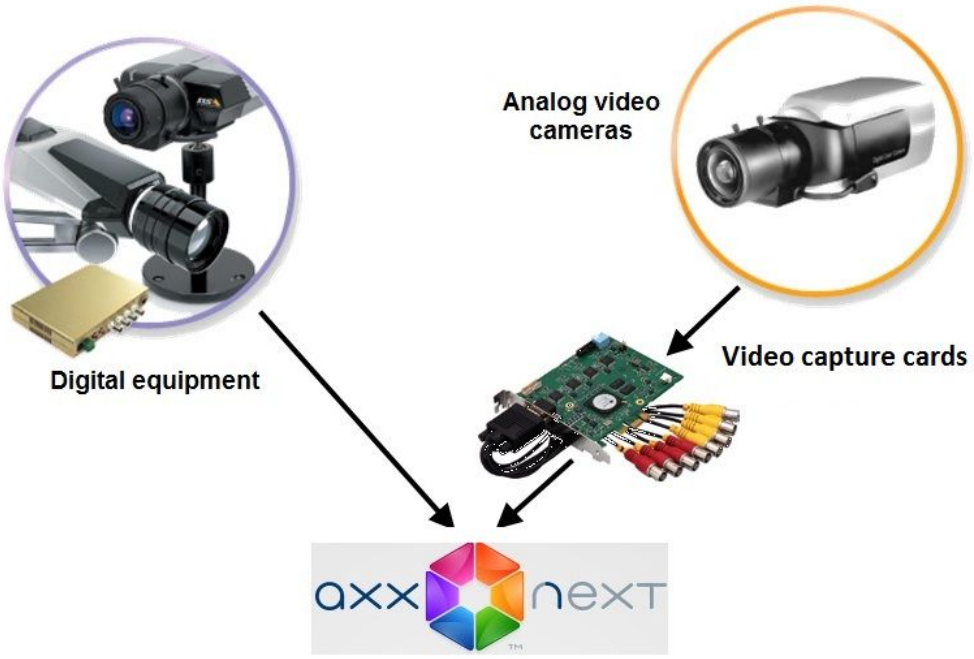
No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of *AxxonSoft*.
The *Axxon Next* trademark is the property of *AxxonSoft*. All other trademarks included in this document are the property of their respective owners.
All information contained in this document is current as of the publication date. *AxxonSoft* reserves the right to change or update this document without the prior notification of or to any third party.

1.2 Purpose of the Document

This document, titled User guide contains the information necessary for building, implementing, and operating a security system based on *Axxon Next*.
The structure of this document enables the user to get acquainted with the software package and then, depending on the user's level of training, choose sections of interest for more detailed study. The chapters in this guide, whether they are informative or serve as a reference, have their own internal structure.
The chapters Introduction and Description of the Software Package are intended to generally acquaint the user with the technical features and functionality of the Axxon Next software package, as well as with the key stages of building a security system based on the software package.
Recommendations to the user/administrator for installing the software and configuring equipment are presented in detail in the chapter Installing the Axxon Next Software Package. The chapter Licensing of the software product contains instructions on how to register a license to use the Axxon Next software package..
Startup and shutdown of the software package are described in the chapter Launching and Closing the Axxon Next Software Package.
The chapter Configuration of the Axxon Next Software Package presents step-by-step instructions on configuring user-specific settings and activating the required functionality. This information is useful for system administrators as well as for operators with permissions to manage system settings.
Recommendations on configuring the user interface, working in various video surveillance modes, and utilizing the functional capabilities of the Axxon Next software package are presented in chapter Working with the Axxon Next Software Package.
Chapter Description of utilities contains a description of additional software utilities employed when working with the software package.
The Appendices contains a glossary of the product's basic terms and definitions. It also lists all known issues that you may encounter while using Axxon Next.

1.3 Purpose and functionality of Axxon Next

The Axxon Next software package is a next-generation open-platform video management software (VMS). Security systems based on Axxon Next range from home security systems (for an apartment or house) to professional large-scale distributed security systems for small and mid-size businesses (hotels, automotive service centers, shops, parking structures, etc.).
Video and audio surveillance of guarded locations, video analysis, and rapid response to suspicious situations without operator involvement, and storage and export of obtained data are just a few of Axxon Next's many functions.
The Axxon Next software package enables the user to accomplish a wide spectrum of tasks, as it works both with digital equipment and with analog video cameras (through video capture cards), and also makes it possible to create a hybrid security system containing both kinds of equipment.



The modern and constantly expanding feature set of Axxon Next allows implementing new video surveillance functionality that increases the convenience and precision of protection at end-user sites.

2 Software Lifecycle Policy

On page:

- Software Lifecycle Phases
- Software Technical Support
- Standard Period for Release of Software Updates
- Licensing Policy with Regard to Software Updates

2.1 Software Lifecycle Phases

The software source code repository is divided into 3 branches:

- **trunk** - current changes;
- **stabilization** - preparation of a new release;
- **release** - the latest official release.

During the development process, all new software features are added to the **trunk** branch.

After reaching *Feature Complete* status, all changes from the **trunk** branch are moved to the **stabilization** branch.

From that time on, only software fixes that are critical for this version are added to the **stabilization** branch. These fixes are also duplicated in the **trunk** branch.

After the version stabilization is completed, all changes are moved from the **stabilization** branch to the **release** branch, and a new development phase begins.

2.2 Software Technical Support

After purchasing a license key, the Customer can receive full technical support throughout the key's validity period or until the end of the software lifecycle if the license is unlimited in time.

2.3 Standard Period for Release of Software Updates

Release	Standard period
Major release	1 – 1.5 years
Minor release	3 – 5 months
Bug and security fixes*	3 – 5 weeks

Major and minor releases are available on the company's official website. Releases with bug and security fixes can be requested from technical support.

***** Software bugs can only be fixed in the latest official release.

2.4 Licensing Policy with Regard to Software Updates

- New software versions are fully compatible with the license keys of previous versions.
- After the softwarehas been updated, all the features previously specified in the license key will be available in the new version.
- New software features that are subject to licensing will not be available until the license key is updated.

3 Description of the Software Package

3.1 Basic principles of building a security system based on the Axxon Next software package

Building a security system based on the Axxon Next software package includes the following recommended stages:

1. Selecting a configuration for the security system (with the help of professionals)
2. Building a separate local area network with restricted access
3. Calculating the sufficient bandwidth required for each segment of the local area network
4. Selecting and configuring the software and hardware platform on which the selected security system configuration will be implemented (selecting and configuring personal computers to act as servers and clients in accordance with the requirements, as referenced in the section titled Implementation Requirements for the Axxon Next Software Package, Operating system requirements)
5. Selecting and connecting reliable equipment that is optimally suited for a specific security system (with the help of professionals)
6. Training personnel to work with the Axxon Next software package in accordance with the requirements (see the section titled Requirements for Personnel Quantity and Qualifications).

3.2 Axxon Next features: reference information

On this page:

- Micromodule architecture
- Support for IP cameras
- Support for analog cameras in Axxon Next
- Video and Audio Detection Tools
- Video archive
- Interactive 3D Map
- User Interface
- Face Recognition
- Number Plate Recognition
- Receiving Events from External Systems

The advanced features available in *Axxon Next* are continuously updated and extended.

Axxon Next offers virtually unlimited opportunities for system scaling, task-based customization, and reallocation of resources (based on changes in the number or quality of video and audio monitoring tasks) at end-user sites.

Video surveillance systems based on *Axxon Next* can scale infinitely: there are no restrictions on the number of video servers, workstations or video cameras.

Support for over 1500 models of IP cameras is included, as well as remote access from mobile devices and a web interface. The *Axxon Next* software package supports touchscreens.

3.2.1 Micromodule architecture

The micromodule architecture of *Axxon Next* video management software allows implementing different video management system functions as different operating system processes. Each function is the responsibility of a different micromodule; a dispatcher module monitors the functioning of the micromodules. If a function encounters an error and a process is quit unexpectedly, the dispatcher module automatically relaunches the corresponding micromodule. This does not affect the performance of other processes or the functioning of the VMS overall.

3.2.2 Support for IP cameras

Drivers Pack

IP camera support in *Axxon Next* is provided through the **Driver's Pack** Module specially developed by AxxonSoft and regularly updated to support new IP devices.

Driver's Pack allows adding support for new IP devices without having to wait for the release of new versions of *Axxon Next* and without reinstalling the entire system.

Multistreaming

Many of today's IP cameras can transmit two video streams with different video parameters and compressed in different codecs. *Axxon Next* supports Multistreaming i.e. receiving two streams from a camera simultaneously: high-quality and low-quality, which allows taking advantage of this feature of IP equipment to optimize the CPU load on the video server and the client workstation. .

GreenStream

The GreenStream feature saves bandwidth and client CPU resources. It automatically chooses a video stream from a camera to the server, and then to the client, depending on the resolution at which the video is currently displayed on the client.

Embedded video camera analytics

Axxon Next supports on-board detection embedded in video cameras. This means that when on-board detection tools are triggered, *Axxon Next* is notified and can use these events to drive system reactions. On-board detection does not burden the CPU of the video server and makes use of uncompressed video (completely bypassing the compressing/decompression process), and therefore provide extra stability in difficult conditions such as poor visibility.

360 degree camera support

360 degree camera support allows dewarping video from a fisheye camera or camera with an ImmerVision panomorphic lens to obtain several "normal" flat images with different frame aspect ratios for display on the client screen. One of the resulting virtual cameras can be a virtual PTZ unit.

ONVIF

AxxonSoft is a member of ONVIF (the Open Network Video Interface Forum), which work toward the development and promotion of international standards for network security and video surveillance system interfaces. ONVIF is supported in all versions of Drivers Pack starting with version 3.1.3.

RTSP support

Many IP cameras support multimedia streaming via RTSP. Axxon Next supports receiving such streams without requiring integration of the relevant camera via Drivers Pack.

3.2.3 Support for analog cameras in Axxon Next

Alongside IP cameras, *Axxon Next* allows you to use analog cameras in your video surveillance system. Analog cameras are more affordable and are well-suited for many installations without high video resolution requirements. In addition, *Axxon Next* allows creating hybrid systems that combine both analog and IP cameras.

3.2.4 Video and Audio Detection Tools

Axxon Next video management software incorporates a powerful system for analysis of video images. It includes the following video detection tools:

1. Tampering detection.
2. Motion in area detection.
3. Neural tracker.
4. Object tracker.
5. Pose detection.
6. Equipment detection (PPE).
7. Person-based privacy masking.
8. Fire detection and smoke detection.
9. Water level detection.

10. Neurocounter.
11. Queue detection.
12. Visitors counter.

In addition to the video detection tools, *Axxon Next* has three audio detectors:

1. Noise detection.
2. Silence detection.
3. Signal detection.

Macros can be set to automatically run when a detection tool is triggered (on a per-detector basis). Multiple detection tools can be combined into complex conditional rules.

See Configuring detection tools.

3.2.5 Video archive

For storing archive in *Axxon Next*, you can use both local and network file storage with the SolidStore system, or object storage.

SolidStore

SolidStore is a file system for reliable video storage developed by AxxonSoft especially for storing video archives. By optimizing the reading/writing process we managed to achieve three important advantages:

- Enable high read/write speeds, approaching the physical access speed limit of the hard disk.
- Increase the service life of the hard disk.
- Solve the problem of data fragmentation.

Object archive

Object archive is an object file system for storing video archive in cloud storage (for example, Amazon S3, Microsoft Azure). Using an object archive allows to reduce the price of data storage and set up flexible integration with AxxonSoft VSaaS. According to Amazon, the reliability of using an object archive is up to 99.999999999%.

See Configuring Archives.

TimeCompressor

Time Compressor allows the user to set a time range for video footage and get a short video clip of all moving objects in the scene. Objects and events captured at different times are displayed simultaneously in a condensed "video synopsis". Time Compressor is especially convenient for viewing large archives that feature a relatively small number of active objects.

Forensic Search in Archive

The *Axxon Next* video management software (VMS) utilizes VMDA – a database developed by AxxonSoft for indexing and storing descriptions of observed scenes. Along with video recording, this database allows archiving characteristics of all moving objects in the scene, and then uses these characteristics to perform quick searches of the video recordings (MomentQuest2 technology).

3.2.6 Interactive 3D Map

Interactive 3D Map superimposes camera locations on a site map and displays camera views in the same window. Cameras in the current layout are color-coded by current status. Operators can instantly pinpoint where a selected camera is located on the map and identify the corresponding location of interest.

Immersion Mode

When enabled, this mode overlays a translucent video viewing tile on the map; fixed objects in the field of view (furniture, doors, etc.) are combined with their depictions on the map. This allows easily seeing where a person or car is located and where it is going.

OpenStreetMap

OpenStreetMap support is available in *Axxon Next*. The site map is downloaded from the Internet and the user selects the necessary area and scale. Additional map data is downloaded in real time, if needed, when zooming in/out or scrolling.

> **Note**
>
> To work with OpenStreetMap maps in *Axxon Next*, you need to purchase an OpenStreetMap license.

Virtual PTZ cameras on the map

The Virtual PTZ Camera function becomes available when the map contains at least one fish-eye camera. This function allows viewing video from a fish-eye camera directly on the map. Click anywhere in the fish-eye video shown in a layout cell to dewarp the source video, with digital zoom and click-to-focus.

3.2.7 User Interface

Editable camera layouts

Axxon Next allows you to create custom camera layouts. Layouts can be configured in any way the user wants and the aspect ratios of viewing tiles can be fine-tuned. Editable layouts efficiently fit different cameras with different aspect ratios on the same screen, as well as support display of dewarped fish-eye camera footage.

Autozoom

Autozoom helps to monitor moving objects by automatically adjusting the level of digital zoom. Autozoom shows close-in video for parts of the frame that contain a moving object or objects and follows them as they move, just as a movie camera does when taking a close-up shot.

3.2.8 Face Recognition

Axxon Next includes an algorithm for recognizing human faces in a video frame and subsequent search for them in a video archive of several cameras. You can search by an uploaded photo or by an image of a person's face selected in a video archive frame. The system will return the video fragments from the archive where the searched person is present as search results.

3.2.9 Number Plate Recognition

Axxon Next also includes an algorithm for recognizing vehicle number plates. The recognized number plates are saved to a database and matched with a video archive of several cameras. If a number plate contains similar characters, the system generates several hypotheses during the recognition. This increases the probability of a successful search for a particular number in a generated database.

3.2.10 Receiving Events from External Systems

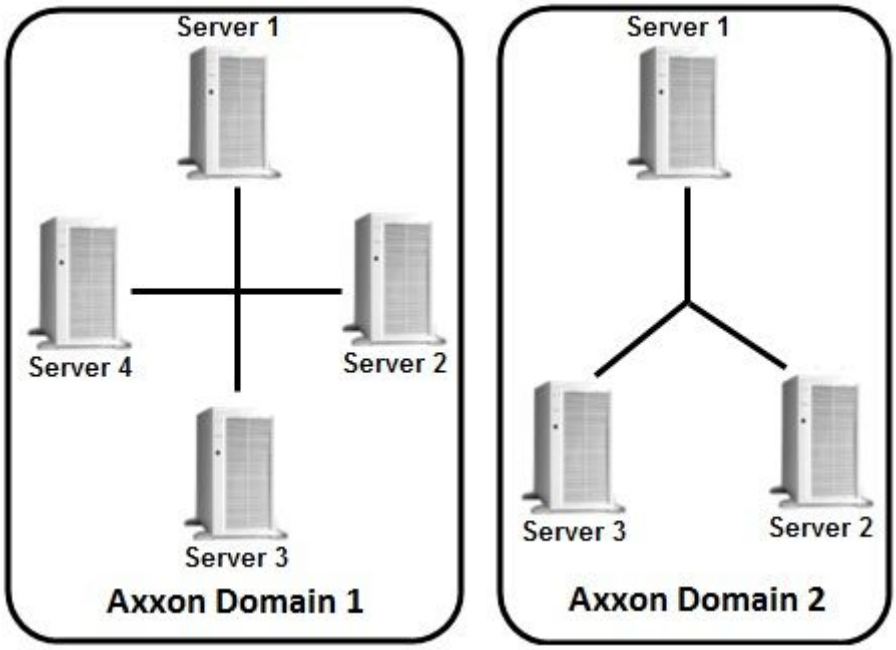
Axxon Next includes a new feature set that is capable of receiving events from various external devices and systems — POS terminals, access control units, external software, etc.

3.3 Functions of the Distributed Security System

You can create a distributed system within an Axxon Domain on Axxon Next.

Axxon Domain – a selected group of computers on which the server configuration of the *Axxon Next* software package is installed. Linking the servers in a group makes it possible to set up interaction between them, thus organizing a distributed system.

Servers are interoperable only if they belong to the same Axxon domain. At the same time, each Server of the domain operates independently and has its own DB.



A distributed security system based on the Axxon Next software package offers the user the following functional capabilities:

1. Viewing and manual processing of video and audio data from several servers on one client
2. Controlling video cameras connected to various servers from one client
3. Configuring all servers of the distributed system on one client
4. Execution of automatic responses when detection tools are triggered (audio notification, triggering of relays, SMS and e-mail notification, etc.) within the distributed system.

Note

If a Server is not accessible by NetBiosName or some TCP and UDP ports are closed, it is possible to build a distributed security system on a virtual private network (VPN). For example, with the help of OpenVPN. Detailed information on OpenVPN and examples of virtual private network configuration are given in the official documentation.
Suppose, the Server relies on a defined port range (see Installation), and you want to set up a surveillance system based on several networks. You do not have to use VPN in that case. Use port forwarding instead.

Axxon Domain configuration is described in detail in the section titled Configuring Axxon domains.

3.4 Network Topologies of the Axxon Next Software Package

Axxon Next supports both decentralized are star network topology.

The decentralized architecture better suits smaller systems.

The star architecture is more practical for creating large centrally monitored distributed systems where no local monitoring is required on remote sites.

Attention!

If your system is based on star topology, please take into account the following:

1. In a failover (see General information about a failover system) and non-failover systems, the Client must have access to all Servers (located centrally).
2. In a failover system, all Manager Servers must have access to each other (located centrally).

3.5 Specifications of the Axxon Next Software Package

Security systems based on the Axxon Next software package have the following primary characteristics.

Characteristics	Value
Number of servers in the distributed system	Unlimited
Number of clients which support simultaneous connection to the server	Unlimited
Number of servers which simultaneously transmit video images to a client	Unlimited
Number of video capture channels for "live video" processing on one Server	Unlimited
Number of detection tools per camera	Unlimited
Number of simultaneously processed signals coming from microphones	Unlimited
Number of audio output channels (to speakers, headphones, etc.)	depends on the sound card used for playback
Number of PTZ devices used	Unlimited
Number of event sources (POS devices)	Unlimited
Number of user roles and users	Unlimited
Number of objects simultaneously tracked by the Object tracker	up to 25
Number of license plate recognition channels	Is determined by the license; there is no upper limit
Number of face recognition channels	Is determined by the license; there is no upper limit
Number of mobile clients or Web clients connections	Unlimited
Number of video walls	Unlimited
Number of maps	Unlimited
Analog video camera support	yes (through video capture cards)
IP device support	IP cameras and IP video servers This list is continuously expanding: support for new hardware is added through updates to Axxon Driver Pack
CPU support	32-bit (x86), 64-bit (x64)
Number of archives in the system	Unlimited
Maximum archive size	Unlimited
Video compression algorithms	MJPEG, MPEG-2, MPEG-4, MxPEG, H.264, H.264+, H.265, H.265+, Hik264 (only for x86)
Audio compression algorithms	PCM, ADPCM, g711, g726, aac, mp2
Available video image resolutions	resolutions supported by video cameras

Characteristics	Value
Support for embedded video camera analytics	yes
Support for touchscreens	yes

3.6 Implementation Requirements for the Axxon Next Software Package

3.6.1 Limitations of the Axxon Next Software Package

When working with Axxon Next, the user must keep in mind the limitations that the developer has imposed on the system in order to ensure its operability.

No.	Limitation
1	To work with Axxon Next software the following requirements for OpenGL are to be fulfilled: 1. version 2.0 and higher; 2. Availability the **ARB_vertex_program**, **GL_EXT_blend_func_separate**, **GL_ARB_framebuffer_object** extensions. Extensions availability can be checked using the OpenGL Extension Viewer program (download). This program also contains a large database of data on OpenGL support in video cards of various vendors.
2	Axxon Next Client cannot be started if the scale of all items on the screen (DPI) is over 100%. You may have issues with Axxon Next VMS if the screen resolution is set lower than 1280*960 pixels.
3	The Server and Client must be of the same version. If not, Axxon Next VMS may have issues.
4	For correct operation of Axxon Next VMS, the OS should use the UTF-8 locale.
5	Downgrade to a previous version of Axxon Next is not allowed.
6	In one LAN, two Servers with the same name are not allowed, even if they belong to different Axxon domains.
7	Maximum video frame rate in the Client is 50 fps.
8	To install Axxon Next, you must log in to Windows as an administrator.
9	For proper installation of Axxon Next, there should be no spaces at the beginning of the name of the folder which contains the installer.
10	For correct and full-feature operation of *Axxon Next* software, the system must not limit network activity between all Servers and Clients. TCP and UDP access to these ports should be enabled. Otherwise, access to all ports should be allowed in the system. For the Client to perform properly, disable unnecessary network interfaces on the Server. If you want the Server to work with only one network interface, set its gateway and mask in the network settings utility (see Network settings utility).
11	Time must be synchronized among all computers in the system (to be configured by the user).
12	If you have edge storage enabled in the system, synchronization between the server and the IP device is necessary (see The Embedded storage object). Lack of synchronization may lead to bad DB entries of events detected on the edge device.

No.	Limitation
13	Before installing Axxon Next, make sure the video card drivers on the computer are fully up to date.
14	NetBIOS name of a PC must match the following requirements: • contains only Latin, numerical and "-" characters; • does not exceed 15 characters in length.
15	The face detection tool requires a CPU supporting SSE4.2, FMA3 or AVX2.0 instruction set.
16	The Client cannot be started on a remote desktop through the Remote Desktop Connection utility built into Windows.
17	If a computer is linked to an Active Directory domain, one of the following conditions must be met to enable disk access: 1. Access control lists must contain only local or built-in groups and users. 2. Create an **AxxonFileBrowser** user in the domain and add it to the **Users** group (see Installation step 8). This behavior is typical only of file systems that have access permissions (for example, NTFS).
18	Hibernation mode and sleep mode are not supported. Before you switch the computer to these modes, stop the Server (see Limitations of the Axxon Next Software Package).

3.6.2 Operating system requirements

Axxon Next VMS operates properly when the operating system is up-to-date.

OS version	Supported edition	Note	
Windows 7 SP1 (x86, x64)	Starter (x86)	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (2GB of main memory, 1 physical processor, 1 monitor) – see http://www.microsoft.com.	Stretch cards are supported in 32-bit version only.
	Home Basic	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (1 physical processor) – see http://www.microsoft.com.	
	Home Premium	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (1 physical processor) – see http://www.microsoft.com.	
	Professional	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Enterprise	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Ultimate	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	

OS version	Supported edition	Note	
Windows 8 (x86, x64)	Core	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Pro	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Enterprise	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
Windows Server 2012 (x64)	Foundation	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (1 physical processor).	Full Installation type is supported.Server Core Installation type is not supported.
	Essentials	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (2 physical processors).	
	Standard	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Datacenter	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
Windows Server 2012 R2 (x64)	Essentials	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (2 physical processors).	Full Installation type is supported.Server Core Installation type is not supported.
	Standard	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Datacenter	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
Windows Server 2016 (x64)	Essentials	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). Restrictions, posed by OS edition (2 physical processors).	Full Installation type is supported. Server Core Installation type is not supported.
	Standard	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
	Datacenter	Neural analytics not applicable (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).	
Windows 10 (x86, x64)	Pro	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Enterprise	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Education	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Home Edition	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	

OS version	Supported edition	Note	
Windows 10 IoT (x86, x64)	Enterprise	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	Server Core Installation type is not supported.
	Enterprise LTSB 2016	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Enterprise LTSC 2019	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
Windows Server 2019 (x64)	Essentials	Restrictions, posed by OS edition (2 physical processors)	Full Installation type is supported. Server Core Installation type is not supported.
	Standard	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Datacenter	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
Windows 11 (x86, x64)	Home	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	Full Installation type is supported. Server Core Installation type is not supported. **Attention!** Windows 11 (x86, x64) is supported in *Axxon Next* starting from version 4.5.10 along with DetectorPack 3.7.4.
	Pro	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Education	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Pro Education	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Pro for Workstations	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Enterprise	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
Windows Server 2022 (x64)	Standard	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	Full Installation type is supported. Server Core Installation type is not supported. **Attention!** Windows Server 2022 (x64) is supported in *Axxon Next* starting from version 4.5.10 along with DetectorPack 3.7.4.
	Essentials	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Datacenter	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
	Azure Datacenter	OS edition, enabling to use all realized product features.	
Debian 9 (x64) Debian 10 (x64) Ubuntu 18 (x64) Ubuntu 19 (x64) Ubuntu 20 (x64)	-	Appendix 8. Configuring and operating the Axxon Next in Linux OS	

3.6.3 Disk storage subsystem requirements

On page:

- General requirements
- Storage requirements
  - Minimum requirements
  - Size of archives
  - Database of the system log
  - Metadata database
  - Self-diagnostics service

3.6.3.1 General requirements

For Axxon Next VMS operation, the disk subsystem must match the following requirements:

1. The device must have no less IOPS the Axxon Next VMS.
   The Axxon Next VMS records video footage to archive volumes in 4MB blocks with a 10 second interval. If the most recent block is not full after 10 seconds, it will be filled up later.
   Similarly, footage is played back in blocks (except for re-indexation, see the utility for archive management Console utility for working with archives).
   This is how you can estimate the IOPS value for the Axxon Next VMS.

	If average bitrate per camera is less than 3.6 Mbps	**If average bitrate per camera exceeds 3.6 Mbps**
IOPS during archive recording Archive recording includes both data input (writing) and output (reading) operations	IOPS (writing) = 0,29 * N IOPS (reading) = 0,035 * M	IOPS (writing) = 0,065 * M IOPS (reading) = 0,035 * M
IOPS during archive playback Archive playback includes only output (reading) operations	IOPS (reading) = 0,035 * R * S	
IOPS during simultaneous recording and playback	IOPS (writing) = 0,29 * N IOPS (reading) = 0,035 * M + 0,035 * R * S	IOPS (writing) = 0,065 * M IOPS (reading) = 0,035 * M + 0,035 * R * S

   where
   - N is the number of camera channels being recorded;
   - M is the cumulative bitrate over all camera channels being recorded, in Mbps;
   - R is the cumulative bitrate over all camera channels being played back at normal speed (1x), in Mbps;
   - S is the playback speed.

2. If you use RAID storage, please specify write-back policy for writing to cash memory.

3.6.3.2 Storage requirements

Size of disk subsystem will be calculated on the basis of frame resolution and compression, rate of video signal frames per second, nuMBer of cameras recording events to the hard drives and other recording parameters.

3.6.3.2.1 Minimum requirements

You need at least 10 GB of free disk space for Windows OS and 5 GB for Linux OS to install the *Axxon Next VMS* package in a **Server and Client** configuration.

Please see the storage calculations below, taking into account space needed for video footage, databases and system logs.

3.6.3.2.2 Size of archives

Size of disk subsystem can be calculated by formula:

Size of Disk subsystem (MB) = **Time of storing an archive** (days) x **Cameras nuMBer** x **Rate of recording** (fps) x3,51 x **Time of guaranteed recording from a camera** (h / day) x **Average frame size** (KB),

where **Time of storing an archive** is the required time of storing an archive from one camera, days;

Cameras nuMBer is the nuMBer of cameras recording to the archive;

Rate of recording is the frame rate of recording to the archive, frames per second;

3,51 = (60 sec in min x 60 min in hour)/(1024 KB in MB) – is the coefficient used for KB/s-MB/h conversion,

Time of guaranteed recording from a camera is the nuMBer of hours of guaranteed recording from one camera to the archive per day,

Average frame size is the average size of the camera frame, kilobytes.

Note

Average frame size for 640x480 resolution is:

Video codec	Average frame size
H.264	from 8 KB to 17 KB
MPEG4	from 8 KB to 35 KB
MJPEG	from 23 KB to 60 KB

Average frame size may vary over a wide range depending on the vendor, model and settings of the camera and video image complexity

Note

To calculate the frame size one can use the ratio, that while increasing vertical or horizontal resolution two times, the average frame size will be increased four times (this rule is a relative one and can be applied only to some cameras' models)

Examples of calculating a size of disk subsystem (without size of syslog database) are presented below.

Recording parameters	Calculating results
4 cameras with 25 fps and 640x480 resolution, guaranteed recording of 24 hours per day during one week	H.264: from 500 GB to 1 TB MPEG4: from 500 GB to 2 TB MJPEG: from 1.3 TB to 3.5 TB
16 cameras with 12 fps and 640x480 resolution, guaranteed recording of 12 hours per day during one week	H.264: from 500 GB to 1 TB MPEG4: from 500 GB to 2 TB MJPEG: from 1.3 TB to 3.5 TB
4 cameras with 25 fps and 1280x960 resolution, guaranteed recording of 24 hours per day during one week	H.264: from 2 TB to 4 TB MPEG4: from 2 TB to 8 TB MJPEG: from 5.3 TB to 14 TB

3.6.3.2.3 Database of the system log

The size of syslog database is to be taken into account when the size of disk subsystem is calculated. Estimated size of syslog database is calculated by formulas:

The capacity of the system log database (low detection activity) = D * T * (0.04 GB / day);

The capacity of the system log database (average detection activity) = D * T * (0.12 GB / day);

The capacity of the system log database (high detection activity) = D * T * (0.48 GB / day);

where **D** is the total nuMBer of detectors created in system,

T is the estimated duration of syslog storage, days.

3.6.3.2.4 **Metadata database**

The following formulas can help to determine the required disk size for the metadata database:

Size of metadata database = **N**×**T**×(0,5GB / day)– sufficient disk size;

Size of metadata database = **N**×**T**×(1GB / day)– sufficient disk size plus reserve space;

Size of metadata database = **N**×**T**×(5GB / day)– sufficient disk size plus a large reserve.

N equals the nuMBer of video cameras in the system actively recording metadata; **T** equals the period of time (nuMBer of days) that metadata will be stored. By default, T = 30 days.

If you have less than 15 GB of free disk space, the metadata DB is overwritten - new data records over the oldest data records.

3.6.3.2.5 Self-diagnostics service

When calculating disk subsystem capacity, please note that self-diagnostics service may generate up to 100 Mbytes of data per day.

The service's internal database retention time is limited to 7 days, and its size is limited to 512 Mbytes.

3.6.4 Hardware requirements

3.6.4.1 General hardware requirements

In the current implementation, *Axxon Next* software package is intended for use with IBM compatible PCs.

The required hardware configuration (motherboard, CPU, and hard disk) can be determined with the help of the AxxonSoft calculator.

> **Attention!**
>
> If *Axxon Next* is installed on a computer with two processors, it is recommended to disable the Hyper-threading.

3.6.4.1.1 Minimal RAM requirements

Installation type	**Minimal amount of RAM**
Client	2GB
Server and Client, if the Client is not used	2GB
Server and Client	4GB

If you increase RAM speed by using memory with a higher frequency or using memory in dual-channel (or more) mode, you will reduce CPU usage and boost the performance of *Axxon Next*.

3.6.4.1.2 Minimum and recommended requirements for graphics cards

Minimum and recommended requirements for graphics cards are given below:

Recommended requirements	GPU: NVIDIA: GeForce 1030 1GB or higher IGP: Intel HD Graphics 560 or higher

Minimum requirements	GPU NVIDIA: GeForce 7300LE / GeForce 200 or higher (512MB) GPU AMD: Radeon HD 5000, Radeon HD 6000 or higher. IGP: Intel HD Graphics 530 OpenGL version 2.0 Availability the **ARB_vertex_program**, **GL_EXT_blend_func_separate**, **GL_ARB_framebuffer_object** extension for OpenGL

Attention!

We recommend that you use the latest drivers for both Integrated (on-board) and Dedicated (shared) Graphics Cards .

Note

Extensions availability can be checked using the OpenGL Extension Viewer program (download).

3.6.4.2 Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

The hardware requirements for the neural analytics (see General information on Neural Analytics) are:

1. Some NVIDIA SDK specific features allow the neural analytics to work only on Windows Server 2019 or Windows 10.
2. For neural analytics operation, you may use CPU, GPU NVIDIA, VPU (Intel NCS, Intel HDDL).

   Note

   To connect Intel NCS, insert the device into a USB port and make sure that it is recognized by Windows OS as a USB device with one of the following names: Movidius, Myriad X, or VSC Loopback Device.
   Intel NCS may be used with any PC that meets *Axxon Next* hardware requirements (see Hardware requirements).

   Attention!

   We do not recommend using more than one Intel NCS device per Server.
   You can use several Intel HDDL devices on the Server if they have the same revisions.

   Attention!

   For Intel HDDL to work correctly with AMD processors, pre-install the OpenVINO ™ toolkit version 2019.3.379 (see https://docs.openvinotoolkit.org/latest/openvino_docs_install_guides_installing_openvino_windows.html).

3. If the detection tool uses CPU or Intel GPU resources, the following requirements should be met:
   a. supported CPUs:
      i. 6th-10th Generation Intel® Core™ processors;

         Attention!

         When using a CPU lower than 6th Generation Intel® Core™ processors, the operation of the detection tools is not guaranteed.

      ii. Intel® Xeon® v5 family;
      iii. Intel® Xeon® v6 family;
      iv. Intel® Movidius™ Neural Compute Stick;
      v. Intel® Neural Compute Stick 2;
      vi. Intel® Vision Accelerator Design with Intel® Movidius™ VPUs;
   b. OpenVino should support the Intel CPU in use (see https://software.intel.com/content/www/us/en/develop/tools/openvino-toolkit/system-requirements.html).
   c. CPU should support the AVX2 or AVX512 instruction set (see https://ark.intel.com/content/www/us/en/ark/search/featurefilter.html?productType=873&1_Filter-InstructionSetExtensions=3533&1_Filter-Family=595).

4. Video card: NVIDIA GeForce 1050 Ti or higher. Requirements:
    a. at least 2 GB of memory;
    b. Compute Capability 3.5 - 8.6.

> **Note**
>
> You can check Compute Capability GPU version on the manufacturer's website.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you use NVIDIA graphics cards, make sure to download the latest drivers from the manufacturer's website.

When using a video card, a single neural network requires 500 MB of video memory, except for the neural network for face detection (see Hardware requirements for face detection) and license plate recognition (RR) (see Hardware requirements for License plate recognition (RR)). For example: a neural fire detection tool and a neural smoke detection tool, both with unlimited number of channels, require a 1 GB graphics card or higher. You can use multiple video cards in your system.

> **Attention!**
>
> For correct operation of each detection tool, video image should match a specified set of requirements. Requirements for each detection tool are listed in corresponding sections (see Configuring detection tools).

3.6.4.3 Hardware requirements for GPU based video decoding

If detection tools use GPU decoded video (see Configuring detection tools), make sure the following hardware requirements are met:

1. NVIDIA's graphics cards:
    a. Compute Capability 3.5 and above.

> **Note**
>
> You can check the GPU's Compute Capability version on the manufacturer's website.

    b. Support for CUDA 10.2 or higher.
    c. Support for the required codec in NVDEC (see https://developer.nvidia.com/video-encode-and-decode-gpu-support-matrix-new).

> **Attention!**
>
> Video can be decoded on 2 Nvidia GPU at a time.

2. For Intel embedded GPUs:
    a. 6th generation CPU or higher.
    b. Support for the required codec in Quick Sync Video.

3.6.4.4 Hardware requirements for License plate recognition (RR)

If license plate recognition (RR) runs on GPU, make sure the following hardware requirements are met:

1. The GPU is an NVIDIA with at least 1.4 GB of video memory.
2. Compute Capability from 3.5 to 7.5 inclusive.

> **Note**
>
> You can check Compute Capability GPU version on the manufacturer's website.

3. NVIDIA driver version 450.36.06 or higher.
4. CPUs with the AVX2 instruction set support, which are listed here.

3.6.4.5 Hardware requirements for face detection

The face detection tool requires a CPU supporting SSE4.2, FMA3 or AVX2.0 instruction set.

If face recognition runs on GPU, make sure the following hardware requirements are met:

1. The GPU is an NVIDIA with at least 6 GB of video memory.
2. Compute Capability 6.0 or higher.

   > **Note**
   >
   > You can check Compute Capability GPU version on the manufacturer's website.

3. NVIDIA driver version is 418.39 or higher.

3.6.4.6 Hardware requirements for License plate recognition (VT)

The VT automatic number plate recognition tool runs on the following processors: CPU, Intel GPU, VPU (IntelNCS).

For NVIDIA GPUs:

> **Attention!**
>
> GPUs with NVIDIA Ampere architecture are not supported.

1. Compute Capability 3.5 and higher.

   > **Note**
   >
   > You can check Compute Capability GPU version on the manufacturer's website.

2. Support for CUDA 10.2 or higher.

You can find the list of the supported devices on the OpenVINO™ toolkit page.

3.6.5 TCP/IP Network Bandwidth Requirements

Network bandwidth is a limiting factor in distributed system performance. The bulk of the information streamed over the network is video data. For example, the data flow (video stream) from remote cameras, such as used to monitor ATMs, is sent via communication channels.

> **Attention!**
>
> The minimum bit rate through the communication channel (network bandwidth consumption / goodput) for the Axxon Next VMS, should be at least **2 Mbit/s**.

To determine the required TCP/IP network bandwidth for video transmission from IP devices and some video capture cards, we recommend you to use Axxon Platform Calculator (check the **Total bitrate from ip devices (Mbit/s)** parameter).

3.6.6 BIOS configuration requirements

Axxon Next suite performance (namely, video decoding) is sensitive to CPU frequency. The higher the frequency, the better will be *Axxon Next* performance on this platform.

Modern computers have the power saving mode enabled in BIOS by default. Using this mode in multiprocessor systems results in incomplete CPU core utilization and decreases the performance of an input/output subsystem.

To increase *Axxon Next* suite performance, configure the computer BIOS as follows:

1. Disable all Enhanced Intel SpeedStep (EIST) technologies.
2. Disable power saving modes: select options providing maximum performance.
3. Disable green technologies such as Energy Saving, Turbo Boost, SmartThrottling.

Attention!

Different motherboard manufacturers use different names for these technologies. Therefore, for every particular motherboard model you must find the technology name in the documentation for this model.

3.6.7 Running Axxon Next VMS in Virtual Machines

The *Axxon Next VMS* can be run in the following virtual machines:

- VirtualBox (all versions);
- VMWare (all versions);
- HyperV (all versions).

Attention!

To run the Client, 3D acceleration must be enabled.

Note

The operating system in a virtual machine must meet the general requirements.
If you use VirtualBox on Windows 7 SP1 and in HyperV, you won't be able to access a Guardant USB key from the guest system.
In HyperV, you can use third-party utilities (for example, USB Network Gate) instead.

3.7 Interface of the Axxon Next Software Package

Axxon Next Client has 2 basic interfaces: Layouts and Settings .

To switch the two, click the tabs at the top of the screen.

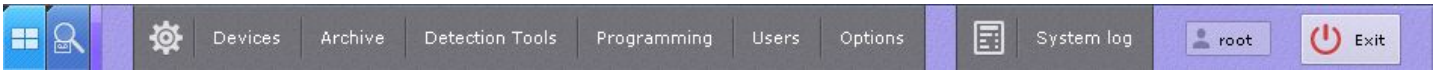
Note

If there are no cameras in VMS, the tab is not available.

Attention!

You can configure access to any given tab and buttons in the top panel individually for each user role (see Configuring user permissions).

When you are configuring VMS, the top panel shows tabs with different groups of settings, the button for switching to the system log, current user name and the Quit button.



When you select **Server** or any child object in the **Hardware**, **Archive** or **Detection Tools** tabs, the upper panel shows the current CPU and network load.

In the Layouts interface in the upper pane, you see the following elements:

1. Camera search panel.
2. System time.
3. Context menu.
4. Video surveillance mode selection tabs.
5. Video wall management panel.
6. Monitor management panel.
7. Layouts panel.
8. Macro menu.
9. Layout scaling buttons.

In the Layouts and Search interface, you can hide the top panel. To do this, click the button in the top right corner. To show the top panel, hover over it with the pointer.

> **Note**
>
> To pin the top panel, click the button.

In Full Screen (see Configuring the Client screen mode (full screen or window)), to collapse the client window, click the button.

3.8 Ports used by the Axxon Next Software Package

Ports	Changeable	Installation type	Process	Open the port*
20040 (Windows, Linux) 20041 (Windows, Linux) 20042 (Linux) 20108 (Windows, Linux)	No	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	Self-diagnostics service	Not required
20109	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	gRPC API (see Configuring the Server ports)	Required
20110	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	PostgreSQL database (see Configuring the Server ports)	Required
20111-20210	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	Server (see Installation, Network settings utility)	Required
80 (Windows) 8000 (Linux)	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	Web server (see Configuring the web server)	If necessary + HTTPS port 443
554 (Windows) 50554 (Linux)	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	RTSP server (see Configuring an RTSP Server)	Not required
8080	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	Virtual input (see Configure Virtual Inputs)	Required

Ports	Changeable	Installation type	Process	Open the port*
8888	No	Server and Client Failover Server and Client Client	Client HTTP API (see Client HTTP API)	Not required
4000 4646-4648 8300-8302 8500 8600	No	Failover Server and Client	Failover (see Ports used by the failover system)	Required
27000-30000	Yes	Server and Client Failover Server and Client	Server (see Installation, Network settings utility)	Firewall is required, but port forwarding under NAT is not required

* in a configuration including several Servers in firewalled LANs, or port forwarding on the router under NAT environment.

3.9 Requirements for Personnel Quantity and Qualifications

The following roles have been defined for operating the Axxon Next software package:

1. Security system administrator
2. Security system operator

In special cases, one person can perform the functions of both the administrator and the operator.

The main duties of the administrator are to:

1. Update, configure, and monitor the operability of the security system's hardware
2. Install, update, configure, and monitor the operability of basic and system software
3. Install, configure, and monitor software applications
4. Manage user accounts (this duty can be carried out by a user entrusted with system administrator permissions).

The administrator must have the skills necessary for network configuration, including routing and firewall, as well as NetBIOS, DNS, and NTP network services.

Besides, the administrator must have high qualifications and practical experience installing, configuring, and administering the software and hardware employed in the software package.

The software package is structured so that all accessible functionality can be managed by one administrator or administration responsibilities can be divided among several users.

The main duties of an operator are to:

1. Work with the software's GUI (graphical user interface)
2. Optimize the performance of the personal computer to carry out tasks using the functionality provided in the software package
3. Create roles and users in the system (if the user has been granted the appropriate permissions)

The system operator must have experience with, and be a qualified user of, PCs running Microsoft Windows and must be able to easily perform basic operations.

4 Installing the Axxon Next Software Package

4.1 Installing equipment

4.1.1 Types of Devices Used

An IP device is the source of the video signal (video data) for the Axxon Next software.

> **Note**
>
> You can connect analog video cameras to Axxon Next via video capture cards, which the software defines as IP devices.

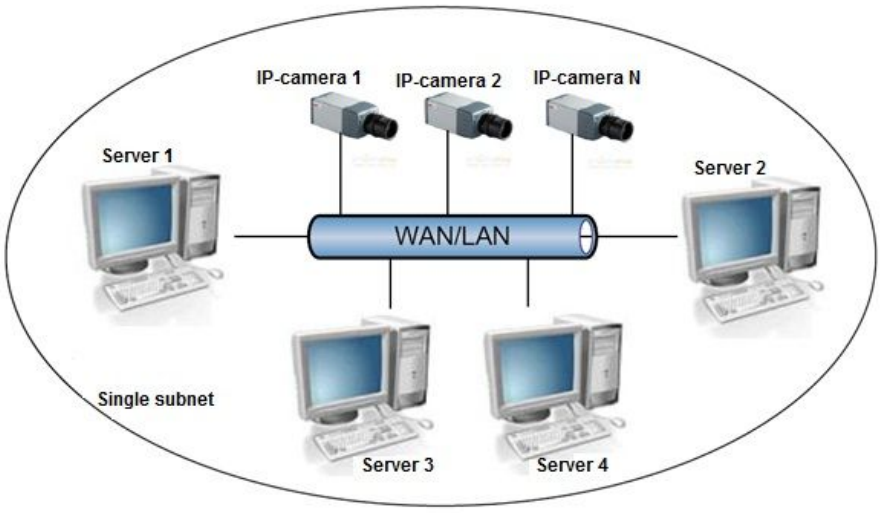
The following types of equipment are IP video and audio surveillance devices:

1. IP video cameras.
2. Various types of IP video servers.

IP video servers which use analog video cameras directly connected to them, digitize the analog video signal, and transmit it to users via TCP/IP. When working with analog video cameras connected to IP video servers, users can utilize the same video image viewing and transmission functions as with IP video cameras.

4.1.2 Connecting IP Devices

To work with IP devices, you need to connect the Axxon Next server to the local network where the required IP devices are enabled.



To ensure support for IP devices on an external network:

- The IP devices must have an external static IP address.
- The necessary ports on the network equipment must be opened.

> **Attention!**
>
> If these requirements are met, IP devices should be properly handled. However, correct functioning is not guaranteed

Based on the video signal coming in from the IP device, an assessment is made of the guarded location and the system responds to events registered for that location. The content and quality of the obtained video information depends on how the IP device is installed and configured. There are a number of rules that must be followed to obtain a high-quality video signal. In particular, high-quality peripheral equipment (hubs/routers) must be used; we advise against use of Home and Office-class devices, which are not intended for use in such security systems.

> **Note**
>
> IP devices connected to such equipment will transmit a video stream with an unacceptably long delay (from 1.5 to 3 seconds per frame)

Detailed information about creating a local network and connecting IP equipment to it is presented in the corresponding reference documents.

4.1.3 Configuring IP Devices in Windows

IP devices can be configured in Windows by using the following software:

1. Software included with the IP device This software is used to accomplish the following tasks:
    a. Searching for network devices connected to the local network
    b. Preliminary IP address assignment (without account of routing)

    > **Attention!**
    >
    > Without assigning preliminary IP addresses to the devices, it is not possible to access their Web interface

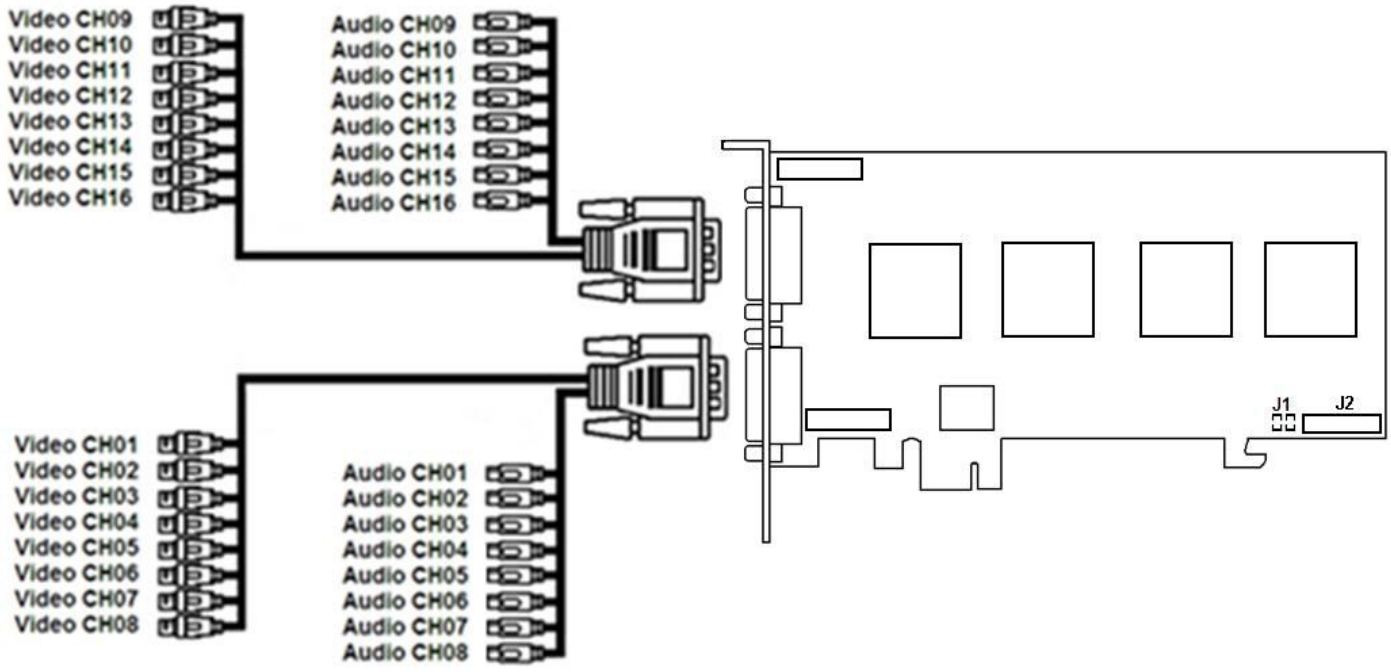
2. Web interface of the IP device. This interface is used to accomplish the following tasks:
    a. Configuring the IP devices with consideration for routing
    b. Configuring modes for the IP devices to work with video and audio signals
    c. Viewing video images coming in from IP devices in standard Web browser mode

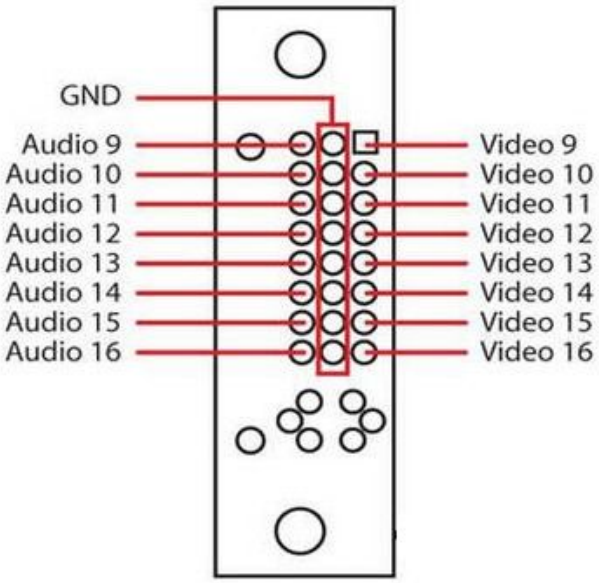
Configuration of IP devices in Windows is described in detail in the official reference documentation for the respective devices.

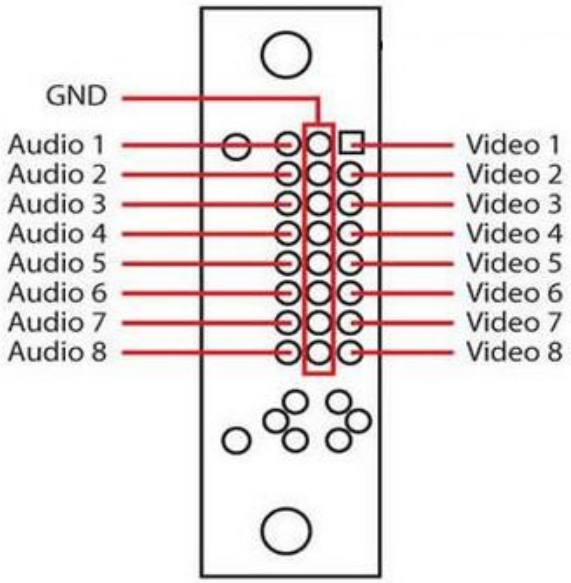
4.1.4 Video capture cards pins

4.1.4.1 WS-216 video capture card pins

WS-216 video capture card has two external DVI-I pins. Video and audio connection is performed with the help of DVI-I/BNC and DVI-I/RCA stubs correspondingly. Simultaneous connection of up to 8 cameras and up to 8 sound sources to one external pin of WS-216 video capture card is possible. The Watchdog cable is connected to the J1 pin. DI/DO card is connected to the J2 pin.





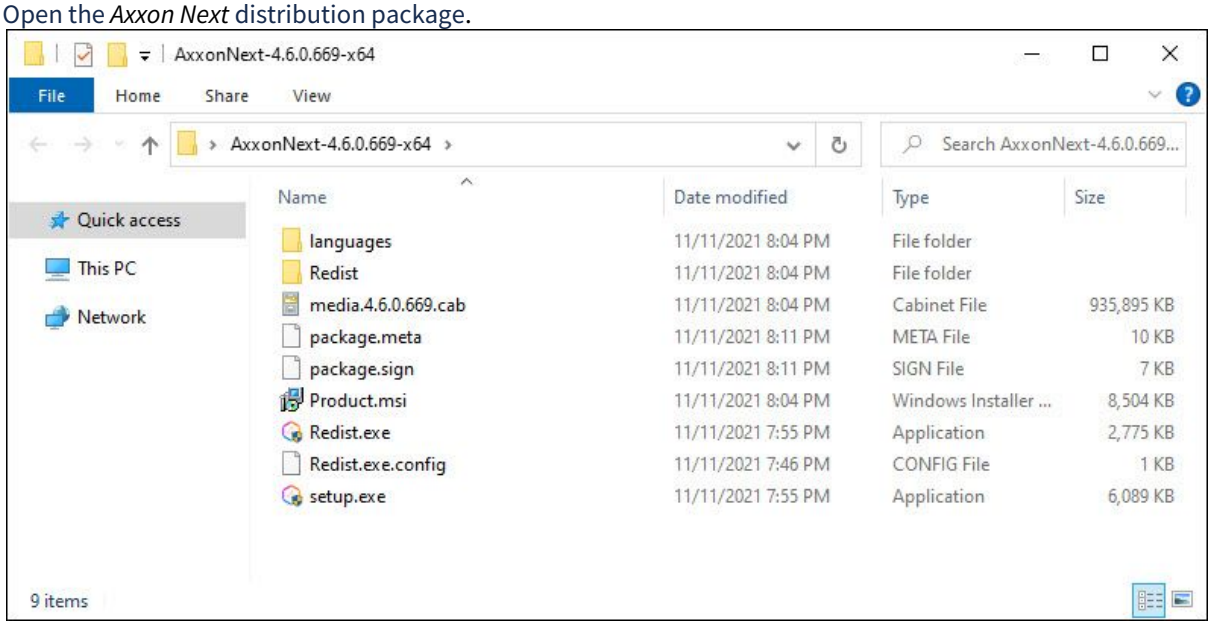


4.2 Installation the Axxon Next Software Package

4.2.1 Installation

To install *Axxon Next*, regardless of the type of installation, it is necessary to perform the following steps:

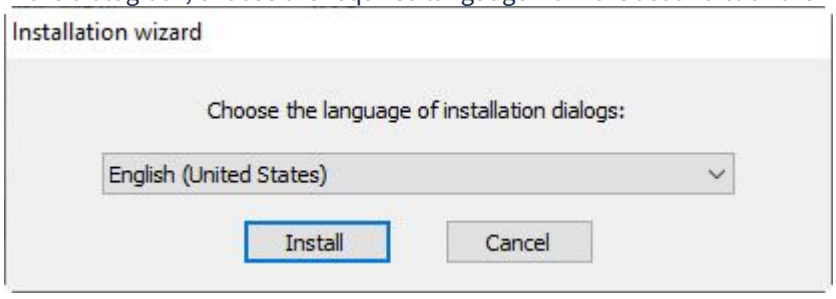
1. Open the *Axxon Next* distribution package.



2. Run the Setup.exe file.

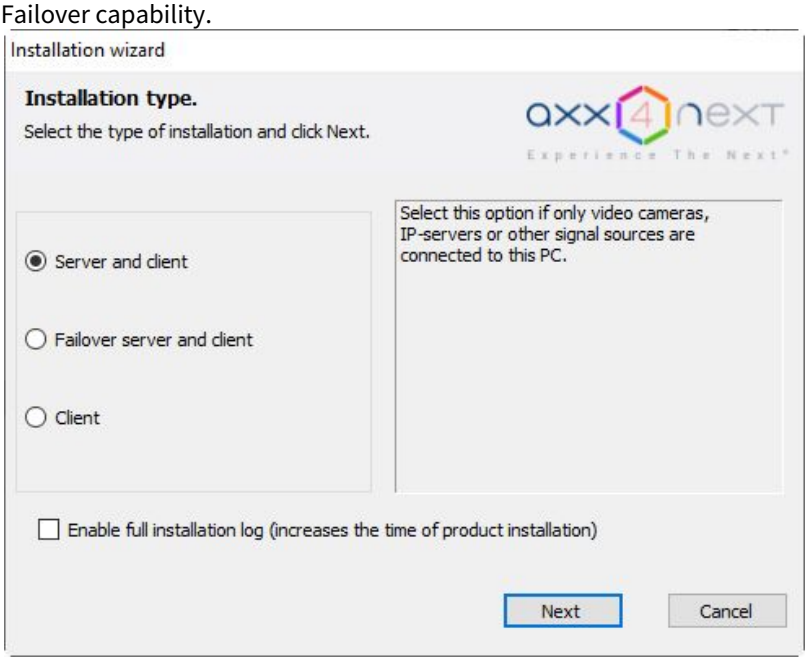
> **Note**
>
> If you cannot run the installation files downloaded from the Internet, do as follows: allow running programs and unsafe files in Windows OS.

3. In the dialog box, choose the required language from the list and click the **Install** button.



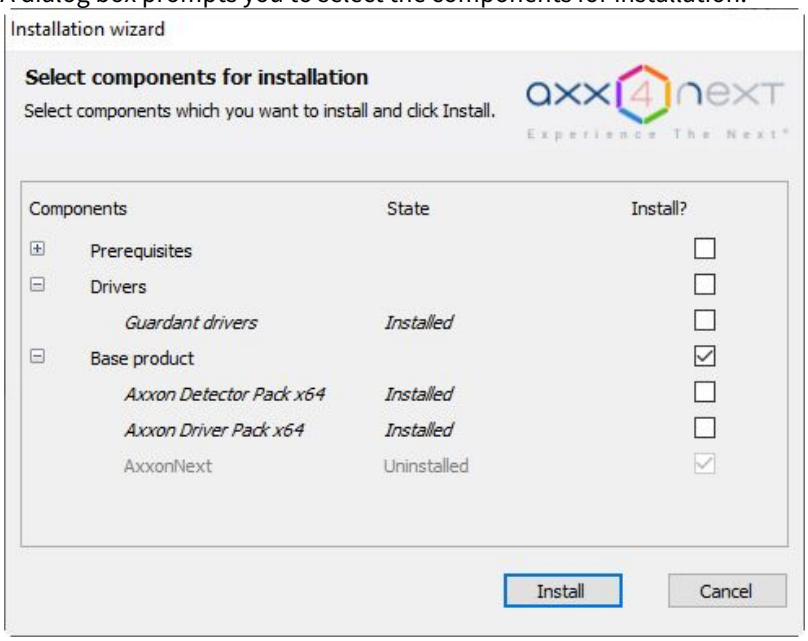
4. Select the *Axxon Next* installation type in the dialog box by clicking the appropriate option button:
   a. **Client** – installs only a client application that allows the user to connect to any Server and perform administration/management/monitoring operations with the protected object based on the permissions granted by the administrator.
   b. **Server and Client** — installs Client and Server services. *Axxon Next* Server:
      i. interacts with devices (cameras, microphones, inputs, outputs, etc.) that constitute a security system;
      ii. writes video footage to archives on system disks; interacts with archives on NAS;
      iii. hosts metadata database;
      iv. employs detection tools to analyze live video;
      v. keeps configurations of the security system, user settings, custom layouts, macros, etc.
   c. **Failover Server and Client**— installs Client and Server services enhanced with the Failover capability. In emergency (power outage, network problems), the Failover technology restores the server configuration on another server. Please refer to the section titled Configuring Failover VMS for details on how to install VMS with the

Failover capability.



> **Note**
>
> We offer a separate installation package containing only the *Axxon Next* Client. To obtain it, contact our technical support. You can download additional packages from the official website.
> This installation package is intended only for Client updates. You cannot install it on a PC where *Axxon Next* was not previously installed.

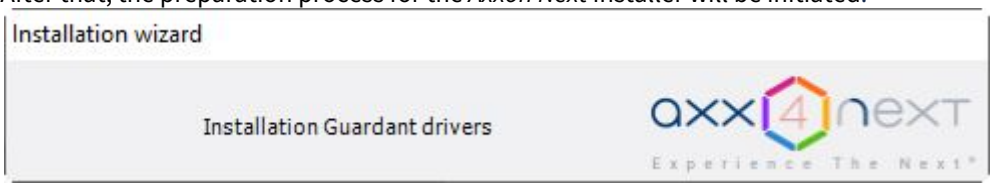
5. To record all installation-related events to a log file, select the **Enable full installation log** checkbox.
6. Click the **Next** button.
   A dialog box prompts you to select the components for installation.



> **Note**
>
> To view the list of installed components, click ⊞.

7. Select checkboxes for the components that you want to install. We recommend installing all components.

8. Click the **Install** button. All selected components will be installed. The installation process may take considerable time. After that, the preparation process for the *Axxon Next* installer will be initiated.



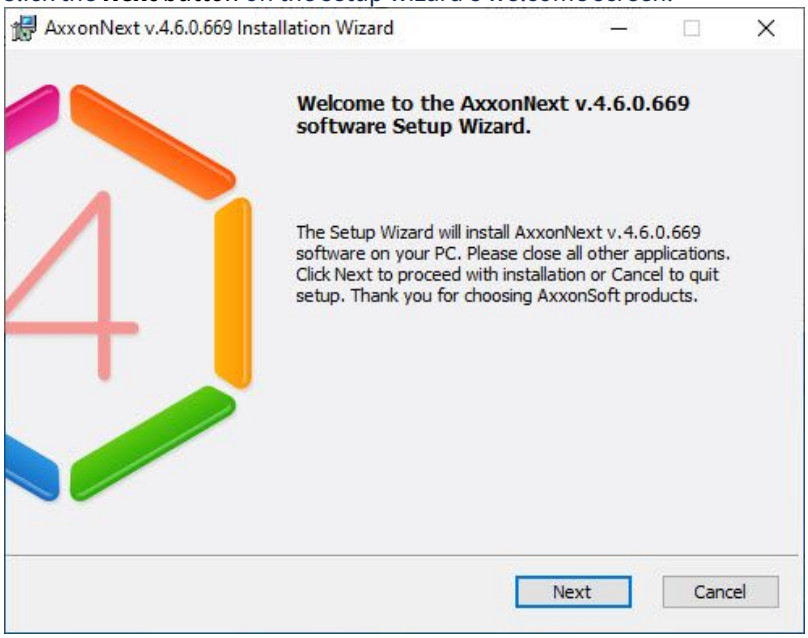
Attention!

Starting from Axxon Driver Pack 3.51, this driver package requires the Windows update KB2999226 to be installed. If this update is missing, you will see a warning. To continue installation, download the upgrade from the official Microsoft website. When installing the upgrade, consider the bitness of your system.

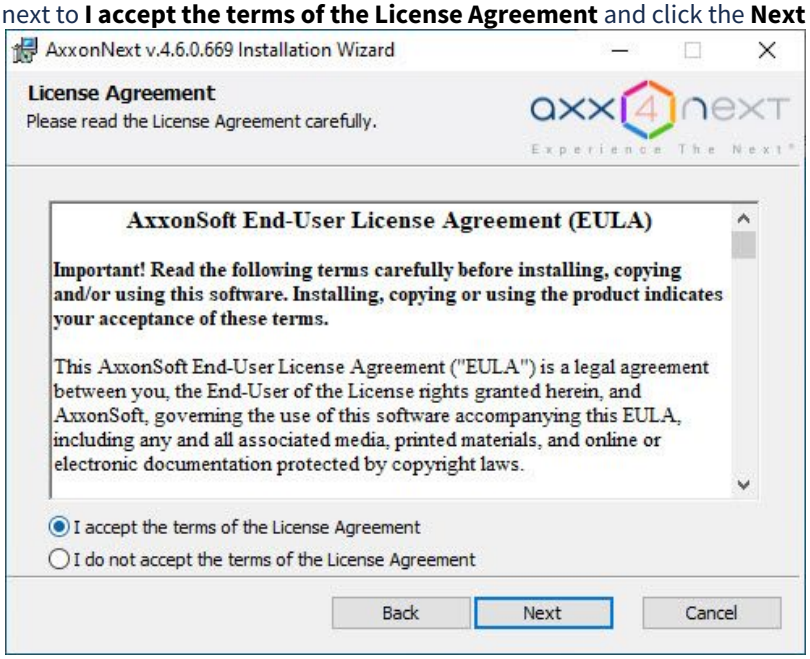
Note

The following required software is installed, if necessary:
1) PostgreSQL 10.8.0 server database. If an older version of PostgreSQL is installed, it is updated to version 10.8.0. A new log database is automatically created (name: ngp, user name: ngp, password: ngp).
By default, PostgreSQL is installed on the system disk. You can change the path using the command line options of the installation file (see Silent install (Quiet Mode)).
2) *.NET Framework 2.0*, *.NET Framework 3.5 SP1* and *.NET Framework 4.0.*
3) Acrobat Reader, which is necessary for exporting in PDF format and printing freeze frames (see Frame export).

9. Click the **Next** button on the setup wizard's welcome screen.



10. To proceed with installation, carefully read and accept the terms of the license agreement by selecting the radio button next to **I accept the terms of the License Agreement** and click the **Next** button.

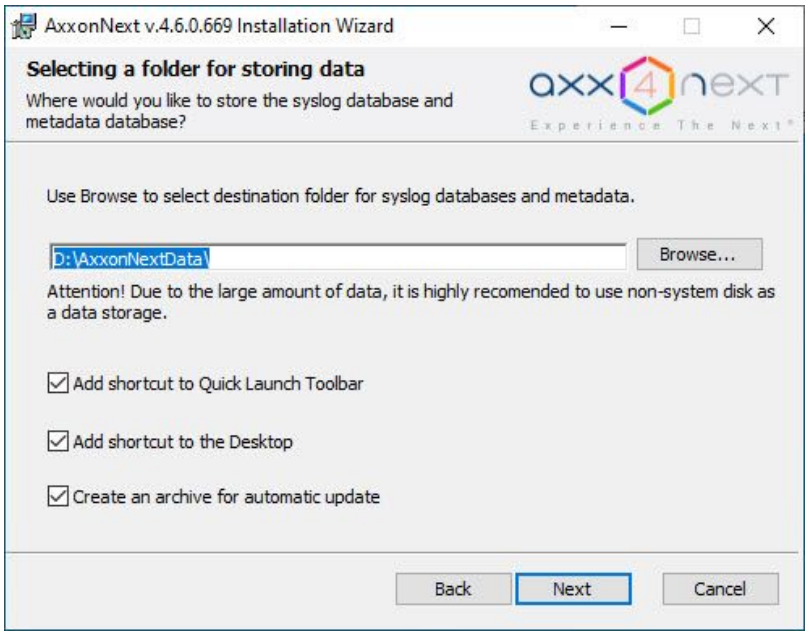


11. Select the folder for storing the log database and the metadata database used in *Axxon Next*, and click the **Next** button.

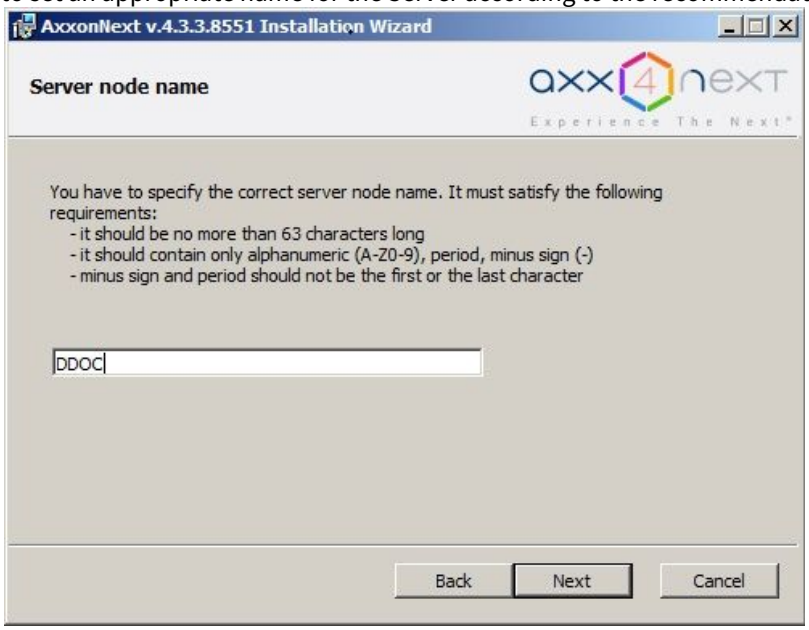
> **Attention!**
>
> The path to the folder for storing the log database and the metadata database should contain only Latin letters and numbers.

> **Attention!**
>
> To reduce the load on the system disk, it is recommended to store the log database and the metadata database on a separate physical disk.
> To calculate the required amount of disk space for the log database, the metadata database and *Axxon Next* software package, you can use the Disk storage subsystem requirements page.

> **Note**
>
> The log database and the metadata database will be located in the X:\AxxonNextData\ folder (in the Data and vmda_db subfolders, respectively), where X is the drive letter with the largest amount of free memory.
> In the future, the metadata database can be placed in the network storage (see Configuring storage of the system log and metadata).

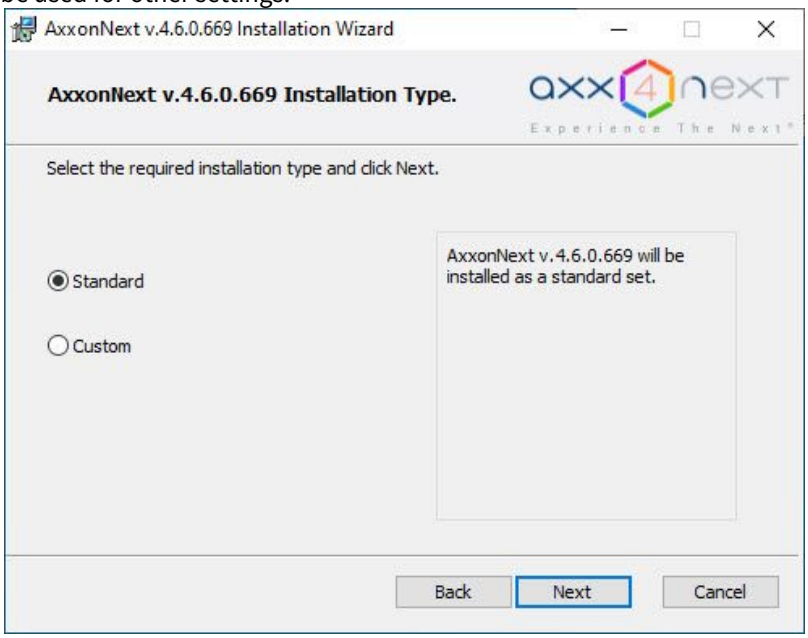


12. By default, shortcuts are added to both quick launch bar and desktop. De-select the corresponding checkboxes if it's not required.
13. Upon connection to the Server, the Client may be automatically updated (see Automatic update of a remote Client). De-select the **Create an archive for automatic update** checkbox if it's not required. In this case, you can save *Axxon Next* VMS installation time but the Clients will not be automatically updated upon their connection to the Server.
14. Click the **Next** button.
15. By default, the *Axxon Next* Server name is identical to the PC name. If the PC name contains forbidden symbols, you have to set an appropriate name for the Server according to the recommendations, and click the **Next** button.



16. In the window that opens, select an installation method and click the **Next** button.
If the **Custom** installation method is selected, you can perform advanced configuration of the installation of *Axxon Next*.
If the **Standard** installation method is selected, you are prompted to select an Axxon domain (Step 25). Default values will

be used for other settings.

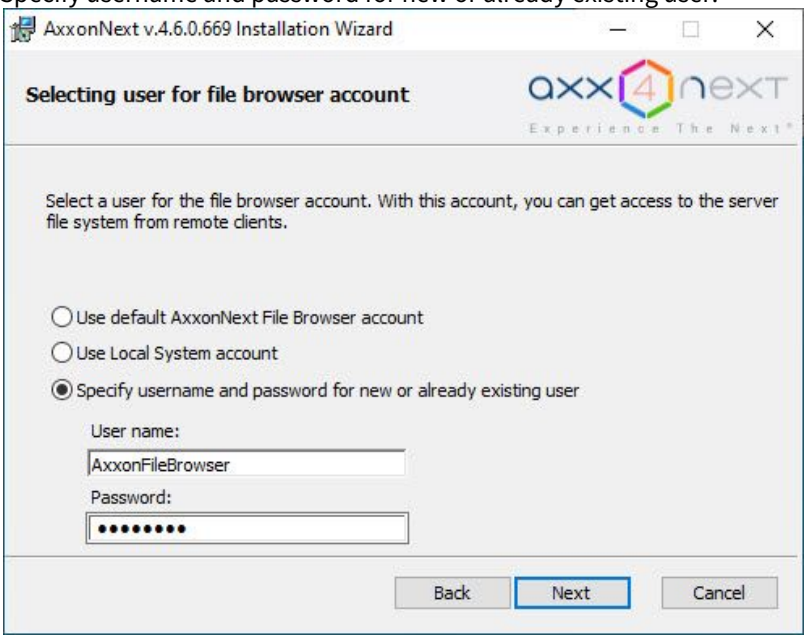


17. Select a user account in the file browser:

> **Note**
>
> The file browser helps to navigate through the Server's file system (such as when choosing disks for log volumes). The user account for the Windows file browser will be created with administrator privileges.

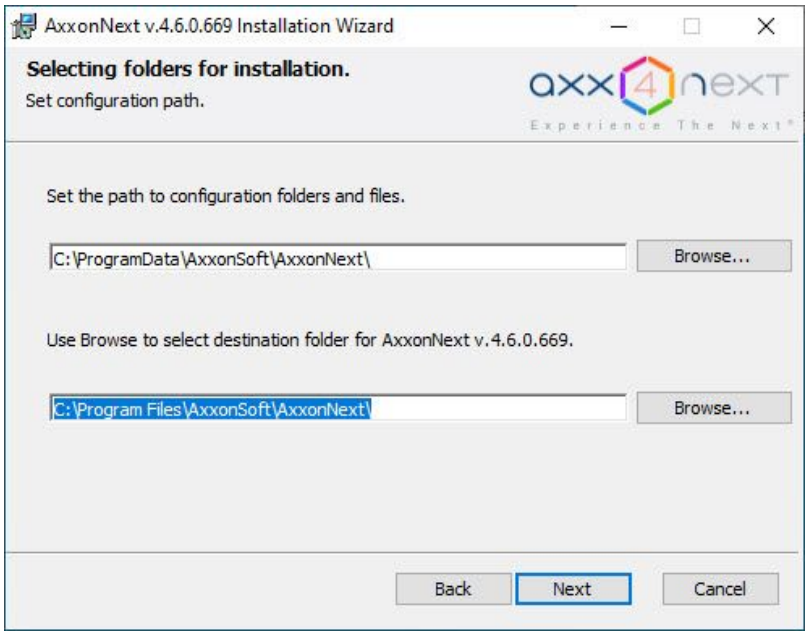
> **Attention!**
>
> After installation of *Axxon Next*, make sure that a file browser account has been created in Windows and belongs to the Administrators group.

a. Use default AxxonNext File Browser account;
b. Use Local System account;
c. Specify username and password for new or already existing user.



18. Specify the path to *Axxon Next* folders and configuration files.

> **Note**
>
> By default, the files and folders of the configuration are stored at the following path: C:\ProgramData\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\.

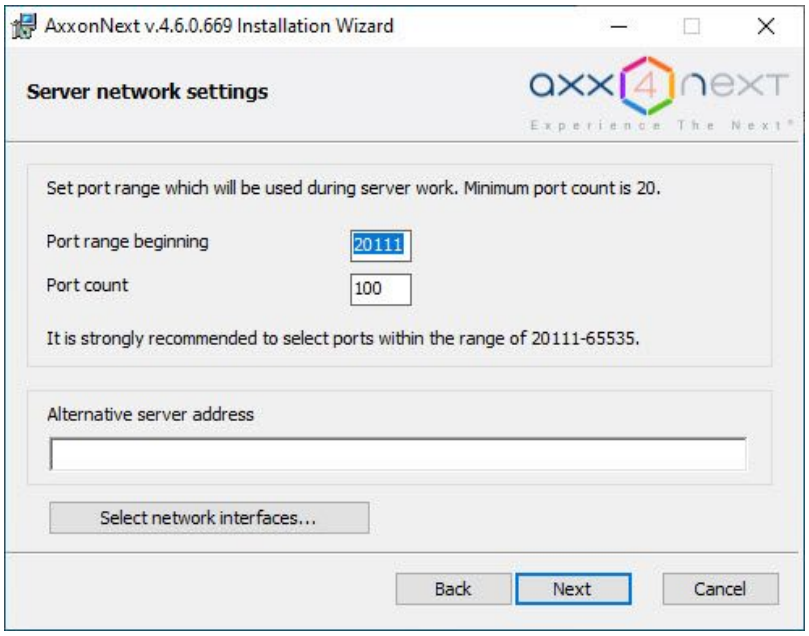


19. Specify the path to the folder for installing *Axxon Next*.

> **Note**
>
> By default, *Axxon Next* will be located in the C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\ folder.

> **Attention!**
>
> The installation path for *Axxon Next* and its databases should contain only Latin letters and numbers.

20. Click the **Next** button.
21. Specify the range of ports to be used for the Server. To do so, specify the lower end of the range, as well as the number of ports. This range can be used by the local network administrator to forward the port manually in cases where it is necessary to give the Client access to the Server from another network. The minimum possible number of ports is 20. For a full list of ports, see Ports used by the Axxon Next Software Package.
If *Axxon Next* version lower than 4.5.0 was installed on the computer, then PostgreSQL database port will remain old - 49998. After you install *Axxon Next*, you can change it manually (see Configuring the Server ports).



Note

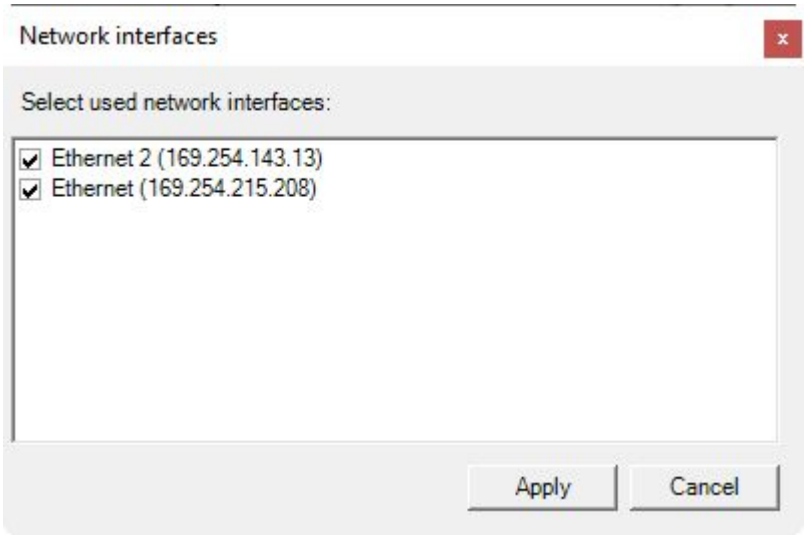
The number of ports that you select affects the scalability of the system. Keep the following in mind when specifying the number of ports:

- After the Server is installed, it occupies **10 ports**, including one for sending e-mails (via SMTP, see The E-mail Object) or text messages (via SMS, see The SMS Object).
  Attention! The Failover Server and Client installation type uses 9 base ports and preset port ranges for each node (see Ports used by the failover system);
- In a 64-bit configuration, **4 ports** are required for any number of IP devices. In a 32-bit configuration, **4 ports** are required for each **32 cameras**;
- Each archive requires **1 port**;
- **1 port** is required for viewing Video Footage through the Web Client;
- **2 ports** are required for each decoded video stream on the currently opened layout in the Web Client;
- **2 ports** are required for mobile Client;
- **2 ports** are required for any number of loudspeakers in the system (see The Speaker Object);
- **1 port** is required for recording metadata into the DB;
- **2 ports** are required for service detection tools operation;
- **2 ports** are required for scene analytics detection tools operation;
- **2 ports** are required for neuro tracker operation;
- **2 ports** are required for neural counter operation.

Attention!

Connected devices will only work on ports in the specified range. If not enough ports are allocated, then some of the devices may not work or work unstable.

22. If necessary, set an alternative Server address — the outside local address for a Server behind the NAT. Interface specification format: "IP-address1 or DNS-name1, IP-address2 or DNS-name2".
23. To restrict visibility of the Servers on particular networks in the list of Servers during *Axxon Next* setup, do the following:
    a. Click the button **Select network interfaces...** The **Network interfaces** window opens.



b. By default, use of all available network interfaces on the Server is allowed, meaning that Servers on the relevant networks will be visible in the list. If you do not want for the Servers on the networks of certain network interfaces to be visible in the list, clear the relevant checkboxes.

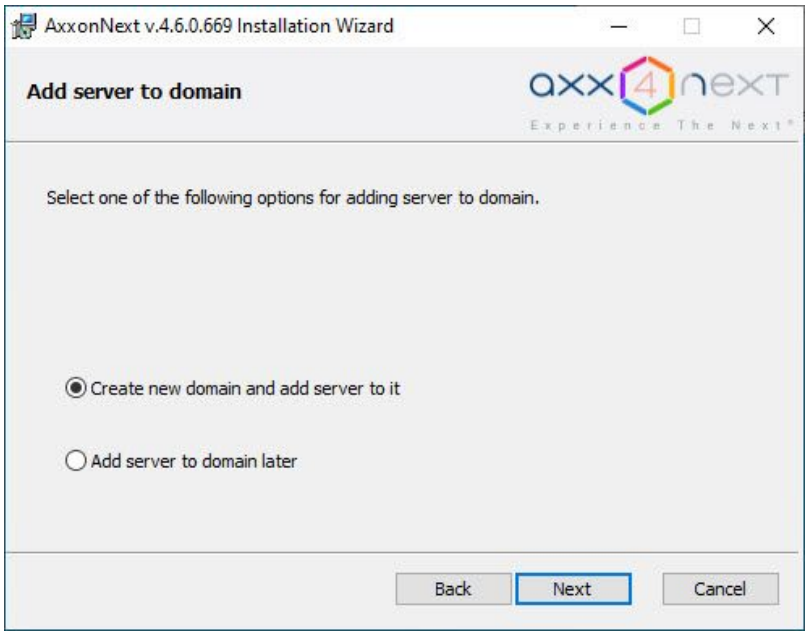
> **Note**
>
> Depending on the network topology, it will still be possible be reach the Servers manually (if broadcasting is allowed between the network segments).

c. Click the **Apply** button.

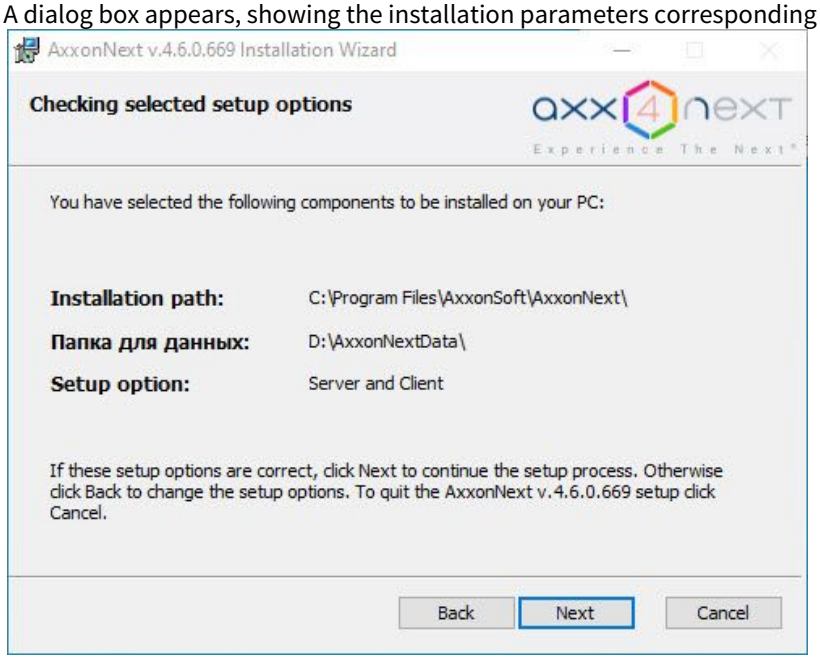
24. Click the **Next** button.
25. Create a new Axxon Domain with the name **Default** (for the definition of an Axxon Domain see Appendix 1. Glossary). If you want to add the computer to an Axxon Domain at a later time, select **Server will be manually added to already existing domain later**. Click the **Next** button

> **Note**
>
> When reinstalling *Axxon Next*, you have the option of using the previous domain (select **Use existing configuration**)

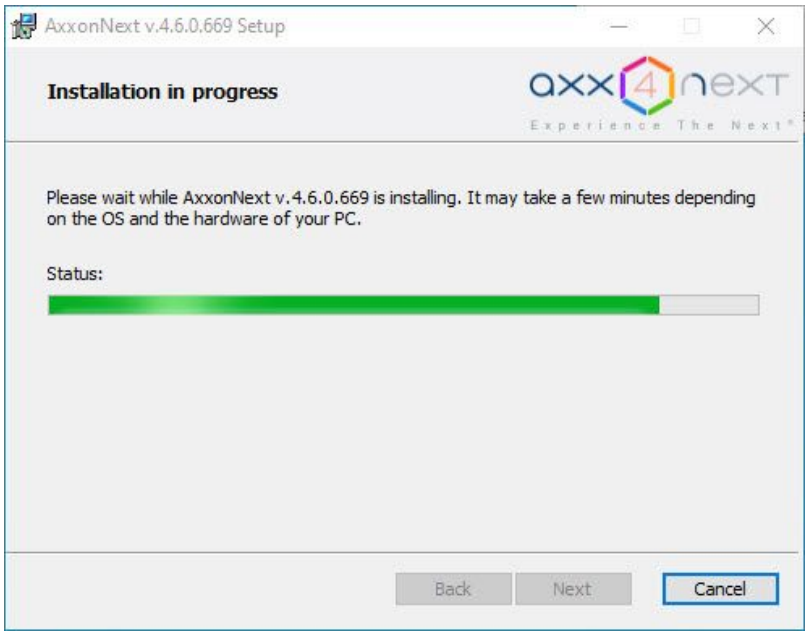
> **Note**
>
> Using the same Axxon Domain name does not guarantee that the Servers will be in the same Axxon Domain. To place all Servers into one Axxon Domain, you should use *Axxon Next* interface to add each Server to the necessary Axxon Domain. Axxon Domain configuration is described in detail in Configuring Axxon domains.



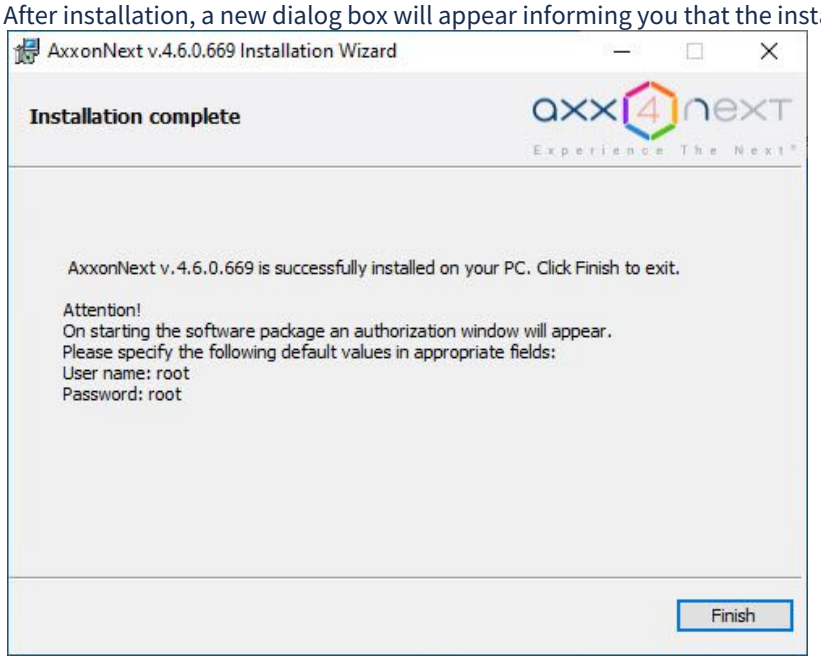
A dialog box appears, showing the installation parameters corresponding to the selected type of installation.



26. Verify your installation settings and click the **Next** button to begin installation of *Axxon Next*.
Installation of *Axxon Next* is then performed.



After installation, a new dialog box will appear informing you that the installation of *Axxon Next* is completed.



27. Click the **Finish** button to confirm completion of the installation.

Installation of *Axxon Next* is now complete.

4.2.2 Installing DetectorPack addons

By default, the *Axxon Next* VMS package only includes the basic *DetectorPack*, which contains the following set of detection tools:

1. Object Tracker (without Neural filter).
2. Retail Analytics.
3. VMD.
4. Tampering Detection.
5. Service Audio Detection Tools.

Additional *DetectorPack* packages (addons):

1. Addon Neuro Pack contains the following tools:
    a. Neural Filter.
    b. Neural Tracker.

c. Neural Counter.
d. Pose detection tools.
e. Smoke detection.
f. Fire detection.
g. Water Level Detection.
h. Equipment detection tool (PPE).
i. Person-based privacy masking.
j. Object detection.

> **Note**
>
> Neuro Pack is required for the face and people masking feature to be applied to the exported video.

2. Addon Face Recognition Pack contains Face Recognition (no vendor name) and its subordinate detection tools.
3. Addon Face Recognition Pack (VL) contains Face Recognition (VL) and its subordinate detection tools.

> **Note**
>
> For the Face Recognition (VL) to work, it is necessary to install two packages from the *Axxon DetectorPack*:
> - Face Recognition Pack (VL);
> - Facial Recognition SDK (VL).

> **Attention!**
>
> Only one of the optional Face Recognition packs could be installed: Face Recognition (no vendor name) or Face Recognition (VL).
> You cannot install both packs in the same system.

> **Attention!**
>
> Face Recognition pack Face Recognition (no vendor name) is guaranteed to work on Linux Ubuntu 20.04.
> Face Recognition packs Face Recognition (no vendor name) and Face Recognition (VL) are not guaranteed to work on Linux Debian 9, Debian 10, Ubuntu 18 and Ubuntu 19.

4. Addon VT LPR contains License plate recognition (VT).
5. Addon RR LPR contains License plate recognition (RR).
6. Addon IV LPR contains License plate recognition (IV).

To install these add-on packages, do as follows:

1. Download the required packages on the official website.
2. Stop the Server (see Shutting down a Server).
3. Run the executable file and wait for the installation to complete.
4. Start the Server (see Starting a Server).

> **Attention!**
>
> It is required that the versions of the main *DetectorPack* and the *DetectorPack* addons are the same. If the versions differ, it is necessary to update the version of the main *DetectorPack* so it matches the version of the *DetectorPack* addon.

4.2.3 Repairing Installation

A repair installation is used to re-install all components of the *Axxon Next* software package.

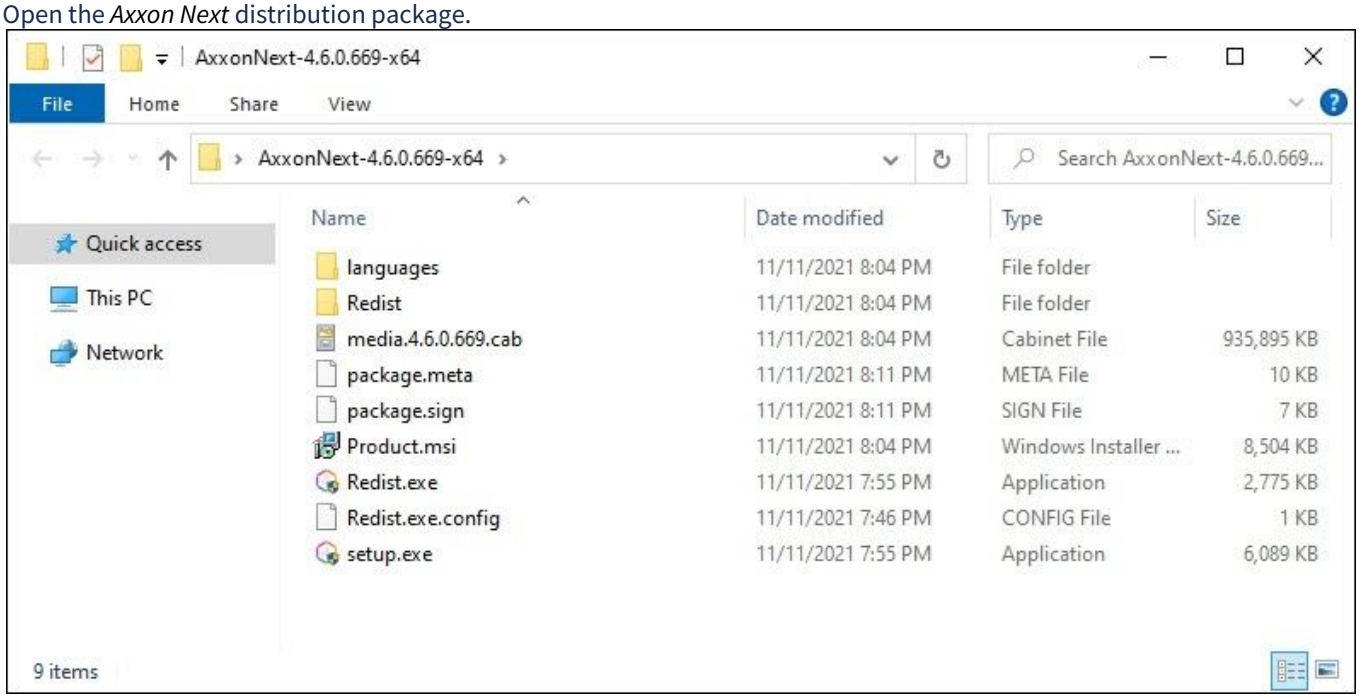
To start a repair installation, launch the *Axxon Next* software without removing the previous version of the program.

> **Note**

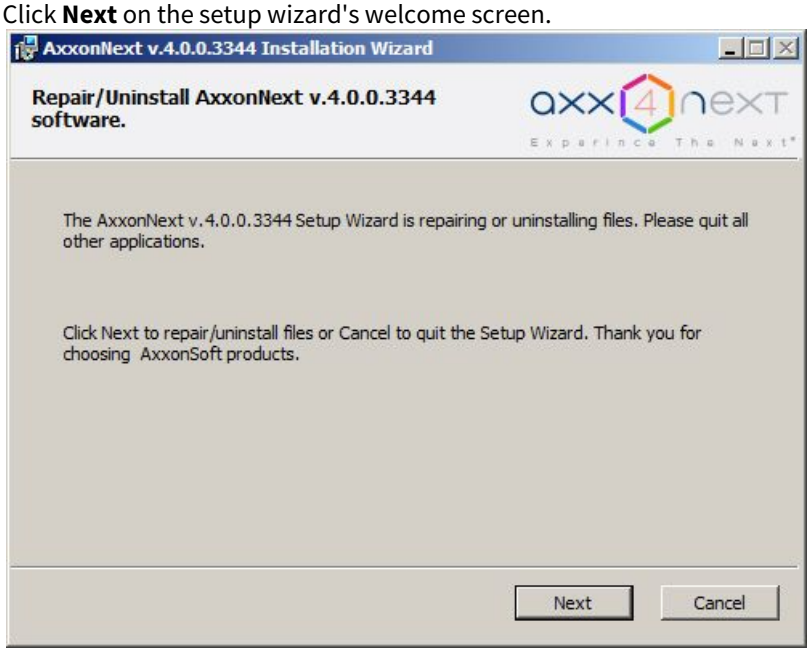
To ensure that *Axxon Next* is re-installed correctly, all related applications should be closed before starting the repair installation.

To run a repair installation of the *Axxon Next* software, you must perform the following steps:

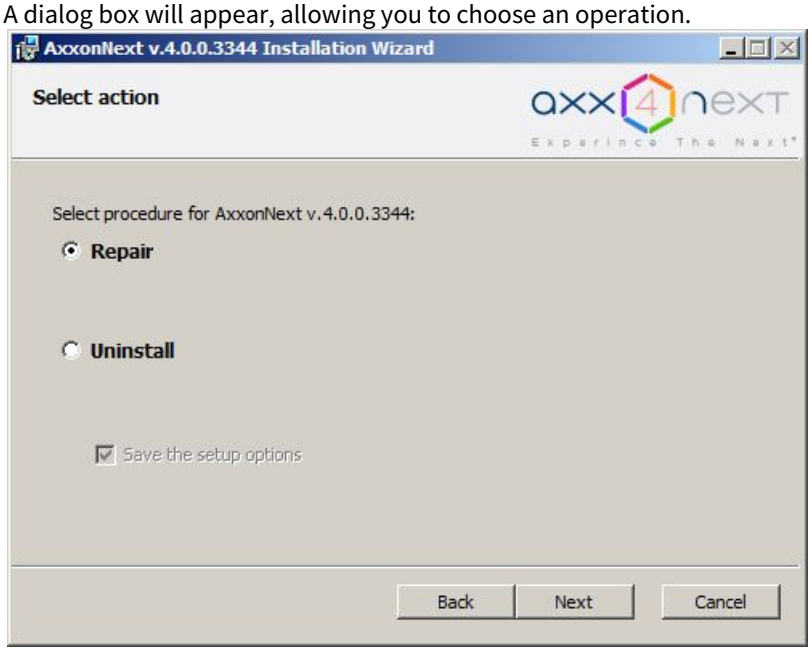
1. Open the *Axxon Next* distribution package.



1. Run the Setup.exe file.
2. Click **Next** on the setup wizard's welcome screen.

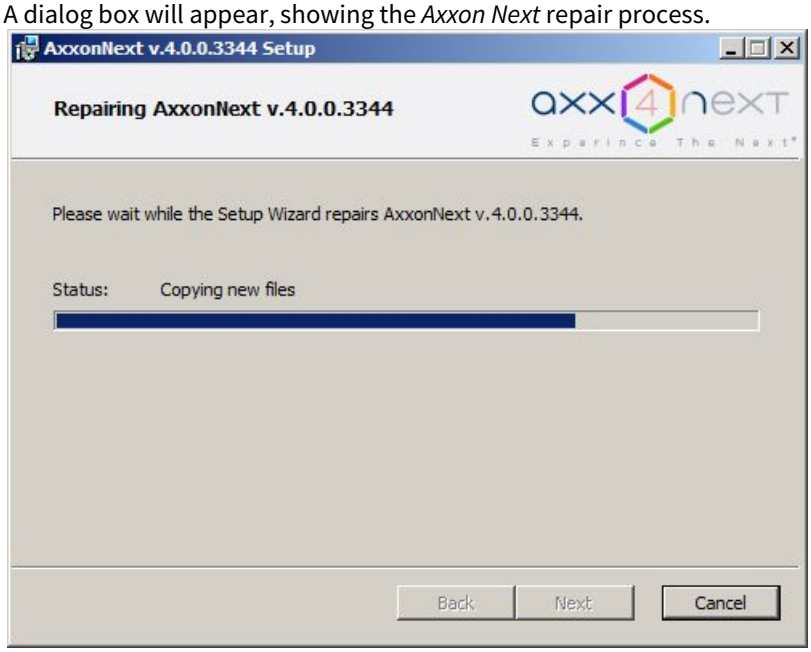


3. A dialog box will appear, allowing you to choose an operation.



4. Select the **Repair** option and click **Next**.

A dialog box will appear, showing the *Axxon Next* repair process.



A dialog box will appear, indicating the completion of the repair process. Click **Finish**. Repair of *Axxon Next* is now complete.

4.2.4 Removal

The Axxon Next installation program can also remove the software. Use this option when you need to remove all components of Axxon Next from your computer.

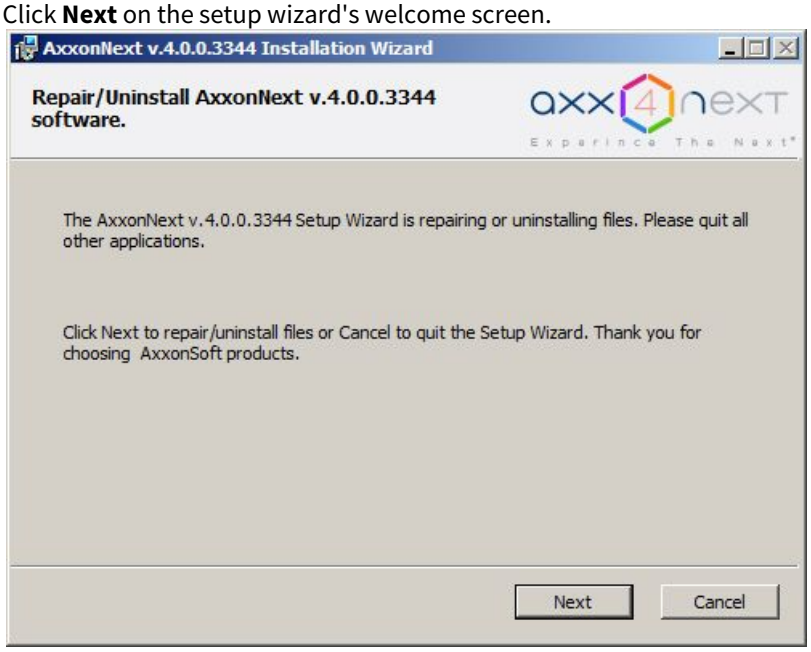
> **Note**
>
> All related applications should be closed before beginning removal of the Axxon Next software

You can run the Axxon Next uninstaller via one of the following methods:

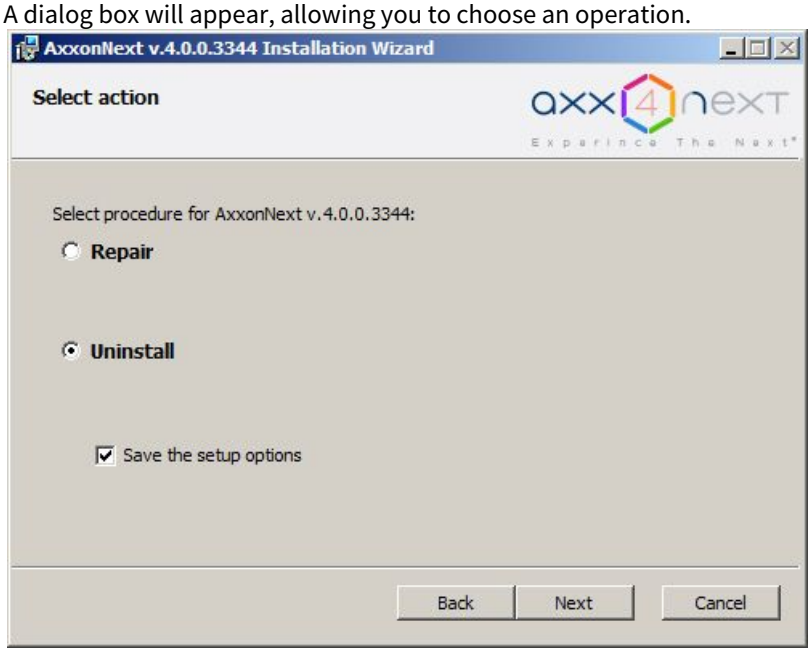
1. from the **Start** menu
2. using **Add or Remove Programs** in the Windows control panel
3. By starting the executable file named setup.exe, which is included with the installed version of the product.

When you do this, the setup wizard's welcome screen appears. To remove Axxon Next, you must observe the following procedure:

1. Click **Next** on the setup wizard's welcome screen.

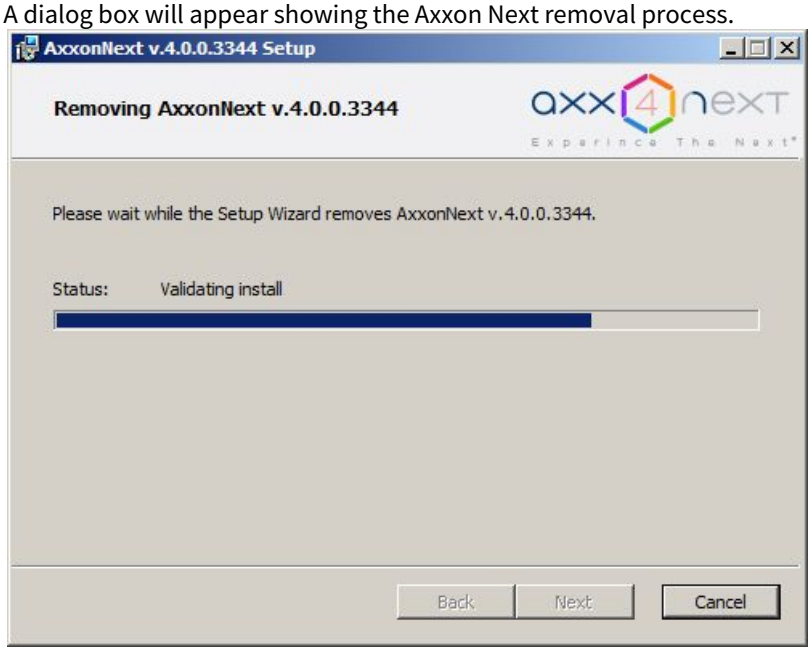


A dialog box will appear, allowing you to choose an operation.



2. Select **Remove**.
3. To save your Axxon Next settings in a database, select the **Save configuration** check box. This option may be useful when updating the product.
4. Click **Next**.

A dialog box will appear showing the Axxon Next removal process.



A dialog box will appear, indicating the completion of the removal process. Click **Finish**. Removal of Axxon Next is now complete.

> **Note**
>
> To completely remove Axxon Next, use the Windows Control Panel to remove the following software:
> 1. PostgreSQL.
> 2. AxxonSoft Situation detectors.ItvDetectorPack.
> 3. Axxon Driver Pack.

4.2.5 Update

If you have an earlier version installed, it is recommended to upgrade from previous versions step-by-step: 3.6.4 → 4.1.0 → 4.3.2 → 4.4.6 → 4.5.6 → 4.6.0.

You cannot directly upgrade to *Axxon Next* 4.6.0 from versions 3.6.4466 and earlier.

If you upgrade to *Axxon Next* 4.6.0 from versions earlier than 3.6.4.466, then do the following:

1. Remove the old version (see Removal).
2. Install the new version (see Installation).
3. Reconfigure the system.

Before you start updating, do the following:

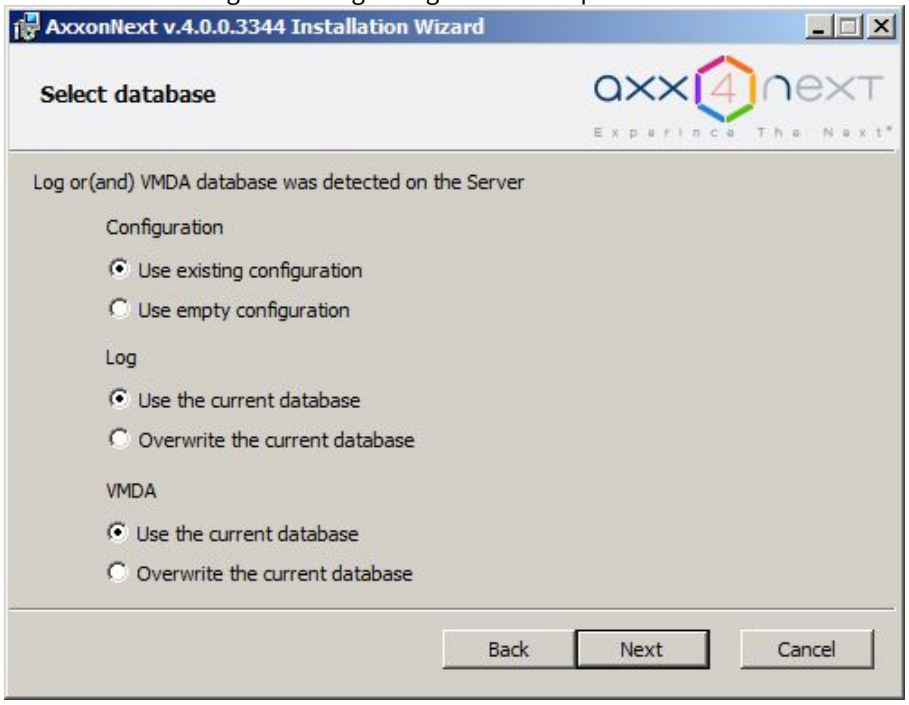
- back up your configuration (see Backup and Restore Utility);
- stop the Server (see Shutting down a Server) or, in case of failover system, the NGP_Supervisor service. If you run multiple Servers in the Axxon domain, make sure to stop them all.

> **Attention!**
>
> For a failover system, it is recommended to update the Servers through a supervisor (see Upgrading Servers within a cluster).

To upgrade from version 4.5.6 to version 4.6.0, do the following:

1. Run the new build installer. You do not need to remove the previous build.

2. Install the build using an existing configuration. The procedure is the same as for a new installation (see Installation).



Attention!

In *Axxon Next* version 4.5.8 and later, when you perform the upgrade, keep the databases in the same folder. If you set a different location for the databases, then metadata and database events will be unavailable.
In *Axxon Next* version 4.5.10 and later, there are no restrictions on database placement. To reduce the load on the system disk, it is recommended to store the metadata database and the log database on a separate hard disk.

4.2.6 Silent install (Quiet Mode)

You can run *Axxon Next* installation in quiet mode (unattended setup with no user intervention).

Note

During installation you may have to reboot the system. After rebooting the installation will continue automatically.

When Redist.exe process ends and not listed in Windows Task Manager, the installation is complete.

This mode of installation can be configured by adding command-line options to setup.exe. See the command-line options in the table.

Command-line option	Description
/? or /help	Open the Help window
/x or /uninstall	Remove *Axxon Next* and save the configuration
/x/removeall	Remove *Axxon Next* and delete the configuration
/r or /repair	Repair *Axxon Next*
/qn or /quiet	Silent install

Command-line option	Description
/norestart	Disable automatic reboot of the system during installation
/debug	Log installation
/noOSCheck	Skip OS compatibility check
/postgresinstalldir="D:\Postgres"	PostgreSQL installation folder
/LANG=”en”	Select installation language For example, en — English
/INSTALLTYPE="ServerClient"	Installation options: ServerClient — **Server and Client** (default), raftserver — **Failover Server and Client**, **Client**
/ADD="[]"	Hers is the list of components to install or remove (if you remove/uninstall software). See the possible values in the table below.
/REMOVE="[]"	Hers is the list of components NOT to install or remove (if you remove/uninstall software). See the possible values in the table below.
/dpcmd="INSTALL_BOSCH_VIDEOSDK=\"no\""	**Bosch VideoSDK** driver Installation (see notes). no — do not install yes — install
/CMD="[commands]"	Basic installation options and values. Commands are [option] = \ "[value] \" or [option] = [value] '. See available installation options in the table below.

Attention!

Occasionally, when installing the **Bosch VideoSDK** driver, the CLI window opens. To continue with installation, close this window.

/ADD and /REMOVE values:

x86	x64
Acrobat	Acrobat
BaseProduct	BaseProduct
IPDriverPack_x86	IPDriverPack_x86
Guardant_x86	Guardant_amd64
Postgres	Postgres
dotnetfx35_x86	dotnetfx35_x86
Redist2005_x86	Redist2005_x86
Redist2010_x86	Redist2010_x86

DetectorPack	DetectorPack

Installation options:

Installation options	**Description**
QUICKLAUNCH_SHORTCUT='1'	Create shortcut: 1 — Yes (default). 0 — No
DESKTOP_SHORTCUT='1'	Copy shortcut to desktop: 1 — Yes (default). 0 — No
INSTALLDIR='[%ProgramFiles%\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext]'	*Axxon Next* installation folder
NGP_IFACE_WHITELIST="0.0.0.0/0"	Network interfaces The default value is "0.0.0.0/0" (all available network interfaces) Format of network interfaces: "IP-address1 / number of unit bits in the mask, IP-address2 /number of unit bits in the mask"
NGP_ALT_ADDR="0.0.0.0"	Setting the outside local address for a Server behind the NAT). Format of network interfaces: "IP Address1 or DNS-name1, IP address2 or DNS Name2"
PORT_RANGE_START="20111"	The initial value of the port range for Server. 20111 — default.
PORT_RANGE_COUNT="100"	Number of ports in use. The minimum number is 20. 100 — default.
Options for **Server and Client** installation	
PATH_TO_DATA = 'X:\AxxonNextData', where X is the letter of the disk with the most free memory	Directory for storing the log database and metadata database. Default is X:\AxxonNextData. The PATH_TO_DATA parameter should be after the INSTALLDIR parameter.
FBUSER_TYPE='DEFAULT'	User account for file explorer: DEFAULT — create a new account; the default name selected will be AxxonFileBrowser, SYSTEM — select an account from the Local System, SPECIFY — create a new account; choose the user name and password.
FBUSER_NAME='[AxxonFileBrowser]'	Setting a user name and password for an account in file explorer. When you choose SPECIFY of the FBUSER_TYPE parameter
FBUSER_PSW='[Axxon2.0.0]'	
CONFIG_PATH='[CommonAppDataDirectory]'	Path to configurations files and folders
DOMAIN_NAME_TYPE = '[NewDomain]'	Select Axxon-domain: NewDomain — create new Axxon Domain (default), WithoutDomain — do NOT add Server to Axxon Domain, TheSameDomain — use existing Axxon-domain

Installation options	Description
WHATDBUSE = '[EXIST]'	EXIST — use existing log DB (default) NEWDB — create new DB
WHATVMDADBUSE = '[EXIST]'	EXIST — use existing object tracking DB (default) NEWDB — create new DB

The command for silent installation of *Axxon Next* may look like:

setup.exe /quiet /norestart /debug /INSTALLTYPE="ServerClient" /REMOVE="Guardant_x86" /
CMD="CREATE_QUICKLAUNCH_SHORTCUT=\"0\" PORT_RANGE_COUNT=\"50\" DOMAIN_NAME_TYPE=\"WithoutDomain\""

This will launch installation with the following options:

1. Quiet mode (/quiet);
2. no reboot (/norestart);
3. log installation to file (/ debug);
4. **Server and Client** (/ INSTALLTYPE = "ServerClient");
5. No *Guardant* drivers (/ REMOVE = "Guardant_x86");
6. And with the following properties (/ CMD =):
    a. no shortcut (="CREATE_QUICKLAUNCH_SHORTCUT=\"0\");
    b. 50 ports for Server (PORT_RANGE_COUNT="50");
    c. Server NOT added to Axxon-domain (DOMAIN_NAME_TYPE = '[WithoutDomain]').

4.2.7 Updating Drivers Pack

To install the latest version of Drivers Pack, do as follows:

1. Run the IPDriverPack.msi file.
2. After the installation is complete, restart the Server (see Shutting down a Server, Starting a Server).

> **Note**
>
> Please note that, if Drivers Pack 3.2.0 or an earlier version is installed, you should first uninstall the earlier version.

4.2.8 Automatic update of a remote Client

If a Server software version is higher than the Client's, you will be offered to update your Client software automatically.

> **Attention!**
>
> You should launch the Client as administrator to make it automatically updatable.

> **Note**
>
> If the Client PC has a Server installed, no update will be possible.

Next, the Client will be updated automatically along with Detector Pack and Driver Pack driver modules (if required).

Note

The update may lead to a reboot.

5 Licensing of the software product

5.1 Axxon Next license types

There are 5 types of *Axxon Next* license: **Demo**, **Free**, **Start**, **Professional**, and **Universe**.Upon installation, the software will be launched in demo mode.

You should activate Axxon Next VMS to utilize the full feature set of the security software package. You can activate the software by distributing an activation key on the system.

As for validity of the license, there are two types:

- Unlimited
- 1 year subscription

Data on all the types of Axxon Next licenses is presented below.

Functionality	Type of license	**Axxon Next Demo** (8:00-18:00)*	**Axxon Next Free**	**Axxon**
Maximum number of Servers in Axxon domain		Unlimited	1	Unl
Maximum number of channels in Axxon domain		Unlimited	4	
Support for SD cards (edge storage)		Yes	No	
Macros		Yes	No	
Situation analysis detection tools (excluding line crossing)		Yes	No**	
Line crossing		No	No	
Events from external systems (POS terminals, ACFA)		Yes	No	Op
Scene synopsis (TimeCompressor)		No	No	
Cross-System Client		No	No	
Advanced archive search: • MomentQuest • Face search • LPR search***		Yes	No	N
Tag&Track Pro		Yes	No	
Retail Analytics: • Visitors counter • Queue detection • Heat map • AxxonNet reports		Yes	No	
Face recognition evasion detection		Yes	No	

Neural Tracker	Yes	No	
Smoke and fire detection	Yes	No	
Neural Counter	Yes	No	
Pose detection	Yes	No	
Personal protective equipment detection	Yes	No	
Water level detection	Yes	No	
IV Automatic Number Plate Recognition	No	No	
Online facial recognition	Yes	No	
FaceCube external face recognition module	No	No	
Online Vehicle License Plate recognition*****	Yes	No	
Searching for LPR numbers on video from multiple cameras	Yes	No	
Data replication	No	No	
Failover	No	No	
Video walls management	Yes	No	
LDAP authentication supported	Yes	No	
Offline analytics	No	No	
System features available for all licenses			
Hardware Control panels Security keyboards Joysticks I/O modules	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unl
AxxonNet cloud service	Yes	Yes	

Server Support for ONVIF (profiles G, S, T), RTSP, GB/T28181 H.265 support Metadata from IP devices Configuration backup and restore Mass configuration of cameras Multicasting Hotkeys	Yes	Yes	
Recorded Video / Investigation Local and network archives Events search TimeSlice Operator comments	Yes	Yes	
Live Monitoring Basic audio and video analytics Embedded detection tools (except for Axis on-board tracker ******) Interactive 3D map GreenStream Tag& Track Lite OnScreen PTZ mode Support for fisheye cameras and ImmerVision lenses Export of snapshots and video episodes to multiple formats Information boards	Yes	Yes	
Remote clients Web client iOS app (including Apple TV) Android app	Yes	Yes	

Information about the type of license you are using is displayed in the server properties in the **Product Type** field.

* The system will operate in demo mode from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.

** Axxon Next Free license allows you to further use metadata from core VMD with any Scene Analytics detection tool except line crossing and abandoned objects tools.

*** Please contact our sales team to confirm if LPR country is supported and find out more about licensing policy.

**** Axxon Next Start license allows you to use metadata from a basic VMD with the MomentQuest forensic search.

***** To use VT and IV automatic number plate recognition tools, you have to re-activate the updated license of the ANPR.

****** the module has to be purchased separately.

> **Note**
>
> You (**admins** users) get a reminder to renew license 30 days before it expires.

5.2 Licensing methods

There are two licensing methods for Axxon Next:

1. License file only.
   The license file contains data on basic hardware configuration (motherboard, processor, hard disk, video adapter, RAM, and network card) of all Servers. If you change any 2 of the basic hardware components, your license will be invalid. For example, this is the case when you change both CPU and motherboard. However, changing a graphics card or upgrading RAM will not affect the license.
   This is why when working with Axxon Next you should bear in mind the following:

   a. The activation request should be sent from the computer that will host the Axxon Next Server.
   b. You can upgrade your license only if you retain the initial basic hardware configuration of all the Servers.
   c. It is not possible to transfer a license from one computer to another.
2. License file + Guardant dongle.
   this method allows replacing server hardware and transferring the license to another computer. To activate Axxon Next via this method, contact AxxonSoft to receive a license file and Guardant dongle.
   If you already have a Guardant dongle, you can perform activation yourself. To do so, connect the Guardant dongle to the computer that you wish to activate and perform the standard activation steps.

   Attention!

   You may use a Guardant Sign key with Linux.

Note

If you install virtualization products such as VirtualBox, VmWare etc., this may affect the license. Should you encounter this problem, you are advised to uninstall all virtualization products or apply for a new license file.

5.3 Product Activation Utility

License activation for the Axxon Next software package is carried out through the product activation utility.

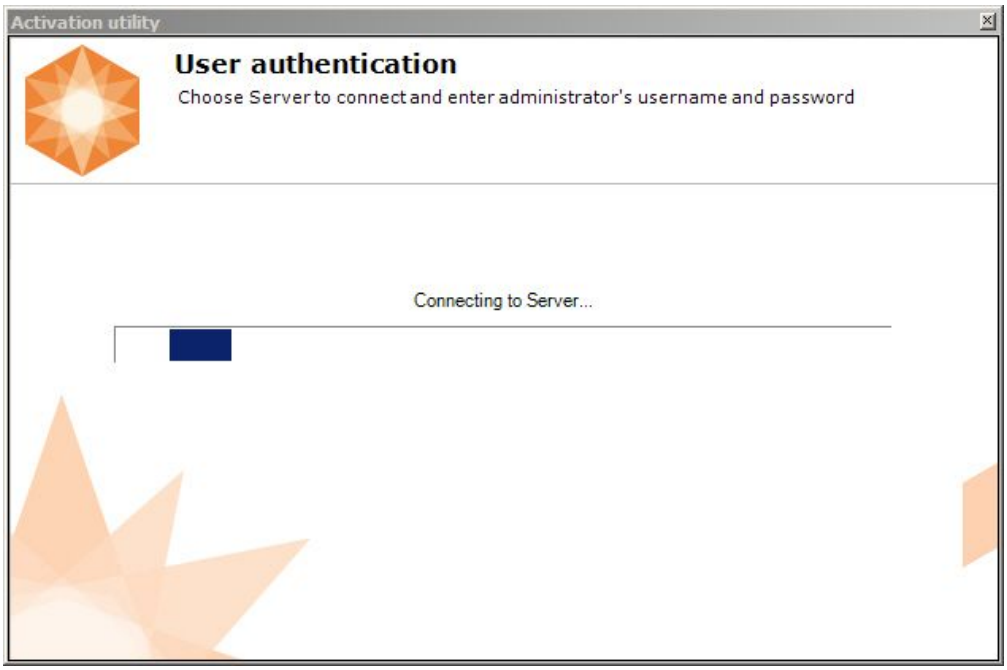
You can launch the product activation utility from the Windows **Start** menu: **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon Next** -> **Utilities** -> **Program Activation**.

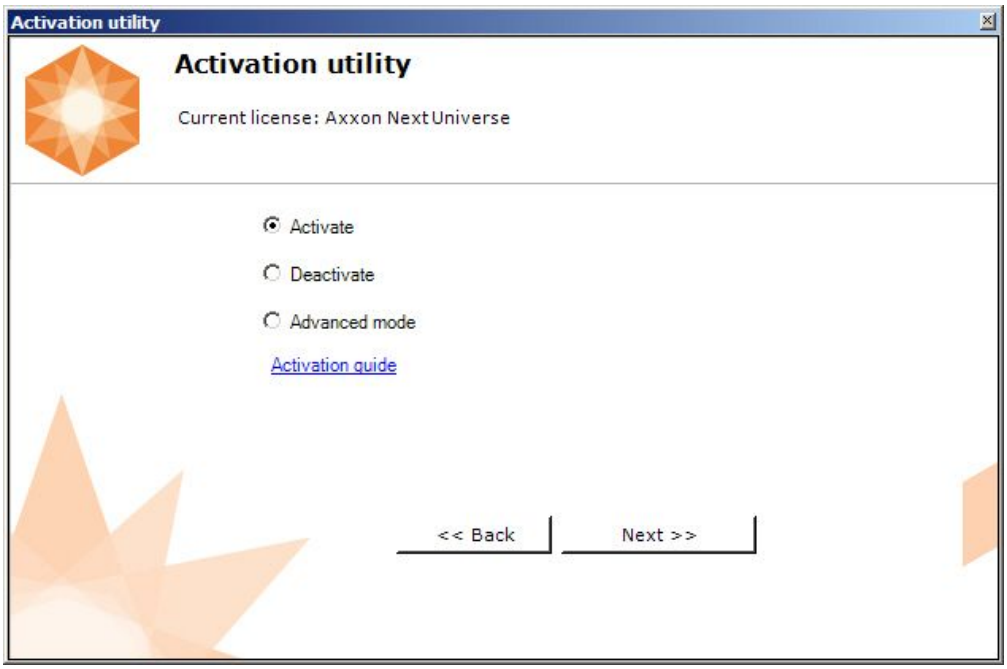
Note

The product activation utility program file LicenseTool.exe is located in the folder <Directory where Axxon Next is installed>\AxxonSoft\AxxonSmart\bin\

Then you must select the name of one of the Axxon Domain servers to which the license file will be applied (the file is applied to all Axxon Domain servers launched at the moment of activation) and connect to the system, under an administrator's user name and password, to continue the activation process.

When the utility has loaded, its main will be displayed.





5.4 License Activation

To activate Axxon Next, please refer to the document titled Activation Guide, which presents step-by-step instructions on activating, updating and upgrading Axxon Next .

It is also recommended that you use the prompts displayed in the product activation utility's dialog boxes .

6 Launching and Closing the Axxon Next Software Package

6.1 Startup

6.1.1 Starting a Server

The *Axxon Next* Server is started automatically when the operating system starts.

If the Server operation was stopped, perform one of the following actions to restart the Server:

1. Restart the system.
2. Select **Start server** from the **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon One** menu or in the *Axxon One Tray Tool* utility (see Axxon Next Tray Tool).

   > **Note**
   >
   > Run the command with the administrator permissions.

3. Start the NGP Host Service.

By default, the *Axxon Next* Server start time is set to 120,000 ms. If the Server does not start within the set time, the second forced attempt will be made to start the Server.

You can use the NGP_SERVICE_START_TIMEOUT_MS system variable (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable) to increase the Server start time. The value of the variable should be specified in milliseconds.

6.1.2 Starting an Axxon Next Client

The Axxon Next client can be started manually using the **Start** menu, which is intended for launching user programs in Windows.

> **Note**
>
> To launch the Client from command line, you have to specify the following parameters: login, password and server. All parameters are optional.
> For example: C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\bin>AxxonNext.exe --login=root --password=root --server=127.0.0.1
> To connect to multiple Servers, specify their addresses separated by commas.
> For example: C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\bin>AxxonNext.exe --login=root --password=root --server=10.0.11.30, 10.0.11.34

To start working with the software, perform the following steps:

1. Select **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon Next** -> **Axxon Next**

   > **Note**
   >
   > The Axxon Next software package program file AxxonNext.exe is located in the folder <Axxon Next installation folder>\Axxon Next\bin\

   > **Note**
   >
   > To start the client in Safe mode with OpenGL software emulation, select: **Start**-> **Programs**-> **Axxon Next**-**AxxonNext (Safe mode)**.

The Axxon Next client will then launch and an authorization window will appear

2. Select a Server to connect to, and specify a port number (**1**).

Connecting the Client to the Server behind NAT

Note

If the software is accessed by a remote user, the NetBIOS name or IP address of the computer with which the connection is established should be indicated in the **Server name or IP address** field.

Note

The order of the servers in the list is as follows:

a. Preferred Servers (see Selecting Preferred Servers).
b. The latest server that was connected to.
c. Other Servers are in alphabetical order.

3. Enter the user name and password (**2**) and click **Connect**.

Note

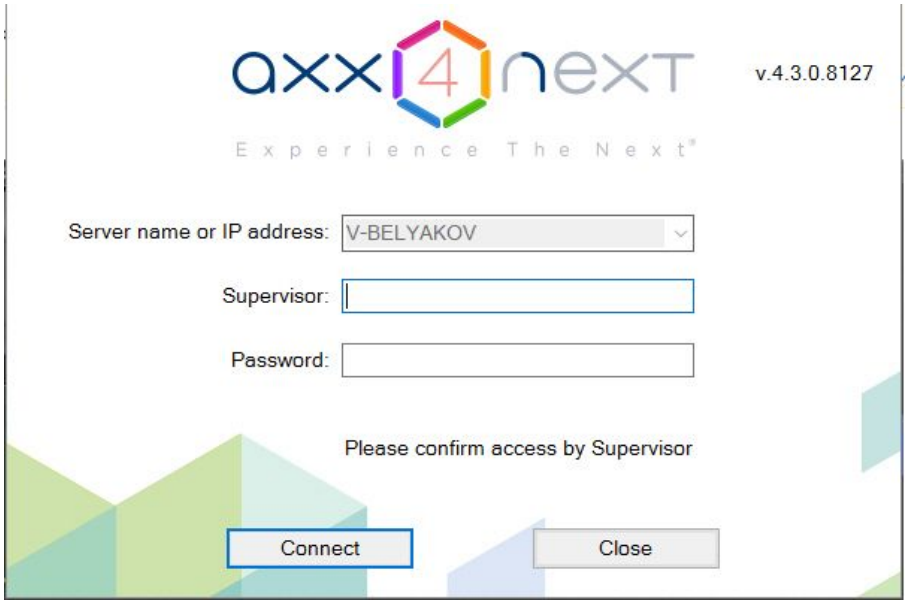
The first login to the system is done with the user root, which has administrator permissions . Enter root in the **User Name** and **Password** fields. The administrator then needs to configure the system for multi-user access described in detail in the section titled Configuring user permissions)

Attention!

You need to match software versions between the Server and the Client. The Drivers Pack's version must be the same as well.
If the Server's version is higher than the Client's, you will be offered to update your Client software (see Automatic update of a remote Client).
It is strongly recommended to avoid any connections if the product versions do not match.

Connecting LDAP users

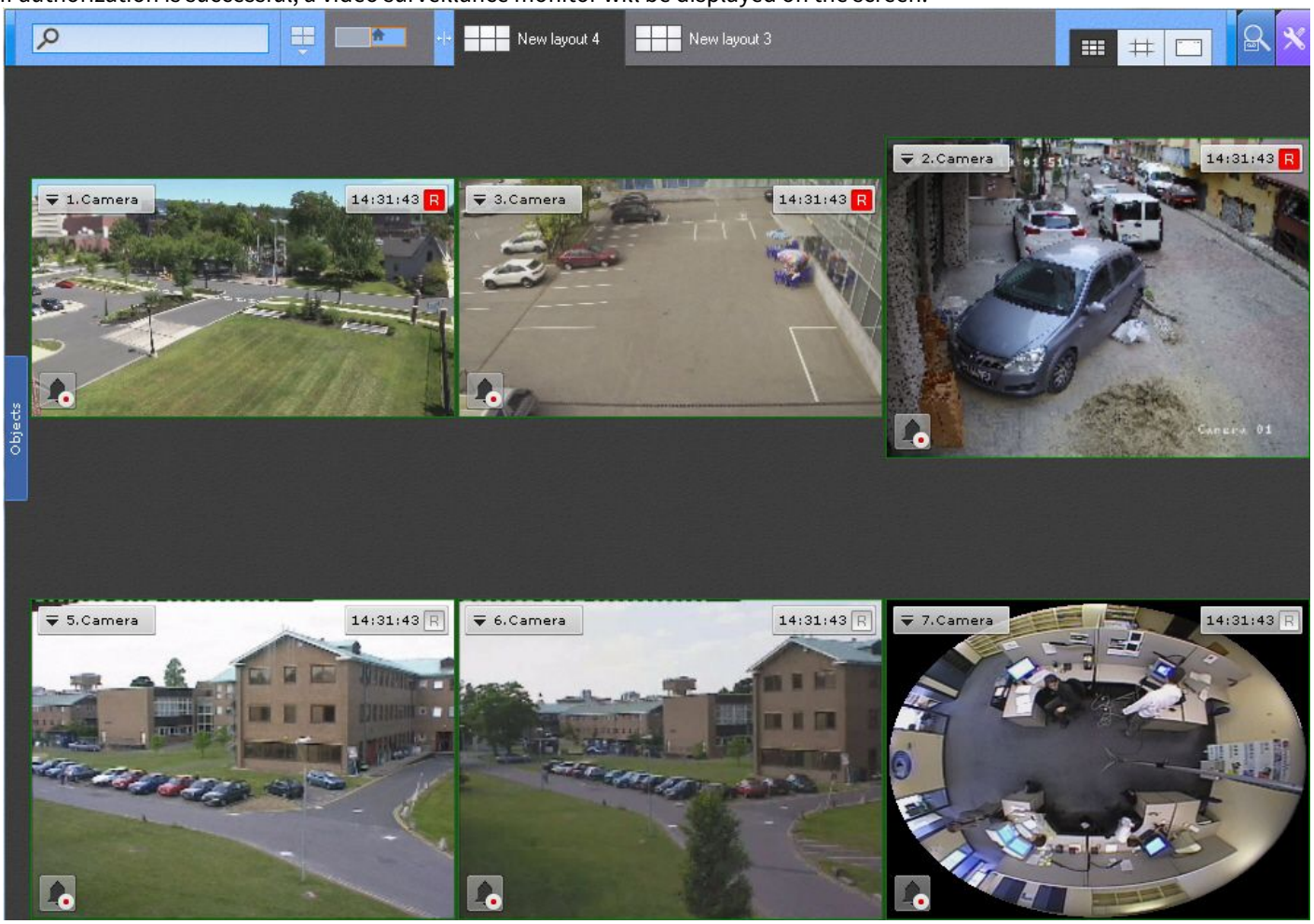
4. If the user requires the access confirmation by the system administrator, enter corresponding credentials and click **Connect**.



Attention!

When you first start the client, the archive settings tab opens (see Configuring Archives).
After the archive is created, camera addition starts automatically (see Adding and removing IP devices). IP Device Discovery Wizard launches.

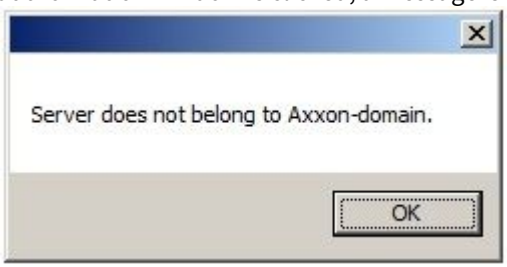
If authorization is successful, a video surveillance monitor will be displayed on the screen.



Note

If Axxon Next is launched in demo mode, then after you enter the authorization parameters, a message to this effect will appear (see the section Axxon Next in demo mode)

If the Server to which Axxon Next is connecting does not belong to any Axxon Domain, after the **Connect** button in the authorization window is clicked, a message is displayed.



To connect to the Server, you must either create a new Axxon Domain based on the server or add the Server to an existing Axxon Domain.

If you choose the first option, click **OK** in the message and follow the instructions given in the section Creating a new domain. For the second option, click the button and follow the instructions given in the section Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain.

6.1.3 Running multiple Axxon Next Clients

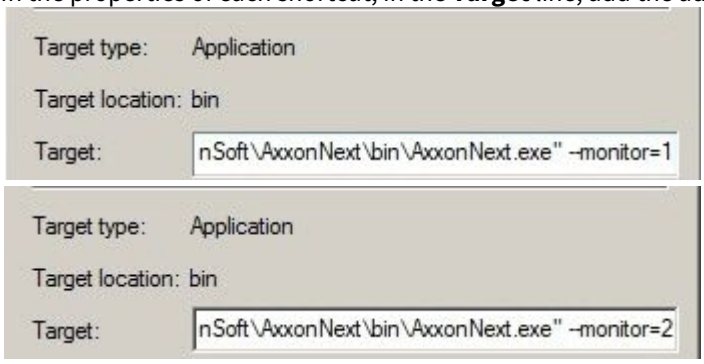
You can run multiple Axxon Next Clients simultaneously on a single computer in order to connect to different Servers.

In this case, you must start Clients with the additional parameter --**monitor=N**, where N is the number of the monitor on which the Client is to be started.

> **Attention!**
>
> The maximum number of running Clients is limited to the number of connected monitors that support the minimum required resolution (see Limitations of the Axxon Next Software Package).
> You can run only one Client on a single monitor.

To run multiple Clients:

1. On your desktop, create a number of Client shortcuts equal to the number of connected monitors.
2. In the properties of each shortcut, in the **Target** line, add the additional parameter --**monitor=N**.



3. Start the Clients by using the shortcuts.

> **Note**
>
> If a Client is started in window mode (see Configuring the Client screen mode (full screen or window)) and moved to another monitor, the situation changes: Clients will be started on the specified monitors even if a Client is already running on one or more of them.

6.1.4 Axxon Next in demo mode

If activation has not been completed, *Axxon Next Free Version*s works in demo mode.

The system will operate in demo mode from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM. There are limitations to functionality (see Axxon Next license types).

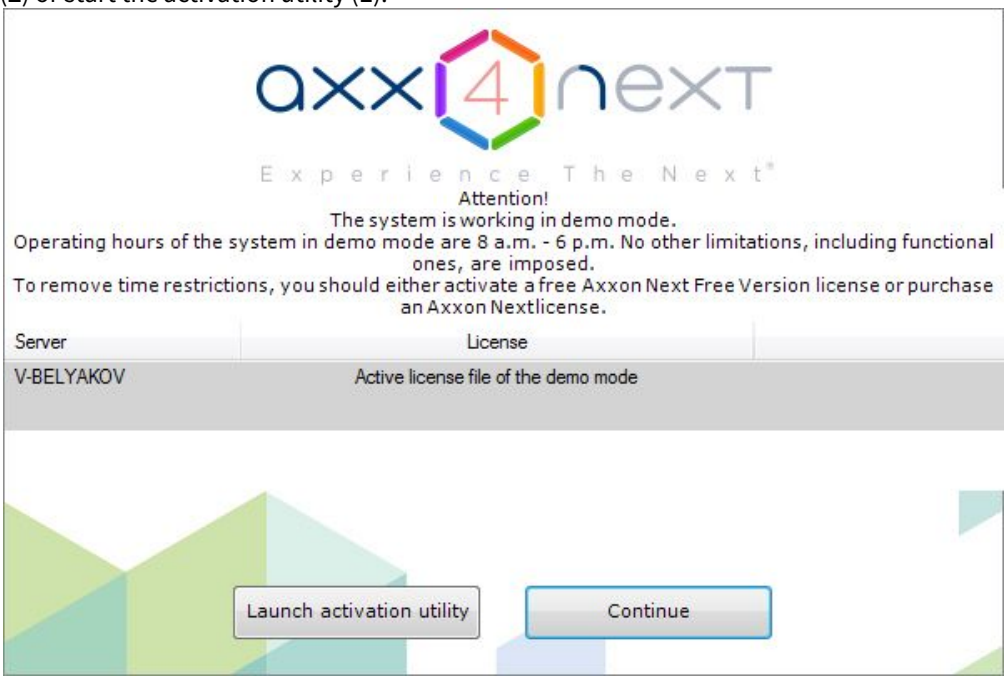
The different types of demo modes are presented in Table.

Type of demo mode	Conditions	Axxon Next operation
Active	Axxon Next can be started between the hours of 8:00 AM and 6:00 PM	Using *Axxon Next* in demo mode
Inactive	Axxon Next started outside the hours of 8:00 AM and 6:00 PM	The Axxon Next server is not available, only the system configuration can be viewed

If a Client is connected to an Axxon Domain in which there is at least one Server running in demo mode, an appropriate message is displayed, along with a list of Servers in the Axxon Domain and their types of licenses.

> **Note**
>
> The notification is displayed after successful authorization

If an Axxon Domain includes at least one Server running in active demo mode, you will be given the option to continue working (**2**) or start the activation utility (**1**).



6.1.5 Automatic Start of the Client

You can use Windows Task Scheduler to configure the *Axxon Next* client to start automatically at the system start-up.

It is recommended that you specify a Server start-up delay.

> **Note**
>
> You can also configure automatic authorization for the Client upon start-up (see Configuring Cross-System Client and autologon).

6.2 Shutdown

6.2.1 Shutting down an Axxon Next Client

Before closing Axxon Next, you need to exit the user interfaces. To do this, perform one of the following:

1. Click the button located in the top-right corner of the Axxon Next dialog box.

   > **Note**
   >
   > If the client is opened in full-screen mode (enabled by default), the!1.jpg! is not displayed. In this case you can exit the user interfaces using actions 2 and 3

2. In the **Settings** tab, click the Exit button.
3. In the Windows taskbar notification area, in the context menu of the Axxon Next icon, select **Close window**.

When you perform one of these actions, the authorization window will appear. To close Axxon Next (completely exit the client), click the **Close** button.

6.2.2 Shutting down a Server

To shut down the *Axxon Next* Server, perform one of the following actions:

1. Select **Stop server** from the **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon Next** menu or in the *Axxon Next Tray Tool* utility (see Axxon Next Tray Tool).

   > **Note**
   >
   > Run the command with the administrator permissions.

2. Stop the NGP Host Service.

By default, the *Axxon Next* Server shutdown time is set to 60,000 ms. If the Server does not shut down within the set time, the second forced attempt will be made to shut down the Server.

You can use the NGP_SERVICE_STOP_TIMEOUT_MS system variable (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable) to increase the Server shutdown time. The value of the variable should be specified in milliseconds.

6.3 Automatic Server restart

If you change the following network settings in the operating system, the *Axxon Next* Sever is automatically rebooted:

- IP address;
- creating a new network connection;

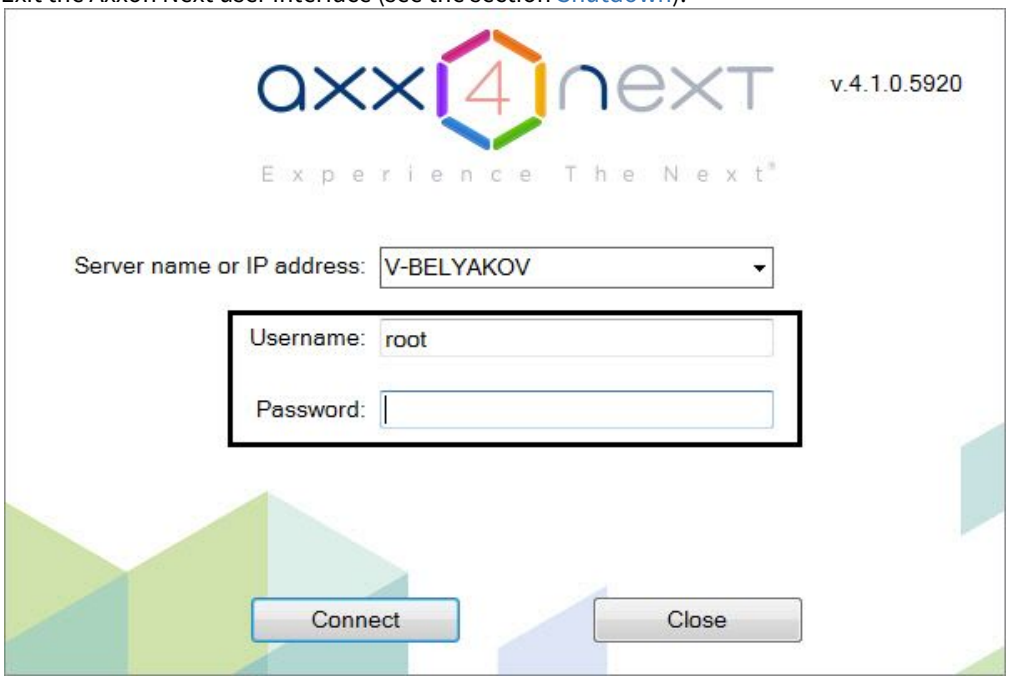
> **Attention!**
>
> While the Server restarts, the connection to cameras is temporarily lost and recording stops

6.4 Switching Users Quickly

You can switch Axxon Next users quickly without fully exiting the client.

To do this, follow the steps below:

1. Exit the Axxon Next user interface (see the section Shutdown).



2. When the authorization window appears, enter the user name under which you need to log in and the corresponding password and click **Connect**.

Switching users is now complete.

6.5 Cross-System Client

Cross-System Client empowers users to connect to multiple servers on various domains and in different systems from a single client workstation. All settings and cameras associated with these servers are consolidated in a single convenient view. That way you can access multiple independent surveillance systems simultaneously, even if the customer cannot or does not want to combine these systems.

This may happen for various reasons, such as:

1. your facilities are geographically dispersed, or
2. you want to mass configure multiple cameras from different systems.

A typical scenario may involve police plugging Cross-System Client in security systems at different retail chains / stores.

Cross-System Client automatically connects to specified Axxon domains when you start it (see Configuring Cross-System Client and autologon). The client first connects to the primary Axxon domain; connection to the other Axxon domains is established in the background after the client starts.

Note

You can also configure the Client connections to Axxon domains in the sign-up in the authorization dialog box. To do this, enter comma-separated values for Servers as follows: <Server 1 Name or IP address>:<Connection port>, <Server 2 Name or IP address>:<Connection port>. Server 1 is the primary connection

6.6 Connecting LDAP users

LDAP users are connected to the system in two steps:

1. The user logs in on the LDAP server.
2. The user then authenticates on the Axxon Next server.

Attention!

Each Client to which LDAP users are connecting must have access to the LDAP catalog.

Note

When an LDAP user connects, the user's login and password in the LDAP as configured in the Server settings are used (see Creating LDAP connections). The login and password in the LDAP directory are not used when connecting to the Server.

6.7 Connecting to Another Server Quickly

You can connect to another server without fully exiting the client.

To do this, follow the steps below:

1. Exit the Axxon Next user interface (see the section Shutdown).
2. When the authorization window appears, select the server to which you need to connect the client from the **Computer** list.
3. Enter the user name under which you need to log in and the corresponding password and click **Connect**.

Connection to another server is now complete.

7 Configuration of the Axxon Next Software Package

7.1 General information on system configuration

7.1.1 System configuration: stages

Most system configuration is performed via the **Settings** expanding menu, which contains six tabs for configuring certain parts of the system.

The main stages of system configuration are:

1. Configuring an Axxon domain.
2. Connecting and configuring hardware.
3. Configuring archives.
4. Configuring layouts and the interactive map.
5. Configuring users and roles.

> **Attention!**
>
> Please avoid changing system settings from different Clients simultaneously.

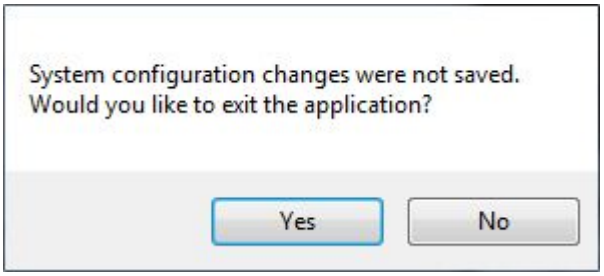
7.1.2 Applying and resetting settings

For a change in the system settings to take effect, you must click the **Apply** button.

After you click the button, a progress bar indicates that the settings are being applied. You can resume working with the system after the process completes.

If you want to discard changes and have not clicked the **Apply** button, click **Cancel**.

If an attempt is made to close the Client but not all changes have been saved yet, a dialog box asks whether to confirm closing or to cancel closing and save changes.

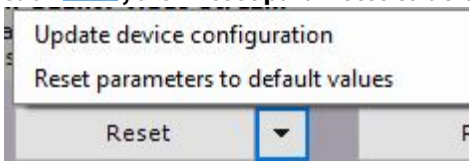


When setting up hardware, you can reset parameters to default values, or read configuration from the device at any time.

To reset parameters to default values, do the following:

1. Select the required device in the objects tree.

2. Click , then **Reset parametes to default values**.



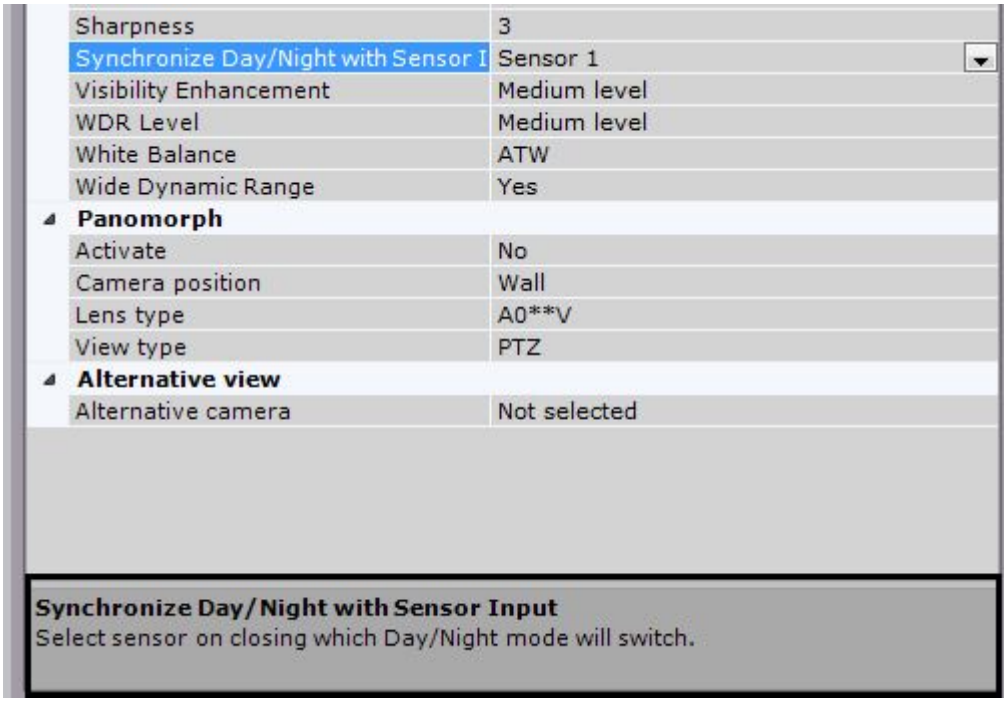
If a device's configuration differs from settings specified within the system, you can download the configuration from the device. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Select the required device in the objects tree.
2. Click , then **Update device configuration**.

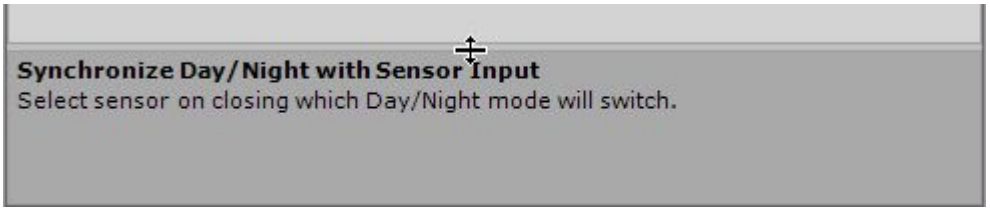
7.1.3 Display of parameters in interface

Most system parameters and hardware parameters are displayed in the Axxon Next interface.

The description of a parameter is usually displayed in a special area when the relevant parameter is selected.



If the description of a parameter is truncated, you can stretch this area above the upper border.



7.1.4 System objects

Axxon Next VMS has the following types of system objects:

1. Axxon domain objects (see Configuring Axxon domains).
2. Hardware objects: Server, IP Server, Camera, Microphone, PTZ, Input, Output, Embedded Storage (see Configuring System Objects for Devices).

3. **Event Source** objects are used to integrate *Axxon Next* with external systems (see Receiving Events from External Systems).
4. **SMS and e-mai**l objects used in macros and automatic rules for SMS and e-mail notifications (see The SMS Object, The E-mail Object).
5. **Export Agent** objects used in macros and automatic rules for exporting video recordings and snapshots (see Configuring export).
6. Archive objects (see Configuring Archives).
7. Detection tool objects (see Configuring detection tools).
8. Role and user objects (see Configuring user permissions).
9. Macro objects (see Configuring Macros and Counters).

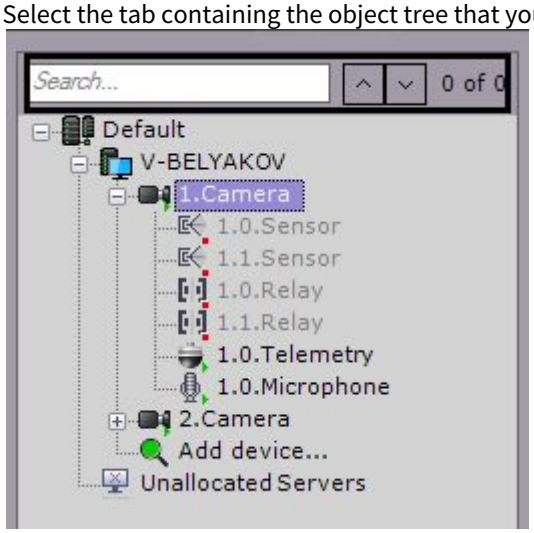
Some objects are created automatically, while others are created manually or are pre-created in the system.

7.1.5 Object search

Axxon Next allows you to search for objects in the objects tree using only part of their name or the IP address. An object search can be performed on all tabs under **Devices**.

To search for objects, complete the following steps:

1. Select the tab containing the object tree that you need to search

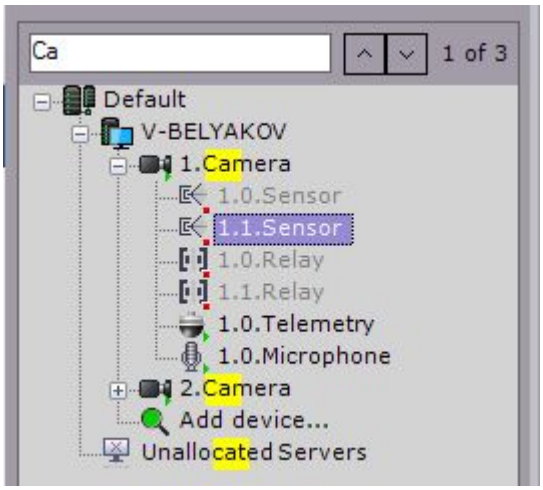


2. Enter the IP address, the full or partial name of the object in the **Search** field.

> **Note**
>
> Search is not case-sensitive

> **Note**
>
> A search can also be run based on object ID

The search starts automatically once you enter something in the box. When the search is complete, you will see the number of objects found in the tree, along with the currently displayed search results highlighted in beige.



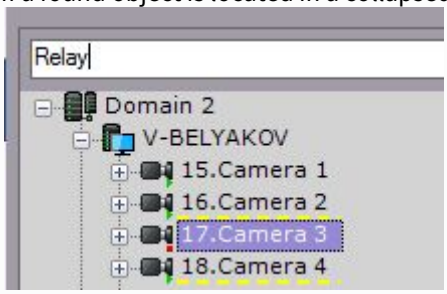
The parts of names corresponding to the characters you entered will be highlighted in yellow on the found objects.

Note

If you search by an IP address, the found object will be fully highlighted.

Note

If a found object is located in a collapsed branch of objects, the branch will be highlighted with a yellow dotted line.



Note

If a found object is located in a collapsed branch of objects, the branch will be highlighted in yellow

You can use the buttons or press ENTER to navigate through the search results.

The search results rotate in a loop; moving from the last object takes you back to the first object.

Note

If you move to an object located in a collapsed branch, the branch will automatically expand

7.2 Hardware configuration

7.2.1 Configuring Axxon domains

A distributed system based on the Axxon Next software package is created within an Axxon Domain, i.e., a selected group of Axxon Next Servers.

When configuring Axxon Domains, the following operations are used in the necessary combinations:

1. Creating a new domain
2. Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain

3. Excluding a Server from the current Axxon Domain

> **Attention!**
>
> You cannot combine regular and Failover Servers within the same Axxon domain (see Configuring Failover VMS).

To configure Axxon Domains, you must have the appropriate permissions (see the section Configuring user permissions).

This section gives step-by-step instructions for each operation used in configuring Axxon Domains, and then describes typical instances of their use.

7.2.1.1 Axxon-domain object

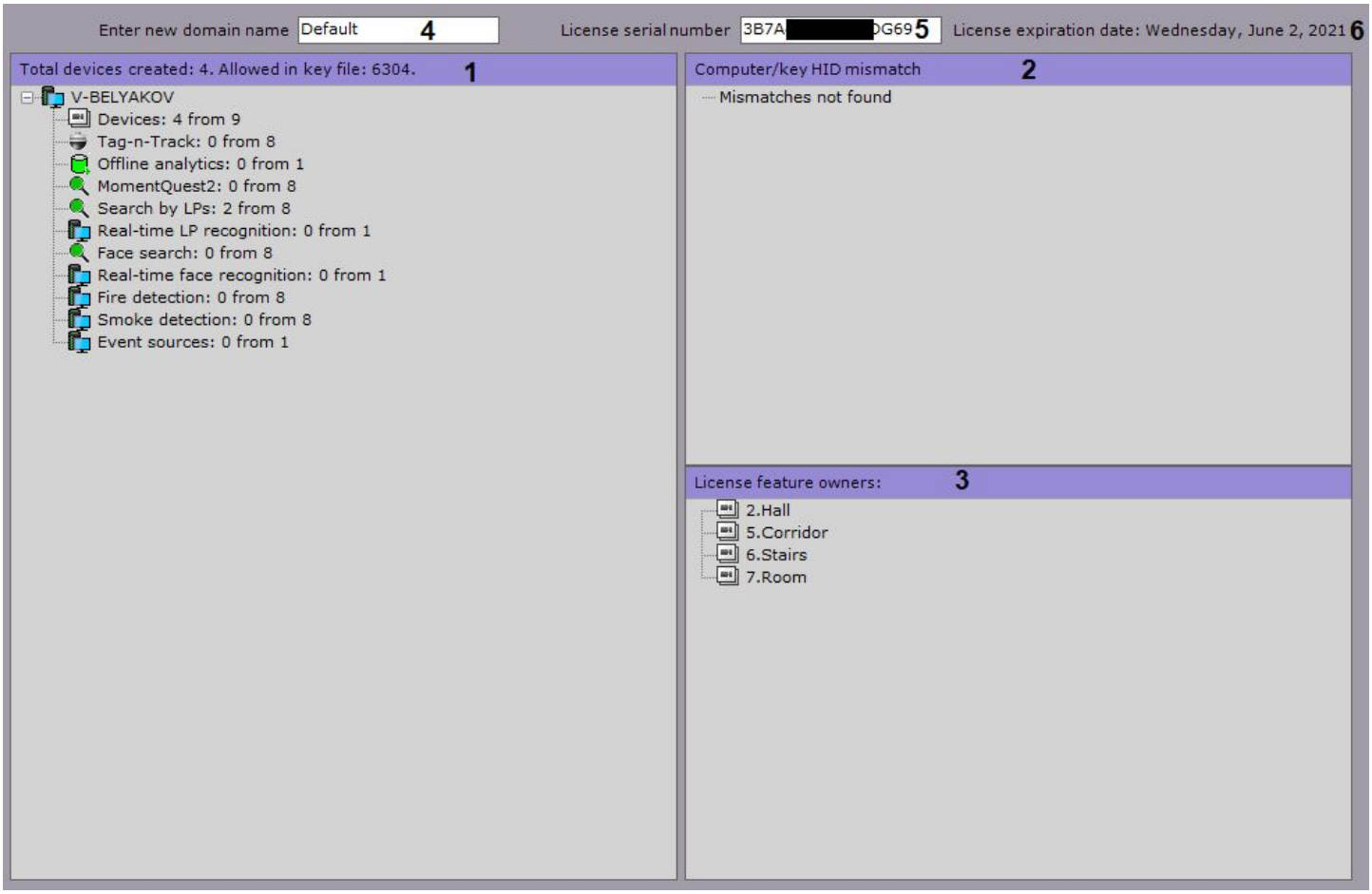
The **Axxon-domain** system object is at the base of the system.

The **Axxon-domain** object is the parent of the **Server** objects, which correspond to the servers that are in the Axxon-domain.

When you select the **Axxon domain** object in the **Total devices created** group (**1**), the software displays information about the Axxon domain and the current license: Servers and their number, IP devices and various used functions.

Also displayed are license serial number (**5**) and expiration date (**6**).

> **Note**
>
> The number of created devices means the total number of enabled IP video channels.



In the **Computer/Key HID mismatch** (**2**) group, the license information / error is displayed.

If you select a licensing option in the relevant group (**1**), the **License feature owners** (**3**) group will include the objects currently using this license.

You can also rename the Axxon-domain. To do so, enter the new name in the corresponding field (**4**) and click the **Apply** button.

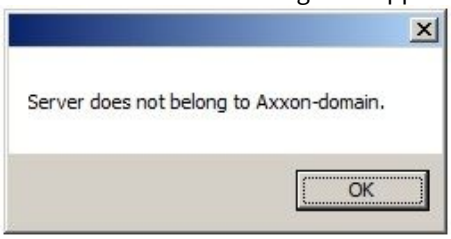
7.2.1.2 Axxon Domain operations

7.2.1.2.1 Creating a new domain

A new Axxon Domain can be created in one of two ways:

1. During installation of the Axxon Next software package with the Server and Client configuration type (see step 8 of the instructions in the section Installation)
2. When attempting to connect to a Server which does not belong to a domain

In the second case a message will appear, in which you should click **OK** (see also the section Startup).



The **Name new Axxon Domain** window will appear. In the **New Axxon Domain name** field, enter the Axxon Domain name to create a new group of computers based on the Server and click **Apply**.

Attention!

It is not possible to use the above steps to add a Server to an existing Axxon Domain. Assigning the same Axxon Domain name to several Servers does not guarantee that those Servers will be in the same Axxon Domain. Different Axxon Domains can have identical names

This will create a new Axxon Domain based on the Server. The Axxon Next software package will then be launched with the entered authorization parameters (see the section Startup).

7.2.1.2.2 Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain

A Server can be added to an existing Axxon Domain from any Server within that Axxon Domain.

Attention!

Before configuring a distributed system, be sure to combine your Servers into an Axxon-domain.

Attention!

It is not recommend to use Servers with different versions of Axxon Next on the same Axxon-domain.

Note

Only unallocated Servers, i.e., Servers which do not already belong to any Axxon Domain, can be added.

There are two ways to add a Server to an Axxon Domain, depending on whether or not it is present in the search results (in the **Unallocated Servers** group).

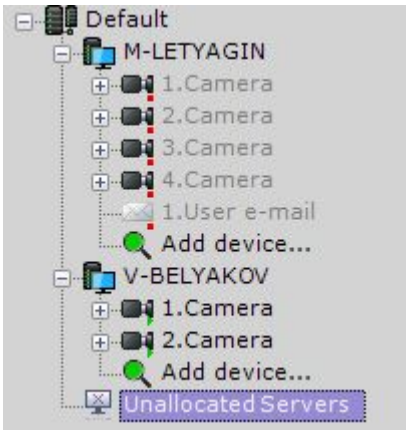
If one of these Servers is present in the search results, select it and click the **Add to Axxon-domain** button.

The Server will then be added to the Axxon Domain from the **Unallocated Servers** group.
Since the search for unallocated Servers is conducted using broadcast packets, the results may not include Servers located in a different subnetwork (for example, beyond a router which blocks broadcast packets).
In this case the option of manually adding a Server to an Axxon Domain can be useful; this option can be used with all unallocated Servers, including those present in the **Unallocated Servers** group.
A Server can be manually added to an Axxon Domain as follows:

1. Select the **Unallocated Servers** group (**1**).

2. In the **Server Name** field, enter the NetBIOS name of the Server to be added to the Axxon Domain (**2**).
3. Enter the Server IP address and port number (**3**).
4. Click the **Add to Axxon-domain** button (**4**).

The Server will then be manually added to the Axxon Domain.
After a Server is added to an Axxon Domain using any of the methods described, it will appear in the object tree.



If a Server is not currently accessible when it is added to an Axxon Domain, it will be displayed in the object tree with the icon.

To undo addition of a Server to the Axxon-domain, select the Server and click the **Exclude from domain** button at the bottom of the display.

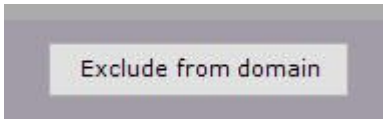
7.2.1.2.3 Removing a Server from an Axxon Domain

Any Server on an Axxon Domain can be used to remove a Server from an Axxon Domain.

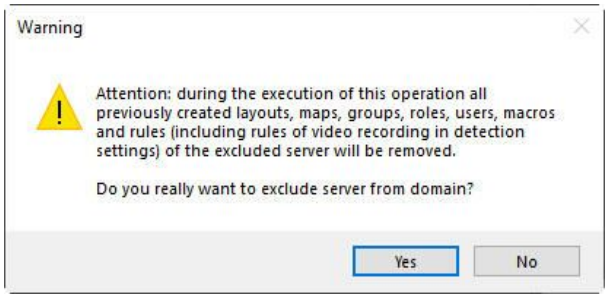
> **Attention!**
>
> By excluding a Server, you also delete the macros, layouts, maps, object groups, roles, and users that have been created on the Server

To remove a Server from an Axxon Domain, you must perform the following steps:

1. Select the Server in the list and click the **Exclude from Axxon-domain** button.



2. In the window which appears, confirm that you want to remove the Server from the Axxon Domain by clicking the **Yes** button.



The Server will then be removed from the Axxon Domain. If the current Client was connected to the excluded Server, the user interfaces will be unloaded and the user will be prompted to repeat the authorization procedure for Axxon Next (see the section Startup).

> **Note**
>
> You can also exclude a Server from an Axxon domain using the activation utility (see Excluding the Current Server from an Axxon Domain).

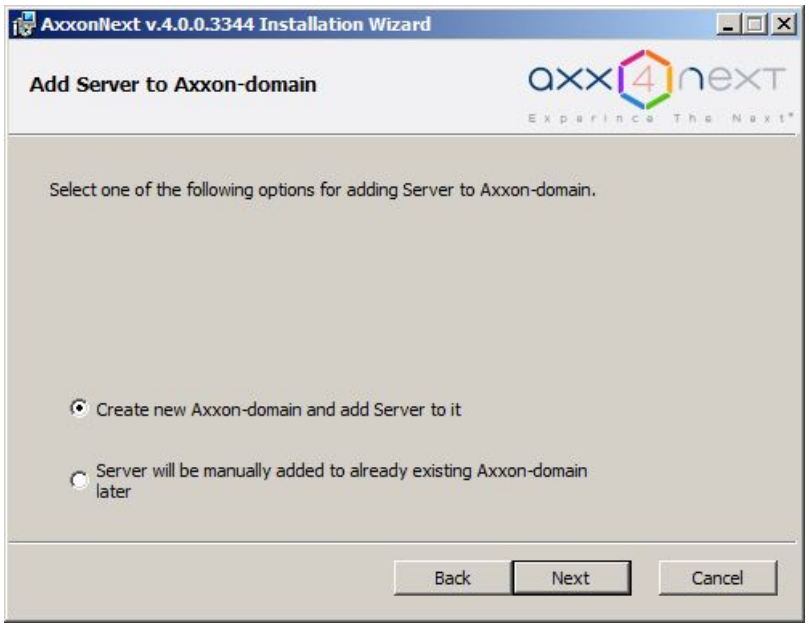
7.2.1.3 Cases of Axxon Domain configuration

All possible cases of Axxon Domain configuration are, to some degree, a combination of two typical cases.

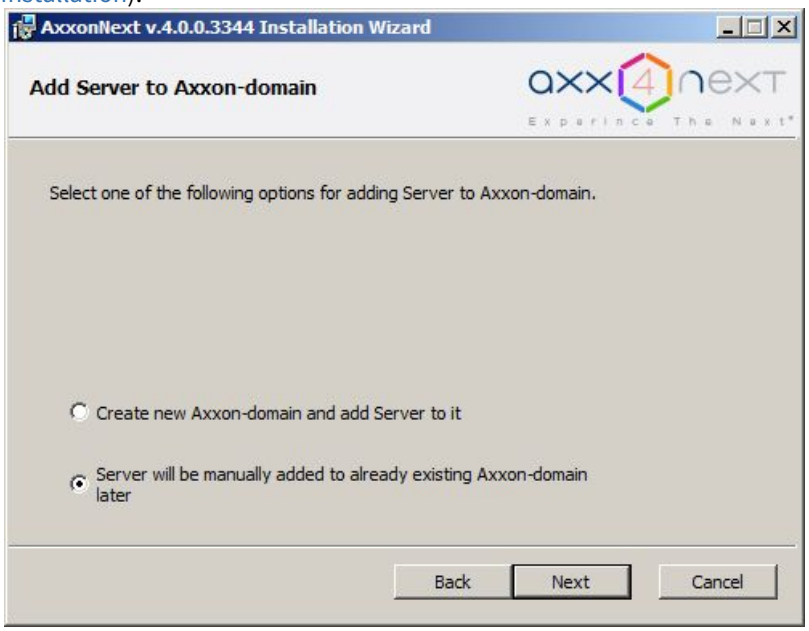
In the first typical case, the Servers for the future Axxon Domain are selected before Axxon Next installation. This case involves the following steps:

1. Selecting a Server on the basis of which the new Axxon Domain will be created. Installing the Axxon Next software package with the Server and Client configuration type, indicating the name of the new Axxon Domain (see also step 8 of the instructions in the section Installation).

> **Note**
>
> Any Server in the future Axxon Domain can be selected as the primary Server



2. Installing the Axxon Next software package with the **Server and Client** configuration type on the other servers of the future Axxon Domain, without adding them to the Axxon Domain (see also step 8 of the instructions in the section Installation).



3. Connecting to the primary server.
4. Adding the remaining Servers to the Axxon Domain from the primary Server according to the instructions in the section Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain.

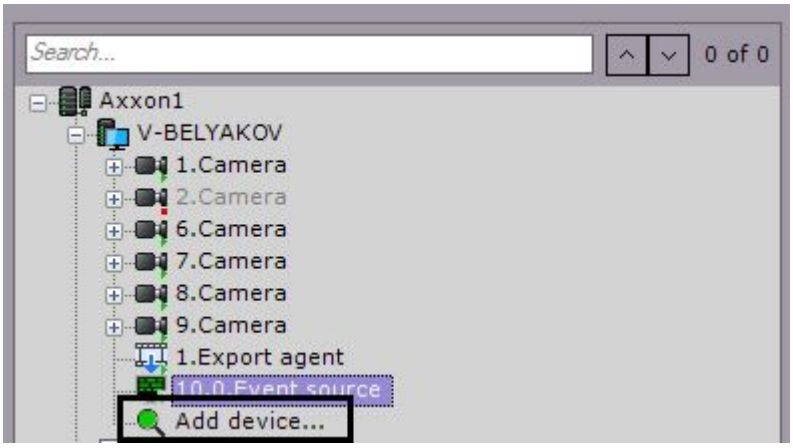
In the second typical case it is necessary to add servers which are part of another Axxon Domain to a new Axxon Domain. This case involves the following steps:

1. Excluding all the Servers which are to be added to the new Axxon Domain from their current Axxon Domains, according to the instructions in the section Removing a Server from an Axxon Domain.
2. Naming the new Axxon Domain according to the instructions in the section Creating a new domain, when attempting to connect to one of the Servers excluded in step 1.
3. Adding the remaining Servers to the Axxon Domain from the primary Server according to the instructions in the section Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain.

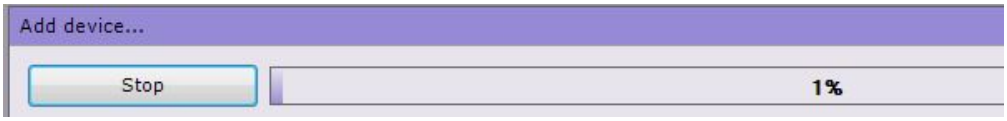
7.2.2 Adding and removing IP devices

You can add video cameras and IP servers to the system by using the IP Device Discovery Wizard.

To open the IP Device Discovery Wizard, click the **Add device** link at the end of the Server device list.



When the Wizard is opened for the first time after the Client is started, automatic search for new devices will begin. During subsequent sessions, to launch the Wizard you must click the corresponding button. A progress bar indicates search progress.

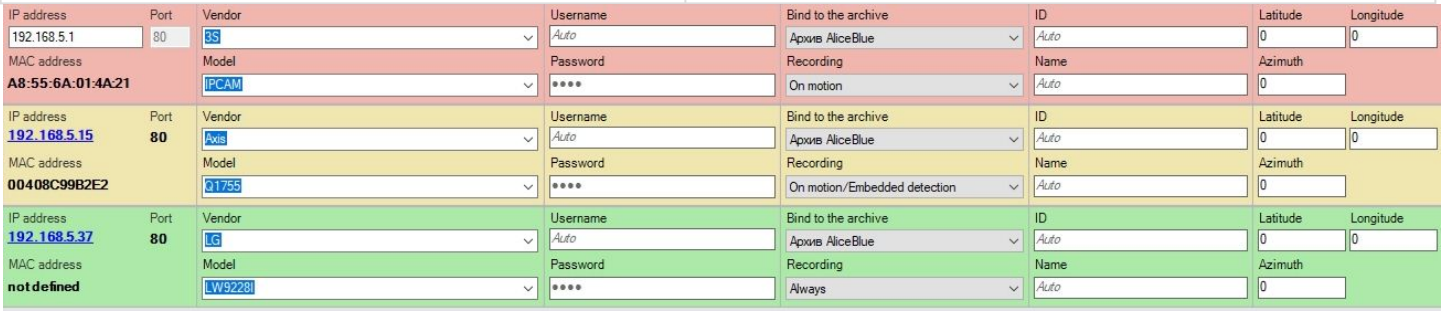


To stop devices search at any time, click the **Stop** button.

> **Note**
>
> Since multicast packets are used for device search, the search results may not contain the Servers and devices from other subnets

The search results are color-coded based on the status of the device.

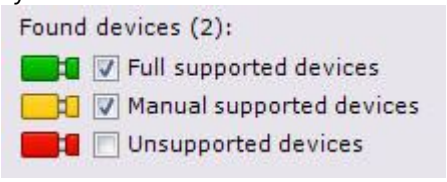
Color of video camera icon	Description
	Fully supported device
	Manual configuration required
	Axxon Next compatibility not guaranteed



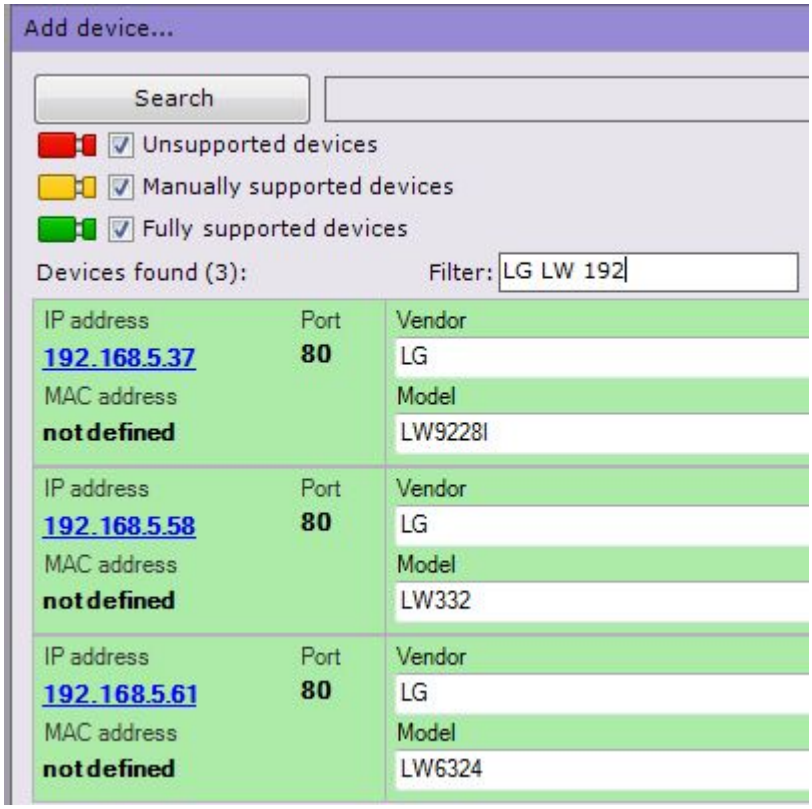
> **Note**
>
> If you click the IP address, you will jump to the device web interface.

Search results can be filtered in two ways:

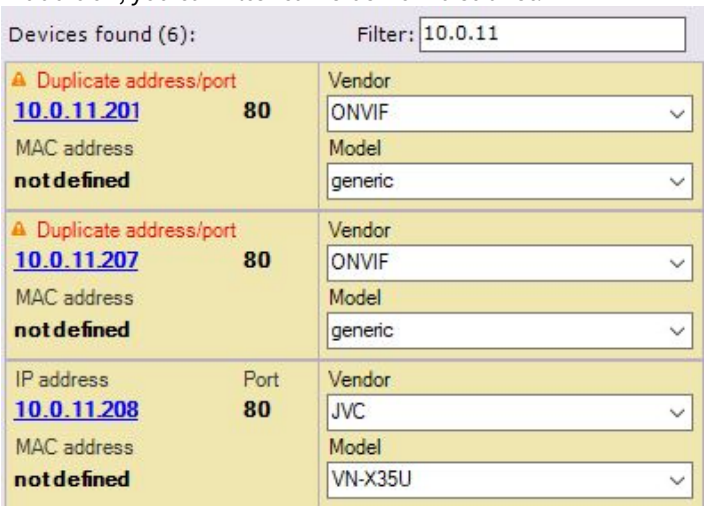
1. By status. To hide devices with a certain status, deselect the relevant checkbox.



2. By manufacturer, model or IP address. To do this, use the **Filter** field. For example, this filters the **LG** devices, the name of which contains the **LW** model and whose IP address contains **192**.



In addition, you can filter cameras from a subnet.



When adding a device, you can immediately set several configuration options, such as:

- manufacturer and model,

Note

You can search by manufacturer and model of the device.

- login and password,
- ID and object name,

> **Note**
>
> An object identifier must contain: numbers, English characters and the "_" sign.
> In the Object Tree, added devices will be sorted by ID.

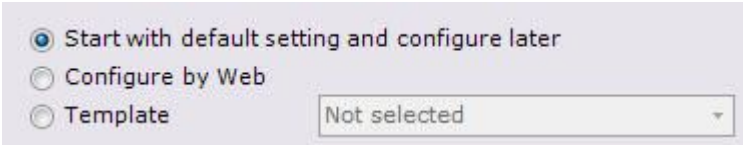
- Select an archive and set the recording parameters (see Configuring recording to an archive).
  - **No** - camera is linked to the archive, no recording;
  - **Always** - continuous recording;
  - **On motion** (default setting) - a VMD tool and an automatic rule for writing to the specified archive are automatically created for the camera you are adding. By default, recording stops when an event detection is finished.
  - **On motion/Embedded detection** - an embedded VMD tool and an automatic rule for writing to the specified archive are automatically created for the camera you are adding. By default, recording stops when an event detection is finished.

    > **Note**
    >
    > This option is available only for devices that have on-board VMD.

    > **Note**
    >
    > When creating a new device, the pre-alarm time interval for video footage recording is automatically set to 3 seconds (see Configuring recording to an archive).

  - Camera coordinates (latitude, longitude, azimuth) which are used when the camera is added to the geo map (see Adding video cameras and changing size of their icons on the map).

In addition, three modes are available for adding a device to a configuration. These are described in the following table.



	Device addition mode	Description
1	Add device with default settings	The IP device is added to the configuration with the default settings (the default settings are determined by Axxon Next itself). Adding a device in this mode will change the current settings of the device.
2	Add device with current settings	The IP device is added to the configuration with the current settings, as specified in the web interface.

	Device addition mode	**Description**
3	Add device with template settings	The IP device is added to the configuration with the settings that have been previously specified for a device of the same model in the configuration. Select a device of the same model (the "template device") in the list. Only devices of the same model are shown in the list of search results for choosing the template device. The following settings will be copied from the template device to the new, similar device: firmware, video stream settings, buffering settings, **Other** settings (see The Video Camera Object), and **Other** settings for **Microphone** and **Speaker** objects, if these are configured for the template device. This mode is best when multiple cameras of the same model are in use at a site. If this is the case, we advise to: Add and configure one device. Add the remaining devices, copying settings from the "template device" as decsribed previously.

To add an IP device to a configuration:

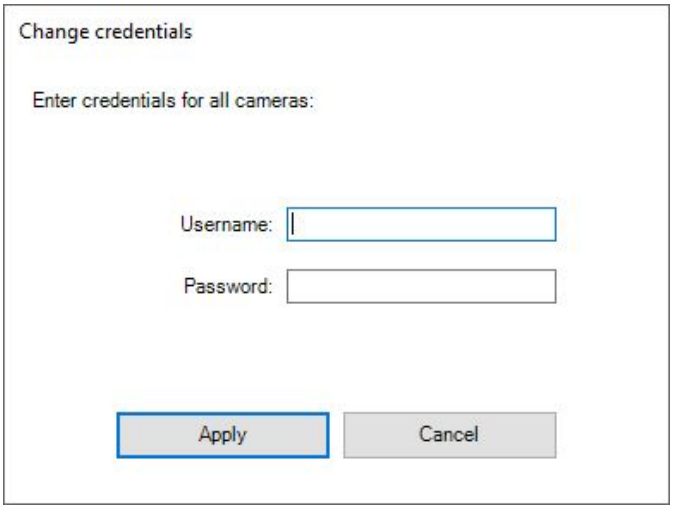
Set device settings, if necessary.

Select a mode for adding the device to the configuration.

The device is then added to the configuration.

During a single configuration change, you can add a single device or all devices listed in the search results (other than devices for which compatibility is not guaranteed). To add one device, click the button. To add all devices, click the **Add all** button.

If you set no individual access parameters while adding hardware, a dialog window appears for setting unified access parameters.



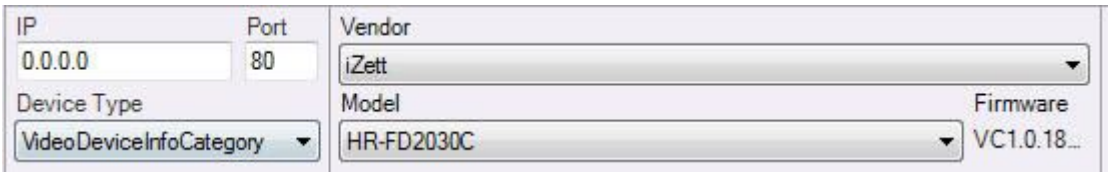
Note

To remove a device from the search results, click the button.

Note

Remember that if you add all IP devices at the asme time, the same mode and settings will be applied to all of them.

If an IP device is not shown in the search results (beacuse it is located on another subnet or contact has been temporarily lost), you can add it manually. To do so, in the neutral-colored area above the search results, select the type of IP device that you are adding (with or without edge storage), specify an IP address and port, and select the manufacturer and model.



Then add the device to the configuration by following the steps described previously.

To remove IP devices, select them in the device list (by left-clicking one or more devices, holding down the CTRL key to select multiple devices) and click the **Delete** button.

If you click the IP address, you will jump to the device web interface.

7.2.2.1 Bulk creation of IP devices

You can add IP devices in bulk by importing their parameters from a CSV file.

> **Attention!**
>
> You have to disable the UAC first.

Do the following:

1. Create a CSV file with devices listed as follows:

```
IP address, Port, Vendor, Model, Login, Password, Identifier, Object name, Latitude,
Longitude, Azimuth, Archive name, Recording mode
```

> **Attention!**
>
> For each added camera, three parameters are required: IP address, Vendor and Model.
> If a required parameter is not specified, it will be automatically set to its default value.
> You should include commas even if no additional parameters are set.

> **Note**
>
> To separate the integer and fractional parts in coordinates, use a point.

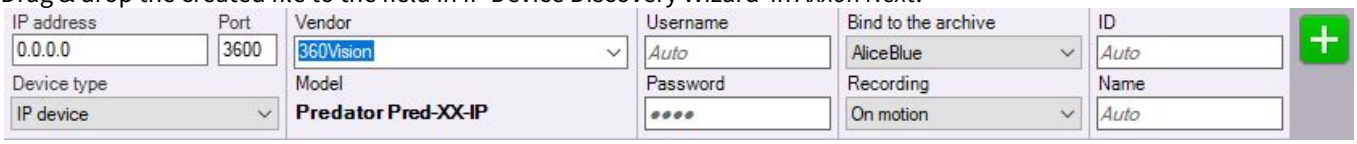
For example:

```
10.0.12.245, 80, Bosch, Dinion IP starlight 8000 MP, service, Admin12345!, 1441, Camera 1,
0, 0, 0, Archive AliceBlue, Always
10.0.12.246,, Bosch, Dinion IP starlight 8000 MP,,,,,,,,,
10.0.12.247, 80, Bosch, Dinion IP starlight 8000 MP,,,, Camera 3,,, Archive AliceBlue, On
motion
```

> **Attention!**
>
> The vendor and model of the device must be specified exactly as in the list of supported devices.

> **Note**
>
> For correct display of the object name in *Axxon Next* VMS, the CSV file must be UTF-8 or UTF-32 encoded.

2. Drag & drop the created file to the field in IP Device Discovery Wizard in *Axxon Next*.



The devices will be added to the configuration.

7.2.3 Configuring System Objects for Devices

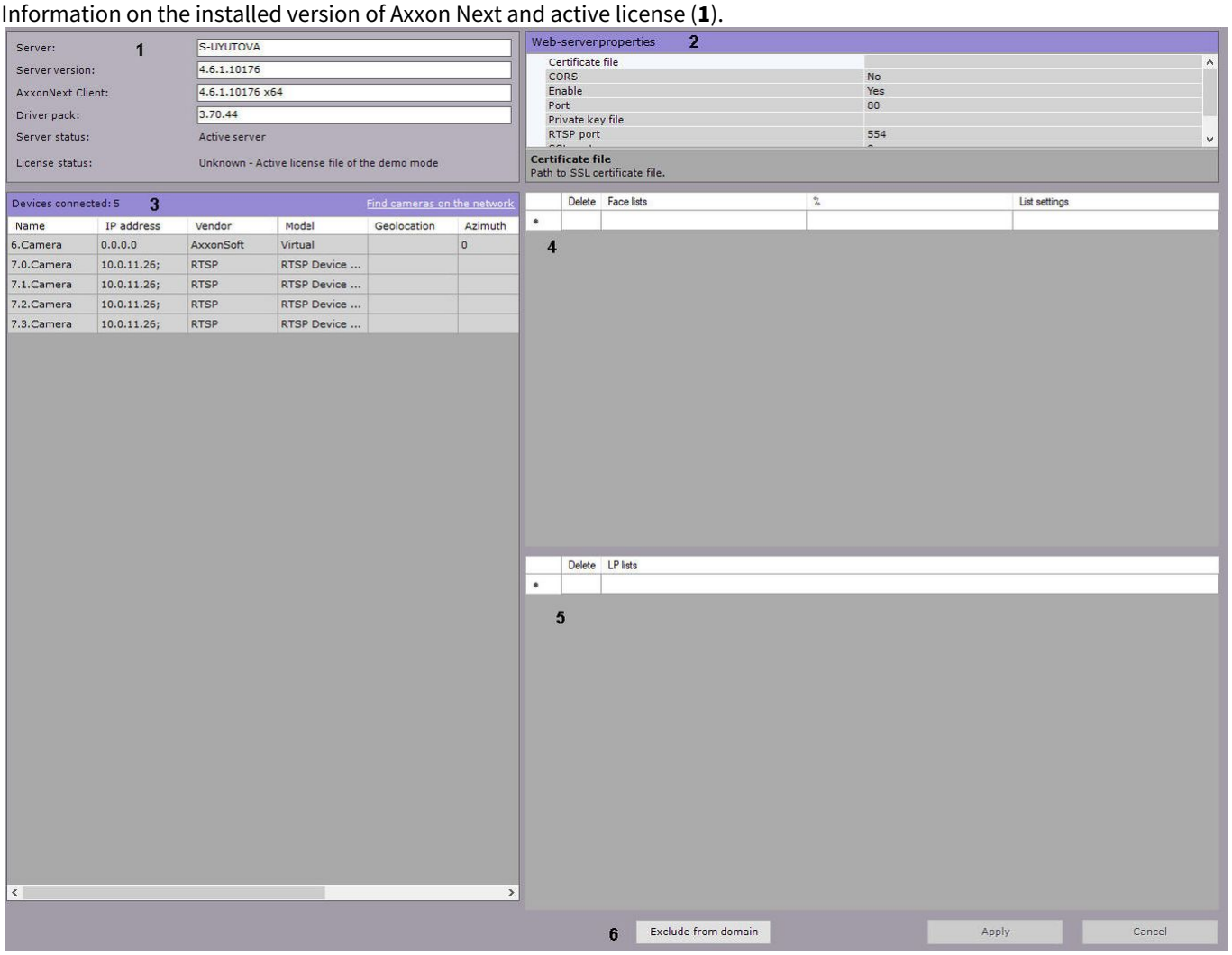
7.2.3.1 The Server Object

The **Server** object corresponds to a computer a) on which Axxon Next is installed in the **Server and Client** configuration and b) is on the Axxon-domain.

The name of the **Server** object is the same as the computer's network name by default. To change it, enter the new name in the corresponding **Server** field **1** and click the **Apply** button.

Click the **Server** object to view the following information:

1. Information on the installed version of Axxon Next and active license (**1**).



2. Web server configuration options (**3**, see Configuring the web server).
3. A list of video cameras connected to the Server, with the main parameters (**3**). Cameras are listed in a table with the following columns: **Object name**, **IP address**, **Vendor**, **Model**, **Coordinates**, **Azimuth**, **Quality**, **Codec, FPS** and **Resolution**. You can sort the table by columns.

> **Note**
>
> If no cameras have been created on a Server, you are prompted to search for IP devices on the network (the IP Device Discovery Wizard is launched, see Adding and removing IP devices).

> **Note**
>
> The number of connected devices means the total number of available IP video channels, including disabled.

4. Created lists of facial templates (**4**, see Configuring real-time facial recognition).
5. Created ANPR lists (**5**, see Configuring real-time vehicle license plate recognition)
6. The button to remove Server from an Axxon Domain (**6**, see Removing a Server from an Axxon Domain).

7.2.3.1.1 Configuring the web server

The web server allows accessing Axxon Next remotely over the Internet (see Working with Axxon Next Through the Mobile Clients, Working with Axxon Next Through the Web Client).

> **Attention**
>
> On the local computer with the Web server running, ports from the range [9001; 9001 + number of logical cores of the processor] must be open.

> **Attention**
>
> The web server recodes incoming non-H.264 videos into MJPEG format, therefore the incoming traffic may increase dramatically.

To configure the web server in the *Axxon Next* software package:

1. Select a **Server** object.

Web-server properties	
4 Certificate file	
7 CORS	No
1 Enable	Yes
2 Port	82
5 Private key file	
6 SSL port	0
3 URL path	/

2. If you want to disable the web server, set the value of **Enable** to **No** (**1**).
3. In the **Port** field, enter the port number on which the web server will be located (**2**).
4. In the **URL path** field, enter the prefix that is added to the server address (**3**).
5. To connect to a web server via the HTTPS protocol, do the following:
   a. Specify a path to the certificate (**4**).

   > **Attention!**
   >
   > Axxon Next supports SSL certificates in PEM format with TLS encryption v1.2 and 1.3 and AES GCM, AES CCM and AES CBC algorithms.
   > The public key must be in CRT format, the private key must be in KEY format.

   b. Specify a path to the private key (**5**).
   c. Enter a port number to connect to the HTTPS server (**6**);
6. If you want to enable CORS (Cross Origin Resource Sharing) in the Web server, select the corresponding parameter (**7**).
   The Axxon Next VMS supports the following:

a. CORS HTTP-headers for GET and POST requests;
b. preflight requests.

7. Click the **Apply** button.

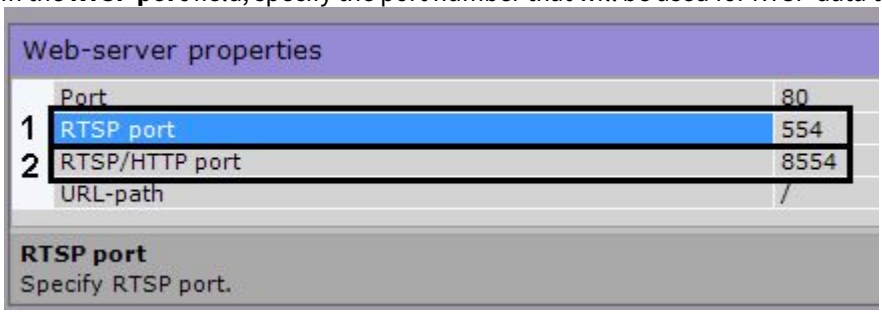
The web server is now configured and available over the Internet at the following address: http://<IP address of Axxon Next Server>:<Port>/<Prefix>. For example, if the server's IP address is **10.0.11.1**, the port is **8000**, and the prefix is **/asip-api**, then the web server can be accessed at the following address: http://10.0.11.1:8000/asip-api.

7.2.3.1.2 Configuring an RTSP Server

Axxon Next supports RTSP streaming from cameras (see Get camera live stream and Get archive stream).

To configure an RTSP Server:

1. Select a **Server** object.
2. In the **RTSP port** field, specify the port number that will be used for RTSP data transfer (**1**).



3. In the **RTSP/HTTP port** field, specify the port number for transfer of RTSP data via HTTP tunnel (**2**).
4. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of the RTSP Server is now complete.

To receive videos from an RTSP server, use the following link format:

- **Live** rtsp://login:password@IP-Address:554/hosts/HOSTNAME/DeviceIpint.N/SourceEndpoint.video:0:0 - high quality stream
  rtsp://login:password@IP-Address:554/hosts/HOSTNAME/DeviceIpint.N/SourceEndpoint.video:0:1 - low quality stream
- **Archive** rtsp://login:password@IP-Address:554/archive/hosts/HOSTNAME/DeviceIpint.N/SourceEndpoint.video:0:0/20160907T050548.723000?speed=1

where:

- **login:password** - user login and password in the *Axxon Next* VMS.

  Attention!

  For correct operation of the RTSP Server, a user name has to match the following rules:
  - start with a letter;
  - contain only Latin, numerical and following extra characters: "/", "-", "_", ".", ":", "+".

- **hosts** - permanent section of a link.
- **HOSTNAME** - server name.
- **N** - camera ID in the *Axxon Next* VMS.
- **SourceEndpoint.video:0:**0 - permanent section of a link.
- **speed** - a parameter required for receiving video streams from an Archive.

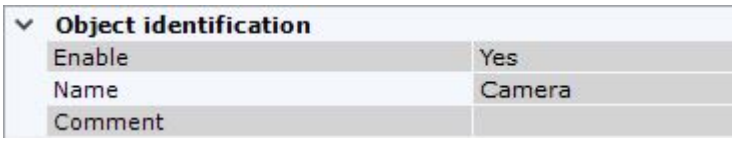
7.2.3.2 The Video Camera Object

Creation and configuration of the **Video camera** object is done in the **Hardware** tab. The object tree of a video camera is generated automatically according to its functions which are integrated into the *Axxon Next* software package (the presence of alarm inputs, relay outputs, PTZ unit, etc.).

> **Note**
>
> You can configure recording options for a camera in the corresponding tab (see Configuring Archives).

When you have added a camera via the IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices), you can edit the camera's parameters. The camera parameters are grouped as follows.

In the **Object identification** group, you can see the camera ID, and you can enter a camera name / short name and text comments.



> **Note**
>
> You may use camera's short name in hotkeys (see Notes regarding hot key actions).

> **Note**
>
> By default, the short name is a camera's ID. The full name of the video camera in the object tree is displayed in the <Short name>. <Name> format.
> After changing the short name and restarting the Client, the cameras in the object tree will be sorted by their short names.

Also, you can disable the camera by selecting **No** in the **Enable** field**.**

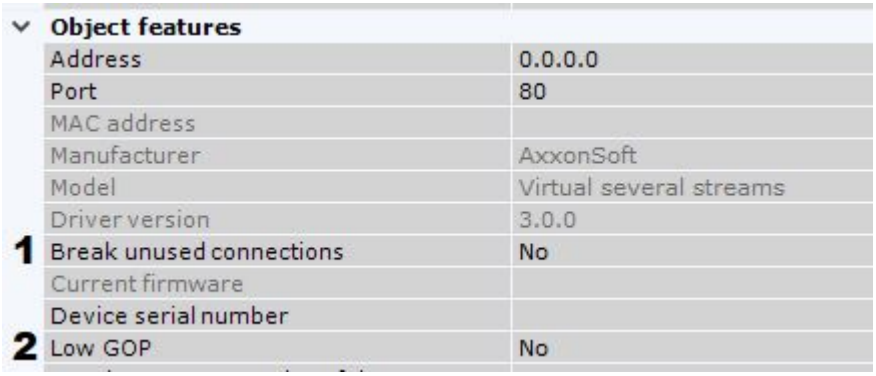
> **Attention!**
>
> In terms of licensing, every camera enabled is one channel. Disabled cameras are not subject to licensing (see Licensing of the software product). If you run out of camera licenses, disable offline / unused cameras.

In the **Object features** group you can see the following camera properties:

1. The IP address (assigned automatically and can be changed if necessary).

   > **Note**
   >
   > The port used to transmit data between the camera and the *Axxon Next* VMS (this value is set to 80 by default but can be changed if necessary).

2. At first the port number is set through the camera's Web interface.
3. Camera positioning coordinates (latitude, longitude, azimuth).
4. The MAC address.
5. Manufacturer, model, firmware.
6. The number of the video channel (for an IP Server).
7. Device serial number (for Axis devices only, see Axis IP Devices).



You can also customize a number of options shared by all video cameras in this group:

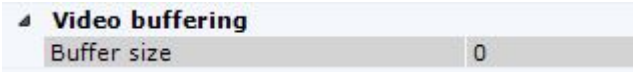
1. If you want to interrupt video streaming from the camera to the Server whenever it is not needed, select **Yes** for **Break unused connections** (**1**).
   Conditional interruption of video transmission from a camera to the Server, if:
   a. the video stream is not displayed on either Client or web client layout.
   b. the stream is currently not being recorded into Video Footage.
   c. the stream is currently not being processed by any detection tool.
2. After starting the Client, the default setting is to display video only after the first I-frame (key frame) is received. If the stream comes with a relatively long GOP length (Group of Pictures) or GOV length (Group of Video Object Planes), e. the number of P- and B-frames between I-frames in the stream, the video may be not available for a minute. In this case, select **Yes** for the **Low GOP** keyframe rate setting (**2**). This will reduce the waiting time for video by pushing the preceding I-frame that can be stored in the memory buffer on the Server. In some cases, the I-frame will not be buffered, but in most cases this means that it will soon be received from the device.

In the **Authentication** group, you can set the username and password to connect to the camera.

If the username and/or password for connecting to the camera are different from the factory settings, select **No** in the **Default** field and enter the current credentials.

> **Attention!**
>
> If the camera supports the Digest HTTP-authorization, add the symbol " **:** " to the last character of the password.

To enable video buffering on Clients, set the buffer length in milliseconds in the **Video buffering** group.



This value should be between 50 and 1000 milliseconds. If the value **0** is selected, video buffering is disabled.

In the **Camera settings** group you can see video image parameters (contrast, brightness, color saturation, etc.). When configuring these, you can look up short parameters' descriptions in Axxon Next GUI. For more detailed information, please refer to the camera manual.

Video stream settings	
Brightness	50
Color Saturation	50
Contrast	50
Day/Night Autoswitch Time	50
Exposure Mode	Auto
Flicker-free	50
Image Flip	None
IR Cut Filter Sensitivity	Medium level
IR Cut Filter	Auto
Sharpness	50
Shutter Speed	1/50
WDR Level	0
White Balance	AWB1
Wide Dynamic Range	None

Note

If you set up a camera via its web page, you cannot edit the parameters in the VMS (see Adding and removing IP devices). To configure the camera in the VMS, select the **Send settings to device** checkbox.

You can configure fisheye cameras in the **Panomorph** group.

Panomorph	
Activate	No
Camera position	Wall
Lens type	A0**V
View type	PTZ

Select a standby / substitute camera from the current Axxon domain in the **Alternative view** list**.** The sub camera shows in the layout when the main camera is offline.

Alternative view	
Alternative camera 1	27.Camera
Alternative camera 2	28.Camera

Then you can configure them to show the nearest cameras to the alerted one (see Configuring Alerted Cameras layouts).

You can configure video streams under the viewing tile. If a camera supports multistreaming, you can configure two video streams separately: high quality and low quality. When creating an IP device with a high quality video stream, a stream with a higher resolution is selected.

To configure video streams, you should make sure that the **Send settings to device** checkbox is selected.

Note

In most cases, the following parameters are set for video streams: bit rate, compression rate, frame rate, and resolution. Detailed information on configurable parameters can be found in the official reference documentation for the video camera.

High-quality video stream	0. H.264/MPEG4
Audio	Yes
Bitrate	8192
Compression Mode	Variable bitrate
Frames per second (fps)	12
Keyframes Interval	25
Quality	Medium level
Resolution	1280 x 720
Transport Protocol	TCP
Video Codec	H.264
Low-quality video stream	**1. H.264/MJPEG/MPEG4**
Audio	Yes
Bitrate	4096
Compression Mode	Variable bitrate
Frames per second (fps)	12
Keyframes Interval	25
Quality	Medium level
Resolution	352 x 288
Transport Protocol	TCP
Video Codec	H.264

To configure video streams, use the settings available in the Axxon Next interface, not the web interface of the camera itself.

If you are using the web interface to configure camera's video streaming, you have to set the expected fps value to have the stream parameters correctly displayed (see Viewing camera status).

You can alter video stream settings by sending an HTTP request to the device (see its manufacturer's documentation) through some macros (see Executing a web query, Starting an external program on Servers, Starting an external program on Clients).

High-quality video stream	0. H.264
Bitrate	512
Compression mode	Variable bitrate
Expected frames per second (fps)	30
Keyframes interval	15
Quality	Medium level
Resolution	QXGA (2048 x 1536)
Transport protocol	TCP
TV standard	NTSC
Video codec	H.264
Low-quality video stream	1. H.264
Adaptive video stream	Disabled

Important

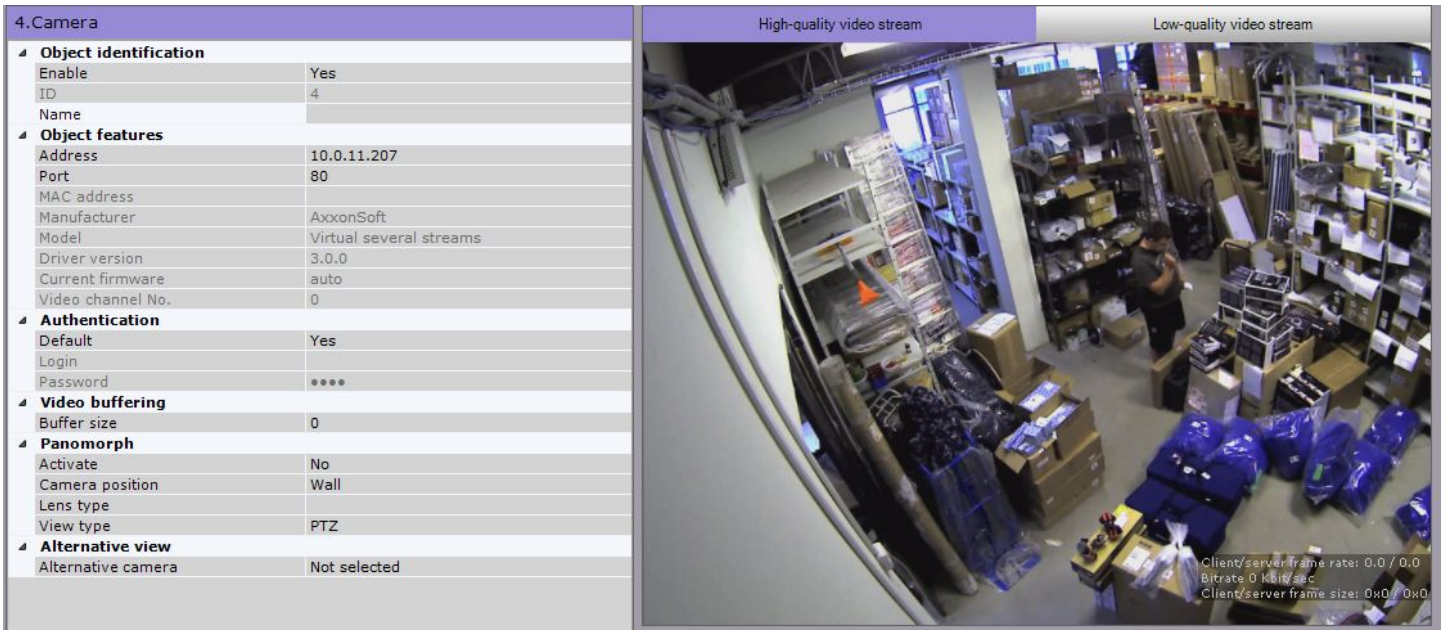
You can any select any stream for live view or recording (see Selecting video stream quality in a viewing tile, Configuring recording to an archive).

If a camera does not support multistreaming, the parameters of the video streams are identical. In this case only the parameters of the high-quality video stream are editable (the parameters of the low-quality video stream are adjusted automatically).

Note

When some video stream parameters are changed, the video camera may automatically restart, in which case it will become unavailable for some time (depending on the video camera).

Image from the camera will be displayed in the preview window.



> **Note**
>
> The indicator in the upper right corner displays the current time and recording status (see Time Display).

To switch between streams in the preview window, click the **High-quality stream** and **Low-quality stream** tabs.

> **Note**
>
> When a stream is selected in the preview window, the settings for the relevant stream are displayed; settings for the other stream are hidden.

7.2.3.2.1 Restoring default camera settings

You can restore the default Axxon Next settings for a camera.

Current camera settings will be discarded and replaced with the defaults.

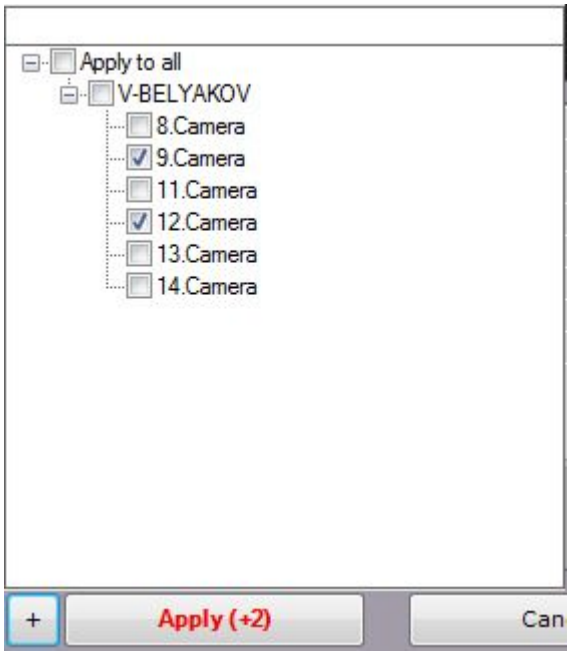
To restore default camera settings, select a camera in the device list. Click the **Reset** button and then the **Apply** button.

7.2.3.2.2 Mass configuration

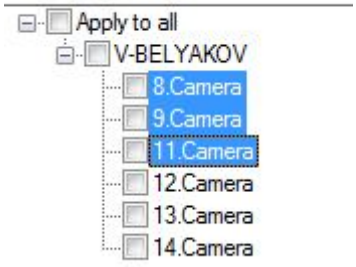
You may bulk configure cameras of the same model and firmware. Do the following:

1. Configure any camera.

2. Click the + button and select cameras the same settings should be applied to.



A list of cameras of the same model and firmware opens. To quickly select multiple cameras, hold down the Shift key, select the first and last cameras the settings should be applied to. Selecting any camera from highlighted ones will result in selecting them all.



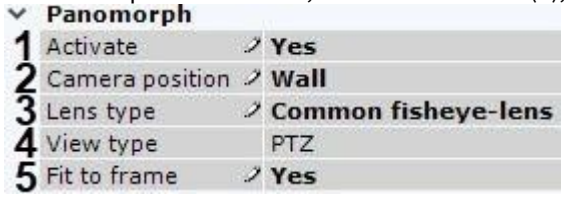
3. Click the **Apply** button.

> **Note**
>
> The number in brackets refers to the number of configured cameras.

7.2.3.2.3 Configuring fisheye cameras

If you are using a fisheye camera or video camera with a panomorph lens, configure the following settings of the **Video camera** object, in the **Panomorph** settings group:

1. To activate panoramic view, in the **Activate** list (**1**), select **Yes**.



2. In the **Camera position** list (**2**), select the mount of the video camera.

> **Important!**

Some system features and functions depend on the chosen position of the video camera: digital zoom, display of video in the surveillance sector on the map, and immersive mode.

3. If it is a fisheye camera, select the **Common fisheye-lens** lens type (**3**).If it is a video camera with a panomorph lens, select the corresponding type. When using wide angle dual lens XingYun devices, select the **Double sphere fisheye-lens** type.

   Note

   The types of device lenses certified by ImmerVision are listed in the document.
   You cannot select ImmerVision lenses in Linux.

4. If it is a video camera with an Immervision lens, select the appropriate display mode (**4**): 360° panorama with virtual PTZ (**PTZ**) or 180° panorama (**Perimeter**).
5. A typical fisheye lens with standard settings produces a skewed image in the upper part of the screen. If this is the case, enable the **Fit to frame** option (**5**)**.**

   Important!

   If you have multiple streams from a camera, you need to calibrate each stream. To do this, before applying the settings, switch to the required stream tab in the viewing tile (see The Video Camera Object).

   Important!

   Video is calibrated every time you change any parameters in the **Panomorph** group.

   Manual calibration is also available. To do this:

   a. Disable **Fit to frame**, select **No** in the **Enable** list and click the **Apply** button.
   b. Select **Yes** in the **Enable** list.
   c. Configure the video area (circle). Left-click any point inside the circle and move the mouse pointer. To change the diameter of the circle, do as follows: click an anchor point and move the mouse pointer.

   d. Click the **Apply** button.
   After applying the settings, the area outside the circle will be cut.

Configuration of the fisheye camera is complete.

7.2.3.2.4 Connecting and configuring cameras over standard protocols

7.2.3.2.4.1 Notes on configuring video cameras connected via ONVIF

On page:

- Connection through ONVIF Generic driver
- Resolution
- IP devices on other subnets (behind a NAT)
- IP devices which partially support the ONVIF protocol

By default, all ONVIF devices in the system are added as multistreaming (the **ONVIF 2.0** driver, see Adding and removing IP devices).

If the camera does not support multistreaming, then the video stream of lower quality will be disabled.

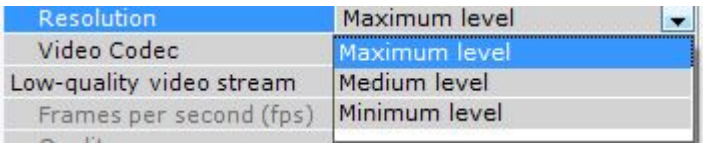
> **Note**
>
> In some cases (for example, if you do not have video from a camera), you may need to synchronize the time between the server and the camera when you connect them via ONVIF.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you connect cameras via ONVIF, auto focus (AF) and auto aperture are not available

Connection through ONVIF Generic driver
With the ONVIF Generic driver, you have the following options:

1. **Currently offline cameras can transfer their settings when they get back online.**
   To make it happen, follow the steps below:
   a. Add a camera via the ONVIF Generic driver (see Generic Drivers (General device, generic)).
   b. When the device comes online, reset its parameters (see Applying and resetting settings).
   c. Load the configuration from the device (see Applying and resetting settings).
2. **You can select another camera in object settings while keeping all layouts, macros and archive storage parameters.**
   To make it happen, follow the steps below:
   a. Add a camera via the ONVIF Generic driver (see Generic Drivers (General device, generic)).
   b. Set archive storage parameters and create macros.
   c. In **Camera** object settings, specify a new IP address and user credentials (see The Video Camera Object).
   d. Reset device settings (see Applying and resetting settings).
   e. Load the configuration from the device (see Applying and resetting settings).
   This operation will result in swapping cameras without the need to create a new object and remove the old one.

Resolution
Axxon Next offers three resolutions for video from cameras connected via ONVIF: maximum, medium, and minimum.

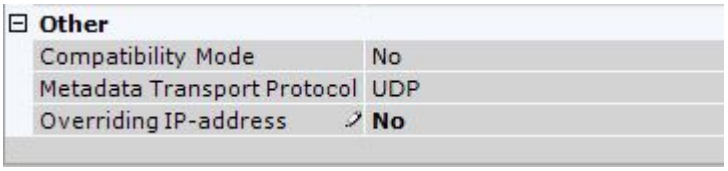


A description of the resolution levels is given in the table.

Camera type / Resolution	Maximum	Medium	Minimum
Non-megapixel	Maximum camera resolution	Average camera resolution	Minimum camera resolution
Megapixel	Maximum camera resolution	Camera resolution closest to 1024x768	Camera resolution closest to 640x480

IP devices on other subnets (behind a NAT)
By default, NAT-friendly mode is enabled for cameras connected via the ONVIF driver.

To disable NAT-friendly mode, in the settings of a camera, select the **No** value for **Overriding IP address**.



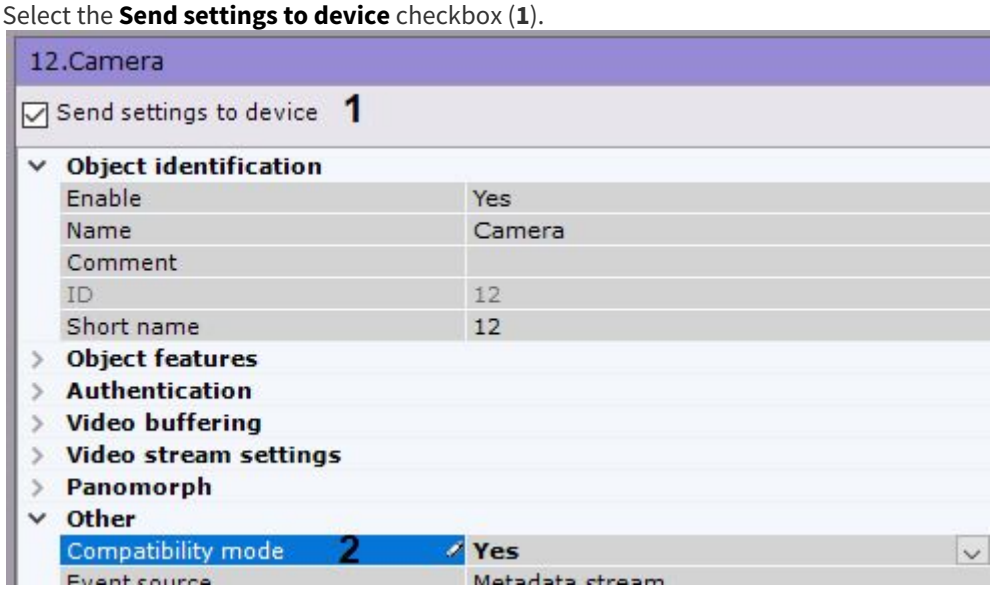
IP devices which partially support the ONVIF protocol
To connect IP devices which only partially support ONVIF functions to the Axxon Next software package, you must use an ONVIF driver with compatibility mode enabled.

> **Note**
>
> Such video cameras include Hikvision models and early versions of firmware from Sony, Samsung, and others.

Compatibility mode makes it possible to receive a video image from video cameras; however, some capabilities of the Axxon Next software package will be unavailable. Enabling compatibility mode is recommended if the connection settings are correct, but there is no video image.

To enable it you need:

1. Select the **Send settings to device** checkbox (**1**).

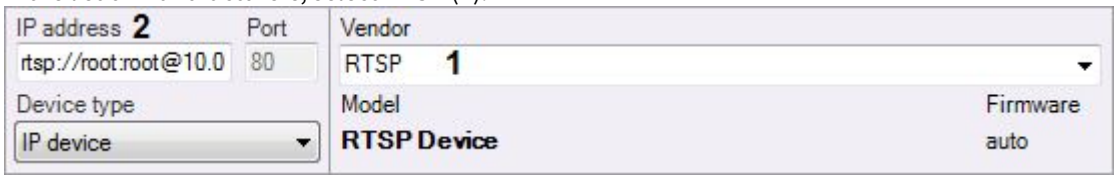


2. Select **Yes** for **Compatibility mode** (**2**).

7.2.3.2.4.2 Configuring connection of devices via RTSP

Configuring connection of single-channel devices
In IP Device Discovery Wizard, add a camera via RTSP with the following parameters:

1. In the list of manufacturers, select **RTSP** (**1**).



2. URL of the RTSP feed (**2**). In general form, the address is as follows: **rtsp://<IP address of RTSP server>:<Port on RTSP server>/<Path>**.

Up to three simultaneous video streams are supported from RTSP-connected cameras. To access multiple streams, enter the relevant RTSP addresses, placing a semi-colon (;) after each address: **rtsp://<IP address of RTSP server1>:<Port on RTSP server1>/<Path>**; **rtsp://<IP address of RTSP server2>:<Port on RTSP server2>/<Path>**; **rtsp://<IP address of RTSP server3>:<Port on RTSP server3>/<Path>**.

Important!

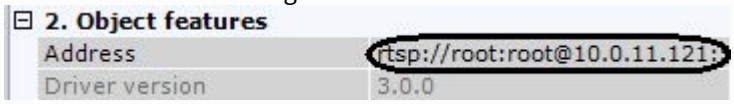
Generally, RTSP server parameters (port and path) are set through the web interface of the video camera. To do so, refer to the manufacturer's documentation for the video camera

Important!

If the username and/or password contain forbidden characters, such as "@", you have to escape these characters with relevant ASCII codes to avoid log-in problems. The "@" symbol is escaped as %40. For example, for a successful RTSP connection your device's URL may look like this: "rtsp://admin:New%40edge@192.168.0.75:554/RVi/1/1".

Note

In some cases, the address format may be different. For example, a user name and password may be added to the address for connecting to the video camera.



You are advised to refer to the manufacturer's documentation for the video camera.
Even if the password field is empty, the address string must include a colon (:).
A correct address may look like this: rtsp://user:@10.10.27.50:10017/...
An example of an incorrect address: rtsp://user@10.10.27.50:10017/...

The **Video camera** object is created. If the address of the RTSP server is correctly specified, the video feed from the camera is shown in a preview tile.

Note

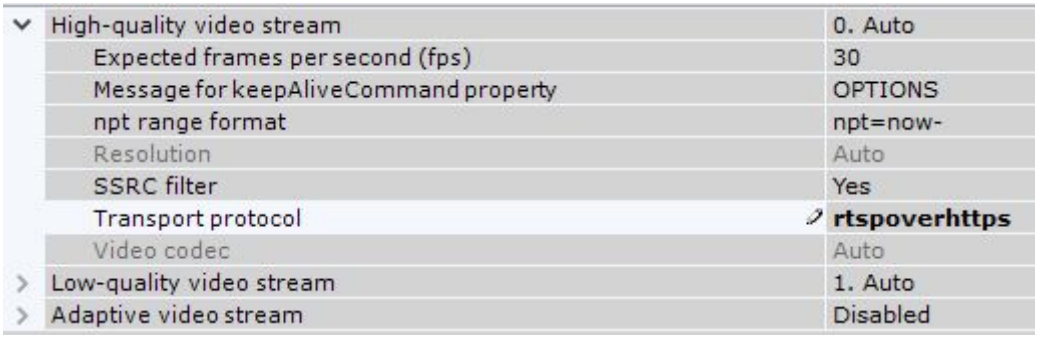
Port, **Login** and **Password** can not be edited. These settings are specified in the URL of the feed.

If video is unavailable, examine the log file *APP_HOST.lpint*, which is located in the folder <Axxon Next installation folder>\AxxonNext\Logs.

Important!

If APP_HOST.lpint is empty, in the log management utility, check the detail level of logging for the Axxon Next Server (see Configuring Logging Levels), The recommended detail level is **Debug**.

Since Drivers Pack version 3.62.2953, RTSP streaming over HTTPS is supported. To set this option, set the **Transport Protocol** parameter to **rtspoverhttps**.

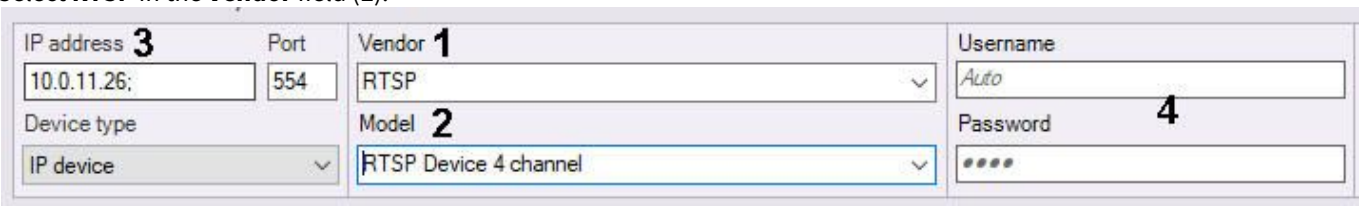


Important!

To get good video from some cameras, you should select **No** for the **SSRC filter** in the video settings

Configuring connection of multi-channel devices
To connect multi-channel devices (e.g. DVRs) over RTSP, do as follows:

1. Go to IP Device Discovery Wizard and open the manual addition field (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. Select **RTSP** in the **Vendor** field (**1**).



3. In **Model**, select the model name, that shows the corresponding number of device channels (**2**). For example, for a four-channel device, select **RTSP Device 4 channel.**
4. In **IP address**, enter the device address (**3**).

Attention!

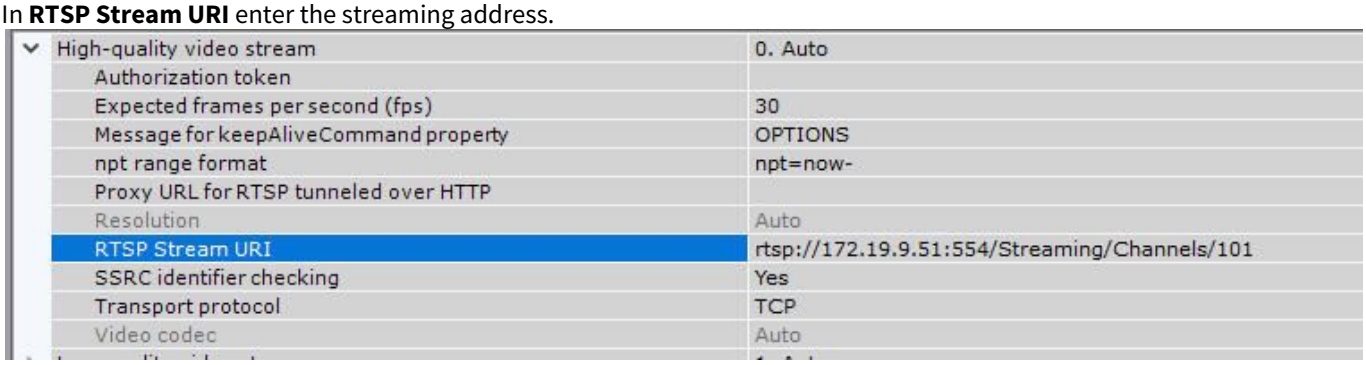
Following the IP address, add the"; " symbol. Otherwise some channels may fail.

5. Enter the user name and password (**4**).
6. Click .

A parent IP server object will be created hosting a number of video cameras objects equal to the number of channels on the device.

To configure channels, do as follows:

1. Select a child **Camera** object.
2. In **RTSP Stream URI** enter the streaming address.



3. Repeat the steps for all channels.

7.2.3.2.4.3 Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol

On the page:

- General information on GB/T28181 standard and supported functions

- Configuring an IP-device to operate via GB/T28181 standard
- Configuring IP-device connection via GB/T28181

General information on GB/T28181 standard and supported functions

Axxon Next supports connecting devices via the Chinese standard GB/T28181. This standard is based on SIP over UDP (and over TCP since GB/T28181-2016). The GB/T28181 uses the following protocols over SIP:

- SDP (Session Description Protocol)
- MANSCDP (Monitoring and Alarming Network System Control Description Protocol)
- MANSRTSP (Monitoring and Alarming Network System Real Time Streaming Protocol)

This allows receiving the status of sensors, events from detectors, PTZ and relays control, access the built-in archive of the IP device (make sure to set the correct device time zone in the *Axxon Next*), etc. within the SIP session. Single-channel and multi-channel devices in single-stream mode and working with the UDP and TCP transport protocols is also supported.

At the same level of the OSI model, the RTP/RTCP protocol also works in parallel with the SIP protocol, which makes it possible to use the following functions:

- video transmission (including archival) in H264, H265, or MJPEG format.
- audio transmission in G.711a, G.711u, or G.726 format in PS (Program Stream) only. Archive audio is not supported.

For the most up-to-date information on this standard and the features supported in *Axxon Next*, see the Documentation Drivers Pack.

Configuring an IP-device to operate via GB/T28181 standard

Configuration of IP devices connected via GB/T28181 is performed through the web interface of the devices. Settings are not sent from *Axxon Next* to the device.

Before connecting a camera via this protocol to Axxon Next, perform the following steps to configure SIP on the device:

1. Set the Server IP to equal the Server's IP address.
2. Set the Server port (5060 by default).
3. Set the Device ID. The ID should be set on all cameras connected via the GB/T28181 protocol and must be unique. The format of the connection code (device ID and server ID) is a 20-digit number:
    a. the first 10 digits specify the address (according to the GB/T-2260-2007 standard);
    b. the next 10 digits indicate device information.
    If the IP device is located behind NAT, then forward and explicitly specify the external address of the Server, the port/port range for receiving video, and the SIP port of *Axxon Next* Server. Example:
    34020000001110000001/50557-51557@10.3.3.11/85.172.174.36
4. For the device to perform autodiscovery of the Server more quickly, reduce the default value of RefreshRegTime. The name of this setting may vary on some cameras.

Note.

For telemetry to work correctly, set RefreshRegTime to more than 600.

Examples of IP device settings for connection via GB/T28181 standard

Configuring IP-device connection via GB/T28181

Important!

No more than one SIP server can be used for IP devices connection via the GB/T28181 protocol. This means that several **Video Capture Device** objects with **GBT28181** type can be created in the *Axxon Next* hardware tree, however, the part of the address after @ must match for all of them. The server ID, local address, external address, and port must be the same for all devices. If at least one parameter is different (for example, the local IP address is not set for some device when it is set for other devices), then such a device will not start.

Note.

Axxon Next does not support auto-discovery of devices connected via GB/T28181 and these devices are not added using the Camera discovery tool.

After configuring the device as described earlier, add it to Axxon Next as follows:

1. Run the IP discovery wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the form for manually adding an IP device, in the **Vendor** list, select **GBT28181** (**1**).

3. In the **IP address** field specify the value of Device ID parameter set during IP device configuration (**2**). The following additional parameters can be specified optionally as follows:
[gbt://]deviceID[/videoPort]@serverID[-serverLocalIP[/serverExternalIP]]
OR
[gbt://]deviceID[/videoPortFirst-videoPortLast]@serverID[-serverLocalIP[/serverExternalIP]]
where:
deviceID is the Device ID parameter;
serverID is the identifier of the *Axxon Next* Server generated according to the same rules as the IP device ID (see above).
videoPort is the port for receiving video;
videoPortFirst - videoPortLast is range of ports for receiving video;
serverLocalIP is the local IP address of the Axxon Next Server, which sets the network interface on which the Server should be available;
serverExternalIP is the global IP address of the Axxon Next Server; this parameter is in use when the Axxon Next Server is behind the gateway. In this case, this IP address is specified as the SIP Server IP address in the IP device settings.

Examples.

```
34020000001320000008@34020000002000000001

34020000001320000008@34020000002000000001-10.0.40.246/113.125.160.58
34020000001320000008@34020000002000000001-10.0.40.246
34020000001320000008@34020000002000000001-/113.125.160.58
34020000001320000008/50200@34020000002000000001
34020000001320000008/50200-50210@34020000002000000001-10.0.40.246
```

4. In the **Port** field, enter the local port number that the Axxon Next Server shall listen for receiving messages from the IP device (**3**). Usually this is the default SIP port: 5060.

Note.

The IP device SIP port is detected automatically.

5. The **Username** and the **Password** fields are not used (**4**).
6. Click the button.

Connection of the camera via GB/T28181 is now complete.

Examples of IP device settings for connection via GB/T28181 standard

On the page:

- Jovision
- Bosch
- Huawei
- Hikvision
  - GB/T28181-2011
  - GB/T28181-2016
- Dahua

Examples of IP device settings and connection settings in Axxon Next for GB/T28181 standard are given below.

Note

The protocol is usually supported by cameras for China market not having any English interface. This is why some of the screenshots below are given in Chinese.

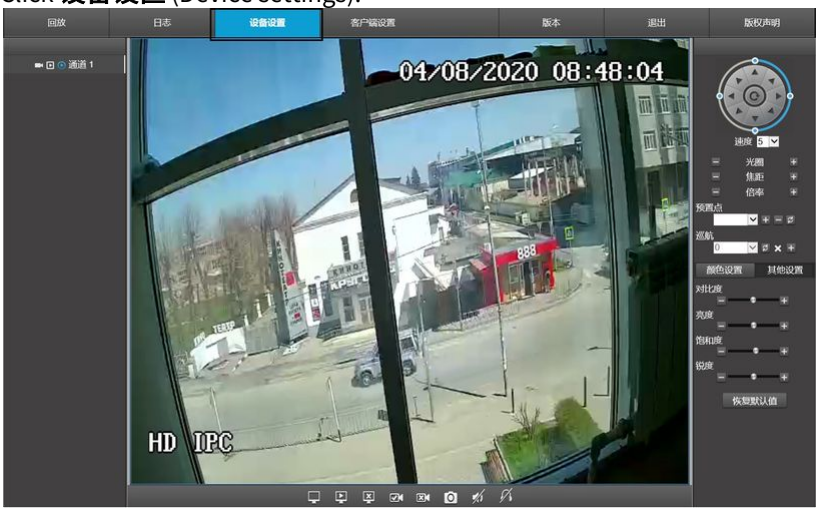
Jovision

Configure a Jovision camera for operation via GB/T28181 standard as follows:

1. Perform the following settings of the IP-device:
   a. Go to the IP device web interface.
   b. Enter your login and password.

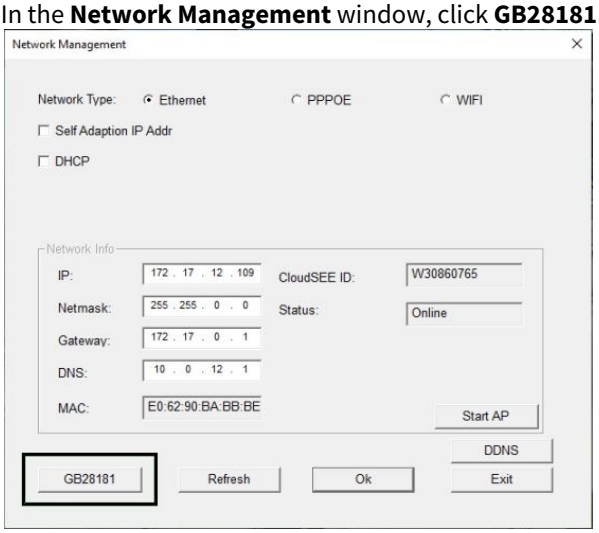
   c. Click **确定** (Confirm) in the dialog box opened.

d. Click **设备设置** (Device settings).

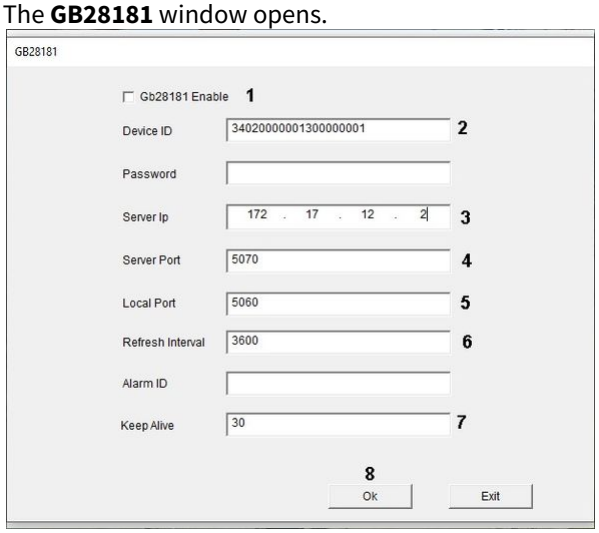


e. Select **Network** in the dialog box.

f. In the **Network Management** window, click **GB28181**.



g. The **GB28181** window opens.



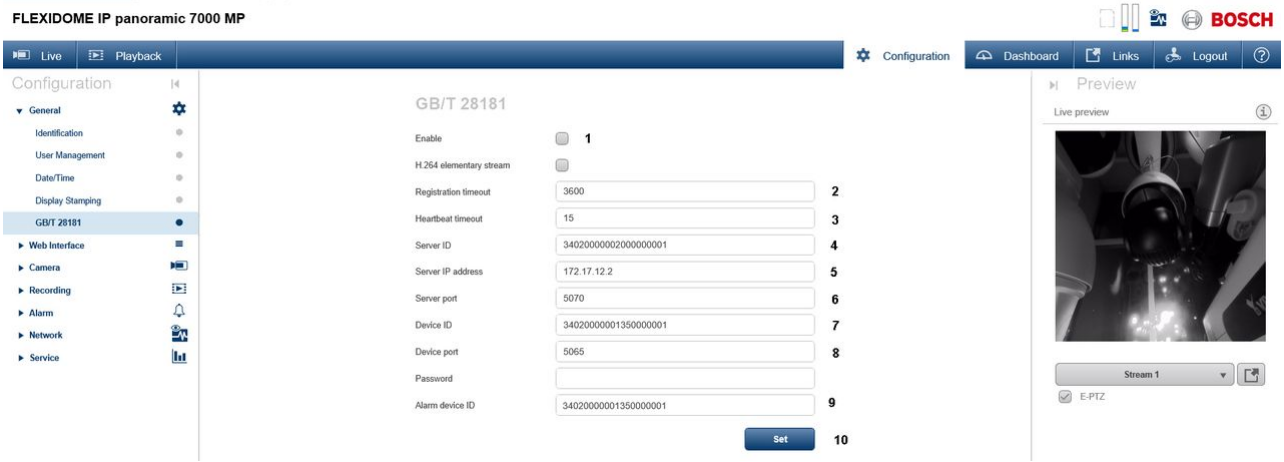
h. Set the **Gb28181 Enable** checkbox checked (**1**).
i. In the **Device ID** field, enter the device identification number as described in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol (**2**). Example on the picture shows Device ID 34020000001300000001.
j. In the **Server Ip** field, enter the Axxon Next server IP-address (**3**). The example shows IP 179.17.12.2
k. In the **Server Port** field, enter Axxon Next server port number assigned for receiving messages from the IP device (**4**) The example shows port 5070.
l. In the **Local Port** field, enter the IP device SIP port number (**5**).
m. In the **Refresh Interval** field, enter the devise discovery period in seconds (**6**). The value shall not be less than 600.
n. In the **Keep Alive** field, enter the period in seconds for sending messages confirming the device activity (**7**).
o. Click the **Ok** button (**8**).

2. In Axxon Next:
   a. Example value for the **IP address** field: 34020000001300000001@34020000001300000002-10.0.40.246/179.17.12.2 The Server ID 34020000001300000002 is not set on the Jovision device, so any Server ID can be chosen as per the conditions set in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol.
   b. Set **Port** to 5070.

Bosch

Configure a Bosch camera for operation via GB/T28181 standard as follows:

1. Perform the following settings of the IP-device:
   a. Go to the IP device web interface.
   b. Go to **Configuration - General - GB/T 28181**.



   c. Set the **Enable** checkbox checked (**1**).
   d. In the **Registration timeout** field, enter the devise discovery period in seconds (**2**). The value shall not be less than 600.
   e. In the **Heartbeat timeout** field, enter the period in seconds for sending messages confirming the device activity (**3**).

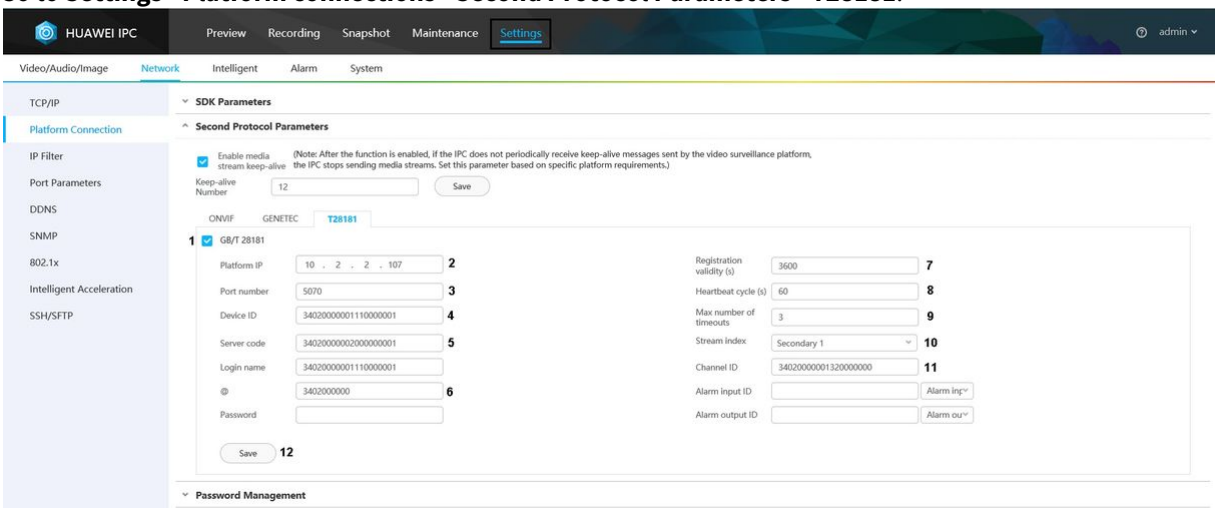
f. In the **Server ID** field, enter the Axxon Next server identification number (**4**). The example shows 34020000002000000001.
g. In the **Server IP address** field, enter the Axxon Next server IP-address (**5**). The example shows 172.17.12.2
h. In the **Server port** field, enter Axxon Next server port number assigned for receiving messages from the IP device (**6**). The example shows port 5070.
i. In the **Device ID** field, enter the device identification number as described in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol (**7**). Example on the picture shows Device ID 34020000001350000001.
j. In the **Device port** field, enter the IP device SIP port number (**8**).
k. In the **Alarm device ID** field, enter the channel idettification number (**9**). The same value as **Device ID** may be used.
l. Click the **Set** button (**10**).

2. In Axxon Next:
   a. Example value for the **IP address** field: 34020000001350000001@34020000002000000001-10.0.40.246/172.17.12.2
   b. Set **Port** to 5070.

Huawei

Configure a Huawei camera for operation via GB/T28181 standard as follows:

1. Perform the following settings of the IP-device:
   a. Go to the IP device web interface.
   b. Go to **Settings - Platform connections - Second Protocol Parameters - T28181**.



   c. Set the **GB/T 28181** checkbox checked (**1**).
   d. In the **Platform Ip** field, enter the Axxon Next server IP-address (**2**). The example shows 10.2.2.107
   e. In the **Port number** field, enter Axxon Next server port number assigned for receiving messages from the IP device (**3**). The example shows port 5070.
   f. In the **Device ID** field, enter the device identification number as described in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol (**4**). Example on the picture shows Device ID 34020000001110000001.
   g. In the **Server code** field, enter the Axxon Next server identification number (**5**). The example shows Server ID 34020000002000000001.
   h. In the **@** field, enter the first 10 digits of the address according to GB/T-2260-2007 (**6**).
   i. In the **Registration validity (s)** field, enter the devise discovery period in seconds (**7**). The value shall not be less than 600.
   j. In the **Heartbeat cycle (s)** field, enter the period in seconds for sending messages confirming the device activity (**8**).
   k. In the **Max number of timeouts** field, enter the maximum number of Heartbeat message omissions after which the device connection is considered lost (**9**).
   l. Select the video stream from the **Stream index** drop-down list (**10**).
   m. In the **Channel ID** field, enter the channel identification number in the same format as Device ID and Server ID (**11**).
   n. Click the **Save** button (**12**).
2. In Axxon Next:
   a. Example value for the **IP address** field: 34020000001110000001@34020000002000000001-10.2.2.107
   b. Set **Port** to 5070.

Hikvision

The Hikvision cameras may support several GB/T28181 standard versions: GB/T28181-2011 and/or GB/ T28181-2016. Examples of configuration for these versions are given below.

Setup video streams as follows before you configure the GB/T28181 standard on the IP device:

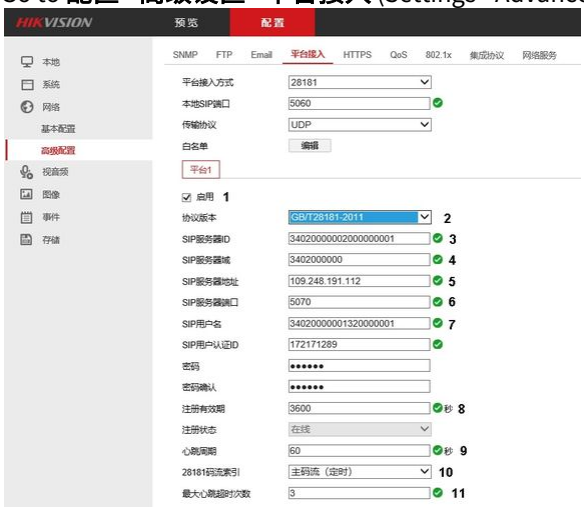
1. Go to **配置 - 视音频 - 视频** (Settings - Video and Audio - Video).
2. Configure the main stream:
   a. From the **码流类型** (Stream type) drop-down list, select **主码流 (定时)** (Main stream) (**1**).

   b. From the **分辨率** (Resolution) drop-own list, select the main stream resolution (**2**).
   c. From the **视频编码** (Codec) drop-own list, select the main stream codec (**3**).
3. Configure the second stream:
   a. From the **码流类型** (Stream type) drop-down list, select **子码流** (Second stream) (**1**).

   b. From the **分辨率** (Resolution) drop-down list, select the second stream resolution (**2**).
   c. From the **视频编码** (Codec) drop-down list, select the second stream codec (**3**).
4. Click **保存** (Save).

GB/T28181-2011

1. Go to **配置 - 高级设置 - 平台接入** (Settings - Advanced settings - Platform access).



2. Set the **启用** (Enable) checkbox (**1**).
3. From the **协议版本** (Protocol version) drop-down list, select **GB/T28181-2011** (**2**).
4. In the **SIP服务器ID** (SIP Server ID) field, enter the Axxon Next Server ID (**3**). The example shows Server ID 34020000002000000001.
5. In the **SIP服务器域** (SIP Server domain) field, enter first 10 digits of the address according to GB/T-2260-2007 (**4**).
6. In the **SIP服务器地址** (SIP Server address) field, enter the Axxon Next server IP-address (**5**). The example shows IP 109.248.191.112.
7. In the **SIP服务器端口** (SIP Server Port) field, enter the Axxon Next server port number assigned for receiving messages from the IP device (**6**). The example shows port 5070.
8. In the **SIP用户名** (SIP user name) field, enter the device identification number as described in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol (**7**). Example on the picture shows Device ID 34020000001320000001.
9. In the **注册有效期** (Registration period) field, enter the devise discovery period in seconds (**8**). The value shall not be less than 600.
10. In the **心跳周期** (Heartbeat period) field, enter the period in seconds for sending messages confirming the device activity (**9**).
11. From the **28181码流索引** (Video stream) drop-down list, select one of the streams configured earlier (**主码流 (定时)** for Main stream or **子码流** for Second stream) (**10**).
12. In the **最大心跳超时次数** (number of timeouts for Heartbeat messages) field, enter the maximum number of Heartbeat message omissions after which the device connection is considered lost (**11**).
13. Go to the **视频通道编码ID** (Video channel ID) tab at the bottom of the setings page (**1**).

14. Enter the identifiers of all channels of the IP device in the same format as the device identifiers (**2**). The example shows ID 34020000001320000002.
15. Click the **保存** (Save) button (**3**).

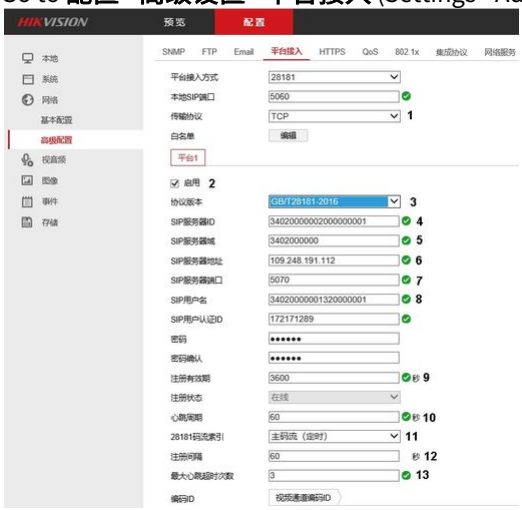
In Axxon Next:

1. Example value for the **IP address** field: 34020000001320000001@34020000002000000001-109.248.191.112

2. Set **Port** to 5070.

GB/T28181-2016

1. Go to **配置 - 高级设置 - 平台接入** (Settings - Advanced settings - Platform access).



2. From the **传输协议** (Transport protocol) drop-down list, select the transport level protocol to be in use: UDP or TCP (**1**).
3. Set the **启用** (Enable) checkbox (**2**).
4. From the **协议版本** (Protocol version) drop-down list, select **GB/T28181-2016** (**3**).
5. In the **SIP服务器ID** (SIP Server ID) field, enter the Axxon Next Server ID (**4**). The example shows Server ID 34020000002000000001.
6. In the **SIP服务器域** (SIP Server domain) field, enter first 10 digits of the address according to GB/T-2260-2007 (**5**).
7. In the **SIP服务器地址** (SIP Server address) field, enter the Axxon Next server IP-address (**6**). The example shows IP 109.248.191.112.
8. In the **SIP服务器端口** (SIP Server Port) field, enter the Axxon Next server port number assigned for receiving messages from the IP device (**7**). The example shows port 5070.
9. In the **SIP用户名** (SIP user name) field, enter the device identification number as described in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol (**8**). Example on the picture shows Device ID 34020000001320000001.
10. In the **注册有效期** (Registration period) field, enter the devise discovery period in seconds (**9**). The value shall not be less than 600.
11. In the **心跳周期** (Heartbeat period) field, enter the period in seconds for sending messages confirming the device activity (**10**).
12. From the **28181码流索引** (Video stream) drop-down list, select one of the streams configured earlier (**主码流 (定时)** for Main stream or **子码流** for Second stream) (**11**).
13. In the **注册间隔** (Registration interval) field, enter the devise discovery interval in seconds (**12**).
14. In the **最大心跳超时次数** (number of timeouts for Heartbeat messages) field, enter the maximum number of Heartbeat message omissions after which the device connection is considered lost (**13**).
15. Go to the **视频通道编码ID** (Video channel ID) tab at the bottom of the setings page (**1**).

16. Enter the identifiers of all channels of the IP device in the same format as the device identifiers (**2**). The example shows ID 34020000001320000002.
17. Click the **保存** (Save) button (**3**).

In Axxon Next:

1. Example value for the **IP address** field: 34020000001320000001@34020000002000000001-109.248.191.112
2. Set **Port** to 5070.

Dahua
Configure a Dahua camera for operation via GB/T28181 standard as follows:

1. Perform the following settings of the IP-device:
   a. Go to the IP device web interface.
   b. Go to **网络设置** - **平台接入 - 国标28181** (Network settings - Platform access - GBT28181).

   c. Set the **接入使能** (Enable connection) checkbox (**1**).
   d. In the **SIP服务器编号** (SIP server number) enter the Axxon Next Server ID (**2**). The example shows Server ID 34020000002000000001.
   e. In the **SIP服务器IP** (SIP server IP address) enter the Axxon Next server IP address (**3**). The example shows IP 192.168.88.33
   f. In the **设备编号** (Device number) field, enter the device identification number as described in Connecting cameras via the GB/T28181 protocol (**4**). Example on the picture shows Device ID 34020000001300000001.
   g. In the **本地SIP服务器端口** (Local SIP port) field, enter the IP device SIP port number (**5**).
   h. In the **心跳周期** (Heartbeat period) field, enter the period in seconds for sending messages confirming the device activity (**6**).
   i. In the **SIP服务器端口** (SIP server port) field, enter the Axxon Next server port assigned for receiving messages from the IP device (**7**). The example shows port 5060.
   j. In the **注册有效期** (Registration period) field, enter the devise discovery period in seconds (**8**). The value shall not be less than 600.
   k. In the **最大心跳超时次数** (number of timeouts for Heartbeat messages) field, enter the maximum number of Heartbeat message omissions after which the device connection is considered lost (**9**).
   l. Click **刷新** (Update).
2. In Axxon Next:
   a. Example value for the **IP address** field: 34020000001300000001@34020000002000000001-192.168.88.33
   b. Set **Port** to 5060.

7.2.3.2.4.4 Generic Drivers (General device, generic)

General Device is a generic driver that supports nearly all devices from a particular camera vendor.

There are 2 types of generic drivers:

1. **General device**. Most configuration of General Device-connected cameras is performed via the web interface of the device. A detailed list of supported features is given on the Documentation Drivers Pack page.
2. **generic**. When connected via a generic driver, the configuration of the device is read and transferred to *Axxon Next*. After that, you can configure the device from within *Axxon Next*.

Connection via generic drivers is available for the following devices:

	Axis	Bosch	Panasonic	Samsung	Sony	ONVIF
General Device	+	+	+	+	+	
generic	+	+	-	-	-	+

Devices connected via General Device drivers are findable via the IP device discovery wizard. The method for adding them to the system is the same as for ordinary devices (see Adding and removing IP devices).

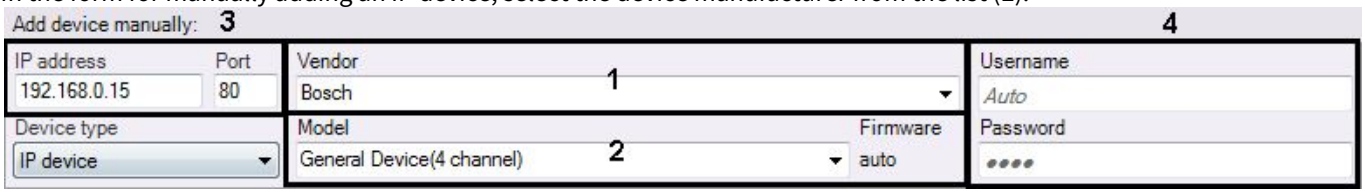
Note

Axis devices are affected by a special restriction: if the user name and password for device access do not equal the default values, the number of channels for the device is not discoverable. Therefore, all non-integrated devices whose user name and password for device access do not equal the default values will be shown in search results as 1-channel General Devices.

You should always select a generic driver manually.

If a IP device is not displayed in search results, you can add it manually:

1. In the form for manually adding an IP device, select the device manufacturer from the list (**1**).



2. In the **Model** field, select **General Device** or **generic** (**2**). For Axis and Bosch General devices, select the number of channels on the device.
3. Enter the IP address and port for the device connection (**3**).
4. Enter the user name and password for connecting to the device (**4**).
5. Click the button.

Addition of the device is now complete.

Attention!

If a device, connected via a generic driver, is temporarily not available or it has incorrect connection settings, then it is not added to the configuration.

7.2.3.2.4.5 Connecting and setting up devices with FFmpeg driver

FFmpeg generic driver is applied to receive video and audio data:

1. over RTSP and RTMP protocols (**1 channel device** model),
2. from connected USB devices (**Dshow device (USB camera)** model),
3. from the Server monitor screen (**Desktop capturer** model),
4. from the application window on the Server (**Window capturer** model, without audio).

Receiving video and audio with FFmpeg driver over RTSP and RTMP protocols.

Attention!

FFmpeg currently has the following limitations:

- only one stream is supported;
- video codecs are limited to H.264/H.265, audio to AAC.

To add a device, use the following address format:

```
protocol://[login:password@]IP-address[:port][/path]
```

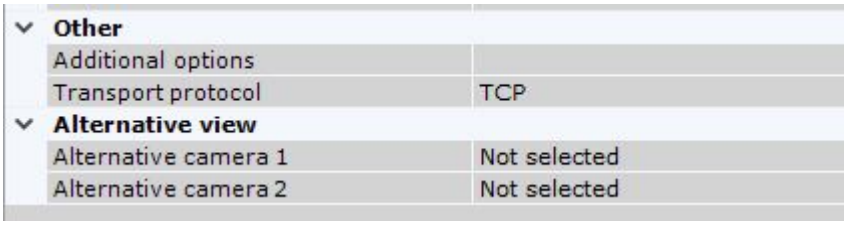
Note

You can set login and password either in the address bar or in corresponding fields when adding the device.
If authentication parameters are specified both ways, the address bar has the priority.

Attention!

If you use the address bar method, you must specify the port number. If no port number is specified, default ports are used (554 for RTSP, 1935 for RTMP).

After you add a device, you can set a parameter string for FFmpeg app in the **Additional Options** field. Parameters and their values differ by format, particular device and protocol used.



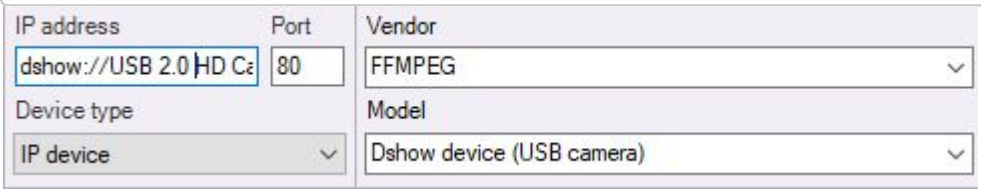
Note

See the full list of parameters for RTSP protocol on the page.

Receiving audio and video from connected USB devices
If a device is added automatically (see Adding and removing IP devices), separate objects are created for video and audio streams.

If you need to create a single object, add the device manually using the following address format:

```
dshow(<index>)://(<video_device_name>)(:<audio_device_name>)
```



If no index is specified in the address, the value is **0**. Use a non-**zero** index if you use multiple devices with the same name.

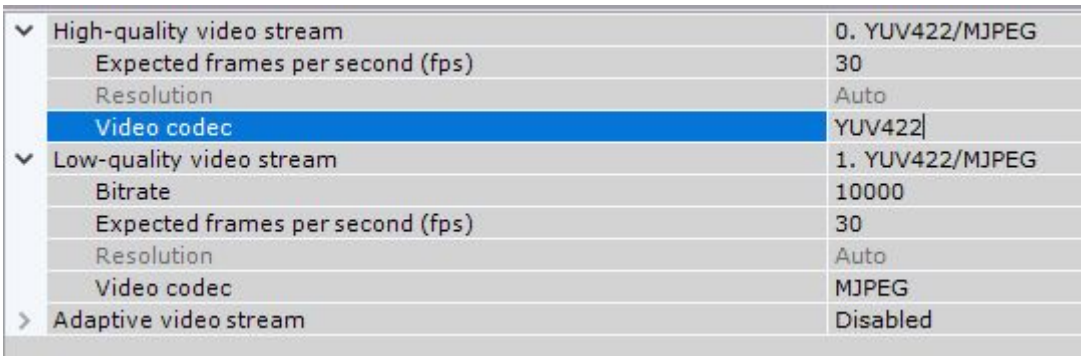
For example:

```
dshow://USB 2.0 HD Camera
dshow1://USB 2.0 HD Camera
```

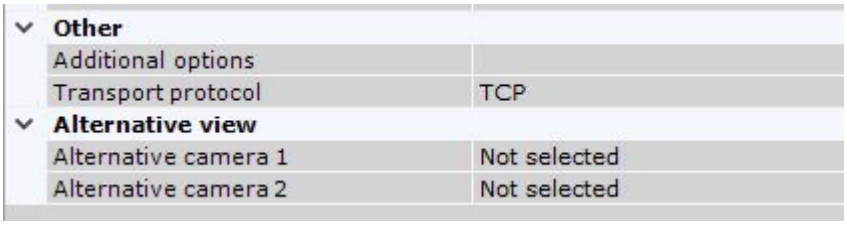
Note

If a video or audio device is not present, it may be not specified in the address.

After you added the device, you have to set up its streams. For archive recording and transferring videos over the network, MJPEG codec is recommended; for detection purposes, use YUV422.



If required, you can set a parameter string for FFmpeg app in the **Additional Options** field.



For example: receive video from a USB camera in YUV420P format, 1280x960 resolution.

```
-pixel_format yuv420p -video_size 1280x960
```

Parameters and their values differ by format and particular device. To list possible parameter values, run the following command from the Windows command line:

```
ffmpeg -list_options true -f dshow -i video="<device name>"
```

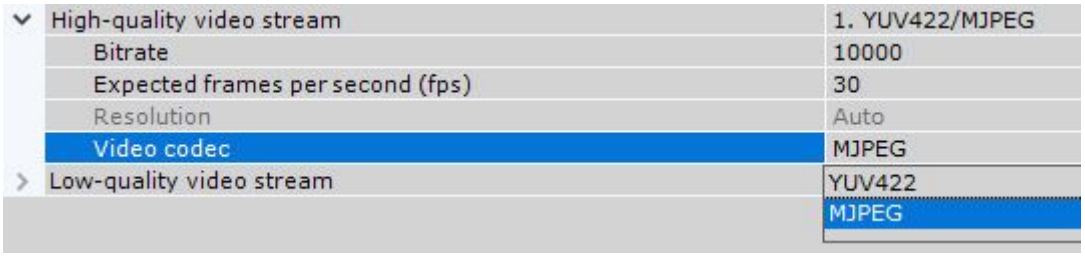
Receiving video from the Server monitor with the FFmpeg driver
To receive video from the Server monitor screen, add an object with the following address format:

```
gdigrab://desktop
```

Note

To receive video from remote Clients, you have to use RTSP transmission (see Receiving video from the remote Client monitor with the FFmpeg driver), or install Axxon Next's Server services on your Client (see Installation).

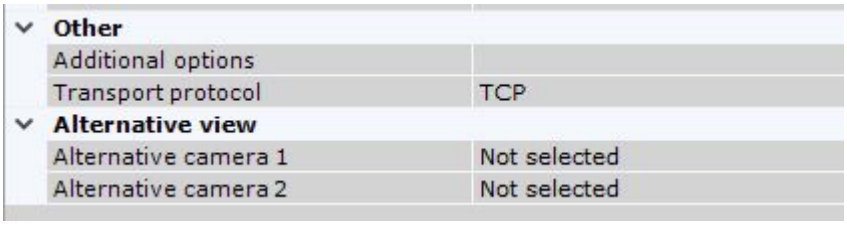
By default, videos are transmitted from all Server monitors in MJPEG format. YUV422 format is also available.



Note

The YUV422 requires more network bandwidth. Take this into account when you select a format.

You can set a parameter string in the **Additional Options** field.



Supported parameters	Description
-draw_mouse <int>	Mouse cursor presence. Available range: 0 to 1, default value: 1.
-show_region <int>	Capture area indication. Available range: 0 to 1, default value: 1.
-framerate <video_rate>	FPS value.
-video_size <image_size>	Video image size.
-offset_x <int>	Capture area X offset. Default value is 0.
-offset_y <int>	Capture area Y offset. Default value is 0.

An example parameter string:

```
-draw_mouse 1 -show_region 1 -framerate 25 -video_size 640x480 -offset_x 10 -offset_y 10
```

Receiving video from the remote Client monitor with the FFmpeg driver

Your Server can receive video along with system and microphone audio from a remote Client with the FFmpeg driver over RTSP. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. On the Server:
    a. Open the port for receiving data from the remote Client
    b. Add a **1 channel device** and specify its address in the **IP address** field in the following format:

```
listenrtsp://<Server IP-address>:<Port>/<RTSP-link>
```

Note

RTSP link may be omitted.

2. On the remote Client:
   a. Download the package of open source FFmpeg libraries from the official website.
   b. Open the command prompt, and go to the folder containing the ffmpeg.exe file.
   c. Execute the following command:

```
ffmpeg.exe -f gdigrab -video_size 640x480 -i desktop -c:v <Codec> -f rtsp -muxdelay
0.1 "listenrtsp://<Server IP-address>:<Port>/<RTSP-link>"
```

where
Codec parameter may take mpeg2video, mpeg4, h264 or hevc value;
video_size 640x480 and **-muxdelay 0.1** parameters may be omitted or altered.
If necessary, you may specify additional parameters in this command.

Supported parameters	Description
-draw_mouse <int>	Mouse cursor presence. Available range: 0 to 1, default value: 1.
-show_region <int>	Capture area indication. Available range: 0 to 1, default value: 1.
-framerate <video_rate>	FPS value.
-video_size <image_size>	Video image size.
-offset_x <int>	Capture area X offset. Default value is 0.
-offset_y <int>	Capture area Y offset. Default value is 0.

After the command execution, remote Client's screen is shared on your display.

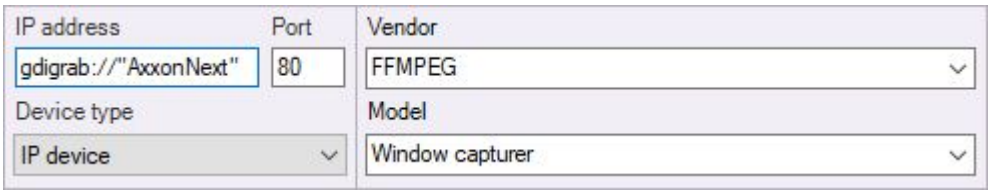
Receiving video from the application window on the Server with the FFmpeg driver
To receive video from the application window on the Server, add an object with the following address format:

```
gdigrab://"Window title"
```

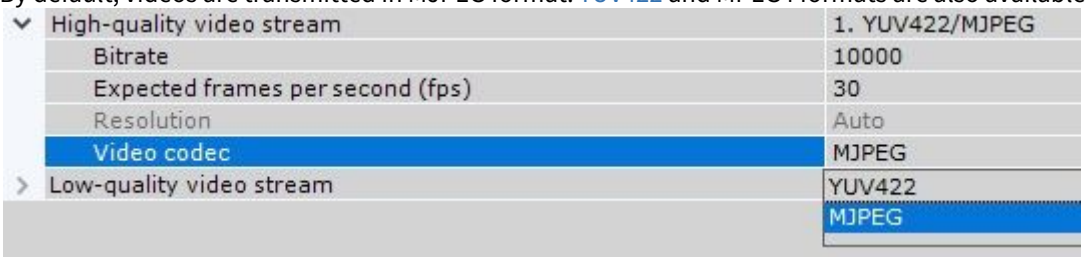
where "Window title" is the application window header.

Attention!

The address may contain only Latin characters. If the app window header contains some other characters, use any 3rd party utility to change them.



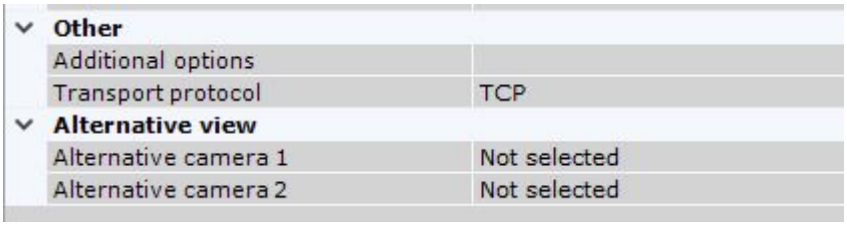
By default, videos are transmitted in MJPEG format. YUV422 and MPEG4 formats are also available.



Note

The YUV422 requires more network bandwidth. Take this into account when you select a format.

You can set a parameter string in the **Additional Options** field.



Supported parameters	Description
-draw_mouse <int>	Mouse cursor presence. Available range: 0 to 1, default value: 1.
-show_region <int>	Capture area indication. Available range: 0 to 1, default value: 1.
-framerate <video_rate>	FPS value.
-video_size <image_size>	Video image size.
-offset_x <int>	Capture area X offset. Default value is 0.
-offset_y <int>	Capture area Y offset. Default value is 0.

An example parameter string:

```
-draw_mouse 1 -show_region 1 -framerate 25 -video_size 640x480 -offset_x 10 -offset_y
10
```

7.2.3.2.5 Configuring connection of video cameras with dynamic IP addresses

Axxon Next needs a permanent hostname, such as provided by DynDNS or similar dynamic DNS services to work with IP cameras that use DHCP.

Use your permanent DynDNS hostname to access an IP camera with a dynamic IP address.

7.2.3.2.6 Configuring virtual video cameras

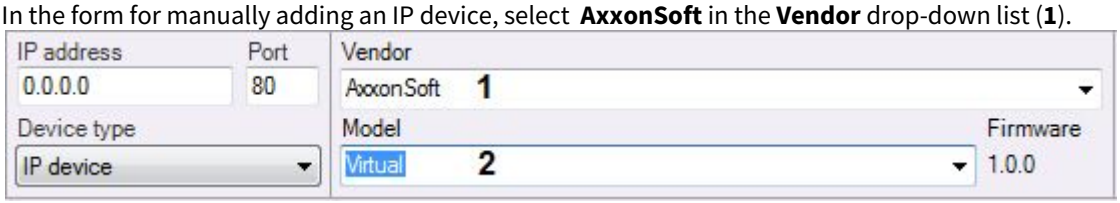
The *Axxon Next* software package enables you to work with virtual video cameras.

This requires running *Axxon Next* in test mode and consists of imitating a stream of video data by playing an available video clip (recording). You can play video recordings using video compression algorithms supported by Axxon Next (see Specifications of the Axxon Next Software Package).

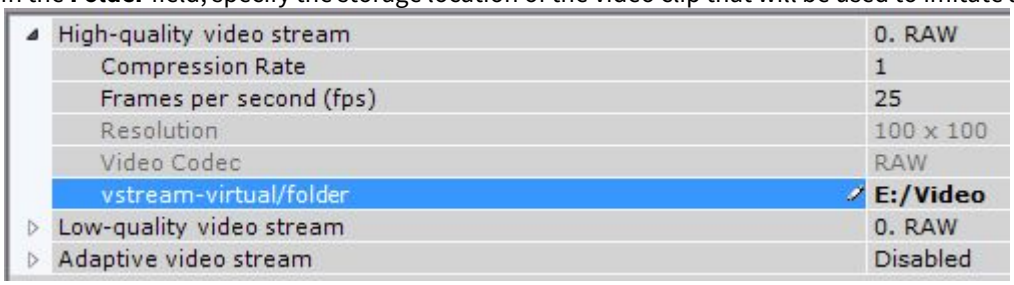
> **Note**
>
> Do not use video with B-frames.

To create and configure a virtual video camera, complete the following steps:

1. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the form for manually adding an IP device, select **AxxonSoft** in the **Vendor** drop-down list (**1**).



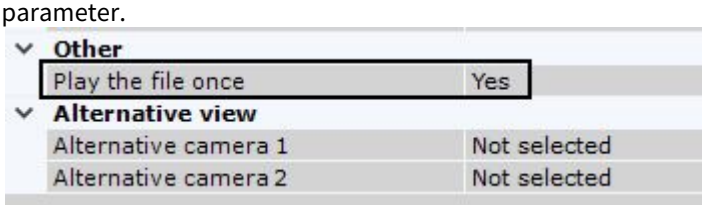
3. Select **Virtual** from the models list to emulate a single-stream video camera. Select **Virtual several streams** to emulate a video camera supporting multiple streams (**2**).
4. Click the button
5. In the **Folder** field, specify the storage location of the video clip that will be used to imitate a video signal.



> **Note**
>
> The name of the video file and its file path must consist only of Latin characters

> **Note**
>
> Scanning for files in a specified directory is limited to one minute.

6. By default, a video will be played back endlessly. To switch to one-shot playback, set **Yes** for the corresponding parameter.



7. Click the **Apply** button.

7.2.3.2.7 Privacy mask settings

You can impose a privacy mask upon video image to hide parts of the scene from viewing:

- live videos;
- recorded videos;

- exported videos and still frames.

Masking function works only for users whose role has the **View Masked Video** parameter set to OFF (see Creating and configuring roles).

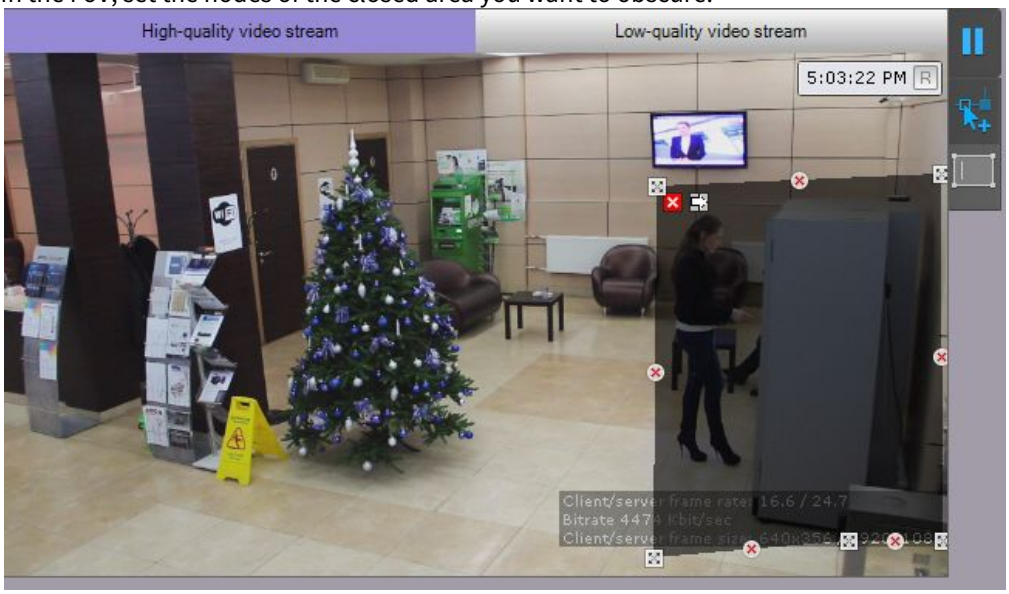
To configure privacy masking, do the following:

1. Select the **Object Tracker** object and click the button.

> **Note**
>
> For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

> **Note**
>
> You cannot do it if the button is depressed (see Putting a text over the camera window).

2. In the FoV, set the nodes of the closed area you want to obscure.

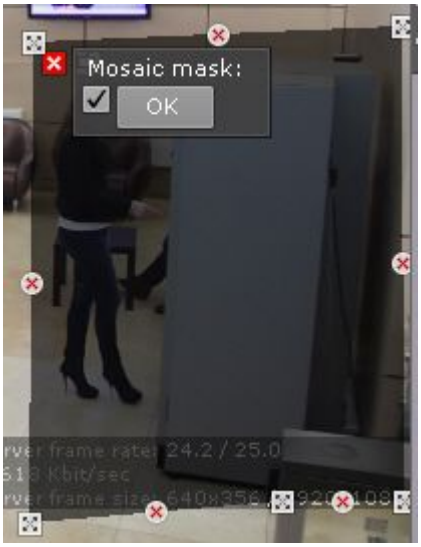


> **Note**
>
> When the area is being constructed, the nodes are connected by a two-color dotted line which outlines the area's borders.

Action	Result
Click in the viewing tile	Creates a new area node
Right-click on a created node	Deletes the area node
Position the cursor on a node and hold down the left mouse button while you move the mouse	Moves the area node
Click the button.	Deletes the area

3. You can mask the selected area with black matte (by default), or pixelate it. To pixelate the area, do the following:
   a. Click .

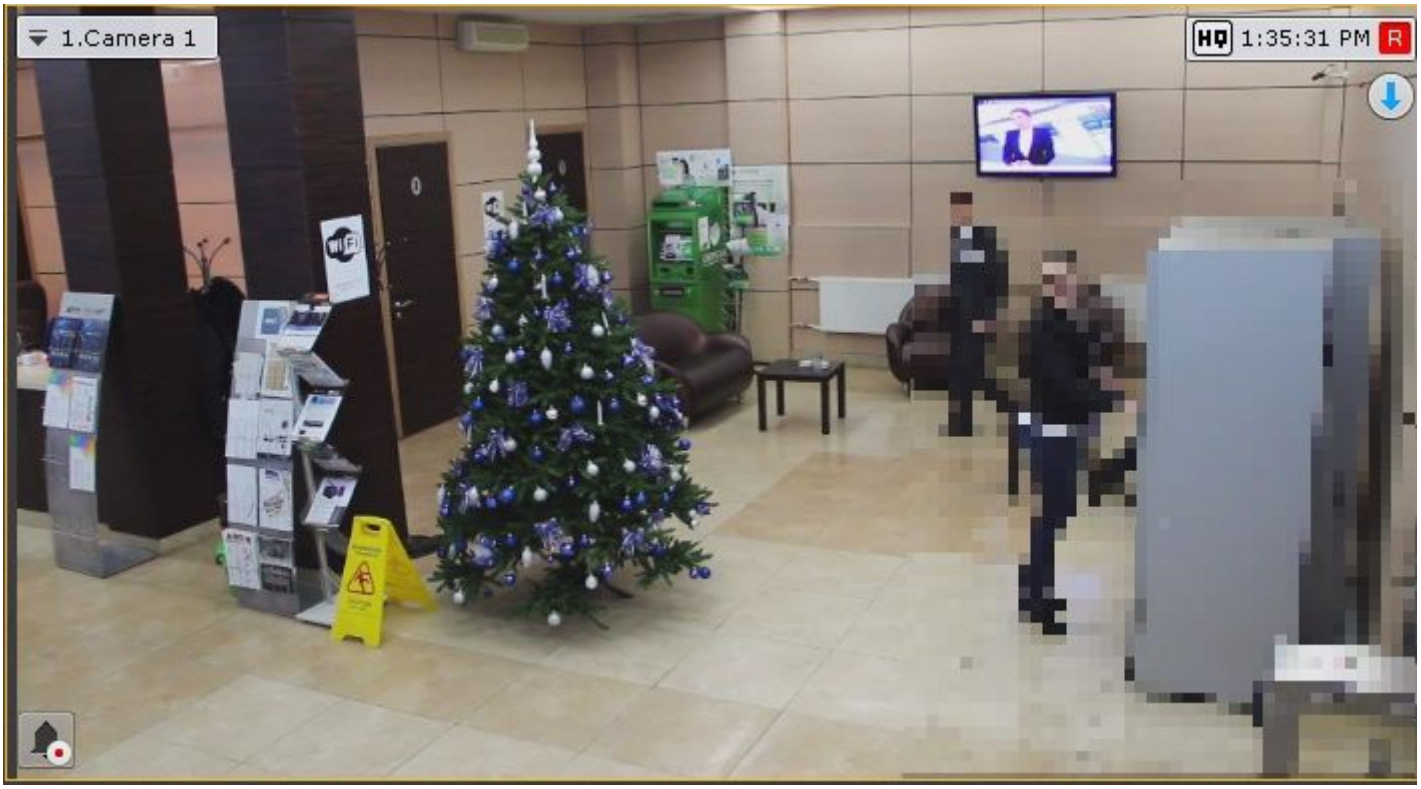
b. Select the checkbox.



c. Click the **OK** button.

4. You can specify several areas.
5. Click the **Apply** button.

Mask configuration is complete. When you view video from this camera, the selected area will be hidden.



7.2.3.2.8 Putting a text over the camera window

You can superimpose a text over video in the Camera window. This text will be visible to all users in all monitoring modes but will not be present on exported frames and videos.

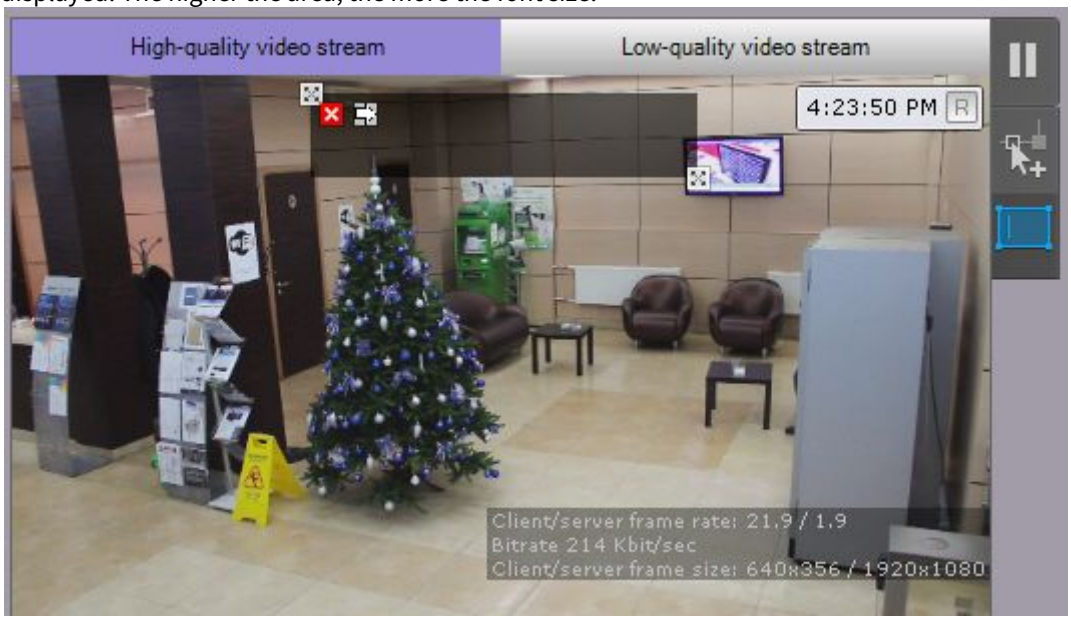
To put a text over the camera window, do the following:

1. Select a **Camera** object and click .

> **Note**
>
> You cannot do it if the button is depressed (see Privacy mask settings).

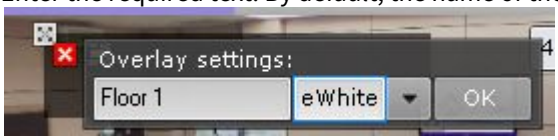
> **Note**
>
> For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

2. Click any mouse button anywhere in FoV to set two anchor points of the rectangular area where the text will be displayed. The higher the area, the more the font size.



> **Note**
>
> To remove the area, click the button.

3. Click .
4. Enter the required text. By default, the name of the video camera is displayed.



> **Attention!**
>
> The text string has to fit the width of the area. If not, you cannot apply settings. For a longer text, make the area wider.

5. Select a font color from the dropdown list.
6. Click the OK button.
7. If required, you can set multiple text areas in different parts of FoV.
8. Click **Apply**.

Now, the text is superimposed over the video image.

7.2.3.3 The IP Server Object

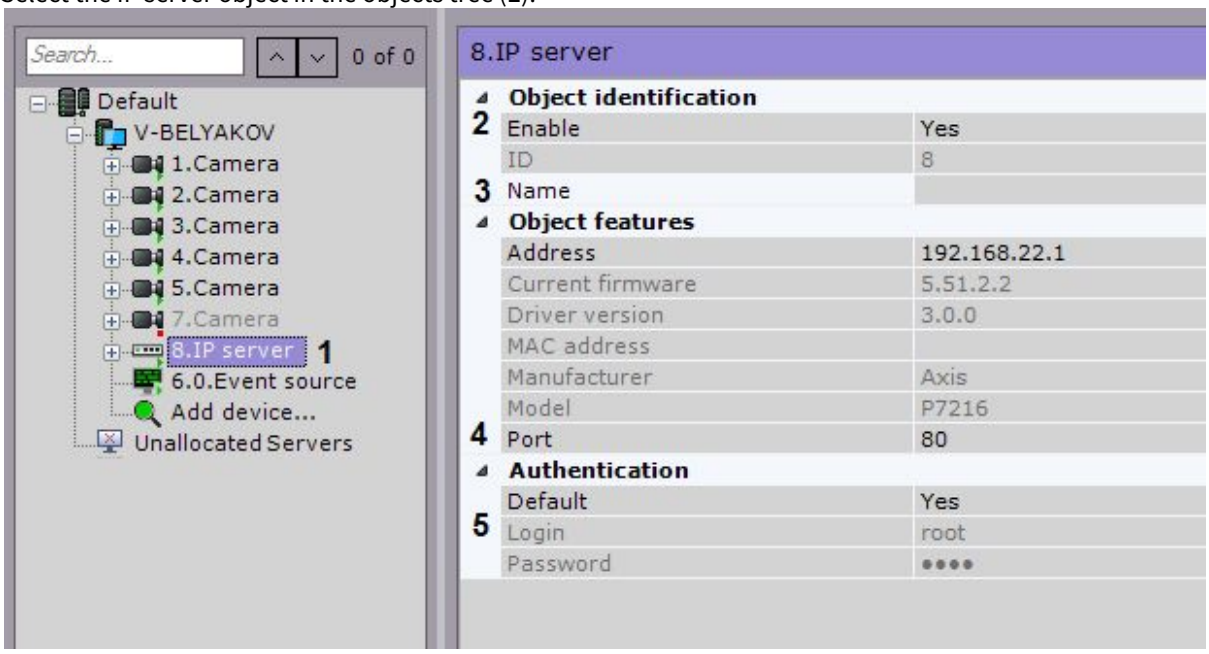
In the *Axxon Next* VMS, an **IP Server** object relates to:

- video capture card,
- video server,
- control panel,
- DVR, or
- input/output module.

If you configure a video capture card, video server or DVR, each video camera channel corresponds to a **Video camera** object under the **IP Server** parent object.

To configure the IP server parent object, perform the following:

1. Select the IP server object in the objects tree (**1**).



2. Select **Yes** from the list in the **Enable** field to enable the object (**2**).
3. Enter the name of the IP server in the Name field (**3**).
4. Specify the number of the network port (**4**). The default value is **80**.

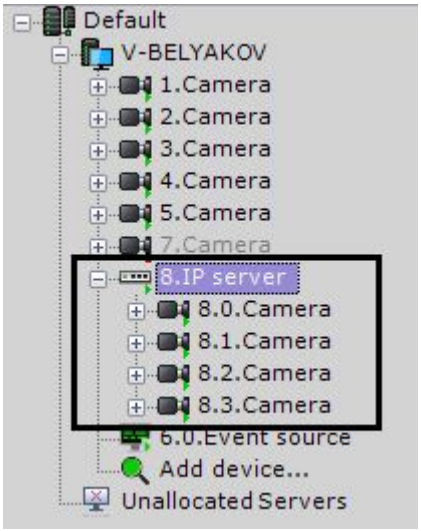
> **Note**
>
> The port number is initially set through the IP server's web interface

5. Set the authentication mode (**5**)

> **Note**
>
> The login and password for connecting to the IP server are set through its Web interface

6. Click the **Apply** button.

The IP server and its video cameras will then be enabled, and the icon indicators for the IP server and video cameras in the objects tree will turn green.



Configuration of IP server channels must be performed separately for each channel (with the help of child objects of **Video camera**).

By default, you cannot delete child Video Camera objects from the IP server. To enable this feature, do as follows:

1. Quit Client.
2. Start a text editor and open the *AxxonNext.exe.config* configuration file located in: <Axxon Next installation folder Axxon Next>\bin
3. Find the line <add key="AllowIpServerChannelRemove" value="false" /> and change **false** to **true**.
4. Save the changes to the file.

You can now delete camera objects from the IP server.

> **Attention!**
>
> You cannot restore a deleted object. You will need to create the IP server again.

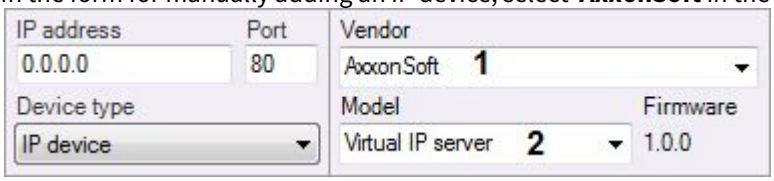
7.2.3.3.1 Configuring Virtual IP Servers

Axxon Next supports working with a virtual IP server.

To create and configure a virtual IP server, perform the following steps:

1. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).

2. In the form for manually adding an IP device, select **AxxonSoft** in the **Vendor** drop-down list (**1**).



3. Select **Virtual** from the models list to emulate a single-stream video camera. Select **Virtual several streams** to emulate a video camera supporting multiple streams (**2**).
4. Click the button

An **IP server** object will be added. It will be used for creating 4 virtual video cameras; location of a video file to be used for signal emulation needs to be specified for each camera (see Configuring virtual video cameras).

7.2.3.4 The Microphone Object

If a microphone is part of an IP server, then you must specify the video camera to which it will be linked in the settings of the given microphone. When you do this, the **Microphone** object will become a child of the specified **Camer**a object.

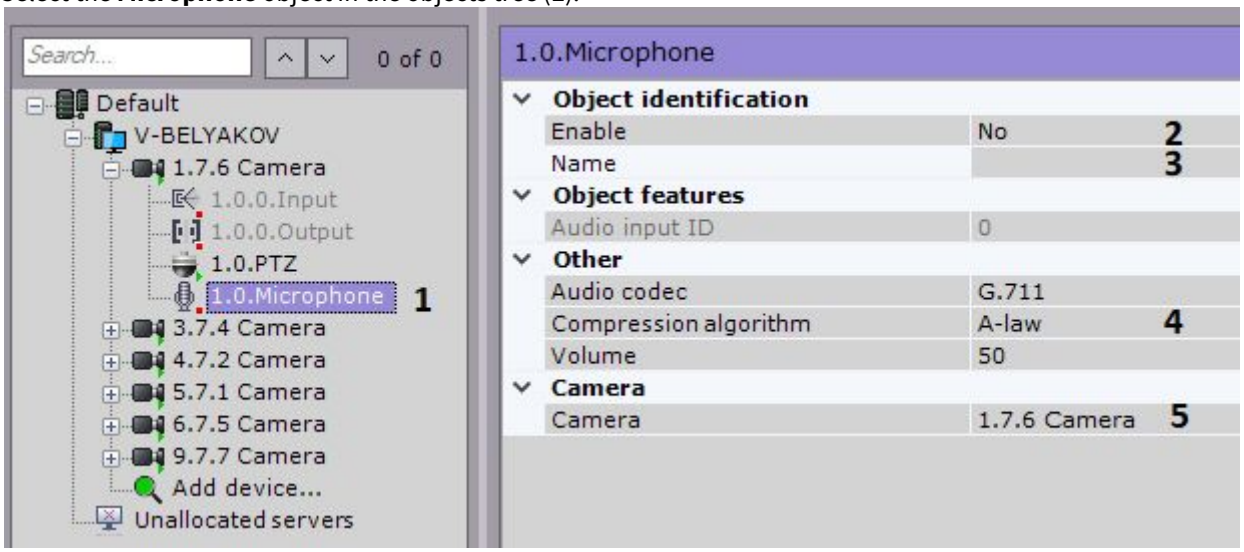
> **Atteintion**
>
> When a microphone is reassigned from one camera to another, all previously recorded audio is also transferred; when recorded video on the new camera is played, the transferred audio is played back

> **Note**
>
> This setting is used during synchronized video and audio monitoring of a situation as well as during synchronized video and video recording to the archive (see the section Audio Monitoring)

In all other cases the **Microphone** object will automatically be displayed in the objects tree as a child of the video camera itself.

To configure the **Microphone** object, perform the following:

1. Select the **Microphone** object in the objects tree (**1**).



2. Enable the microphone by selecting **Yes** in the **Enable** field (**2**).
3. Enter the name of the microphone in the **Name** field (**3**).
4. Configure additional microphone parameters (audio codec, bit rate, etc.) in the **Other** group (**4**) using their descriptions in the interface of the Axxon Next software package or, for more detail, in the official reference documentation of the parent video camera.
5. Choose a video camera to associate this microphone with (**5**). As a result of this operation, the selected camera will become a parent object for the microphone.

6. Click the **Apply** button.

The microphone will then be switched to its assigned work mode.

To check the microphone, do as follows:

1. In the upper-left corner of the preview window, click .
2. Say something into your microphone.

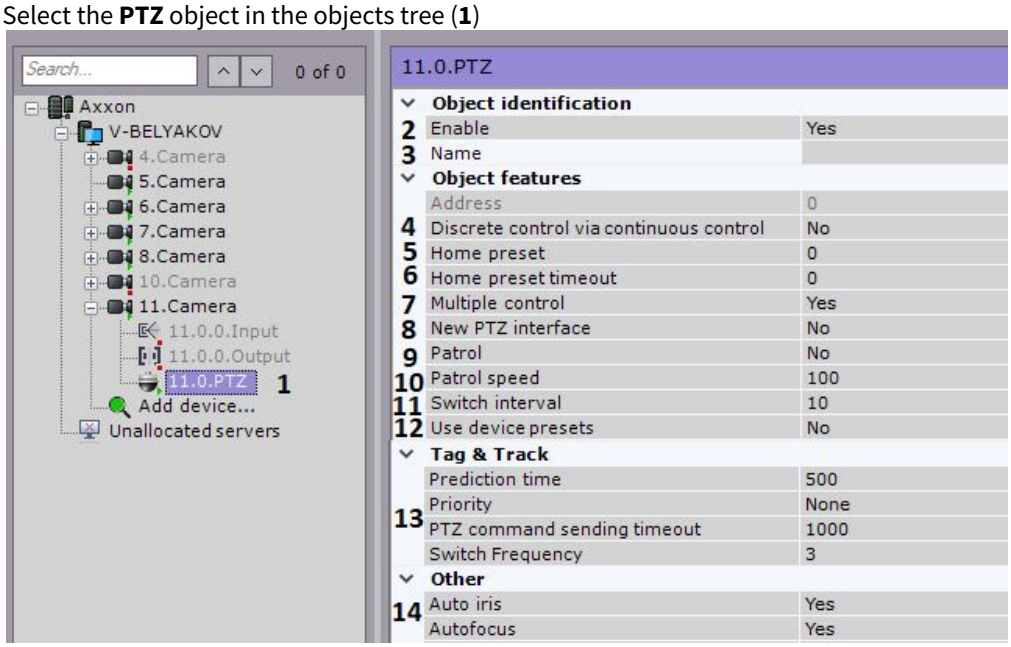
3. If the microphone is configured correctly, you will hear audio from the server's speakers. Pump it up if needed with the volume control.

Checking microphone operation is now complete.

7.2.3.5 The PTZ Object

The **PTZ** object is displayed in the device list as the child object of its respective PTZ camera.

To configure a camera's PTZ controls, the following must be true:

1. Select the **PTZ** object in the objects tree (**1**)


2. Enable the PTZ device by selecting **Yes** in the **Enable** field (**2**).
3. Enter the name of the PTZ device (**3**).
4. You can use discrete PTZ control buttons even if a camera does not support discrete mode; to enable this, select **Yes** for the **Discrete PTZ Control via Continuous** parameter. In this case, discrete PTZ control will be emulated via continuous control commands (**4**).
5. Select the **Home preset** by specifying the required identifier (**5**). The Home preset will be applied automatically after the time period specified in the **Home preset timeout** field (**6**).
6. To simultaneously control a PTZ camera by multiple users with the same priority, select **Yes** in the **Multiple control** List (**7**). Otherwise, only one user at a time will have a control (see Controlling a PTZ Camera).
7. To use device's existing presets in *Axxon Next*, do the following:
    a. If a camera supports the ONVIF protocol, set **Yes** for the **New PTZ Interface** parameter (**8**). The device's presets will automatically appear in the PTZ control panel.
    b. In any other case:
        i. Set **Yes** for the **Use device presets** parameter (**12**).
        ii. Create presets with identical IDs in *Axxon Next* (see Creating and editing presets).

Attention!

If you have not enabled the Use device presets option, the existing presets can be lost if the following conditions are in place:
1. In *Axxon Next*, the recording presets to the device option enabled (see. P.8).
2. In *Axxon Next*, a preset with the same ID is created (see Creating and editing presets).

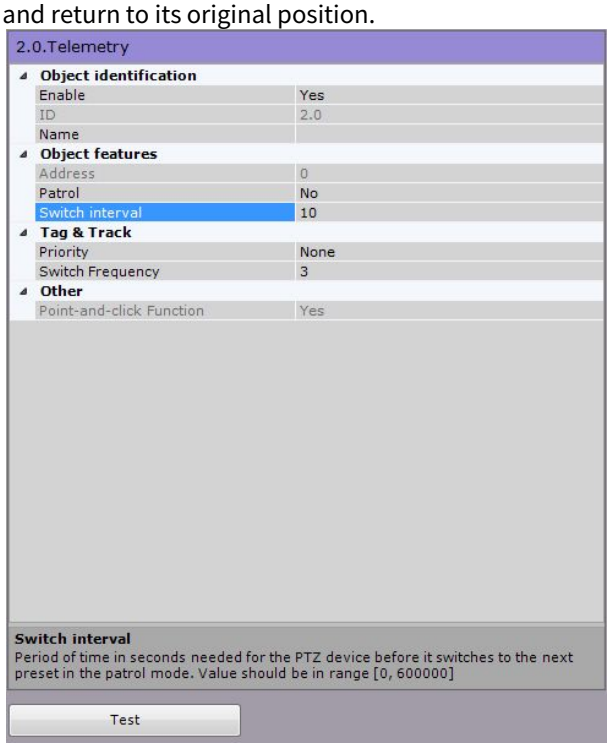
8. Configuring patrol:
   a. Choose the default patrol mode: **Yes** - on, **No** - off (**9**).
   If the default patrolling is enabled, it can be stopped in PTZ Control Panel (see Patrolling). However, after you finish the PTZ control session, patrols will resume automatically.
   b. Set the transition speed from one preset to another in arbitrary units from 0 to 100 (**10**).
   c. Set the interval of time (in seconds) at which the PTZ device will switch between presets while in Patrol mode (**11**).
9. By default, presets are stored on IP cameras. If you want to store presets on Server, select **No** in **Save presets** (**12**).

Note

This option is available only for devices that support Absolute Positioning.

10. If necessary, configure Tag & Track (**13**, see Configuring object tracking).
11. Depending on camera, you may find other options in the **Other** group (**14**). To configure them, please refer to the interface help section and tooltips or official documentation.
12. Click the **Apply** button.

The PTZ device will then be switched to its assigned work mode.
To check the functioning of the PTZ device, click the **Test** button**.** If the PTZ device is configured correctly, it will turn one step and return to its original position.



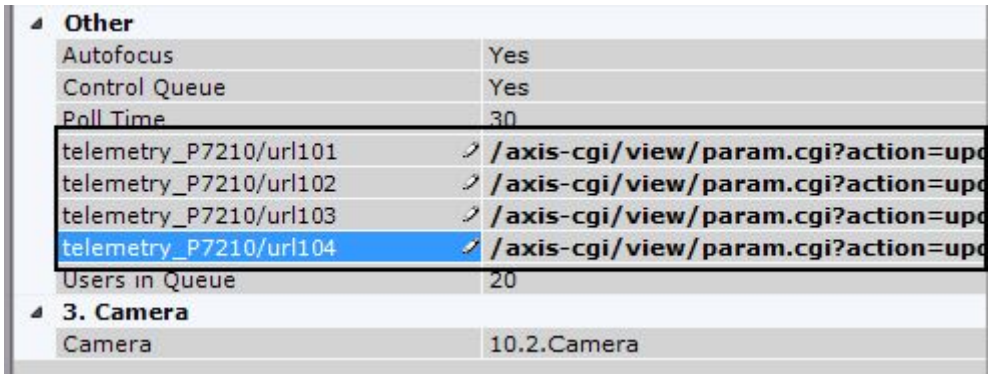
7.2.3.5.1 Configure HTTP-CGI commands to control Wash&Wiper

With *Axxon Next*, you can control the Wash&Wiper feature in some Axis IP devices (M7016, P7216, Q7404, Q7436) using HTTP-CGI commands.

To set HTTP-CGI commands, do as follows:

1. Create presets for the camera, numbered as follows: 101, 102, 103 and 104 (see The Presets List).
2. Go to the **PTZ** object and specify commands in the appropriate fields.

> **Note**
>
> The corresponding **Camera** object should have the **Send settings to device** option enabled (see The Video Camera Object).



3. Click the **Apply** button.

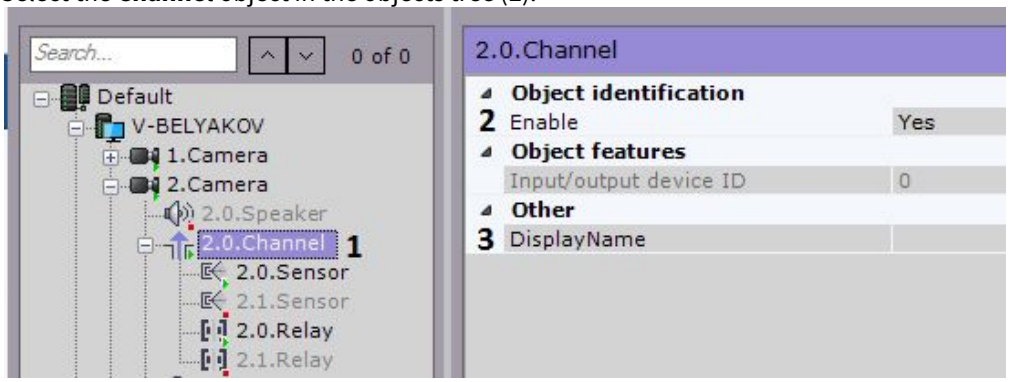
When the camera goes to the presets 101-104, this triggers a pre-configured command.

7.2.3.6 The Channel object

For I/O modules or video surveillance control panels (see CCTV Keyboards), the **Channel** object is displayed as a child object of an IP Server in the object tree (see The IP Server Object).

To configure the **Channel** object, do as follows:

1. Select the **Channel** object in the objects tree (**1**).



2. Enable the object (**2**).

> **Note**
>
> When a channel object is enabled / disabled, all **Input** and **Output** child objects are automatically enabled / disabled.

3. Enter the name of the channel (**3**).
4. Click **Apply**.

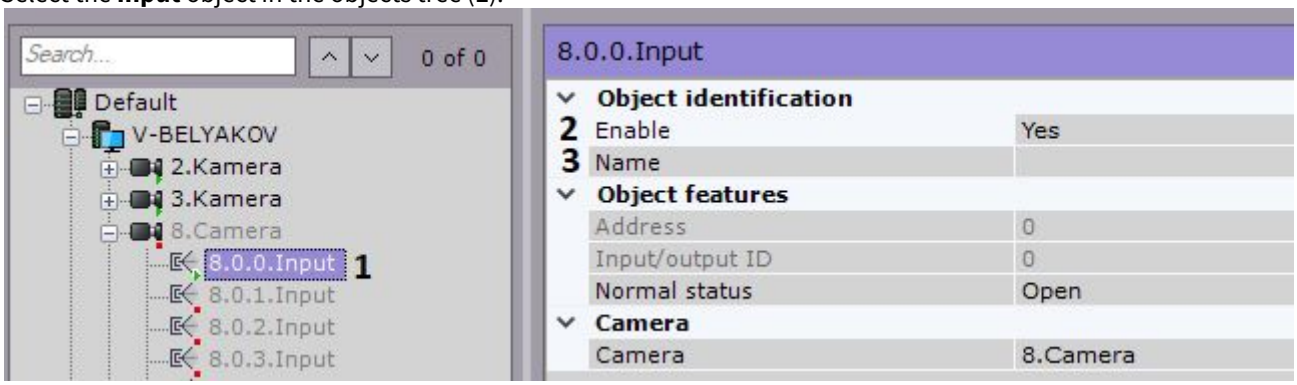
7.2.3.7 The Input Object

If a camera has a built-in or pluggable digital input, the **Input** object is displayed as a child object of the **Camera** in the object tree. The total number of **Input** objects for a camera corresponds to its number of pluggable digital inputs.

If a device is defined as an IP Server, aInput will be displayed as a child of a **Channel** object in the object tree (see The Channel object).

To configure a **Input** object, perform the following:

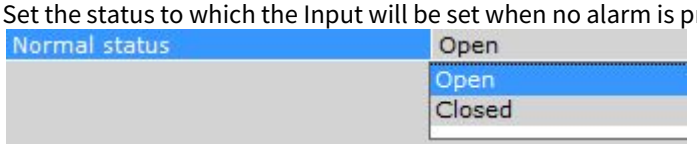
1. Select the **Input** object in the objects tree (**1**).



2. Enable the device (**2**).

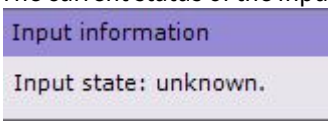
> **Note**
>
> If a input is a child of a **Channel** object, then:
> 1) Turning on a input automatically enables its parent **Channel** object.
> 2) Turning off all **Input** and **Output** child objects automatically disables their parent **Channel** object.

3. Enter the name of the Input (**3**).
4. Set the status to which the Input will be set when no alarm is present.

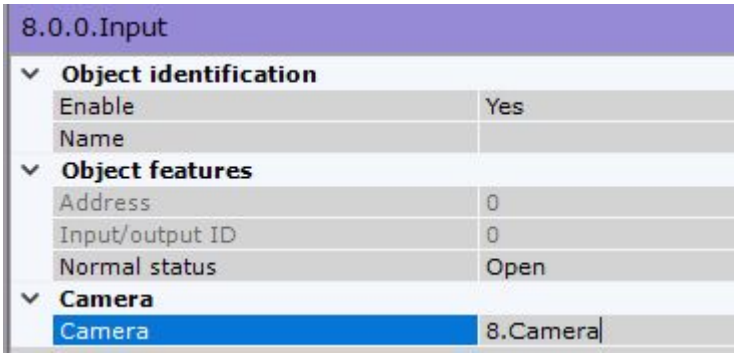


5. Click the **Apply** button.

The Input will then be switched to its assigned work mode.
The current status of the Input is displayed in the **Input information** group.



If a Input is part of an IP server, the Input settings allow choosing the video camera of the IP server it will be matched to. When you do this, the Input object will appear as the child object of the specified camera in the object tree.



7.2.3.7.1 Configure Virtual Inputs

> Switch between virtual IP-device states (HttpListener)

The Axxon Next software package enables you to work with virtual Inputs. This involves triggering a virtual Input and producing a virtual Input event / alarm in the VMS. When triggered, the virtual Input status switches - **Closed / Open.**

7.2.3.7.1.1 Creating and configuring Virtual Inputs

To create and configure a virtual Input, complete the following steps:

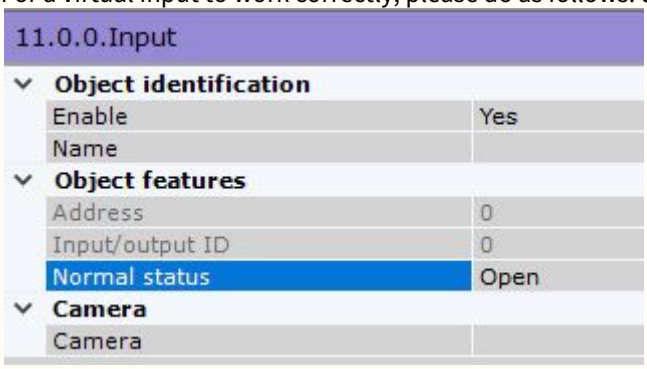
1. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the form for manually adding an IP device, select **HttpListener** in the **Vendor** drop-down list (**1**).

3. In the **Port** field, specify the port number that will be used Input status queries (**2**).
4. Click the button

The **IP Server** object is automatically created to host 4 virtual Inputs.

Attention!

For a virtual Input to work correctly, please do as follows: use the **Open** circuit.



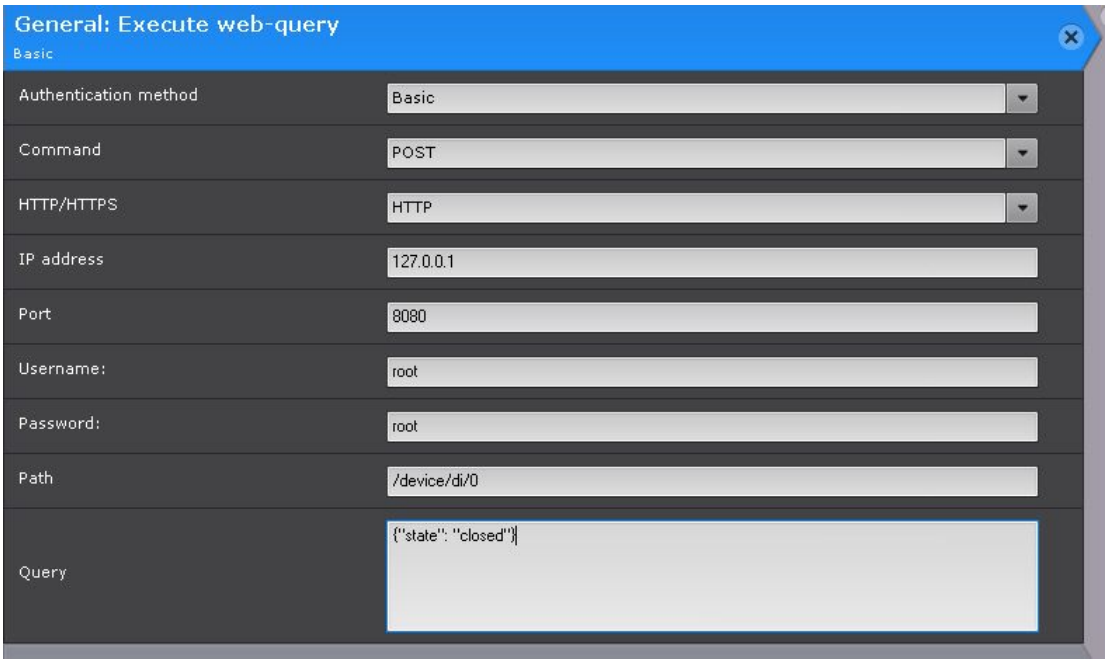
You can configure virtual Inputs in the same way as real ones. Also you can specify the time-out when virtual Inputs reset their status in the **Alarm ExpirationTime** field of the **IP Server** object. It ranges from 0 to 100.

This setting is applied only after you disable and enable the Input again.

7.2.3.7.1.2 Switching Virtual Inputs

To switch Virtual Inputs, the HTTP request is used (see Switch between virtual IP-device states (HttpListener)).

The requests can be handled by macros (see Executing a web query). Create 2 macros for each Virtual Input: to switch to **Closed** and to switch to **Opened**.



You can run macros and requests from Dialog board (see Configure the Dialog Board).

7.2.3.7.1.3 Virtual Inputs' status on map

You can add Virtual Inputs to maps just as you do with real ones (see Adding inputs and outputs).

Virtual Inputs status is color-coded (see Displaying device status).

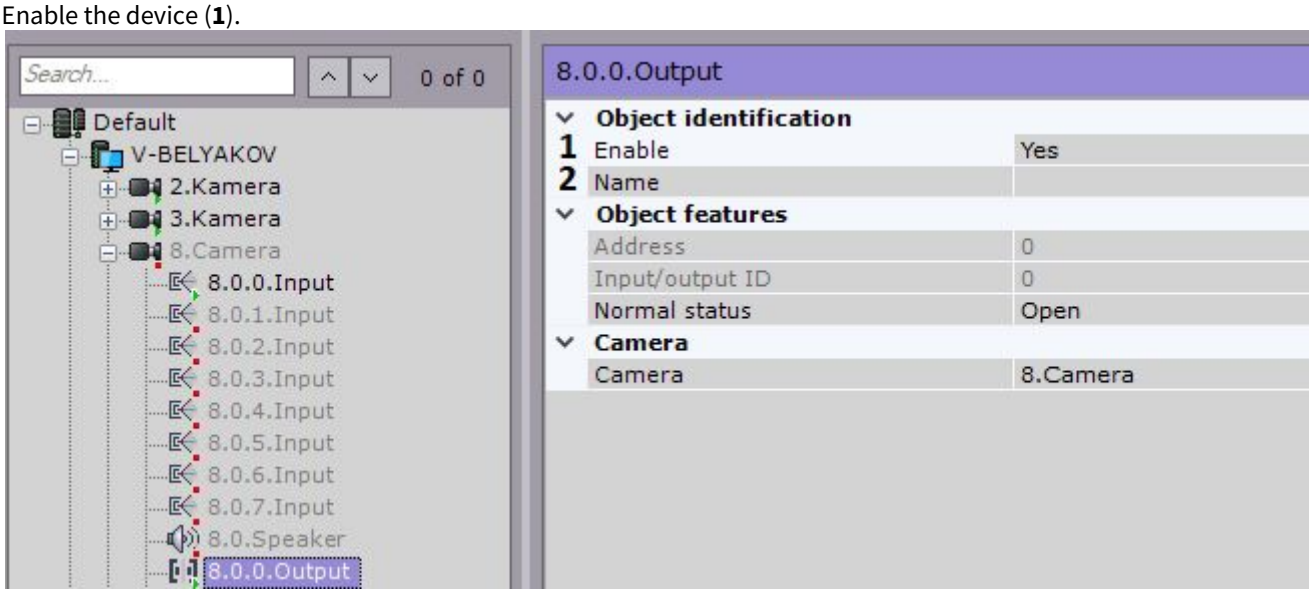
7.2.3.8 The Output Object

If a camera has a built-in or pluggable digital output, the **Output** object is displayed as a child object of the **Camera** in the object tree. The total number of **Output** objects for a camera corresponds to its number of pluggable digital outputs.

If a device is defined as an IP Server, a relay will be displayed as a child of a **Channel** object in the object tree (see The Channel object).

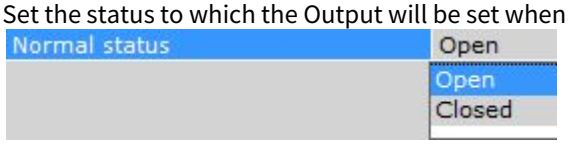
To configure a **Output** object, perform the following:

1. Select a **Output** object in the objects tree.
2. Enable the device (**1**).



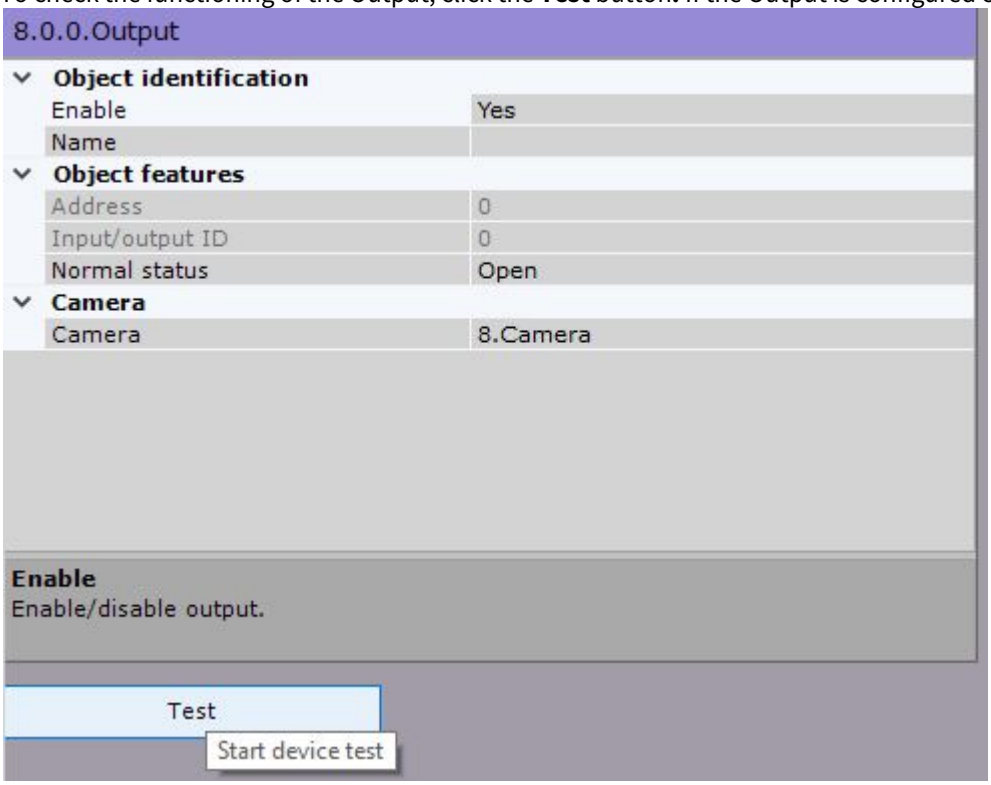
> **Note**
>
> If a output is a child of a **Channel** object, then:
> 1) Turning on a output automatically enables its parent **Channel** object.
> 2) Turning off all **Input** and **Output** child objects automatically disables their parent **Channel** object.

3. Enter the name of the Output (**2**).
4. Set the status to which the Output will be set when no alarm is present.

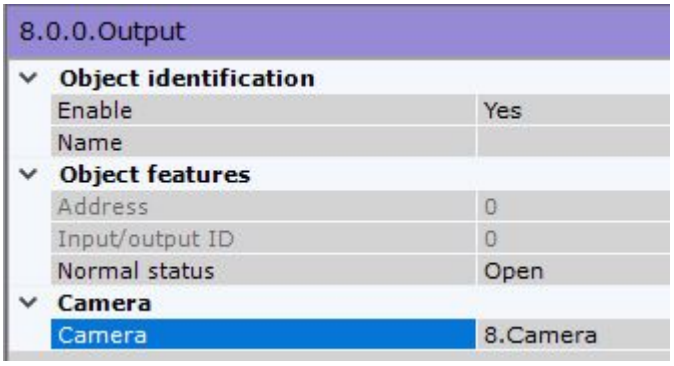


5. Click the **Apply** button.

The Output will then be switched to its assigned work mode.
To check the functioning of the Output, click the **Test** button**.** If the Output is configured correctly, its status will briefly change.



If a Output is part of an IP server, the sensor settings allow choosing the video camera of the IP server it will be matched to. When you do this, the Output object will appear as the child object of the specified camera in the object tree.



7.2.3.9 The Speaker Object

The **Speaker** object is used for configuration of the sound alert triggered by a macros.

Attention!

Audio notifications cannot be played back via the system speakers on a remote Client. In this case, you are advised to run an external program on Clients.

In Axxon Next you can create the following types of **Speaker** objects:

1. **IP speaker device.** Created automatically if there is an audio outlet on an IP device.

   Note

   One audio outlet on an IP device corresponds to one child **Speaker** of the **Camera** object

2. **System speaker.** Created manually. Sound on the system speaker is played back using the server's sound card.

A **Speaker** object can play audio notification files with the extensions:

1. .wav
2. .mp3
3. .mkv
4. .avi

The following audio notification file encoding formats are supported:

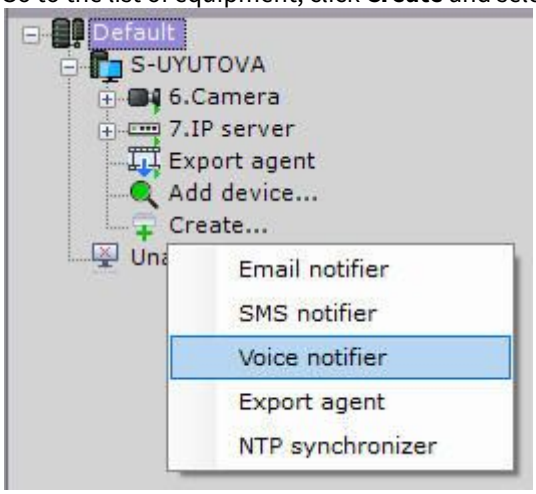
1. G.711
2. G.726
3. PCM

The audio notification file should be stored on the computer corresponding to the **Server** object on the basis of which the **Speaker** object is registered.

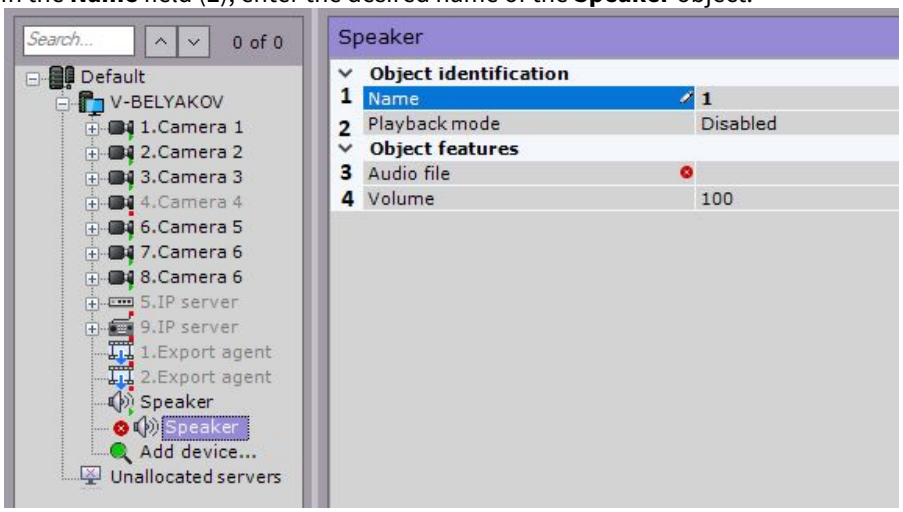
7.2.3.9.1 Creating and Configuring an Object

To create the **Speaker** system object, do as follows:

1. Go to the list of equipment, click **Create** and select **Voice notifier**.

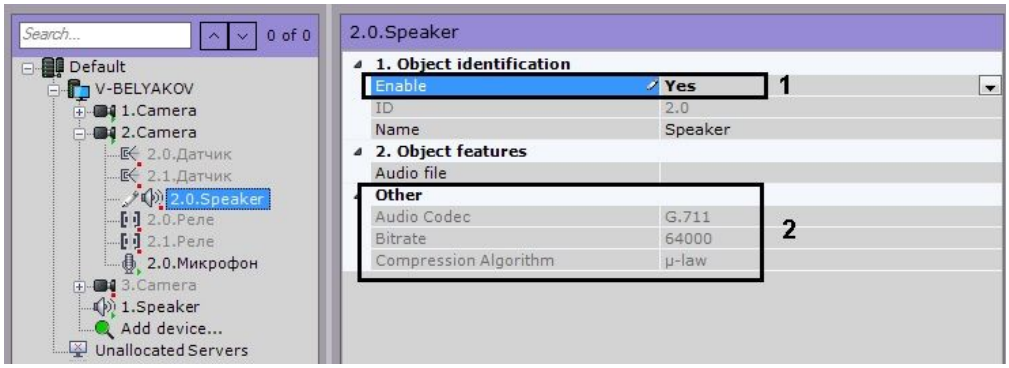


2. In the **Name** field (**1**), enter the desired name of the **Speaker** object.



3. Select the speaker mode: disabled, play back on Server, play back on Clients (**2**).
4. In the **Audio file** field (**3**), enter the full path to the audio notification file. This parameter is mandatory.
5. In the **Volume** field (**4**), enter the desired speaker volume level.

> **Note**
>
> By default, IP device speakers are disabled. To enable, for the **Enable** value (**1**), select **Yes**. When configuring the speaker of an IP device, you can set other parameters as well, such as the compression algorithm for the audio signal sent to the speaker for playback (**2**). Which speaker parameters you can configure is determined by the protocol for integration of the IP device and the Axxon Next software package



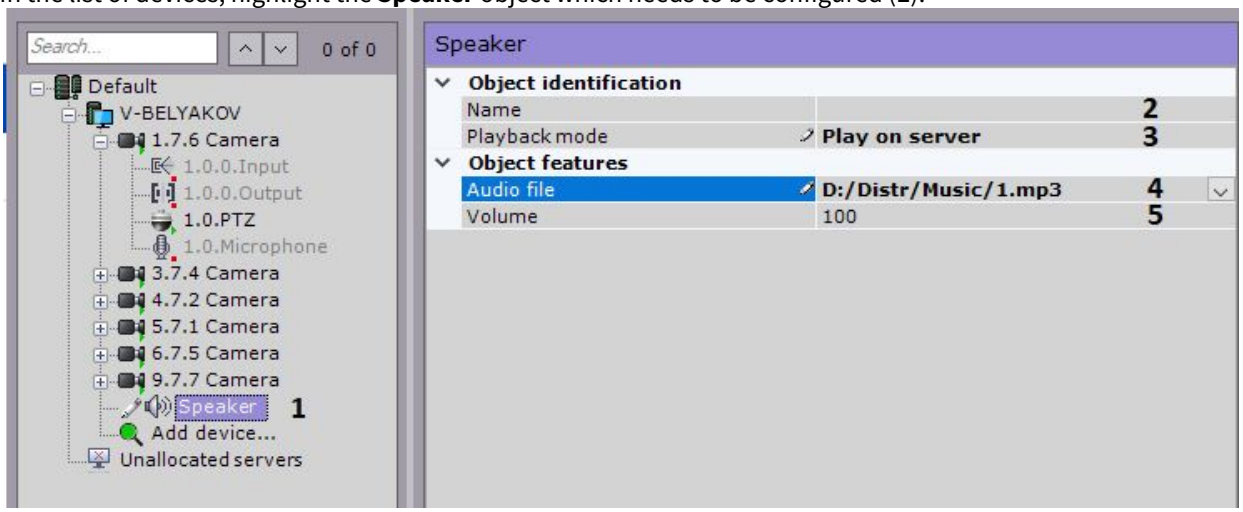
6. Click the **Apply** button.

Creation of the **Speaker** object is complete.

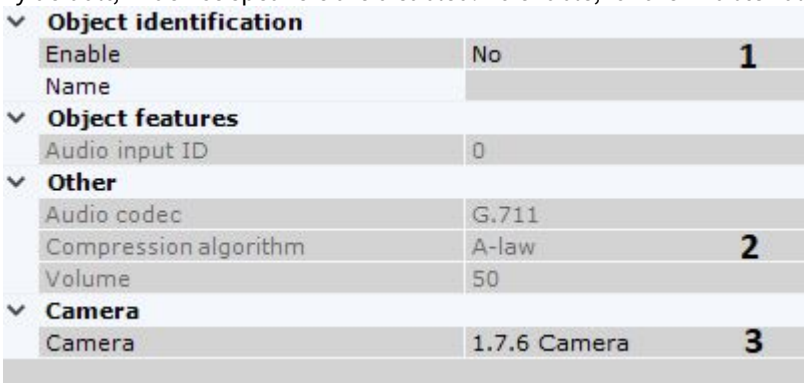
7.2.3.9.2 Configuring a Speaker Object

To configure a **Speaker** object, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the list of devices, highlight the **Speaker** object which needs to be configured (**1**).



2. Select the speaker mode: disabled, play back on Server, play back on Clients (**2**).
3. In the **Name** field (**3**), enter the desired name of the **Speaker** object.
4. In the **Audio file** field (**4**), enter the full path to the audio notification file.
5. In the **Volume** field (**5**), enter the desired speaker volume level.
6. To parent an IP device to a speaker:
   a. By default, IP device speakers are disabled. To enable, for the **Enable** value (**1**), select **Yes**.

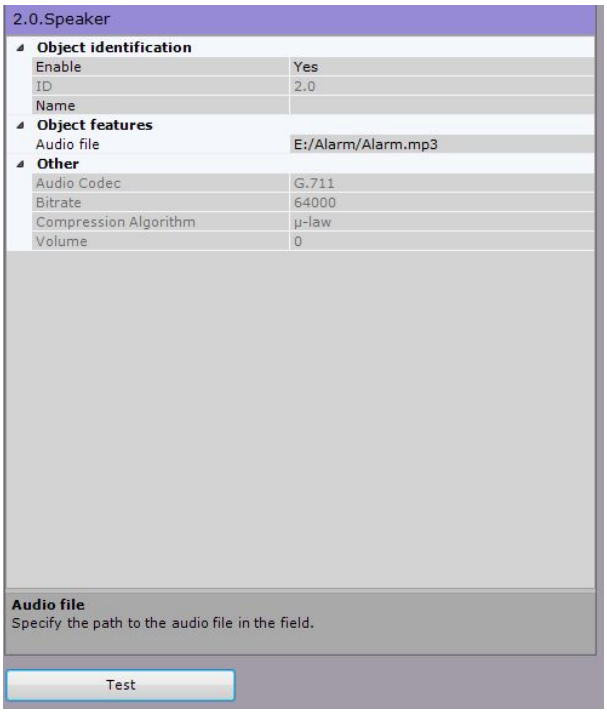


   b. When configuring the speaker of an IP device, you can set other parameters as well, such as the compression algorithm for the audio signal sent to the speaker for playback (**2**). Which speaker parameters you can configure is determined by the protocol for integration of the IP device and the Axxon Next software package.
   c. Choose a video camera to associate this speaker with (**3**). As a result of this operation, the selected camera will become a parent object for the speaker.
7. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of the **Speaker** object is now complete.

7.2.3.9.3 Checking Audio Notification

To check audio notification from a **Speaker** object, click the **Test** button.



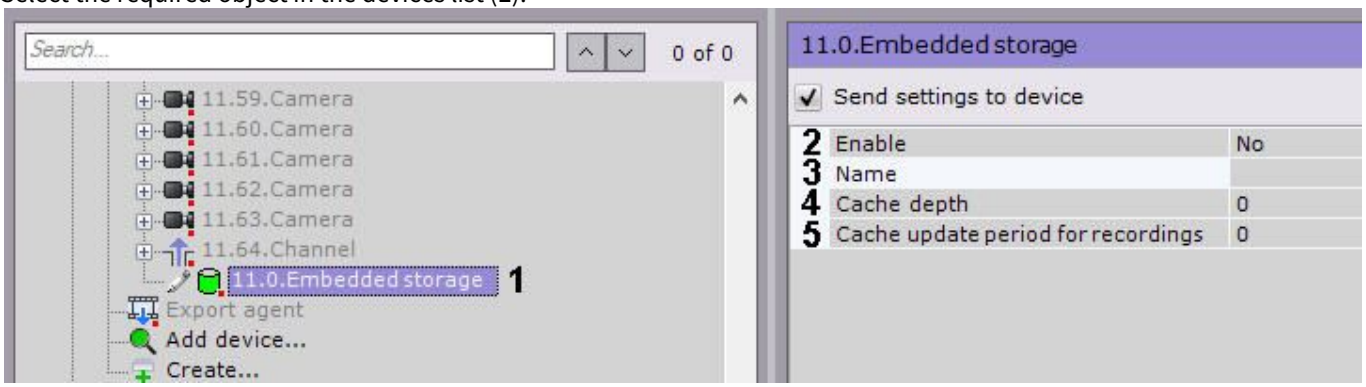
When you do this, the audio notification file whose path you indicated in the corresponding field plays back (see the section Configuring a Speaker Object).

7.2.3.10 The Embedded storage object

If a camera has on-board storage (SD card), the system will automatically create the corresponding object.

To configure on-board storage, do as follows:

1. Select the required object in the devices list (**1**).



2. Select **Yes** in the **Enable** field to activate the object (**2**).
3. If necessary, enter the name of the object (**3**).
4. If necessary, specify the **Cache depth** in days (**4**). The setting enables background caching of information about recording intervals in RAM. The value should be in the range [0, 365].
5. In the Cache update period for recordings, set the cache refresh period in seconds (**5**). The value should be in the range [0, 86400].
6. Click the **Apply** button.

You have configured on-board storage. You can view video from on-board storage (if enabled) and copy it to the archive (see Configuring data replication).

7.2.4 Particulars of Configuration of Devices

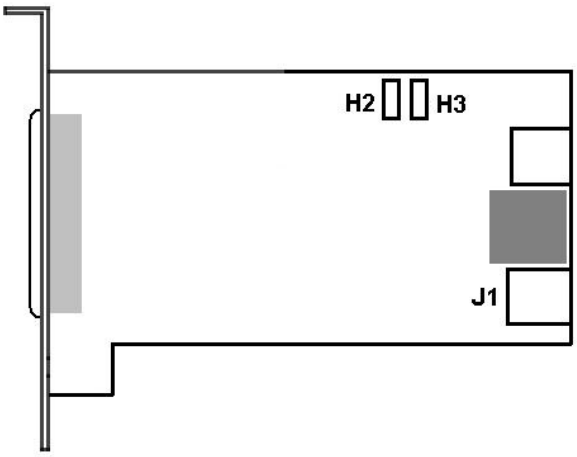
7.2.4.1 AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS Sensor-Relay cards

7.2.4.1.1 Connecting AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS Sensor-Relay cards

The *AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS Sensor-Relay* card is an interface of external sensors and external executive devices (relays) as a part of video surveillance and fire and security alarm systems.

The figure shows the appearance of *AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS* card.

The layout of card connectors:



The device is controlled via the USB interface. Electrical and technical specifications of the card are given in the Electrical and technical specifications of AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS devices section.

Connect the *AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS* card to the Server as follows:

1. Switch the computer power supply off. Remove the system cover.
2. Install the *AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS* card into a vacant motherboard slot and fix it in the casing.
3. Connect the loop (bundled with the distribution kit) to the **J1** connector and to a vacant USB connector on the motherboard of computer.
4. To activate the hardware control of the hang, connect the wires to the **H2 H3** connector.
5. To connect sensors and relays unsolder the connector bundled with the distribution kit.
    a. The connecting wires from the executive devices are soldered to the contacts marked as "Relay" (see the table below).

Connector	Application	Connector	Application
1	Relay 1 (+)	26	Sensor 5
2	Relay 1	27	Sensor 5
3	Relay 2	28	Sensor 6
4	Relay 2	29	Sensor 6
5	Relay 3	30	Sensor 7
6	Relay 3	31	Sensor 7
7	Relay 4	32	Sensor 8
8	Relay 4	33	Sensor 8
9	Relay 5	34	Sensor 9
10	Relay 5	35	Sensor 9
11	Relay 6	36	Sensor 10
12	Relay 6	37	Sensor 10
13	Relay 7	38	Sensor 11
14	Relay 7	39	Sensor 11
15	Relay 8	40	Sensor 12
16	Relay 8	41	Sensor 12

b. The connecting wires from the sensors are soldered to the contacts marked as "Sensor" (see the table below).

Connector	Application	Connector	Application
17	Sensor 1	42	Sensor 13
18	Sensor 1	43	Sensor 13
19	Sensor 2	44	Sensor 14
20	Sensor 2	45	Sensor 14
21	Sensor 3	46	Sensor 15
22	Sensor 3	47	Sensor 15
23	Sensor 4	48	Sensor 16
24	Sensor 4	49	Sensor 16
25	+ 12V (Output)	50	GND (Ground)

6. Fix the unsoldered connector in the casing bundled with the distribution kit.
7. Connect ready-for-use connector to external connector of the card in order to connect sensors and relays to the Server.

The *AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS* card is now connected.

7.2.4.1.2 Electrical and technical specifications of AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS devices

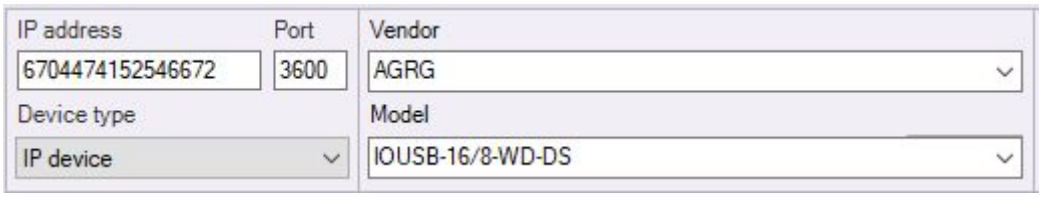
When connecting the AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS sensor-relay cards, the electrical and technical specifications shown in the table below should be considered.

Parameter	Specification
Galvanic isolation on inputs/outputs	3750 V
Inputs	Quantity - 16 Type - current loop Galvanic isolation - Yes Maximum voltage - 60 V Rated voltage - 12 V Maximum current - 60 mA
Outputs	Quantity - 8 Type - open collector Galvanic isolation - Yes Maximum voltage - 300 V Maximum current - 150 mA Minimum pick-up voltage - 1.0 V Minimum pick-up current - 5 mA
Reset Timer (Watchdog)	Customizable
Ping interval of all alarm inputs	100 ms for all contacts. Customizable
PC connection interface	USB 2.0, up to 5 meters
Power supply	500 mA consumption from USB port

7.2.4.1.3 Special features of configuring AGRG-IO-16/8-WD-DS card in Axxon Next

The connected card is automatically detected in the IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).

If you add a device manually, enter the serial number of the device in the **IP address** field.



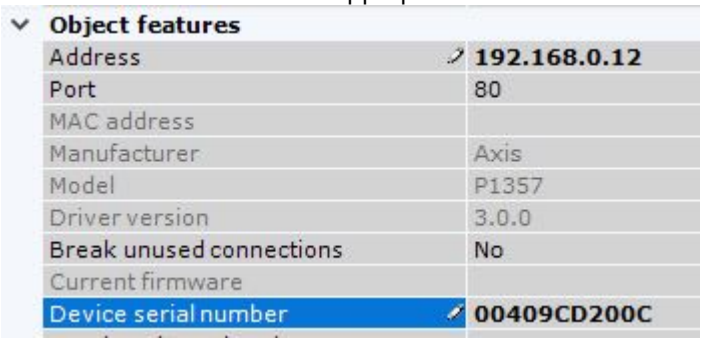
To read the serial number, use the manufacturer's utility.

7.2.4.2 Axis IP Devices

7.2.4.2.1 Serial number check

To check serial numbers of Axis IP devices, do the following:

1. Enter a serial number into the appropriate field.



2. Click **Apply**.
3. The device will be reconnected. Upon reconnection, the entered serial number will be checked against the real one. If numbers do not match, a separate event will be registered in the system Log.

7.2.4.2.2 Bonjour function

For Axis IP devices on which the Bonjour function is supported and enabled, changing the default value of the **Friendly name** parameter is strongly discouraged. If an arbitrary **Friendly name** value is set for an Axis IP device, a search for connected equipment in the Axxon Next software package will give incorrect results for this IP device.

> **Note**
>
> The Friendly name parameter is configured through the Web interface of the IP device: Setup -> System options -> Network -> Bonjour

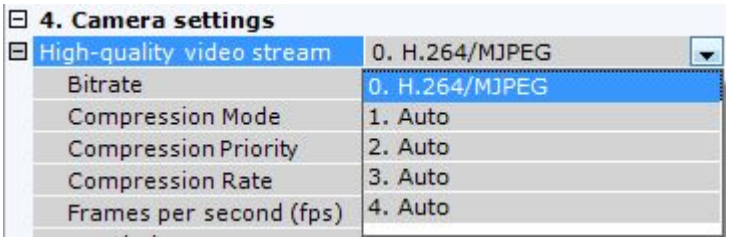
> **Note**
>
> The default value of the Friendly name parameter is as follows: AXIS <model name> - <mac address>, where <model name> is the model of the Axis IP device and <mac address> is its MAC address (for example, AXIS 214 - 00408C7D2610

7.2.4.2.3 Video streams

Axxon Next can access the following video streams from Axis IP devices:

1. H.264/MJPEG video
2–5. Streams matching the Quality, Balanced, Bandwidth, and Mobile profiles. These profiles are configured via the camera's web interface.

In Axxon Next, the Quality profile corresponds to stream **1. Auto**, Balanced is stream **2. Auto**, Bandwidth is stream **3. Auto**, and Mobile is stream **4. Auto** (see The Video Camera Object).



7.2.4.3 CCTV Keyboards

7.2.4.3.1 General Information about CCTV Keyboards

Video surveillance control panels can be connected to *Axxon Next* in two ways:

1. Connecting a panel via the Windows driver as an HID USB device. This method makes the panel immediately available for specifying hotkeys (see Assigning hot keys).

> **Attention!**
>
> In HID mode, some control panel buttons may not work in *Axxon Next*.

2. Connecting a panel via the *Axxon Next* driver. Using this method, the panel is added to the system similarly to that of IP devices (see Adding and removing IP devices).

> **Attention!**
>
> To connect a control panel in this way, you need the *Axxon Next* software to be installed in the **Server and Client** configuration. It's not possible to operate a board as a remote client.

The following control panels are supported in the current version of *Axxon Next*:

	Windows driver	*Axxon Next* driver
Axis T8310 (T8311, T8312, T8313)	+	+
Dahua DH-NKB1000	+	+
PELCO KBD5000	+	+
Videotec DCZ	+	+
Hikvision DS-1005KI	+	+
Hikvision DS-1100KI	-	+
Hikvision DS-1200KI	-	+
Hikvision DS-1600KI	-	+
UNIVIEW KB-1100	-	+

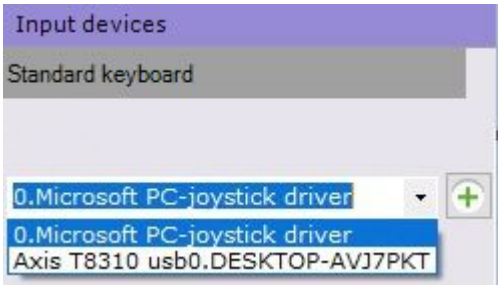
7.2.4.3.2 Axis T8310 specific configuration features

7.2.4.3.2.1 Setting up on a Server

To make a T8132 keyboard operate with Rev01 hardware, restart the Axxon Next VMS server after you create the IP Server object (see Shutting down a Server, Starting a Server).

7.2.4.3.2.2 Setting up on a Client

Since the Axxon Next version 4.3.4 and Driver Pack version 3.61, you can use the Axis T8310 control board with remote Clients through the driver embedded into the *Axxon Next* software. The panel is not added to the system as an IP device, and is immediately available for assigning hotkeys.



Various models differ in connected devices.

T8310	All devices

T8311	Joystick only
T8311 / T8312	Joystick and keypad
T8311 / T8313	Joystick and jog dial
T8312	Keypad only
T8312 / T8313	Keypad and jog dial
T8313	Jog dial only

7.2.4.3.3 Hikvision DS-1100KI specific configuration features

To work with the DS-1100KI network keyboard in *Axxon Next*, power on the device and do as follows:

1. Switch the keyboard to **Server** mode.
2. Select **Third Platform Software**.
3. Enter the *Axxon Next* Server's IP address and communication port number.
4. You have to use the same port to add the device to the *Axxon Next* VMS.

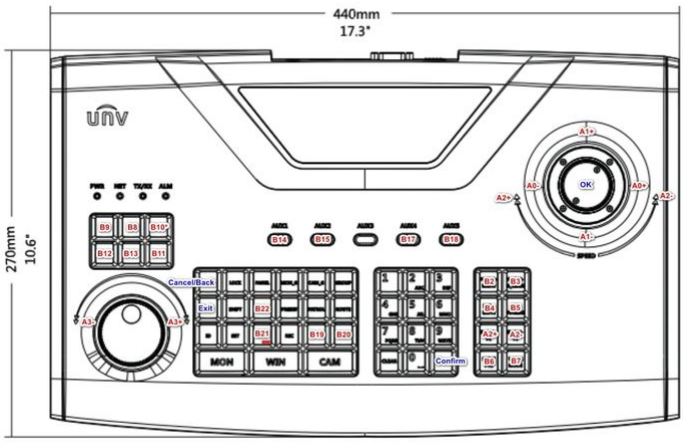
7.2.4.3.4 UNIVIEW KB-1100 specific configuration features

On page:

- General description of the UNIVIEW KB-1100 PTZ control device
- Configuring a remote control before adding it to Axxon Next
- Configuring UNIVIEW KB-1100 in Axxon Next

7.2.4.3.4.1 General description of the UNIVIEW KB-1100 PTZ control device

A schematic representation of the UNIVIEW KB-1100 PTZ control device is shown in the figure below.



The following physical controls are available on the device:

Joystick is a rotary control moving along three axes:

- Pan axis (panning: left or right deviation).

- Tilt axis (tilt: up or down deviation).
- Zoom axis (scaling: clockwise or counterclockwise deviation).

Acceleration along each of the three axes depends on the degree of deviation from the center. The movement is carried out until release. When released, the control returns to its original position.

Jog-Wheel (not integrated into the *Axxon Next* software package!) is a rotary control rotating only around its axis. When released, the control returns to its original position. In the illustration it is located at the bottom left (outer ring).

Shuttle is a rotary control rotating only around its axis. Allows the intermittent movement in one of two directions. It has no initial position; when released, it remains in place. In the illustration it is located at the bottom left (inner ring).

Button is a push control element that can represent two states. Allows the call of one of two functions (the function for pressing and the function for releasing). When released, it returns to its original position ("not pressed" state).

Of all the push-button controls of the remote control, the following blocks are integrated:

- a block of playback control keys (6 keys on the left: the record button is triggered after pressing a button on the joystick);
- block of keys for control of focus, zoom, aperture and PTZ presets (8 keys);

The following keys to manipulate the device interface are also available (not related to *Axxon Next*):

- Pressing the button on the remote control joystick (OK) (equivalent to pressing the ENTER key).
- Cancel the action / return one step back in the remote control menu (equivalent to pressing the ESC key).
- Numbers / letters are entered from the numeric keyboard, the mode (upper/lower register, digits) is switched by the SHIFT key.
- Moving through the menu items and within the fields is carried out by deviating the remote control vertically / horizontally.

7.2.4.3.4.2 Configuring a remote control before adding it to Axxon Next

Configure the network PTZ 4-dimensional Joystick Remote Control from Uniview (KB-1100) before you create the appropriate object in the Axxon Next VMS. Proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the control device.
2. Enter username and password in the device display. The default credentials are as follows:
    a. login: admin
    b. password: 123456
3. Configure the device network configuration. To do this, in the Local Cfg -> Net Cfg menu, set the following settings:
    a. IP address
    b. Mask
    c. Gateway
4. Add the Axxon Next Server to the internal configuration of this CCTV joystick keyboard. To do this, in the Dev Manage -> Manual Cfg -> Add Dev menu, set the following settings:
    a. ID – enter any number (range: 1-240, the number must not coincide with the ID of the remote control or other already added device).
    b. name – enter a string (1-8 characters).
    c. DType – select VM (VideoManagementSystem, i.e. *Axxon Next*).
    d. LType – select NetWork (the device is integrated for connecting to *Axxon Next* via the network).
    e. After selecting LType, press the button on the joystick and enter the IP address of the Axxon Next VMS Server and the port used (the default port is 60000).
5. Connect to *the Axxon Next VMS*, added in the step above. To do this, enter the ID specified above in the FindDev -> Dev ID menu or select the found profile in the Dev Manage -> Search Dev menu.
6. If the device is found, information about it will be displayed on the device display.
7. Press on the ID field. This will onboard the remote control in the Axxon Next VMS.

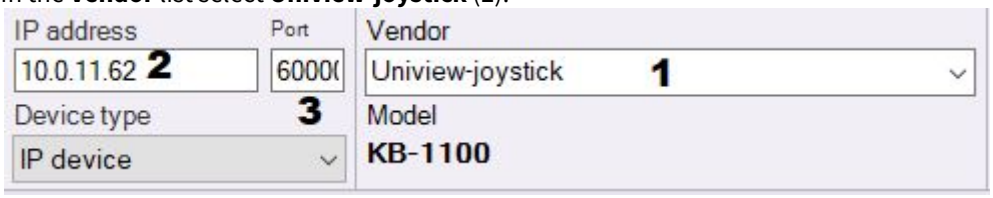
Setting up the UNIVIEW KB-1100 control device is completed.

7.2.4.3.4.3 Configuring UNIVIEW KB-1100 in Axxon Next

Configure the UNIVIEW KB-1100 PTZ joystick control as follows:

1. Go to IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).

2. In the **Vendor** list select **Uniview-joystick** (**1**).



3. In the **IP Address** field, enter the IP address of the remote control (**2**).
4. In the **Port** field, enter the port number, as set in step 4 of the remote control settings configuration (**3**).
5. Click the .
6. Enable the newly created **IP Server** and its **Channel** child object.

You have configured the UNIVIEW KB-1100 Joystick Remote Control and CCTV keyboard.

7.2.4.3.5 Hikvision DS-1200KI specific configuration features

On the page:

- Configuring the Hikvision DS-1200KI control device before adding it to Axxon Next
- Features of the Hikvision DS-1200KI control device operation in Axxon Next

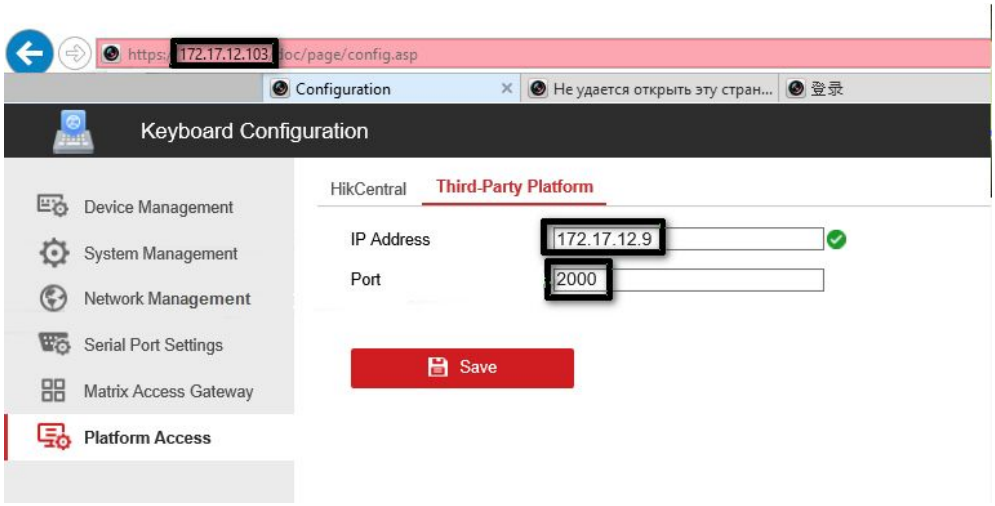
7.2.4.3.5.1 Configuring the Hikvision DS-1200KI control device before adding it to Axxon Next

Configure the Hikvision DS-1200KI PTZ control device as follows before creating the corresponding object in *Axxon Next*:

1. Set the control device address: **Select System - Network** in the device internal menu, then disable DHCP and set IP address and gateway.

2. Set the *Axxon Next* server IP address and port on the device: Open the device web interface by entering the above set IP address in the web browser, then select **Platform Access - Third-Party Platform**.

> **Note.**
>
> The web interface is only available on https by default, so please use https prefix before the IP address.



3. Set the **8. Private VMS** mode in the device's internal interface.

4. Transfer the PTZ control device to operating mode by one of the following actions:
   a. Select any monitor MON (monitor) [integer in the range 1-9999], any camera CAM (camera) [integer in the range 0-999999]; in this mode all keys will work, including the WIN (subwindow of video wall) and MULT (layout size) keys for the monitor and camera.
   b. Select any camera CAM (camera) [integer number in the range 1-999999 (number 0 is available only when setting the monitor)]; the WIN, MULT and CAM-G keys will not work in this mode.
   c. Select any monitor MON (monitor) [integer in the range 1-9999] and any group of cameras CAM-G (camera group) [integer in the range 1-999999]; in this mode, only the MULT, OK keys and the rotations of the joystick axes will work.

> **Note.**
>
> To select these parameters, enter a number on the device keypad, then press the corresponding key (MON / WIN / CAM / CAM-G).
> If the the server IP address and/or port is not accessible from the PTZ control device, the "Connect failed" message will be displayed on the control device screen after pressing the MON / WIN / CAM / CAM-G keys.

The Hikvision DS-1200KI PTZ control device is now preconfigured.

7.2.4.3.5.2 Features of the Hikvision DS-1200KI control device operation in *Axxon Next*

When the MULT, PRESET, PATROL, or PATTERN keys are pressed on the device, the following actions are performed:

- when entering a number in the range 1-99 and pressing MULT for each number, *Axxon Next* receives a message about pressing the corresponding separate key with a number in the range 23-121 (B22-B120);
- when pressing PresetRec for the first time, *Axxon Next* receives a message about pressing key 13 (B12), and the device displays **Record started**;

- after pressing PresetRec for the second time, *Axxon Next* receives a message about pressing key 12 (B11), and **Record ended** appears on the device display;
- when entering a number in the range 1-65535 and pressing PresetRec, *Axxon Next* receives a message about pressing key 22 (B21), and the device displays **PRESET:**;
- when entering a number in the range 1-65535 and pressing Patrol, *Axxon Next* receives a message about pressing key 17 (B16), and the device displays **PATROL:**;
- when entering a number in the range 1-65535 and pressing PatternPlay, *Axxon Next* receives a message about pressing key 18 (B17), and the device displays **PATTERN:**;
- when entering a number in the range 65536-999999 and press any of the PresetRec / Patrol / PatternPlay buttons, nothing happens: such numbers are not processed.

7.2.4.3.6 Dahua DH-NKB1000 specific configuration features

7.2.4.3.6.1 Keyboard operating modes

To work correctly with Axxon Next VMS, the keyboard must be recognized by Windows OS as the KEYBOARD 1000 game device.

If the keyboard is recognized as an HID device, hold down the Shift key on the device to toggle its operating mode.

7.2.4.3.6.2 Specific OS settings

If Windows Device Manager recognizes the keyboard as BETTER_USB_HS, the device will not work.

In this case, roll back the device driver. For correct operation, Windows Device Manager has to recognize the keyboard as a HID-compatible game controller.

7.2.4.3.6.3 Specific Axxon Next settings

The Axxon Next VMS may recognize a Dahua DH-NKB1000 keyboard as a Hikvision-joystick DS-1005KI due to their shared device ID.

For correct operation, the keyboard has to be recognized as Dahua DH-NKB1000.

The Pattern button will not work in the Axxon Next VMS.

7.2.4.4 CH VM-Desktop USB multifunction controller

For the controller to work properly in Axxon Next, the controller must be connected before the Axxon Next client is started.

> **Note**
>
> To learn about connecting the device, consult the manufacturer's official documentation.

Controller keys cannot be remapped.

Use of the CH VM-Desktop USB multifunction controller in Axxon Next is described in the corresponding section.

7.2.4.5 Configuring Vivotek Panoramic PTZ

Vivotek Panoramic PTZ is a technology for linking a fisheye camera to a PTZ camera.

This Vivotek technology allows simultaneously maintaining full situational awareness in the field of view of a fisheye camera, while maintaining the ability to carefully monitor a specific area in depth by using a PTZ unit.

Vivotek Panoramic PTZ is supported by the fisheye cameras Vivotek SF8172 and Vivotek SF 8172V and by the PTZ camera Vivotek SD8362E.

To use this technology in Axxon Next:

1. Install and configure the cameras in accordance with the official Vivotek documentation.
2. Add the cameras to an Axxon Next configuration.

Vivotek Panoramic PTZ support in Axxon Next is implemented via the Areazoom (see Control using Areazoom) and Point&Click functions (see Control using Point&Click).

7.2.4.6 Video capture cards

Axxon Next supports 3 PCIe and one USB video capture cards:

1. PCIe:
    a. Yuan SC300Q16.
    b. Yuan SC3C0N8.
    c. Yuan WS216.
2. USB: Yuan PD652.

7.2.4.6.1 WS-216 video capture cards

In *Axxon Next*, each WS-216 video capture card corresponds to two devices: manufacturer **ITV**, model **TW5864 PCI** (driver **Yuan**, **2**) and manufacturer **CaptureDevice**, model **CaptureDevice** (driver **DShow**, **1**).

IP address **dshow8.m-seregin**	Port **0**	Vendor **CaptureDevice**	
MAC address **not defined**		Model **CaptureDevice**	Firmware **auto**
1			
IP address **dshow9.m-seregin**	Port **0**	Vendor **CaptureDevice**	
MAC address **not defined**		Model **CaptureDevice**	Firmware **auto**
IP address **yuan0.m-seregin**	Port **0**	Vendor **ITV**	
MAC address **not defined**		Model **TW5864 PCI**	Firmware **auto**
2			
IP address **yuan1.m-seregin**	Port **0**	Vendor **ITV**	
MAC address **not defined**		Model **TW5864 PCI**	Firmware **auto**

> **Note**
>
> If you have a WS-216 card added through the Yuan driver, in Windows Server OS you should activate: Desktop Experience Feature

Cameras connected to *Axxon Next* through the WS-216 card require the following configuration: add **ITV tw5864 PCI** device configuration (**2**) and select the checkbox **Send settings to device** (see The Video Camera Object).

> **Note**
>
> Axxon Next does not support receiving uncompressed video from WS-216 video capture cards.
> For video cameras that are connected through WS-216 video capture cards, you can choose one of the two codecs for a video stream:
> 1. H.264 (configurable)
> 2. H.264 (minimum resolution, non-configurable)

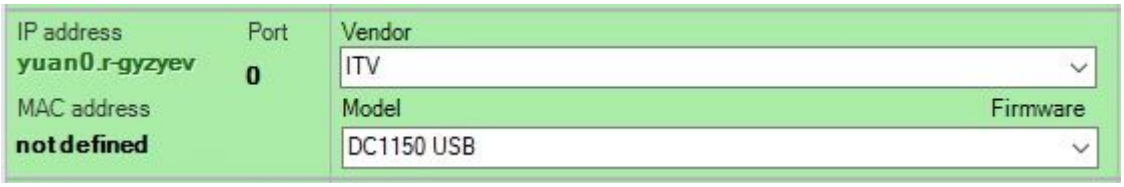
7.2.4.6.2 YUAN PD652 cards

To work with the YUAN PD652 cards in *Axxon Next*, do as follows:

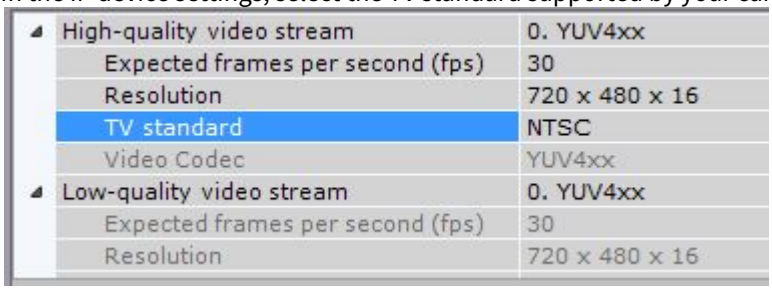
Attention!

Please see the list of supported OS for the YUAN PD652 board on the official website of the manufacturer.

1. Disable the system check for the digital signature of the drivers and install the card driver.
2. Connect the camera to the card.
3. Create an IP device in *Axxon Next*. The search result shows the camera connected through the YUAN PD652 card as follows:



4. In the IP device settings, select the TV standard supported by your camera.



7.2.4.7 Joysticks

Only joysticks that are detected in Windows as gaming input devices can be used in Axxon Next for controlling PTZ cameras.

Information on how to view the status for a connected joystick is available in official Microsoft documentation.

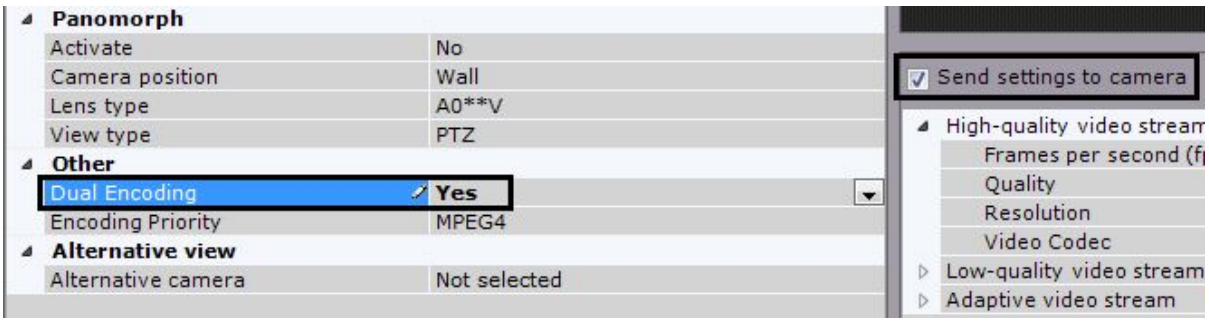
Note

We recommend that you calibrate the joystick before you start working with *Axxon Next*.

7.2.4.8 Sony IP Devices

Some Sony models support encoding of the video signal in two formats simultaneously. To use this option you must perform the following steps:

1. Select the **Send settings to camera** checkbox.
2. From the **Dual Encoding** list, select the codec which will take priority when dual encoding.

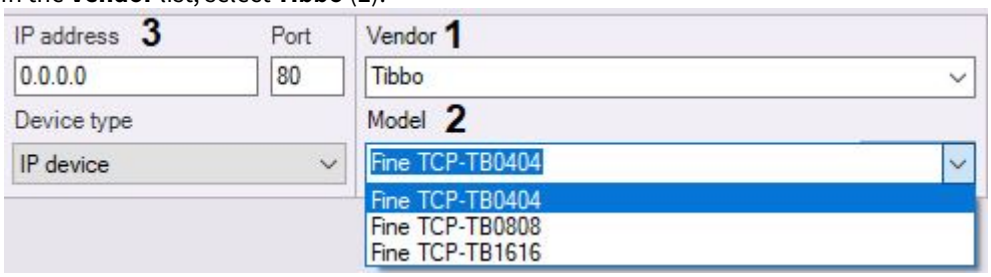


7.2.4.9 Setting up Tibbo relay/loop boards

Tibbo relay/loop boards allow monitoring air temperature and humidity on your premises.

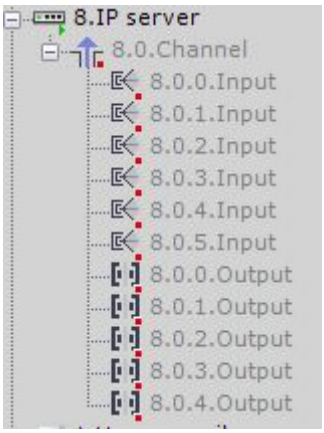
To add a board to the configuration, do the following:

1. Go to IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the **Vendor** list, select **Tibbo** (**1**).



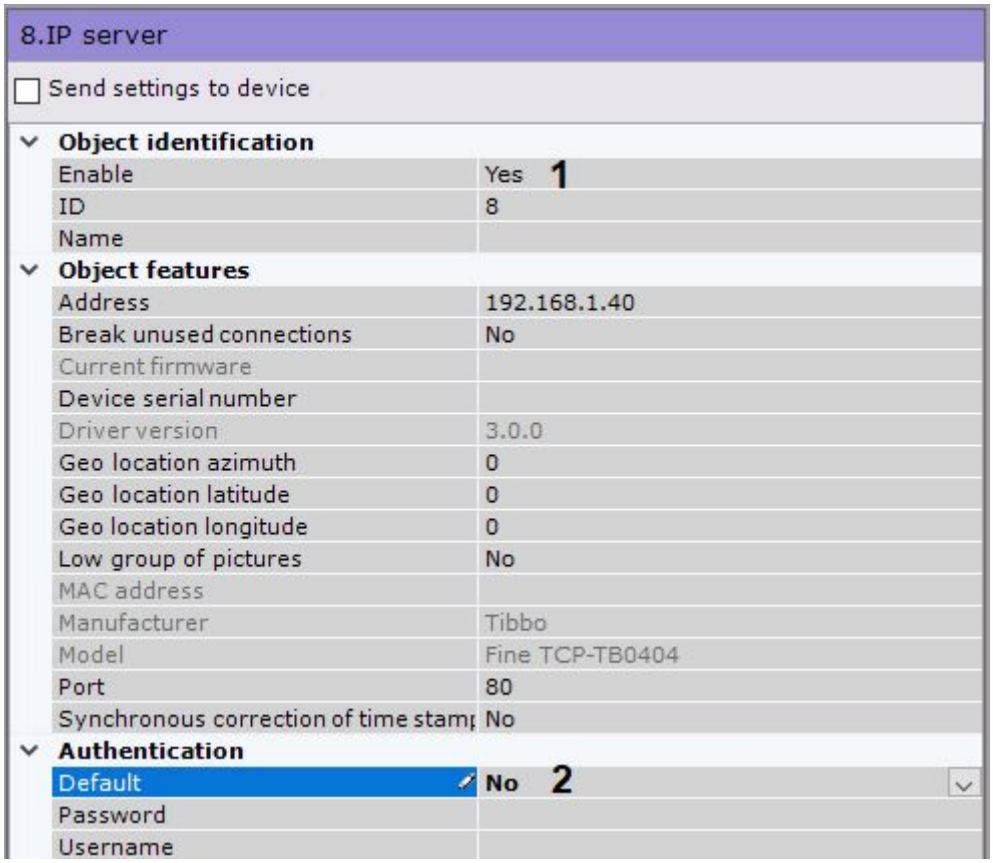
3. Select your board from the **Model** list (**2**).
4. Enter the IP address of the board (**3**).
5. Click the button.

The parent **IP Server** object, and **Channel**, **Input** and child objects under it will be added.

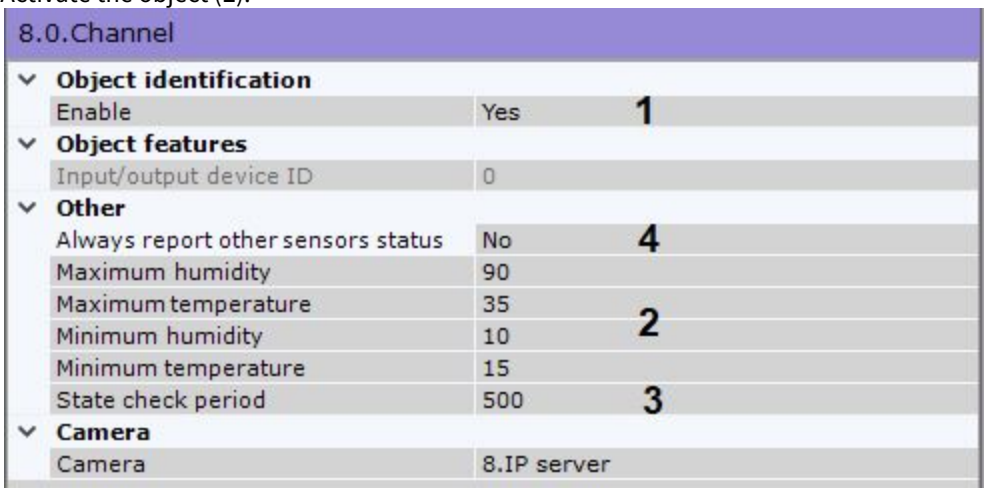


To configure the board, do the following:

1. Select the **IP Server**.



2. Activate the object (**1**).
3. In the **Authentication** parameter group, set **Default** to **No** (**2**).
4. Select a **Channel** object.
5. Activate the object (**1**).



6. Set permissible ranges for temperature (in centigrade) and relative humidity (in per cent)(**2**). If a reading falls out of the range, the corresponding Input (sensor) triggers an alarm.
7. Set the check period in milliseconds (**3**).
8. If you need to report sensors statuses when readings are within the range, set **Yes** for **Always report other sensors status** (**4**). In this case, the following records will appear in the log file in specified intervals of time (see paragraph 7):

```
Special humidity ray#16 changed status to: false ,Sensor value: 16,8 Correct range [15, 58]
. Time: …..
```

```
Special temperature ray#17 changed status to: false ,Sensor value: 29,8 Correct range [20,
60]. Time: …..
```

9. Click **Apply**.

Now, the board is configured. Current temperature/humidity value will be displayed next to input's icon on the Map (see Displaying device status).

7.2.5 Configuring object tracking

Axxon Next includes several features for tracking moving objects.

With Tag & Track Pro, an object can be tracked by a PTZ camera under the guidance of panoramic cameras.

> **Attention!**
>
> To use Tag & Track, make sure you have a PTZ camera in *Axxon Next* that supports Absolute Positioning. The devices that support Tag & Track Pro are listed in the Drivers Pack documentation. If a PTZ camera does not meet the requirement, you should add it to the VMS via Onvif.

With Tag & Track Lite, the operator is alerted to the camera in front of which the moving object is most likely to appear next. The camera is predicted based on object trajectory and mapping of cameras to map locations.

For these functions to work, all video cameras involved must have an activated **Object tracker** or **Neurotracker** object (see General information on Scene Analytics).

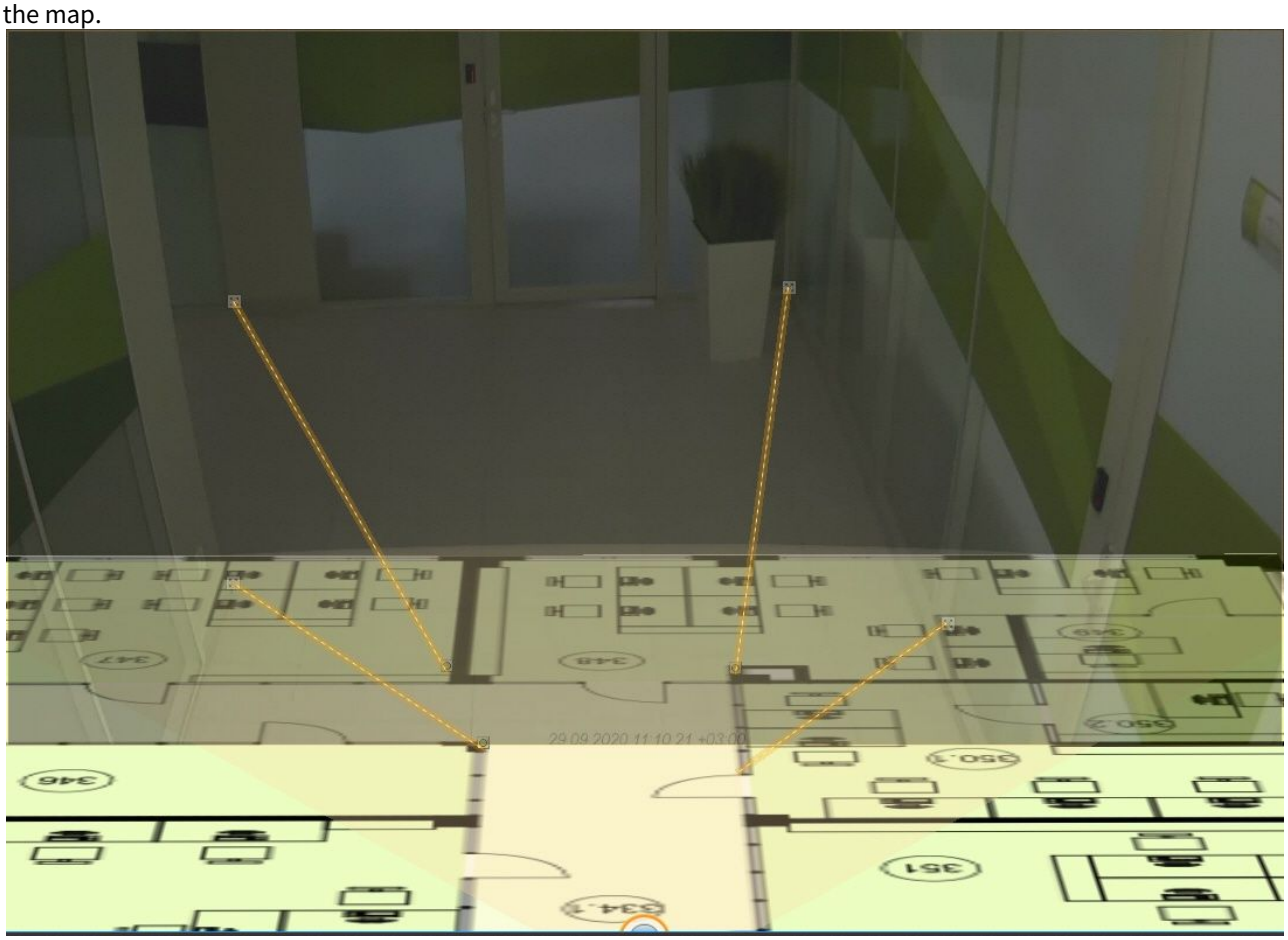
7.2.5.1 Configuring Tag & Track Lite

To follow objects with Tag & Track Lite, mount the cameras at the top of the scene, so that you can track motion across the plane (floor, ground) from above.

To configure Tag & Track Lite, do as follows:

1. Create **Object tracker** or **Neurotracker** objects for all cameras.
2. Go to the Layout Editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode).
3. Add video cameras to the map (see Adding video cameras and changing size of their icons on the map).
4. Set the exact location of the video cameras, field of view and coverage areas shared with other video cameras (see Configuring a camera in standard map viewing mode). FoVs intersection - area, common for FoVs of two cameras - must be no less than triple footprint of the tracked object.
5. For each video camera:
    a. Switch to immersive mode (see Configuring cameras in immersion mode).

b. Set 4 anchor point, that will correlate objects (door, corner, etc.) in the video image with their representation on the map.



6. Save the layout (see Exiting layout editing mode).

7.2.5.2 Configuring Tag & Track Pro

To configure Tag & Track Pro:

1. Link panoramic cameras to a PTZ camera.
2. Calibrate cameras.
3. Set the PTZ mode.

7.2.5.2.1 Camera requirements for Tag & Track Pro

To follow objects with Tag & Track Pro, mount the cameras at the top of the scene, so that you can track motion on the plane (floor, ground) from above.

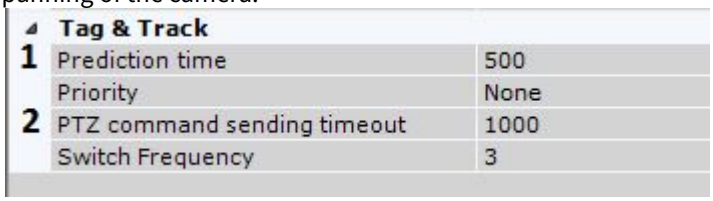
You have to point panoramic and PTZ cameras in the same direction.

In addition, panoramic cameras should meet the following requirements: Video requirements for tampering detection

7.2.5.2.2 Configuring Smooth Motion for PTZ cameras

To smooth panning of a PTZ camera while using Tag & Track Pro, you can configure:

1. The degree of prediction (**1**). This value should be in the range from 1 to 3000. The higher the value, the smoother is the panning of the camera.



2. The rate at which coordinates are sent in milliseconds (**2**). This value should be in the range from 100 to 3000.

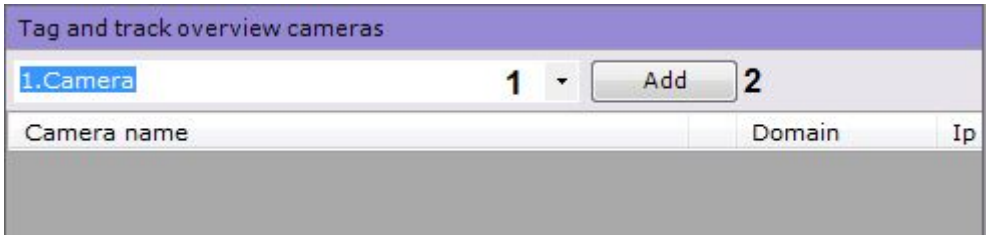
7.2.5.2.3 Linking panoramic cameras to a PTZ camera

To link panoramic cameras to a PTZ camera:

1. Go to the **PTZ** object of the relevant camera.
2. In the **Tag & Track** group, in the list **(1)**, select the camera that you want to link to the PTZ camera. Click the **Add button** (**2**).

> **Note**
>
> To search for a camera, enter its ID, the full or partial name in the **1** box.

> **Note**
>
> You can add only those cameras for which the Object Tracking was created and activated.



3. Repeat this action for all cameras that you want to link to the PTZ. You can connect any number of panoramic cameras to a PTZ camera.

> **Note**
>
> To remove a camera from the list of panoramic cameras, click the

4. Click the **Apply** button.

Linking of panoramic cameras to the PTZ camera is now complete.

7.2.5.2.4 Mapping PTZ positions to panoramic field of view (calibration)

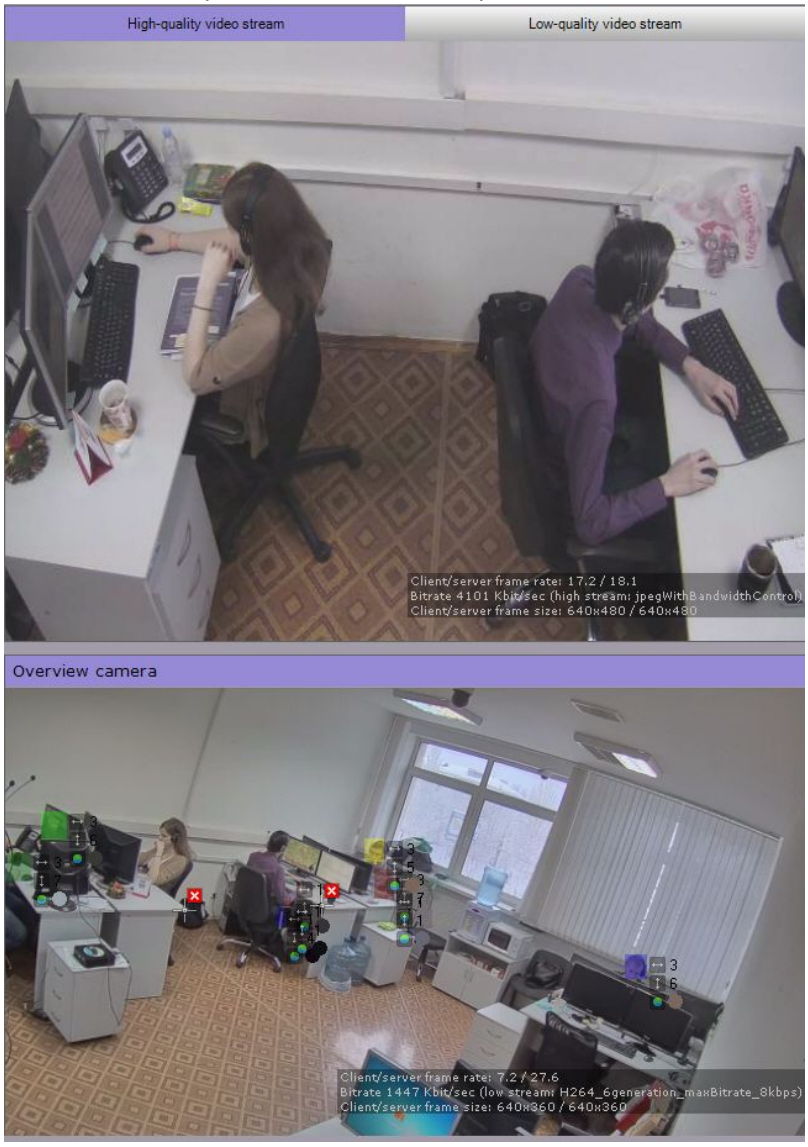
For precise tracking of moving objects, you must calibrate PTZ cameras by mapping at least six PTZ positions to points in the field of view of each panoramic camera.

The more positions you map, the more precisely the PTZ camera is able to follow moving objects. It is recommended to map eight or more points.

The calibration procedure is as follows:

1. Focus the PTZ camera on any point.
   To change the lens orientation, left-click the frame and, while holding the mouse button, drag the pointer in the relevant direction.

2. Left-click to add a point in the frame of the panoramic camera toward which the PTZ camera is currently oriented.



> **Attention!**
>
> Set calibration points on the same plane (floor, ground). Do not set the points on different planes (for example, when some are on the ground while others are on a tree, etc.).

> **Attention!**
>
> The entirety of the moving object must be inside the field of view of the PTZ camera.

3. Repeat this process for at least six points.
4. Repeat the process for all panoramic cameras (click to select a panoramic camera in the list).
5. To save the calibration points, click the **Apply** button.

After setup is complete, we recommend that you perform a calibration check. To do this:

1. Click the button to the right of the preview for that PTZ camera.
2. Click different points in the camera's field of view. If the PTZ camera is positioned correctly, it needs no calibration.

> **Note**
>
> To delete calibration points, click the button.

7.2.5.2.5 Setting PTZ mode for Tag & Track Pro

Tag & Track Pro can be used in four PTZ modes:

1. **Manual** – in this mode, a PTZ camera starts tracking an object only after the user selects the object in the viewing tile.
2. **Automatic** – in this mode, a PTZ camera automatically initiates tracking of all active objects. The PTZ camera focus on each object in sequence based on the specified dwell interval.
3. **User priority** – in this mode, automatic mode is used unless the user manually selects an object for tracking. As soon as the user selects an object for tracking, manual mode is activated. When an object is no longer selected or disappears from the PTZ field of view, automatic mode is reactivated.
4. **Manual PTZ control** – in this mode, the operator can take control of the PTZ cameras at any time. If the user does not control the PTZ camera, then the **Automatic** mode is used.

Select a mode in the **Priority** list (**1**). The dwell time is specified in seconds in the corresponding field (**2**).

To save changes, click the **Apply** button.

7.2.6 Receiving Events from External Systems

Axxon Next synchronizes the information from cash registers with the video from cameras pointed at the register area allowing you to monitor the process. In addition, *Axxon Next* operators can receive events from any *Intellect* objects in real time and correlate the received information with the video. The event sources can be e.g.:

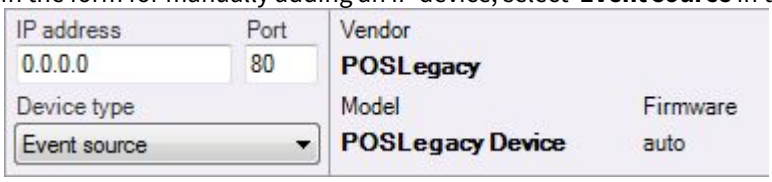
- Access control systems
- Security and fire alarm systems
- Perimeter security system

In *Axxon Next*, information from external sources is superimposed on video from a selected camera.

7.2.6.1 Event Source Object

Axxon Next uses the **Event Source** object to get external events. To create the object, make sure that:

1. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the form for manually adding an IP device, select **Event source** in the **Device type** drop-down list.



3. Click the button

The **Event Source** object is added to the system.

> **Note**

Once created, the **Event Source** object is enabled by default. To disable, select **No** in the **Enable** field.

7.2.6.2 Configuring POS devices

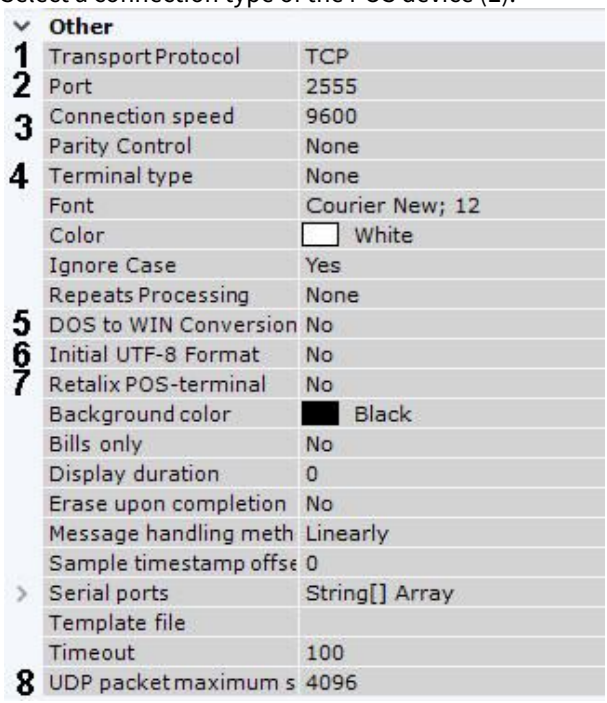
Axxon Next can obtain data from POS devices and offers the following capabilities:

1. Show titles in live and recorded video.
2. Search titles in recorded video.

7.2.6.2.1 Connecting POS devices

To configure a POS device, do as follows:

1. Select the **Event Source** object.
2. Select a connection type of the POS device (**1**).



3. Specify the Server connection port (**2**).
4. To connect via RS-232, select a port, connection speed and parity check (**3**).
5. Select the type of your POS device (**4**).
6. Select **Yes** in the **DOS to WIN Convertsion** field if the data from the POS device is DOS-encoded (**5**).
7. If the data is UTF-8 encoded, select **Yes** in the **Initial UTF-8 format** to enable correct display of captions (**6**).
8. If a Retalix terminal is used, select **Yes** in the corresponding field (**7**).
9. Set the maximum size of UDP datagrams in bytes (**8**). Oversized packets will be ignored.
10. Click the **Apply** button.

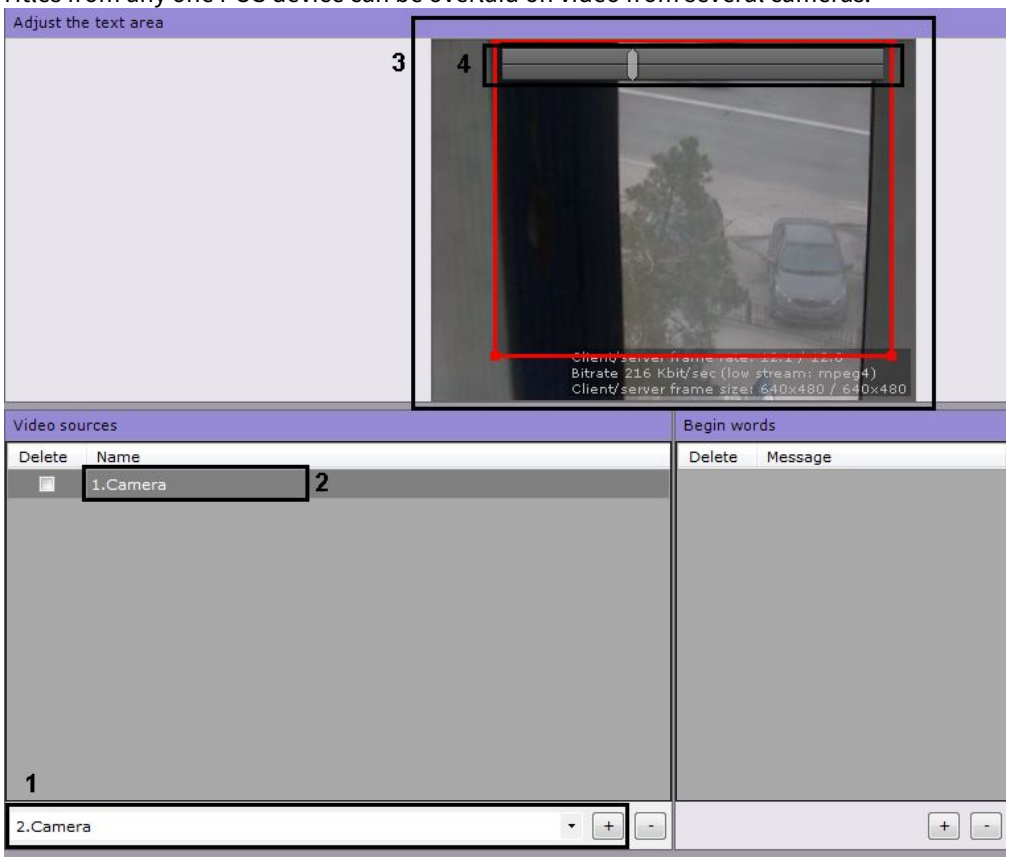
You have successfully connected your POS device.

7.2.6.2.2 Configuring titles view

You can configure the font and where you want the titles displayed on screen. The titles are displayed in a rectangular area superimposed on video.

To configure the titles view, do as follows:

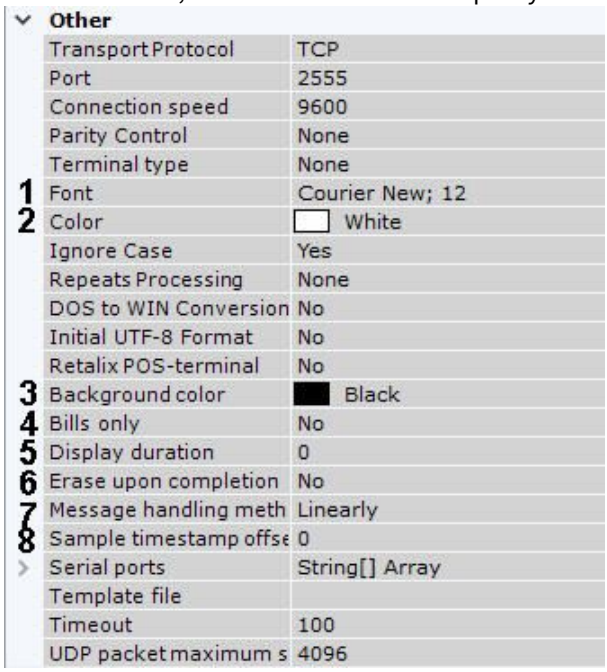
1. In the **Video sources** group, select a camera from the list and click the **+** button to add the camera for titles overlay (**1**). Titles from any one POS device can be overlaid on video from several cameras.



> **Note**
>
> To disable titles overlay for a camera, select the **Delete** checkbox and click the **-** button.

2. Select a camera in the **Video sources** group (**2**). The **Adjust the text area** group shows video from the selected camera and the adjustable titles area (**3**).
3. You can configure the titles area: Resize it by moving the anchor points. Move it with Drag-and-drop.
4. Change transparency with the slider (**4**). Slide left for more transparency, slide right for less.

5. In the **Font** filed, click the ... button and specify font settings in a standard Windows box (**1**).



6. Select font color (**2**).
7. Select captions font color in the camera window (**3**).
8. If you need to display only the lines contained between start and end markers of the receipt, **Yes** for the **Bills Only** parameter (**4**).
9. In the **Display duration** field, set the time in seconds for accumulated text rows on the screen (**5**). If you set **0**, captions will stay on the screen. New events replace old ones on a continuous basis.

> **Note**
>
> For shops where the checkout is never crowded, we recommend the captions display duration under 10 seconds.

10. If you don't need to display any lines following the end marker of the receipt, set **Yes** for the **Erase Upon Completion** parameter (**6**).
11. Select a method of processing incoming data (**7**):
    a. **LIineary** – incoming data is stored in a buffer until the next EOL is received, and only after that is transmitted to Axxon Next.
    b. **By event** – each data portion is immediately transferred to Axxon Next.
    c. **JSON** – not available in the current version.
12. By default, titles / captions are written to the database in sync with video. Though you may want to go to **Sample timestamp offset** and set up to 5 seconds time lag / jump in seconds in the range of [-5; 5] (**8**).
13. Click the **Apply** button.

You have configured the titles view.

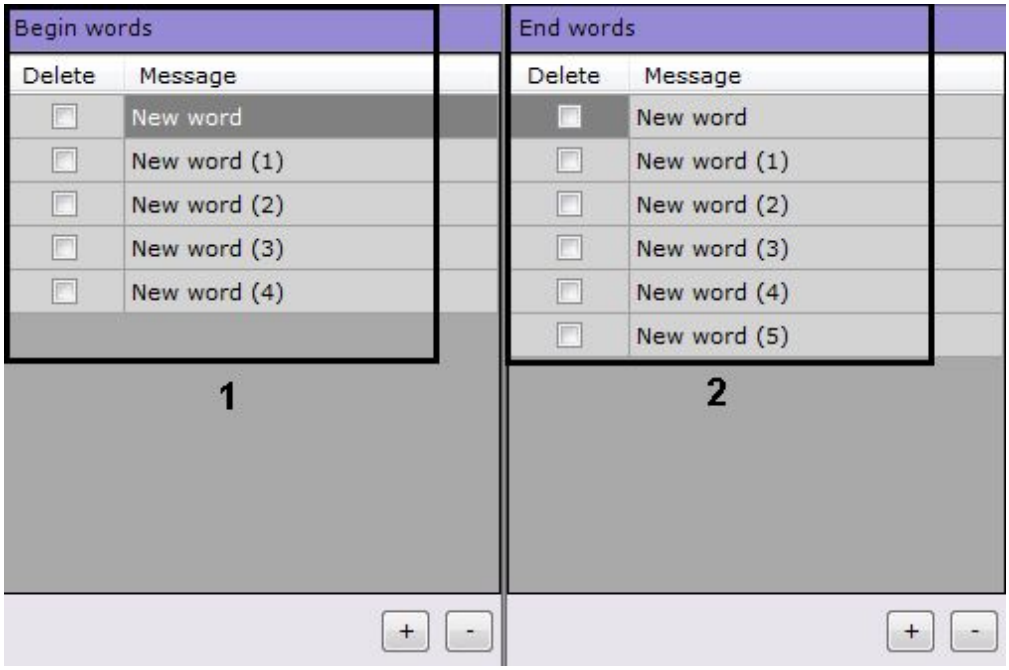
7.2.6.2.3 Configuring receipt beginning / end

The database stores only a full receipt. A receipt starts and ends with the configured phrases. If not configured, receipts contain 2000 lines. In this case, search will not work until the receipt is saved into the database (see Titles search).

> **Attention!**
>
> It is strongly recommended that you configure this setting for shops with low-intensity events at the checkout. Otherwise, the accumulation of 2000 lines can take a long time.

To configure the beginning and the end of a receipt, do as follows:

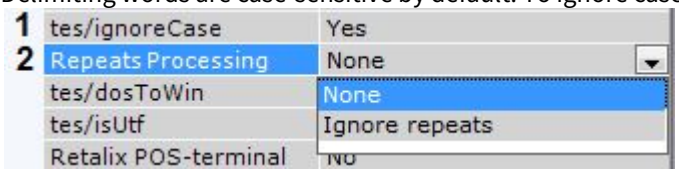
1. Populate the **Begin words** (**1**) group. To add words, click the **+** button. To remove words, select their **Delete** check boxes and click the **-** button.



2. Populate the **End words** (**2**) group in the same manner.

> **Note**
>
> You can add any number of delimiting words. Double click a word to edit it.

3. Delimiting words are case-sensitive by default. To ignore case, select **Yes** in the corresponding field (**1**).



4. Select how to treat repetitions (**2**).
   a. Select **Ignore repeats** to skip repeating beginning words before the end words show up. When the end words show up, the next receipt starts with the beginning words.
   b. Select **None** to skip the end words and delimit receipts by the beginning words only.
5. Click the **Apply** button.

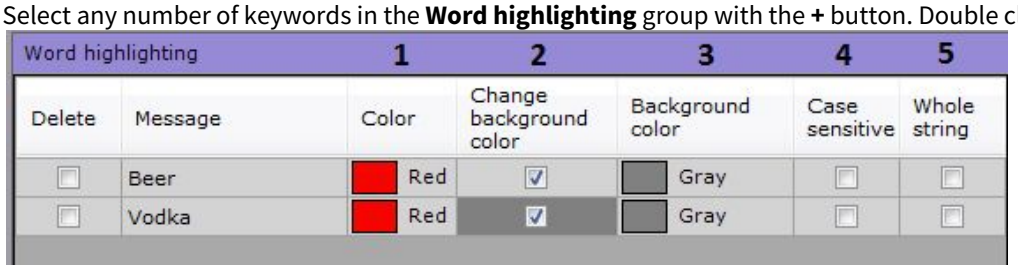
You have configured how receipts are delimited.

7.2.6.2.4 Configuring keywords

Keywords can be highlighted in the titles.

To configure keywords, do as follows:

1. Select any number of keywords in the **Word highlighting** group with the **+** button. Double click a keyword to edit it.



> **Note**
>
> To remove words, select their **Delete** check boxes and click the **-** button.

2. You can also configure these parameters:
   a. Highlighting color (**1**)**.** In the appropriate column, click the button and choose a color.
   b. If you want to change the color of the background of the titles output in the camera window, select the corresponding check box (**2**) and select the required color (**3**) when this word appears.
   c. Select the **Case sensitive** check if you want (**4**).
   d. To highlight the whole line, select the **Whole string** checkbox (**5**).
3. Click the **Apply** button.

You have configured highlighting for keywords.

7.2.6.2.5 Importing parcers

A special parsing algorithm processes the receipts and adds data to the receipts database. This is an option for advanced settings.

The choice of parcers depends on POS data structure:

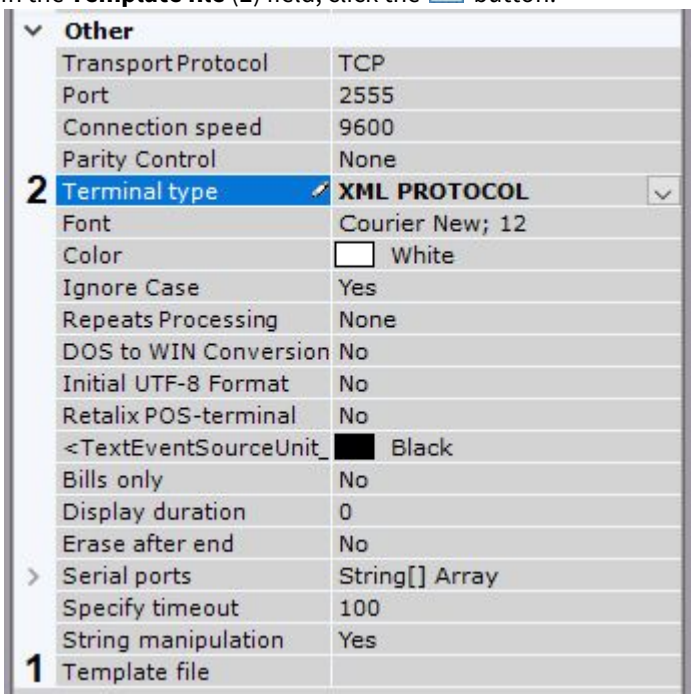
1. XML parcer for .txt files
2. POS parcer for .prl files

The XML parser specifies the rules for adding data to the receipts database if you have XML data from a POS terminal. The XML parser also validates the XML data against a schema.

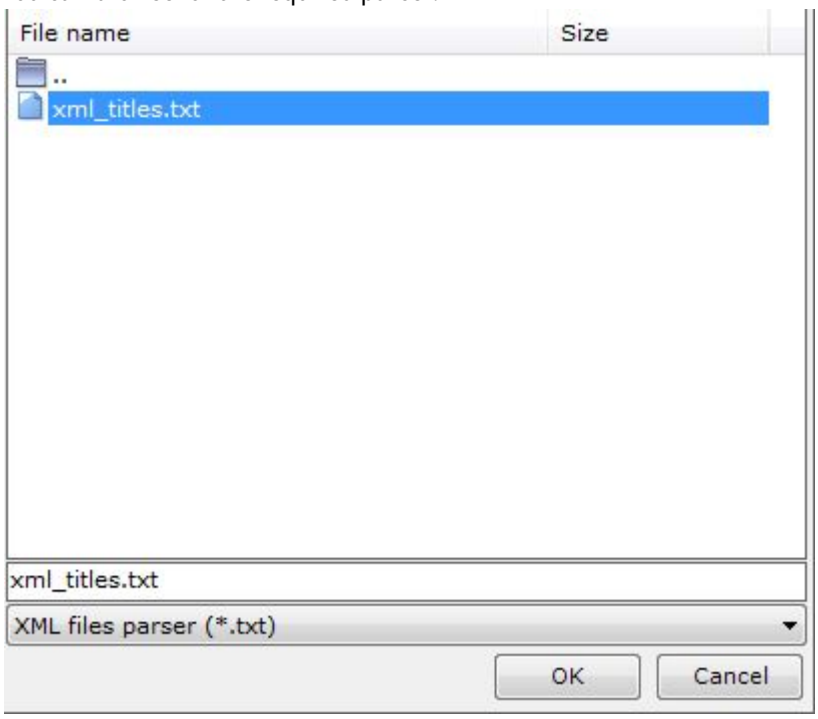
The POS parser specifies the rules for adding data to the receipts database if the data is from a POS terminal is other than XML. The parser depends on the POS terminal data structure.

To import a parcer, do as follows:

1. In the **Template file** (**1**) field, click the button.



You can browse for the required parcer.



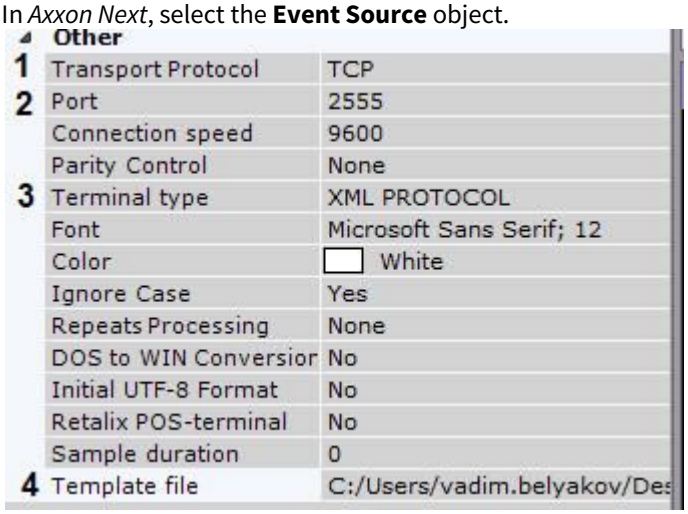
2. Select the type of the parser and the file.
3. If you use an XML parser, select **XML PROTOCOL** in the **Terminal Type** field (**2**).
4. Click the **Apply** button.

You have imported the parcer.

7.2.6.3 Receiving Intellect Events

To be able to receive *Intellect* events, do as follows:

1. On the *Intellect* machine, configure a data transfer module (see ACFA Intellect - Axxon Next Bridge Settings Guide).
2. In *Axxon Next*, select the **Event Source** object.



3. Select **TCP** in the Transport protocol field (**1**).
4. Specify the connection port to *Intellect* (**2**).
5. Select **XML PROTOCOL** in the Terminal type field (**3**).
6. Select a preconfigured parser (**4**, see Configuring parser).
7. Configure the data output similar to that of the POS device (see Configuring titles view).
8. Configure keywords, if necessary (see Configuring keywords).
9. Click the **Apply** button.

If the setup procedure was done correctly, the events from specified objects will be displayed in the viewing tile on *Intellect* in the same way as POS device captions do (see Viewing titles from POS terminals).

7.2.6.4 Configuring Receiving Events from CommaxComplexServer

CommaxComplexServer events can be forwarded to the Axxon Next VMS in two formats:

1. In JSON format using the **Event Source** (see Configuring CommaxComplexServer via Event Source).
2. As events from Virtual Inputs. This creates a virtual IP Server in the VMS (see Configuring CommaxComplexServer via virtual IP server).

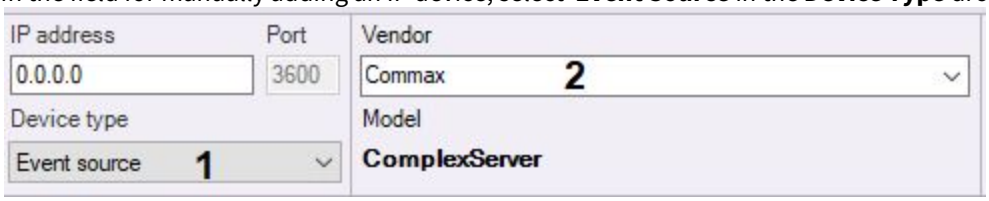
> **Note**
>
> CommaxComplexServer is smart apartment complex management software. It receives input from gates, doors, elevator call buttons etc.

Configure CommaxComplexServer before connecting to Axxon Next.

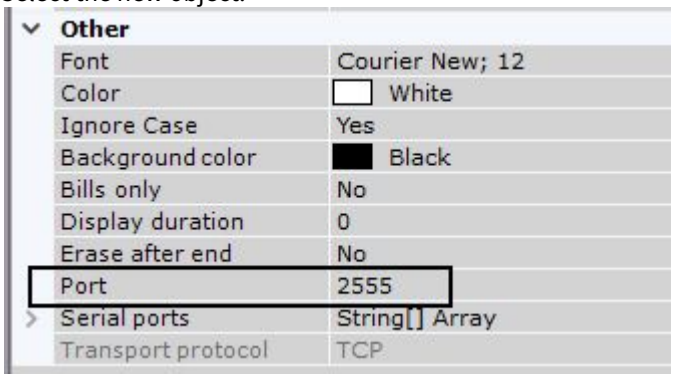
7.2.6.4.1 Configuring CommaxComplexServer via Event Source

Connect CommaxComplexServer via **Event Source** as follows:

1. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the field for manually adding an IP device, select **Event Source** in the **Device Type** drop-down list (**1**).



3. In the **Vendor** list select **Commax** (**2**).
4. Click the button .
   The **Event Source** object is added to the system.
5. Select the new object.



6. Enter the destination port name for CommaxComplexServer events.
7. Click **Apply**.

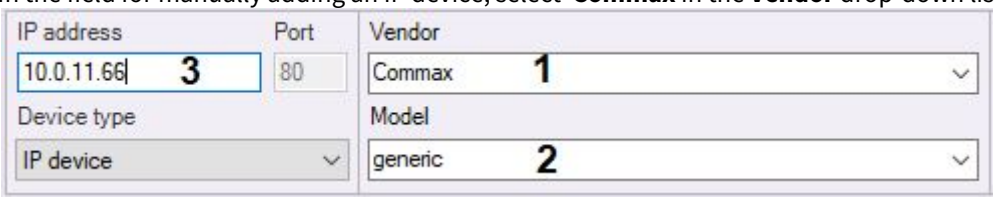
The CommaxComplexServer connection is now configured.

> **Note**
>
> You can present information as caption (titles) superimposed on video in the Camera window. See POS configuration instructions for that (see Configuring POS devices).

7.2.6.4.2 Configuring CommaxComplexServer via virtual IP server

Connect to CommaxComplexServer via virtual IP server as follows:

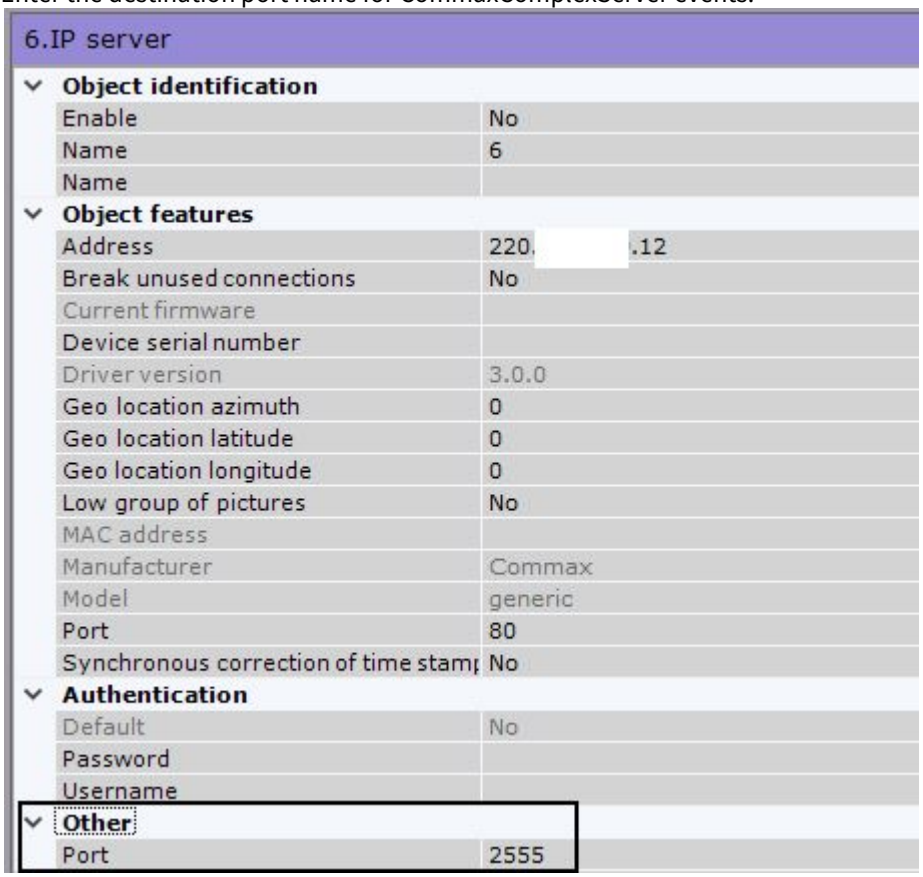
1. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices).
2. In the field for manually adding an IP device, select **Commax** in the **Vendor** drop-down list (**1**).



3. Select **generic** in the **Model** list (**2**).
4. Enter the IP address of the CommaxComplexServer (**3**).
5. Click the button .
   The parent **IP Server** object and **Channel** and **Input** objects under it are added according to CommaxComplexServer configuration. The names of the **Input** objects in the VMS and CommaxComplexServer are the same.

6. Select the **IP Server** object.

7. Enter the destination port name for CommaxComplexServer events.



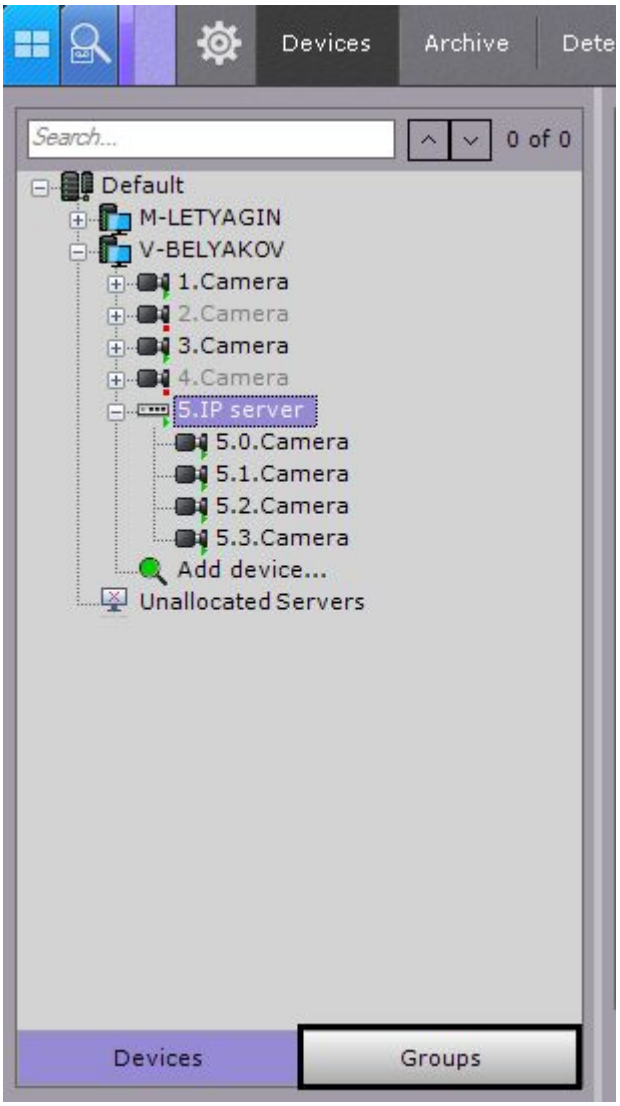
8. Click **Apply**.

The CommaxComplexServer connection is now configured.

7.2.7 Configuring video camera groups

You can manually group video cameras to enable quicker selection of a specific video camera for display.

Video camera groups are configured through the interface using the **Devices** tab (under **Settings**). To configure device groups, you must have the appropriate permissions to configure devices.



7.2.7.1 Procedure for configuring video camera groups

To configure video camera groups, complete the following steps:

1. Create **Group** objects.
2. Add video cameras created in the system to **Group** objects.
3. Create a system of groups and subgroups.

7.2.7.2 Creating a Group object

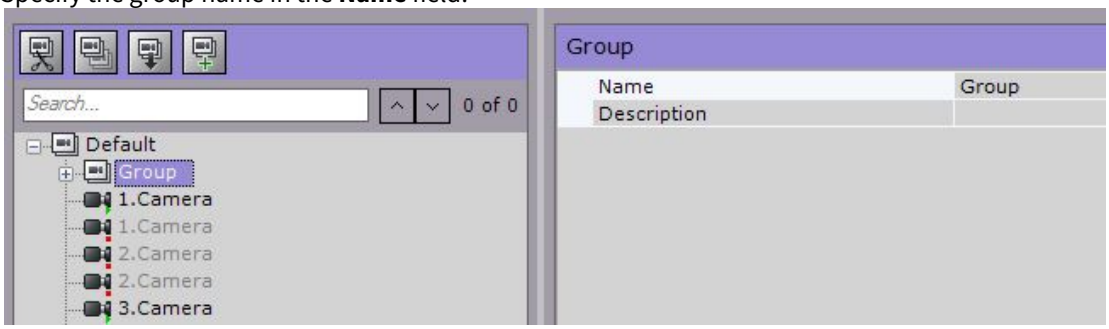
To create a **Group** object, complete the following steps:

1. Go to the **Groups** tab.

2. To create a **Group** object, click the button or select **Add group** in the context menu of the main group.

> **Note**
>
> By default, an object (whose name is the same as the Axxon-domain) is available, including all cameras that have been created in the system. This object is referred to here and elsewhere in the document as the "main group". This object cannot be deleted. Cameras in this group cannot be deleted.

3. Specify the group name in the **Name** field.



4. Enter a description of the group in the appropriate field.
5. Click the **Apply** button.

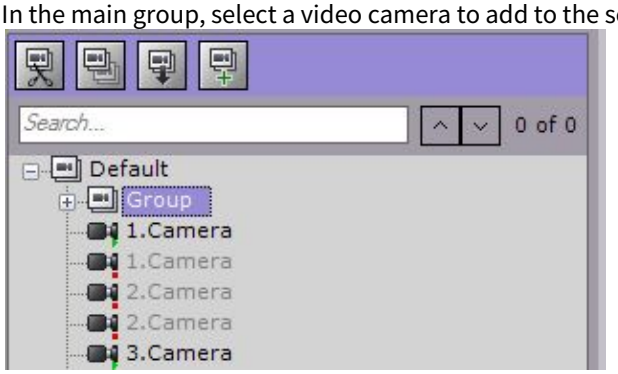
The **Group** object has now been created.

7.2.7.3 Adding video cameras created in the system to Group objects

To add video cameras to groups, complete the following steps:

> **Note**
>
> Video cameras are added to groups via management operations (see the section titled Managing Group and Video camera objects). The standard method for adding video cameras to groups is presented below

1. In the main group, select a video camera to add to the selected group.



2. Click the button or select **Copy** from the context menu of the selected video camera.
3. Select the **Group** object to which you need to add the video camera.
4. Click the button or select **Paste** from the context menu of the selected group.
5. Fill the groups with the necessary video cameras (see steps 1-4).

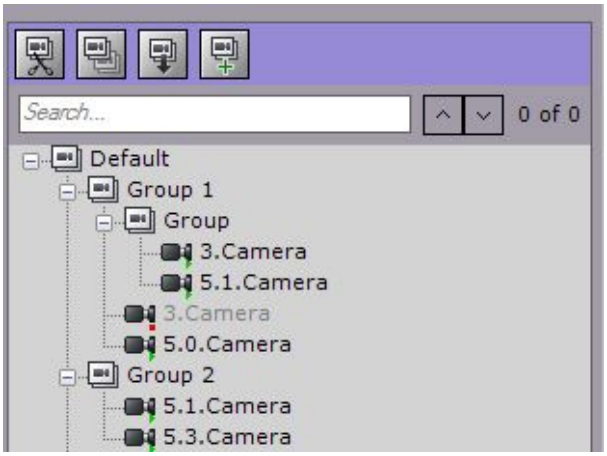
> **Note**
>
> One video camera can be assigned to multiple groups

6. Click the **Apply** button.

Adding video cameras to groups is now complete.

7.2.7.4 Creating a system of groups and subgroups

Groups can be included within other groups, forming a system of groups and subgroups.



A system of groups and subgroups can be created via group management operations and video camera management operations (see the section titled Managing Group and Video camera objects).

Group objects can be moved or copied to other **Group** objects or to the main group.

7.2.7.5 Managing Group and Video camera objects

The main operations used to manage groups and video cameras are presented in table.

Action	Execution
Cut/Paste **Note** You can cut a **Video camera** object only from a **Group** object. You cannot cut a **Camera** object from the main group. It is also impossible to cut the main group.	**Using your mouse:** 1. Left-click and hold the **Video camera/Group** object. 2. Drag the object to the **Group** object (or to the main group if you are dragging a **Group** object). 3. Release the left mouse button.
	Using the toolbar: 1. Left-click the **Video camera/Group** object that you want to move. 2. On the toolbar, click . 3. Left-click the **Group** object (or the main group, if one of the **Group** objects is being moved) to which you want to move the **Video camera/Group** object.. 4. On the toolbar, click .
	Using the keyboard: 1. Left-click the **Video camera/Group** object that you want to move. 2. Press the key combination **Ctrl+**X. 3. Left-click the **Group** object (or the main group, if one of the **Group** objects is being moved) to which you want to move the **Video camera/Group** object.. 4. Press the key combination **Ctrl+V**.
Copy/Paste	**Using your mouse:** 1. Left-click and hold the **Video camera/Group** object while simultaneously holding down the **Ctrl** key. 2. Drag the selected object to the **Group** object (or to the main group, if the **Group** object is being copied). 3. Release the left mouse button.
	Using the toolbar: 1. Left-click the **Video camera/Group** object that you want to copy. 2. On the toolbar, click . 3. Left-click the **Group** object (or the main group, if one of the **Group** objects is being copied) to which you want to copy the **Video camera/Group** object.. 4. On the toolbar, click .
	Using the keyboard: 1. Left-click the **Video camera/Group** object that you want to copy. 2. Press the key combination **Ctrl+C**.

Action	Execution
	3. Left-click the **Group** object (or the main group, if one of the **Group** objects is being copied) to which you want to copy the **Video camera/Group** object.. 4. Press the key combination **Ctrl+V**.
Deletion **Note** You can delete a **Video camera** object only from a **Group** object. You cannot delete a **Camera** object from the main group.	1. Left-click the **Video camera/Group** object that you want to delete. . 2. Press the **Delete** key.

7.2.8 Autocopy data from local to centralized servers

Axxon Next VMS supports automatic copying of the archive (video, audio, alarms) and camera events from local servers that are not in the same Axxon domain with the centralized server

Note

This is useful, for example, in the following case:

- The video from a bus on the route network is written to a temporary archive on the local server specific for each bus;
- When the bus arrives at the depot, the archive and camera events are automatically transferred to the centralized server.

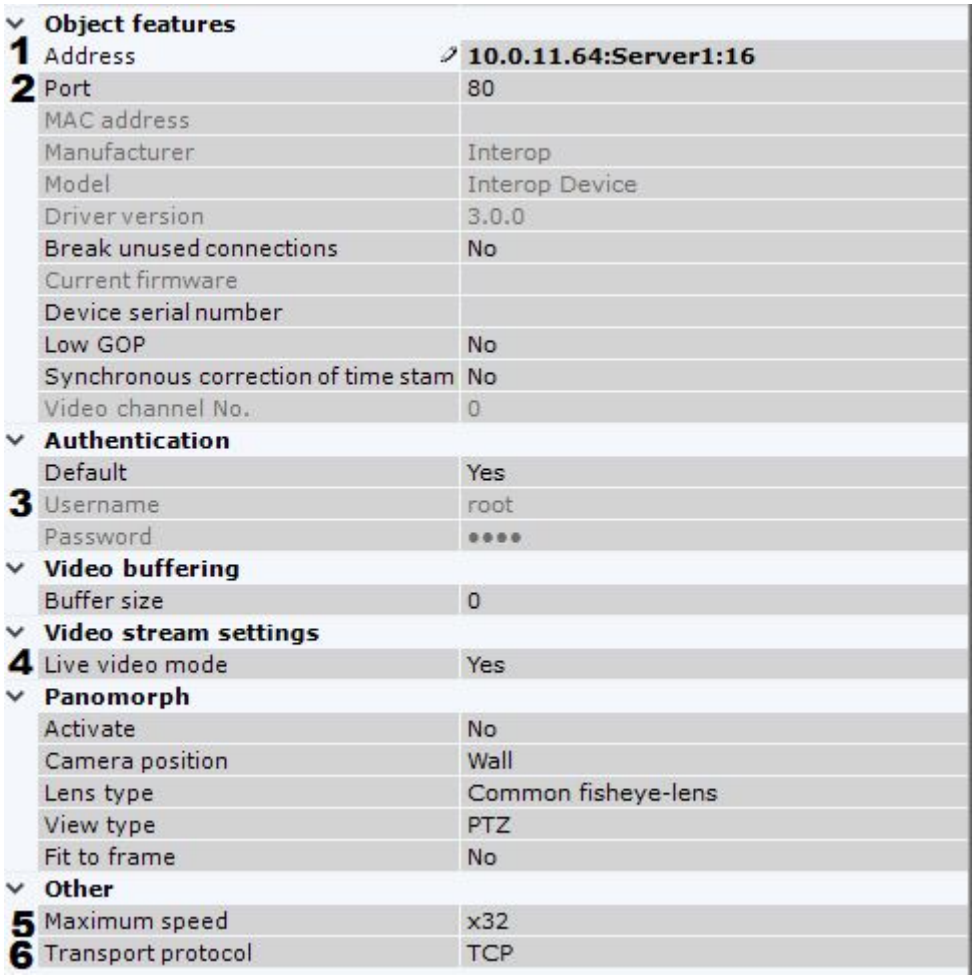
To use this option, configure the centralized server as follows:

1. Manually add the **Interop** IP device to the configuration (see Adding and removing IP devices);

2. Enable The Embedded storage object.
3. Specify the address of the device in the following format (**1**): <IP-address of local server>:<name of local server in Axxon domain>:<ID of camera on server>.

Attention!

The Server name is case-sensitive.
If the name is Server1, no connection will occur if you enter server1 or SERVER1.



4. Specify a port of the local Server from which data is transmitted (**2**). If you use TCP protocol (see 8), please specify the RTSP port number (554 by default, see Configuring an RTSP Server). If you use rtspoverhttp or rtspoverhttps protocol, specify the web server's port (80 by default, Configuring the web server).
5. Specify the user name and password (**3**). The user must have permissions to access the local server.
6. If you want to display live video from the local server when it is available, select Yes in the appropriate field (**4**).
7. Specify the maximum playback speed (**5**).
8. Select the data transfer protocol (**6**).
9. Click the **Apply** button.
10. Repeat the above steps for all the required cameras from all local servers.
11. Configure automatic replication from the embedded storages of the added devices to the centralized server archive (see Configuring data replication).

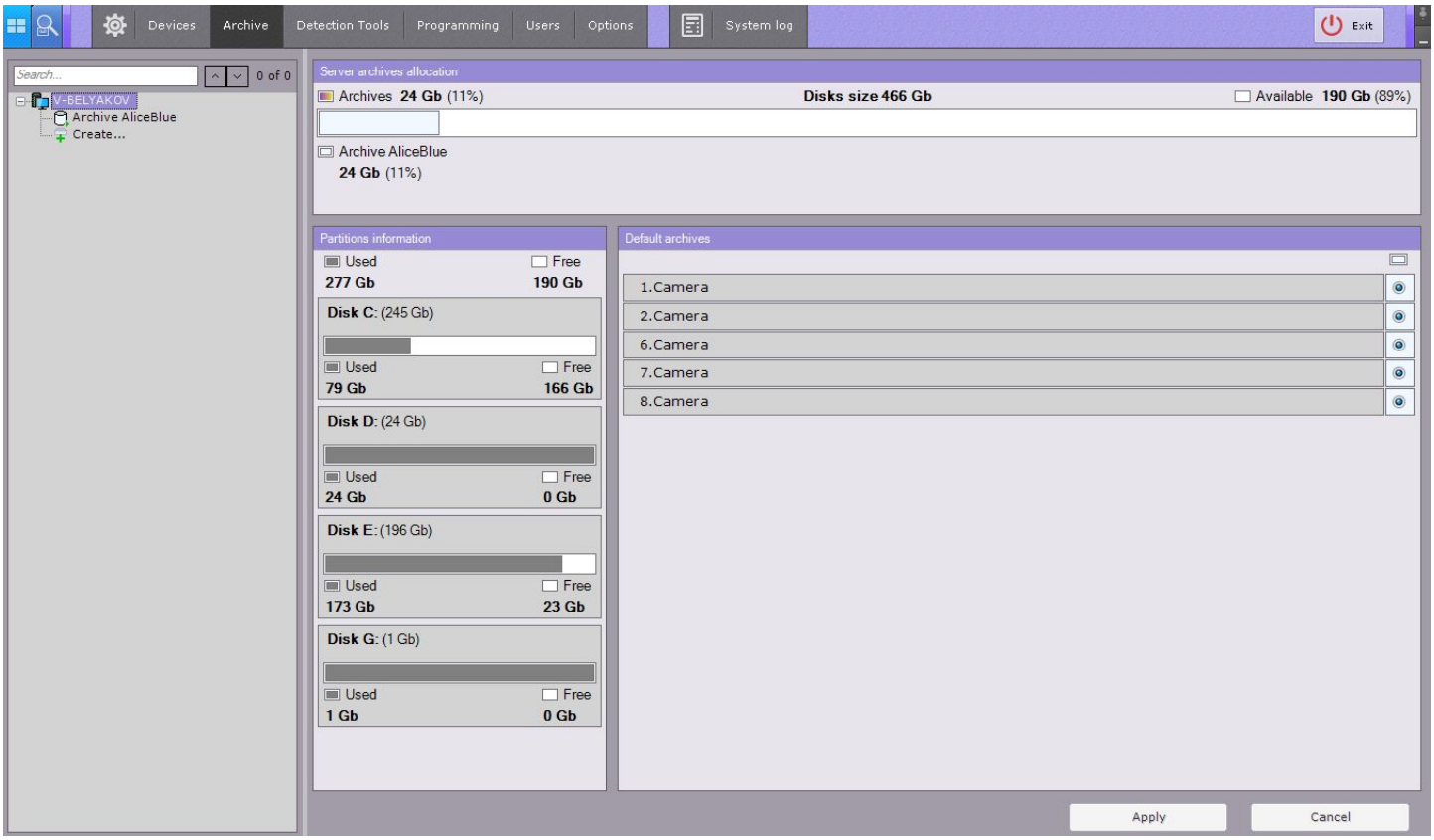
> **Attention!**
>
> With a high network load, there may be gaps in the centralized server archive.

You have successfully set up automatic data copying from the local servers to the centralized server.

7.3 Configuring Archives

7.3.1 General information of configuring archives

You can configure archives using the interface in the **Archive** tab (under **Settings**). To create archives you must have the appropriate permissions.



On the basis of one server you can create an unlimited number of archives.

> **Attention!**
>
> We do not recommend you to operate a large single volume video footage archive.
> It's more practical to divide the archive to multiple volumes located on different hardware devices. We recommend you to create an archive with volumes no larger than 30 TB each.

The archive can be stored:

- both on local disks and on network disks (see General information of SolidStore file system);
- in object storages, which are created via the gRPC API (see Create archive using gRPC API methods for version 4.6.0.717 Beta and earlier versions).

Features of archives:

Local archive	Network archive	Object archive
The archive can be distributed on several volumes of the server	The archive can be stored on multiple network storage devices	The archive can be stored in one object storage
On one logical disk for one archive you can create only one volume, which occupies either a file of a set size or the entire partition (logical disk)	The archive can be stored only as a file of a specified size	The archive can contain only one volume of unlimited size. You can change the size of the archive without restarting ngp
The archive can contain multiple volumes, which may be in the form of a file or a partition		

Data from one local or network archive can be copied to other local or network archives.

You can configure archives as follows:

1. Create archives (see Creating archives).
2. Configure recording of the video stream from video cameras to the archives (see Configuring recording to an archive).
3. Configure data replication, if necessary (see Configuring data replication).

You can also connect external archives — a set of video recordings with time links.

> Video surveillance in archive mode

7.3.2 General information of SolidStore file system

Fragmented files accumulate over time in the Windows file system. This is due to the fact that the operating system sequentially fills the free disk space when writing files.

Free disk space, which appears when old files are deleted, can be located in different parts of the disk; therefore, each file can be split into many fragments.

When reading or writing such a file, the hard drive head must constantly move, which reduces the read/write speed and causes mechanical wear of the disc.

AxxonSoft has developed its own file system SolidStore especially for storing video archives. The system is installed on a blank physical or logical drive, which is fully allocated to Axxon Next video archive (see Creating archives). In developing SolidStore, it was taken into account that recording will only be sequenced in one direction (looping mode), and the newest data is written in place of the oldest.

> **Attention!**
>
> Loop recording (FIFO overwriting) should erase the earliest recordings, but in some cases selected recordings within 10% of the oldest ones may be compromised. This feature protects archive volumes from fragmentation.
> In such cases, these earliest 10% of videos in archive may have gaps.

By optimizing the reading/writing process we managed to minimize the travel of the hard disk head along its surface and to achieve three important advantages:

- Enable high read/write speeds, approaching the physical access speed limit of the hard disk.
- Increase the service life of the hard disk.
- Solve the problem of data fragmentation: as data is written only in looping mode, fragmentation is minimal and does not accumulate with time. This way, the read/write speed remains high throughout the operation of the video surveillance system.

SolidStore relieves the user from the need to periodically stop the video surveillance system and run the Disk Defragmenter tool. This significantly increases video surveillance uptime and the protected facilities remain under the watchful eyes of the security personnel.

If it is not possible to allocate a separate disk for Axxon Next video archive, it can be written as a regular file in the existing Windows file system.

7.3.3 General information about the object archive

Object archive is an object file system for storing video archives in cloud.

Benefits of using the object archive:

1. Integration with AxxonSoft VSaaS.
2. Scalability.
3. High level of security.
4. Flexible pricing.
5. Data durability up to 99.999999999% according to Amazon.

In *Axxon Next*, you can create archives based on the following solutions:

1. Amazon S3: https://aws.amazon.com/s3/.
2. Microsoft Azure: https://azure.microsoft.com/en-gb/services/storage/blobs/.
3. Wasabi: https://wasabi.com/.
4. Huawei Cloud: https://huaweicloud.com/.
5. Seagate Lyve Cloud: https://www.seagate.com/.

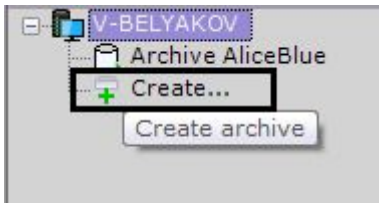
Creating the object archive

7.3.4 Creating archives

7.3.4.1 Creating a local archive

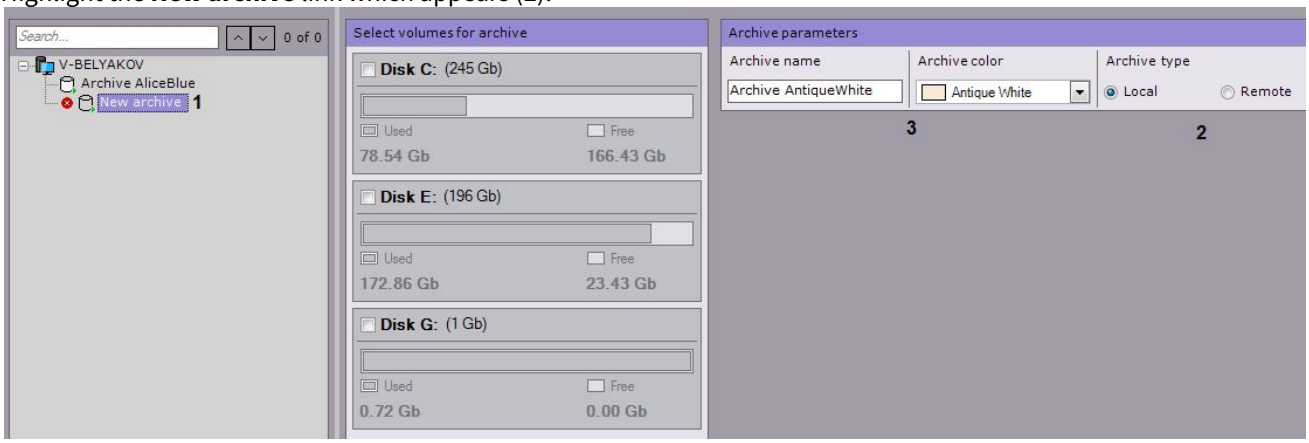
To create a local archive:

1. In the branch of the **Server** object corresponding to the computer on which you need to organize an archive, click the **Create** link.

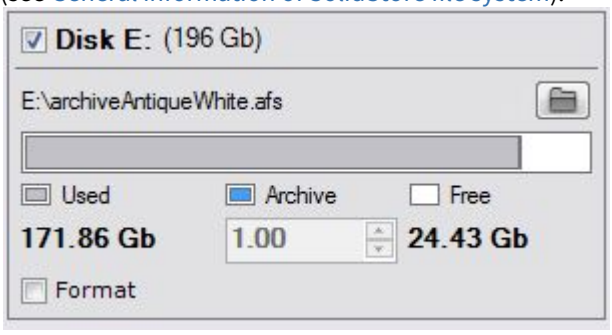


> **Note**
>
> You can also create an archive by selecting the matching command in the context menu of the **Server** object (the menu can be brought up by right-clicking the name of the Server)

2. Highlight the **New archive** link which appears (**1**).



3. Set the archive type to **Local**.
4. Specify the name and color of the archive.
5. Configure archive volumes.
   a. For the disks that you want to include in the archive, select the corresponding check boxes.
   b. If a disk does not have a file system, the disk can contain an archive volume in the form of a partition. In this case, select the **Formatting** check box. This will format the disk using the SolidStore file system developed by AxxonSoft (see General information of SolidStore file system).



Note

The file system on the disk can be erased by using the standard Disk Management utility in Windows.Instructions for starting and using the utility are given on the Microsoft website.
Deleting the file system on the disk in the disk management utility consists of the following:

i. Delete the volume.
ii. Create a new volume in the resulting unformatted area.
iii. Assign a letter to the volume, but do not format it.

The system disk cannot be completely allocated for an archive

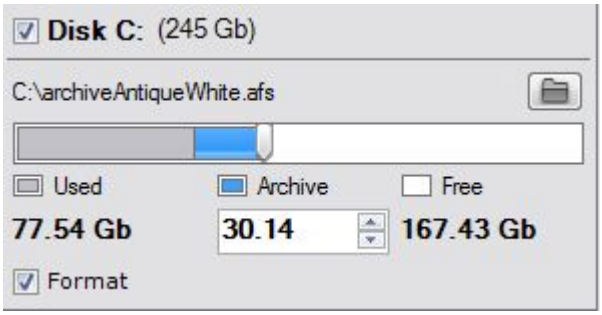
Important!

When selecting the disk on which to place the archive volume, take its size into account. If the archive is completely filled, the oldest data will be overwritten with new data.

Note

Note that you cannot create an archive volume as a partition on a removable disk, since its partition cannot be erased through the Disk Management utility

c. On disks that have a file system, you can store an archive volume in the form of a file.
For this archive volume, you must enter a file size (in gigabytes) or set it by moving the slider. The size of the archive file must be more than 1 GB. For the Fat32 file system, the maximum archive size is 4 GB.



Important!

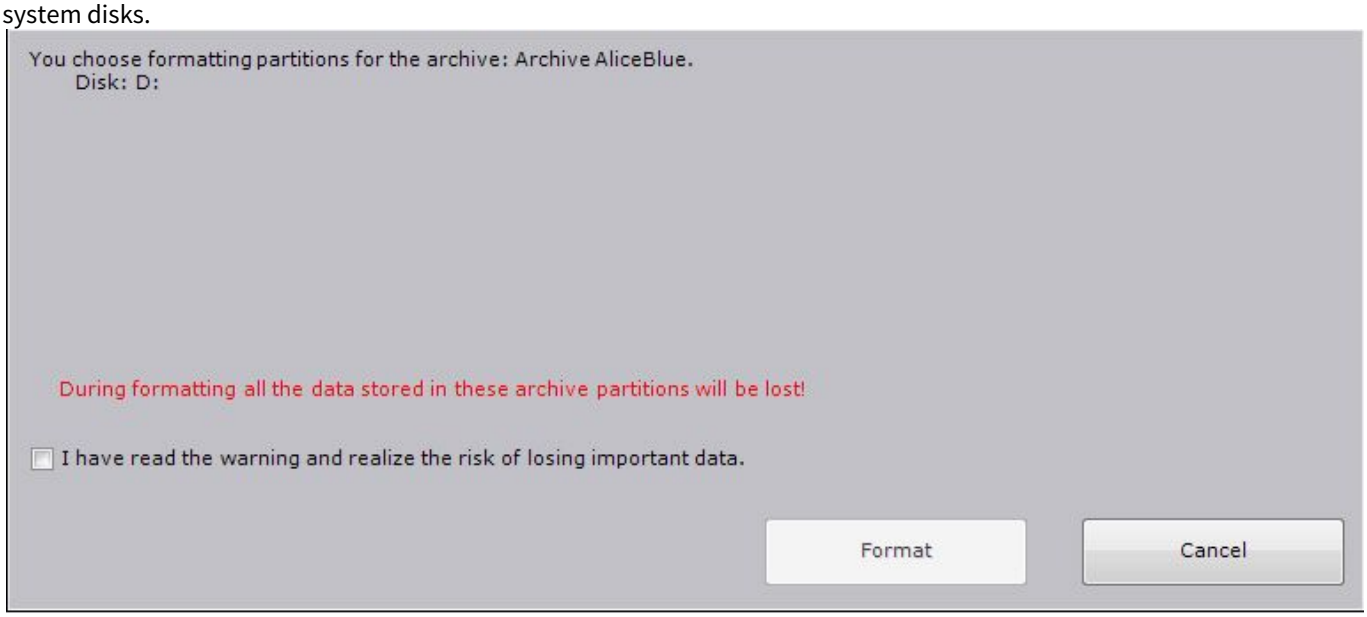
If the archive is completely filled, the oldest data will be overwritten with new data.

Note

By default, the file name will be the same as the name of the archive, and the file will be located at the root directory of the disk. To change the name and/or location of the file, click the button.

6. Click the **Apply** button.
If volumes are configured in the form of partitions, a dialog box is displayed, warning about formatting of the relevant

system disks.



7. Read through the list of partitions that will be formatted. If the list is correct, select I **have read the warning and realize the risk of losing important data**, then click **Format**. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to return to the archive settings.

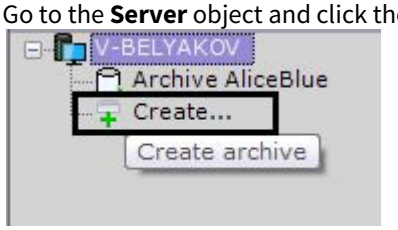
Creation of the local archive is now complete.

7.3.4.2 Creating a network archive

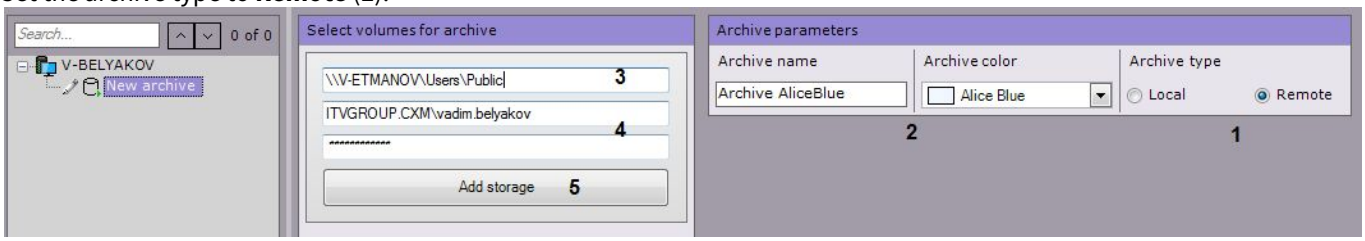
Network archives are files on NAS (network attached storage).

To create a network archive, do as follows:

1. Go to the **Server** object and click the **Create** button.



2. Set the archive type to **Remote** (**1**).



3. Specify the name and color of the archive (**2**).
4. Enter a path to the archive network destination (**3**).

> **Attention!**
>
> If a particular PC is used to access a particular network archive from multiple user accounts, do the following:
>
> a. Launch text editor and open the file: C:\Windows\System32\Drivers\etc\hosts ,then add the following string: "192.168.1.1 DNSname1", where 192.168.1.1 - IP address of the NAS, DNSname1 - domain name of the NAS.
> b. The name of a newly created network archive must include the actual domain name.
>
> If you need to add several network archives under different user accounts, do the following:

a. Launch text editor and open the file: C:\Windows\System32\Drivers\etc\hosts, and add IP addresses and domain names of all necessary NAS.
b. The names of newly created archives must include actual domain names.

In a backup Server-driven failover system (see Setting up a configuration with the backup Server), if domain names differ from one Server to another, the hosts file on the backup Server must include records from all Servers.

5. Enter the user name and password (**4**). The user must have permissions to access the NAS.

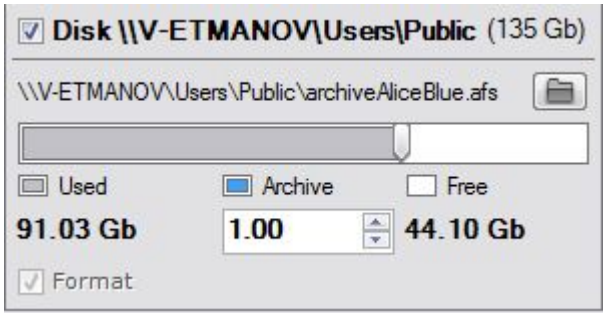
Attention!

The login should be specified with a prefix of the domain (domainname\username) or name of the computer (computername\username) where this account is located.

6. Click the **Add storage** button (**5**).
This will connect you to the NAS. When you are connected, you can see a dialog box for setting up your archive.

Attention!

Only one network user can connect to NAS at a time. This is a limitation of OS *Windows*.
If this error occurs, disconnect the previous user in one of the following ways:
1. Run the command net use /delete.
2. Use PsExec to open the command prompt as the LocalSystem user (psexec.exe -i -s cmd.exe) and execute the same command.



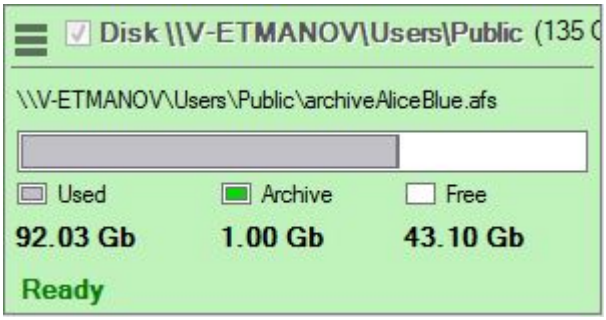
7. For this archive volume, you must enter a file size (in gigabytes) or set it by moving the slider. The size of the archive file must be more than 1 GB. For the Fat32 file system, the maximum archive size is 4 GB.

Note

To change the archive folder, click the button and browse to a desired location

8. If you want, you can add other NAS for your archive and set them up.
9. Click the **Apply** button.

You have created your network archive. After creating the archive, the NAS status is displayed.



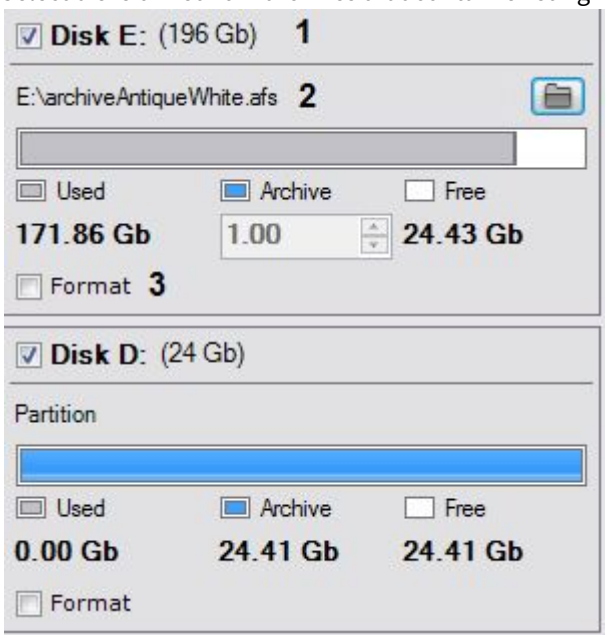
7.3.4.3 Creating an archive based on existing archive volumes

If an archive is created from an existing volume, it will be possible to extract saved video from the file only if the following conditions are met:

- The currently selected computer has the same name as the name of the Server or node on which the video has been saved to an existing Video Footage volume.
- The IDs of the video cameras from which the recordings were written to the existing archive volume are the same as the IDs of the current video cameras.

To create an archive based on an existing volume:

1. Create an archive (see Creating a local archive).
2. Select disks or network archives that contain existing volumes (by selecting check boxes, **1**).



> **Note**
>
> A new archive can contain volumes that previously belonged to different archives

3. If the volume is in file form, select the archive file to which recording was performed (**2**).
4. Clear the **Format** check box (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> If the **Format** check box is selected, the archive entries that are currently stored on the volume will be erased.

5. If necessary, create new archive volumes on free partitions.
6. Click the **Apply** button.

The archive is created and, if all requirements are met, the archive recordings are available.

7.3.4.4 Creating the object archive

The object archive is created using the gRPC API — see Manage archives using gRPC API (ConfigurationService).

7.3.5 Configuring recording to an archive

Video and audio streams are recorded synchronously.

You can configure recording to the archive both for one video camera, and for several, using the same parameters.

To configure recording to the archive of one video camera, do the following:

1. Select the new archive.
2. Select the check box that corresponds to the camera for which you want to configure archive recording (**1**).

3. Configure settings for archive recording.
   a. In the **Constant recording** list, select the archive recording mode (**2**).
   If **No** is selected, the video stream will be recorded to the archive only when an operator manually initiates an alarm or an automatic rule is initiated.
   If **Always** is selected, video will be recorded to the archive non-stop.
   If a time schedule is selected (see Configuring schedules), video will be recorded non-stop to the archive during the selected time period. Recording to the archive can also be initiated by the operator or an automatic rule.
   b. In the **Depth** field, specify a video footage retention time value for the given camera (in days). **Zero** value means unlimited retention.

> **Attention!**
>
> If your footage archive includes videos from one or more cameras with unlimited retention, the archive will run out of free space at some point, and FIFO based re-recording will be automatically started regardless of retention time settings. In this case, we cannot guarantee that the actual retention time settings will be preserved for other cameras.
> Therefore, if you set unlimited retention time for at least one camera, you may find it pointless to limit retention time for other cameras.
> To avoid retention time collisions between cameras, please make sure to provide enough storage capacity for your footage archive (see Disk storage subsystem requirements).

> **Attention!**
>
> Further, if you are increasing the available archive retention time, or setting the parameter to **0**, please note that this setting may be not applied to earlier records. Older footage falling outside the initial retention time may become inaccessible.

> **Note**
>
> When setting a retention time parameter for a particular camera archive, please note that global retention time limits have higher priority (see Configuring access restrictions to older footage).
> If your entire archive is set to, say, 10 days, and the camera retention time is set to 20 days, camera footage will be actually retained for 10 days only.

   c. In the **Pre-alarm recording time** field (**4**), enter the buffering time of the video stream from the camera in seconds. This value should be in the range [0, 30].

> **Note**
>
> Pre-alarm recording is the period of pre-event recording that will be added to the beginning of an alarm event recording

> **Attention!**
>
> If a macro starts recording, the pre-alarm recording time may be longer, according to your settings (see Record to archive).

   d. If it is necessary to use decimation when recording to the archive, select the required value from the **Gapping, fps** list: **By keyframes** (for all video streams except MJPEG) or **1 / 0,5 / 0,25 FPM** (frames per minute). Decimation reduces the size of the archive, but the video will be less "smooth".
   e. Select a stream for archive recording (**6**).

> **Note**
>
> This setting is relevant for cameras that support multistreaming.

4. Click the **Apply** button.

To configure recording to the archive of several cameras, do the following:

1. Select the check boxes next to the cameras for which you want to configure archive recording. To select all cameras, select the **Select all** check box.

2. Configure archive recording settings for the group of cameras (marked with yellow). The indicated settings for archive recording are applied to the selected cameras.
3. Perform custom configuration of camera recording settings, if necessary.
4. Click the **Apply** button.

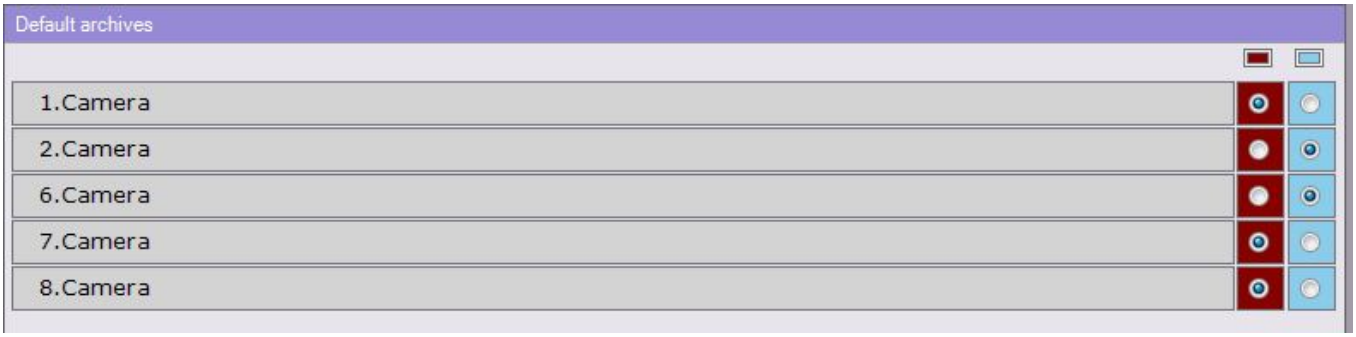
The camera is now bound to the archive.

7.3.6 Setting the default archive

The default archive of a video camera is the archive to which images from a given video camera are recorded during user-initiated alarms. For each video camera one and only one default archive must be set. The first archive to which recording of a video stream from a video camera was configured automatically becomes the default archive (see Configuring recording to an archive).

To switch the default archive for a camera:

1. Select a **Server** object.
   The **Default archives** form displays a list of cameras and archives, which are marked with the corresponding colors. If archive recording to at least one archive is enabled for a particular camera, the camera is visually marked as related to its default archive.



2. To change the default archive for a camera, move the designator to the relevant archive.
3. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of the default camera archive is now complete.

7.3.7 Configuring data replication

Replication of archives refers to constant, block-by-block copying of fixed-size information (video, audio, metadata) from one archive to another archive within the same Axxon-domain. The primary purpose of data replication is to ensure long-term storage and access to multimedia recordings on remote storage devices.

> **Attention!**
>
> Any archive can be the source or recipient of replication. Moreover, every archive can simultaneously be both the sender and recipient of data.

Attention!

Replication occurs as information blocks are accumulated. 1 block may contain more than a minute of video.

Attention!

Replication is performed only to the end of the archive. It is not possible to overwrite existing data in the archive.
To transfer the old data from **Archive 1** to **Archive 2** and continue writing new data to Archive 2, do as follows:

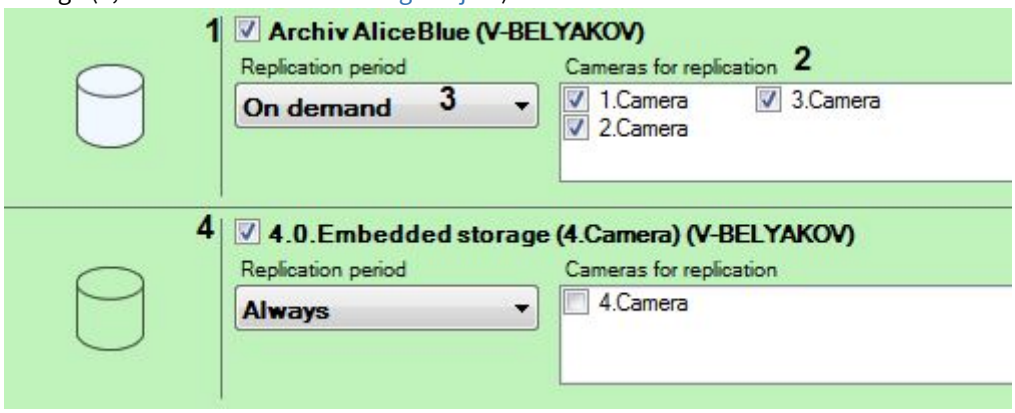
1. Replicate the data from **Archive 1** to **Archive 2**, while **Archive 2** cannot be written to.
2. Configure the camera to write to **Archive 2**.

Note

Events indicating the start and successful completion of data replication are generated in the system (see Event Control). These events can be used in macros (see Configuring Macros and Counters).

To configure data replication:

1. In the list of archives on the Axxon-domain, select the archive to which you want to copy data from other archives.
2. Select one or more archives form which you want to copy data (**1**). You can also replicate video from on-board camera storage (**4**, see The Embedded storage object)



3. For each archive, select the cameras from which data will be copied to the source archive (**2**). To select all cameras, click the **Select All** button.

   Note

   Data for a particular camera can be copied to the replication archive only from one archive. When you select a camera for replication from an archive, the camera becomes unavailable for replication from any other archive.

   Note

   You cannot select cameras if they are already recording to the replication archive.

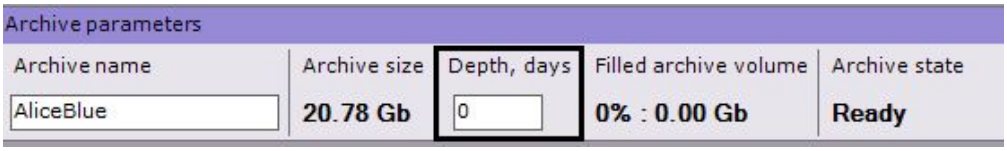
4. Select the replication process period (**3**):
   a. **Always** - replication will be performed continuously.
   b. **Time zone** - replication will be performed within the specified time schedule (see Creating schedules). For example, to distribute the CPU load, you can configure replication to run at night.
   c. **On demand** - replication will be started manually or using macros (see Manual Archive Replication, Start replication).
5. Click the **Apply** button.

Data replication configuration is complete. If the replication period was set to **Always**, data replication starts immediately after the settings are applied.

7.3.8 Configuring access restrictions to older footage

You can make only newest recordings in your available for the VMS users.

To do this, select the history (in days) in the appropriate field and click **Apply.**



> **Note**
>
> If the history value is set at **0**, all recorded video is available for playback.

You can view only video recordings not exceeding the retention time setting. All other videos will be deleted.

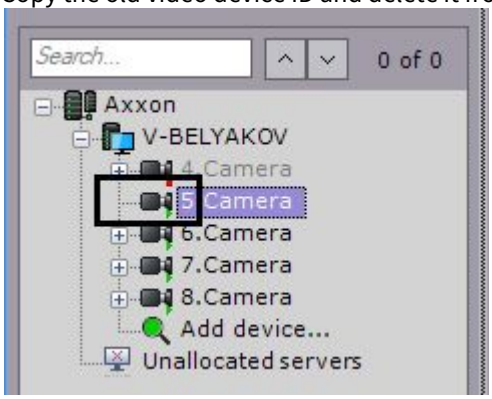
> **Attention!**
>
> Further, if you are **increasing** the Archive retention time (**0** - stands for unlimited time), this setting is applied for new records only. Earlier records falling outside the initial retention time become inaccessible.

7.3.9 How to preserve Video Footage continuity after replacing a video source

Axxon Next supports keeping video source's recorded footage after the device is replaced.

To do this:

1. Copy the old video device ID and delete it from the system.



2. Create a new device under the same ID (**1**) and bind it to the same footage archive (**2**, see Adding and removing IP devices).

> **Attention!**
>
> Any other parameters of the new device may differ (make and model, ID, etc.).

If you swap NVRs, make sure you preserve the same order of video channels for connected cameras.

Creating a new device with the old ID makes the previously recorded footage available for viewing / processing within the system.

7.3.10 Protecting video footage from FIFO overwriting

In the *Axxon Next* software package, data is being recorded cyclically (First In First Out). Normally, older video footage is overwritten by the newer.

You can protect selected videos from being overwritten. A macro copies protected recordings to another Video Footage.

To protect videos, do the following:

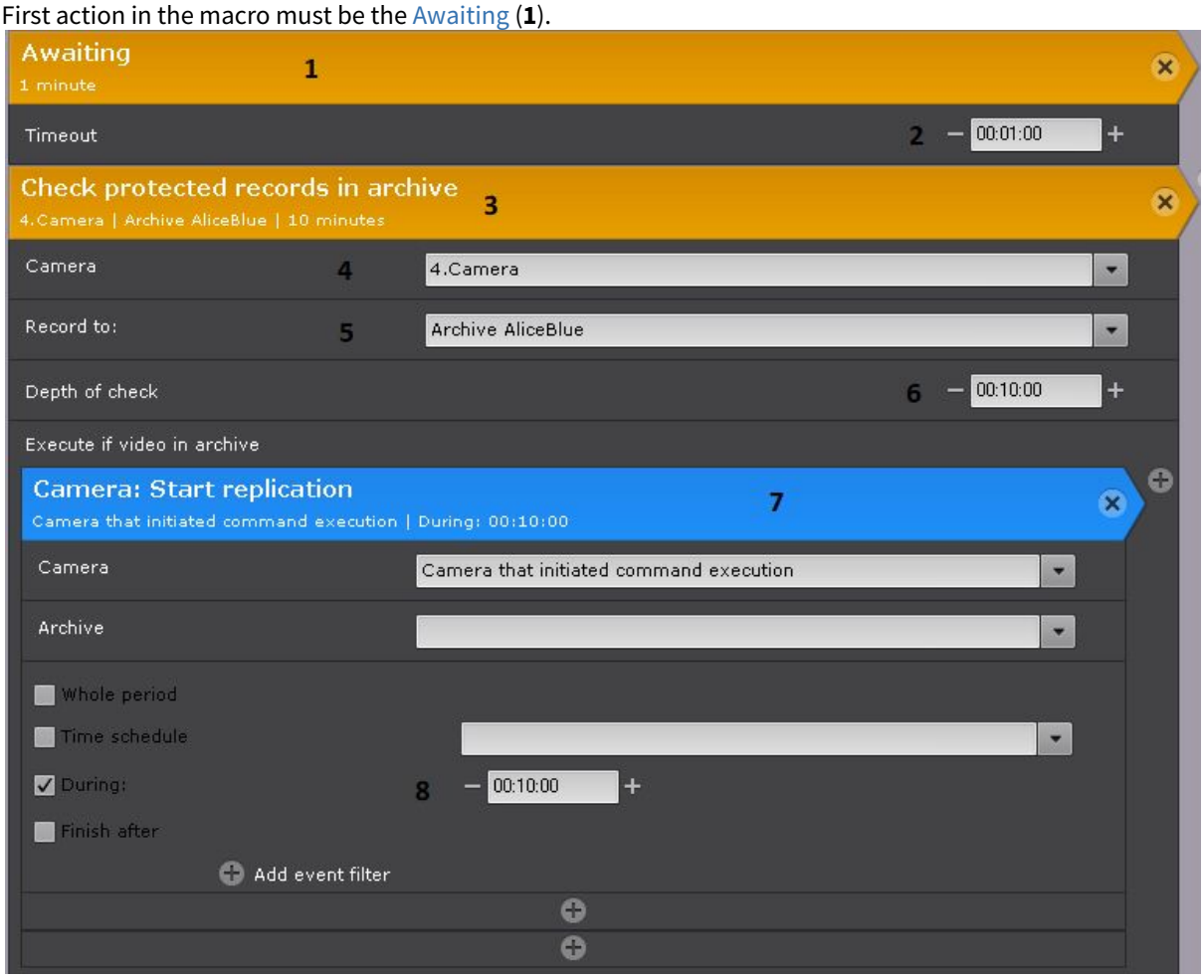
1. Configure on-demand replication (see Configuring data replication).
2. Configure a macro (see Setting up a macro for automatic copying of protected records).
3. Configure protection for necessary videos (see Setting up record protection).

You can further edit the list of protected recordings through the web client.

7.3.10.1 Setting up a macro for automatic copying of protected records

You have to create and set up a **cyclical** macro (see General information about the macros) as follows:

1. First action in the macro must be the Awaiting (**1**).



2. The timeout delay value sets the time interval for checking Video Footage for protected records (**2**).
3. The second action in the macro must be checking Video Footage for protected records (**3**). On this step, you have to:
   a. Select a camera or a group of cameras whose Video Footages have to be checked for protected records (**4**).
   b. If you select a particular camera, specify the archive to be checked (**5**). If a group of cameras was selected in the previous step, only default archive will be checked for each of them (see Setting the default archive).
   c. Specify the depth of the check in HH:MM:SS format (**6**). The time interval between checks is calculated as follows: [starting time of the earliest recording in archive, starting time of the earliest recording in archive + depth of the check].
   d. Add data replication as a conditional action upon discovery of protected records within the scanning interval (**7**, see Start replication).

e. Select the Replication time for a time interval (**8**). The replication duration defines the time interval from which protected records have to be copied to another Video Footage. All protected intervals starting within the [starting time of the earliest recording in Video Footage; starting time of the earliest recording in Video Footage + replication duration] range will be copied to Video Footage for replication. Normally, the replication duration has to be equal to the depth of the check defined in Step 3c.

The screenshot shows settings that make the system scan once in a minute (**2**) for protected records in Camera 4's (**4**) archive AliceBlue (**5**) within the [starting time of the earliest recording in archive + 10 minutes] time interval (**6**). If this interval contains protected records, the replication will be launched to copy all protected records falling into [starting time of the earliest recording in archive; starting time of the earliest recording in archive + 10 minutes] **(8)** interval to archive specified for replication.

7.3.10.2 Setting up record protection

To protect a record, create a bookmark - a special case of the operator comment (see Operator comments).

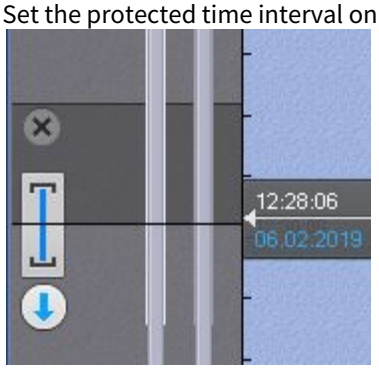
To create a bookmark, do as follows:

1. Select the required camera on the layout and switch to the archive mode (see Switching to Archive Mode).

   Note

   If you need to protect the same time interval in multiple camera archives, switch the necessary cameras to the archive mode.

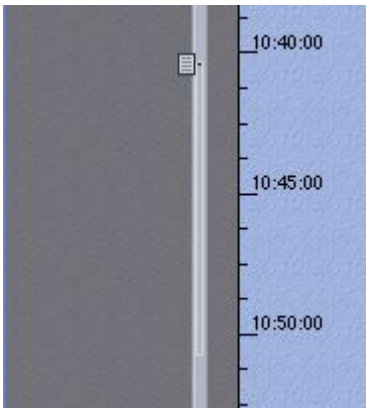
2. Set the protected time interval on the timeline in the archive with the and buttons (see The Timeline).



3. Click the button in the video surveillance window.
4. Enter a comment (**1**).

5. Click the button (**2**).
6. Set the **All** (**3**) checkbox if it is necessary to protect the specified interval from all cameras currently in the archive mode.
7. Click the **Save** button (**4**).

The newly created bookmark will appear on the timeline.



The protected interval will be highlighted in light grey, and its beginning will be marked with .

Click the button to delete the specified protected interval in the archive.

7.3.11 Increasing capacity of an archive volume

You can increase capacity of an archive volume.

7.3.11.1 Increasing capacity of an archive volume as a partition

You can increase volume capacity only with standard media. This option does not work with RAID disk sets.

> **Attention!**
>
> AxxonSoft cannot guarantee archive data integrity after this action is complete.

To increase volume capacity, do the following:

1. Stop the Axxon Next Server (see Shutting down a Server).
2. Use the Windows disk management utility to increase volume capacity.
3. Start the Server (see Starting a Server).

7.3.11.2 Increasing capacity of an archive volume as a file

To increase volume capacity, use the -expand parameter in console utility for working with archives (see Console utility for working with archives).

7.3.12 Editing archives

You can edit the archives that have been created in the system. You can perform the following actions on them:

1. Rename an archive (see Creating archives).
2. Add new volumes. Addition of a new volume also occurs during archive creation (see Creating archives).
3. Deleting and formatting archive volumes.
4. Change settings for archive recording (see Configuring recording to an archive).
5. Change replication settings (see Configuring data replication).

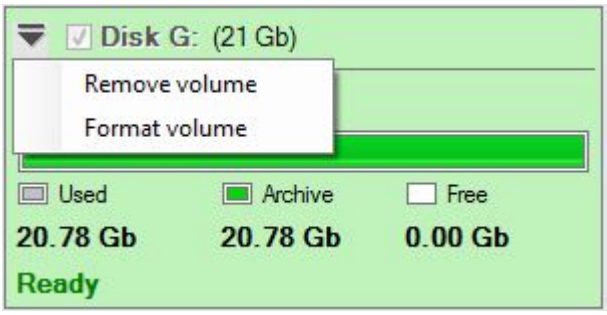
7.3.13 Deleting and formatting archive volumes

You can delete and format archive volumes.

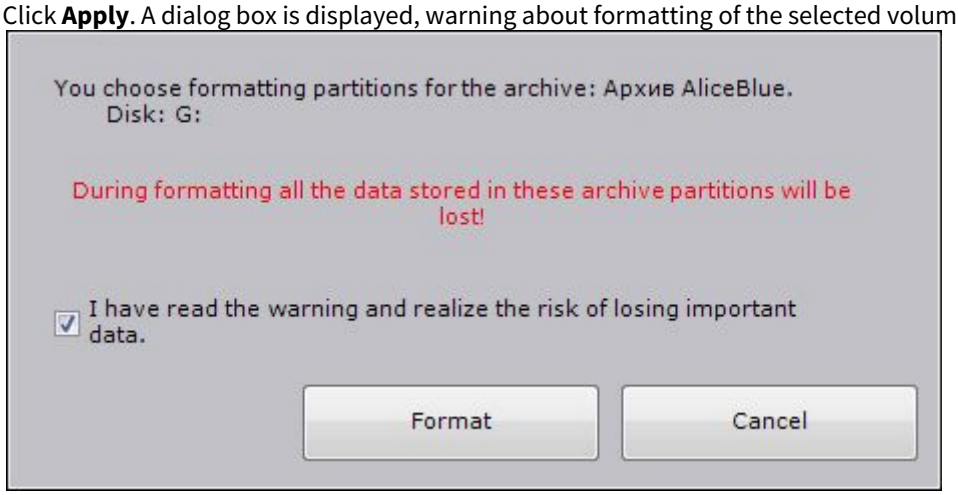
To format the archive volume, do as follows:

1. Click the button.

2. Select **Format volume.**



3. Click **Apply**. A dialog box is displayed, warning about formatting of the selected volumes.



4. select the checkbox and click **Format**.

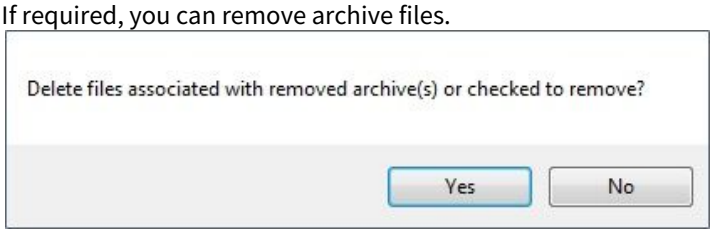
The volume formatting is complete.

To delete a volume, do as follows:

1. Click the button.
2. Select **Remove volume**.

> **Note**
>
> If there is only one volume in the archive, you cannot delete it

3. Click **Apply**.
4. If required, you can remove archive files.



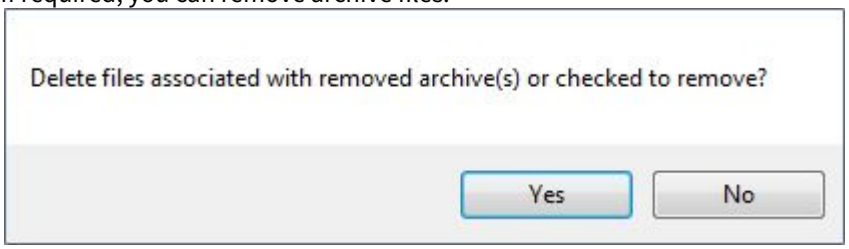
> **Attention!**
>
> If you delete archive files, all video footage contained will be lost.
> If you do not delete archive files, you can re-use them to create another archive (see Creating an archive based on existing archive volumes). You can as well use a partition to re-create an archive.

7.3.14 Deleting archives

You can delete an archive from the system.

To delete an archive from the system, you must perform the following steps:

1. Select the archive to be deleted in the archive list.
2. Click the **Remove** button.
3. Click the **Apply** button.
   If required, you can remove archive files.



Attention!

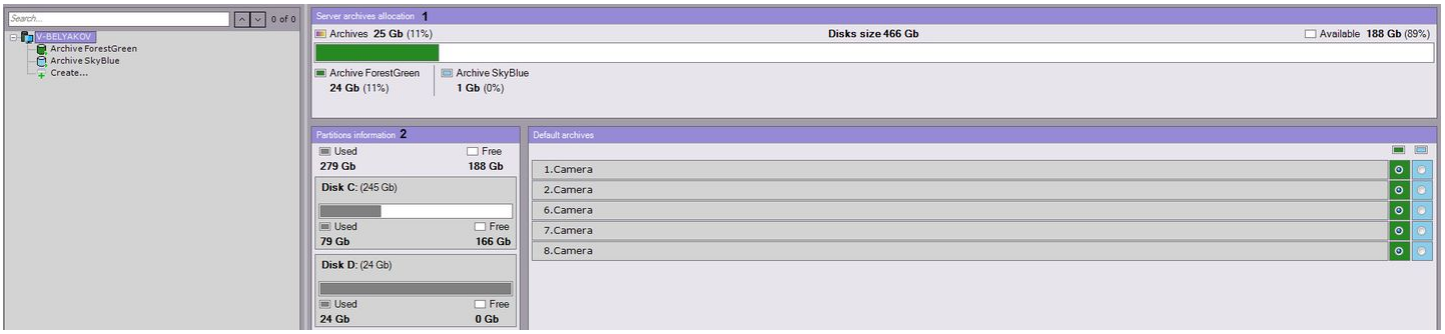
If you delete archive files, all video footage contained will be lost.
If you do not delete archive files, you can re-use them to create another archive (see Creating an archive based on existing archive volumes). You can as well use a partition to re-create an archive.

Deleting an archive from the system is now complete.

7.3.15 View information about the size of archives and Server disk space.

Selecting a **Server** object displays statistical information about the available Server disks and created archives.

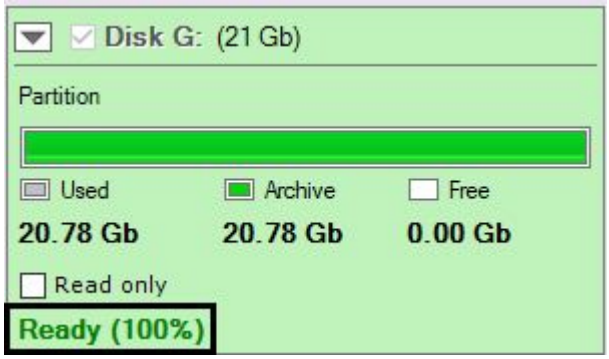
Figure **1** shows the overall balance of free disk space between the Server archives.



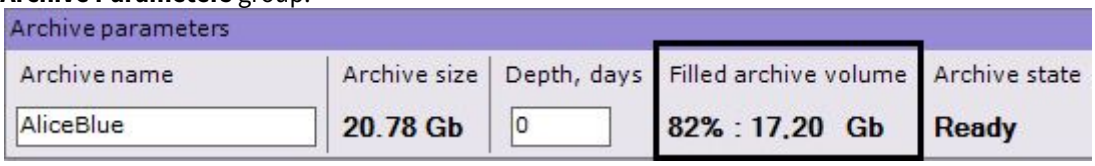
In addition, a list of disks is displayed, containing information about the total disk capacity, space used, and total free space (**2**).

When you select an archive, the following information is displayed:

1. The percentage of used space on each volume in the archive. This parameter indicates whether the volume's data is being rewritten. If the percentage is 100%, the new data is overwriting the old data.

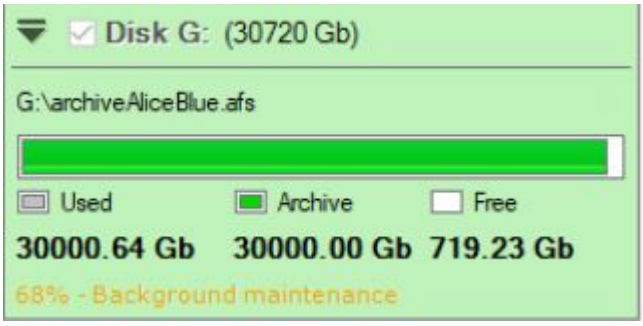


2. The approximate volume usage in percentage and gigabytes (**2**) is displayed in the **Filled archive volume** field of the **Archive Parameters** group.



When you update *Axxon Next* or restart the Server, or create the archive based on the existing volume etc., the archive is reindexed.

Reindexing progress bar is displayed.

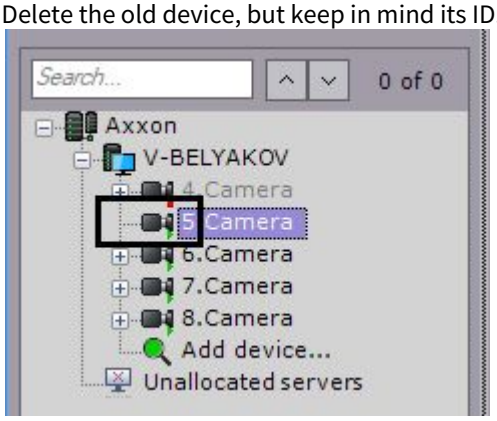


7.3.16 Saving the archive when replacing a video source

In *Axxon Next*, it is possible to save the archive in case of replacing a video camera, NVR or any other video source.

To do this:

1. Delete the old device, but keep in mind its ID.



2. Create a new device in the system with the same ID (**1**) and bind it to the old archive (**2**, see Adding and removing IP devices).

> **Attention!**
>
> Device model, IP-address and any other device parameters may differ from the previous one.

In the case of replacing the NVR, the video cameras should be connected to the same channels as before.
After creating a new device with the old ID, the archive recorded earlier will be available in the system.

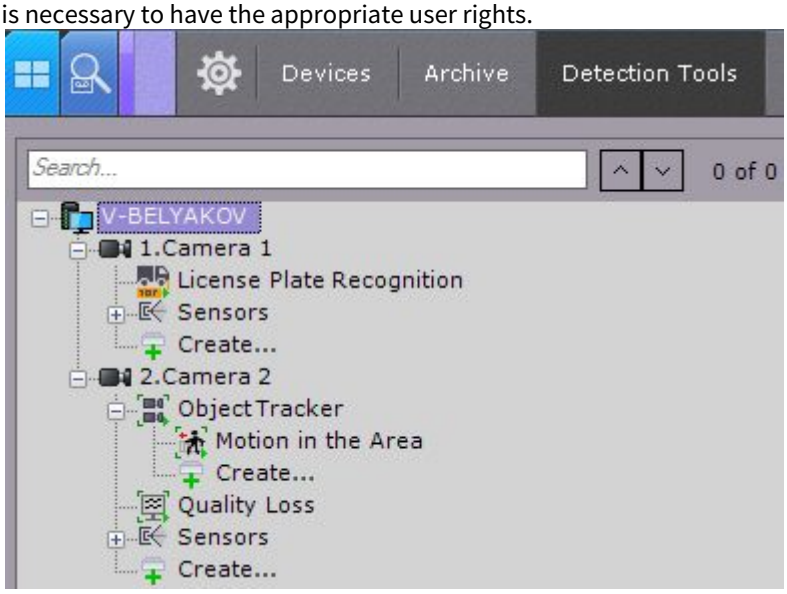
7.4 Configuring detection tools

7.4.1 General Information on Configuring Detection

In the *Axxon Next* software package, several types of detection tools process incoming data:

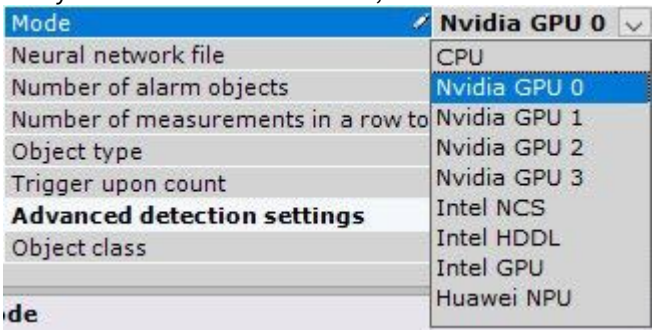
1. Face detection.
2. License Plate Recognition.
3. Trackers.
4. Pose detection.
5. Equipment detection.
6. Person-based privacy masking.
7. Fire detection and smoke detection.
8. Water level detection.
9. Motion in area detection.
10. Retail analytics:
    a. queue detection,
    b. visitors counter,
    c. neurocounter.
11. Service detection:
    a. Audio detection,
    b. Tampering detection.
12. Embedded detection (IVA).

Detection tools are configured using the **Detection Tools** tab interface (within the **Settings** tab). To configure detection tools, it is necessary to have the appropriate user rights.



When configuring the detection, in the **Mode** field, select NVIDIA GPU one by one.

If only one NVIDIA GPU is installed, in the **Mode** field select **Nvidia GPU 0**.



If more than one NVIDIA GPU is installed, in the **Mode** field select the video card which should be used for detection.

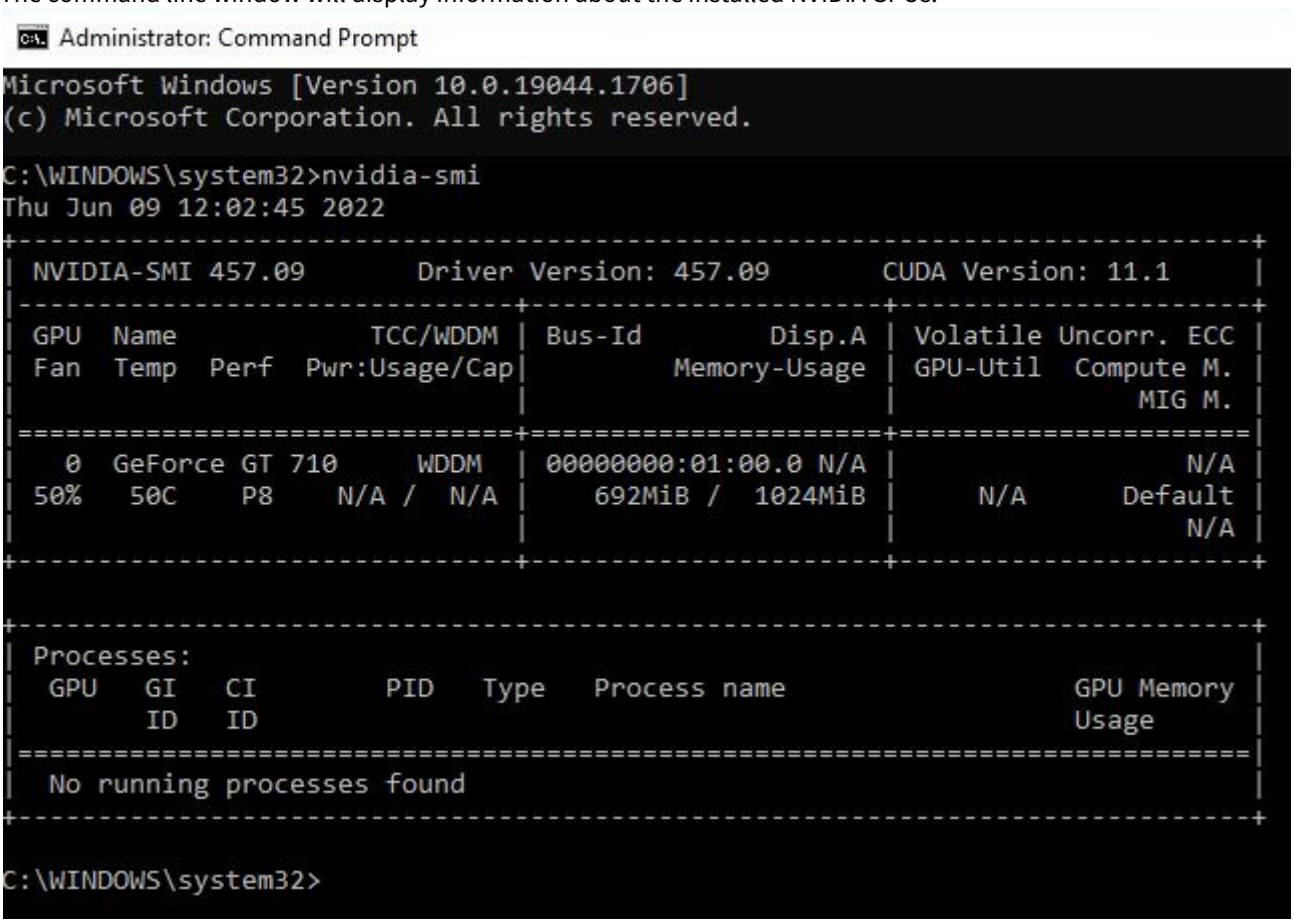
It is possible to change the order of NVIDIA GPUs display using the CUDA_DEVICE_ORDER system variable (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable) by specifying the required value:

1. The FASTEST_FIRST value numbers the GPUs from the most powerful card to the less powerful ones, i.e. **GPU 0** is the most powerful card.
2. The PCI_BUS_ID value numbers the GPUs according to the physical location of the cards in the PCI-E slots on the motherboard, i.e. **GPU 0** is the card in the highest slot.

To find out information about the availability, quantity and numbering of NVIDIA GPUs, do the following:

1. Run a command line as an administrator.
2. In the command line type the nvidia-smi query.
3. Press **Enter**.

The command line window will display information about the installed NVIDIA GPUs.

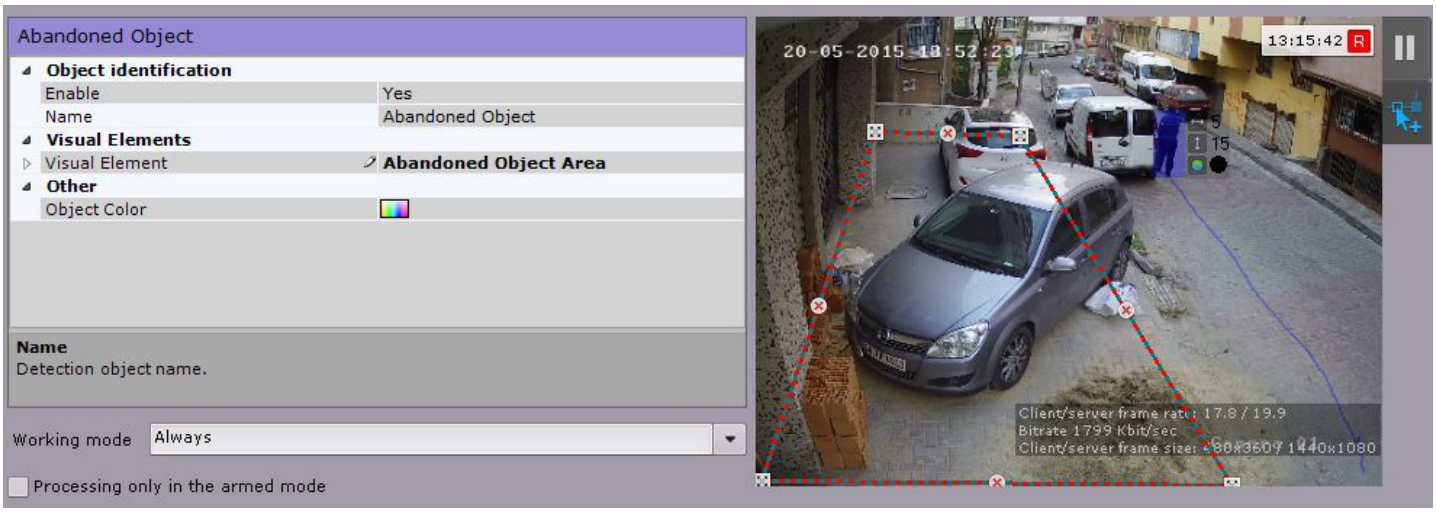


> **Attention!**
>
> If you select a non-installed NVIDIA GPU in the **Mode** field, detection will not be performed.

For a video camera and its corresponding branch to appear in the detection tools list, the camera should be enabled in *Axxon Next.*

> **Note**
>
> By default, camera inputs that can be activated through an automatic rule are displayed on the list of detection tools.

In the viewing tile, on the right side of the detection configuration window, you can set visual parameters.



Note

The indicator in the upper right corner displays the current time and recording status (see Time Display).

The default system setting to a detection event is not to trigger any response actions. To set system response, create an automatic rule or a macro (see Configuring Macros and Counters, Automatic Rules).

7.4.2 General information on metadata

Metadata is information that describes object-related content in the camera FOV.

In *Axxon Next* metadata can be obtained in two ways:

1. By analyzing video stream on Server by detection tools.
2. By receiving metadata from camera built-in analytics (see Embedded Detection Tools).

Attention!

To extract metadata from video, you have to de-compress and analyze the video stream, which increases the Server's workload, thus limiting the number of available camera channels.

The following tools are used for server-side analysis and metadata generation:

1. Object Tracker.
2. Neural Tracker.

   Note

   Object tracker and Neural Tracker generate metadata containing the following information about moving objects in FOV: object type, position, size and color, motion speed and direction, etc.

3. VMD.

   Note

   VMD generates less accurate data. It does not detect object type and color.

4. Face detection tools.

   Note

   Face detection metadata contains face bounding boxes and their positions, as well as face vectors.

5. Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools.

> **Note**
>
> ANPR metadata contains license plate bounding boxes and their positions, as well as vehicle registration numbers.

6. Pose detection.

> **Note**
>
> Metadata from pose detection tools contains information on positions and pose (skeleton) of all people in FOV.

7. Equipment detection tool (PPE)

> **Note**
>
> Equipment detection metadata contains information about the position of all the people in FOV.

The metadata is used for the following system options:

Option	Required source of metadata
Scene Analytics	Object Tracker, Neural Tracker, built-in detection tool, or VMD
Forensic search MomentQuest	Object Tracker, Neural Tracker, built-in detection tool, VMD, Face detection tools, Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools, Pose detection tools, Equipment detection tool (PPE)
Face search	Face detection tools
LPR search	Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools
TimeCompressor	Object Tracker, Neural Tracker, built-in detection tool, or VMD
Tag&Track Pro	Object Tracker, Neural Tracker, built-in detection tool, or VMD
Object tracking	Any
Autozoom	Any

> **Attention!**
>
> If a camera uses several sources of metadata, the required source is selected automatically, except for MomentQuest. To perform face/license number searches, only metadata from corresponding detection tools is used.

Metadata files are stored as files in the object trajectory database in the local Server directory that was selected when installing *Axxon Next* (see Installation) in the vmda_db\VMDA_DB.0\vmda_schema subfolder.

> **Note**
>
> If necessary, you can place metadata on any available network storage (see Configuring storage of the system log and metadata).

7.4.3 General information on Neural Analytics

The *Axxon Next* VMS offers AI analytics based on neural networks. These AI tools include:

1. **Face detection tools** (see Face detection tools).
   Neural network detects faces.
2. **Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools** (see Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools).
   Neural network recognizes vehicle license plates.
3. **Neural Network Filter for Object Tracker** (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics).
   The neural network filter processes the results of the tracker and filters out false alarms on complex video images (foliage, glare, etc.).
4. **Neural Tracker** (see Setting up Neural Tracker-based Scene Analytics).
   Neural Tracker detects only objects of a specified class. The Neural Tracker is more accurate than the regular one, and detects even static objects, but it requires more computing resources.
5. **Neural Counter** (see Neural Counter).
   The Neural Counter relies on a neural network to work out the number of objects in the zone.
6. **Smoke and Fire Detection Tools based on Neural Network** (see Fire and Smoke Detection Tools).
   Neural network detects fire and smoke in FOV.
7. **Object detection**.
   Neural network is trained to recognize specific types of objects, it detects them in FOV.
8. **Posture Detection based on Neural Network** (see Configure Pose Detection).
   Neural network identifies each person's "skeleton" and detects poses that may represent a security threat.
9. **Equipment detection tool based on Neural Network** (see Equipment detection tool (PPE)).
   Neural network detects the necessary equipment and PPE in the frame. Segmenting and classifying neural networks are used to operate the equipment detection tool (PPE).
10. **Person-based privacy masking** (see Person-based privacy masking).
    Segmenting neural network is used to structure up an image of a human body.
11. **Water Level Detection** (see Water Level Detection).
    The detection tool may use the neural network to detect water transparency and level.

Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

7.4.3.1 Data collection requirements for neural network training

To train neural networks, it is necessary to collect and submit to AxxonSoft video recordings and images from your actual cameras taken in the same resolution and under the same conditions as in your future application.

For example, if your neural network is intended to analyze outdoor video feeds, your footage must contain all range of weather conditions (sun, rain, snow, fog, etc.) in different times of day (daytime, twilight, night).

General requirements for collected data:

- When collecting video recordings and images, specific requirements for object images, scene, angle, illumination and video stream are met for those detection tools that you plan to use (see Configuring detection tools).
- If it is required to train the neural network in different conditions of time of day, lighting, angle, object types or weather, then the video material should be collected in equal shares for each condition, that is, it should be balanced.

  Note

  Example. It is necessary to detect a person in the surveillance area at night and during the day.
  Data collected correctly:
  - 4 video recordings of the surveillance area, each 5 minutes long;
  - the object of interest appears in the frame in each video fragment;
  - 2 fragments were recorded in night conditions, 2 — in daytime conditions.

  Data collected incorrectly:
  - 3 video recordings of the surveillance area, each 5 minutes long;
  - the object of interest appears in the frame in each video fragment;
  - 2 fragments were recorded in night conditions, 1 — in daytime conditions.

Extra requirements for video footage for each neural analytics tool are listed in the following table:

Tool	Requirements
Neural Filter	No less than 1000 frames containing objects of interest in given scene conditions, and the same amount of footage containing no objects (background footage).
Neural Tracker	3 to 5 minutes of video containing objects of interest in given scene conditions. The more the number and variability of the situations in the scene, the better.
Posture detection tools	10 seconds of video of a scene with no persons. No less than 100 different persons in given scene conditions. **Attention!** Different conditions mean, among others, different postures of an individual in scene (tilting, different limbs patterns, etc.).
Equipment detection tool (PPE)	A list of all reference equipment with examples should be collected from the object and agreed with the analytics manufacturer (see Example of providing a list of valid equipment at the facility). Several video recordings 3-5 minutes each with personnel in the given scene conditions. Personnel should move and change posture in the collected video recordings, as well as remove and put on equipment at intervals of 30 seconds. Since the Equipment detection tool (PPE) is designed for artificial constant lighting, video recordings in other lighting conditions are not required.
Fire and Smoke Detection Tools	No less than 1000 frames containing objects of interest in given scene conditions, and the same amount of footage containing no objects (background footage).
Food recognition *	Images of at least 80% of the actual menu items should be provided. Each menu item requires 20 to 40 images shot in different conditions.

If the above requirements for the collection of data transmitted for training the neural network model are met, and if the neural network is operated in conditions that are as similar as possible to the conditions in which the material for its training was collected, then the overall accuracy** of neural network analytics is guaranteed from 90% to 97% and the percentage of false positives is 5-7%. For general networks***, an overall accuracy of 80-95% and a false positive rate of 5-20% are guaranteed.

Note

* Will be available in future versions of *Axxon Next* software.
** Accuracy is indicated for a neural network model, which was trained under operating conditions.
*** A general network is a network that was not trained under operating conditions.

The requirements may be changed or added to at any time.

7.4.4 Detection tools implementation on processors

Refer to the following table to check compatibility of detection tools and processors.

Detection tool	Windows x64			Linux AMD64		
	CPU	GPU	VPU	CPU	GPU	VPU
VMD	✓	✓	–	✓	✓	–
Service video detection tool	✓	–	–	✓	–	–
Service audio detection tool	✓	–	–	✓	–	–
Object Tracker	✓	–	–	✓	–	–
Neural Tracker	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Neural network filter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Neuralcounter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Face detection tools	✓	✓	⊖	✓	✓	⊖
VT Automatic Number Plate Recognition	✓	⊖	✓	✓	⊖	✓
IV Automatic Number Plate Recognition	✓	✓	⊖	✓	✓	⊖
RR Automatic Number Plate Recognition	✓	✓	⊖	✓	✓	⊖
Smoke and Fire detection tools	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pose detection tools	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Retail analytics detection tools	✓	⊖	⊖	✓	⊖	⊖
Water level detection tool without using a neural network	✓	⊖	⊖	✓	⊖	⊖
Water level detection tool using a neural network	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Personal protective equipment detection tool	✓	✓	✓	✓	⊖	⊖
Person-based privacy masking	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Similitude Detector	✓	✓	⊖	✓	⊖	⊖

7.4.5 Creating Detection Tools

In *Axxon Next*, you can create detection tools and their sub-tools (child detection tools). Sub-tools process data received from parent detection tools.

The following table lists all *Axxon Next* detection tools and their sub-tools:

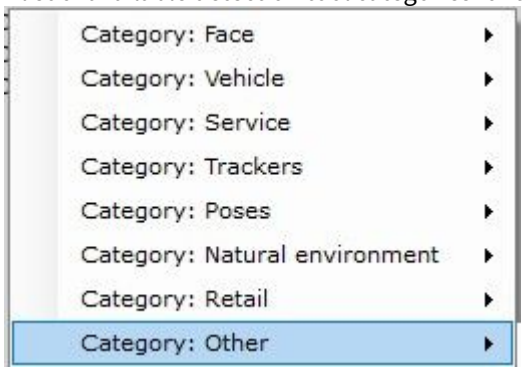
Category	Detection tool	Sub-tool
Face	Face detection	Line crossing Loitering Stop in area Motion in area Object Appearance in the Area Disappearance in area Multiple objects Move from area to area Masks detection
	Face detection (VL)	
Vehicle	License Plate Recognition (VT)	Line crossing Loitering Stop in area Motion in area Object Appearance in the Area Disappearance in area Multiple objects Move from area to area
	License Plate Recognition (IV)	
	License Plate Recognition (RR)	
	License Plate Recognition – Search in archive (RR)	
	License Plate Recognition – Parking (RR)	
	License Plate Recognition (BRS)	

Category	Detection tool	Sub-tool
Service	Tampering detection	–
	Audio loss detection	
	Noise detection	
	Signal detection	
Trackers	Motion detection	Line crossing Loitering Stop in area Motion in area Object Appearance in the Area Disappearance in area Multiple objects Move from area to area Abandoned Object (only for the Object Tracker)
	Neural Tracker	
	Object Tracker	
Poses	Pose detection	Only for the Pose detection: Sitting person detection Man down detection Hands up detection Active shooter detection Handrail holding detection People counter Close-standing people detection People masking Common sub-tools: Line crossing Loitering Stop in area Motion in area Object Appearance in the Area Disappearance in area Multiple objects Move from area to area
	Equipment detection (PPE)	
	Person-based privacy masking	–
Natural environment	Fire detection	–
	Object detection	
	Smoke detection	
	Water level detection	
Retail	Queue detection	–
	Visitors counter	
	Neurocounter	
Other	Embedded Motion Detection	–
	Embedded Tampering detection	
	Embedded Audio detection	
	Embedded Face detection	
	Embedded Intrusion detection	

Category	Detection tool	Sub-tool
	Embedded Line crossing detection	
	Embedded Object Appearance in the Area	
	Embedded Disappearance in area	
	Embedded Abandoned Object detection	
	Embedded Object disappearance detection	
	ROI compression	
	Embedded GPS tracker	
	Embedded License Plate Recognition	
	Embedded temperature detection	
	Embedded temperature detection	Face Detection and Temperature Control
	Embedded body temperature detection	–
	Tracker Analytics	Line crossing Loitering Stop in area Motion in area Object Appearance in the Area Disappearance in area Multiple objects Move from area to area
	Embedded analytics	
	Embedded AxxonSoft tracker	

To create a new detection tool, do the following:

1. Click the **Create** link in the corresponding video camera tree.
   A list of available detection tool categories for this camera will be displayed.



2. Select the required detection tool.
3. Click the **Apply** button.

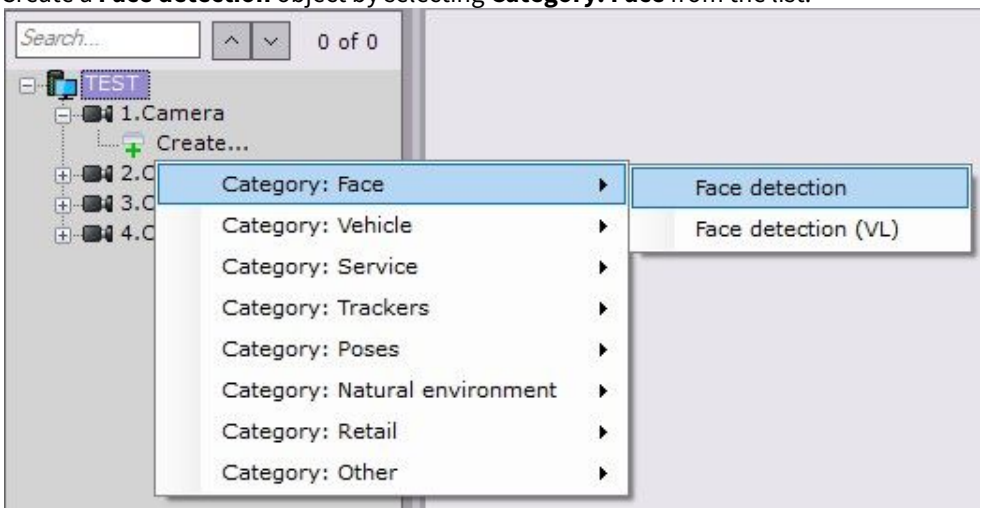
The detection tool is now created.

> **Note**
>
> Mass creation of detection tools of the same type for selected cameras is described in the Mass creation of detection tools section.

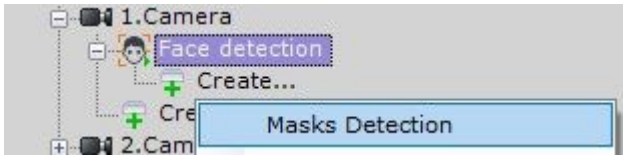
> **Attention!**
>
> Each camera stream gets processed by only one detection tool of a particular type.

An example of creating a **Masks detection** sub-tool:

1. Create a **Face detection** object by selecting **Category: Face** from the list.



2. Create a **Masks Detection** sub-tool based on the **Face detection** object.



The remaining detection sub-tools are created in a similar way.

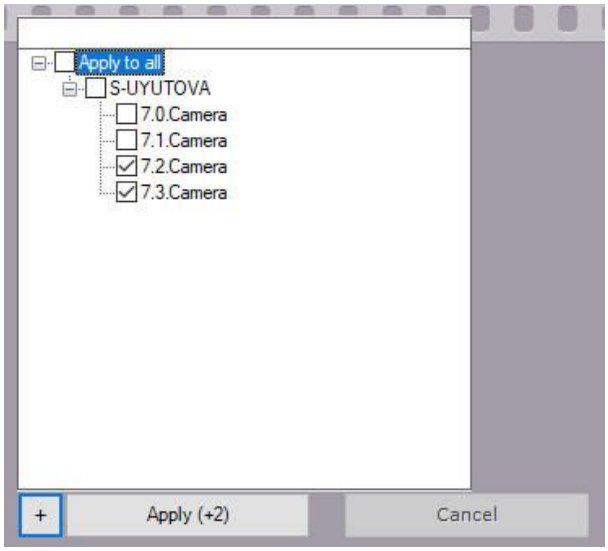
7.4.6 Mass configuration of detections tools

7.4.6.1 Mass creation of detection tools

You can create the same type of detection tool for several selected cameras with a few clicks.

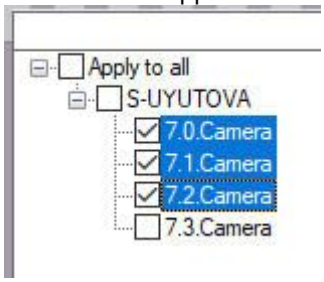
Please follow the steps below:

1. Create (see Creating Detection Tools) and configure the necessary detection tool or select an existing one in the object tree for one of the video cameras.
2. Click the + button and select other target cameras. If you add the second-level tool, then only those cameras that have the same tool at the first level will be listed.



To quickly select multiple cameras, hold down the Shift key, select the first and last cameras the newly created detection

tool should be applied to. Selecting any camera from highlighted ones will result in selecting them all.

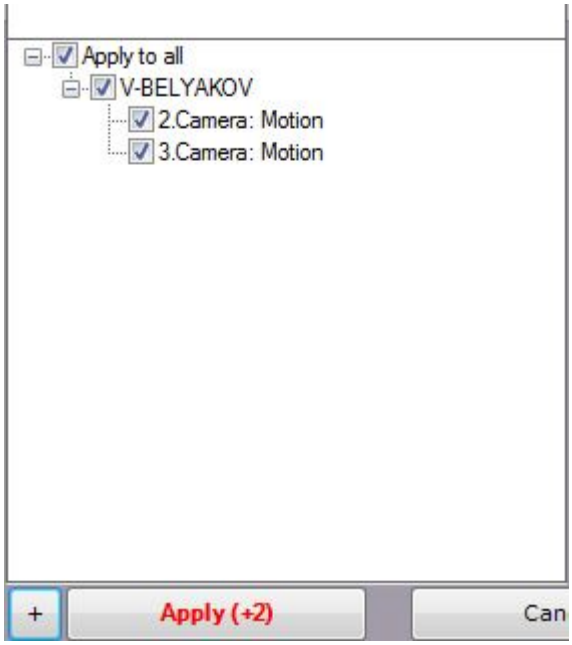


3. Click **Apply**. You can see the number of target cameras in brackets.

7.4.6.2 Mass configure detection tools

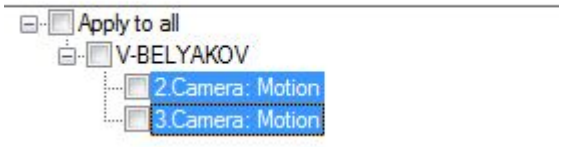
You can mass configure detection tools as follows:

1. Configure one detection tool.
2. Click the button + and select detections tools the same settings should be applied to.



> **Attention!**
>
> Detection zones cannot be changed by bulk configuration

The list of detection tools of the same type in the current Axxon domain opens. To select multiple detection tools, hold down the Shift key, select the first and last one the settings should be applied to. Selecting any tool from highlighted ones will result in selecting them all.



3. Click the **Apply** button.

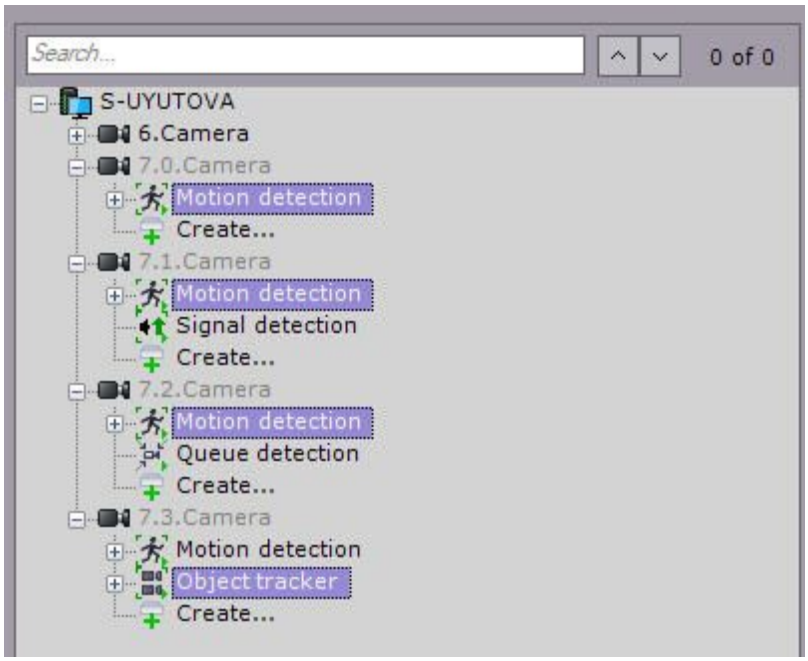
> **Note**
>
> The number in brackets refers to the number of configured detection tools

7.4.6.3 Mass removal of tools

You can delete a bunch of detection tool for several selected cameras with a few clicks.

Please follow the steps below:

1. Press and hold the Ctrl key to select the tools in the object tree that you want to delete. Only detection tools of the same level be selected. For example, if you selected **facial recognition tools**, you cannot then select **Cross Line detection** and vice versa.



2. Click **Delete** and then **Apply**.

7.4.7 VMD (video motion detection)

7.4.7.1 Video requirements for VMD

Motion detection runs properly if video match the following requirements:

1. Camera requirements:
    a. Resolution: Min. 320x240 pixels.
    b. Frames per second: Min. 1 fps.
    c. Camera shaking must not cause image shifting of more than 1% of the frame size.
2. Lighting requirements:
    a. Moderate lighting. Lighting that is too little (night) or too much (bright sunlight) may impact the quality of video analytics.
    b. No major fluctuations in lighting levels.
3. Scene and camera angle requirements:
    a. Moving objects must be visually separable from each other in the video.
    b. The background must be primarily static and not undergo sudden changes.
    c. Minimal obscuration of moving objects by static objects (columns, trees, etc.).
    d. Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics.
    e. Long single-color objects may not be tracked properly.
4. Object requirements:
    a. There is no noise on the video image and there are no artifacts caused by the compression algorithm.
    b. The width and height of the objects in the image must be not less than 1% of the frame size (if resolution is over 1920 pixels) or 15 pixels for lower resolution.
    c. The width and height of the objects in the image must not exceed 75% of the frame size.
    d. The speed of objects in the frame must be at least 1 pixel per second.
    e. In order to detect the object it is to be visible at not less than 8 frames.

f. Within two adjacent frames the object cannot move in the movement direction for the distance that is longer than its size. This condition is essential for correct calculation of the object's trajectory (track).

7.4.7.2 VMD features and specifications

The motion detection tool is triggered by motion in a video camera's field of view (FOV).

VMD metadata can be used for situation analysis in Scene Analytics (see Setting up VMD-based Scene Analytics).

7.4.7.3 Configuring VMD

To configure a VMD:

1. To record Motion Mask to archive, set **Yes** for the corresponding parameter (**1**).

Motion detection		
	Object features	
1	Record mask to archive	No
2	Record objects tracking	**Yes**
3	Video stream from camera	Low-quality video stream
	Other	
4	Alarm end delay	0
5	Camera position	Wall
6	Decode key frames	No
7	Decoder mode	CPU
8	Frames processed per second	20
9	Motion mask	Yes
10	Object tracking	No
11	Sensitivity: Contrast	12
12	Sensitivity: Size	9

2. The Video Motion Detection tool can receive tracking metadata generated by the Motion Mask. The metadata are recorded into the database by default. To disable, select **No** in the **Record Object Tracking** (**2**).
3. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**3**). Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server.
4. In the **Alarm end delay** field, set a value in seconds for the time interval within which the detection tool remains triggered after motion stops (**4**). If motion is re-detected within this interval, no new event will be created.
5. To reduce false alarms rate from a fish-eye camera, you have to position it properly (**5**). For other devices, this parameter is not valid.
6. If necessary, enable the video stream grooming (**6**). In this case, only the I-frames will be decoded.

   Important

   This setting applies to all codecs. If a codec has keyframes and p-frames, the keyframe is decoded no more often than every 500 milliseconds. For the MJPEG codec, each frame is considered to be I frame.
   This feature reduces the Server load but, as can be expected, negatively impacts the quality of detection.
   This setting should be activated on "blind" Servers (Servers that do not display video) on which it is necessary to perform detection.

7. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**7**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
8. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**8**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].
9. The VMD analyzes differences between the current frame and the static background (**11**, **12**). Depending on a particular scene, we recommend the following sensitivity values for contrast and size:
   a. Maximum sensitivity (street scenes where target objects are smaller):
      i. **Sensitivity: contrast** = 16.
      ii. **Sensitivity: size** = 10.
   b. Medium sensitivity (default values for generic scenes):
      i. **Sensitivity: contrast** = 12.

ii. **Sensitivity: size** = 9.

c. Low sensitivity (indoor cameras with an average distance to object of ca. 4m):
   i. **Sensitivity: contrast** = 8.
   ii. **Sensitivity: size** = 8.

   For your convenience with setting sensitivity value, in the preview window you can see the Motion Mask. To disable it, select **No** in the **Motion Mask** (**9**) field.

   If there is motion, but it does not exceed the threshold value (because of the detection sensitivity), the mask cells are colored green. If motion triggers VMD, the cells turn red.

10. To get tracked objects and their parameters (percentage of the FoV width/height, color) displayed in the Preview window, select **Yes** in the **Object Tracking** field (**10**).
11. By default, VMD (video motion detection) covers the entire FoV. In the FoV, you can set exclude areas – closed areas, inside of which you want no detection.
    Exclude area are created similar to scene analysis configuration (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics).
12. Click **Apply**.

VMD configuration is now complete.

7.4.8 Tampering Detection

7.4.8.1 Functions of tampering detection

The camera tampering detection analyzes the video image to determine the nature of its change.

Name of detection tool analysis	**Analysis result**
Compression artifacts analysis	The detection triggers when compression artifacts appear on the image
Quality degradation analysis	The detection triggers when the video image received from a video camera loses quality. For example, the detection tool may trigger upon excessive light, loss of focus, lens blocking, or sudden drop in scene illumination.
Image noise analysis	The detection triggers when video noise appears on the image For example, the detection tool may trigger upon low bit rate or ripples in the image (snow)
Scene change analysis	The detection triggers when the background of the video image changes, indicating a change in the position of the video camera in space

Name of detection tool analysis	Analysis result
Blurred image analysis	The detection triggers when the blurred contours appear on the image. For example, the detection tool may trigger when the image is blurry due to a dirty lens.

Attention!

Starting with DetectorPack 3.7.0, the compression artifacts detection, quality degradation, image noise detection, scene change, and blurred image detection are marked as obsolete. If they were in the configuration, then after you update to DetectorPack 3.7.0 and later, they will remain in the configuration, but once you delete them it will not be possible to re-create them.
Starting with DetectorPack 3.7.0, a camera tampering detection is added, which now performs all the functions of legacy detection tools.

7.4.8.2 Video requirements for tampering detection

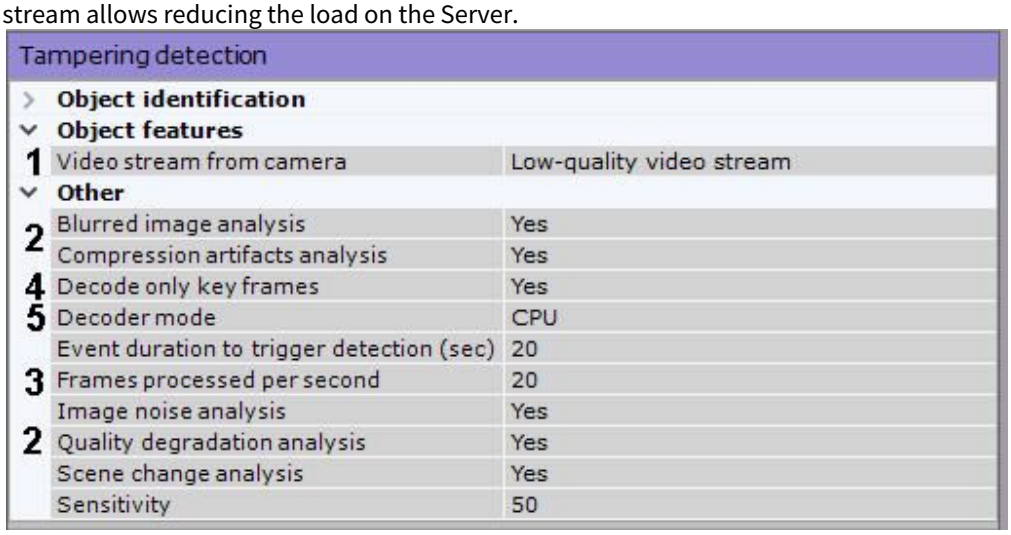
To ensure the correct operation of the tampering detection, the following requirements should be met:

1. Camera requirements:
   a. Resolution: Min. 320x240 pixels.
   b. Frames per second: Min. 1 fps.
   c. Color: video analytics work with both black-and-white and color images.
   d. Camera shaking must not cause image shifting of more than 1% of the frame size.
2. Lighting requirements:
   a. Moderate lighting. Lighting that is too little (night) or too much (bright sunlight) may impact the quality of video analytics.
   b. No major fluctuations in lighting levels.
3. Scene and camera angle requirements:
   a. Moving objects must be visually separable from each other in the video.
   b. The background must be primarily static and not undergo sudden changes.
   c. Minimal obscuration of moving objects by static objects (columns, trees, etc.).
   d. Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics.
   e. Long single-color objects may not be tracked properly.
4. Object requirements:
   a. There is no noise on the video image and there are no artifacts caused by the compression algorithm.
   b. The width and height of the objects in the image must be not less than 1% of the frame size (if resolution is over 1920 pixels) or 15 pixels for lower resolution.
   c. The width and height of the objects in the image must not exceed 75% of the frame size.
   d. The speed of objects in the frame must be at least 1 pixel per second.
   e. In order to detect the object it is to be visible at not less than 8 frames.
   f. Within two adjacent frames the object cannot move in the movement direction for the distance that is longer than its size. This condition is essential for correct calculation of the object's trajectory (track).

7.4.8.3 Configuring tampering detection

To set up the tampering detection, do the following:

1. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**1**). Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server.



2. Select one or more analyzes to be applied to the video image (**2**).
3. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**3**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].
4. The default setting for all analyzes is **Decode only key frames** (**4**). In this case, the frames are processed every 500 milliseconds or less often. To disable the decoding of key frames, select **No** in the appropriate field.

> **Important**
>
> This setting applies to all codecs. If a codec has keyframes and p-frames, the keyframe is decoded no more often than every 500 miliseconds. For the MJPEG codec, each frame is considered to be I-frame.
> This feature reduces the Server load but, as can be expected, negatively impacts the quality of detection.
> This setting should be activated on "blind" Servers (Servers that do not display video) on which it is necessary to perform detection.

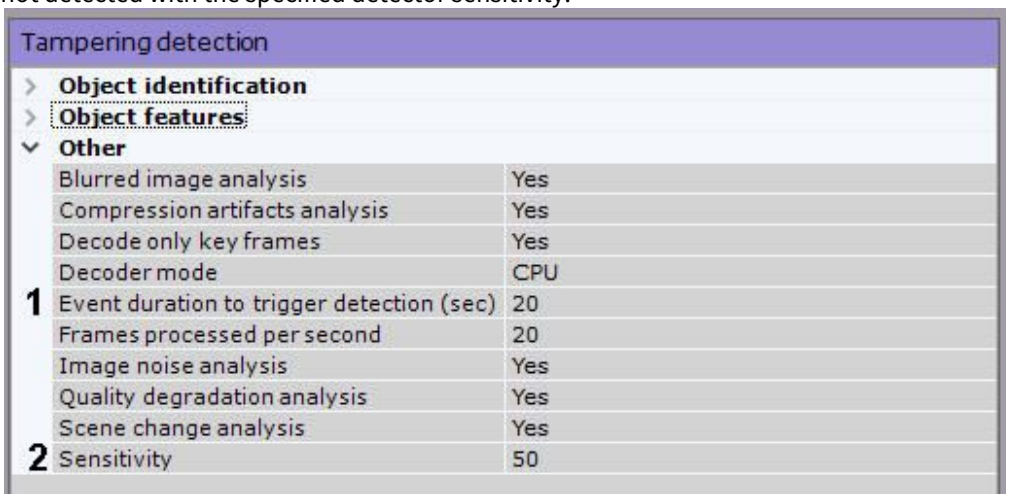
> **Important**
>
> **Period** and **Decode key frames** parameters **are** correlated.
> If no local Clients are connected to a Server, the following rules are set for remote Clients:
> - If the interval between consecutive I-frames exceeds the value specified in the **Period** field, the detection tool will process I-frames.
> - If the I-frame frequency is lower than the value specified in the **Period** field, the detection tool will use the set value.
>
> If at least one local Client connects to the Server, the detection tool is forced to use the set value. After the local Client disconnects, the indicated rules become valid again.

5. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**5**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.

If you select Image noise detection, Blurred image detection, or Compression artifacts detection, it is necessary to specify the following parameters:

1. **Event duration to trigger detection (sec)** is the maximum time of the event duration after which the detection tool will trigger (**1**). But, the detection tool can trigger even earlier if the algorithm undoubtedly determines the noise. If the detection tool does not trigger after the event duration time expires, it means that the corresponding image defect was

not detected with the specified detector sensitivity.



2. **Sensitivity** of detection tool operation in standard units from 0 to 100 (**2**).

To save settings, click the **Apply** button.

Video requirements for tampering detection

7.4.9 Service Audio Detection Tools

7.4.9.1 Functions of Service Audio Detection Tools

The following detection tools enable analysis of the audio signal from a microphone.

Name of a Detection Tool object	Detection description
Audio loss	A detection tool which is triggered by the line break from the microphone to the Server (complete absence of sound)
Signal	A detection tool which is triggered by the reception of an audio signal from an audio device
Noise	A detection tool which is triggered by the appearance of noise

Attention!

Audio loss detection may operate incorrectly with video cameras emitting a background signal with a non-zero volume, even if the integrated microphone is physically disabled

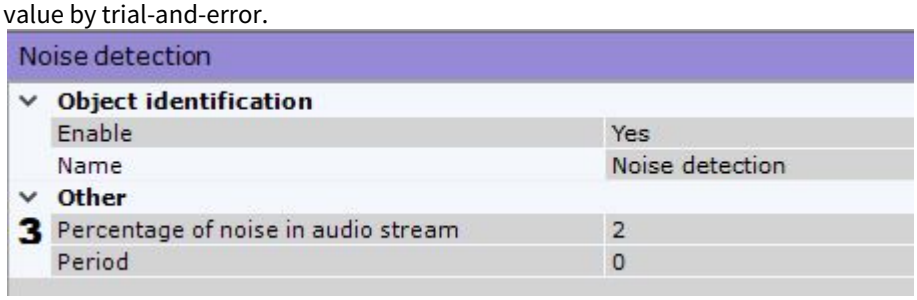
7.4.9.2 Set Parameters of Audio Detection

To set audio detection tools, do the following:

1. In the **Period** field (**1**), enter a time value in milliseconds. This parameter sets the time interval after which a portion of the audio stream is analyzed. The value should be within the range [0, 65535]. If the value is **0**, each portion of the audio

stream is analyzed.

2. For the signal detection tool, set the threshold in percentage (**2**). The tool triggers on exceeding the threshold. Set the value by trial-and-error.
3. For the noise detection tool, set the threshold in percentage (**3**). The tool triggers on exceeding the threshold. Set the value by trial-and-error.



4. To save settings, click the **Apply** button.

7.4.10 Scene Analytics

7.4.10.1 General information on Scene Analytics

Axxon Next uses two different trackers for moving objects detection and metadata calculation:

1. **Object Tracker** is a primary tool.
2. **Neural Tracker** is essentially the same but operates through neural networks. The neural one is more accurate and detects even static objects, but it requires more computing resources.

The Scene Analytics detection tools work with both trackers.

> **Attention!**
>
> The abandoned objects detection tool works only with the primary tracker.

When created, both **Object Tracker** and **Neural Tracker** objects are enabled by default. Tracked objects' parameters (relative width and height, color) are displayed in the camera window.

> **Note**
>
> Up to 25 objects can be tracked at the same time.

7.4.10.2 Functions of Scene Analytics

The following detection tools enable analysis of the situation in a video camera's field of view.

Name of a Detection Tool object	**Detection description**
Motion in area	Motion in Area detection tool. **Important!** This tool is not triggered if an object enters the area (refer to **Appearance in area**).
Stop in area	Non-activity detection tool. **Important!** This tool is not triggered if an object exits the area (refer to **Disappearance in area**).
Appearance in area	Entry into Area detection tool. **Important!** This tool does is not triggered if an object appears inside the area without crossing its perimeter (refer to **Motion in Area**).
Disappearance in area	Exit from Area detection tool. **Important!** This tool does is not triggered if an object disappears (or becomes idle) inside the area without crossing its perimeter (refer to **Stop in Area**).
Loitering	Detection tool triggered by the lengthy presence of an object in an area of a video camera's field of view
Abandoned object	Detection tool triggered by the appearance of an abandoned object in an area of a video camera's field of view
Line crossing	Detection tool triggered by the trajectory of an object crossing a virtual line
Multiple objects	Detection tool is triggered when the number of objects within the designated area exceeds a predefined value
Move from area to area	Detection tool is triggered when an object moves from one pre-specified area to another within the scene

Attention!

To detect any motion within an area, you need to apply two detection tools:

- **Motion in Area** and
- **Appearance in area**.

Note

Neural filter and Neural Tracker require Addon Neuro Pack to be installed (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

7.4.10.3 Video requirements for scene analytics detection

7.4.10.3.1 Video requirements for object tracker-based scene analytics

For video analytics to work correctly, the following requirements must be met:

1. Camera requirements:
   a. Resolution min. 640x360 pixels.

      Attention!

      Pixel resolutions over 800x600 are not recommended for this detection tool. Higher resolutions lead to increased RAM consumption and CPU load with no significant increase in tracker's performance.

   b. Frames per second: Min. 6 fps.
   c. Color: video analytics work with both black-and-white and color images.
   d. Camera shaking must not cause image shifting of more than 1% of the frame size.
2. Lighting requirements:
   a. Moderate lighting. Lighting that is too little (night) or too much (bright sunlight) may impact the quality of video analytics.
   b. No major fluctuations in lighting levels.
3. Scene and camera angle requirements:
   a. Moving objects must be visually separable from each other in the video.
   b. The background must be primarily static and not undergo sudden changes.
   c. Minimal obscuration of moving objects by static objects (columns, trees, etc.).
   d. Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics.
   e. Long single-color objects may not be tracked properly.
4. Object requirements:
   a. There is no noise on the video image and there are no artifacts caused by the compression algorithm.
   b. The width or height of the objects in the image must be not less than 1% of the frame size (if resolution is over 1920 pixels) or 15 pixels for lower resolution.
   c. The width or height of the objects in the image must not exceed 75% of the frame size.
   d. The speed of objects in the frame must be at least 1 pixel per second.
   e. In order to detect the object it is to be visible at not less than 8 frames.
   f. Within two adjacent frames the object cannot move in the movement direction for the distance that is longer than its size. This condition is essential for correct calculation of the object’s trajectory (track).

7.4.10.3.2 Video requirements for object tracker (with neural filter)-based scene analytics

For video analytics to work correctly, the following requirements must be met:

1. Camera requirements:
   a. Resolution min. 640x360 pixels.
   b. Frames per second: Min. 6 fps.
   c. Color: video analytics work with both black-and-white and color images.
   d. Camera shaking must not cause image shifting of more than 1% of the frame size.
2. Lighting requirements:
   a. Moderate lighting. Lighting that is too little (night) or too much (bright sunlight) may impact the quality of video analytics.
   b. No major fluctuations in lighting levels.
3. Scene and camera angle requirements:
   a. Moving objects must be visually separable from each other in the video.
   b. The background must be primarily static and not undergo sudden changes.
   c. Minimal obscuration of moving objects by static objects (columns, trees, etc.).

   d. Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics.
   e. Long single-color objects may not be tracked properly.
4. Object requirements:
   a. There is no noise on the video image and there are no artifacts caused by the compression algorithm.
   b. The width or height of the objects in the image must be not less than 1% of the frame size (if resolution is over 1920 pixels) or 15 pixels for lower resolution.
   c. The width or height of the objects in the image must not exceed 75% of the frame size.
   d. The speed of objects in the frame must be at least 1 pixel per second.
   e. In order to detect the object it is to be visible at not less than 8 frames.
   f. Within two adjacent frames the object cannot move in the movement direction for the distance that is longer than its size. This condition is essential for correct calculation of the object's trajectory (track).
5. Camera requirements for neural filter operation.

7.4.10.3.3 Video requirements for VMD-based scene analytics

For video analytics to work correctly, the following requirements must be met:

1. Camera requirements:
   a. Resolution min. 640x360.
   b. Frames per second: Min. 6 fps
   c. Color: video analytics work with both black-and-white and color images.
   d. Camera shaking must not cause image shifting of more than 1% of the frame size.
2. Lighting requirements:
   a. Moderate lighting. Lighting that is too little (night) or too much (bright sunlight) may impact the quality of video analytics.
   b. No major fluctuations in lighting levels.
3. Scene and camera angle requirements:
   a. Moving objects must be visually separable from each other in the video.
   b. The background must be primarily static and not undergo sudden changes.
   c. Minimal obscuration of moving objects by static objects (columns, trees, etc.).
   d. Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics.
   e. Long single-color objects may not be tracked properly.
4. Object requirements:
   a. There is no noise on the video image and there are no artifacts caused by the compression algorithm.
   b. The width or height of the objects in the image must be not less than 1% of the frame size (if resolution is over 1920 pixels) or 15 pixels for lower resolution.
   c. The width or height of the objects in the image must not exceed 75% of the frame size.
   d. The speed of objects in the frame must be at least 1 pixel per second.
   e. In order to detect the object it is to be visible at not less than 8 frames.
   f. Within two adjacent frames the object cannot move in the movement direction for the distance that is longer than its size. This condition is essential for correct calculation of the object's trajectory (track).

7.4.10.3.4 Video stream and scene requirements for neural tracker operation

The neural tracker operation imposes the following requirements:

1. To the video stream from the camera:
   a. The resolution is at least 640x360 pixels. It is also not recommended to use a resolution higher than 1920×1080, since higher resolution does not increase the detection quality, but significantly increases the consumption of resources. The optimal resolution for solving typical tasks is 1280x720 (see Examples of configuring neural tracker for solving typical tasks).
   b. The frame rate per second in the video stream from the camera is at least 8 for solving typical tasks.
   c. Both colorless (gray) and color images.
2. To lighting:
   a. Lighting in the scene is at least 50 lux per square meter. In conditions of insufficient or excessive lighting (night or light-striking), stable operation of the video analytics is not guaranteed.
   b. There are no abrupt changes in lighting.
3. To the scene and camera angle:
   a. Moving objects are visually separable from each other.

b. The background is mostly static and does not change abruptly.
c. Moving objects are minimally obscured by static objects in the scene (columns, trees, etc.).
d. The analyzed scene does not have reflective surfaces and sharp shadows from moving objects. If present, they should be masked.
e. Camera shake does not result in image offsets greater than 1% of the frame size.

Attention!

Correct operation of the neural tracker is not guaranteed when using a fish-eye lens.

Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation
Objects image requirements for neural tracker

7.4.10.3.5 Objects image requirements for neural tracker

To ensure the correct operation of detection tools based on the neural tracker, the following image requirements should be met:

1. The object to be detected is clearly distinguishable by the human eye.
2. The width or height of the objects does not exceed 75% of the frame size.
3. The image is not noisy and not distorted by compression algorithm artifacts.
4. The duration of the object's visibility is at least 6 frames.
5. The object moves in the certain direction between two adjacent frames at a distance which does not exceed the object's size. This condition is necessary for the correct calculation of the trajectory of the object (track).
6. The minimum value of pixel density per meter is observed:

Image resolution	Object type	Minimum pixel density per meter (ratio of the object width in pixels to the object width in meters)	Minimum object size in pixels, Width x Height	Ratio of the object width to the frame width as a percentage
1920x1080	Human	55	~25x105	~3%
1280x720	Human	35	~17x70	~3%
640x360	Human	17	~10x42	~3%
1920x1080	Light vehicle (2 axles)	55	~354x300	~20%
1280x720	Light vehicle (2 axles)	35	~240x205	~20%
640x360	Light vehicle (2 axles)	17	~132x112	~2

Image resolution	Object type	Minimum pixel density per meter (ratio of the object width in pixels to the object width in meters)	Minimum object size in pixels, Width x Height	Ratio of the object width to the frame width as a percentage
				0 %

Video stream and scene requirements for neural tracker operation

7.4.10.3.6 Camera requirements for abandoned objects detection

Make sure the following requirements for abandoned object detection are met:

1. Camera requirements:

1. Resolution must be not less than 640x480 pixels.
2. Color: analytics works both with color and monochromatic images.
3. It is not allowed to the image shift be more than 1% from the frame size due to camera shake.

- Lighting requirements:

1. Moderate lighting. The quality of analytics performance can be lower in case of low lighting (night) or over lighting (overexposure).
2. There must be no dramatic changes in lighting.

- Scene and camera angle requirements:

1. Background is mostly static and is not changed.
2. Incorrect analytics performance can be caused by reflective surfaces.
3. Abandoned objects are hidden by moving objects not longer than 10% of the time.

- Object images requirements:

1. An abandoned object must be visible on the image.
2. The digital noise and compression-related artifacts are minimal.
3. The width and height of the objects in the image must be not less than 1% of the frame size (if resolution is over 1920 pixels) or 15 pixels for lower resolution.
4. The width and height of the objects in the image must not exceed 25% of the frame size.

If these conditions are in place, the Abandoned Object detection tool is guaranteed to:

- Detect 92 items out of 100
- Keep false positives to 20 out of 100.

7.4.10.3.7 Camera requirements for neural filter operation

To operate the neural filter, a camera must match the following requirements:

1. Use color cameras. Monochrome image may noticeably decrease the detection quality.
2. Video resolution is no less than 640x360.
3. Frame rate is no less than 6 FPS.
4. An object must occupy no less than 5% of the FoV width / height.
5. Objects must be visually separated from the background as well as from each other.

> **Attention!**
>
> We cannot guarantee normal operation of the neural filter with a fisheye camera.

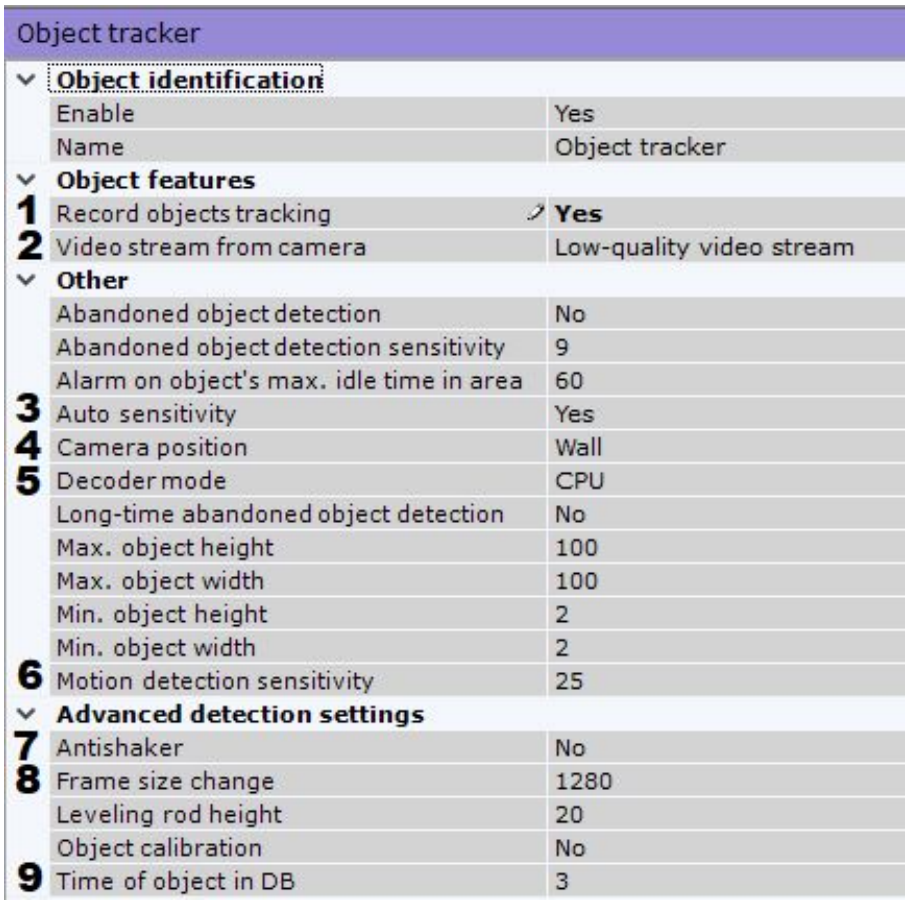
7.4.10.4 Configuring Scene Analytics Detection Tools

7.4.10.4.1 Setting up Tracker-based Scene Analytics

7.4.10.4.1.1 Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics

Some parameters can be configured for Scene Analytics detection tools simultaneously. To configure them, do as follows:

1. Select the **Object tracker** object.



2. By default, video stream metadata are recorded to the database. You can disable the recording by selecting **No** in the **Record objects tracking** list (**1**).

   Attention!

   Video decompression and analysis are used to obtain metadata, which causes high Server load and limits the number of video cameras that can be used on it.

3. If a video camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**). Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server.

   Attention!

   To display the object tracks properly, make sure that all video streams from multistreaming camera have the same aspect ratio settings.

4. If you need automatic adjustment of the sensitivity of scene analytics detection tools, in the **Auto sensitivity** list, select **Yes** (**3**).

   Note

   It is recommended to enable this option if the lighting fluctuates significantly in the course of the video camera operation (for example, in outdoor conditions).

5. To reduce the number of false positives from a fish-eye camera, you have to position it properly (**4**). For other devices, this parameter is not valid.
6. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**5**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips). If there is no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
7. In the **Motion detection sensitivity** field (**6**), set the sensitivity of the detection tool to motion in the range [1, 100]. The higher the sensitivity, the less change in the frame will be detected.

8. To cancel out camera shake, set **Antishaker** to **Yes** (**7**). This setting is recommended only for cameras that show clear signs of shaking-related image degradation.
9. Analyzed framed are scaled down to a specified resolution (**8**, 1280 pixels on the longer side). This is how it works:
   a. If the longer side of the source image exceeds the value specified in the **Frame size change** field, it is divided by two.
   b. If the resulting resolution falls below the specified value, it is used further.
   c. If the resulting resolution still exceeds the specified limit, it is divided by two, etc.

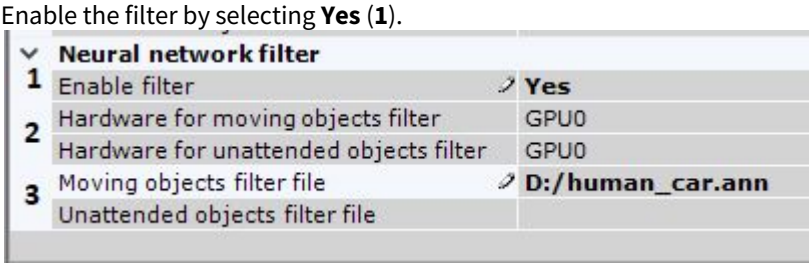
> **Note**
>
> For example, the source image resolution is 2048* 536, and the specified value is set to **1000**.
> In this case, the source resolution will be halved two times (down to 512*384), as after the first division, the number of pixels on the longer side exceeds the limit (1024 > 1000).

> **Note**
>
> If detection is performed on a higher resolution stream and detection errors occur, it is recommended to reduce the compression.

10. Enter the time interval in seconds, during which object's properties will be stored in the **Time of object in DB** field (**9**). If the object leaves and enters the FOV within the specified time, it will be identified as one and the same object (same ID).
11. If necessary, configure the neural network filter (see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation). The neural network filter processes the results of the tracker and filters out false positives on complex video images (foliage, glare, etc.).

> **Attention!**
>
> A neural network filter can be used either for analyzing moving objects, or for analyzing abandoned objects only. You cannot operate two neural networks simultaneously.

   a. Enable the filter by selecting **Yes** (**1**).



   b. Select the processor for the neural network — CPU, one of NVIDIA GPUs or one of Intel GPUs (**2**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation, General Information on Configuring Detection).

> Camera requirements for neural filter operation

> **Attention!**
>
> It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on NVIDIA GPU after you apply the settings.

   c. Select a neural network (**3**). To access a neural network, contact AxxonSoft technical support. If no neural network file is specified, or the settings are incorrect, the filter will occur.
12. Click the **Apply** button.

The general parameters of the scene analytics detection tools are now set.

Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics
By default, the entire FoV is a scene analytics zone. If you need to exclude parts of the scene prone to false alarms from detection (leaves, water, etc.), you should set exclude areas - zone with scene analytics and metadata generation disabled

To do so, follow the steps:

1. Select the **Object Tracker** object and click the button.
2. In the FoV, set the nodes of the closed area, in order, inside of which you want no detection.

> **Note**
>
> When the area is being constructed, the nodes are connected by a two-color dotted line which outlines the area's borders.

> **Note**
>
> For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

Action	Result
Click in the viewing tile	Creates a new area node
Right-click on a created node	Deletes the area node
Position the cursor on a node and hold down the left mouse button while you move the mouse	Moves the area node
Click the button.	Deletes the area

Once the area is closed, you will see the buttons on the borderlines. If you click them, a new node is added. This allows you to be more flexible with zoning.

3. Set the required masking areas.
4. Click the **Apply** button.

You have successfully created the detection zone.

> **Note**

These settings will apply for all situation analysis detection tools on the selected camera.

Set the Minimum and Maximum Object Size for Detection
You can set the minimum and maximum object size for detection by specifying numerical values or reference areas on screen. Objects of all sizes beyond the set values will not trigger detection.

To specify the size, do as follows:

1. Select the **Object Tracker** object.
2. In the **Max. Object height** and **Max. Object width** fields (**1**)**,** enter the maximum height and width of a detectable object as a percent of the FoV height. The values should be in the range [0,05; 100].

1	Max. Object Height	100
	Max. Object Width	100
2	Min. Object Height	2
	Min. Object Width	2

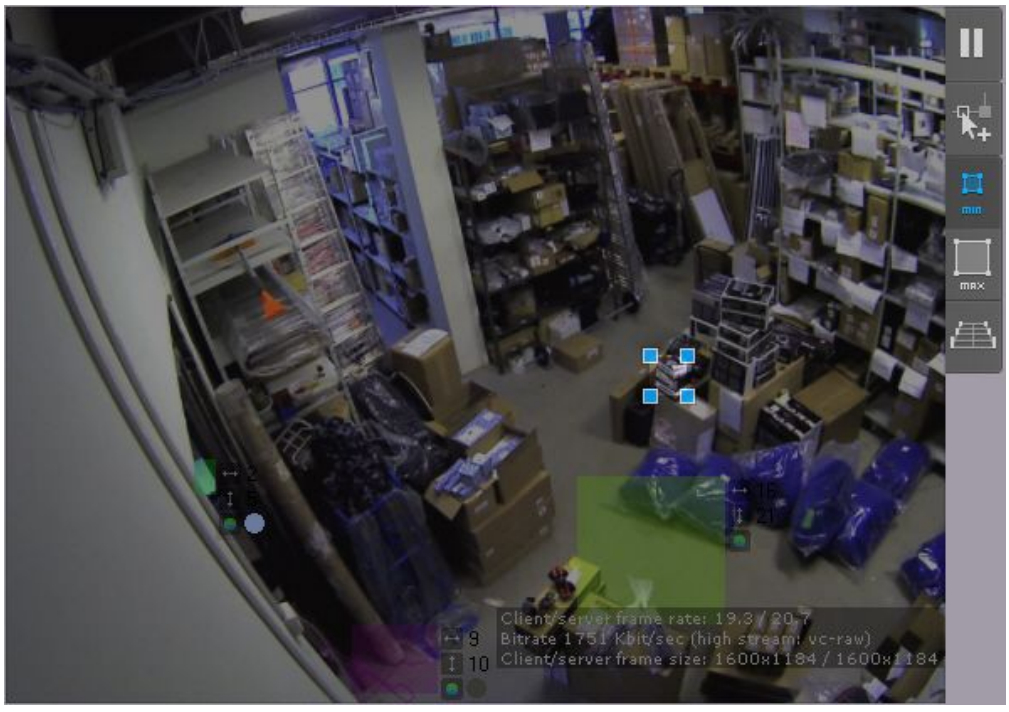
Attention!

If you activate the **Object Calibration** parameter in tracker settings, please note that in this case min/max size of objects is specified in decimeters, not in FoV percentage (see Configure Perspective).

3. In the **Min. Object height** and **Min. Object width** fields (**2**), enter the minimum height and width of a detectable object as a percent of the FoV height. The values should be in the range [0,05; 100].
4. Click the **Apply** button.

To set the reference area on screen, do as follows:

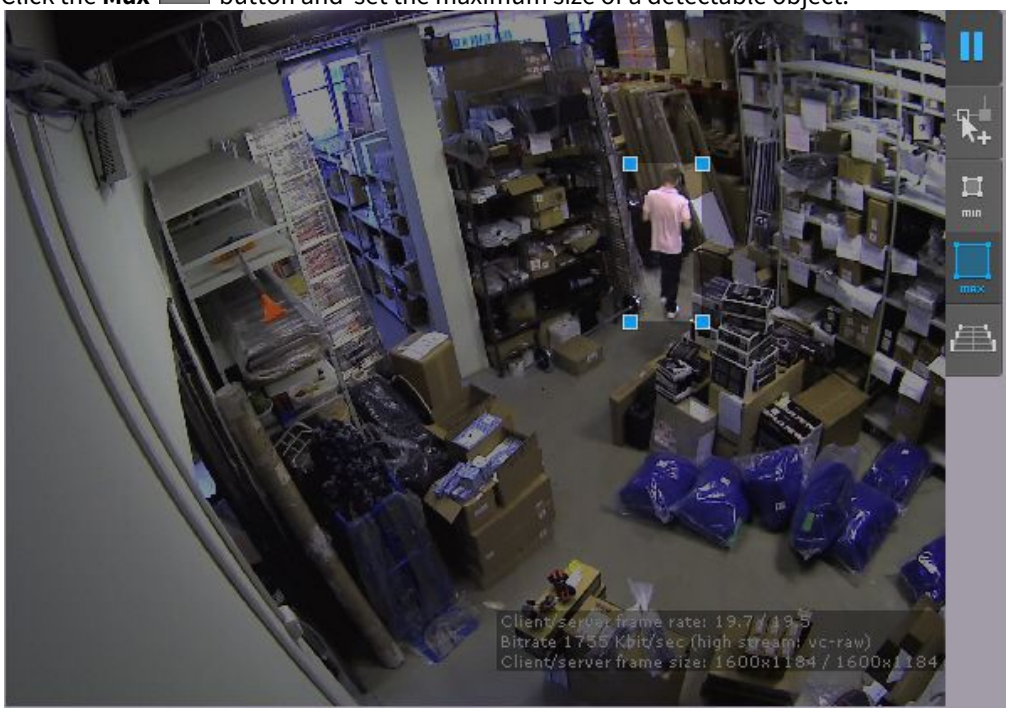
1. Select the **Object Tracker** object.
2. Click the **Min** button and set the minimum size of a detectable object. You can do so by dragging and dropping the nodes of the reference area.



Note

For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

3. Click the **Max** button and set the maximum size of a detectable object.



> **Note**
>
> By default, the maximum size is the whole size of FoV, so the nodes are located in the corners.

4. Click the **Apply** button.

You have successfully set the minimum and maximum object size for detection.

> **Note**
>
> These settings will apply for all situation analysis detection tools on the selected camera.

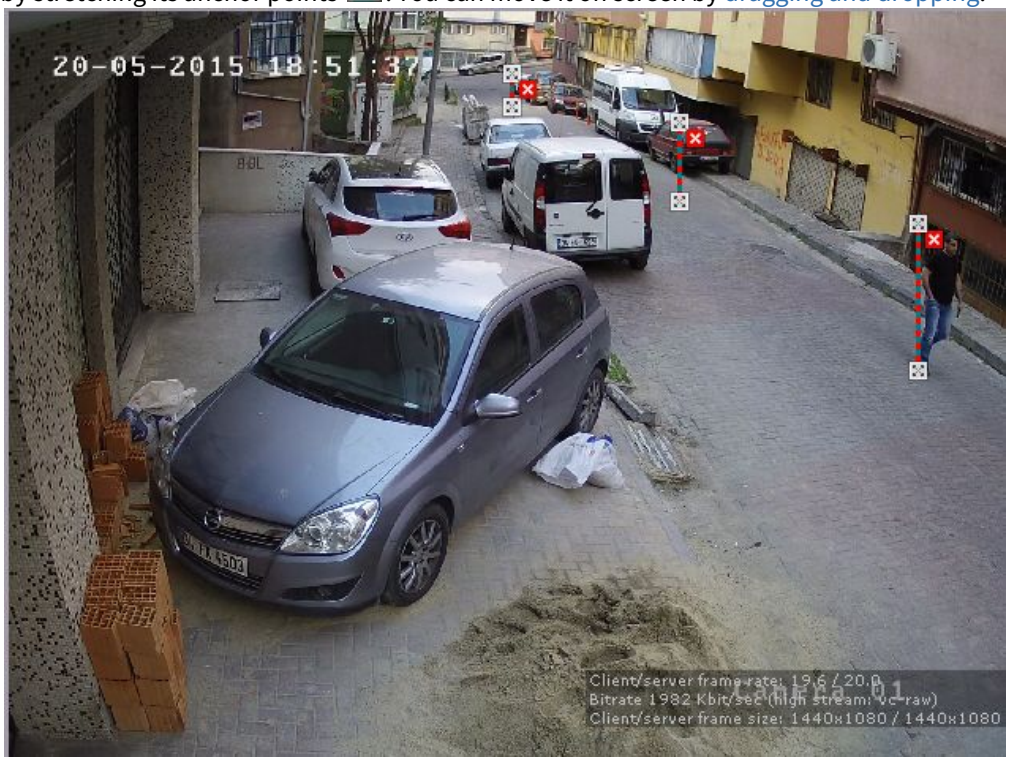
Configure Perspective

The Perspective enhances detection tools performance and helps evaluate real sizes of objects based on simplified calibration system.

To configure the perspective, do the following:

1. Select the **Object Tracker** object and click the button.
2. Set the size of the same object in different areas of the field of view. To create a calibration length, left-click within the video image in the viewing tile and add two anchor points. Set at least three calibration lengths. You can resize the length

by stretching its anchor points . You can move it on screen by dragging and dropping.



Note

For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

Note

To delete it, click the button.

3. Select **Yes** in the **Object Calibration** option (**1**).

	Advanced detection settings	
	Antishaker	No
	Frame size change	1280
2	Leveling rod height	20
1	Object calibration	No
	Time of object in DB	3

4. Enter the height in decimeters of the object you want to find in the **Leveling Rod Height** field (**2**).

Attention!

Objects smaller than the specified value will not be detected.

5. Click the **Apply** button.

Perspective is now configured.

Note

These settings will apply for all situation analysis detection tools on the selected camera.

Recommendations on configuring Object Tracker

To avoid false positives of Scene Analytics detection tools, please follow the recommendations here:

1. Configure the **Tracker object** object iteratively and check operation quality in each iteration.
2. The parameters that affect operation quality most are: **Minimum size**, **Maximum size** (see Set the Minimum and Maximum Object Size for Detection), and **Sensitivity** (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics).
3. It is recommended to use **Auto sensitivity** mode to ensure quality of the Tracker operation in changing lighting conditions.
4. If lighting is stable, it could be reasonable to adjust the **Sensitivity** value manually. Set **Sensitivity** value about 35 to detect objects with low contrast or about 15 to detect contrast object.
5. Minimum size is to be selected so that it is a little less than typical object size on the image.
6. Maximum size is to be selected so that it is a little greater than typical object size on the image, considering that the object can be joined with its shadow.
7. Lowering the **Time of Object in DB** allows excluding triggering of false static objects, while setting it to a higher value could allow not breaking off alarms for overlapping or temporarily disappearing objects in some cases.

Configuring the Detection Zone
For each type of situation analysis detection tool you can set a detection zone.

After creating a detection tool, its rectangular detection zone is displayed in a bright color. If you have set privacy masks, they are grayed out (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics).

Configuration of the detection zone is carried out in the same way as for general zones for scene analysis (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics).

Setting up objects to be detected (target objects)
You can set parameters describing target objects' geometry and/or behaviour for each type of Scene Analytics tool.

To configure settings for target objects, you must:

1. Select an appropriate Scene Analytics tool.

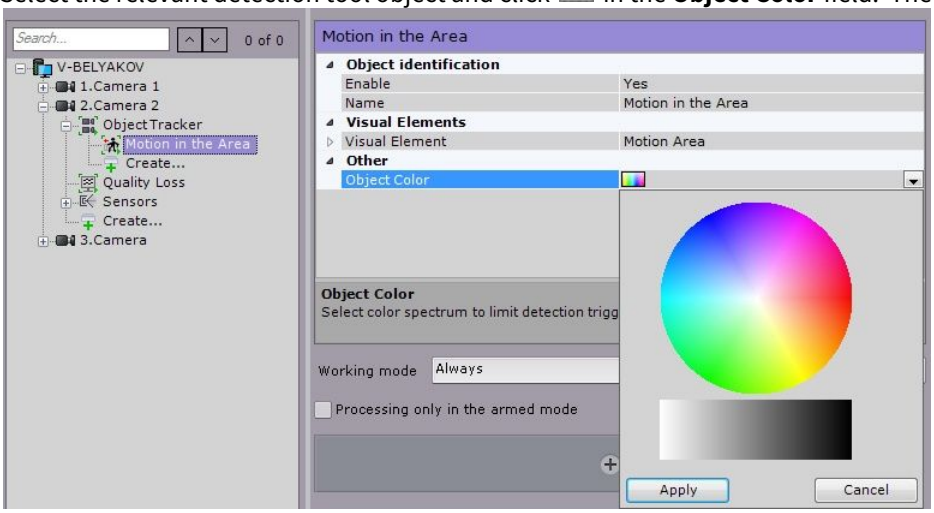
Other		
Maximum object height	100	1
Maximum object speed	500	2
Maximum object width	100	3
Minimum object height	0.1	4
Minimum object speed	1	5
Minimum object width	0.1	6
Number of alarm objects	10	
Object color		7
Object type	Any type	8

2. Set the maximum and minimum height of the target object as a percentage of the FoV height (**1**, **4**).
3. Set the maximum and minimum speed of the target object as a percentage of the frame per second (**2**, **5**).

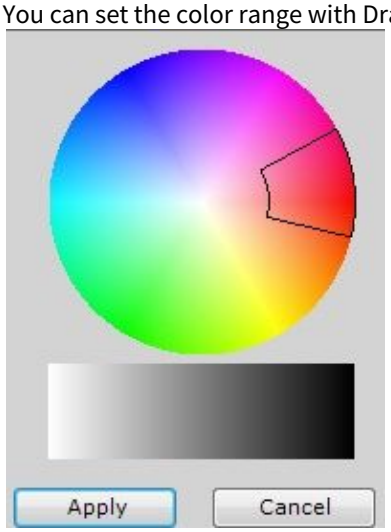
> **Attention!**
>
> For better visual understanding of speed settings, proceed to setting values for searches in Archive (see Configuring minimum and maximum object speed).

> **Note**
>
> In Abandoned Object detection, these parameters are not used.

4. Set the maximum and minimum width of the target object as a percentage of the FoV width (**3**, **6**).
5. Set a color (or color range) for the target object:
   a. Select the relevant detection tool object and click ▼ in the **Object Color** field. The Object Color dialog opens.



b. You can set the color range with Drag&Drop on the RGB / black-and-white color palette.



Any click on the palette is interpreted as the beginning of a new range; the previous range will disappear.

> **Attention!**
>
> The Axxon Next's inner logic treats all objects as monochrome. The object color is averaged within the object's contour.
> All objects of specified colors will be detected.

> **Attention!**
>
> If no colors are set, the detection tool triggers on objects of any color.

> **Note**
>
> To cancel a selected color, click on any palette, save changes, and click **Apply**.

6. Select the type of the target object that should trigger the detector (**8**).

> **Attention!**
>
> 2 or more human objects moving along each other are treated by the system as a **Group**. If you select this type of object for tracking, single human motion, even if detected, will not cause alarms.
> If you select the **Human** type, group motion will not cause alarms.

7. Click the **Apply** button.

The setting procedure for target objects is now complete.

7.4.10.4.1.2 Settings Specific to Cross Line Detection

After you create and select a line crossing detection tool, you can see a virtual "tripwire" line in the FoV.

To set up line crossing detection, do the following:

1. Set up a virtual line in FoV.

a. Set the end points of the line .

> **Note**
>
> When the line is being constructed, the end points are connected by a two-color dotted line. The direction of the object's motion across the line is indicated by dotted arrows.

Action	Result
Position the cursor on an end point and, holding down the left mouse button, move the mouse	Moves the line end point
Position the cursor on the line, holding down the left mouse button, move the mouse	Moving the line

b. By default, Line Crossing detection monitors object motion across the line in both directions. To suspend detection of motion in one direction, click the button to that direction.

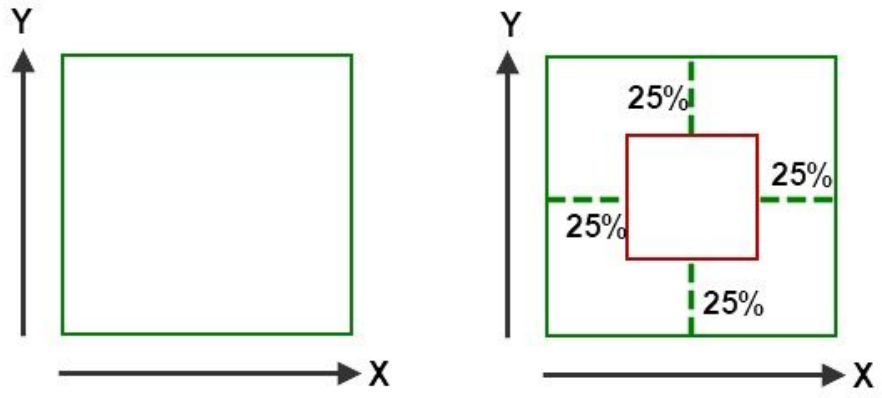
> **Attention!**
>
> At least one direction must be selected for detection

> **Note**
>
> An unmonitored direction of object motion is indicated by a dimmed arrow

2. If an object in FoV performs repetitive movements near the virtual line, it may cause excessive triggering of the detection tool. In this case, set an area within the object's track which must cross the line completely to trigger the tool. To do it, set the X and Y offset values as percentage of track width and height.

Line crossing	
Maximum object height	100
Maximum object speed	500
Maximum object width	100
Minimum object height	0.1
Minimum object speed	0
Minimum object width	0.1
Object class	Any
Object color	
Period	0
X-axis offset	15
Y-axis offset	10

Here's an example: the green triangle is the track of the object. If you specify X and Y offset values as 25%, the tool will be triggered only if the entire red triangle goes beyond the virtual line.



3. Click the **Apply** button.

7.4.10.4.1.3 Settings specific to Abandoned object detection

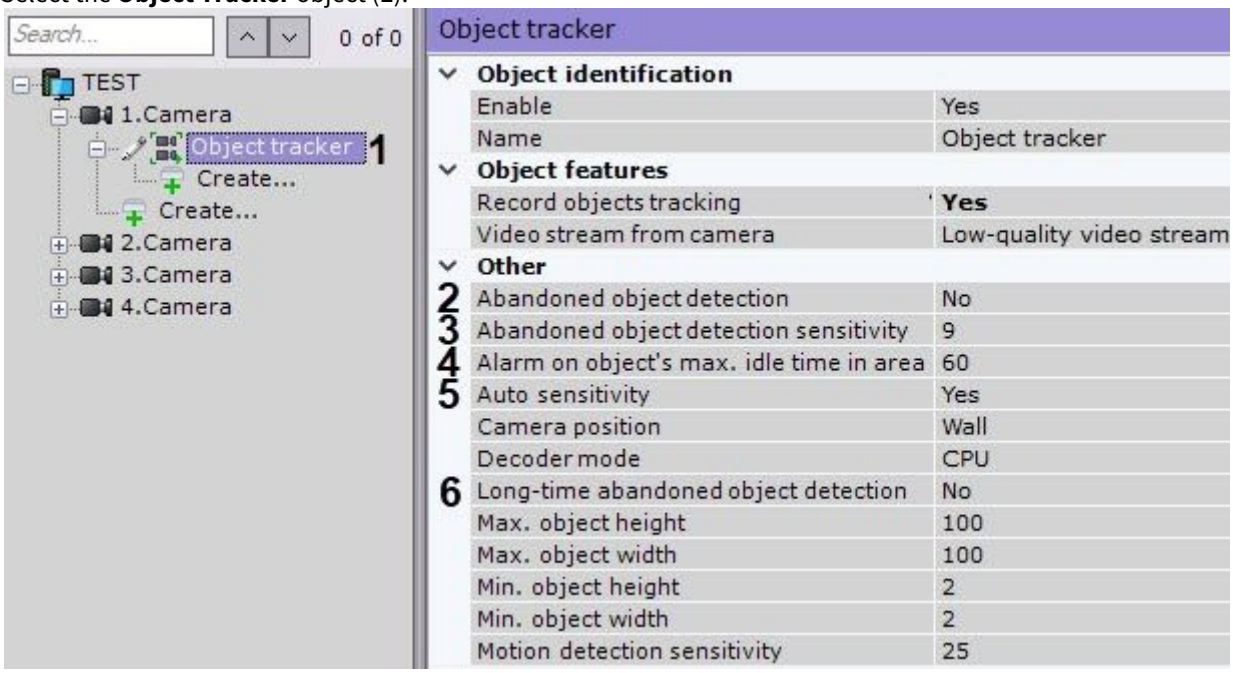
Camera requirements for abandoned objects detection

Attention!

The **Abandoned object** detection can operate only with the basic **Object tracker**.

To configure Abandoned object detection, do as follows:

1. Select the **Object Tracker** object (**1**).



2. To enable the **Abandoned object detection** (**2**), select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter.

> **Note**
>
> Objects abandoned for 10 seconds or longer will be detected.

3. In the **Abandoned object detection sensitivity** field (**3**), set the sensitivity for **Abandoned object detection** (**2**) and **Long-time abandoned object detection** (**6**). This value should be in the range [1, 100].

> **Note**
>
> This parameter depends on the lighting conditions and should be chosen empirically. It is recommended to select the parameter value starting from 20.

4. In the **Alarm on object's max. idle time in area** field (**4**) specify the time in seconds. If the object remains idle for the time longer than the specified, it will be detected. This value should be in the range [15, 1800].

> **Note**
>
> This parameter is used only for the **Long-time abandoned object detection**. It is recommended to select the parameter value starting from 15.

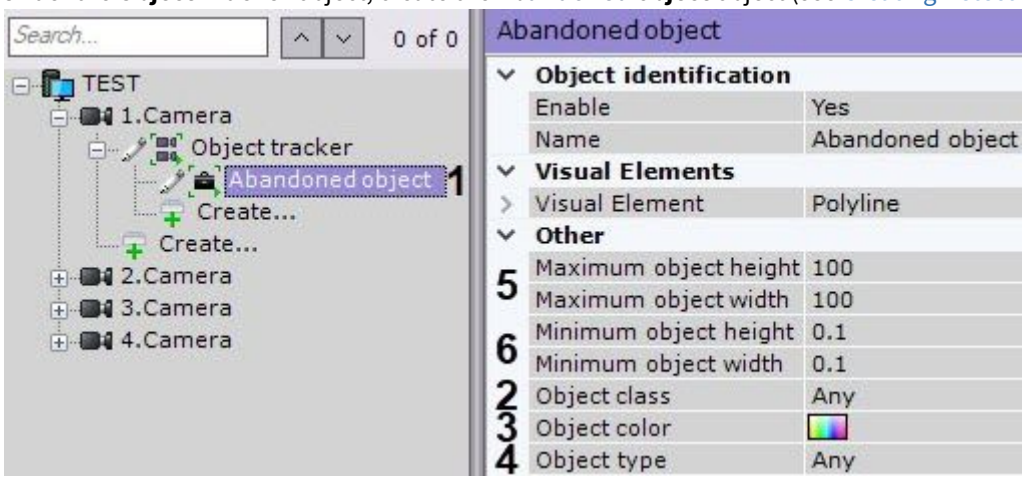
5. To enable the **Auto sensitivity** (**5**), select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter.

> **Attention!**
>
> If auto sensitivity is enabled, sensitivity adjustments for moving and abandoned objects are not applied. To apply manual sensitivity adjustments, it is necessary to disable the auto sensitivity.

6. To enable the **Long-time abandoned object detection**, select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter (**6**).

> **Note**
>
> If you enable the **Long-time abandoned object detection** parameter (**6**) and the **Neural network filter** (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics), it can reduce the number of false positives during detection.

7. Under the **Object Tracker** object, create the **Abandoned object** object (see Creating Detection Tools).



8. To enable the **Abandoned object** detection sub-tool, do the following:
   a. Select object class (**2**).
   b. Select object color (**3**).
   c. Select object type (**4**).
   d. Specify the maximum height and width of the object (**5**). The value should be in the range [0.05, 100].
   e. Specify the minimum height and width of the object (**6**). The value should be in the range [0.05, 100].

> **Attention!**
>
> In the settings of the **Object tracker** detection tool and the **Abandoned object** sub-tool, the values of the maximum and minimum height and width of the object should be equal.

9. Click the **Apply** button.

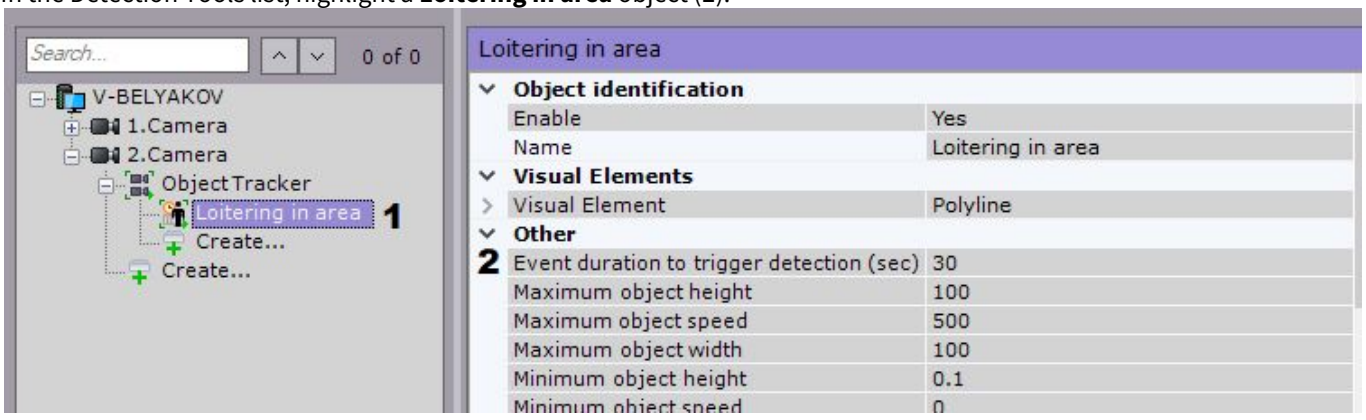
Abandoned object detection is now configured.

7.4.10.4.1.4 Settings Specific to Loitering Detection

When configuring the Loitering detection tool, you must set the maximum time an object can be in the analyzed area: when the maximum time is exceeded, the detection tool is triggered.

To set a maximum time, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the Detection Tools list, highlight a **Loitering in area** object (**1**).



2. In the **Event duration to trigger detection (sec)** field (**2**), enter the maximum object loitering time in seconds. This value should be in the range [0, 3600].
3. Click the **Apply** button.

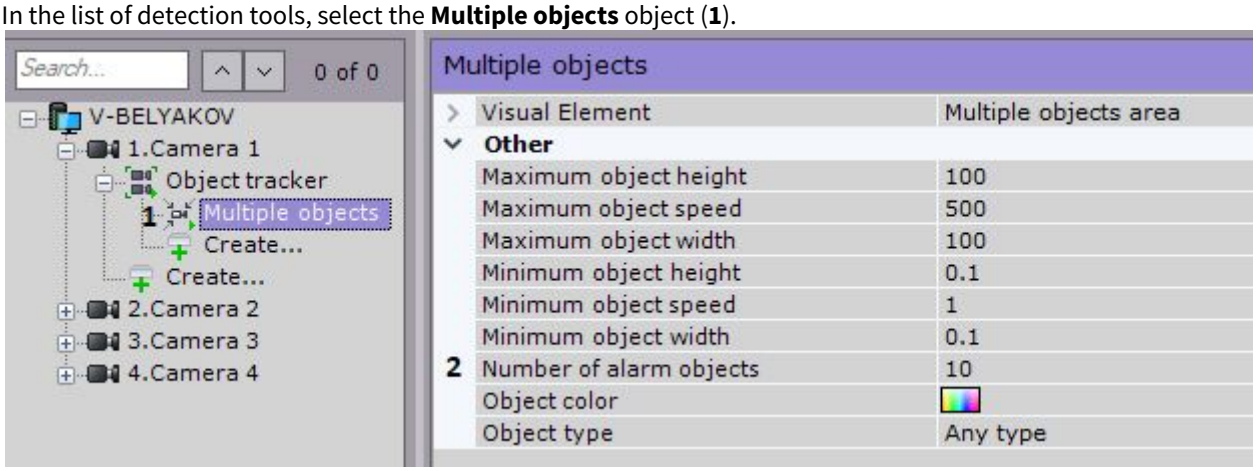
The maximum loitering time is now set.

7.4.10.4.1.5 Settings Specific to Multiple objects

When configuring the Multiple objects detection tool, you should set the maximum number of objects within the analyzed zone. Exceeding this number leads to triggering the tool.

To configure the detection tool, do the following:

1. In the list of detection tools, select the **Multiple objects** object (**1**).



2. Enter the corresponding value into the **Number of alarm objects** (**2**) field.
3. Click the **Apply** button.

When the specified number of objects in the zone is exceeded, the detection tool generates the **Start Time of Detection Tool Trigger** event. When the number of objects in the zone decreases below the specified value, the **End Time of Detection Tool Trigger** event is generated.

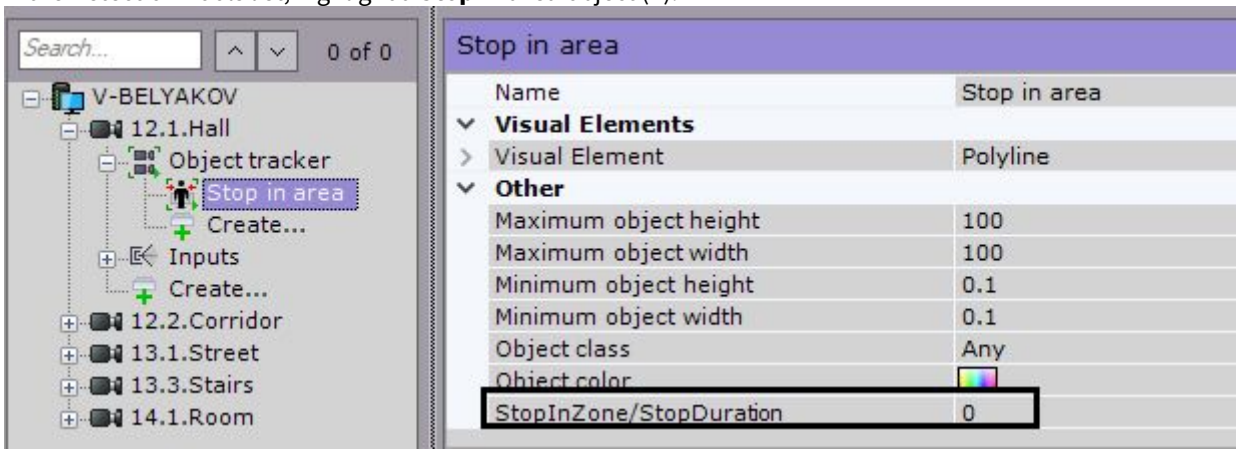
7.4.10.4.1.6 Settings Specific to Stop in area detection

The detection tool will trigger if an object stops and remains idle for a specified time period.

> **Note**
>
> The object doesn't have to be completely idle, minor jitter is permitted.

To set a specified time period, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the Detection Tools list, highlight a **Stop in area** object (**1**).



2. Set the idle period duration for triggering the tool. This value should fall into the range of [0, 3600].

> **Attention!**
>
> Set this parameter to a value lower than the **Time of Object in DB** in Object tracker settings (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics).

Attention!

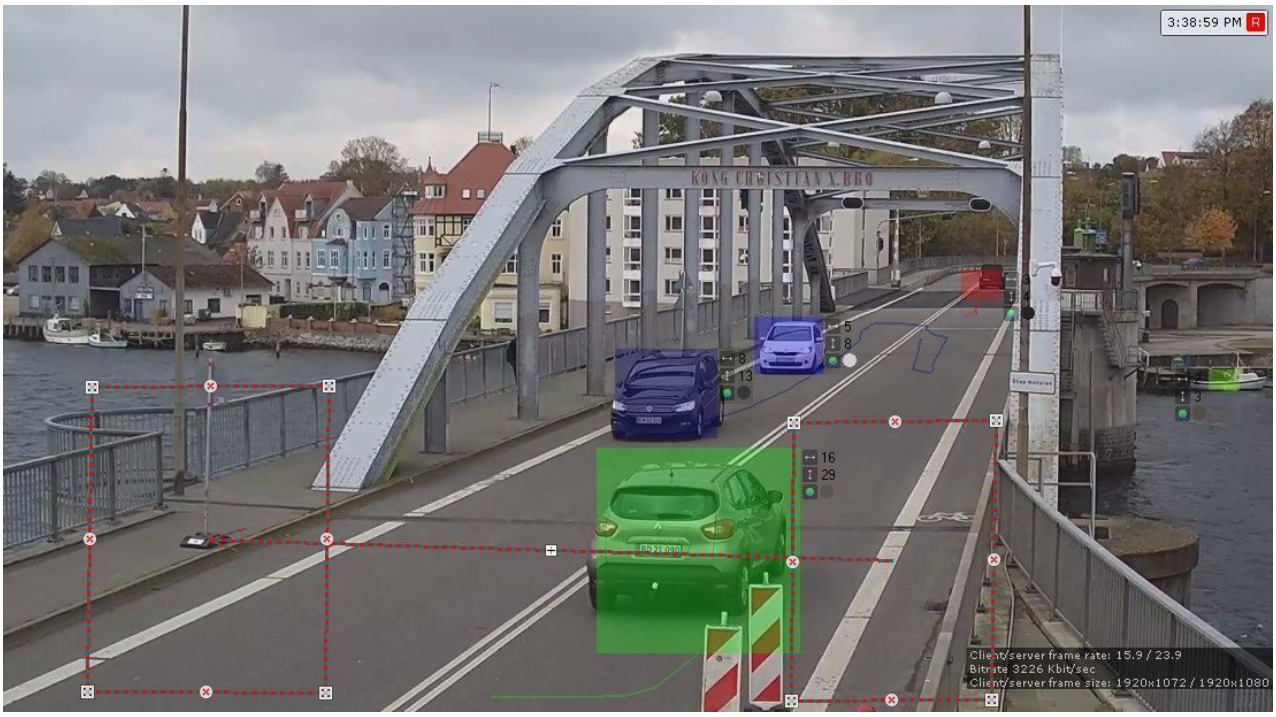
If a detection tools runs on VMD metadata, the Stop in Area Duration should be set to 0. Otherwise, the detection tools will not work.

3. Click the **Apply** button.

7.4.10.4.1.7 Settings specific to Move from area to area detection tool

To configure the Move from area to area detection tool, do the following:

1. Set the general parameters (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics).
2. Set two areas in the preview window. The tool is triggered if any object moves from one area to the other in the specified direction.
   By default, the areas are located on the right side and the left side of the video image. The anchor points of each area are connected by a two-color dotted line. To reshape the area, drag its anchor points . To move the entire area, left click and drag its border. To add the anchor points, click .
3. In the preview window, set the directions of the object movement. The direction of movement between the areas is indicated by a dotted arrow. To change the direction of movement, click on the direction arrow. The available directions are:
   a. Left
   b. Right.
   c. Both directions.



4. Click the **Apply** button.

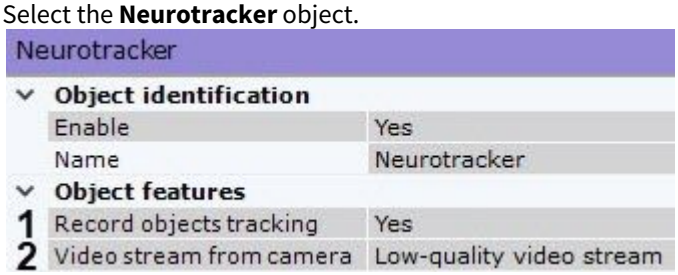
The Move from area to area detection tool is configured.

7.4.10.4.2 Setting up Neural Tracker-based Scene Analytics

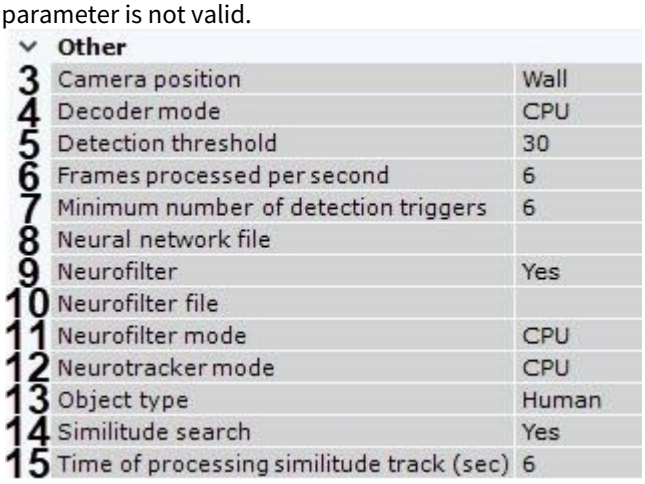
Video requirements for scene analytics detection
Video stream and scene requirements for neural tracker operation
Objects image requirements for neural tracker
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

To configure the neural tracker, do the following:

1. Select the **Neurotracker** object.



2. By default, metadata are recorded into the database. To disable metadata recording, select **No** from the **Record object tracking** (**1**) list.
3. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**).
4. To reduce the number of false positives from a fish-eye camera, you have to position it properly (**3**). For other devices, this parameter is not valid.



5. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**4**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips). If there is no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
6. Set the **Detection threshold** for objects in percent (**5**). If the recognition probability falls below the specified value, the data will be ignored. The higher the value, the higher the accuracy, but some triggers may not be considered.
7. Set the frame rate value for the neural network to process per second (**6**). The higher the value, the more accurate tracking, but the load on the CPU is also higher.

> **Attention!**
>
> 6 FPS or more is recommended. For fast moving objects (running individuals, vehicles), you should set the frame rate at 12 FPS or above (see Examples of configuring neural tracker for solving typical tasks).

8. Specify the **Minimum number of detection triggers** for the neural tracker to display the object's track (**7**). The higher the value, the more is the time interval between the object's detection and the display of its track on the screen. Low values may lead to false positives.
9. You can use the neural filter to sort out certain tracks. For example, the neural tracker detects all freight trucks, and the neural filter sorts out only video recordings that contain trucks with cargo door open. To set up a neural filter, do the following:
   a. to use the neural filter, select **Yes** in the corresponding field (**9**).
   b. in the **Neurofilter file** field, select a neural network file (**10**).
   c. in the **Neurofilter mode** field, select a processor to be used for neural network work (**11**, see General Information on Configuring Detection).
10. Select the processor for the neural network — CPU, one of NVIDIA GPUs or one of Intel GPUs (**12**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation, General Information on Configuring Detection).

> **Attention!**
>
> We recommend using the GPU.

It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on NVIDIA GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).
If Neural Tracker is running on GPU, object tracks may be lagging behind the objects. If this happens, set the camera buffer size to 1000 milliseconds (see The Video Camera Object).

11. In the **Object type** field (**13**), select the recognition object type, or in the **Neural network file** field (**8**), select the neural network file.

Attention!

To train your neural network, contact AxxonSoft (see Data collection requirements for neural network training).
A trained neural network for a particular scene allows you to detect only objects of a certain type (e.g. person, cyclist, motorcyclist, etc.).
If the neural network file is not specified, the default file will be used, which is selected depending on the selected object type (**13**) and the selected processor for the neural network operation (**4**).

Note

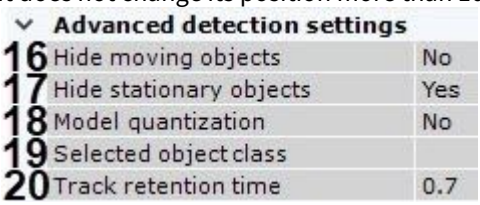
To ensure the correct operation of the neural network on Linux OS, the corresponding file should be located in the /opt/AxxonSoft/DetectorPack/NeuroSDK directory.

12. To enable the search for similar persons, in the **Similitude search** field (**14**), select **Yes**. It increases the CPU load.

Attention!

The Similitude search works only on tracks of people.

13. In the **Time of processing similitude track (sec)** field (**15**), set the time in the range [0, 3600] required for the algorithm to process the track to search for similar persons.
14. If you don't need to detect moving objects, select **Yes** in the **Hide moving objects** field (**16**). An object is treated as static if it does not change its position more than 10% of its width or height during its track lifetime.



15. If you don't need to detect static objects, select **Yes** in the **Hide stationary objects** field (**17**). This parameter lowers the number false positives when detecting moving objects.
16. If necessary, enable the **Model quantization** option (**18**). It allows you to reduce the consumption of the GPU processing power.

Note

AxxonSoft conducted a study in which a neural network model was trained to identify the characteristics of the detected object with quantization. The following results of the study were obtained: model quantization can lead to both an increase in the percentage of recognition and a decrease. This is due to the generalization of the mathematical model. The difference in detection ranges within ±1.5%, and the difference in object identification ranges within ±2%.

Attention!

Model quantization is only applicable to NVIDIA GPUs.

Attention!

The first launch of a detection tool with quantization enabled may take longer than a standard launch.
If GPU caching is used, next time a detection tool with quantization will run without delay.

17. If necessary, select the class of the object to be detected (**19**).
18. In the **Track retention time** field, set a time interval in seconds after which the object track is considered lost (**20**). This helps if objects in scene temporarily overlap each other. For example, a larger vehicle may completely block the smaller one from view.
19. By default, the entire FOV is a detection area. If you need to narrow down the area to be analyzed, you can set one or several detection areas in the preview window.

> **Note**
>
> The procedure of setting areas is identical to the primary tracker's (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics). The only difference is that the neural tracker areas are processed while the primary tracker areas are ignored.

20. Click the **Apply** button.
21. The next step is to create and configure the necessary detection tools on the basis of neurotracker. The configuration procedure is the same as for the primary tracker (see Setting up Tracker-based Scene Analytics).

> **Attention!**
>
> To trigger a **Motion in Area** detection tool under a neural network tracker, an object should be displaced by at least 25% of its width or height in FOV.

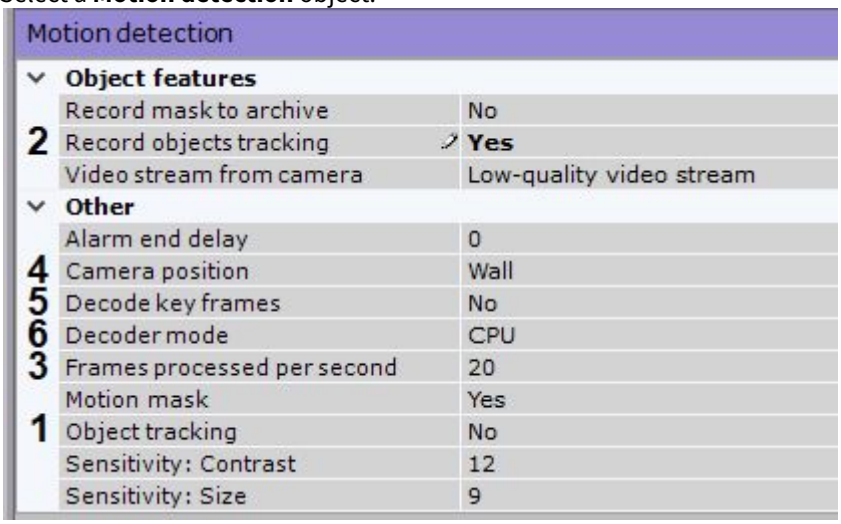
> **Attention!**
>
> The abandoned objects detection tool works only with the primary tracker.

7.4.10.4.3 Setting up VMD-based Scene Analytics

> Video requirements for VMD

To configure situational analysis based on video motion detection, do the following:

1. Request an updated license file from AxxonSoft manager.
2. Select a **Motion detection** object.



3. Select **Yes** in the **Object Tracking** field (**1**).
4. By default, metadata are not recorded into the database. To enable metadata recording, select **Yes** from the **Record objects Tracking** list (**2**).
5. For a proper operation of VMD-based Scene Analytics, the detection tool must analyze a frame at least every 500 milliseconds (see Configuring VMD section for **Frames processed per second** and **Decode key frames** parameters description).

6. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**6**). When you select an NVIDIA GPU, priority is given to a discrete graphics card (when decoding on NVIDIA NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, then decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
7. To reduce false alarms rate from a fish-eye camera, you have to position it properly (**4**). For other devices, this parameter is not valid.
8. Click the **Apply** button.
9. Next, you have to create and configure the necessary VMD-based detection tools. The configuration procedure is the same as for the primary tracker (see Setting up Tracker-based Scene Analytics).

> **Attention!**
>
> VMD-generated metadata does not include object type and color information.

> **Attention!**
>
> The abandoned objects detection tool works only with the primary tracker.

7.4.10.4.4 Examples of configuring neural tracker for solving typical tasks

Settings	Task: detection of moving people	Task: detection of moving vehicles
Main		
The number of frames processed per second	6	12
Minimum number of triggerings	6	6
Neural filter	no	no
Camera position	Wall	Wall
Recognition threshold	30	30
Neural network file	Path to the *.ann neural network file. You can also select **Object type** — in this case, this field should be left blank.	Path to the *.ann neural network file. You can also select **Object type** — in this case, this field should be left blank.
Advanced		
Hide static objects	Yes	Yes

> **Note**
>
> By default, the neural tracker is configured for detection of moving people.

7.4.11 Face detection tools

There are two types of face detection tools in *Axxon Next*:

1. Face detection.
2. Face detection (VL).

> **Attention!**
>
> You can install a *DetectorPack* add-on of only one of the given types.
> It is forbidden to install both add-ons on the same system.

7.4.11.1 Functions of face detection tools

The **Face detection** basic object and **Face detection (VL)** object are triggered every time a face is captured in the frame. Basic object is enough to perform a search for faces in the archive (see Search for similar face).

In addition, the following types of detection tools based on metadata from the face detection (see General information on metadata) are available in *Axxon Next*:

1. Appearance in area – a detection tool is triggered by the appearance of an object and subsequent face capture in FoV.
2. Loitering in area – a detection tool triggered by the lengthy presence of an object and its face capture in FoV.
3. Mask detection – a detection tool is triggered by the face captured with or without a mask.

The *Axxon Next* database stores all faces in binary form:

1. All captured facial images are vectorized* and stored in the **t_face_vector** table, and their corresponding capture events are stored in the **t_json_event** table.
2. Reference images (see Lists of facial templates) are stored in the **t_face_listed** table.

* Facial vector is the mathematical representation of a facial image created upon face capture.

> **Note**
>
> These detection tools require Addon Face Recognition Pack to be installed (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

> **Attention!**
>
> With an increase in the number of faces in the database, the statistical error increases: the more faces in the database, the more often similar faces will be recognized when searching in the archive. Accordingly, the degree of similarity when comparing the reference face with the captured face will decrease.
> This statistical error is relevant if:
> 1. The Requirements for face detection tools are met.
> 2. The database contains over a million faces.
>
> An example of the results of calculating the error:
> 1. Face detection, mugshot dataset (good quality photo), 12 million faces in database, and false matching probability is 0.003%. With these initial data, the researchers obtained an identification error of 0.76%.
> 2. Face detection (VL), the initial data are the same. The identification error is 0.81%.

7.4.11.2 Requirements for face detection tools

Face detection works properly if cameras are installed and set up as follows:

1. The frame rate should not be less than 12 fps and not less than 6 fps for face recognition at turnstiles.
2. The maximum angle of frontal perspective of the photos of people's faces received from video cameras should not exceed +/- 15 °.
3. The distance between the pupils on the photos of people's faces received from video cameras should not be less than 32 pixels.
4. Mutual faces covering should be minimal.
5. Faces should be evenly illuminated with diffused light of at least 200 lux. Directional side lighting is not allowed.
6. The contrast of the photos of the captured faces should be over 64 grayscale. Insufficient or excessive lighting is not allowed.
7. There should be no backlighting and sharp gradients of light and shade.
8. The photos of the captured faces received from video cameras should be clear. Image blurring caused by motion is not allowed.

> **Note**
>
> The required distance between the camera and the face can be set using a lens with the required focal length.

7.4.11.3 Configuring Face detection

To configure the basic face detection tool, do the following:

1. Select the **Face detection** object.

Face detection	
Object identification	
Enable	Yes
Name	Face detection
Object features	
1 Real-time recognition	Yes
2 Record objects tracking	Yes
3 Video stream from camera	High-quality video stream
4 Real-time recognition on external service	No

2. If you need to use this detection tool for real-time face recognition, set the corresponding parameter to **Yes** (**1**, see Configuring real-time facial recognition).
3. If you need to record metadata, select **Yes** from the **Record objects tracking** list (**2**).
4. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**3**). For the correct operation of the **Face detection**, it is recommended to use a High-quality video stream.
5. If you need to use this face recognition tool in real time together with FaceCube Recognition Server (see Configuring FaceCube integration), set **Yes** for **Real-time recognition on external service** (**4**).
6. If you need to save age and gender information for each recognized face, select **Yes** in the corresponding field (**1**).

Face detection	
Other	
1 Age and gender	No
2 Camera transform	No
3 Decoder mode	CPU
4 Face detection period (msec)	250
5 Face mask detection	No
6 Filter false alarms	Yes
7 Frame size change	1920
Maximum face height	100
8 Maximum face width	100
Minimum face height	5
Minimum face width	5
9 Minimum threshold of face authenticity	90
10 Mode	CPU
11 Send face images	No
12 Track loss time	500

7. If you use a bi-spherical XingYun lens, the detector will analyze two 180° spherical images by default (see Configuring fisheye cameras). This may decrease recognition quality. To dewarp the image before detection, select **Yes** for the **Camera transform** parameter (**2**). This parameter works as well for other types of image transformation.
8. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips). If there is no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
9. Set the time (in milliseconds) between face search operations in a video frame in the **Face detection period (msec)** field (**4**). Acceptable values range is [1; 10000]. Increasing this value decreases the Server load, but can result in some faces being undetected.
10. If you plan to apply the masks detection tool, set **Yes** for the **Face mask detection** parameter (**5**, see Configuring masks detection).
11. In some cases, the detection tool may mistake other object for a face. To filter out non-facial objects, select **Yes** in the **Filter false alarms** field while calculating the vector model of a face and its recording into the metadata DB (**6**). If the filtering is on, false results will appear in the detection feed but will be ignored during searches in archive.
12. Analyzed framed are scaled down to a specified resolution (**7**, 1920 pixels on the longer side). This is how it works:
    a. If the longer side of the source image exceeds the value specified in the **Frame size change** field, it is divided by two.
    b. If the resulting resolution falls below the specified value, it is used further.

c. If the resulting resolution still exceeds the specified limit, it is divided by two, etc.

> **Note**
>
> For example, the source image resolution is 2048*1536, and the specified value is set to 1000.
> In this case, the source resolution will be halved two times (down to 512*384), as after the first division, the number of pixels on the longer side exceeds the limit (1024 > 1000).

> **Note**
>
> If detection is performed on a higher resolution stream and detection errors occur, it is recommended to reduce the compression.

13. Specify the minimum and maximum sizes of the captured faces as a percentage of the frame size (**8**).
14. In the **Minimum threshold of face authenticity** field, set the minimum level of face recognition accuracy for the creation of a track (**9**). You can set any value by trial-and-error. No less than 90 is recommended. The higher the value, the fewer faces are detected, while recognition accuracy increases.
15. Select the processor for the face detection – CPU or NVIDIA GPU (**10**, see General Information on Configuring Detection).

> **Attention!**
>
> It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on NVIDIA GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).

16. If you use FaceCube integration (see Configuring FaceCube integration), activate the **Send face images** parameter (**11**).
17. Enter the time in milliseconds after which the face track is considered to be lost in the **Track loss time** field (**12**). Acceptable values range is [1; 10000]. This parameter applies when a face moves in a frame and gets hidden behind an obstacle for some time. If this time is less than the set value, the face will be recognized as the same.
18. If necessary, fine-tune the detection tool (see Fine-tuning the face detection tool).
19. In the preview window, set the rectangular area of the frame in which you want to perform face detection. To select the area, move the anchor points .

20. Click the **Apply** button.

The basic face detection tool is now configured.

7.4.11.3.1 Fine-tuning the face detection tool

> **Attention!**
>
> To fine tune this detection tool, you will require assistance from AxxonSoft tech support.

To fine-tune the face detection tool, do as follows:

1. Configure face rotation angle analysis:

a. If it is necessary to determine the face rotation angle, then set **Yes** for the **Analyze face rotation angle** parameter (**1**).

Face detection

	Advanced detection settings	
1	Analyze face rotation angle	No
2	Face detection algorithm	ALG1 (high speed, low accura
3	Face rotation pitch (°)	45
4	Face rotation roll (°)	45
5	Face rotation yaw from (°)	-45
6	Face rotation yaw to (°)	45
7	False mask detections filtering	Yes
8	Ignore repeated recognitions	No
9	Minimum face masking threshold	70
10	Minimum face quality for face mask detection	30
11	Minimum face recognition quality	50
12	Minimum filtering threshold	50
13	Minimum filtering threshold for face mask detection	30
14	Period of ignoring repeated recognitions	2
15	Process color frames	No
16	Repeated recognitions similarity threshold	85

b. In the **Face rotation pitch (°)** field (**3**), set the allowable face tilt up/down angle in degrees. The value should be in the range [0; 90].
c. In the **Face rotation roll (°)** field (**4**), set the allowable face tilt right/left angle in degrees. The value should be in the range [0; 90].
d. In the **Face rotation yaw from (°)** field (**5**), set the minimum allowable angle of face rotation to the right or left. The value should be in the range [-90; 90].
e. In the **Face rotation yaw to (°)** field (**6**), set the maximum allowable angle of face rotation to the right or left. The value should be in the range [-90; 90].

2. Select a face detection algorithm (**2**):
   a. **ALG1** – high speed, low accuracy.
   b. **ALG2** – average speed, average accuracy.
   c. **ALG3** – low speed, high accuracy.
3. Set up false mask detections filtering:
   a. To apply filters, set **Yes** for the **False mask detections filtering** parameter (**7**).
   b. Set the minimal percentage of probability which makes the additional algorithm identify a track as a masked face in the **Minimum filtering threshold for face mask detection** field (**13**). If the algorithm takes a decision that the track relates to a masked face with a probability value lower than the specified threshold, the track will be ignored. Set the value by trial-and-error, values over 30 are recommended.
4. Set the minimum threshold value for mask detection (**9**). Set a value by trial-and-error, values over 70 are recommended.
5. Set the minimum quality of a facial image for recognition with a mask (**10**, see Configuring masks detection). Set the value by trial-and-error, values over 30 are recommended.
6. Set the minimum quality of a facial image for recognition without a mask (**11**). Set the value by trial-and-error, values over 50 are recommended.
7. If it is necessary to filter out false positives, set the minimum percentage of probability which makes the algorithm identify a track as a human face in the **Minimum filtering threshold** field (**12**, see Configuring Face detection). If the algorithm takes a decision that the track relates to a face with a probability value lower than the specified threshold, the track will be ignored. Set the value by trial-and-error, values over 50 are recommended.
8. If it is necessary for the detection tool to use a color frame for processing, then set **Yes** for the **Process color frames** parameter (**15**). By default, a black and white frame is processed.
9. Configure the repeated face recognition ignoring:
   a. If it is necessary to ignore repeated recognition of the same face, then set **Yes** for the **Ignore repeated recognitions** parameter (**8**).
   b. In the **Repeated recognitions similarity threshold** field (**16**), set the similarity threshold of a face with the previous recognized ones in percentage from 0 to 100. If the similarity threshold is below the specified value, then the face will be recognized as a new one.
   c. In the **Period of ignoring repeated recognitions** field (**14**), set the period in minutes during which new recognized faces will be compared with the previous ones to identify similarities. The value should be in the range [0; 30].

10. Click the **Apply** button.

Fine-tuning the face detection tool is now complete.

7.4.11.4 Configuring Face detection (VL)

To configure the Face detection (VL), do the following:

1. Select the **Face detection (VL)** object.

Face detection (VL)		
	Object identification	
	Enable	Yes
	Name	Face detection (VL)
	Object features	
1	Real-time recognition	No
2	Record objects tracking	Yes
3	Video stream from camera	Low-quality video stream

2. If you require using this detection tool for real-time facial recognition, set the corresponding parameter to **Yes** (**1**, see Configuring real-time facial recognition).
3. If you need to enable recording of metadata, select **Yes** from the **Record objects tracking** list (**2**).
4. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**3**). For the correct operation of the **Face detection (VL)**, it is recommended to use a High-quality video stream.

Face detection (VL)		
	Other	
4	Decoder mode	CPU
5	Face attributes recognition	No
6	Maximum face size	100
7	Medical mask detection	No
8	Minimum face size	10
9	Minimum image quality	50
10	Minimum threshold of face authenticity	60
11	Mode	CPU

5. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**4**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
6. In the **Face attributes recognition** field (**5**), select **Yes** if it is necessary to recognize gender and age.
7. Set the maximum size of captured faces as a percentage of the frame size (**6**).
8. If necessary, set **Yes** for the **Medical mask detection** parameter (**7**, see Configuring masks detection).
9. Set the minimum size of captured faces as a percentage of the frame size (**8**).
10. Set the **Minimum image quality** of a person's face for face detection (**9**). A required value should be selected empirically, at least 50 is recommended.
11. In the **Minimum threshold of face authenticity** field (**10**), set the minimum level of face recognition accuracy for the creation of a track. A required value should be selected empirically, at least 90 is recommended. The higher the value, the higher the recognition quality will be.
12. Select the processor for the face detection – CPU or NVIDIA GPU (**11**, see General Information on Configuring Detection).

> **Attention!**
>
> It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on an NVIDIA GPU after you apply the settings.

13. If necessary, fine-tune the detection tool (see Fine-tuning the face detection (VL)).

14. In the preview window, set the rectangular area of the frame where faces should be detected. To select the area, move the intersection points .

15. Click the **Apply** button.

The Face detection (VL) is now configured.

7.4.11.4.1 Fine-tuning the face detection (VL)

> **Attention!**
>
> To fine tune this detection tool, you will require assistance from AxxonSoft tech support.

To fine-tune the face detection tool, do as follows:

1. If necessary, set **Yes** for the **Advanced logging for SDK** parameter (**1**).

Face detection (VL)	
Advanced detection settings	
1 Advanced logging for SDK	No
2 Analyze face rotation angle	No
3 Face recognition algorithm	Algorithm 2
4 Face rotation pitch (°)	45
5 Face rotation roll (°)	45
6 Face rotation yaw from (°)	-45
7 Face rotation yaw to (°)	45
8 Minimum number of detections	3
9 Number of frames between detections	7
10 Number of frames without detections	8
11 Number of threads	4
12 Track timeout	2

2. Select a face detection algorithm (**3**):
   a. **Algorithm 1** – the recognition speed depends on the background and the number of faces in the frame. Works slower than **Algorithm 3**.
   b. **Algorithm 2** – high speed, low accuracy. The recognition speed depends on the number of faces in the frame.
   c. **Algorithm 3** – average speed, high accuracy. The recognition speed depends on the resolution of the image. Optimal for most scenes.
3. Configure face rotation angle analysis:
   a. If it is necessary to determine the face rotation angle, then set **Yes** for the **Analyze face rotation angle** parameter (**2**).
   b. In the **Face rotation pitch (°)** field (**4**), set the allowable face tilt up/down angle in degrees. The value should be in the range [0; 90].
   c. In the **Face rotation roll (°)** field (**5**), set the allowable face tilt right/left angle in degrees. The value should be in the range [0; 90].
   d. In the **Face rotation yaw from (°)** field (**6**), set the minimum allowable angle of face rotation to the right or left. The value should be in the range [-90; 90].

e. In the **Face rotation yaw to (°)** field (**7**), set the maximum allowable angle of face rotation to the right or left. The value should be in the range [-90; 90].

4. In the **Minimum number of detections** field (**8**), enter the time in milliseconds in the range [1; 10000], after which the track will be considered a detected face.
5. In the **Number of frames between detections** field (**9**), enter the time in milliseconds in the range [1; 10000]. The lower the value, the more likely the TrackEngine will detect a new face as soon as it appears in the selected area.
6. In the **Number of frames without detections** field (**10**), enter the time in milliseconds in the range [1; 10000]. If there is no face detection in the selected area, the TrackEngine will continue to process the specified number of frames before the track is considered lost.

   Note

   TrackEngine does not perform face recognition. It tracks the position of one person's face in a sequence of frames, choosing the best frame and preparing the necessary data for external systems.
   TrackEngine is based on face detection and analysis methods provided by the FaceEngine library.

7. Specify the **Number of threads** per recognition channel (**11**). The value should be in the range [1; 256].
8. In the **Track timeout** field (**12**), enter the time in seconds in the range [1; 60], after which the face track is considered lost.
9. Click the **Apply** button.

Fine-tuning the face detection (VL) is now complete.

7.4.11.4.2 License activation for Face detection (VL)

To activate a license for Face detection (VL) (see Installing DetectorPack addons, Configuring Face detection (VL)), do the following:

1. Request EID and ProductID from technical support.

   Attention!

   EID and ProductID are linked with the MAC address of the server. If the MAC address changes, you need to request EID and ProductID again.

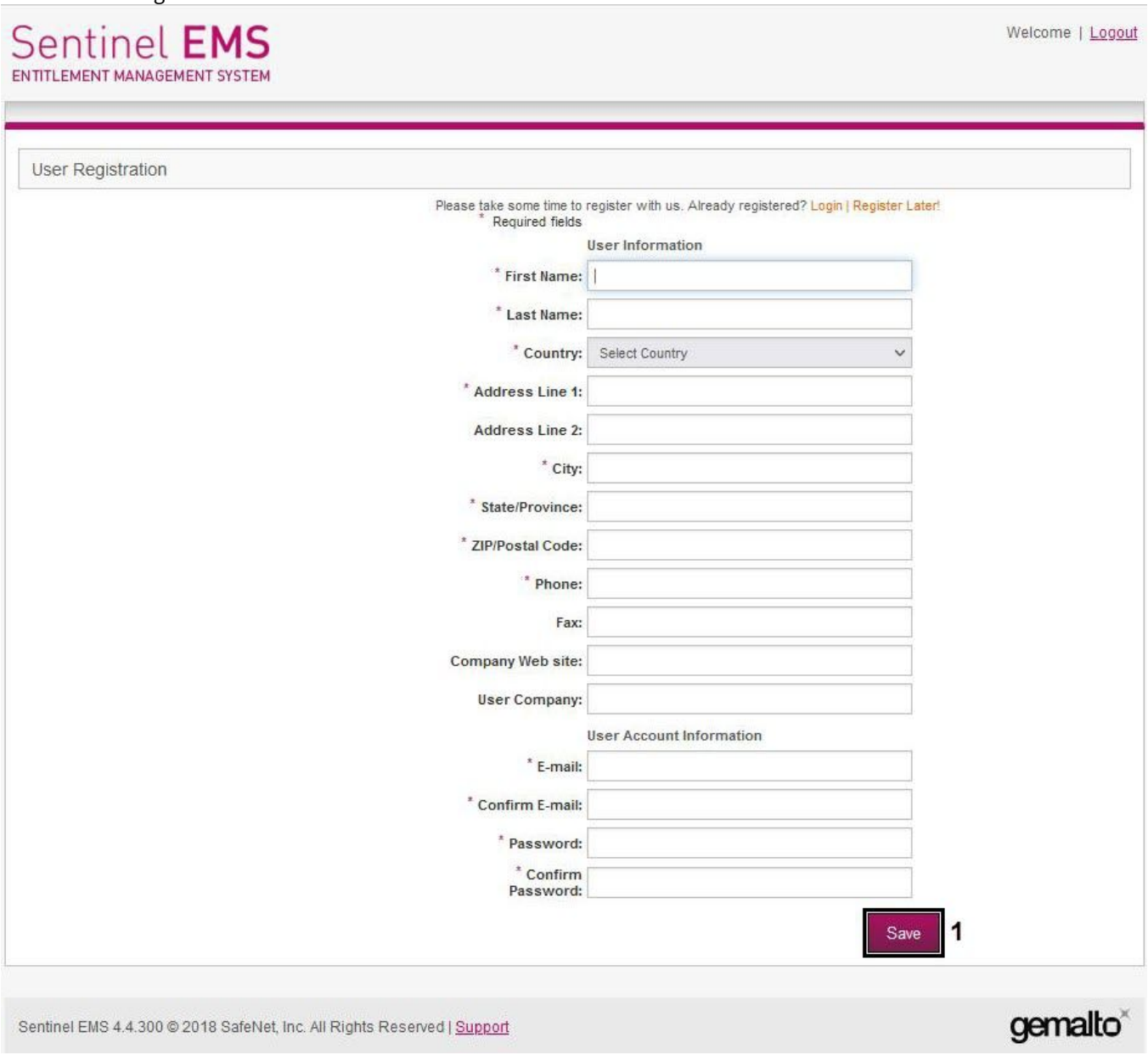
2. Go to the website.

   Attention!

   If you fail to login to the website, please contact technical support.

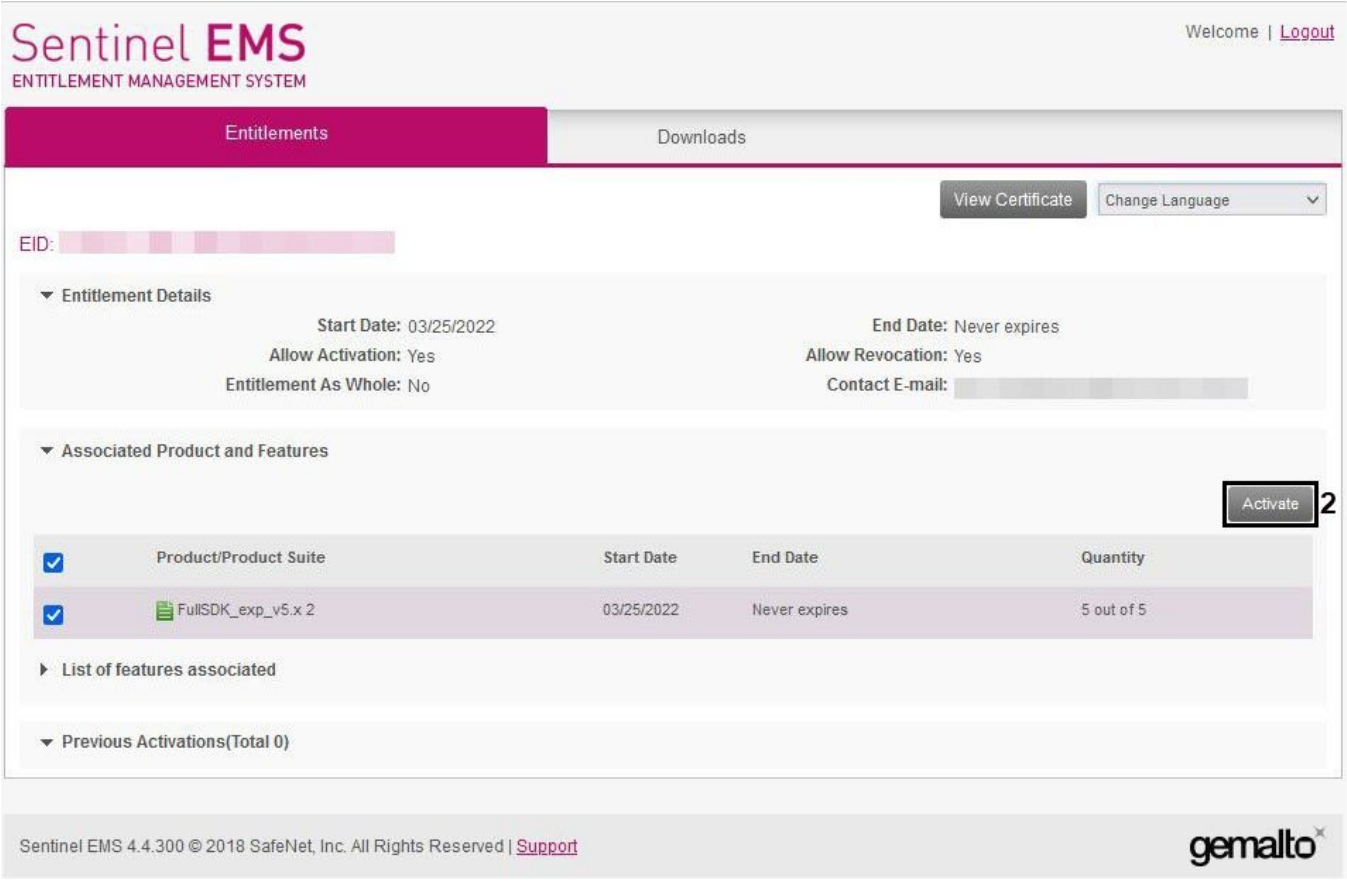
3. Log in using the received EID.

4. Fill in the user registration data.

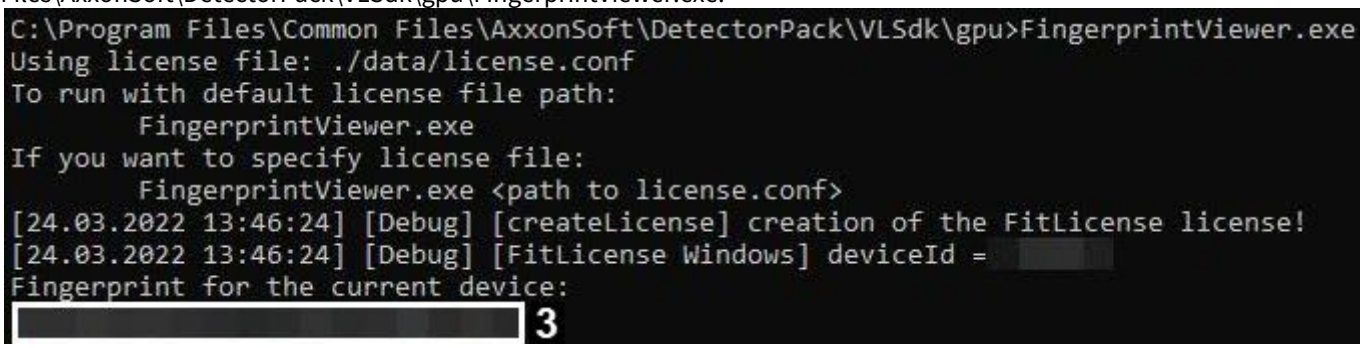


5. Click the **Save** button (**1**).

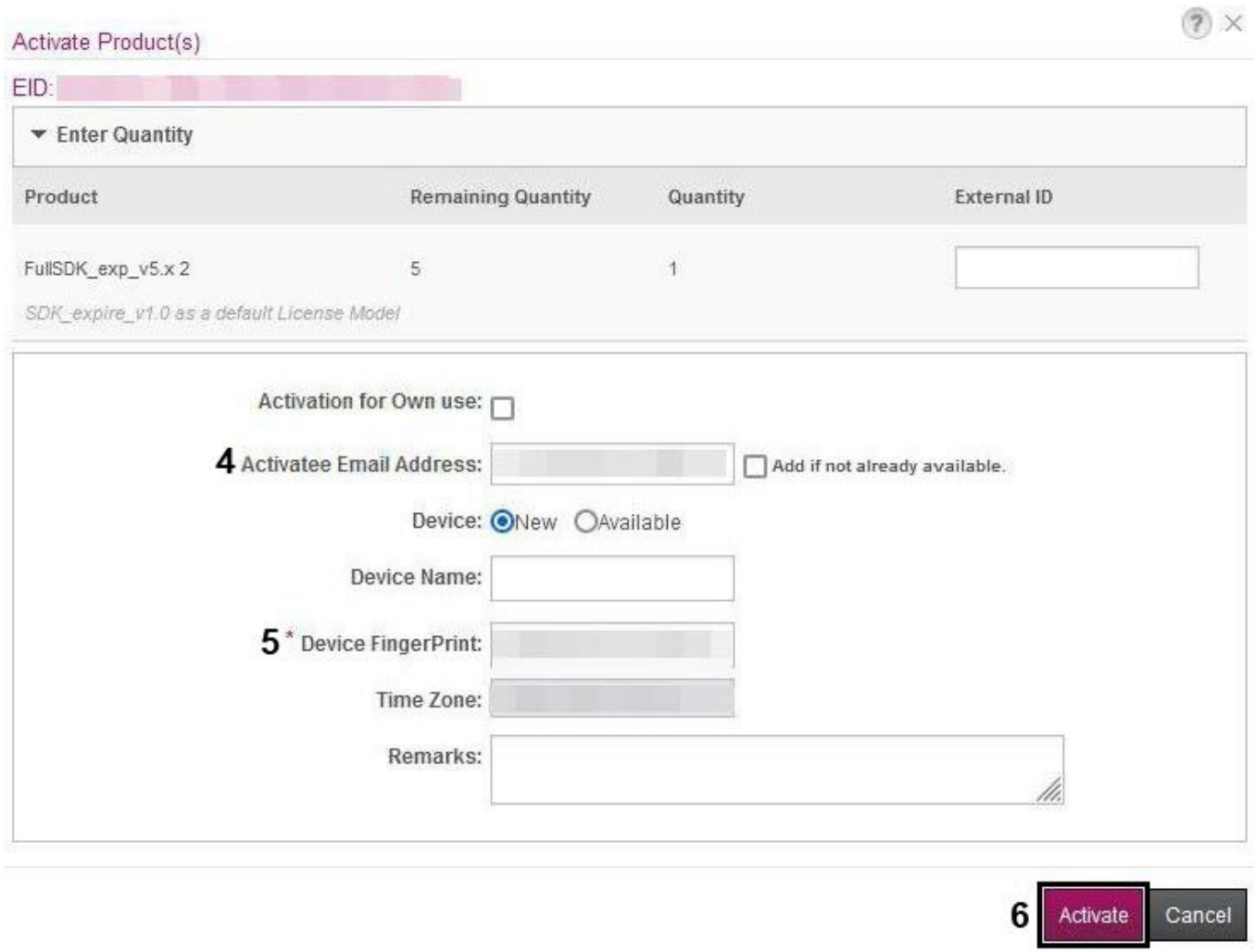
6. Click the **Activate** button (**2**) to activate the license.



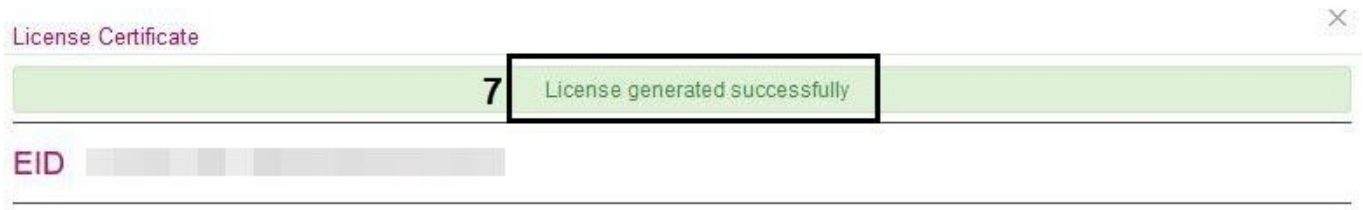
7. On the command line, run the following file as administrator: C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\VLSdk\gpu\FingerprintViewer.exe.



8. To confirm the license activation, specify the Email address (**4**). The licenseFile.v2c file with license data will be sent to the specified Email address.



9. In the **Device FingerPrint** field (**5**) specify the FingerPrint data (**3**).
10. Click the **Activate** button (**6**).
11. Make sure the license is successfully activated (**7**).



12. Open the following file in a text editor: C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\VLSdk\gpu\data\license.conf.
13. Enter the received EID (**8**) and ProductID (**9**).

```
<param name="EID" type="Value::String" text="received EID"/>
<param name="ProductID" type="Value::String" text="received ProductID"/>
```

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<settings>
        <section name="Licensing::Settings">
                <param name="Server" type="Value::String" text="https://visionlabsbv.prod.sentinelcloud.com"/>
                <param name="EID" type="Value::String" text="                                    "/>
                <param name="ProductID" type="Value::String" text="                                    "/>
                <param name="Filename" type="Value::String" text="licenseFile.v2c"/>
                <param name="ContainerMode" type="Value::Int1" x="0"/>
        </section>
</settings>
```

8

9

14. Save the file: C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\VLSdk\gpu\data\license.conf.

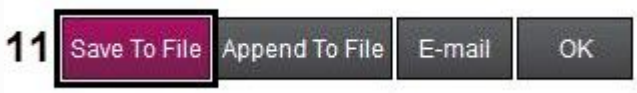
Face Detector (VL) license is activated.

Note

If the Server is connected to the Internet, the license will be checked automatically on the license server.
If the Server does not have an Internet connection, do the following:

1. Perform step 7, and steps 12—14 on the Server where the license will be used.
2. Perform steps 3—6, and steps 8—10 on any PC connected to the Internet.
3. Click the **View License** button (**10**).

4. Download the license file by clicking the **Save To File** button (**11**).



5. Place the downloaded licenseFile.v2c file on the Server to the folder: C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\VLSdk\<licenseFile.v2c>.

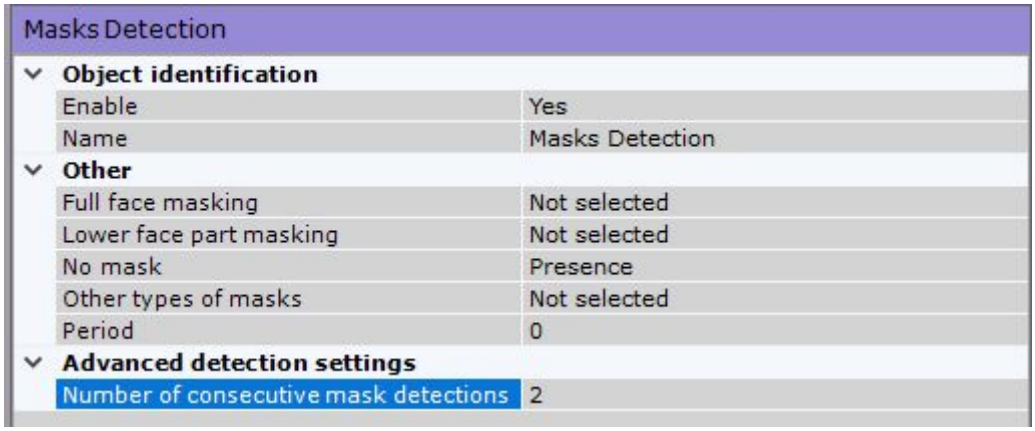
Face Detector (VL) license is activated on the Server with no Internet connection.

7.4.11.5 Configuring additional face detection tools

7.4.11.5.1 Configuring masks detection

To configure the masks detection tool, do the following:

1. Activate the **Face Mask Detection** parameter in facial recognition tool settings (see Configuring Face detection).
2. In the **Number of Consecutive Mask Detections** field, set the minimum number of frames with the mask for triggering the tool.



3. Depending on your particular task, set other parameters' values according to the table.

Triggering event	Parameter Values

	Lower face part masking	No mask	Full face masking
No mask of any kind	Absence	Presence	Absence
No medical mask	Absence	Presence	Presence
No balaclava	Presence	Presence	Absence
Any mask present	Presence	Absence	Presence
Medical mask present	Presence	Absence	Absence
Balaclava present	Absence	Absence	Presence

Note

The **Other Types of Masks** parameter is not supported in this software version.

4. If required, you can set advanced parameters (see Fine-tuning the face detection tool).
5. Click **Apply**.

7.4.11.5.2 Configuring appearance in area and loitering in area detection

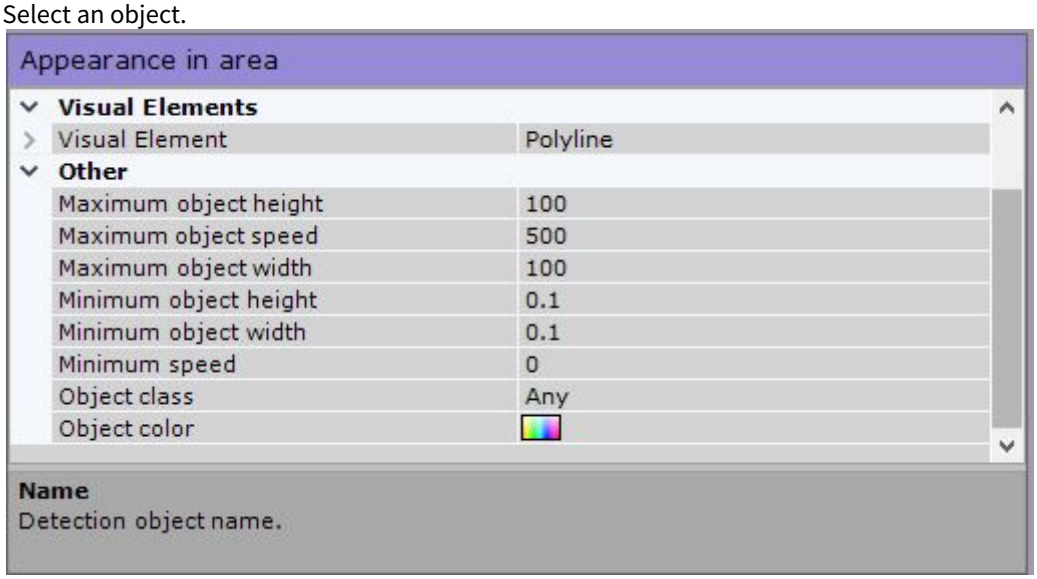
On this page:

- Appearance in area detection
- Loitering in area detection

7.4.11.5.2.1 Appearance in area detection

To configure the detection tool:

1. Select an object.



2. Configure parameters for the captured face (just as with detected objects, see Setting up objects to be detected (target objects)).

Attention!

Select the Object class: **Any** or **Face**.

Note

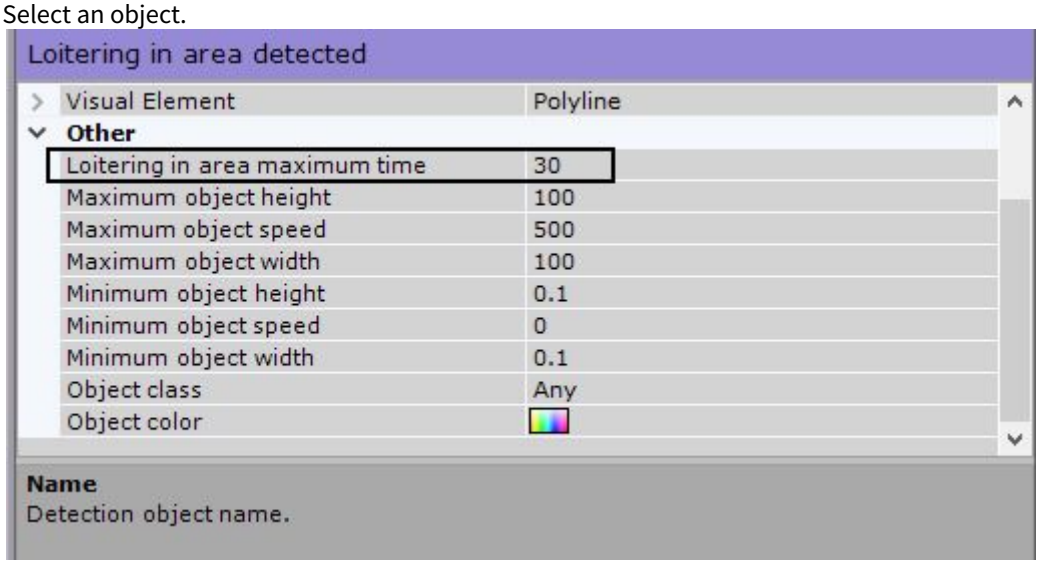
Face color is not detected during Face detection, so there are no color settings.

3. Set an area inside FoV for detection. This is similar to the situation analysis configuration (see Configuring the Detection Zone).
4. Click the **Apply** button.

7.4.11.5.2.2 Loitering in area detection

To configure the detection tool:

1. Select an object.



2. Configure parameters for the captured face (just as with detected objects, see Setting up objects to be detected (target objects)).

Attention!

Select the Object class: **Any** or **Face**.

Note

Face color is not detected during Face detection, so there are no color settings.

3. Set the maximum time an object can stay in the zone. When the maximum time is exceeded, the detection tool is triggered. This value should be in the range [0; 3600].
4. Set an area inside FoV for detection. This is similar to the situation analysis configuration (see Configuring the Detection Zone).
5. Click the **Apply** button.

7.4.11.5.3 Face Detection and Temperature Control with Mobotix M16 TR cameras

7.4.11.5.3.1 Functional parameters of the Face Detection and Temperature Control

When working with Mobotix M16 TR cameras, the standard face detection algorithm (see Functions of face detection tools) is used along with an additional option of temperature measurement.

For each recognized face, the following is performed:

1. Temperature measurement.
2. Display the measurement result next to the face bounding box.
3. Recording the temperature value into the system log along with the face recognition event (see The System Log).

You can as well set the system to launch a macro if temperature readings exceed the maximum permitted value (see Specific parameters for triggering a face recognition macro).

7.4.11.5.3.2 Camera requirements for face detection and temperature control

Face detection with temperature control works properly if cameras are installed and set up as follows:

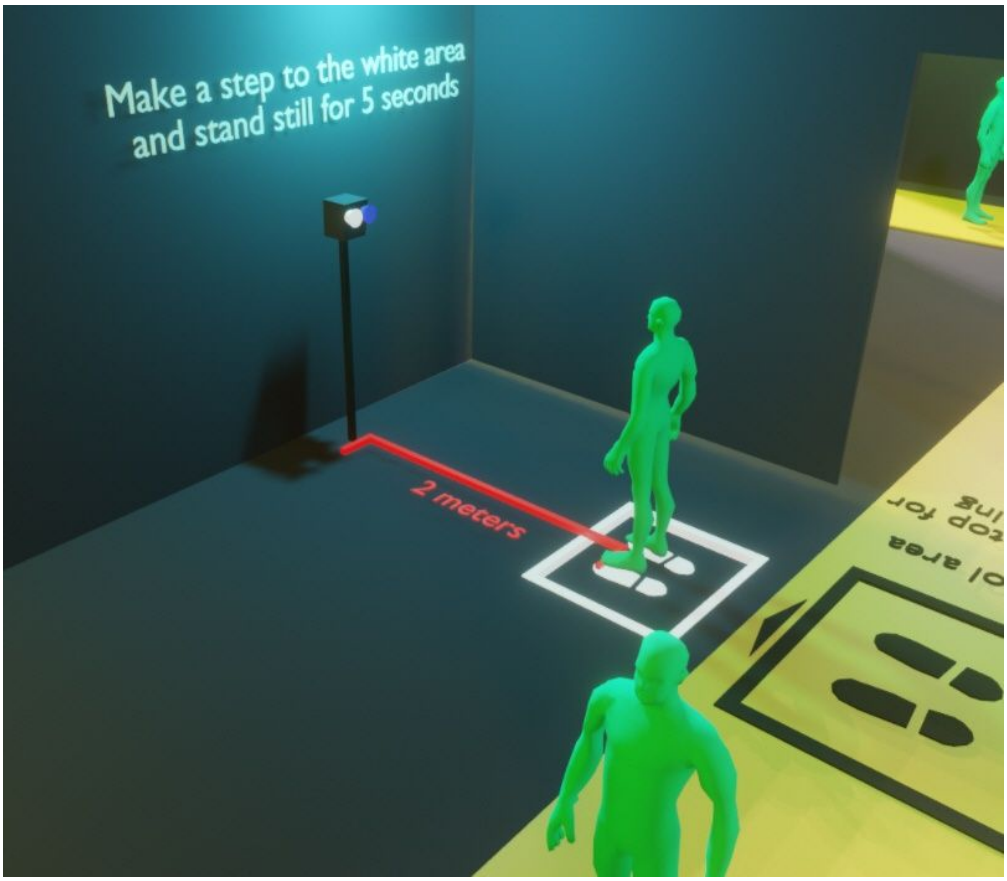
1. At least 8 frames per second
2. Minimum resolution is at least 1280 x 960 pixels.
3. Indoor installation only.
4. To establish maximum measurement accuracy, avoid installing cameras near exits to street, in direct sunlight, and close to HVAC outlets.
5. Keep the distance from camera to the subject of measurement within the range of 1–2 meters.
6. For best accuracy, install the Electromagnetic Radiation Absorber (BB) at the same distance from camera as the subjects of measurement.
7. The maximum angle of incidence should not exceed +/- 15 ° off the ground level.
8. Distance between pupils on the received photos of face must be not less than 32 pixels.
9. There should be minimum mutual overshadowing of the captured faces.
10. The faces should be evenly illuminated with a diffused light of at least 200 lux. Directional side lighting is not allowed.
11. The sharpness of the captured faces on the received photos must be over 64 grayscale. Deficient or exceeding illumination is not allowed.
12. There should be no back light and sharp gradients of light and shade.
13. The photos of the captured faces received from video cameras should be clear. Image blurring caused by motion is not allowed.

> **Note**
>
> The required distance between the camera and the face can be set using a lens with required focal length.

7.4.11.5.3.3 Temperature screening protocol

For maximum measurement accuracy, please make sure that:

1. Subjects of measurement must have their body temperature normalized. To do this, please avoid their exposure to direct sunlight, incoming air flow from street or HVAC, and exclude any other factors that may cause momentary changes in body temperature.
2. The measurement area may contain only one individual.
3. No headgear, medical mask or glasses may be worn in the area.
4. The subject should dwell in the control area no less than 3 seconds, standing/sitting still, facing the camera.

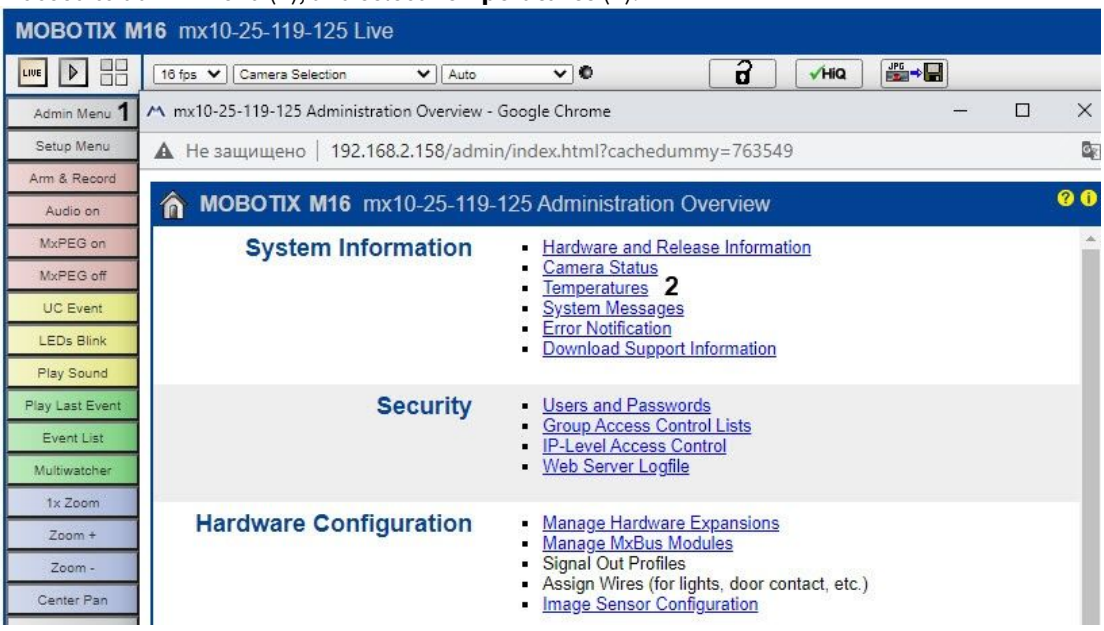


7.4.11.5.3.4 Pre-configuration of the Mobotix M16 TR camera

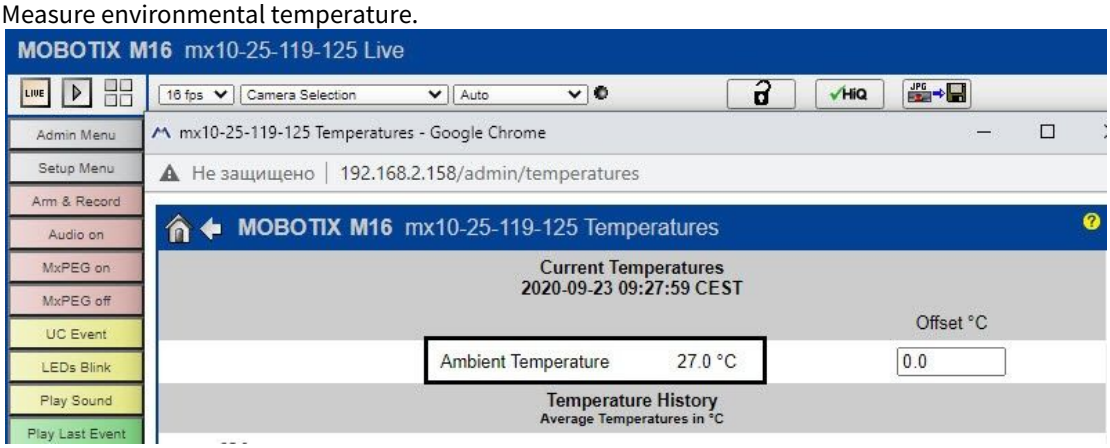
> **Attention!**
>
> Install MX-V5.2.6.7 (2020-06-16) or later firmware.
> For detailed configuration via the web interface, refer to manufacturer's instructions.

Before starting Axxon Next, please configure the camera via the web interface:

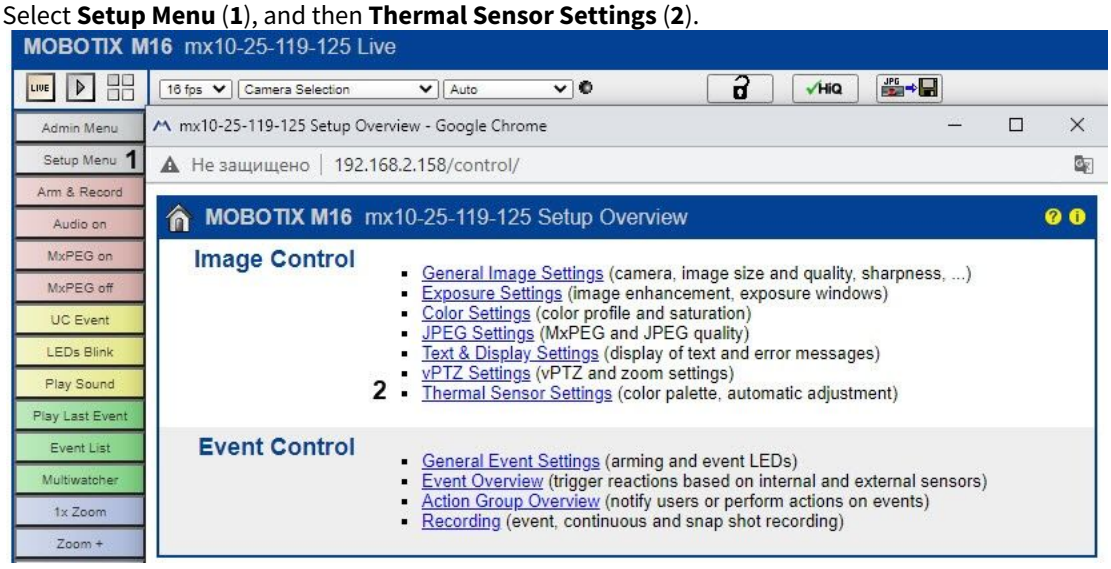
1. Proceed to admin menu (**1**), and select **Temperatures** (**2**).



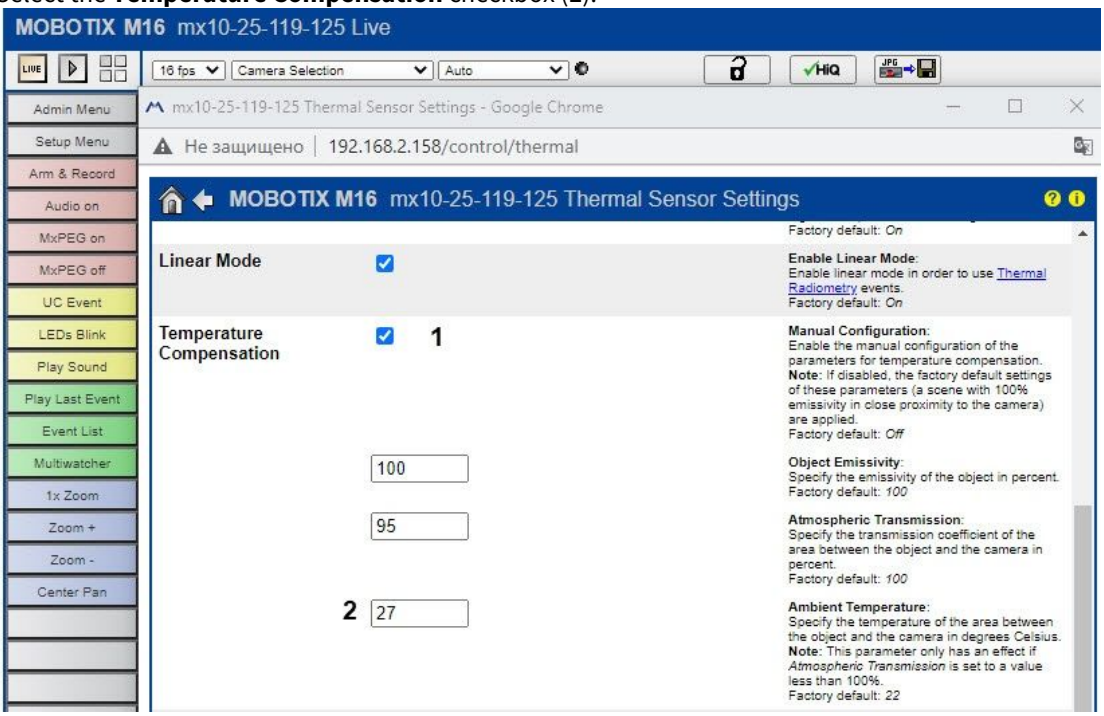
2. Measure environmental temperature.



3. Select **Setup Menu** (**1**), and then **Thermal Sensor Settings** (**2**).

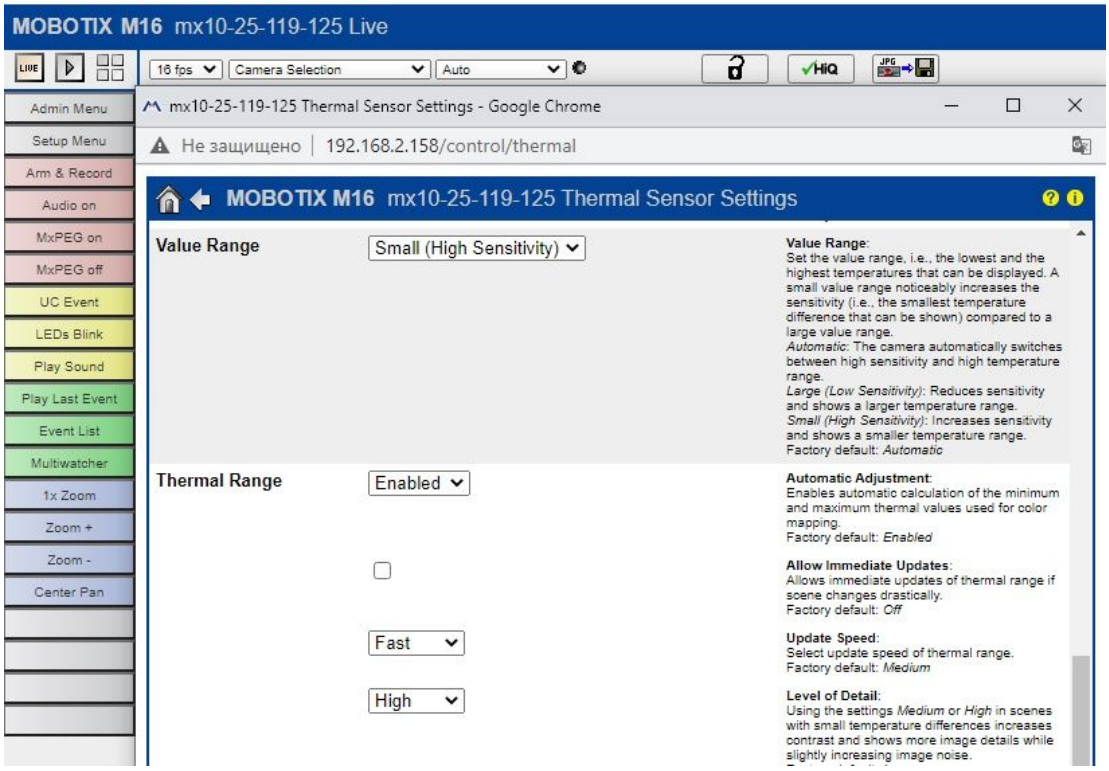


4. Select the **Temperature Compensation** checkbox (**1**).



5. Enter the environmental temperature value (**2**, see point 2).

6. Specify the **Value Range** и **Thermal Range** parameters as shown on the screenshot.



7. To caption video with temperature readings, select **Display Mode (Right)** (**1**), and then **Picture in Picture** (**2**) checkboxes.

8. Save the settings.

7.4.11.5.3.5 Configuring Face Detection and Temperature Control

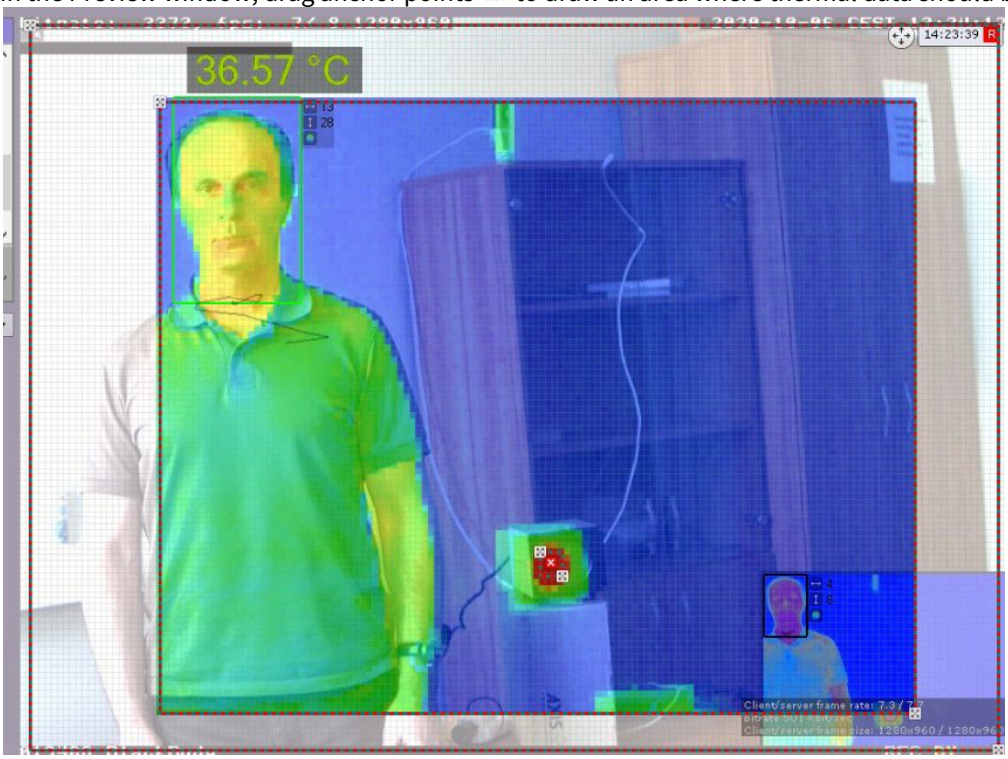
To configure face detection and temperature control, do the following:

1. Add a **Temperature Matrix Data** object in the **Embedded Detection** group**.**
2. Under the newly added object, create a **Face Detection and Temperature Control**.

3. Select temperature unit (**1**).

Face detection andtemperature control	
Frame size change	1920
Maximum face height	100
Maximum face width	100
Minimum face height	2
Minimum face width	2
Minimum threshold of face authenticity	90
Mode	CPU
Period offace search	250
Send face images	No
2 Show thermal overlay	No
1 Temperature unit	Degree Celsius (°C)
Track loss time	500

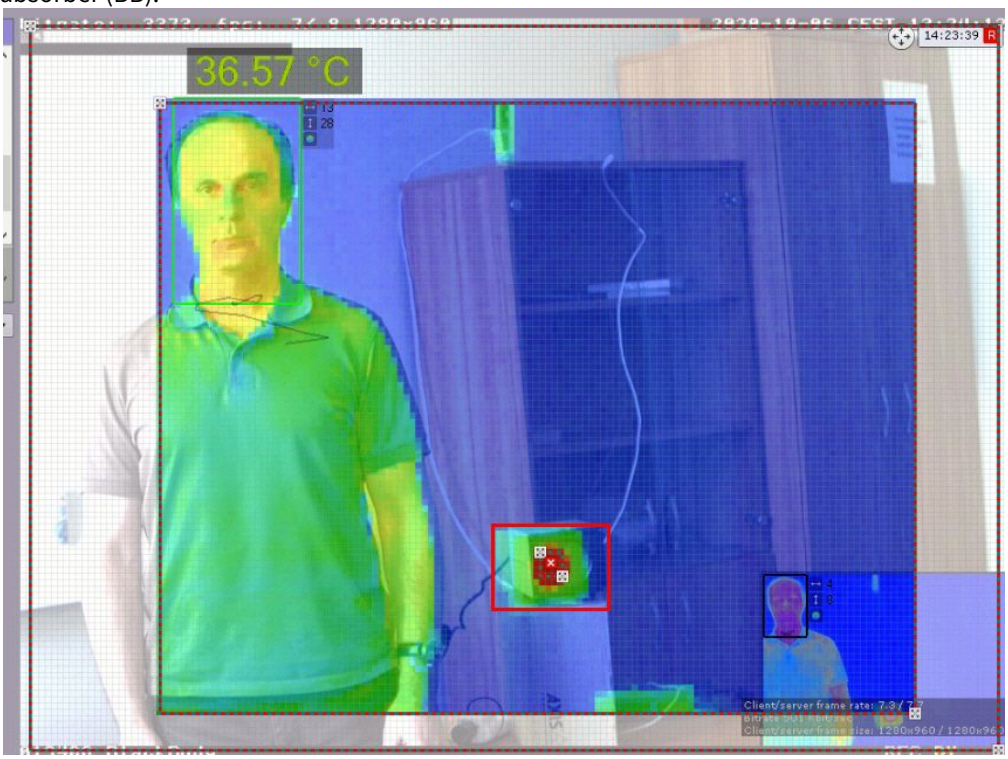
4. To caption video with thermal data, do the following:
   a. Select **Yes** for the **Show Thermal Overlay** parameter (**2**).
   b. In the Preview window, drag anchor points to draw an area where thermal data should be displayed.



5. If you use an Electromagnetic Radiation Absorber (BB), do the following:
   a. Specify its temperature (**3**). If temperature readings in this point are different, the bias will be used to re-calculate readings across all measurement points.

Advanced detection settings	
3 Electromagnetic radiation absorber (BB) temperature	37.5
Face detection algorithm	ALG1
Maximum face deflection rate	15
Minimum face recognition quality	50
Minimum filtering threshold	50
4 Temperature value offset	0

b. In the Preview window, double click to add anchor points at the position of the electromagnetic radiation absorber (BB).



6. If you have discovered that your readings differ from actual temperature values, add the offset value into the **Temperature Value Offset** field (**4**). Bias values may be positive or negative.

> **Note**
>
> The rest of this detection tool parameters are identical to those of the basic face detection tool (see Configuring Face detection).

7. Click the **Apply** button.

You have configured detection tool now.

7.4.11.6 Configuring real-time facial recognition

In the Axxon Next VMS, you can create Lists of Facial Templates and configure automatic system reactions upon any of the following events:

1. recognition of any face from the selected List of Facial Templates;
2. recognition of a specific face from the selected List of Facial Templates;
3. if the target face does not show up in the selected List of Facial Templates;
4. if the target face does not show up in all available lists;
5. recognition of any face from any List of Facial Templates.

To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Activate the **Real-time Recognition** parameter for the required detection tools (see Configuring Face detection).
2. Create one or more Lists of Facial Templates. Add reference images of persons of interest to the lists (see Lists of facial templates).
3. Configure automatic responses to positive identification against the list (see Configuring macros when working with lists of Facial Templates).

7.4.11.6.1 Configuring macros when working with lists of Facial Templates

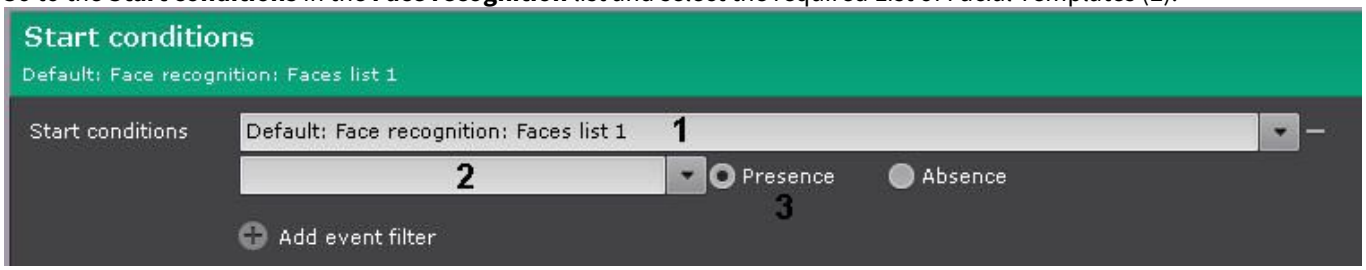
When you are working with Lists of Facial Templates, you can configure the macros to trigger on the following events:

1. if the target face shows up in the selected list;
2. if the target face does not show up in the selected List of Facial Templates;
3. recognition of a specific face from the selected List of Facial Templates;
4. if the target face does not show up in all available lists;
5. recognition of any face from any List of Facial Templates.

7.4.11.6.1.1 Target face shows up in the selected List of Facial Templates

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** in the **Face recognition** list and select the required List of Facial Templates (**1**).

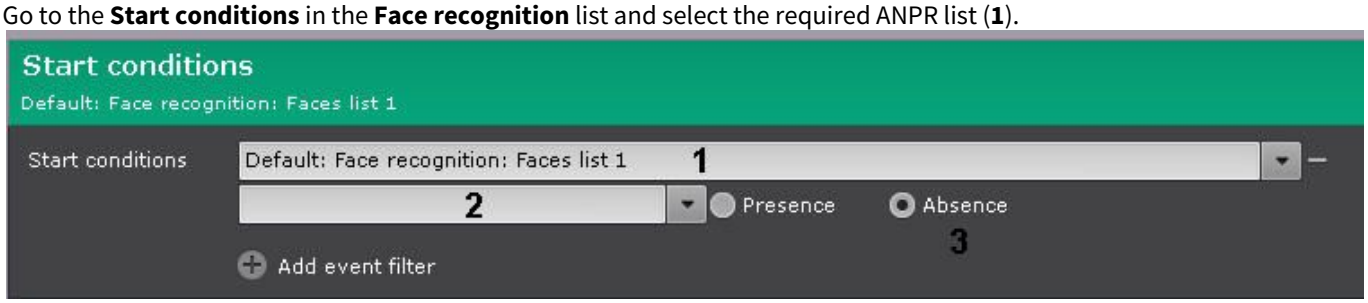


2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Presence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.11.6.1.2 The target face does not show up in the selected List of Facial Templates

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** in the **Face recognition** list and select the required ANPR list (**1**).

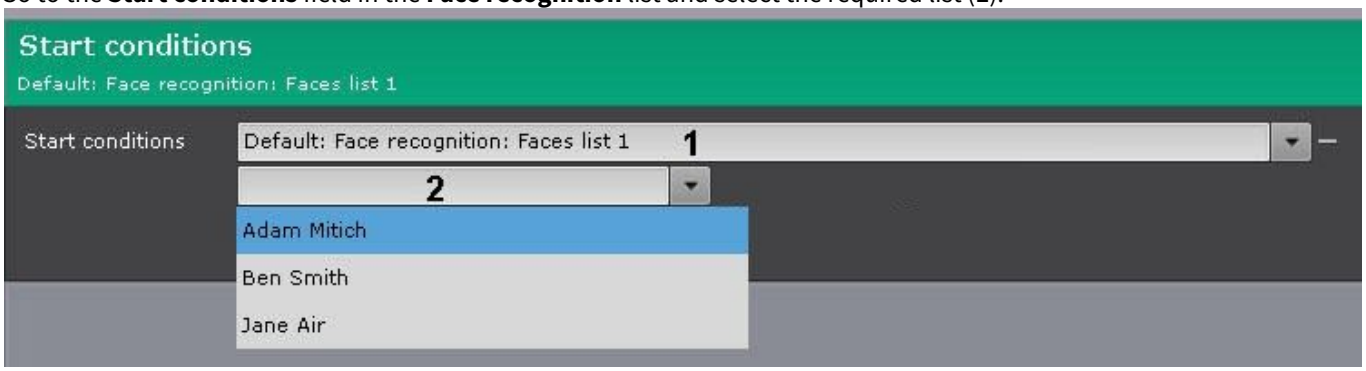


2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Absence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.11.6.1.3 Recognition of a specific face from the selected List of Facial Templates

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** field in the **Face recognition** list and select the required list (**1**).



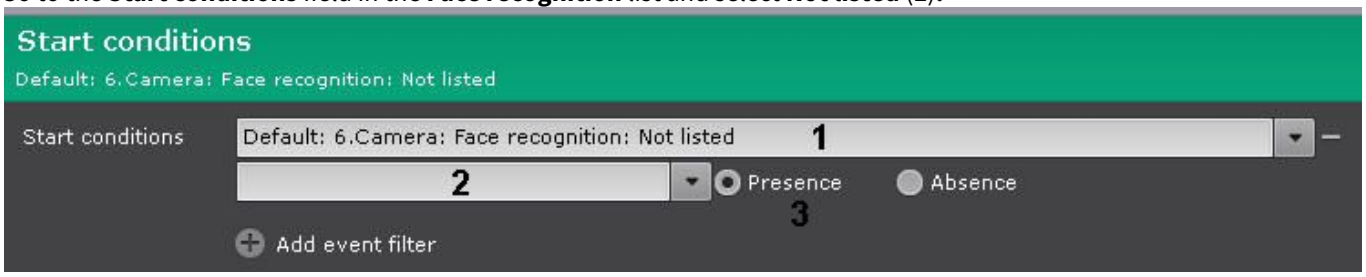
2. Select a specific face in field **2**.

> **Note**
>
> To select another person, clear the **2** field and re-open the list.

7.4.11.6.1.4 The target number does not show up in all available Lists of Facial Templates

7.4.11.6.1.5 In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** field in the **Face recognition** list and select **Not listed** (**1**)**.**

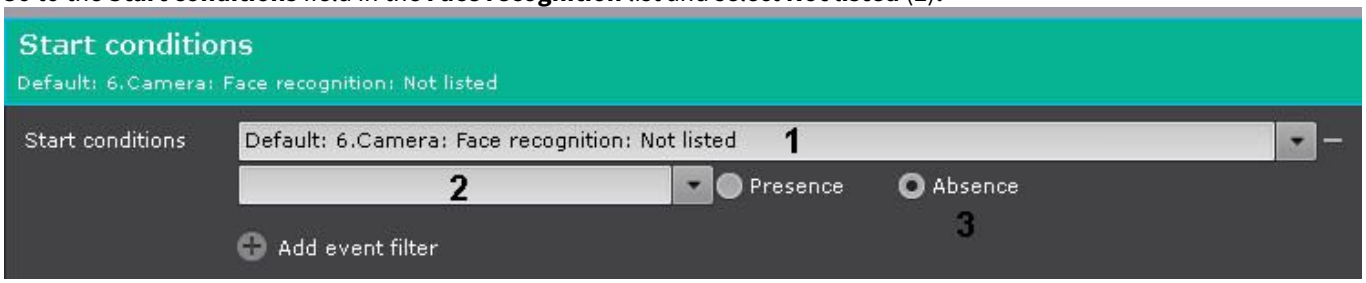


2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Presence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.11.6.1.6 Recognition of any number from any List of Facial Templates

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** field in the **Face recognition** list and select **Not listed** (**1**)**.**



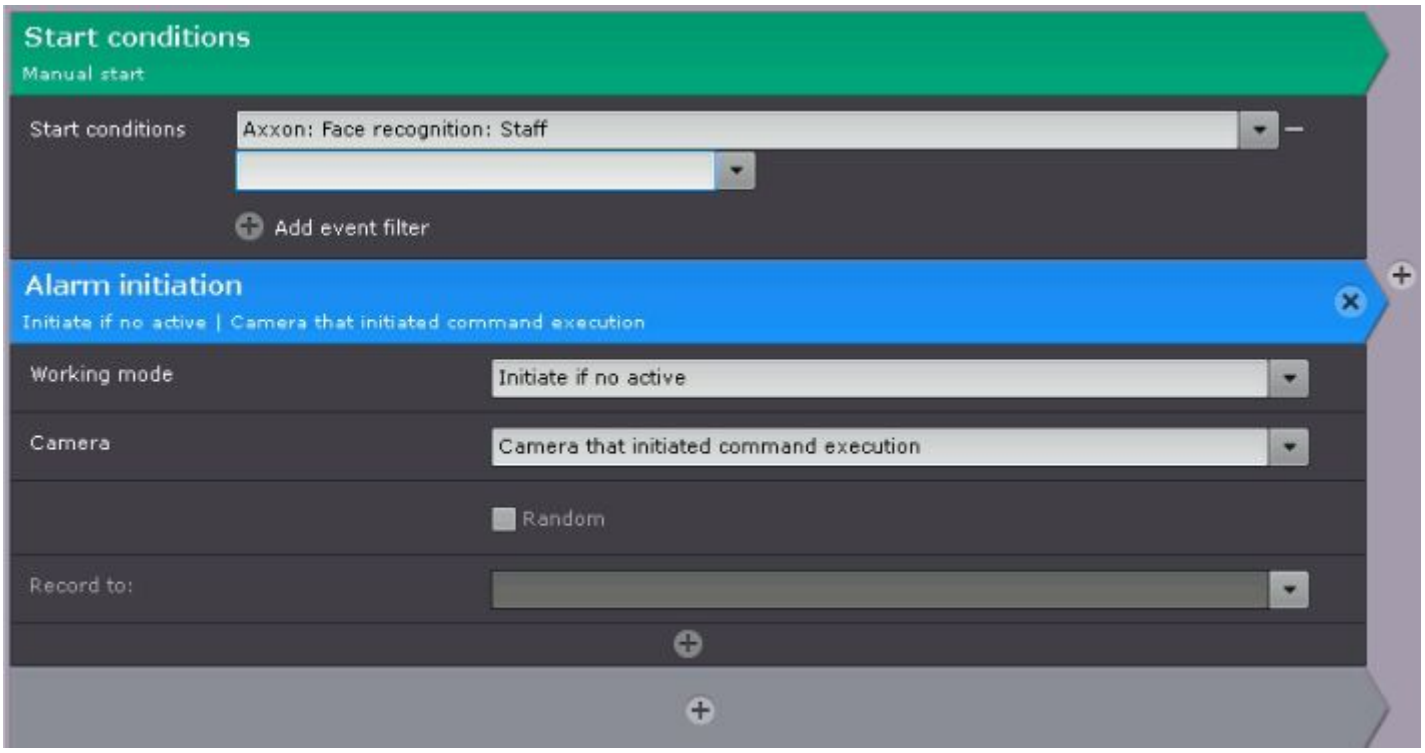
2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Absence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.11.6.1.7 Examples of macros used for working with face lists

On this page:

- Alarm initiation
- Response to a recognition of a non-listed person
- Sending an e-mail
- Starting export

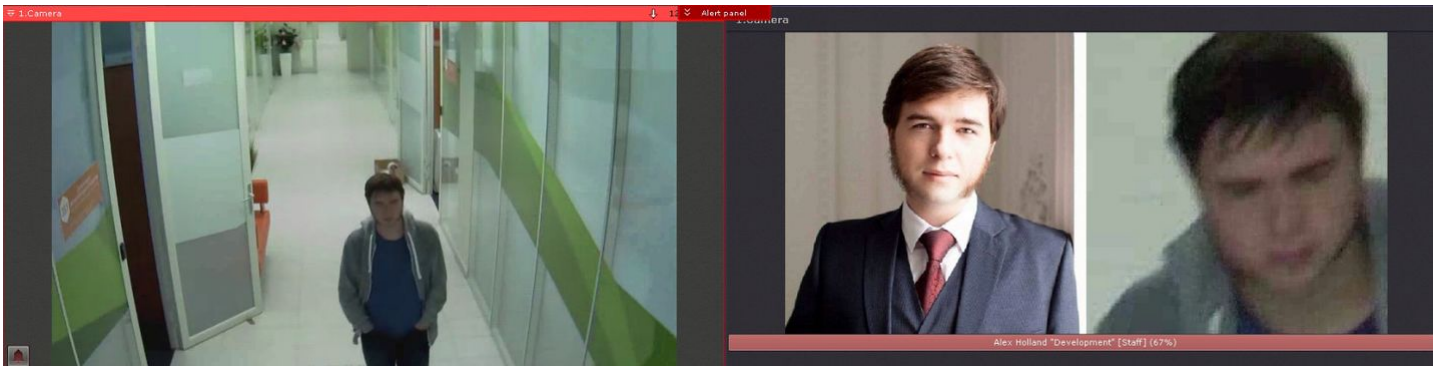
Alarm initiation



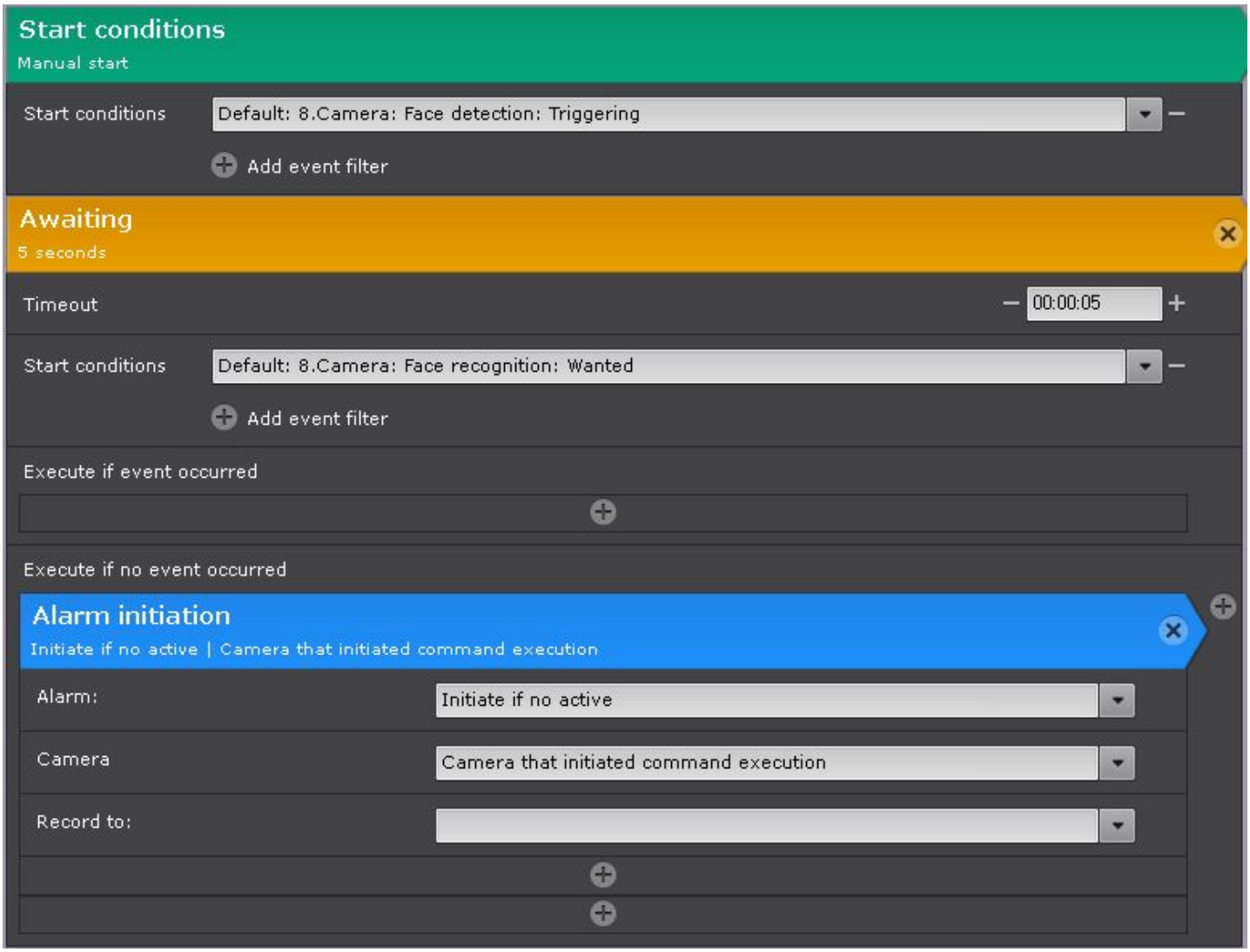
This macro can be used together with the Dialog Board (see Configure the Dialog Board).

If the Dialog Board is configured to display an alarm and linked with a video camera (see Linking cells), then when a face from the list is recognized, the following information will be displayed on the Dialog Board:

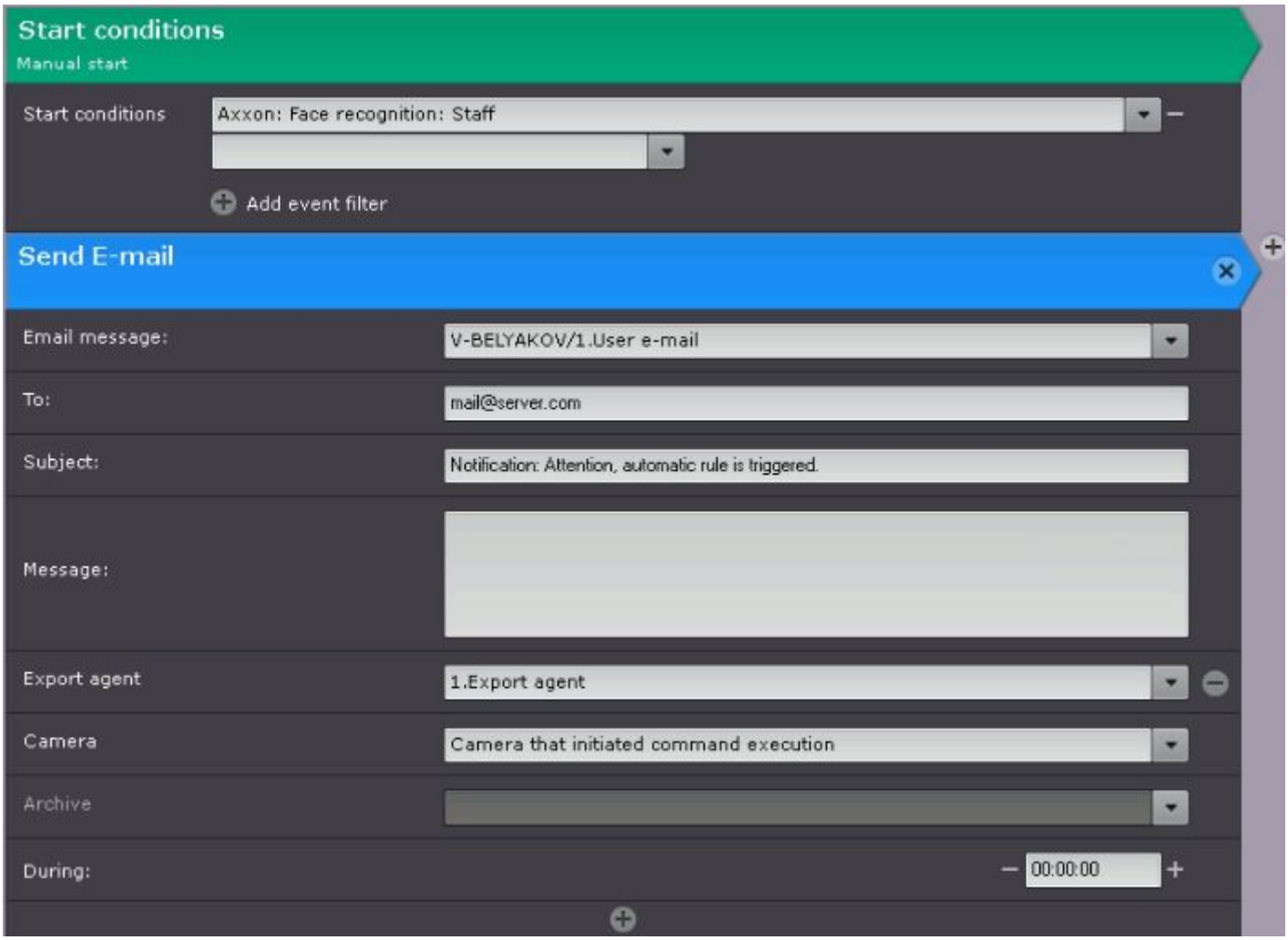
1. Reference photo from the face list.
2. An enlarged image of the recognized face in the frame.
3. The name of the recognized person, the comment in quotation marks, the name of the face list in square brackets, and the percentage of similarity with the reference face in parentheses (see Lists of facial templates).



Response to a recognition of a non-listed person



Sending an e-mail

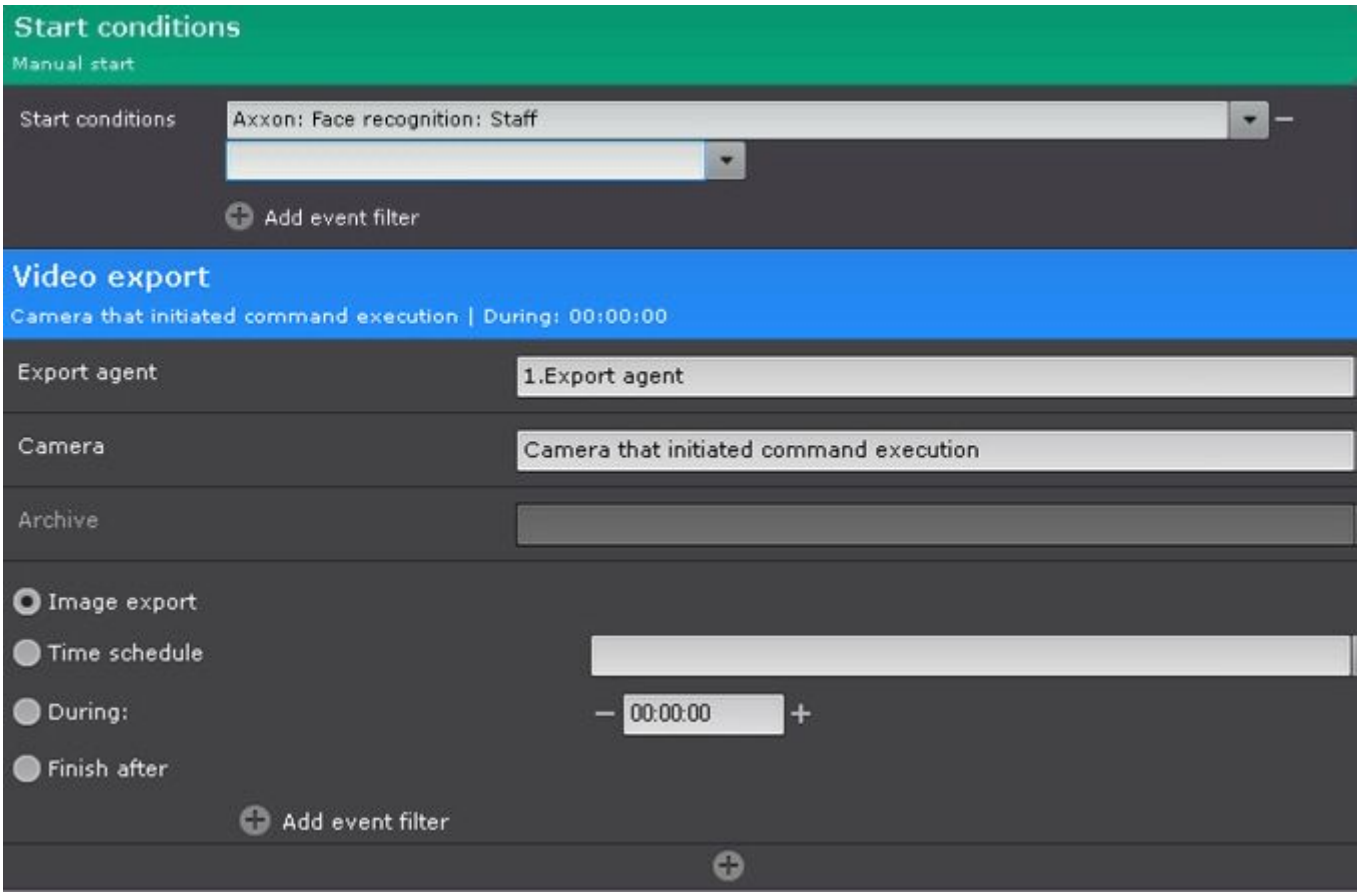


If the e-mail is sent via the SMTP server (see Configuring the E-mail Object), then 3 files will be attached to the message:

- full frame at the moment of face recognition;
- reference photo from the face list;
- an enlarged image of the recognized face in the frame.

Starting export

As with the e-mail notifications, three files will be exported when you export an image for a facial recognition event i.e. when a match from Lists of Facial Templates is detected:



- Full frame at the moment of facial recognition;
- Reference photo from the List of Facial Templates.
- Close up shot of the target face captured in the scene.

7.4.11.6.2 Configuring FaceCube integration

Axxon Next supports the FaceCube facial recognition server (see https://www.bio-cube.co.kr/vs-face).

Please see the FaceCube integration workflows below:

1. Axxon Next captures and recognizes a face, then passes the facial image to the FaceCube facial recognition server.
2. FaceCube checks the facial image against the DB.
3. If a match is found, the *Axxon Next* VMS receives the results (see Facial recognition and search).

To configure FaceCube workflows, do as follows:

1. Configure the FaceCube facial recognition server and add Reference faces (see https://www.bio-cube.co.kr/).
2. Create a face list in Axxon Next and enter the address of the FaceCube facial recognition server into the **List Settings** field (see Lists of facial templates).

	Delete	Face lists	%	List settings
	×	Wanted	80	http://127.0.0.1:10111/FaceCubePlus
*				

3. Activate the **Real-time recognition on external Service** parameter and **Send face image** in the facial recognition settings (see Configuring Face detection).
4. Configure automatic responses to positive identification against the list (see Configuring macros when working with lists of Facial Templates).

7.4.12 Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools

7.4.12.1 License plate recognition (VT)

7.4.12.1.1 License plate recognition (VT) features and specifications

License plate recognition (VT) (Automatic Number Plate Recognition Tool) is designed to implement the following functions:

1. Vehicle license plate recognition. The full list of supported countries:

Proven installations	Done
LPR VT is already used in multiple deployments to recognize the license numbers of the countries, listed below	LPR VT is comprehensively tested in recognition of license plates of countries listed below. The results quality obtained in test environment is satisfiable. Still, LPR VT is not used in real-world installations in those countries yet
• Albania • Argentina • Azerbaijan • Belarus • Brazil • Colombia • Czech Republic • Georgia • Israel • Kazakhstan • Mexico • Moldova • Mongolia • Poland • Russia • Spain • Ukraine • United Kingdom • Uzbekistan • Bulgaria • Chile • Austria • Belgium • France • Guatemala • Hungary • Latvia • Lithuania • Netherlands • Paraguay • Taiwan • Uruguay • Iran • Jordan	• Armenia • Bolivia • Bosnia and Herzegovina • Denmark • Ecuador • El Salvador • Finland • Greece • Italy • Malta • Montenegro • Norway • Peru • Portugal • Philippines • Romania • Slovakia • Slovenia • Sweden • Tajikistan • Canada • Estonia • Germany • Honduras • India • Kyrgyzstan • Nicaragua • Panama • Serbia • Korea Republic • Switzerland • Turkmenistan • Croatia • Malaysia • New Zealand • Singapore • Turkey • Bahrain • Luxembourg • South Africa • Vietnam

Proven installations	Done
	• Andorra • Kenya • Australia

2. Write a recognized number to a database;
3. Check the recognized license plates of vehicles on the lists of license plates.

License plate recognition (VT) works in one of the following modes:

1. Fast − It processes video feeds up to 25 fps with a maximum vehicle speed of 180 km/h.
2. Slow − It processes video feeds up to 6 fps with a maximum vehicle speed of 20 km/h.

Note

Install the additional Addon VT LPR to work with License plate recognition (VT).

7.4.12.1.2 Camera requirements for License plate recognition (VT)

ANPR works properly if the following camera installation requirements are met (for a list of supported countries see License plate recognition (VT) features and specifications):

- a camera should be installed in a horizontal position;
- character height is at least 15px, stroke width is at least 2px;
- minimum allowable contrast for uniformly contaminated license plates should be at least 10% (contrasting visibility of characters relative to the background is 25 on a 256-point scale);
- maximum allowable non-uniform contamination is no more than 12% (the ratio of the contaminated area to the total area of the license plate);
- the geometric proportions of the image shall not deviate by more than 10% from the real geometric proportions of the license plate.

Note

If you transmit MPEG-4 or H.264 streams over a stable connection, please set GOP length (Group of Pictures), i.e. the number of P- and B-frames between I-frames, to no more than 4–8 frames.

Attention!

the maximum speed of the vehicle shall not exceed 180 km/h.

For stable ANPR operation, make sure that the image of the license plate is not:

- unequally lit;

- overexposed;

- blurred;

- distorted;

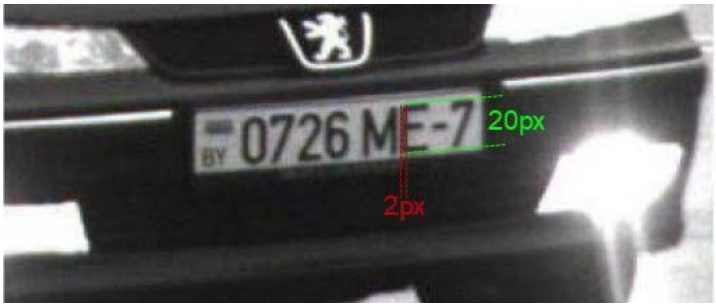
- interlaced;

- dirty.

Attention!

Otherwise, recognition accuracy might be compromised.

Some example number plate images that should be recognized fully and properly:



7.4.12.1.3 Configuring License plate recognition (VT)

ANPR is a detection tool that reads license / number plates of vehicles in FoV.

Attention!

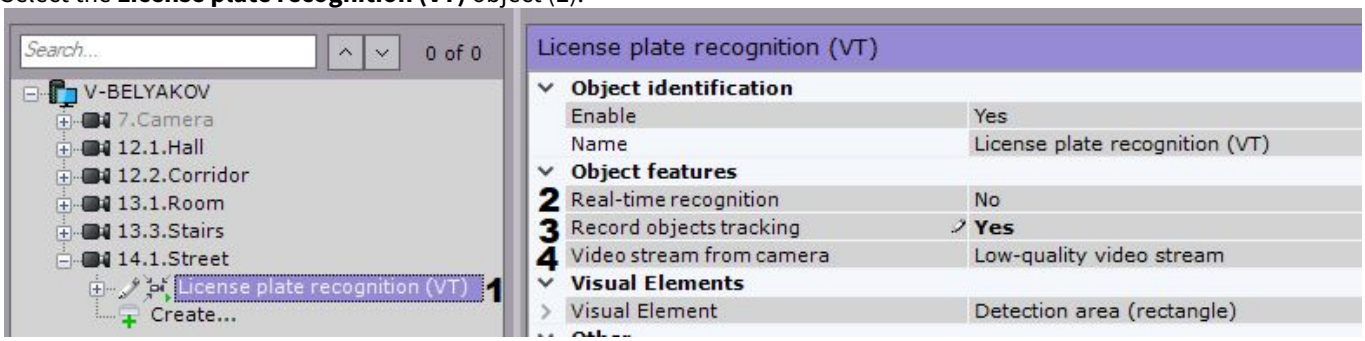
The license plate recognition requires a CPU that supports the SSE4.1 / SSE4.2 instructions.

Attention!

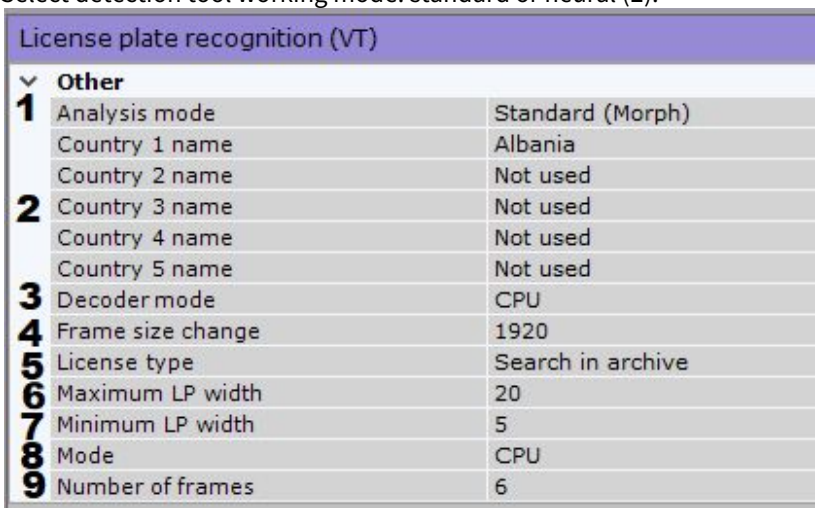
Axxon Next ANPR / LPR is not compatible with *Auto Intellect*.
Uninstall the *Axxon Next* VMS and Auto Intellect, then reinstall *Axxon Next*.

To configure ANPR, do as follows:

1. Select the **License plate recognition (VT)** object (**1**).



2. If you require using this detection tool for real-time number plate recognition (see Configuring real-time vehicle license plate recognition), set the corresponding parameter to **Yes** (**2**).
3. If you need to enable recording of metadata, select **Yes** from the **Record Objects tracking** list (**3**).
4. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed. Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server (**4**).
5. Select detection tool working mode: standard or neural (**1**).



6. In the appropriate fields, select one or more countries for ANPR (**2**).

> **Important**
>
> The more countries you select, the slower the recognition and the greater the likelihood of the recognition error.

7. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
8. Analyzed framed are scaled down to a specified resolution (**4**, 1920 pixels on the longer side). This is how it works:
   a. If the longer side of the source image exceeds the value specified in the **Frame size change** field, it is divided by two.
   b. If the resulting resolution falls below the specified value, it is used further.
   c. If the resulting resolution still exceeds the specified limit, it is divided by two, etc.

> **Note**
>
> For example, the source image resolution is 2048 * 1536, and the limit is set to **1000**.
> In this case, the source resolution will be divided two times (down to 512 * 384): after the first division, the number of pixels on the longer side exceeds the limit (1024 > 1000).

9. Select the current license type (**5**).

License	Description
Search in archive	Basic ANPR Search License. **Attention! This type of license provides a 30-sec delay between the number recognition and the corresponding event.** (see Vehicle number plate recognition and search).
25 FPS or 6 FPS	The 25 FPS license has a priority. The 6 FPS license is used only if you have no 25 FPS license. You cannot use the number plate recognition function if you have no FPS licenses purchased.
25 FPS	The "Fast" license allows you to process video feeds up to 25 fps with a maximum vehicle speed of 150 km/h. You have to obtain an appropriate license to make ANPR work.
6 FPS	The "Slow" license allows you to process video feeds up to 6 fps with a maximum vehicle speed of 20 km/h. You have to obtain an appropriate license to make ANPR work.

Important

All license types except the standard one (Search in archive) require the hardware key or the software key activation (see Activating a software license key for the ANPR).
You can use a 60-day trial key (see Activating the trial version of the ANPR via a software key).

Important

On a virtual machine, you may use only a hardware key. To use a hardware key, select the 25 FPS or 6 FPS license type.

10. Set the maximum and minimum width of the vehicle number plate as a percentage of the FoV width (**6**, **7**).

Important

The **Minimum LP width** parameter affects the CPU load as follows: the higher the parameter is, the higher the load.

11. Choose a processor to run detection on (**8**, see Hardware requirements for Licence plate recognition (VT), General Information on Configuring Detection). In standard mode, detection runs on the CPU only. In neural network analysis mode, the algorithm runs on the NVIDIA GPU.
12. Set the number of frames required for LPR / ANPR (**9**). This is though a necessary condition, but not sufficient for the first output. This condition delays LPR output. This parameter allows to increase the reliability of the results, as well as to hide false positives.
13. If necessary, configure advanced detection settings (see Fine-tuning the VT number plate detection tool).
14. You can configure an ANPR zone in FoV. The zone is resized by moving the anchor points.

Note

For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

Note

Detection zone is displayed by default. You can click the button to hide the zone. To undo, click this button again.

15. Click the **Apply** button.

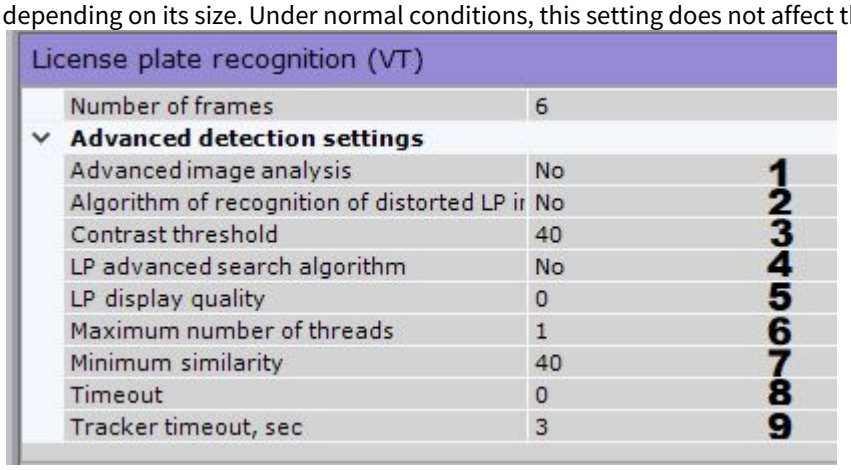
Configuration of ANPR is now complete.

7.4.12.1.4 Fine-tuning the VT number plate detection tool

> **Attention!**
>
> To fine tune this detection tool, you will require assistance from AxxonSoft tech support.

To fine-tune the detection tool, do as follows:

1. If necessary, enable advanced image analysis (**1**).
   Yes – improves the quality of recognition under adverse conditions (for example, if the characteristics / settings of the camera do not fully meet the requirements, or in bad weather). The processing time of the frame increases by 20-30%, depending on its size. Under normal conditions, this setting does not affect the quality of recognition.



2. To recognize the numbers at sharp angles with respect to the camera, select **Yes** in the **Algorithm of recognition of distorted LP image** field (**2**).
3. Set the image contrast threshold (**3**). The default value is **40**. On a high-quality image, increase this value to 50-60. If the image has poor contrast, lower this value.
4. If you expect different sizes of number plates within FOV, activate the **LP advanced search algorithm** (**4**). This parameter accounts for max and min width of number plates, and, in some cases, may help increasing recognition quality and optimizing CPU load.
5. To set up a number plate recognition event:
   a. Specify the minimum percentage of similarity between the recognition result and the corresponding number plate template, for positive LPR result (**7**). Use this parameter to filter the results by reliability.
   b. By default, a number plate recognition event is registered after a track containing a number plate disappears from FOV. You can set the moment of registration to a **Timeout** in seconds (**8**), or to reaching a similarity percentage specified in the **LP display quality** field (**5**). If both parameters are set to non-zero, the recognition event will be registered upon matching the first condition.

   > **Note**
   >
   > The **LP display quality** parameter value must be no lower than the **Minimum similarity** value.

6. Specify the maximum number of recognition threads (**6**). If the value is **0,** the recognition process will occur in the same thread that starts it.

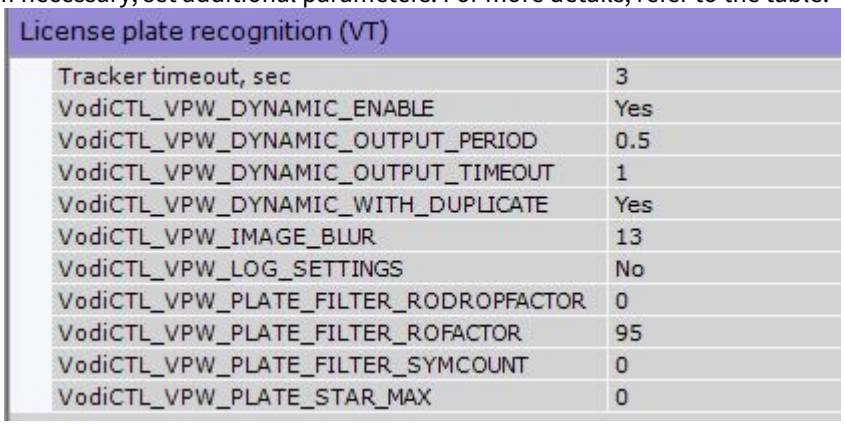
   > **Important**
   >
   > The cumulative value of this parameter across all NPR detection tools must not exceed:
   > - the licensed number of recognition threads (check your license with the lsvpwcutility);
   > - the number of CPU cores;
   > - 100.

7. In the **Tracker Timeout** field, set a time interval in seconds after which the tracking of a vehicle is reset (**10**).

   > **Note**

Use this setting to eliminate double-triggering in such cases as, for example, another recognition of the same number after it has been obstructed for some time, and then reappears in scene.
If you set Tracker Timeout to a value greater than a probable time of obstruction, the detection tool will not double-trigger.

8. If necessary, set additional parameters. For more details, refer to the table.



License plate recognition (VT)	
Tracker timeout, sec	3
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_ENABLE	Yes
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_OUTPUT_PERIOD	0.5
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_OUTPUT_TIMEOUT	1
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_WITH_DUPLICATE	Yes
VodiCTL_VPW_IMAGE_BLUR	13
VodiCTL_VPW_LOG_SETTINGS	No
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_FILTER_RODROPFACTOR	0
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_FILTER_ROFACTOR	95
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_FILTER_SYMCOUNT	0
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_STAR_MAX	0

Parameter	Description
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_ENABLE	Enable/disable the number recognition dynamics (by default, the dynamics is enabled). If the value is **Yes**, then tracking is enabled, and the number is recognized by the set of frames. If the value is **No**, then tracking is disabled, and the number is recognized by each frame separately without taking to account the previous ones, and the quality can vary from 0 to 100%.
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_OUTPUT_PERIOD	Time period (in microseconds) over which the recognition result is to be displayed to the user. This parameter can be used only if the VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_WITH_DUPLICATE parameter is set.
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_OUTPUT_TIMEOUT	The minimum time required to monitor the license plate (in microseconds) before displaying the recognition result to the user. This parameter can only be used when the “Dynamic” mode is on. In this mode, the trajectory of the vehicle is monitored, and the user does not immediately receive the recognition result of the license plate, but after the time specified for this setting. In this case, the first recognition result will be replaced by the result of higher quality and subsequently displayed to the user. If parameter 0 is set for this value, the user gets the first result of recognizing the detected license plate. After the time specified in this parameter expires, the monitoring of the trajectory of the license plate continues until it disappears from the frame.
VodiCTL_VPW_DYNAMIC_WITH_DUPLICATE	Enable/disable the periodic output of license plate recognition results.
VodiCTL_VPW_IMAGE_BLUR	The parameter for internal use. The recommended value to set is 13.
VodiCTL_VPW_LOG_SETTINGS	Enable/disable logging of all recognition parameters.
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_FILTER_RODROPFACTOR	The license plate filter coefficient by the so-called image density − ratio of white pixels to total pixels (second strategy). The type is unsigned. This coefficient is used for image thresholding and has the optimal values, which are determined by developers using their own test samples. The parameter is considered as a service one, and its value should be set according to the recommendations of technical support specialists.
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_FILTER_ROFACTOR	The license plate filter coefficient by the so-called image density − ratio of white pixels to total pixels (first strategy). The type is unsigned. This coefficient is used for image thresholding and has the optimal values, which are determined by developers using their own test samples. The parameter is considered as a service one, and its value should be set according to the recommendations of technical support specialists.
VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_FILTER_SYMCOUNT	Enable/disable the simple license plates filter algorithm by the minimum number of recognized symbols on them. If the algorithm is enabled (the value of the parameter is greater than 0), the base search for symbols on the prospective license plate (geometry, proportions) is performed. If less symbols are recognized on the prospective license plate than specified in this parameter, this prospective license plate is not considered a license plate. That is, the value of this parameter is the minimum characters that must be present on the prospective license plate when the basic algorithm is in use.

VodiCTL_VPW_PLATE_STAR_MAX	Maximum unrecognized symbols on the license plate, at which the result will still be considered the result of the recognition of the license plate.

9. Click the **Apply** button.

7.4.12.1.5 Activating a software license key for the ANPR

> **Attention!**
>
> In a Failover system, the ANRP license is not automatically transferred to a new node (see Configuring Failover VMS). To enable the detection tool, you need to manually activate the license on the PC where the new node is launched.

On order to receive the software license key for the ANPR, proceed as follows:

1. Download the utilities by the links below:

1. haspdinst_EOAWT.exe
2. RUS_EOAWT.exe

- In the Windows command line, execute the following two commands one after another to install the protection key driver:

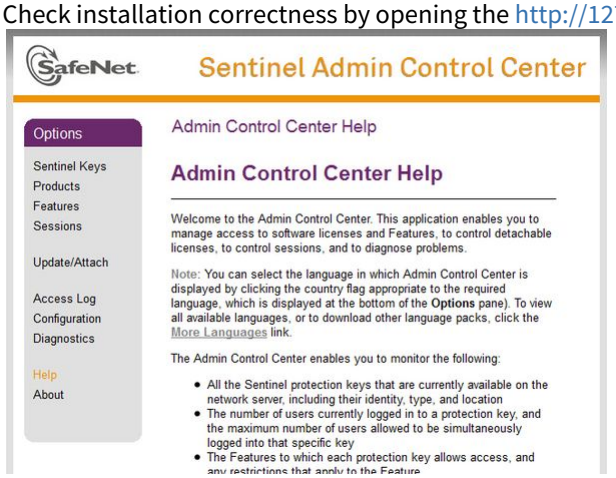
```
haspdinst_EOAWT.exe -fr -purge
haspdinst_EOAWT.exe -i -fi -fss
```

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that the current directory in the command line is similar to the one where the haspdinst_EOAWT.exe file is located.

- Wait for the installation completion.

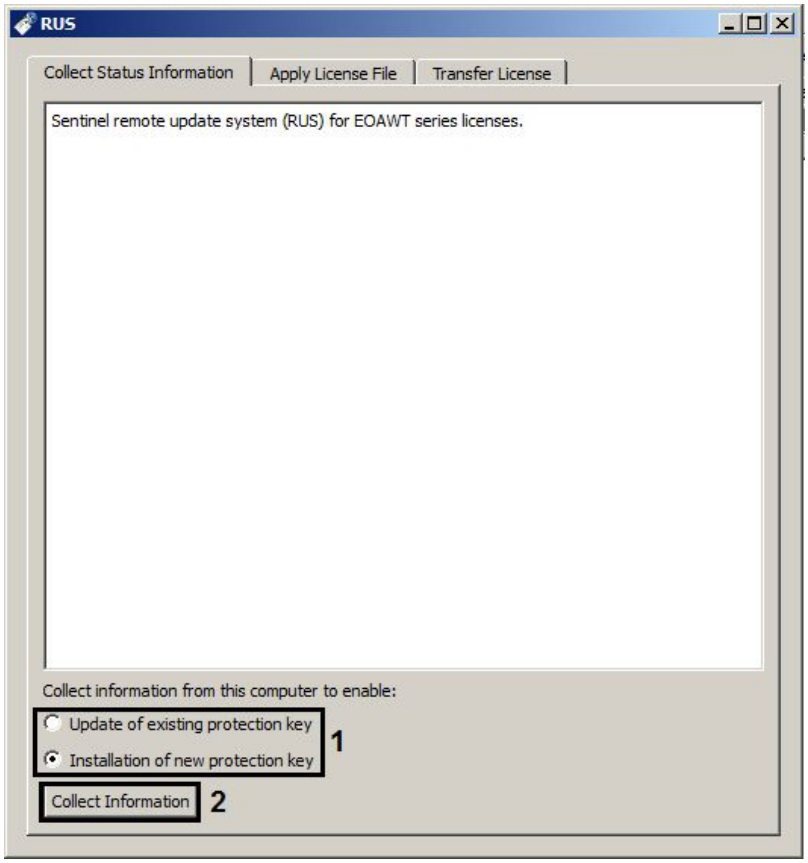
- Click **OK** in the dialog box to confirm installation is completed.

- Check installation correctness by opening the http://127.0.0.1:1947/_int_/ACC_help_index.html page in the web browser.



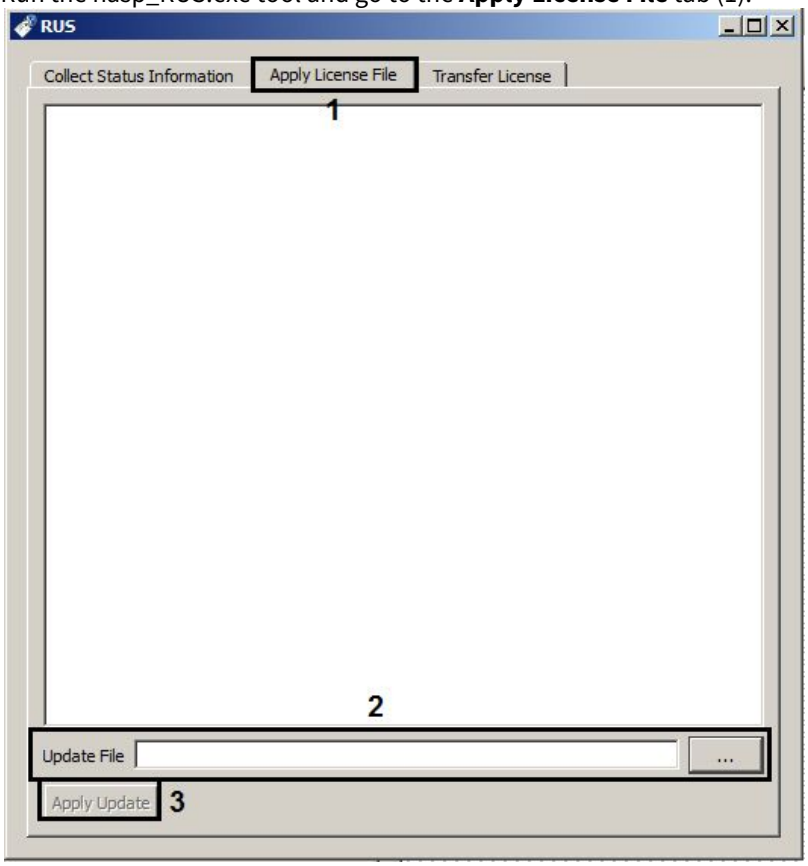
- Run the hasp_RUS.exe file to start the Remote Update System. The **RUS** dialog box opens.

> **Note.**
>
> The RUS abbreviation stands for Remote Update System.



- Set the **Collect information from this computer to enable:** switch into the **Installation of new protection key** position in case if license for a "clean computer" is needed, i.e. if there is no demo license on it, or to the **Update of existing protection key** position, if demo license is already in use (1).
- Click **Collect information**.
- Save the file with .c2v extension to any folder.
- Close the hasp_RUS.exe tool.
- Hand the .c2v file to your AxxonSoft manager.
- Receive the license file with .v2c extension from your AxxonSoft manager.

- Run the hasp_RUS.exe tool and go to the **Apply License File** tab (1).



- Specify location of the license file in the **Update File** field using the **...** button (2).
- Click **Apply Update** (3).

Receiving the software license key for the ANPR is now completed.

7.4.12.1.6 Activating the trial version of the ANPR via a software key

You can use the ANPR in trial mode.

In this mode, the number of channels is limited to 4 in both 25 FPS and 6 FPS versions for all available countries. Activate the software key to start the 60-day trial.

> **Attention!**
>
> You cannot operate the ANPR tool in trial mode on a virtual machine.

To activate the ANPR in trial mode, do the following:

1. Download the distribution package: 25 FPS or 6 FPS.
2. Start the command line (Run as administrator).
3. Execute the following command **SDK_4hi_60d_WORLD.exe -i -fi -fss** for a 25 FPS trial license, or **SDK_4lo_60d_WORLD.exe -i -fi -fss** for a 6 FPS trial license.

The demo license is now activated.

7.4.12.2 License plate recognition (IV)

7.4.12.2.1 License plate recognition (IV) features and specifications

License plate recognition (IV) is designed to implement the following functions:

1. Recognize the license plate number of vehicles.

List of supported countries: Australia, Belarus, Brazil, Canada, China, Czech Republic, Egypt, Finland, France, Germany, Great Britain, India, Indonesia, Israel, Italy, Japan, Kazakhstan, Mexico, Monaco, Mongolia, Pakistan, Poland, Qatar, Russia, Republic of South Africa, Saudi Arabia, Slovenia, South Korea, Spain, Sri Lanka, Taiwan, Thailand, Turkey, Ukraine, United Arab Emirates, United States of America, Uzbekistan, Vietnam.
Recognition of license plates of vehicles as part of conglomerates:

- European Union (Austria, Germany);
- K.U.B.R (Kazakhstan, Ukraine, Belarus, Russia);
- Malaysia, Singapore;
- Middle East (Bahrain, Egypt, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Syria, United Arab Emirates, Yemen);
- North America (Canada, Mexico, United States of America).

Motorcycle license plate recognition only for Brazil.

2. Write a recognized number to a database.
3. Check the recognized license plates of vehicles on the lists of license plates.

Note

Install the additional Addon IV LPR to work with License plate recognition (IV).

Attention!

Only a 64-bit version is available.

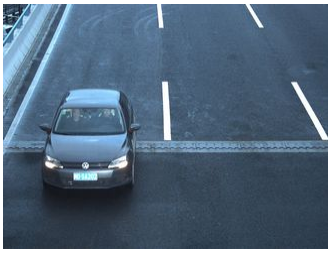
7.4.12.2.2 Camera requirements for License plate recognition (IV)

- **Camera specifications**
  - The minimum video resolution is 640*480, the recommended resolution is 720p or 1080p.
  - The minimum frame rate is 15 fps, the recommended frame rate is 25-30 fps.
  - Auto Focus and Zoom would be useful for making small adjustments after setting up ANPR.
  - Automatic white balance / automatic gain.
  - IR for night mode with good contrast of license plate images.
  - HDR / WDR
- **Video requirements**
  - The video image should be clear, contrasting, without distortion, not blurred.
  - The size of the license plate should be 15 - 70% of the total size of the image.
  - The license plate must contain no more than two rows of characters.
- **Camera installation requirements**
  - The video camera should be mounted at 0.6 - 2.4 meters above the ground.
  - The angle formed by the lower line of the license plate and the horizon line should be from 0 to 20 degrees.

7.4.12.2.2.1 Examples of correct and incorrect video images

Video images that meet the video camera mounting and setup requirements for the Licence plate recognition (IV).

Video images that do not meet the video camera mounting and setup requirements for the Licence plate recognition (IV).



7.4.12.2.3 Configuring License plate recognition (IV)

To configure License plate recognition (IV), do as follows:

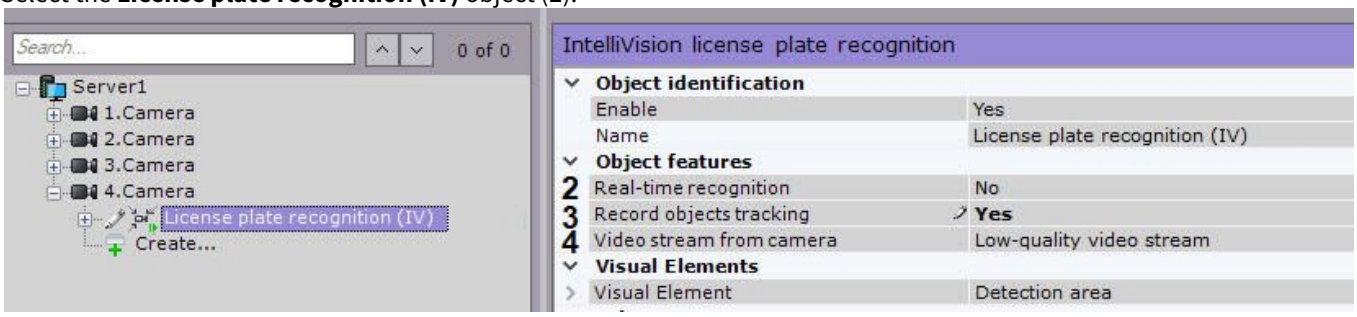
1. Download Addon IV LPR from the website and install it.
2. Submit the MAC address of the Server on which the license should be activated to your AxxonSoft manager. In return, the manager will provide you with a license file.

   Attention!

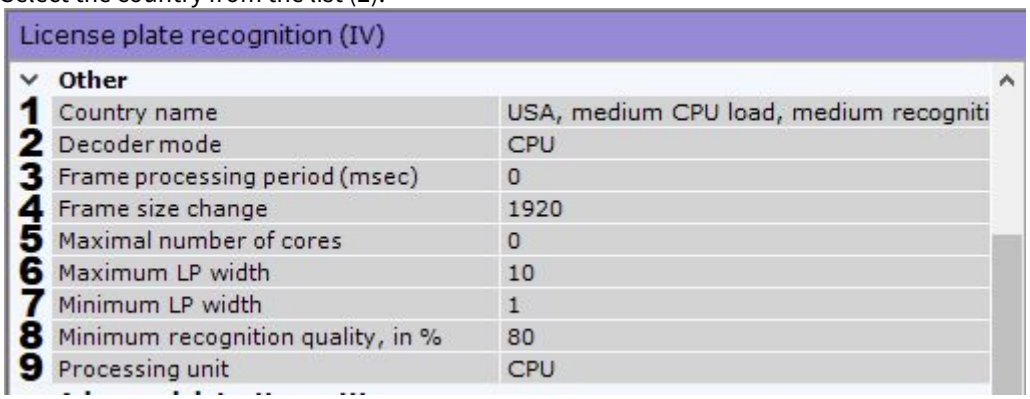
   The detection tool will not operate on a Server having a different MAC address.

3. Copy an IV license into C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\LicenseFile_LprIV.txt.
4. Restart the Server (see Shutting down a Server, Starting a Server).

5. Select the **License plate recognition (IV)** object (**1**).



6. If you require using this detection tool for real-time number plate recognition (see Configuring online Vehicle License Plate recognition), set the corresponding parameter to **Yes** (**2**).
7. If you need to enable recording of metadata, select **Yes** from the **Record Objects tracking** list (**3**).
8. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed. Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server (**4**).
9. Select the country from the list (**1**).



Attention!

Several profiles are provided for India, USA, Russia, Taiwan, Australia and African countries, differing by recognition parameters and hardware requirements.
To recognize US license plates with vertical orientation of characters, a profile with higher accuracy of recognition is recommended.

Note

The list of supported countries is given in the manufacturer's specifications.

10. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**2**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
11. Specify the minimum number of milliseconds between frames during recognition (**3**).
12. Analyzed framed are scaled down to a specified resolution (**4**, 1920 pixels on the longer side). This is how it works:
    a. If the longer side of the source image exceeds the value specified in the **Frame size change** field, it is divided by two.
    b. If the resulting resolution falls below the specified value, it is used further.
    c. If the resulting resolution still exceeds the specified limit, it is divided by two, etc.

Note

For example, the source image resolution is 2048 * 1536, and the limit is set to **1000**.
In this case, the source resolution will be divided two times (down to 512 * 384): after the first division, the number of pixels on the longer side exceeds the limit (1024 > 1000).

13. Specify the maximum number of processor cores available for the detector. '0' means all cores (**5**).
14. Set the maximum and minimum width of the vehicle number plate as a percentage of the FoV width (**6**, **7**).

15. Set minimum quality of ANPR (**8**). The higher the minimum recognition quality, the less false detections will occur.
16. By default, only CPU resources are used for recognition. If you want to apply GPU computing resources to increase the recognition performance, select GPU in the **Processing unit** field (**9**).

> **Note**
>
> If there are several GPUs in the system, each License plate recognition (IV) can be assigned a specific Nvidia GPU value.

17. Specify the maximum and minimum number of digits in the number (**1**, **2**).

	Advanced detection settings	
1	Maximal number of characters in LP	10
2	Minimal number of characters in LP	5
3	Recognition accuracy level	Maximal accuracy
4	Timeout	0
5	Tracker timeout, sec	3

18. Select recognition accuracy (**3**):
    a. Maximum − offers maximum recognition accuracy at the expense of higher CPU/GPU load.
    b. High − offers acceptable recognition accuracy for less CPU/GPU effort.
    c. Fast − offers fastest recognition speed at the expense of accuracy.
19. Specify the time interval between the initial recognition and event registration in the **Timeout** field (**4**). **Zero** value sets the event registration to the moment when the track disappears from FOV.
20. In the **Tracker timeout, sec** field, enter a time period in seconds. This is the time before detection starts again after a number plate is recognized (**5**).
21. You can configure an ANPR zone in FoV. The zone is resized by moving the anchor points .

> **Note**
>
> For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame/snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

> **Note**
>
> Detection zone is displayed by default. You can click the button to hide the zone. To undo, click this button again.

22. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of License plate recognition (IV) is now complete.

7.4.12.3 License plate recognition (RR)

7.4.12.3.1 License plate recognition (RR) features and specifications

The License plate recognition (RR) is designed to implement the following features:

1. Recognize the license plate number of vehicles.

   > **Note**
   >
   > List of supported countries: Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Brazil, Estonia, Georgia, Kyrgyzstan, Kazakhstan, Lithuania, Latvia, Moldova, Russia, Ukraine, Uzbekistan, Vietnam, Spain, Malaysia, Mexico, Myanmar, Peru, Poland, Czech Republic, Hungary, Romania, Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Germany, Greece, Denmark, Ireland, Italy, Cyprus, Luxembourg, Malta, Brunei, Egypt, Netherlands, Portugal, Slovenia, Slovakia, France, Croatia, Sweden, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Finland.

2. Write a recognized number to a database.
3. Check the recognized license plates of vehicles on the lists of license plates.
4. Determine the direction of the vehicle.

Depending on the features required, the *Axxon Next* VMS offers three types of License plate recognition (RR) tools:

License plate recognition (RR)
License plate recognition - Parking (RR)
License plate recognition - Search in archive (RR)

1. **License plate recognition (RR) –** recognizes number plates in real time. Recognition is performed in Fast mode (video stream processing at a speed of up to 30 fps).
2. **License plate recognition** – **Parking (RR) –** recognizes number plates in real time. Recognition is performed in Slow mode (video stream processing at a speed of up to 8 fps).

   > **Note**
   >
   > The sampling rate for detection tool is 150 milliseconds, all other frames are skipped.

3. **License plate recognition – Search in archive (RR) –** recognizes number plates in recorded video. Recognition is performed in Fast mode (video stream processing at a speed of up to 30 fps).

   > **Note**
   >
   > This detection tool generates events with a 30 sec delay after number recognition.

> **Note**
>
> License plate recognition (RR) requires Addon RR LPR to be installed (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

7.4.12.3.2 Camera requirements for License plate recognition (RR)

ANPR works properly if the following camera specs, installation, and configuration requirements are met:

- character height at least 10p, preferably 20p or more;
- minimum resolution 1280*720, recommended 1920*1080;
- minimum frame rate for Slow mode 5 fps mode, for Fast mode 20 fps;
- maximum horizontal angle: 30°;
- maximum vertical angle: 45°;
- expected image contrast: the contrast difference between characters of the number plate and the background should be at least 20 units with an image brightness scale of 0 to 255.

If it is necessary to determine the direction of movement of the vehicle, the following additional requirements should be met:

- installation height of the camera is not less than 3 meters;
- the angle between the camera and the direction of the road is not more than 30°;
- minimum tilt of the camera.

7.4.12.3.3 Configuring License plate recognition (RR)

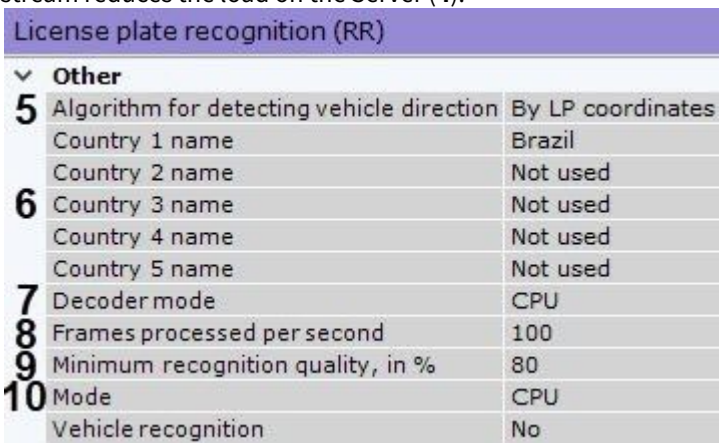
To configure License plate recognition (RR), do as follows:

1. Download Addon RR LPR from the website and install it.

   > **Note**
   >
   > To make the detection tool work under Windows Server 2012 R2, make sure to install the Media Foundation component.

2. Create the detection object you need and select it (**1**).

3. If you need to use this detection tool for real-time license plate recognition, set the corresponding parameter to **Yes** (**2**) (see Configuring real-time vehicle license plate recognition).
4. To record metadata to the database, select **Yes** from the **Record Objects tracking** list (**3**).
5. If a camera supports multi-streaming, select the stream for which detection is needed. Selecting a low-quality video stream reduces the load on the Server (**4**).



6. Select the **Algorithm for detecting vehicle direction** (**5**):
   a. By LP coordinates: if LP coordinates change position from top to bottom, the vehicle moves to the camera. If LP coordinates change position from bottom to top, the vehicle moves from the camera.
   b. By LP scale change: if LP scale increases, the vehicle moves to the camera. If LP scale decreases, the vehicle moves from the camera.
7. In the corresponding fields, select from the list one or more countries whose license plates you need to recognize (**6**).
8. Select the processor for decoding video streams (**7**). When you select a GPU, a discrete graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips). If there is no appropriate GPU, the decoding will be done with Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, the CPU resources will be used for decoding.
9. Set the number of frames processed per second by the detector (**8**). The value should be in the range [0.016, 100].
10. Set the minimum quality of ANPR (**9**). The higher the minimum recognition quality is, the fewer false detections will occur.
11. Select the processor for the detection tool: the CPU or one of NVIDIA GPUs (**10**) (see General Information on Configuring Detection).

    > **Attention!**
    >
    > It may take up to one minute to launch the algorithm on NVIDIA GPU.

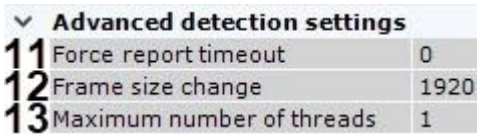
12. In the **Force report timeout** field (**11**) specify the time interval between the initial recognition and event registration. The **0** value sets the event registration to the moment when the track disappears from FOV.

> **Note**
>
> Skip this step with **License plate recognition - Search in archive (RR).**

13. By default, the analyzed frames are compressed to a specified size (**12**, 1920 pixels on the longer side). This is how it works:
    a. If the longer side of the source image exceeds the value specified in the **Frame size change** field, it is divided by two.
    b. If the resulting resolution falls below the specified value, this resolution will be used further.
    c. If the resulting resolution still exceeds the specified value, it is divided by two, etc.

> **Note**
>
> For example, the source image resolution is 2048*1536, and the specified value is set to **1000**.
> In this case, the source resolution will be halved two times (down to 512*384), as after the first division, the number of pixels on the longer side exceeds the limit (1024 > 1000).

> **Note**
>
> If detection is performed on a higher resolution stream and detection errors occur, it is recommended to reduce the compression.



14. Specify the maximum number of recognition threads (**13**). If the value is **0**, the recognition process will occur in the same thread that starts it.

> **Attention!**
>
> The cumulative value of this parameters across all LPR detection tools should not exceed the number of CPU cores and is limited to **100**.

15. You can configure an ANPR zone in FoV. The zone is resized by moving the anchor points .

Note

For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame. To undo, click this button again.

Note

Detection zone is displayed by default. You can click the button to hide the zone. To undo, click this button again.

16. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of License plate recognition (RR) is now complete.

7.4.12.4 Configuring real-time vehicle license plate recognition

In the Axxon Next VMS, you can create lists of vehicle numbers (ANPR lists) and configure automatic system reactions upon any of the following events:

- recognition of any number from the selected ANPR list;
- recognition of a specific number from the selected ANPR list;
- if the target number does not show up in the selected ANPR list;
- if the target number does not show up in all available ANPR lists;
- recognition of any number from any ANPR list.

To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Activate the **Real-time Recognition** parameter for the required detection tools (see Configuring License plate recognition (VT)).
2. Create one or more Lists of LPs (see Lists of vehicle numbers).
3. Configure automatic responses to positive identification against the list (see Configuring macros when working with ANPR lists).

7.4.12.4.1 Configuring macros when working with ANPR lists

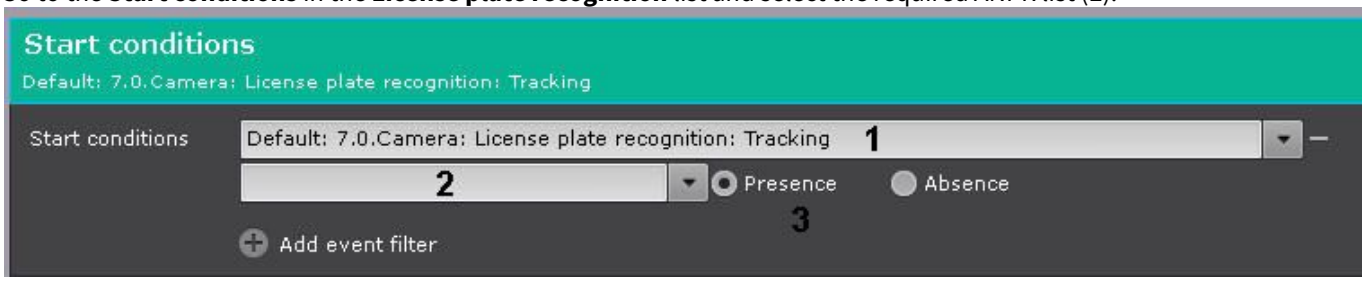
When you are working with ANPR list, you can configure the macros to trigger on the following events:

- if the target number shows up in the selected ANPR list;
- if the target number does not show up in the selected ANPR list;
- recognition of a specific number from the selected ANPR list;
- if the target number does not show up in all available ANPR lists;
- recognition of any number from any ANPR list.

7.4.12.4.1.1 Target number shows up in the selected ANPR list

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** in the **License plate recognition** list and select the required ANPR list (**1**).



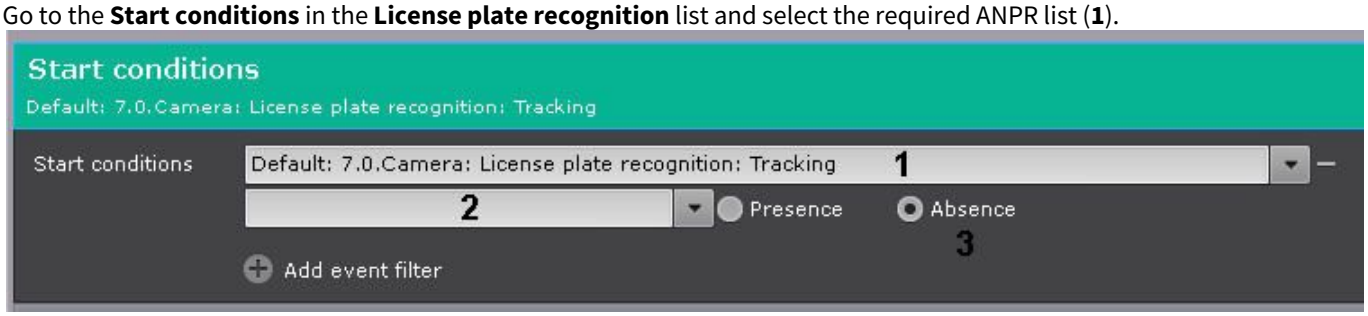
2. Leave the field **2** empty.

3. The status of the **Presence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.12.4.1.2 The target number does not show up in the selected ANPR list

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** in the **License plate recognition** list and select the required ANPR list (**1**).

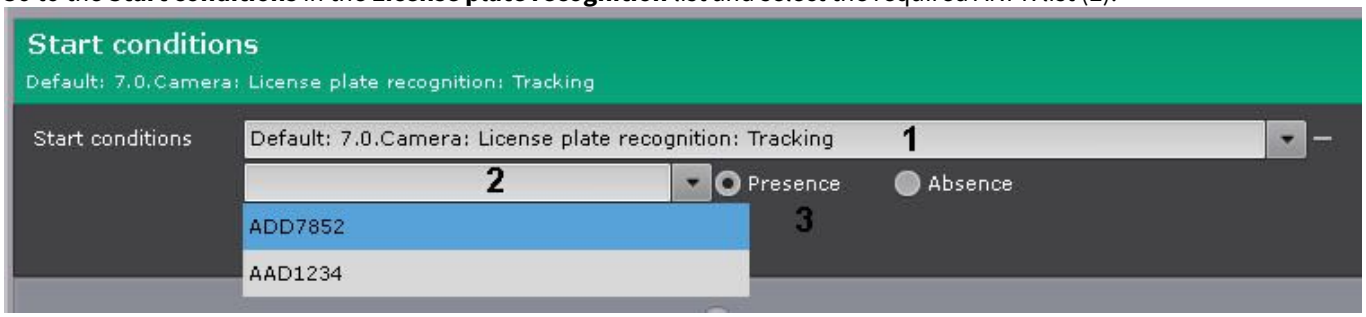


2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Absence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.12.4.1.3 Recognition of a specific number from the selected ANPR list

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** in the **License plate recognition** list and select the required ANPR list (**1**).



2. Select a specific number plate in field **2**.

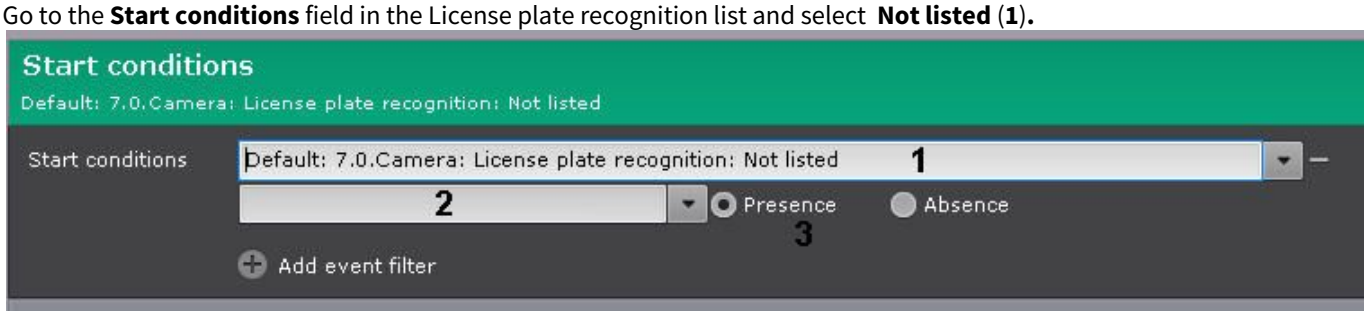
> **Note**
>
> To select another number, clear the **2** field and re-open the list.

3. The status of the **Presence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.12.4.1.4 The target number does not show up in all available ANPR lists

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** field in the License plate recognition list and select **Not listed** (**1**).



2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Presence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.12.4.1.5 Recognition of any number from any ANPR list

In this case, configure the macro as follows:

1. Go to the **Start conditions** field in the License plate recognition list and select **Not listed** (**1**).

2. Leave the field **2** empty.
3. The status of the **Absence** toggle (**3**).

7.4.13 Neural Counter

7.4.13.1 Video stream and scene requirements for neural counter operation

The neural counter operation imposes the following requirements:

1. To the video stream from the camera:
   a. The resolution is at least 640x360 pixels. It is also not recommended to use a resolution higher than 1920×1080, since higher resolution does not increase the detection quality, but significantly increases the consumption of resources. The optimal resolution for solving typical tasks is 1280x720 (see Example of configuring neural counter for solving typical task).
   b. The frame rate per second in the video stream from the camera is at least 8 for solving typical task.
   c. Both colorless (gray) and color images.
2. To lighting:
   a. Lighting in the scene is at least 50 lux per square meter. In conditions of insufficient or excessive lighting (night or light-striking), stable operation of the video analytics is not guaranteed.
   b. There are no abrupt changes in lighting.
3. To the scene and camera angle:
   a. Moving objects are visually separable from each other.
   b. The background is mostly static and does not change abruptly.
   c. Moving objects are minimally obscured by static objects in the scene (columns, trees, etc.).
   d. The analyzed scene does not have reflective surfaces and sharp shadows from moving objects. If present, they should be masked.
   e. Camera shake does not result in image offsets greater than 1% of the frame size.

Attention!

Correct operation of the neural counter is not guaranteed when using a fish-eye lens.

Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation
Objects image requirements for neural counter

7.4.13.2 Functions of the neural counter

The Neuralcounter relies on a neural network to work out the number of objects in the zone.

A detection event that can be used to launch a macro is generated when the number of objects in FoV matches the pre-defined conditions (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros).

Note

Unlike the Multiple objects detection tool (see Settings Specific to Multiple objects), Neuralcounter generates events of one type, namely - triggering.
Neuralcounter is less resource-intensive than Multiple objects detection tool based on Neural Tracker.

Note

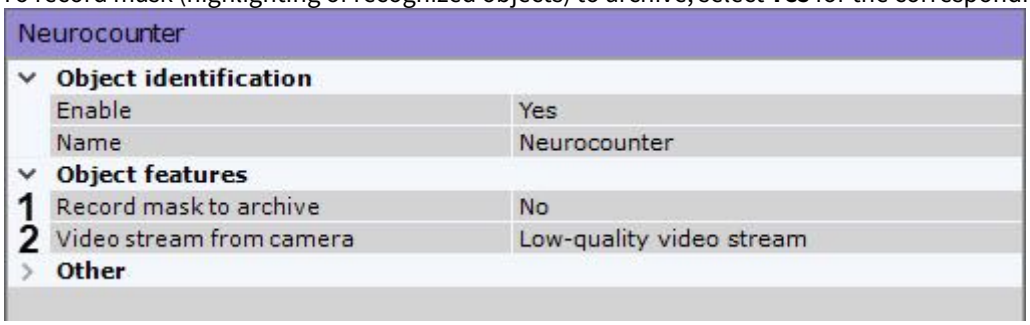
For the neural counter to work, install Addon Neuro Pack (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

7.4.13.3 Configuring a Neurocounter

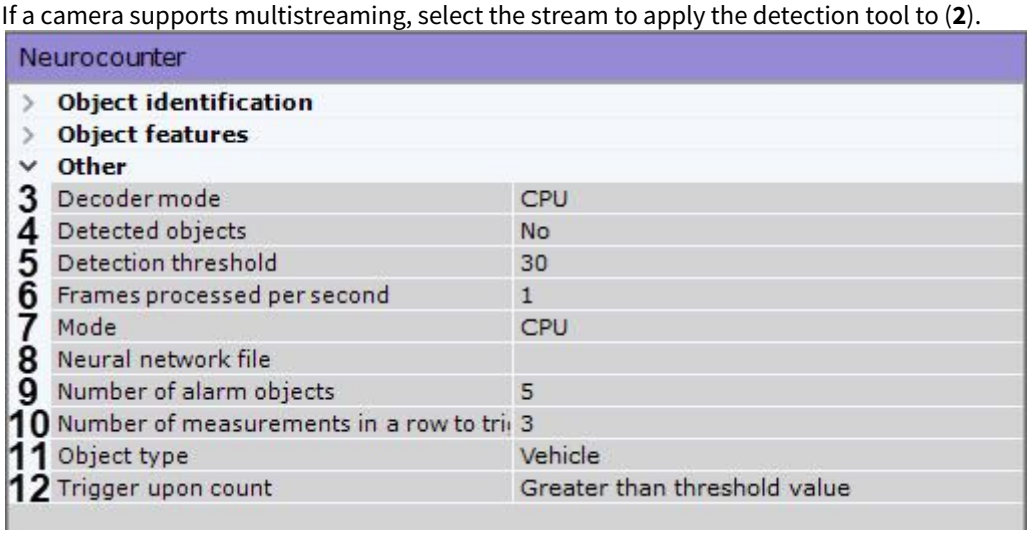
Video stream and scene requirements for neural counter operation
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

To configure Neurocounter, do the following:

1. To record mask (highlighting of recognized objects) to archive, select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter (**1**).



2. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream to apply the detection tool to (**2**).



3. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
4. If you need to outline objects in the preview window, select **Yes** in the **Detected objects** parameter (**4**).
5. Set the recognition threshold for objects in percent (**5**). If the recognition probability falls below the specified value, the data will be ignored. The higher the value, the higher the accuracy — for the cost of sensitivity.
6. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**6**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].
7. Set the minimum number of frames with excessive numbers of objects for Neurocounter to trigger (**10**). The value should be within the range of 2 – 20.

   Note

   The default values (3 output frames and 1 fps) indicate that Neurocounter will analyze one frame every second and if it detects more objects than the specified threshold value on 3 frames, then it triggers.

8. Select the processor for the neural network - CPU, one of Nvidia GPUs or one of Intel GPUs (**7**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).

Attention!

It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on an Nvidia GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).

Attention!

If you specify other processing resource than the CPU, this device will carry the most of computing load. However, the detection tool will consume CPU as well.

9. In the **Object type** field (**11**), select the object type for counting, or in the **Neural network file** field (**8**), select the neural network file.

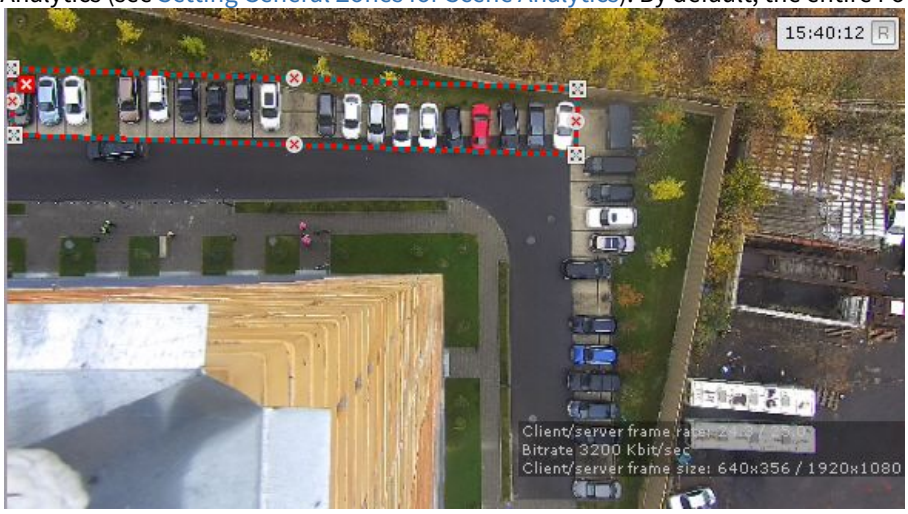
Note

To train your neural network, contact AxxonSoft (see Data collection requirements for neural network training). A trained neural network does a great job for a particular scene if you want to detect only objects of a certain type (e.g. person, cyclist, motorcyclist, etc.).
If the neural network file is not specified, the default file will be used, which is selected depending on the selected object type (**11**) and the selected processor for the neural network operation (**4**).

Note

For correct neural network operation under Linux, place the corresponding file in the /opt/AxxonSoft/AxxonNext/ directory.

10. Set the triggering condition for the neurocounter:
    a. In the **Number of alarm objects** field, set the threshold value for the number of objects in FoV (**9**).
    b. In the **Trigger upon count** field, select the condition polarity: whether triggering should occur on exceeding the threshold, or dropping below it (**11**).
11. In the preview window, you can set the detection zones with the help of anchor points much like privacy masks in Scene Analytics (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics). By default, the entire FoV is a detection zone.



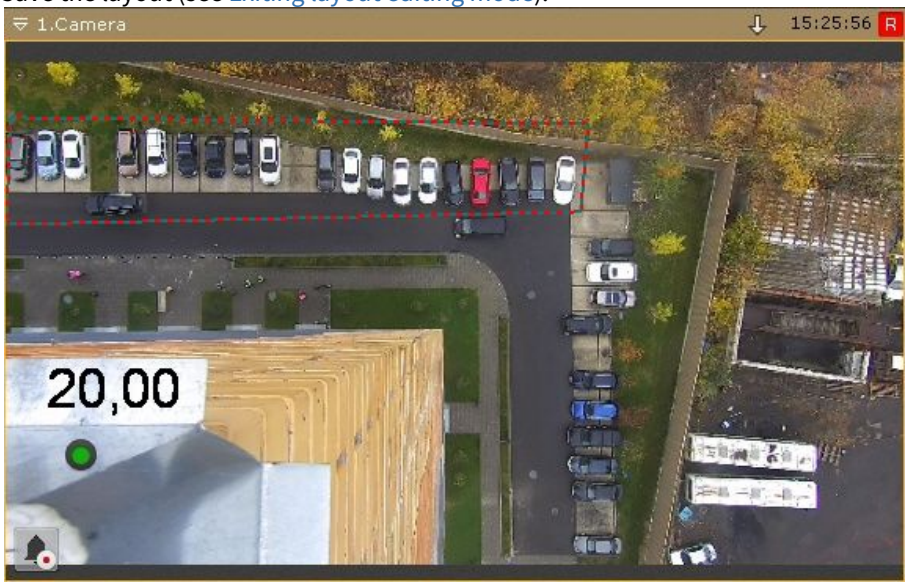
12. Click **Apply**.

After the neural tracker is created, the layout can display the sensor icon with the number of objects within the controlled area. To configure this option, please follow the steps below:

1. Proceed to the Layout Editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode).

2. Place the sensor anywhere in FoV.

3. Customize the font. To do this, press the button T.
4. Save the layout (see Exiting layout editing mode).



7.4.13.4 Example of configuring neural counter for solving typical task

To detect objects with a speed less than 0.3 m/s, the following settings are recommended:

1. **The number of frames for analysis and output**: 3.
2. **The number of frames processed per second**: 1.
3. **Neural filter**: No.
4. **Recognition threshold**: 30.
5. **Neural network file**: Path to the *.ann neural network file. You can also select **Object type** — in this case, this field should be left blank..

> **Note**
>
> By default, the neural counetr is configured for detection of objects with a speed less than 0.3 m/s.

To solve tasks in which the speed of the object is greater than 0.3 m/s, it is necessary to increase the number of processed frames and/or reduce the number of frames for analysis and output. The values are selected by trial-and-error method depending on the conditions of the task.

7.4.13.5 Objects image requirements for neural counter

To ensure the correct operation of neural counter, the following image requirements should be met:

1. The object to be detected is clearly distinguishable by the human eye.
2. The width or height of the objects does not exceed 75% of the frame size.
3. The image is not noisy and not distorted by compression algorithm artifacts.
4. The duration of the object's visibility is at least 6 frames.
5. The object moves in the certain direction between two adjacent frames at a distance which does not exceed the object's size. This condition is necessary for the correct calculation of the trajectory of the object (track).
6. The minimum value of pixel density per meter is observed:

Image resolution	Object type	Minimum pixel density per meter (ratio of the object width in pixels to the object width in meters)	Minimum object size in pixels, Width x Height	Ratio of the object width to the frame width as a percentage
1920x1080	Human	55	~25x105	~3%
1280x720	Human	35	~17x70	~3%
640x360	Human	17	~10x42	~3%

Image resolution	Object type	Minimum pixel density per meter (ratio of the object width in pixels to the object width in meters)	Minimum object size in pixels, Width x Height	Ratio of the object width to the frame width as a percentage
1920x1080	Light vehicle (2 axles)	55	~354x300	~20%
1280x720	Light vehicle (2 axles)	35	~240x205	~20%
640x360	Light vehicle (2 axles)	17	~132x112	~20%

Video stream and scene requirements for neural counter operation

7.4.14 Fire and Smoke Detection Tools

7.4.14.1 Functions of Fire and Smoke detection

Important!

Unlike standard smoke / fire detection systems, smoke and fire software detection tools face many issues with the scene and the background mage. We cannot warrant 100% smoke / fire detection. The smoke and fire detection tools are meant to increase the likelihood of detecting smoke / fire. However, there may be both false alarms and failures to detect actual fire / smoke events in the camera's FoV.
We keep improving smoke and fire detection and use machine learning based on a Neural network.
If the fire / smoke detection tools does not respond to actual fire / smoke events, please record a video clip and send it to AxxonSoft. We will update *Axxon Next* to refine detection. Help us train the neural network with video feeds from you scene to deliver best results for your fire security.

Note

These detection tools require Addon Neuro Pack to be installed (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

7.4.14.2 Camera requirements for Fire and Smoke Detection

Please follow these recommendations for proper fire and smoke detection:

1. Use color cameras. With black and white cameras, the detection quality can be noticeably worse.
2. The video resolution must be at least 640x360.
3. FPS directly affects detection efficiency; in most cases, the default value (1 detection per 10 seconds) is sufficient to detect smoke or fire which develops in more than one minute.
4. The minimal recognized fire/smoke area depends on the particular neural network used. For a standard neural network (see Configuring Smoke and Fire Detection Tools), the fire/smoke area must occupy at least 10% of the frame.

   Note

   In some cases, when fire is expected to be clearly visible, the fire area may be sufficient at 1-3% of the FoV width / height.
5. Fire/smoke should be visually separated from the background.

Attention!

If you set a rectangular recognition area for the detection tool, the limitations apply to this area rather than to the entire frame (see Configuring Smoke and Fire Detection Tools).

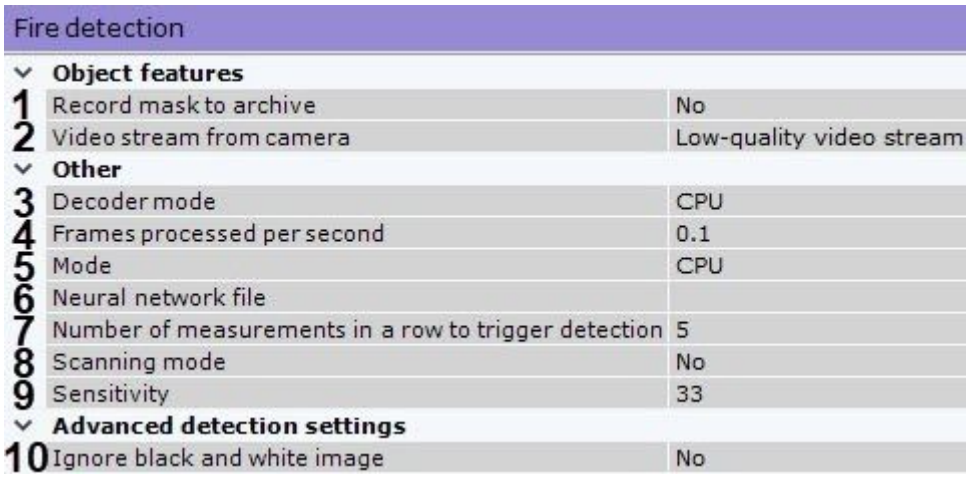
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

7.4.14.3 Configuring Smoke and Fire Detection Tools

Camera requirements for Fire and Smoke Detection
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

To configure smoke (fire) detection tool:

1. To record the sensitivity scale of the detection tool to the archive (see Extra information overlay (Masks)), select **Yes** for the **Record mask to archive** parameter (**1**).



2. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**). Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server.
3. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips). If there is no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
4. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process per second (**4**). The value should be in the [0,016, 100] range.

> **Note**
>
> The default values (5 frames for output and 0.1 FPS) indicate that the tool will analyze frame over 50 seconds span. The detection tool analyzes 1 frame every 10 seconds. If it detects smoke/fire on 5 consecutive fames, the detection tool will trigger an alert.

5. Select the processor for the neural network — CPU, one of Nvidia GPUs or one of Intel GPUs (**5**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation, General Information on Configuring Detection).

> **Attention!**
>
> It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on NVIDIA GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).

> **Attention!**
>
> If you specify other processing resource than the CPU, this device will carry the most of computing load. However, the CPU will also be used to run the detection tool.

6. Select a neural network file (**6**). The following standard neural networks for different processor types are located in the C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\NeuroSDK directory:

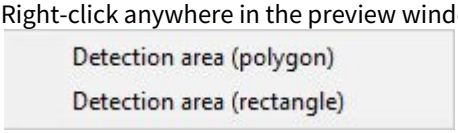
smoke_movidius.ann	Smoke detector / IntelNCS
smoke_openvino.ann	Smoke detector / CPU
smoke_original.ann	Smoke detector / GPU
fire_movidius.ann	Fire detector / IntelNCS
fire_openvino.ann	Fire detector / CPU
fire_original.ann	Fire detector / GPU

Enter full path to a custom neural network file into this field. This is not required if you use standard neural networks which are selected automatically.

> **Note**

For correct neural network operation on Linux, place the corresponding file in the /opt/AxxonSoft/AxxonNext/ directory.

7. Set the minimum number of frames with smoke (fire) for triggering the tool (**7**). The value should be in the [5; 20] range.
8. To detect the objects without changing the frame size, select **Yes** in the **Scanning mode** field (**8**).
9. Set the sensitivity of the tool by trial and error (**9**). The value should be in the [1; 99] range. The preview window displays the sensitivity scale of the detection tool that relates to the sensitivity parameter. If the scale is green, smoke (fire) is not detected. If the scale is yellow, smoke (fire) is detected, but not enough to trigger the tool. If the scale is red, smoke (fire) is detected and the detection tool will trigger, if the scale is red through the sampling period (50 seconds by default, see item 4).
   Example. The sensitivity parameter value of 40 implies that the alert is triggered when the scale has at least 4 divisions full over the entire detection time span. The triggering will stop when the scale has less than 2 divisions full over the detection time span. The alert will trigger again if the scale has at least 4 divisions full over the entire detection time span.
10. Select **Yes** for the **Ignore black and white image** parameter (**10**), if it is necesssary that the detection tool does not trigger when the image is black and white.
11. By default, the detection is performed over full image area. In the preview window, you can set several detection areas using the anchor points as follows:
    a. Right-click anywhere in the preview window.

    b. Select **Detection area (rectangle)** for a rectangular area. If you specify a rectangular area, the detection tool will work only within its limits. The rest of the FOV will be ignored.
    c. Select **Analytics Area (polygon)** to set one or several polygonal areas. If you specify one or several polygonal areas, the detection tool will process the entire FOV while the remaining part of the FOV will be blacked out.

Note

You can configure detection areas similarly to privacy masks in scene analytics (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics).

Attention!

You can use trial and error method to decide which type of detection area (rectangular or polygonal) is more effective in your case. Some neural networks give better detection with rectangles while others are better with polygons.

7.4.15 Equipment detection tool (PPE)

7.4.15.1 Functions of the Equipment detection tool (PPE)

The Equipment detection tool (PPE) locates individuals wearing no personal protective equipment within the area where it's required, and also individuals wearing improperly applied PPE.

Attention!

It is recommended to use the detector in a "gateway" environment: at the entrance to an area in which equipment or PPE is required, the employee is delayed for 5-10 seconds, during which the detection tool determines the presence of the necessary equipment (see Examples of configuring Equipment detection tool (PPE) for solving typical tasks).

For detection tool operation, at least two separate neural networks are used:

- Segmenting network — it structures up an image of a human body (locates head, shoulders, arms, hands, thighs, legs and feet);
- Classifying network — it detects equipment (PPE) on a specified body part, and checks if it's properly applied.

Attention!

To train a classification neural network, it is necessary to provide a list of equipment (see Example of providing a list of valid equipment at the facility).

Note

The equipment detection tool (PPE) requires an additional Neuro Pack to be installed (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

7.4.15.2 Video stream and scene requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE) operation

The Equipment detection tool (PPE) operation imposes the following requirements:

1. To the video stream from the camera:
   a. The resolution is at least 640x360 pixels. It is also not recommended to use a resolution higher than 1920×1080, since higher resolution does not increase the detection quality, but significantly increases the consumption of resources. The optimal resolution for solving typical tasks is 1280x720.
   b. The frame rate per second in the video stream from the camera is at least 3 for solving typical tasks.
   c. Color image only.
2. To lighting:
   a. Lighting in the scene is at least 200 lux per square meter. In conditions of insufficient or excessive lighting (night or light-striking), stable operation of the video analytics is not guaranteed.
   b. There are no abrupt changes in lighting.
3. To the scene and camera angle:
   a. Moving objects are visually separable from each other.
   b. The background is mostly static and does not change abruptly.
   c. There are no products made of rods in the detection area.
   d. Moving objects are minimally obscured by static objects in the scene (columns, trees, etc.).
   e. The analyzed scene does not have reflective surfaces and sharp shadows from moving objects. If present, they should be masked.
   f. Camera shake does not result in image offsets greater than 1% of the frame size.

Attention!

Correct operation of the detection tool is not guaranteed when using a fish-eye lens.

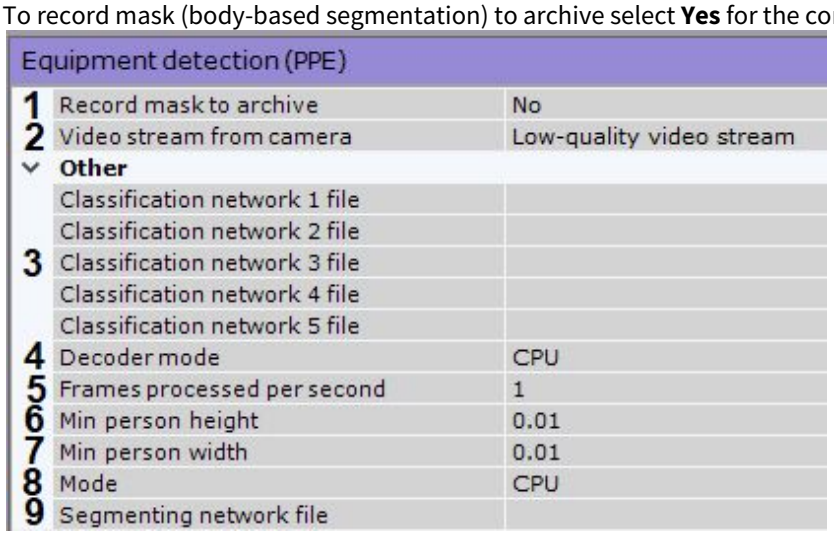
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation
Objects image requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE)

7.4.15.3 Configuring equipment detection tool (PPE)

Video stream and scene requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE) operation
Objects image requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE)
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

To set up the equipment detection tool (PPE), do the following:

1. To record mask (body-based segmentation) to archive select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter (**1**).



2. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**).
3. By default, the following neural networks are used according to the selected processing device (**8**): Classification neural network (head) and Classification neural network (body). To initialize only one item of equipment, select the required classification neural network file (**3**). There should be a separate classification neural network to recognize equipment on each body segment. The following classification neural networks for different processor types are located in the C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\NeuroSDK directory:

ppeHelmet(head)General_movidius.ann	Classification neural network (head) / IntelNCS
ppeHelmet(head)General_openvino.ann	Classification neural network (head) / CPU
ppeHelmet(head)General_origin.ann	Classification neural network (head) / GPU
ppeSafetyVest(body)General_movidius.ann	Classification neural network (body) / IntelNCS
ppeSafetyVest(body)General_openvino.ann	Classification neural network (body) / CPU
ppeSafetyVest(body)General_origin.ann	Classification neural network (body) / GPU

If you use a custom neural network, it is necessary to specify the path to the file (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> To ensure the correct operation of the neural network in Linux OS, the corresponding file should be located in the /opt/AxxonSoft/DetectorPack/NeuroSDK directory.

4. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**4**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
5. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**5**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].

> **Attention!**
>
> To apply detection in gateway mode (see Examples of configuring Equipment detection tool (PPE) for solving typical tasks), we recommend that you use the detection tool standard settings: 1 fps and 3 frames for output (see i.10).
> To apply detection in continuous mode for busy scenes, set the delay to no less than 4 fps, and the number of frames to no less than 6.

6. Set the minimum height and width of a person (**6**, **7**) in the frame as a percentage of the frame height/width (0,15 = 15%). Objects which are smaller than the specified size will not be detected.
7. Select the processor for the neural network - CPU, one of GPUs, or Intel processors (**8**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).

> **Attention!**
>
> It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on an NVIDIA GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).

> **Attention!**
>
> If you specify other processing resource than the CPU, this device will carry the most of computing load. However, the detection tool will consume CPU as well.
> If you have Intel HDDL selected, it can host only the segmenting neural networks. The CPU will handle the classifying networks.

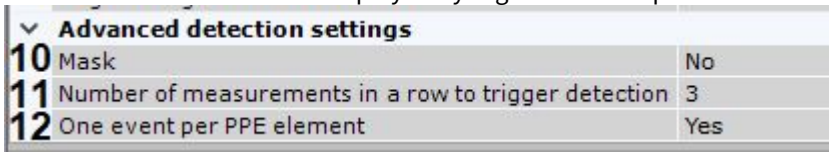
8. By default, the Segmenting neural network (head, body) is used according to the selected processing device (**8**). The following segmenting neural networks for different processor types are located in the C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\NeuroSDK directory:

ppeSegmentationByPose_movidius.ann	Segmenting neural network (head, body) / IntelNCS
ppeSegmentationByPose_openvino.ann	Segmenting neural network (head, body) / CPU
ppeSegmentationByPose_origin_onnx.ann	Segmenting neural network (head, body) / GPU

If you use a custom neural network, it is necessary to specify the path to the file (**9**).

> **Note**
>
> To ensure the correct operation of the neural network in Linux OS, the corresponding file should be located in the /opt/AxxonSoft/DetectorPack/NeuroSDK directory.

9. Select the **Mask** checkbox to display body segments in the preview window (**10**).



10. Set the minimum number of frames containing people with no PPE for triggering the tool - **Number of measurements in a row to trigger detection** (**11**). The value should be within the range of 2 – 20.
11. By default, each equipment element's triggering occurs once during a continuous tracking of a human object. You can set triggering to multiple by setting the **One Event per Equipment Element** parameter to **No** (**12**).

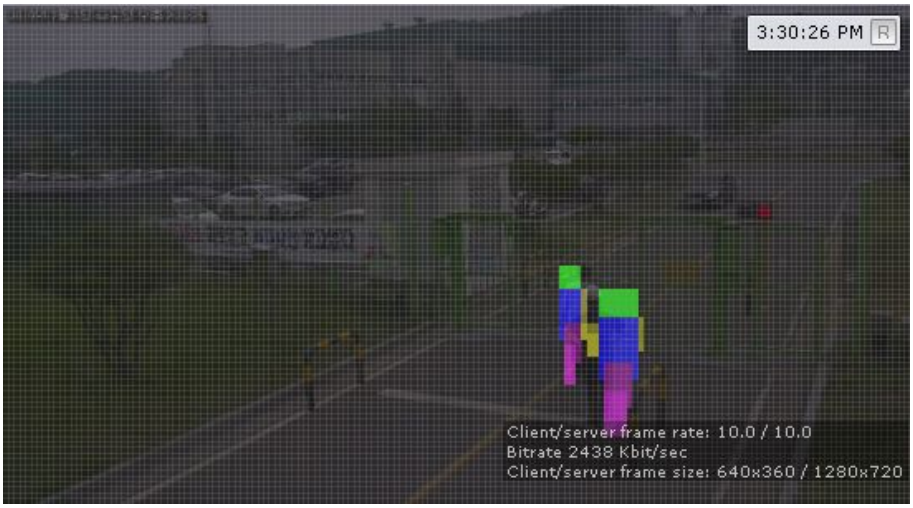
> **Note**

Example. An individual not wearing a helmet appears in FOV, puts on a helmet, then puts it off. If the **One Event per Equipment Element** parameter is activated, you will have one alarm event, otherwise two.

12. In the preview window, you can set the detection zones with the help of anchor points much like privacy masks in Scene Analytics (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics). By default, the entire FOV is a detection zone.
13. Click the **Apply** button.

The Equipment detection tool (PPE) is now configured.

The Equipment detection tool (PPE) triggers an alarm when a person not wearing required equipment (PPE) on specified body parts, or wearing inappropriate equipment, appears in FOV.



The Equipment detection tool (PPE) recognizes equipment of the following colors:

1. Helmets:
   a. Yellow.
   b. White.
   c. Blue.
   d. Green.
   e. Orange.
   f. Black.
   g. Red.

2. Vests:
   a. Yellow.

b. Orange.

Attention!

To ensure the correct reception of the E-mail notifications (see E-mail notification) after the Equipment detection tool (PPE) is triggered, it is necessary to set up a separate macro command with an E-mail message for each item of equipment.

7.4.15.4 Objects image requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE)

To ensure the correct recognition of personal protective equipment, the following image requirements should be met:

1. The object to be detected (PPE) is clearly distinguishable by the human eye.
2. The image is not noisy and not distorted by compression algorithm artifacts.
3. The width or height of the equipment does not exceed 75% of the frame size.
4. The duration of the object's visibility is at least 3-8 frames. The minimum number of frames depends on the task.
5. There are no visible physical barriers between the camera lens and the analyzed object.
6. The minimum value of pixel density per meter is observed:

Image resolution	Object type	Minimum pixel density per meter (ratio of the object width in pixels to the object width in meters)	Minimum object size in pixels, Width x Height
1920x1080	Human	170	~102x309
1280x720	Human	128	~77x233
640x360	Human	80	~48x145

7. The minimum dimensions of the equipment on the body areas in pixels are observed. An example of equipment dimensions for a resolution of 1920x1080:
   a. Upper body (torso) 75*100.
   b. Legs 75*105.
   c. Head 60*65.
   d. Hands 65*60.
   e. Feet 45*40.
   f. Set of equipment 165*295.

Video stream and scene requirements for Equipment detection tool (PPE) operation

7.4.15.5 Examples of configuring Equipment detection tool (PPE) for solving typical tasks

Typical tasks for detecting personal protective equipment are the following:

1. Detection in gateway conditions. A gateway is a border, which can be either a virtual line or a door, a barrier, a turnstile. The algorithm for working in gateway conditions is as follows:
    a. A person stops in front of an area where PPE is required.
    b. The person poses in a way that it is possible to check the presence of all items of equipment (the item is not overlapped by the person himself, other items of equipment, items of clothing).
    c. Human screening. There should be no obstacles between the person and the camera, blocking the person for screening.
2. Detection in a production conditions: persons move freely in the detection area.

> **Note**
>
> By default, the Equipment detection tool (PPE) is configured for detection in gateway conditions.

The recommended settings for solving typical tasks are as follows:

Settings	Equipment detection in gateway conditions	Equipment detection in production conditions
Main		
The number of frames processed per second	1	3
Minimum person height	0,01	0,09
Minimum person width	0,01	0,03
Advanced		
Number of frames for analysis and output	3	7
Mask	No	No
One event per item of equipment	Yes	Yes

7.4.15.6 Example of providing a list of valid equipment at the facility

> Data collection requirements for neural network training

For correct detection, it is important to understand exactly what items of equipment are used at the facility.

A complete list of equipment should be provided regardless of the current season of the year. This will help to reduce the number of false events from the Equipment detection tool (PPE) and get the most positive experience from using this analytics.

Below are examples of lists in the form of a table:

Gloves #1

Gloves #2

Gloves #3

Gloves #4

Helmet #1:
Helmet #2:
Helmet #3:
Helmet #4:
Helmet #5 (#4 screen:)
Helmet #6 (#4 earmuffs):
UpperBody+Shoes
Helmets
Gloves

7.4.16 Person-based privacy masking

7.4.16.1 Person-based privacy mask functions

The privacy mask hides selected parts of a human body from viewing on video.

A segmenting network structures up an image of a human body: locates head, shoulders, arms, hands, thighs, legs and feet.

> **Note**
>
> Person-based privacy masking requires the Add-on Neuro Pack to be installed

7.4.16.2 Camera requirements for privacy masking

For person-based privacy masking operation, a camera must match the following requirements:

1. Frame rate is no less than 12 FPS.
2. Pixel density must be at least 170 pixels per meter.
3. Average illumination in scenes with privacy masking must not drop below 200 lux.

Attention!

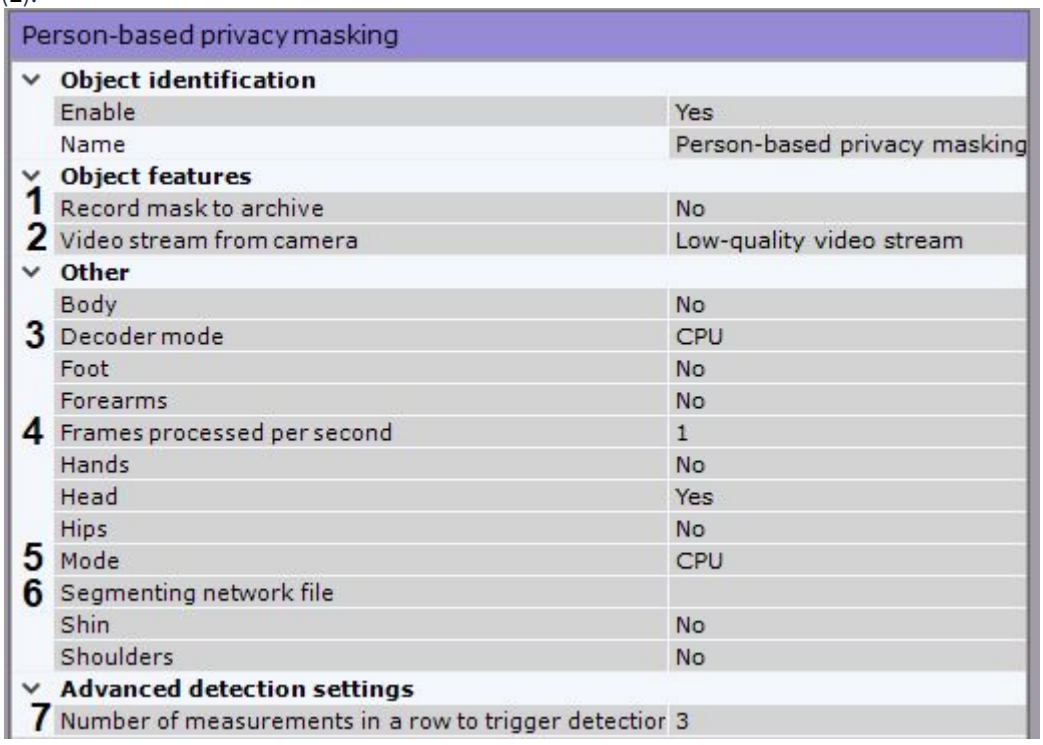
We cannot guarantee normal operation with a fisheye camera.

Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

7.4.16.3 Person-based privacy mask configuration

To configure privacy masking, do the following:

1. To record Mask to archive (see Extra information overlay (Masks)), select **Yes** for the **Record mask to archive** parameter (**1**).



2. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**).
3. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
4. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**4**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].
5. Select the processor for the neural network – CPU, one of Nvidia GPUs or one of Intel GPUs (**5**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).

Attention!

If you specify other processing resource than the CPU, this device will carry the most of computing load. However, the detection tool will consume CPU as well.

> **Attention!**
>
> It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on an Nvidia GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).

6. Select the segmenting neural network file (**6**). The following standard neural networks for different processor types are located in C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\DetectorPack\NeuroSDK:

poseEstimator_openvino.ann	Person-based privacy masking / CPU
poseEstimator_original.ann	Person-based privacy masking / GPU
poseEstimator_movidius.ann	Person-based privacy masking / IntelNCS

   Enter full path to a custom neural network file into this field. This is not required if you use standard neural networks which are selected automatically.

   > **Note**
   >
   > For correct neural network operation under Linux, place the corresponding file in the /opt/AxxonSoft/DetectorPack/NeuroSDK.

7. Set the interval between the analyzed frames – **Number of frames for analysis** – in milliseconds (**7**). The value should be within the range of 30 – 10000.
8. Select **Yes** for all body parts that should be masked within FoV.
9. Click **Apply**.

Privacy mask configuration is now complete. Selected body parts of all individuals within FoV will be hidden from view.

7.4.17 Pose detection tools

7.4.17.1 Functions of Pose Detection

Pose detection is powered by neural networks. The operational requirements for Pose detection tools are the same as applied to neural trackers and neural filters.

Pose detection tool types are listed in the following table.

Detection Tool	Detection tool description
Man down detection	Triggers alarm upon detection of a prostrate human within the scene.
Sitting person detection	Triggers alarm upon detection of a sitting human.
Hands up detection	Triggers alarm upon detection of a human raising one or two hands. A hand is treated as raised if the arm is parallel to the backbone.
Active shooter detection	Triggers alarm upon detection of a human with an arm parallel to the ground.
People masking	People Masking is a non-triggering detection tool that blocks individuals' bodies with solid color.
People counter	This detection tool counts individuals within a specified area. Triggering occurs on exceeding a specified limit.
Handrail holding detection	Triggers an alarm if an individual in a specified part of the scene does not hold any of specified handrails.

Close-standing people detection	Triggers an alarm if the distance between two separate individuals in scene falls below a specified minimum value.

Note

Pose detection tools require Addon Neuro Pack to be installed (see Installing DetectorPack addons).

7.4.17.2 Video stream and scene requirements for pose detection tool

The pose detection tools operation imposes the following requirements:

1. To the video stream from the camera:
   a. The resolution is at least 640x360 pixels. It is also not recommended to use a resolution higher than 1920×1080, since higher resolution does not increase the detection quality, but significantly increases the consumption of resources. The optimal resolution for solving typical tasks is 1280x720.
   b. The frame rate per second in the video stream from the camera is at least 8.
   c. Color image only.
2. To lighting:
   a. Lighting in the scene is at least 50 lux per square meter. In conditions of insufficient or excessive lighting (night or light-striking), stable operation of the video analytics is not guaranteed.
   b. There are no abrupt changes in lighting.
3. To the scene and camera angle:
   a. Moving objects are visually separable from each other.
   b. The background is mostly static and does not change abruptly.
   c. Moving objects are minimally obscured by static objects in the scene (columns, trees, etc.).
   d. The analyzed scene does not have reflective surfaces and sharp shadows from moving objects. If present, they should be masked.
   e. Camera shake does not result in image offsets greater than 1% of the frame size.

Attention!

Correct operation of the pose detection tools is not guaranteed when using a fish-eye lens.

Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation
Objects image requirements for pose detection tool

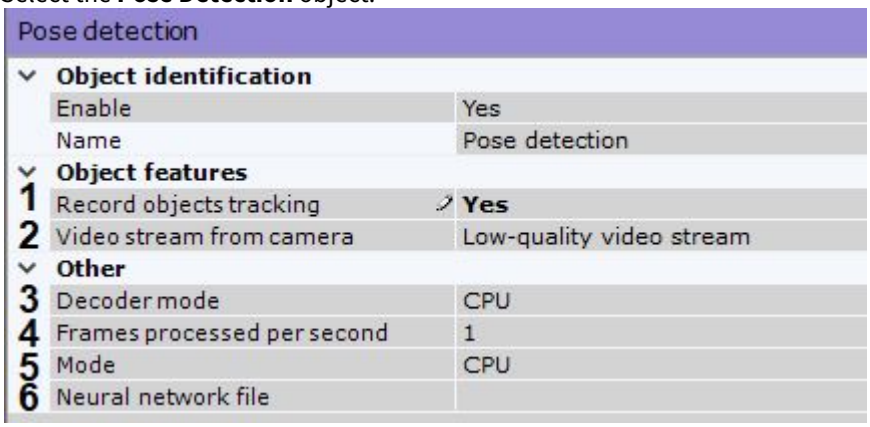
7.4.17.3 Configure Pose Detection

7.4.17.3.1 Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools

Video stream and scene requirements for pose detection tool
Objects image requirements for pose detection tool
Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation

To configure common parameters for pose detection tools, do as follows:

1. Select the **Pose Detection** object.



2. By default, video stream's metadata are recorded in the database. You can disable it by selecting **No** in the **Record object tracking** list (**1**). Video decompression and analysis are used to obtain metadata, which causes high Server load and limits the number of video cameras that can be used on it.
3. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**). Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server.
4. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
5. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**4**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].

   Attention!

   For scene with static people, the fps value should be at least 2. For scene with moving people — at least 4.
   The larger this value, the higher the accuracy of pose detection, but the greater the CPU load. With fps=1, the accuracy will be no less than 70%.
   This parameter varies depending on the object speed of movement. To solve typical tasks, fps value from 3 to 20 is sufficient. Examples:
   - pose detection for moderately moving objects (without sudden movements) — fps=3;
   - pose detection for moving objects — fps=12.

6. Select the processor for the neural network — CPU, one of Nvidia GPUs or one of Intel GPUs (**5**, see Hardware requirements for neural analytics operation).

   Attention!

   If you specify other processing resource than the CPU, the selected device will carry the most of computing load. However, the detection tool will consume CPU as well.

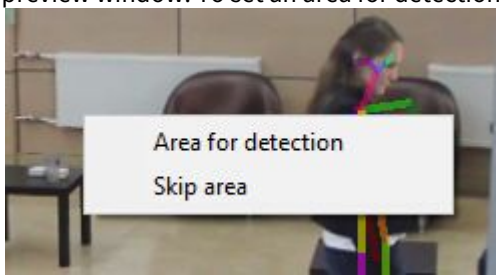
   Attention!

   It may take several minutes to launch the algorithm on an Nvidia GPU after you apply the settings. You can use caching to speed up future launches (see Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics).

   Attention!

   Man-down or sitting-pose detection accuracy may depend on the particular processor. If another selected processor gives less accurate results, set the detection parameters empirically, and configure scene perspective.

7. By default, the entire FoV is an area for detection. If necessary, you can specify the areas for detection and skip areas in the preview window. To set an area for detection, right click anywhere on the image, and select a desired area.

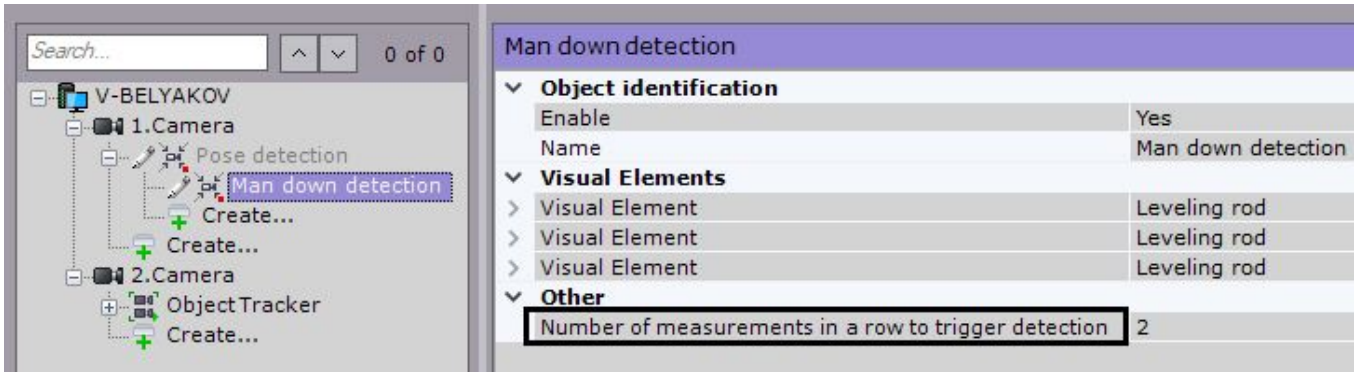


> **Note**
>
> The areas are set the same way as for the Scene Analytics (see Configuring the Detection Zone).

This is how it works:

   a. if you specify areas for detection only, no detection will be performed in the rest of FoV.
   b. if you specify skip areas only, the detection will be performed in the rest of FoV.

8. Select a neural network file (**6**).
9. Select the desired detection tool.



10. Set the minimum number of frames with a human in a pose of interest for triggering the tool.

> **Note**
>
> The default values (2 frames and 1000 milliseconds) indicate that the tool will analyze one frame every second. When a pose is detected in 2 consequent frames, the tool will trigger.

> **Note**
>
> This parameter is not used for masking settings.

11. Click **Apply**.

7.4.17.3.2 Specific settings for People Counter

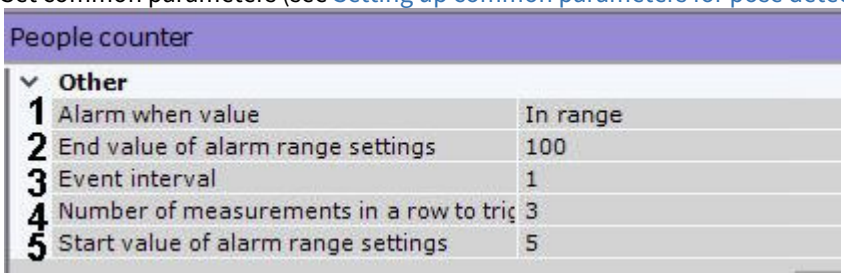
The People Counter uses pose detection metadata.

A macro triggers when the number of individuals in FoV matches pre-defined conditions (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros).

> **Note**
>
> Unlike the Multiple Objects detection tool (see Settings Specific to Multiple objects), the counter generates events of just one type, namely triggering.
> As opposed to Neuralcounter (see Configuring a Neurocounter), People Counter counts just people.

To set up People Counter, do the following:

1. Set common parameters (see Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools).



2. Set the visitor counter triggering condition:
   a. Set the condition polarity, i.e. triggering when the number of visitors in the specified area is within the set range, or out of the range (**1**).
   b. Set the range of number of visitors in FoV (**2**, **5**).
3. Set an interval in seconds between two consecutive triggering of the visitor counter when the number of individuals in FoV continuously matches the condition(s) (**3**).
4. Set the minimum number of frames in which the counter should detect a specified number of people in order to trigger (**4**). The value should be in the range [2; 20].
5. In the preview window, you can set detection zones with the help of anchor points much like privacy masks in Scene Analytics. By default, the entire FoV is a detection zone (see Setting General Zones for Scene Analytics).

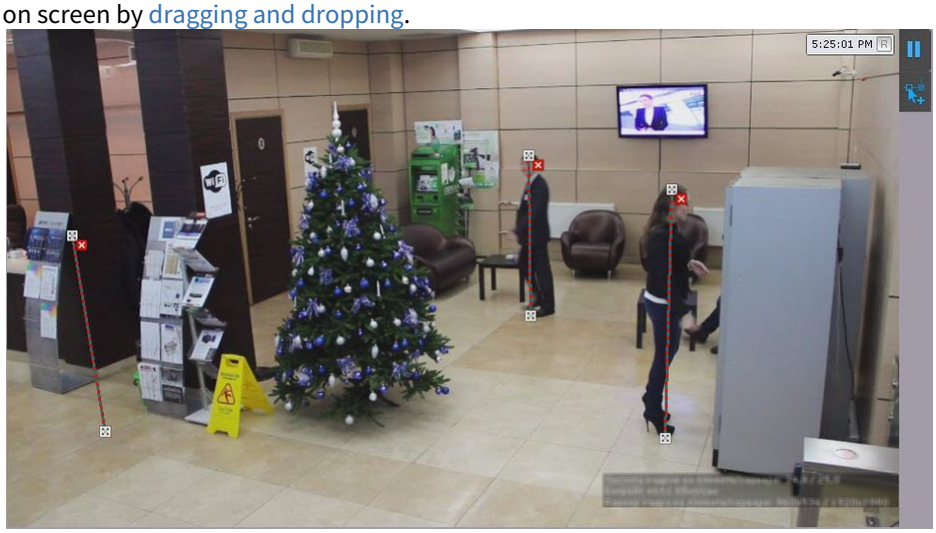
7.4.17.3.3 Specific settings for the Man Down detection tool

> Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools

To detect a lying pose, you have to configure scene perspective first.

Please follow the steps below:

1. Select a detection tool, and click in the preview window.
2. Set the size of the same human figure in different areas of FOV. To create a leveling rod, left-click on the video image to add two anchor points. You should set no less than three leveling rods. The leveling rod height must correspond to a human figure placed in the same point of the scene. You can resize the rod by stretching its anchor points , or move it on screen by dragging and dropping.

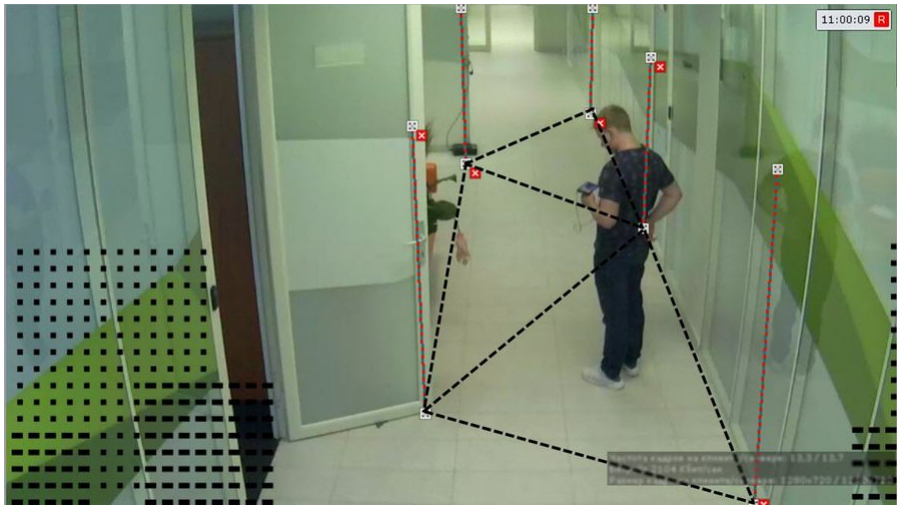


> **Attention!**
>
> When setting up leveling rods, please make sure that the following conditions are met:
> a. all rods have different height;
> b. all rods must be based on the same plane (for example, floor);
> c. in complex scenes where detection accuracy is crucial, we recommend you to add more than 3 rods;

d. in areas where the picture is apparently distorted, place the rods in parallel to known vertical elements (doors, bookcases, etc.).

Attention!

In portrait-oriented scenes (such as store / warehouse aisles, etc.), set the rods in triangles.



Note

For your convenience, you can click the button to freeze the video. To unfreeze, click the button once more.

Note

To delete a rod, click the button.

3. Click **Apply** button.

7.4.17.3.4 Specific settings for the Sitting person detection tool

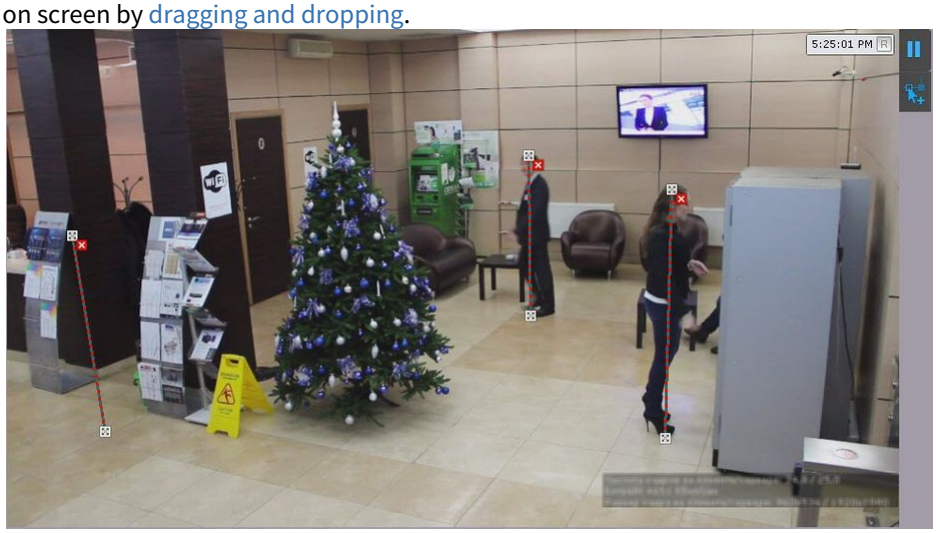
Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools

To detect a sitting pose, you have to configure scene perspective first.

Please follow the steps below:

1. Select a detection tool, and click in the preview window.
2. Set the size of the same human figure in different areas of FOV. To create a leveling rod, left-click on the video image to add two anchor points. You should set no less than three leveling rods. The leveling rod height must correspond to a human figure placed in the same point of the scene. You can resize the rod by stretching its anchor points , or move it

on screen by dragging and dropping.



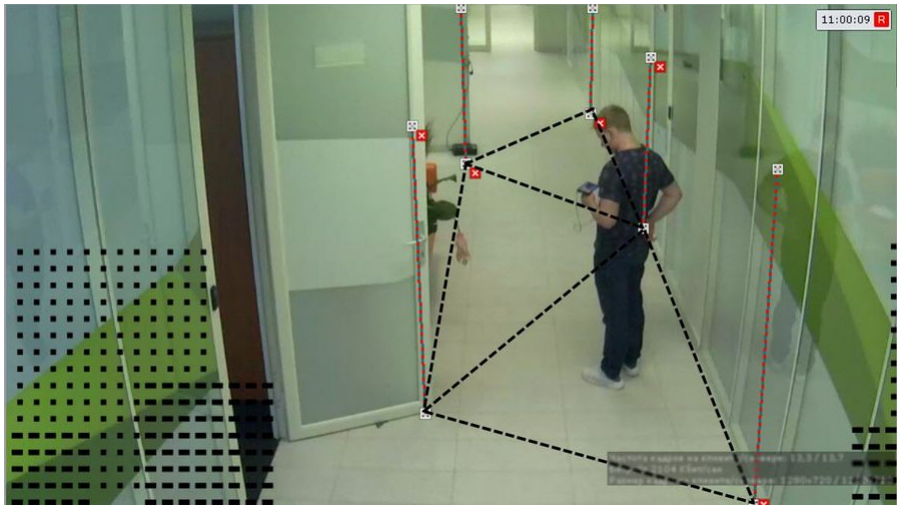
Attention!

When setting up leveling rods, please make sure that the following conditions are met:

a. all rods have different height;
b. all rods must be based on the same plane (for example, floor);
c. in complex scenes where detection accuracy is crucial, we recommend you to add more than 3 rods;
d. in areas where the picture is apparently distorted, place the rods in parallel to known vertical elements (doors, bookcases, etc.).

Attention!

In portrait-oriented scenes (such as store / warehouse aisles, etc.), set the rods in triangles.



Note

For your convenience, you can click the button to freeze the video. To unfreeze, click the button once more.

Note

To delete a rod, click the button.

3. Click **Apply** button.

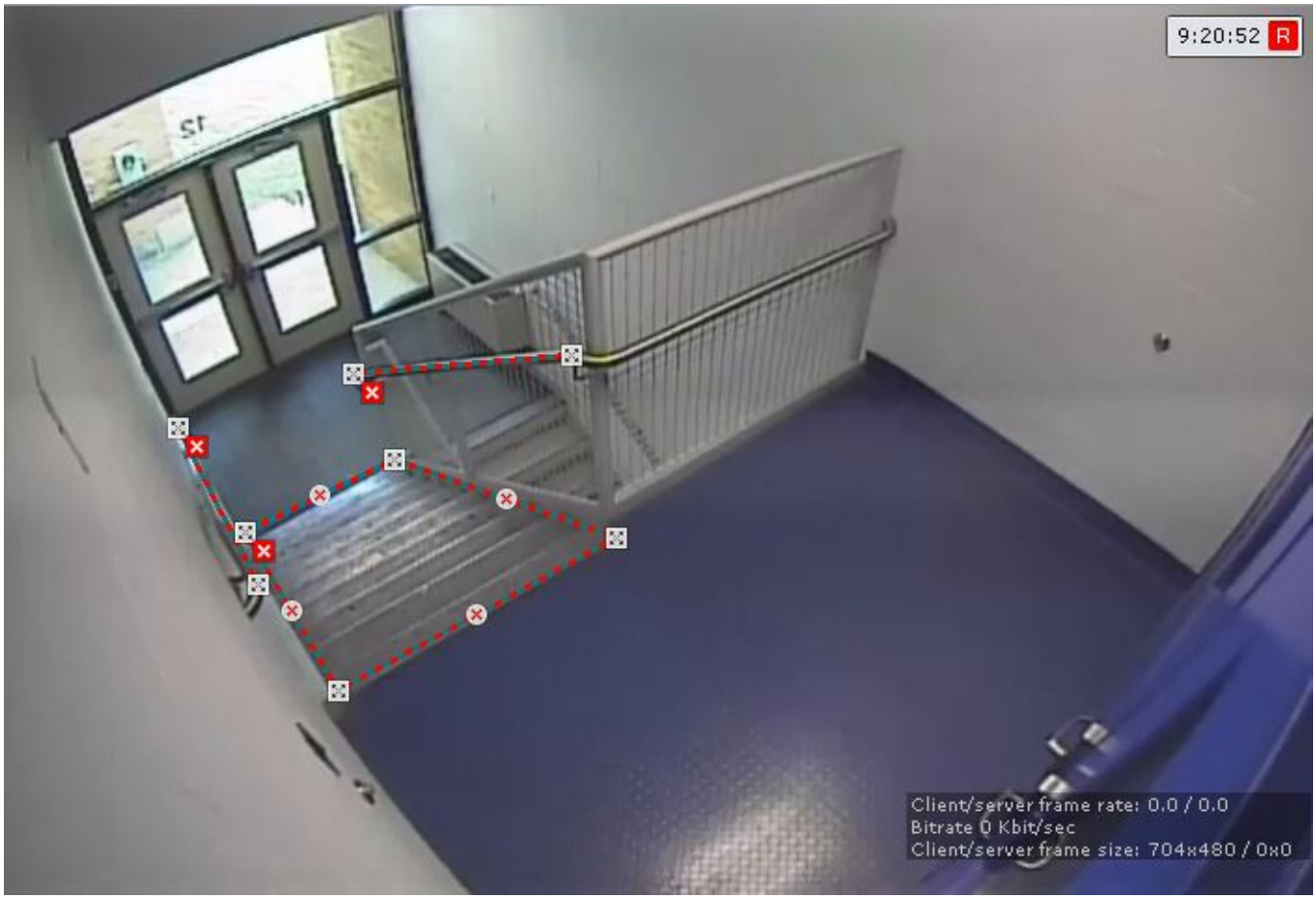
7.4.17.3.5 Specific settings for handrail holding detection

To set up a handrail holding detection tool, do the following:

1. Set common parameters (see Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools).
2. Click anywhere in the Preview window.

3. Mark one or several handrails with lines (**1**).

> **Attention!**
>
> If lens distortion makes the handrail non-linear, use several lines.



4. Set anchor points to specify an area where people must hold handrails (**2**).

7.4.17.3.6 Specific settings for people masking

This tool does not generate any alarms; instead, it uses posture detection metadata to mask individuals:

- on live video;
- on recorded video;
- upon exporting from Archive.

> **Attention!**
>
> Masking function works only for users whose role sets the **View masked video** parameter to **No** (see Creating and configuring roles).

7.4.17.3.7 Specific settings for close-standing people detection

> Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools

By default, the Close-Standing People detection tool triggers when bounding boxes around individuals collide.

You can set another triggering distance by adjusting perspective:

> **Attention!**
>
> For portrait-oriented scenes (such as corridors, warehouse aisles, etc.) perspective adjustment is a must.

1. Select a detection tool, and click in the preview window.
2. Set the size of the same object in different areas of the field of view. To create a calibration length, left-click within the video image in the viewing tile and add two anchor points. Set at least three calibration lengths. You can resize the length

by stretching its anchor points . You can move it on screen by dragging and dropping.

Attention!

Leveling rods should:

a. not be located on the same line;
b. have different height.

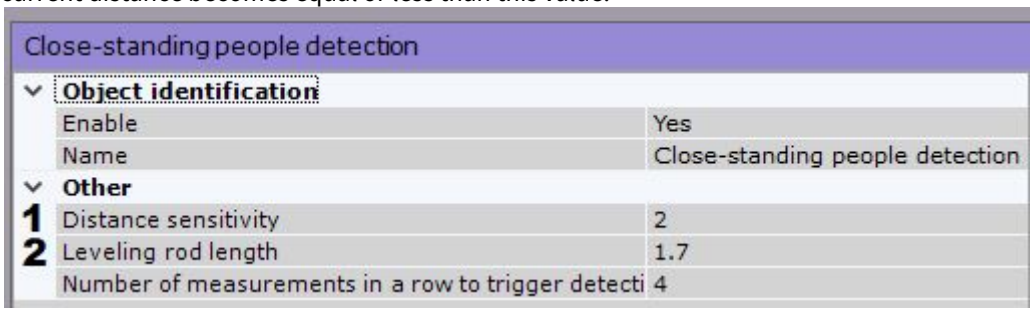
Note

For your convenience, you can click the button and configure the mask on a still frame / snapshot. To undo, click this button again.

Note

To delete it, click the button.

3. Enter a triggering distance value (**1**) in meters into the **Distance Sensitivity** field. The detection tool will trigger if the current distance becomes equal or less than this value.



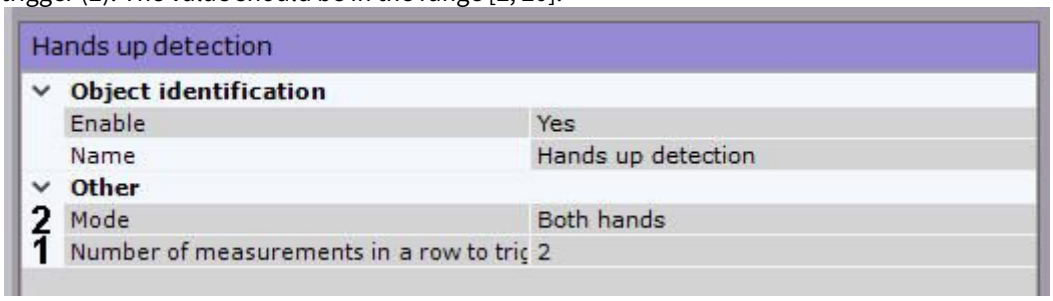
4. Enter the height (in meters) of the leveling rod into the **Leveling Rod Height** field (**2**).

7.4.17.3.8 Specific settings for hands up detection

The hands up detection triggers if a person with one or both hands raised is detected in a given area.

To configure the hands up detection, do the following:

1. Configure general settings (see Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools).
2. Set the minimum number of frames in which the counter should detect a person with a raised hand/hands in order to trigger (**1**). The value should be in the range [2; 20].



3. Set the detection tool operation mode (**2**):
   a. Both hands: triggers only if the person has both hands raised.
   b. One hand: triggers only if the person has any one hand raised.
   c. Only left hand or Only right hand: triggers only if one selected hand is raised.
   d. Left or Right hand: triggers only if the selected hand is raised.

Note

The hands up detection works in the areas for detection and skip areas specified in the Pose Detection (see Setting up common parameters for pose detection tools).

7.4.17.4 Objects image requirements for pose detection tool

To ensure the correct recognition of a person's posture, the following image requirements should be met:

1. The object to be detected is clearly distinguishable by the human eye.
2. The detected object is completely within the frame.
3. The image is not noisy and not distorted by compression algorithm artifacts.
4. The duration of the object's visibility is at least 2 frames.
5. The minimum value of pixel density per meter is observed:

Image resolution	Object type	Minimum pixel density per meter (ratio of the object width in pixels to the object width in meters)	Minimum object size in pixels, width x height
For pose detection tools			
1920x1080	Human	170	~102x309
1280x720	Human	128	~77x233
640x360	Human	80	~48x145
For classical sub-detectors* pose detection tools			
1920x1080	Human	100	~45x187
1280x720	Human	68	~31x134
640x360	Human	35	~15x65

Video stream and scene requirements for pose detection tool

* see information about classical sub-detectors here: Functions of Scene Analytics

7.4.18 Retail Analytics

7.4.18.1 Functions of retail analytics

Name of a Detection Tool object	Detection description
Queue detection	Triggers if the specified number of people in the queue is exceeded
Visitors counter	This detector monitors the number of visitors within the protected area, and triggers if the specified count is exceeded.

7.4.18.2 Camera requirements for queue detection

The following table contains the requirements for the cameras used by the queue detection tool:

Camera	• Resolution: 720 x 576 (CIF4), 360 x 288 (CIF1) is also allowed to use. Increasing the resolution above CIF4 does not improve the operating quality of the recognition algorithm • Frames per second: 6 or more • Color: color or greyscale • No camera jitter is allowed
Illumination	• Best recognition results are achieved under moderate illumination. If the scene is under- or over-illuminated, the recognition accuracy may drop down • Sharp changes in illumination may lead to improper operation of analytics

Scene and camera angle	• Vertically downward position of the camera is the best for the purpose. The closer to vertical, the more accurate the estimation • Camera FOV dimensions: minimum 3x3 m (6x6 humans), optimal 4x4 m (8x8 humans), maximum 8x8 m (16x16 humans) • The background should be primarily static and should not undergo sudden changes • Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics • Analytics may not work correctly if there are periodic movements of the background objects in the camera FOV (leafage, TV screens, etc.)
Images of objects	• Image quality: the image should be clear, with no visible compression artifacts • Dimensions of a human in scene: bounding rectangle has to occupy from 0.25% to 10% of the frame area

7.4.18.3 Camera requirements for Visitor Counter operation

The following table contains the requirements for cameras to enable the effective operation of the visitor counter:

Camera	• Resolution: 720 x 576 (CIF4) or 360 x 288 (CIF1) pixel resolution. Using pixel resolutions higher than CIF4 do not lead to higher recognition accuracy. • Frames per second: 25. • Color: color camera is obligatory. • No camera jitter is allowed.
Illumination:	• Best recognition results are achieved under moderate illumination. If the scene is under- or over-illuminated, the recognition accuracy may drop down. • Sharp changes in illumination may lead to improper operation of analytics.
Scene and viewing angle:	• Vertically downward position is the best for the purpose. The closer to vertical, the more accurate counting. • Camera FOV dimensions: min. 2 x 2m, optimal 4 x 4m. • The background must be primarily static and not undergo sudden changes. • The counting area must not contain any moving objects except for humans. • Reflective surfaces and harsh shadows from moving objects can affect the quality of analytics. • Leafage, TV screens or any periodic object movement in the background may cause analytics glitches. • If possible, avoid obstruction of the humans by static objects such as pillars, trees, etc.
Images of objects within the scene:	• Image quality: the image must be clear and sharp with no visible compression artifacts. • The allowable size of a person is described in Requirements for the person size in the frame.

Other requirements:	• The visitors must not move in a continuous flow; smaller groups of humans are counted correctly.

7.4.18.3.1 Requirements for the person size in the frame

The person size is the area of the rectangle circumscribed around the person, as a percentage of the frame area. To ensure the correct operation of the detection tool, the it is necessary to select the size of a person in the range from the minimum value, depending on the frame width, to 60% of the frame width.

> **Note**
>
> Frame width means not the original resolution of the video image, but the compressed size that depends on the **Frame size change** parameter (see Configuring the visitors counter).

The minimum size of a person, depending on the frame width, is given in the table:

Frame width, px	Minimum size of a person in %
320	18,8
360	16,7
384	15,7
400	15
426	14,1
512	11,8
640	9,4
800	7,5
832	7,3
854	7,1
960	6,3
1024	5,9
1120	5,4
1152	5,2
1280	4,7
1440	4,2
1600	3,8
1792	3,4
1856	3,3
1920	3,2
2048	3,0
2304	2,7

Frame width, px	Minimum size of a person in %
2560	2,4
2732	2,2
2800	2,2
3200	1,9
3840	1,6
4096	1,5
6400	1
8192	0,8

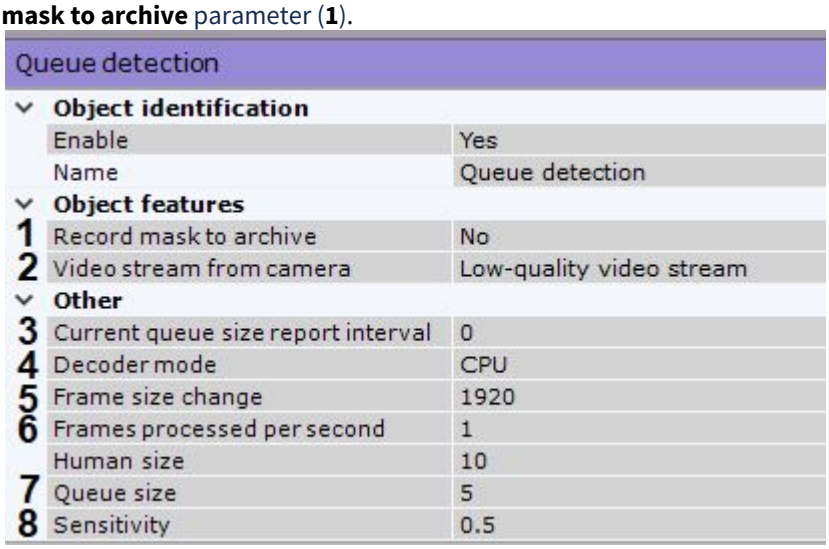
7.4.18.4 Configuring retail analytics detection tools

7.4.18.4.1 Configuring the queue detection tool

Camera requirements for queue detection

To configure the queue detection tool, do the following:

1. Enable the detection tool — select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter.
2. Enter the name of the detection tool or leave the default name.
3. To record mask (highlighting of queues/lines) to archive (see Extra information overlay (Masks)), select **Yes** for the **Record mask to archive** parameter (**1**).



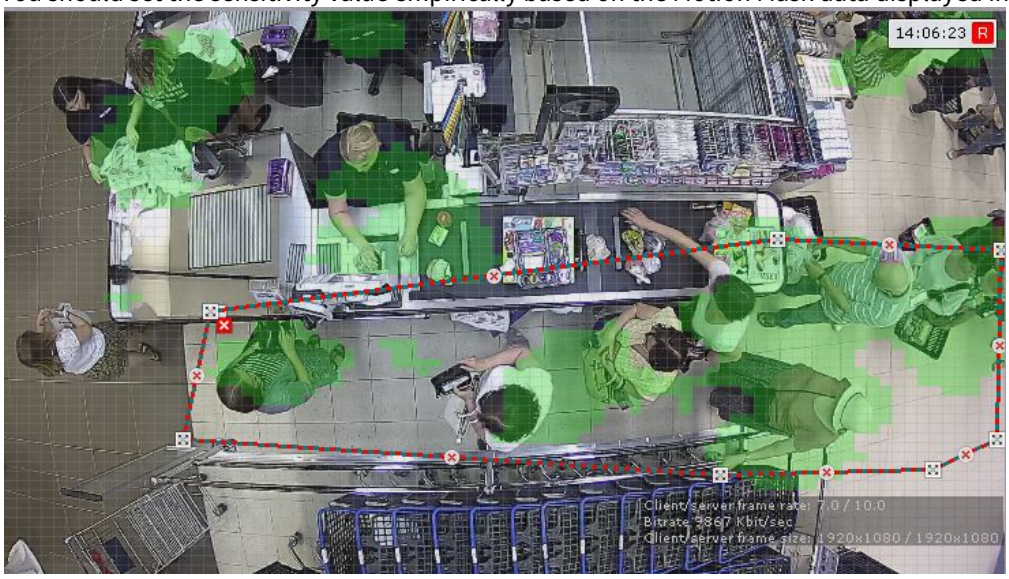
4. If a camera supports multistreaming, select the stream for which detection is needed (**2**). Selecting a low-quality video stream allows reducing the load on the Server.
5. Set an event transmission interval in seconds for sending data to the AxxonData report subsystem (see Queue length report) if the queue length exceeds the set limit (**3**). **Zero** value means no transmission of events.
6. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**4**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
7. By default, the frame is compressed during the analysis to the specified size (**5**, default size is 1920 pixels on the larger side). In this case, the following algorithm is used:
    a. if the original resolution on the larger side of the frame is greater than the one specified in the **Frame size change** field, then it is divided in half;
    b. if the resulting resolution is less than the specified one, then the algorithm stops and this resolution is used;

c. if the resulting resolution is still greater than the specified one, then it is divided in half until it becomes less.

> **Note**
>
> For example, the original video resolution is 2048*1536, the specified value is **1000**.
> In this case, the original resolution will be halved 2 times (512*384), because after the first division, the value on the larger side of the frame will be greater than the specified value (1024 > 1000).

> **Note**
>
> To avoid detection errors on streams with a higher resolution, it is recommended that compression be reduced.

8. Set the interval in seconds for sending events to the AxxonData reporting subsystem (see Queue length report) if the queue size exceeds the specified value (6). If the value is set to **0**, then events will not be sent.
9. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**6**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100]. The higher the value of this parameter, the greater the CPU load.
10. Specify the number of people in the queue to trigger the alarm when exceeded (**7**). The value should be within the range of [2; 20].
11. Specify the detection tool sensitivity in standard units from 0 to 1 (**8**). The higher the sensitivity, the smaller the disturbances analyzed by the queue detection algorithm. Alternatively, the lower the sensitivity, the greater changes in scene are processed by the queue detection tool.
    You should set the sensitivity value empirically based on the Motion Mask data displayed in the Preview window.



12. In the Preview window, you can set the detection zones with the help of anchor points much like privacy masks in Scene Analytics.
13. Click

and set the approximate size of a human. You can do so by dragging the corners of the rectangular area.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended to set the minimum size of a human graphically, the numbers in the **Human size** field are conditional values.

14. Click **Apply**.

The queue detection tool is now configured. When the detection tool is triggered, the following events are generated:

```
Camera "6. Camera". Detection "Queue detection" triggered, quaue (min.: 6, max.: 6)
```

where min. and max. is estimated queue length.

7.4.18.4.2 Configuring the visitors counter

Camera requirements for Visitor Counter operation

Attention!

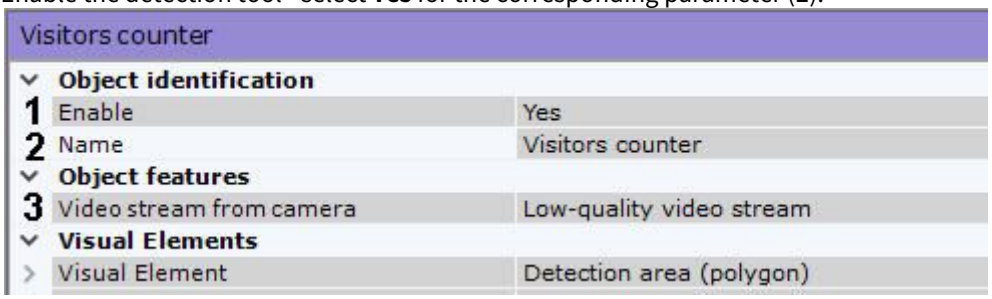
The visitor counter is better fit for producing average figures than exact values.

Attention!

We cannot guarantee correct operation of the visitors counter with fish-eye video cameras.

To configure the visitors counter, do the following:

1. Enable the detection tool - select **Yes** for the corresponding parameter (**1**).



2. Enter the name of the detection tool or leave the default name (**2**).
3. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream to be used for detection. Select a low-quality video stream to reduce Server load (**3**).
4. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**4**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with NVidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.

5. By default, the frame is compressed during the analysis to the specified size (**5**, default size is 1920 pixels on the larger side). In this case, the following algorithm is used:

	Other	
4	Decoder mode	CPU
5	Frame size change	640
6	Frames processed per second	25
7	Human size	20
8	Number of people indoor	0
9	People indoor counter	No
10	People indoor counter threshold	10000

   a. if the original resolution on the larger side of the frame is greater than the one specified in the **Frame size change** field, then it is divided in half;
   b. if the resulting resolution is less than the specified one, then the algorithm stops and this resolution is used;
   c. if the resulting resolution is still greater than the specified one, then it is divided in half until it becomes less.

   > **Note**
   >
   > For example, the original video resolution is 2048*1536, the specified value is **1000**.
   > In this case, the original resolution will be halved 2 times (512*384), because after the first division, the value on the larger side of the frame will be greater than the specified value (1024 > 1000).

   > **Note**
   >
   > To avoid detection errors on streams with a higher resolution, it is recommended that compression be reduced.

6. Set the frame rate value for the detection tool to process (**6**). This value should be in the range [0.016, 100].
7. By default, the detection tool outputs the *Camera. Visitor access in the direction of "Entrance"* and *Camera. Visitor access in the direction of "Exit"* events. If total footfall and visitor number control / exceeding notification is required, do the following:
   a. Select **Yes** for the **People indoor counter** parameter (**9**)**.**
   b. Enter the current number of visitors within the area (**8**).
   c. Set the threshold value for the visitor counter; exceeding this limit will generate the corresponding event (**10**).
8. In the Preview window, set the detection area. It is divided to two sectors, #1 and #2. When an object moves from #2 to #1, the system treats it as entry; alternatively, #1 to #2 is treated as exit.
   To configure the sectors, you can drag them by corners or sides.

To swap sectors, just click inside one of them.

> **Note**
>
> To show / hide sectors in the Preview window, click the button.

9. Click

and specify the size of a person. You can do so by dragging the corners of the rectangular area. You can also set the the size of a person manually. To do so, in the **Human size** field (**7**), specify the area of the rectangle circumscribed around the person as a percentage of the frame area. Note that in this case, in order to calculate the size of a person, the compressed frame is taken into account (see step 5), and not the original video stream.

> **Attention!**
>
> When specifying the size of a person, consider the Requirements for the person size in the frame.

10. Click **Apply**.

Configuration of the visitors counter is now complete.

7.4.19 Water Level Detection

7.4.19.1 Camera requirements for water level detection

To establish accurate results, please ensure the following:

1. Only color cameras are used.
2. Video resolution is no less than 640x360.
3. No glares or shadows are cast over the measurement scale.

7.4.19.2 Configuring water level detection

Camera requirements for water level detection

To configure the water level detection, do the following:

1. Select the created detection tool.

2. To record Water Level Detection readings to archive, set **Yes** for the **Record Mask to Archive** parameter (**1**).

Water level detection		
1	Record mask to archive	No
2	Video stream from camera	Low-quality video stream
	Visual Elements	
	Visual Element	
	Visual Element	Trigger level
	Visual Element	Trigger level
	Other	
3	Decoder mode	CPU
4	Frame size change	1920
5	Mode	CPU
6	Neural network	No
7	Neural network file	
8	Visible bottom value	0
9	Visible top value	1

3. If the camera supports multistreaming, select the stream to be used for detection. Select a low-quality video stream to reduce Server load (**2**).
4. Select a processing resource for decoding video streams (**3**). When you select a GPU, a stand-alone graphics card takes priority (when decoding with Nvidia NVDEC chips). If there's no appropriate GPU, the decoding will use the Intel Quick Sync Video technology. Otherwise, CPU resources will be used for decoding.
5. Analyzed framed are scaled down to a specified resolution (**4**, 1280 pixels on the longer side). This is how it works:
   a. If the longer side of the source image exceeds the value specified in the **Frame size change** field, it is divided by two.
   b. If the resulting resolution falls below the specified value, it is used further.
   c. If the resulting resolution still exceeds the specified limit, it is divided by two, etc.

   > **Note**
   >
   > For example, the source image resolution is 2048 * 1536, and the limit is set to **1000**.
   > In this case, the source resolution will be divided two times (down to 512 * 384): after the first division, the number of pixels on the longer side exceeds the limit (1024 > 1000).

6. Choose a processor to run detection on (**5**). Non-neural detection may be run on the CPU only.
7. Use the neural network if the tool fails to detect water level due to transparency of water. Please follow the steps below:
   a. Select **Yes** for the **Neural Network** parameter (**6**).
   b. Select the neural network file (**7**).
8. On the measurement scale (**8**, **9**), set the upper and lower visible limits in normal conditions.
9. Move the anchor points in FoV:7
   a. to set the measurement scale;

Attention!

Upper and lower limits of the measurement scale must match the actual settings (see paragraph 4).

Note

Water level sensor is shown In the lower left corner. If the sensor is blue, the water level is below High and Critical. If the sensor is yellow, the water level is High. A red icon means a level above Critical.

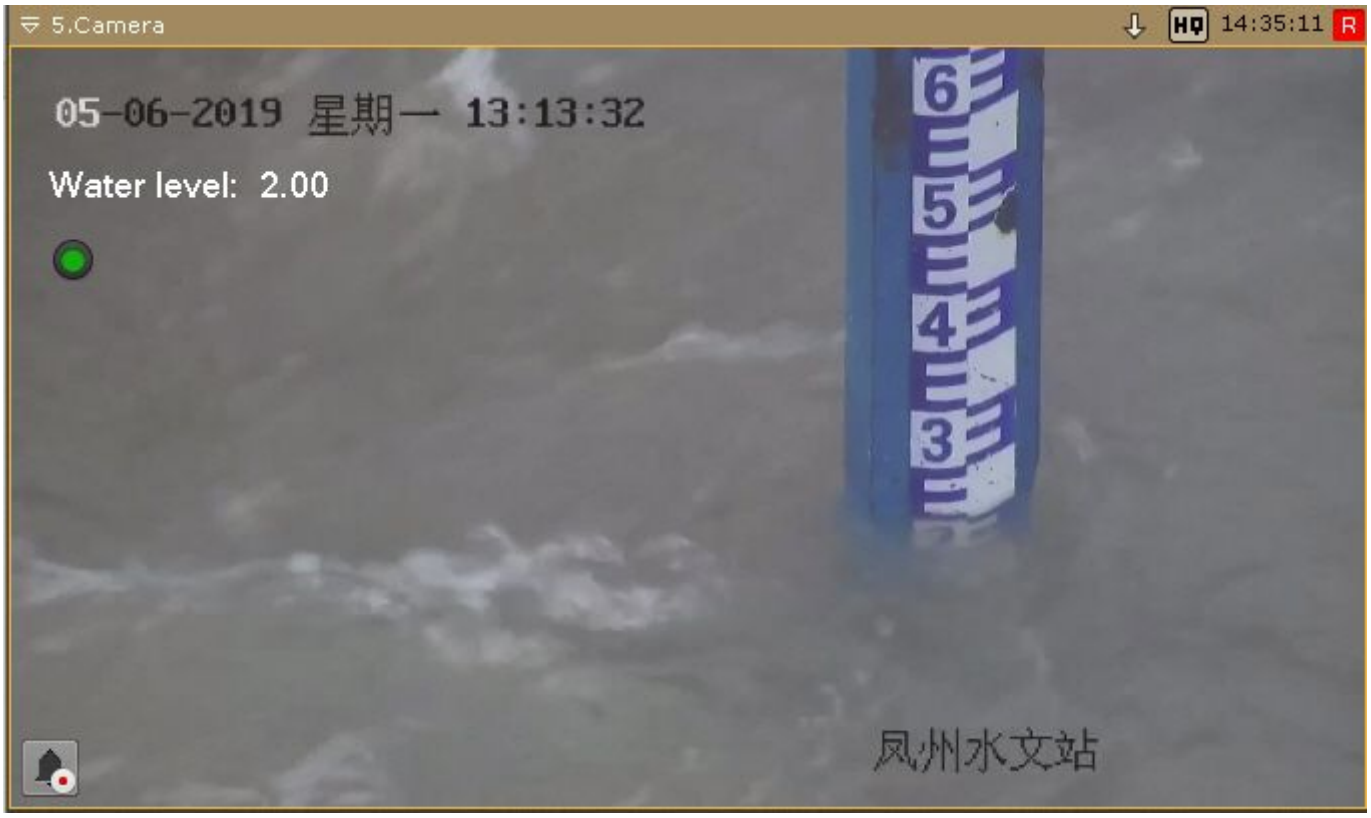
b. draw a line to set the upper limit for water level upon reaching which the detection tool triggers an alarm
c. draw a line to set the upper limit for water level upon reaching which the detection tool highlights the sensor icon in the Camera Window with yellow color.

10. Click the **Apply** button.

When you have created a detection tool, you can see a sensor on the layout in the camera window.

If the sensor icon is green , the water level is lower than both critical and warning marks. If the icon is yellow , the level is somewhere between critical and warning. A red icon means a level above critical.

You can also display numerical value of current water levels for the detector (see Configuring display of water level detection).



7.4.20 Embedded Detection Tools

By the date the documentation in created, the *Axxon Next* software package includes integrated analytics for multiple video cameras (see Drivers Pack release notes).

If *Axxon Next* supports built-in analytics for a device, then detectors can be created (see Creating Detection Tools).

Note

Some devices may have issues with interdependent embedded analytics. If there is already a relevant detection tool in *Axxon Next*, you can add another one, but it will not work.

7.4.20.1 Embedded Temperature Detection Tool

Axxon Next supports selected models of thermal cameras with an embedded temperature detection tool (the Drivers Pack documentation, **body temperature detection**). This detection tool recognizes human faces on video, and performs temperature measurement on them.

Normally, you should set up a detection tool as follows:

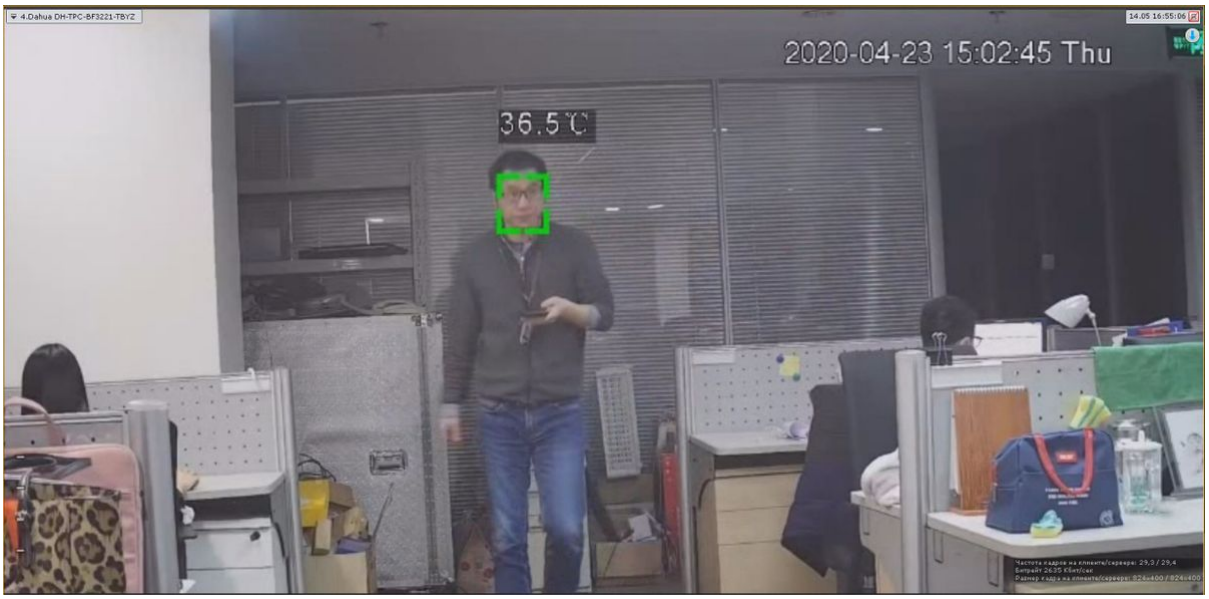
1. Create a detection tool (see Creating Detection Tools).
2. Using the camera manufacturer's documentation, set up the detection tool in the Axxon Next VMS.

   Attention!

   As a rule, a camera requires specifying the temperature threshold, upon reaching which the detection tool would trigger an alarm.

3. If required, set up macros to perform pre-defined actions upon triggering the detector (see Configuring Macros and Counters).

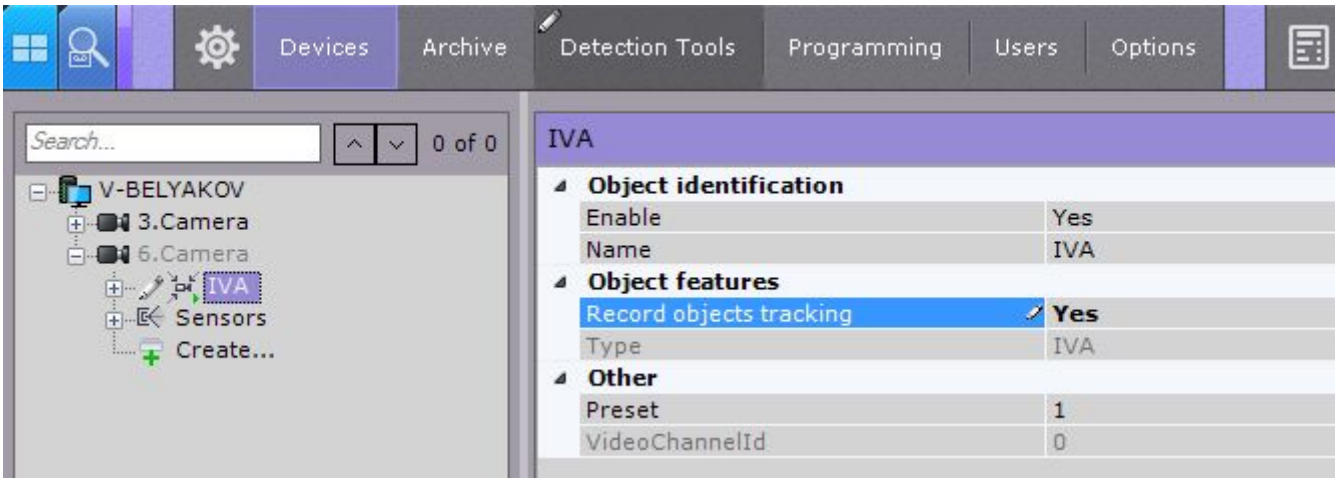
Some cameras are capable to display a bounding box over the facial image along with corresponding temperature readings. If this option is available, it can be activated via the web interface of a particular camera.



7.4.20.2 Obtaining metadata

Axxon Next is also able to obtain metadata directly from certain video cameras. For example, metadata can be received from a Bosch IVA system.

To receive metadata from a Bosch IVA, you need to create an **IVA** object and select **Yes** in the **Record objects tracking** list.



7.4.20.3 ANPR

The VMS can process ANPR data from some cameras' on-board analytics.

> **Note**
>
> Please contact technical support https://support.axxonsoft.com/ for a list of cameras with this feature.

Generally, when configuring the embedded analytics you must follow official documentation for the corresponding video camera or parameter description in the *Axxon Next* interface.

Motion Mask

If the camera supports Motion Mask, then when you configure VMD, it will be displayed in the preview window.

If there is motion, but it does not exceed the threshold value (because of the detection sensitivity), the mask cells are colored green. If motion triggers VMD, the cells turn red.

7.4.20.4 AxxonSoft tracking in Axis devices

You can use analytics from AxxonSoft (Configuring Scene Analytics Detection Tools) on Axis devices.

> **Note**
>
> This option is available for all Axis devices on the following hardware platforms:

- MIPS (ARTPEC-4 and ARTPEC-5 CPUs)
- ARMv7 (ARTPEC-6 and ARTPEC-7 CPUs).

For full list of setup parameters, refer to the AxxonSoft Tracker help.

All CPU heavy analytics and metadata generation tasks are delegated to the camera in this case.

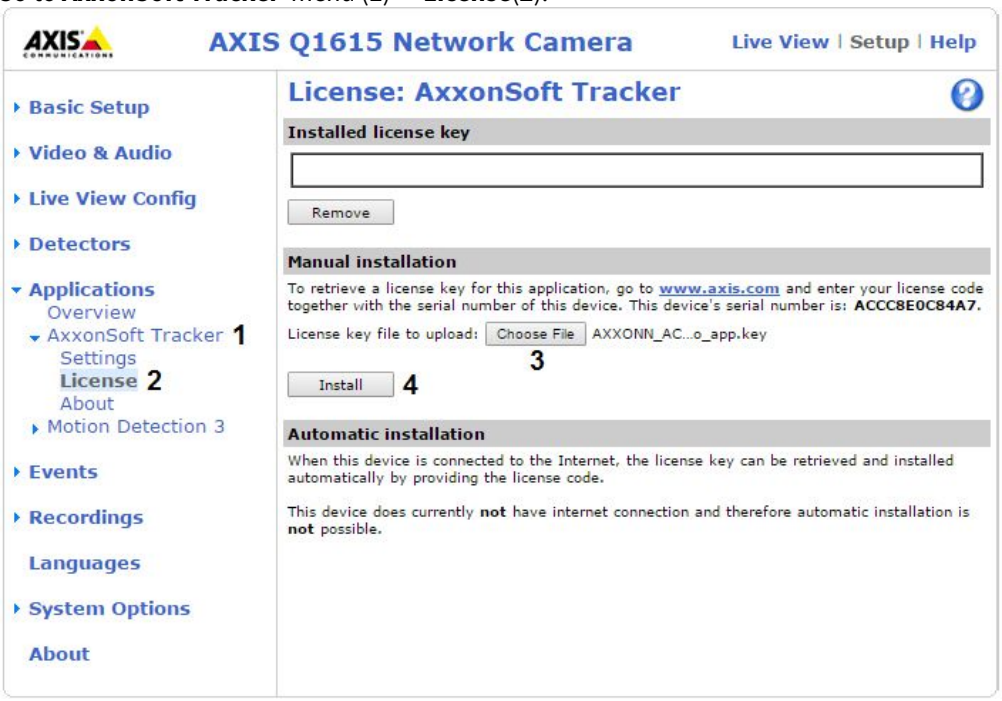
To do this:

1. Go to the device's web interface.
2. Select the **Setup** menu (**1**) -> **Applications** (**2**).

3. Select the ACAP application (**3**) and click **Upload the Package** (**4**).

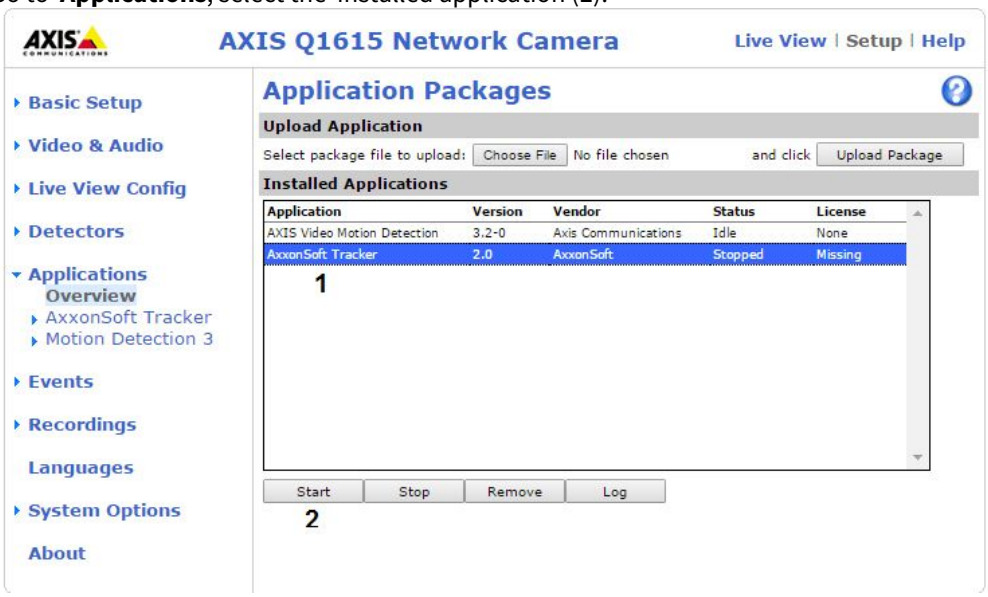
> **Important!**
>
> For application, contact AxxonSoft help-desk. You will be given a license code that is to be registered along with camera's MAC address on Axis website in order to get the license file.

4. Go to **AxxonSoft Tracker** menu (**1**) -> **License**(**2**).

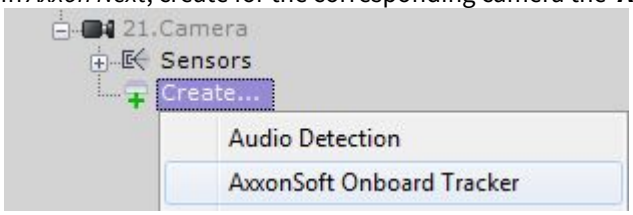


5. Select the license file (**3**).

6. Click **Install** (**4**).
7. Go to **Applications**, select the installed application (**1**).



8. Click **Start** (**2**).
9. In *Axxon Next*, create for the corresponding camera the **AxxonSoft Onboard tracker** object.



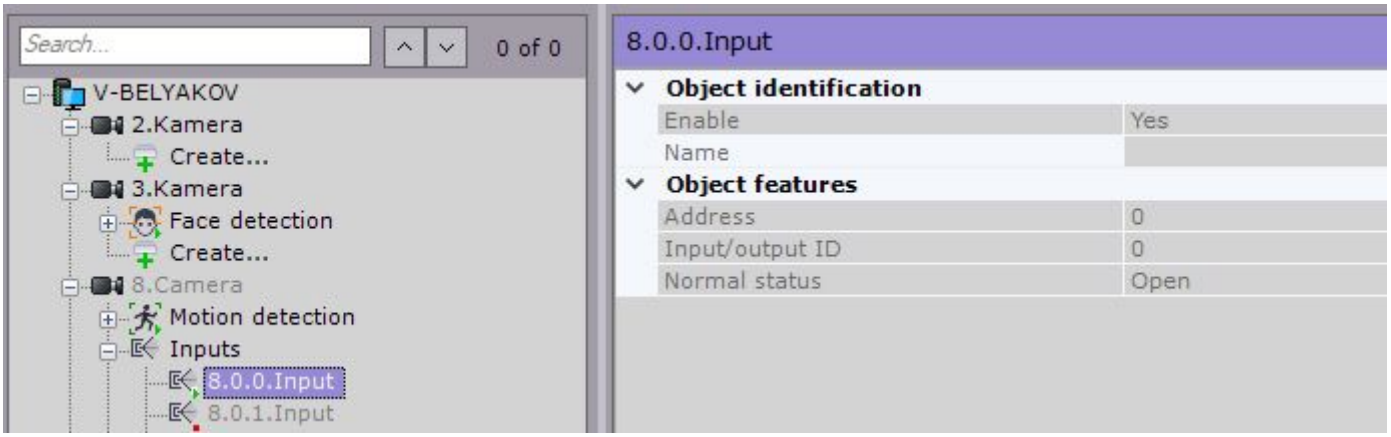
10. Configure the tracker and create the required detection tools.

> **Note**
>
> You can configure the **AxxonSoft Onboard tracker** object similar to the General information on Scene Analytics. You cannot configure perspective for solution based on Axis devices.

7.4.21 Configuring Inputs

After becoming enabled on the **Devices** tab, the **Input** object appears on the **Detection Tools** tab (see the section The Input Object)**.**

Check the functioning of the Input in the **Devices** tab (see the section The Input Object). The **detection properties** field in the **Detection Tools tab** duplicates the settings entered in the **Devices** tab under **Settings** and is not editable.



Perform the follow actions for the **Input detection tool**, on the **Detection Tools tab**:

1. Check triggering of the detection tool with the help of the Triggers ribbon (optional) (see the section Checking the Triggering of a Detection Tool.
2. Set the rules to be automatically executed when the detection tool is triggered (see the section titled Automatic Rules).

7.4.22 Checking the Triggering of a Detection Tool

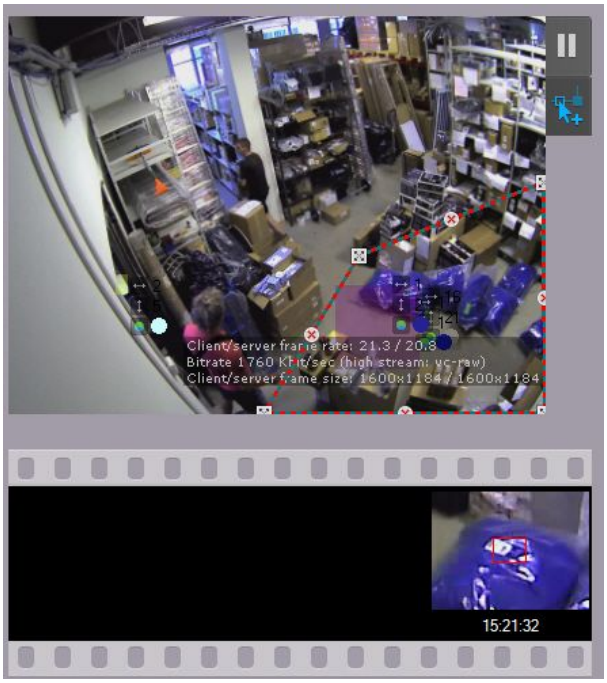
You can check the triggering of detection tools in the **Detection Tools tab**.

To use this option you must perform the following steps:

1. In the Detection Tools list, highlight the detection tool object whose triggering you need to check.

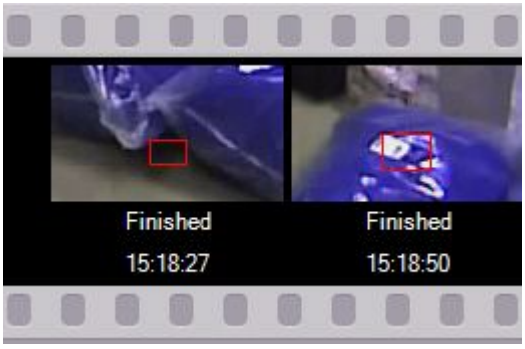
> **Attention!**
>
> The Detection Tool object should be enabled and configured

2. Produce an event whose occurrence should trigger the detection tool: motion in the frame, turning the video camera, providing sound to an audio device, etc.
3. If the detection tool is configured correctly, video image frames from the video camera corresponding to the detection tool will be displayed on the trigger ribbon with the time they were received indicated.



VMS checks the on / off status of detection tools when they triggered and stopped. Not applicable to detection of: quality loss, position change, disappearance of an object, motion stop and ANPR.

After the end of triggering, you get the **Finished** message**.**

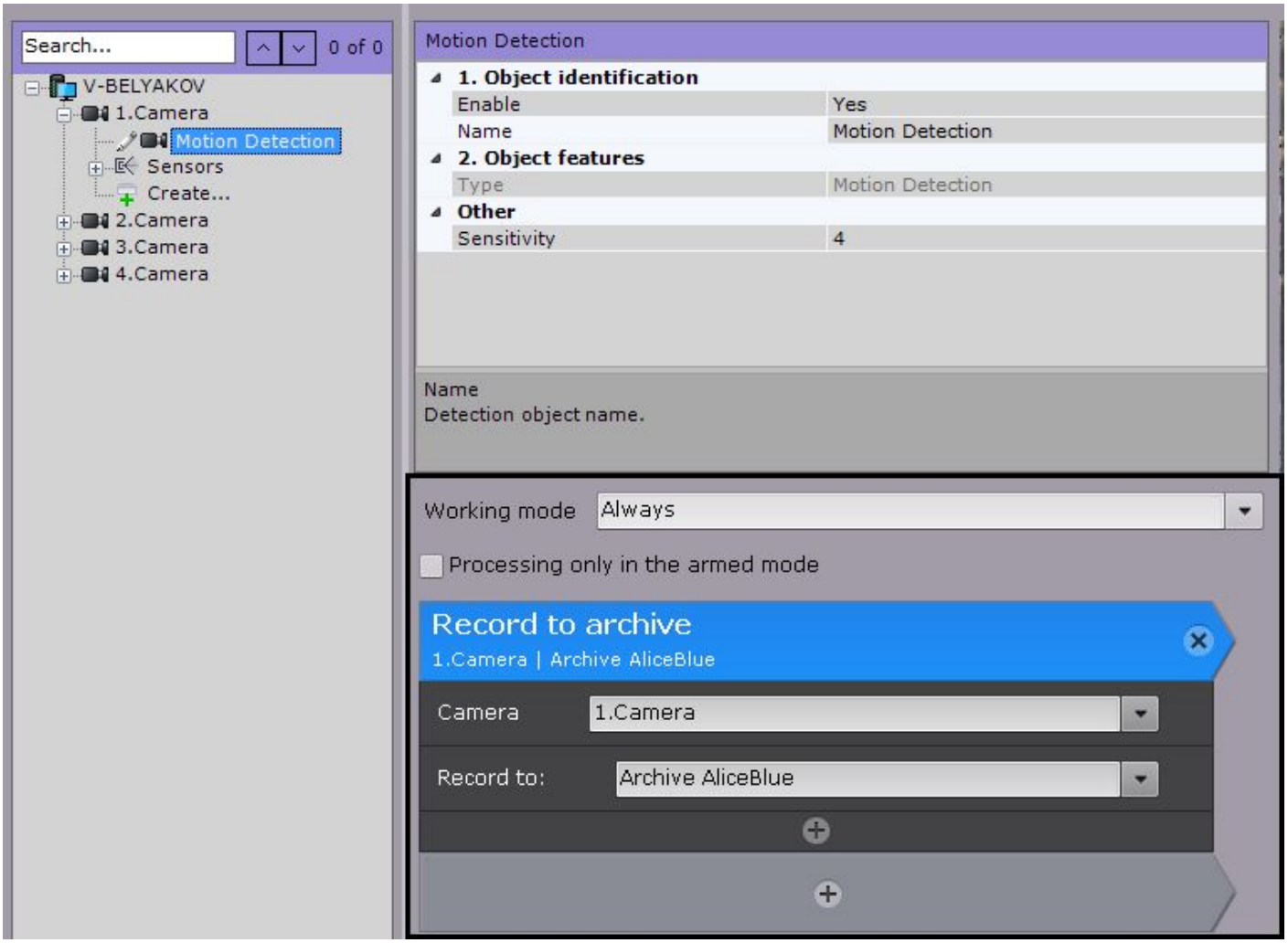


Checking the triggering of a detection tool is now complete.

7.4.23 Automatic Rules

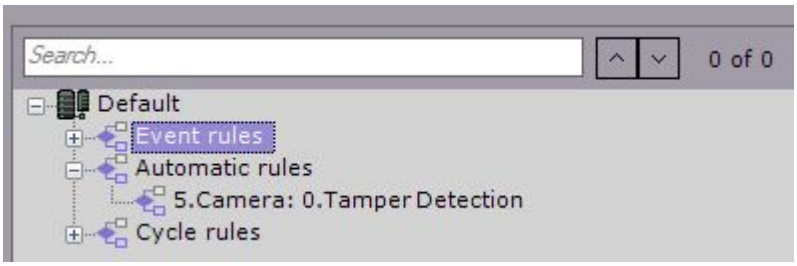
Automatic rules are basic macros: particular actions that are performed when a detection tool is triggered (see Configuring Macros and Counters). One or multiple automatic rules can be set for each detection tool.

The interface window for configuring automatic rules is shown when any detection tool is selected.



Configuring automatic rules and their mode of operation is the same as configuring macros (see Configuring Macros and Counters).

Created automatic rules are displayed in the corresponding list under the **Programming** tab.



Note

When you create the Record to archive automatic rule, the recording stops when VMD (see Configuring Scene Analytics Detection Tools) triggering stops

7.4.24 Acceleration of the neural network analytics launch on GPU

After the Server is restarted, it may take several minutes for the neural network analytics algorithms to launch on NVIDIA GPU. This time is needed to optimize neural network modules for a specific type of GPU used.

You can use the caching feature so that this operation is performed only once. Caching saves the optimization result to your hard drive and uses it on the next launches of neural network analytics.

To enable caching, create the GPU_CACHE_DIR system variable and in its value specify the existing folder where the optimization result will be stored (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable).

The approximate cache size will depend on the number of neural networks used and their type, the minimum cache size is 70 MB.

Attention!

This feature works on a trial basis.

7.4.25 Configuring the acceleration of GPU-based neuroanalytics

It may take several minutes to launch neuroanalytics on an NVIDIA GPU after Server reboot. During this time, neuromodels are optimized for the current GPU type.

You can use caching to do this only once. Cashed optimization models are saved on the hard disk and used for next runs of analytics.

To activate caching, create the GPU_CACHE_DIR system variable and specify in its value the existing folder where the optimization models will be stored (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable).

The cache size depends on the number of neural networks used and their type, the minimum size is 70 MB.

Attention!

This function works in beta mode.

7.5 Configuring Macros and Counters

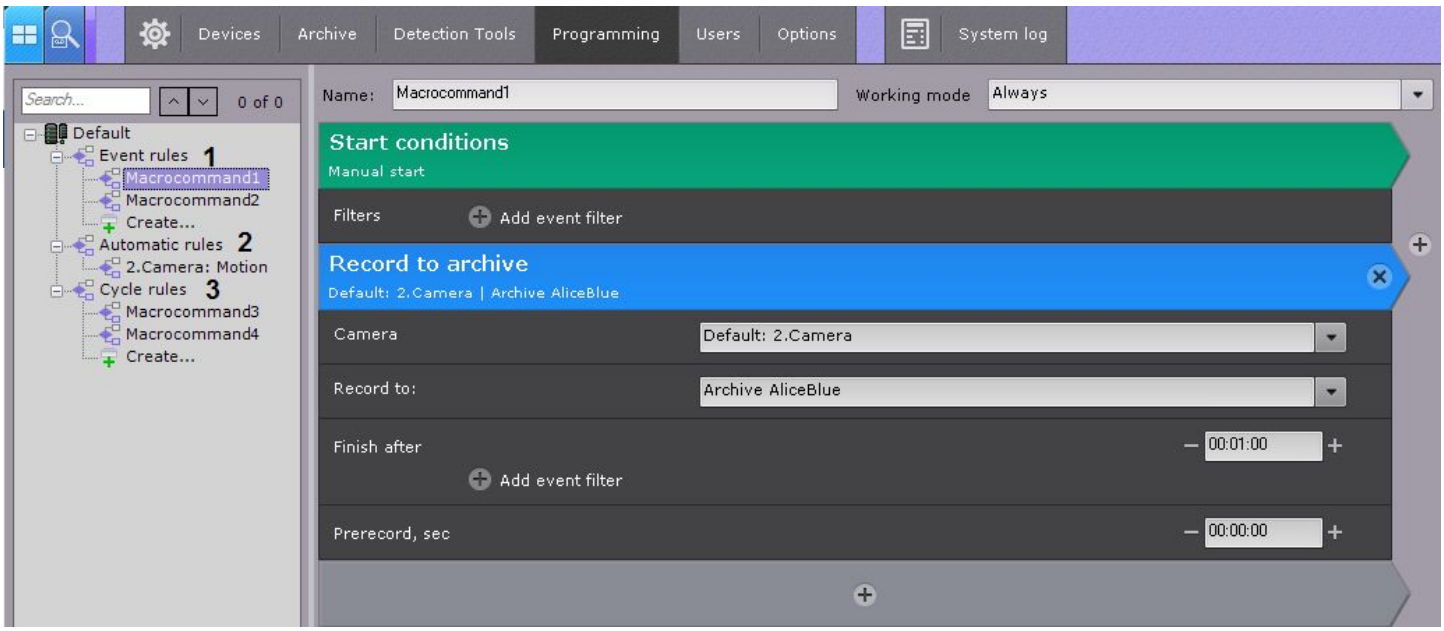
7.5.1 General information about the macros

Macro is a tool intended for configuring system responses to events. System response may involve one or several different actions.

Attention!

You can apply macros within a single Axxon domain only. Macro conditions and actions cannot include objects from another Axxon domain.

You can create and edit macros in the **Programming** tab.



Macros can be of 3 types:

1. Event-driven (**1**). These macros can be run automatically on detection / event or initiated by the user. When triggered, the commands in the macro are executed once.
2. Automatic Rules (**2**).
3. Cyclic (**3**). Cyclic macros are run on the first Server in the Axxon domain (alphabetical order) available at the time of launching the macro. Cyclic macros are executed immediately after you save them unless they have been created outside the time schedule for commands (see Create Macros). After completing all the commands, the macro is automatically restarted. Cyclic macros cannot be started by the user. Additionally, a cyclic macro can be launched at a specified time interval, or at a random moment within the specified time interval. When triggered, the commands in such a macro are executed once.

   Attention!

   If an event occurs while the cyclic macro is busy, it is skipped.
   If an event occurs while the event-driven macro is busy, it is processed as configured.

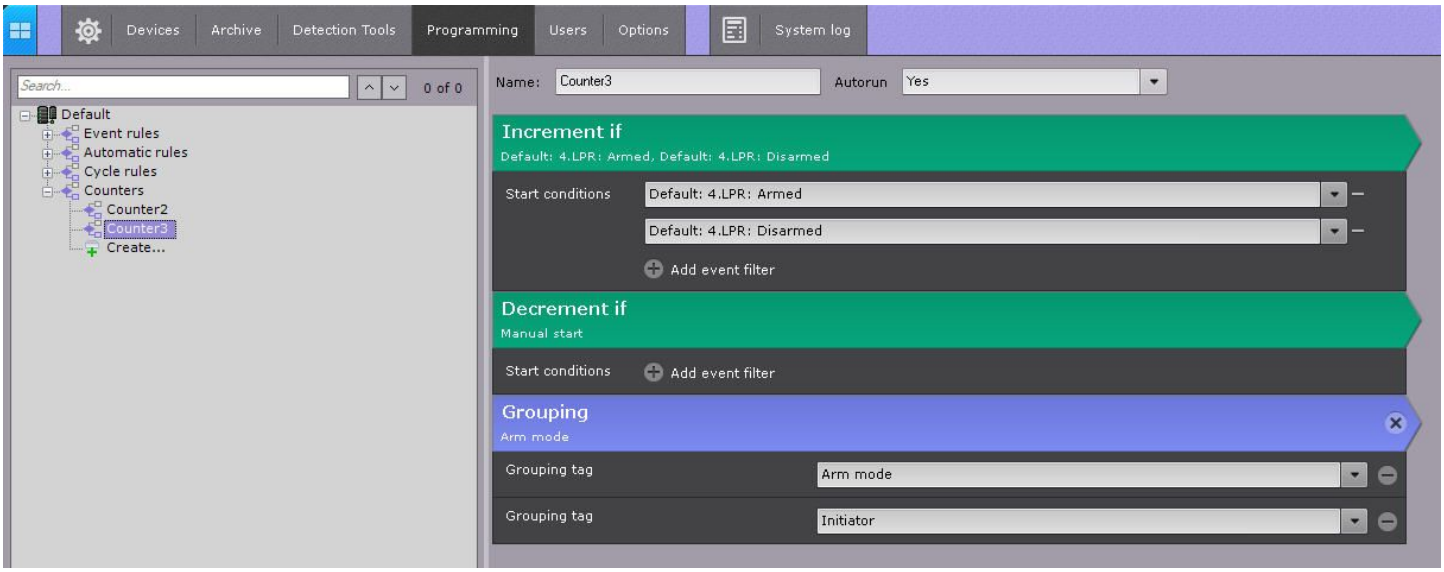
Unless the macro has standby commands (see Wait for event, Wait for timeout, Wait till previous action finishes), all commands are performed simultaneously.

7.5.2 General information about the counters

A counter is a tool that allows you to count any values based on events. You can create and edit counters in the **Programming** tab.

Attention!

The counters work only within a single Axxon domain. The objects belonging to another Axxon domain cannot be used in the Increase conditions and Decrease conditions.



When creating a counter, select one or more events that increase the value of the counter, and one or more events that decrease the value (see Creating and configuring counters).

By default, the counter value is 0, each selected event increases or decreases it by 1.

Attention!

The counter value is reset to 0 when:

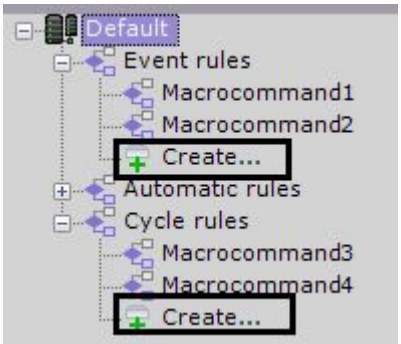
- Server restarts;
- Counter settings change.

In practical terms, counters can be used, for example, to count visitors at a site or facility. In this case, counting is based on faces captured by cameras with facial recognition installed at the entrance and exits.

Counters can be added to the map (see Adding counters), and managed both from the map (see Controlling devices from the map) and using a macro (see Managing the counter).

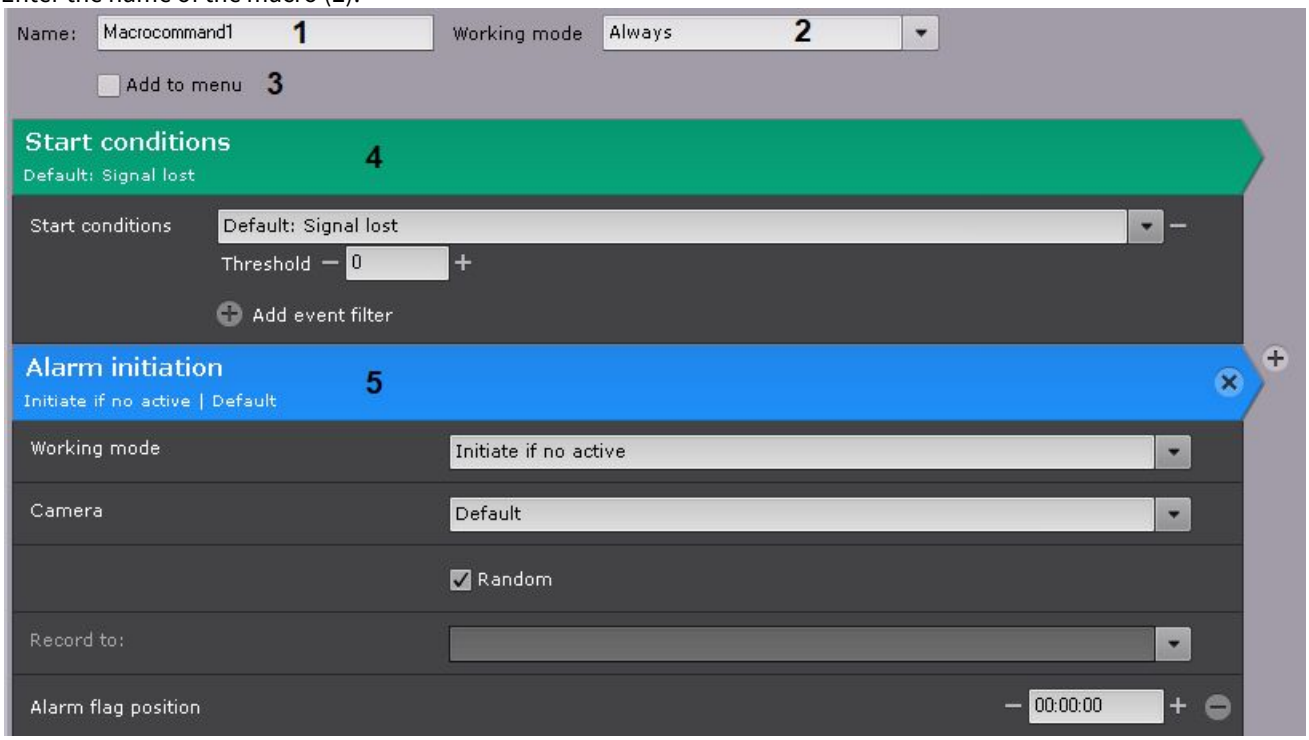
7.5.3 Create Macros

To create a macro, click the **Create** button in the list.



Then do as follows:

1. Enter the name of the macro (**1**).



2. Select the macro triggering mode (**2**):

Mode	Event-driven	Cyclic
Newer	Manual execution only (see Working with Dialog Board).	Disabled, manual execution is possible
Always	Always on	Always on
Time time schedule	Runs within the selected time schedule (see Creating schedules). Initiated by the user at any time.	Runs within the specified time schedule..

3. If you need to include a macro in the control menu on the current layout, select the corresponding check box (**3**, see Macros control).
4. To configure event-driven macros, click and select one or more trigger events (**4**, see Configuring filters for event-driven macros).

> **Note**
>
> To delete an event from the filter, click the button.

5. Add one or more actions into the macro (**5**, see Settings specific to actions). Click the button to do this. When the macro starts, all actions are performed simultaneously. To delete an action, click the button.

> **Note**
>
> The macro command can be executed for a group of cameras (see Creating a system of groups and subgroups).

> **Note**
>
> To hide the start conditions and action for the macro, click the action name.

6. A cyclic macro can be launched at a specified time interval, or at a random moment within the specified time interval. To configure this action, do as follows:

a. In the **Heartbeat Interval** field, specify a time interval in HH:MM:SS format (**1**). For example, if you set the interval to 8 hours and leave the **Random** checkbox (see 6b) unselected, the macro will be launched every 8 hours. The macro will be launched according to cycle settings even if the actions from its previous launch are not complete In this case, several instances of the same macro will be executed simultaneously.

b. In the **Launching Interval** field, specify a time interval in HH:MM:SS format (**1**). For example, if you set the interval to 8 hours and leave the **Random** checkbox (see 6b) unselected, the macro will be launched every 8 hours.

> **Attention!**
>
> If the macro is linked to a time schedule, and the random moment falls out of schedule, no launching occurs.

7. To save the macro, click the **Apply** button.

> **Attention!**
>
> By default, created macros are available only to users from the admin group (see Creating and configuring roles).

Macros configuration is complete. Created macro are listed. If the macro is disabled (**Never** mode), it is grayed out.

You can copy macro commands. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Select the macro to copy.
2. Click **Create**.

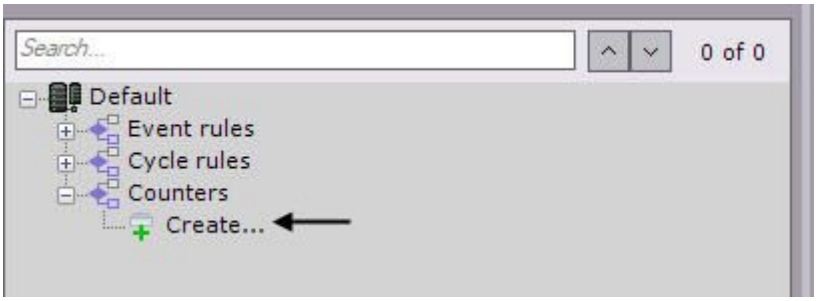
This creates a new identical macro.

> **Note**
>
> To create an empty macro command with no parameters specified, select any of the common macros' groups, and click **Create**.

To remove a macro, select it in the list and click **Remove**.

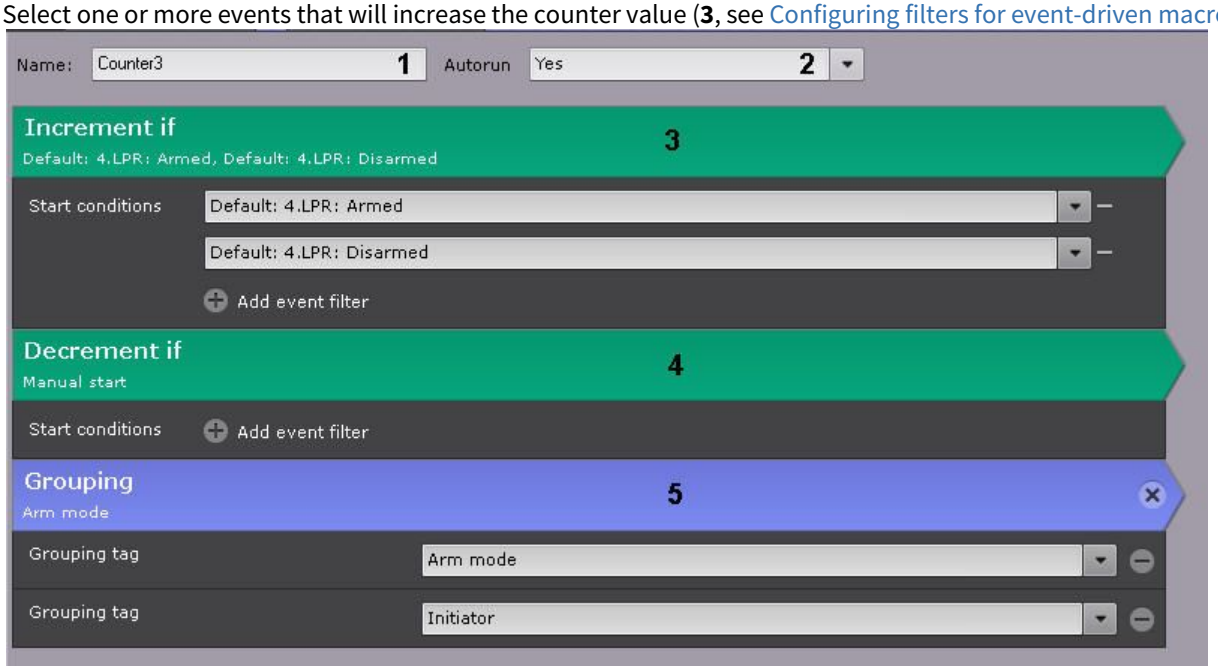
7.5.4 Creating and configuring counters

To create a counter, click the **Create** button in the Counters list.

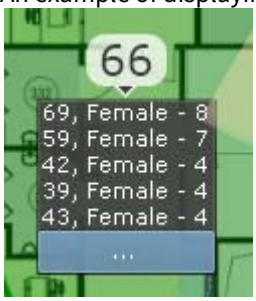


Then do as follows:

1. Specify the name of the counter (**1**).
2. Select the autorun mode (**2**):
   a. **Yes** — the counter starts working from the moment the server starts.
   b. **No** — the counter does not start working when the server starts, it it necessary to start it manually.
3. Select one or more events that will increase the counter value (**3**, see Configuring filters for event-driven macros).



4. Select one or more events that will decrease the counter value (**4**, see Configuring filters for event-driven macros).
5. Select one or several properties by which the counting results will be grouped (**5**). Grouping is available for camera arming and disarming events, as well as for face detection and license plate recognition events.

> **Note**
>
> If you select several properties, then the resulting groups will be formed by the consolidation of these properties. An example of displaying the counting results with the **Gender** and **Age** properties selected:
>
> 
>
>
> where **69** in the first line is the age, **Female** is the gender, and **8** is the number of women at the age of 69. The same goes for the rest of the lines.
> The order in which the properties are set does not affect the result.

6. Click **Apply**.

You can copy counters. Please follow the steps below:

1. Select the counter to copy.
2. Click **Create**.

This creates a new identical counter.

> **Note**
>
> To create an empty counter, select the **Counter** group and click **Create**.

To remove a counter, select it in the list and click **Remove**.

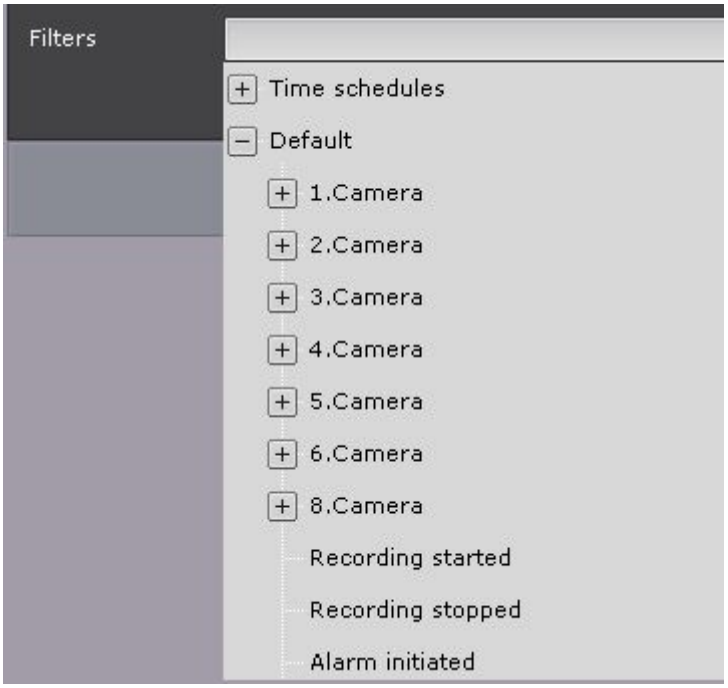
7.5.5 Configuring filters for event-driven macros

When creating event macros, you can select one or more events which will trigger the macro.

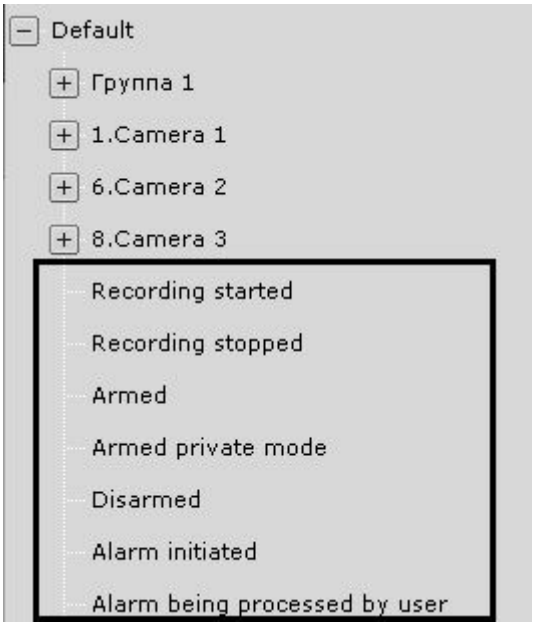
In addition, the macros can be triggered when specified statistical conditions are met (see Triggering macros by statistical data).

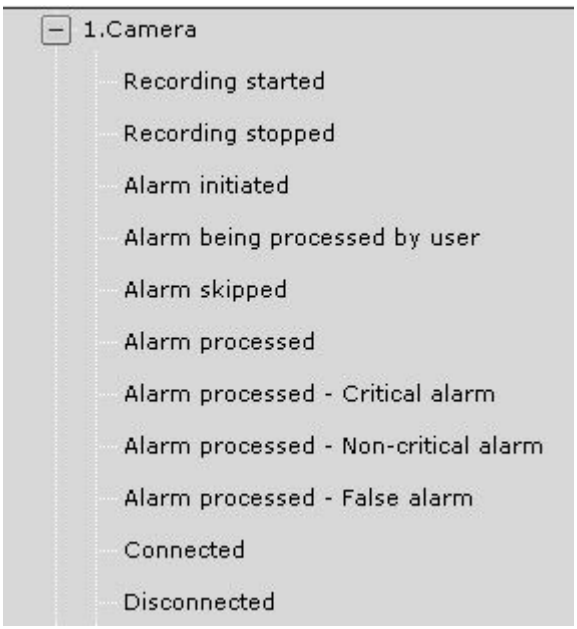
If several conditions are set, the macro will be triggered when any of these conditions are met.

You can also filter events:



The following events are available for selection:

Object	Event	Image
Axxon domain	A string of events. If you select an event from the Axxon domain, the macro will be triggered when this event is received from any object in the Axxon domain	

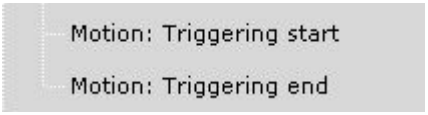
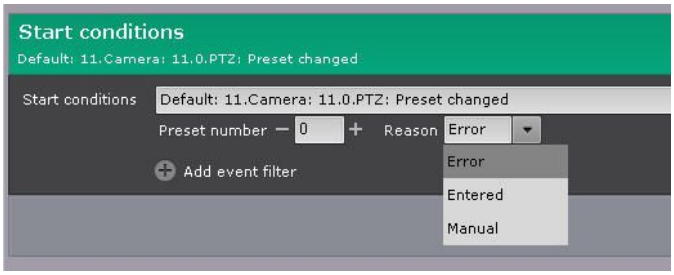
<table>
<tr><th>Object</th><th>Event</th><th>Image</th></tr>
<tr><td>Server</td><td>Server disconnected
Server connected</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="15">Camera</td><td>Recording started</td><td rowspan="14"> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Recording stopped</td></tr>
<tr><td>Camera armed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Camera armed (restricted)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Camera disarmed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm initiated</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm being processed by user</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm skipped</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm processed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm processed - Critical alarm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm processed - Non-critical alarm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Alarm processed - False alarm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Connected</td></tr>
<tr><td>Disconnected</td></tr>
<tr><td>Motion: Triggering start</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Motion: Triggering end</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Signal lost
Signal restored</td><td>

You can set a threshold for these type of events: the time in seconds (0 to 100) between switching from Signal Lost to Signal Restored state. For example, if a 10-second threshold is set for the Signal Lost condition, then at least 10 seconds should pass between the last Signal Restored event and the new Signal Lost event to start the macro.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Face Recognition.
It is necessary to select the list from which the macro will be triggered when recognizing a face</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Object</th><th>Event</th><th>Image</th></tr>
<tr><td>Group of cameras</td><td>A string of events.

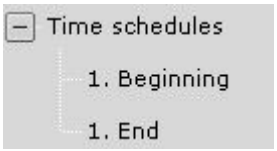
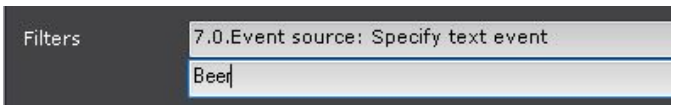
If you select an event from a group of cameras, the macro will be triggered when this event is received from any camera in the group.</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Detector, Sensor, Relay and Telemetry</td><td>Triggering start

Attention!

If triggering conditions for a macro include a Triggering start event, any changes in macro's settings that have been saved while the detection tool is triggered (before the Triggering end event) will lead to re-executing the macro.
The same logic is applied when you create a macro. If you are creating a macro, and the detection tool is triggered, the macro will be executed immediately after the creation is complete.</td><td rowspan="4"> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Triggering end</td></tr>
<tr><td>Triggering (for detection tools, which do not have the start and end of the triggering, see Checking the Triggering of a Detection Tool)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Specified Triggering (for face detection only, see Specific parameters for triggering a face recognition macro)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Preset switch</td><td> 

For these events, you should specify the preset number and the reason for the action:

1. Error.
2. Entered: the action occurs if you select a preset (see Creating and editing presets) with the selected number while controlling the camera (see Controlling a PTZ Camera).</td></tr>
</table>

Object	Event	Image
		3. Manual: the action occurs when you manually change the position of the camera when a preset is selected (see Control using step buttons and virtual joystick).
Neurocounter		
Archive	Archive partition error Archive partition restored	
Time Schedule	Beginning End	
Event source	Description: for the **Event Source** object, you should specify the trigger word or phrase. When it comes up in the captions, the macro starts. For example, this filter triggers the macro when the word "Beer" appears in the captions. If a macro is triggered by a simultaneous combination of words and/or values, use curly braces for logical AND. For example, {Beer} {Belgium}.	

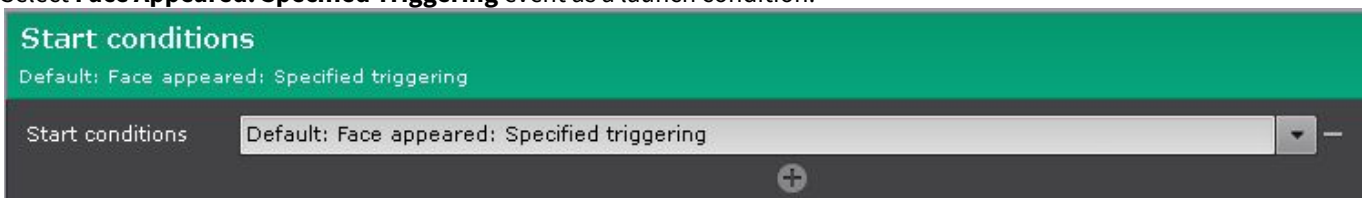
7.5.5.1 Specific parameters for triggering a face recognition macro

You can set a number of specific parameters which affect triggering a face recognition macro:

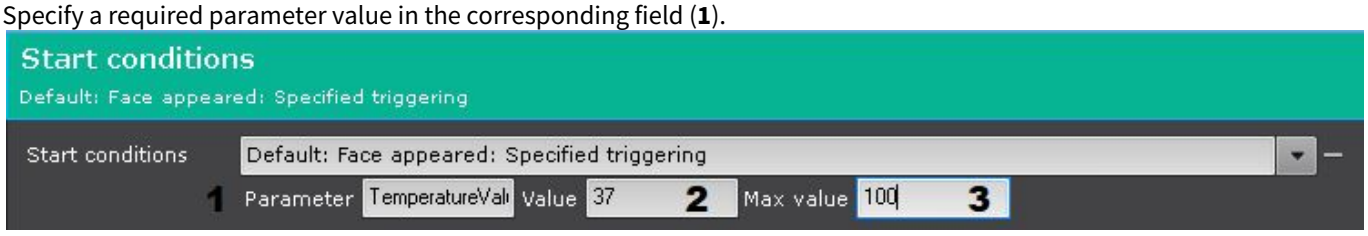
1. **Age** of the individual (requires activation of the **Gender and Age** parameter, see Configuring Face detection).
2. **Gender** of the individual (requires activation of the **Gender and Age** parameter, see Configuring Face detection). Value: **1** = female, **2** = male.
3. **TemperatureValue**: Body Temperature of the individual (requires the **Face Detection and Temperature Control**, see Face Detection and Temperature Control with Mobotix M16 TR cameras).

To set specific parameters, do the following:

1. Select **Face Appeared: Specified Triggering** event as a launch condition.



2. Click .
3. Specify a required parameter value in the corresponding field (**1**).



> **Attention!**
>
> The parameter is case-sensitive.

4. In the **Value** (**2**) and **Max value** (**3**) fields, set the range of parameter values within which the macro will be triggered.

> **Note**
>
> Examples.
> If you set **Age** to [18, 100], the macro will be triggered only if the detection tool returns the age value of 18 or more.
> If you set **Gender** to [1, 1], the macro will be triggered only if the detection tool returns the individual's gender as female.
> If you set **Gender** to [2, 2], the macro will be triggered only if the detection tool returns the individual's gender as male.
> If you set **TemperatureValue** to [37, 100], the macro will be triggered only if the detection tool returns the temperature value of 37 or more.

5. Add one or more actions into the macro (see Settings specific to actions).
6. Click the **Apply** button.

7.5.5.2 Triggering macros by statistical data

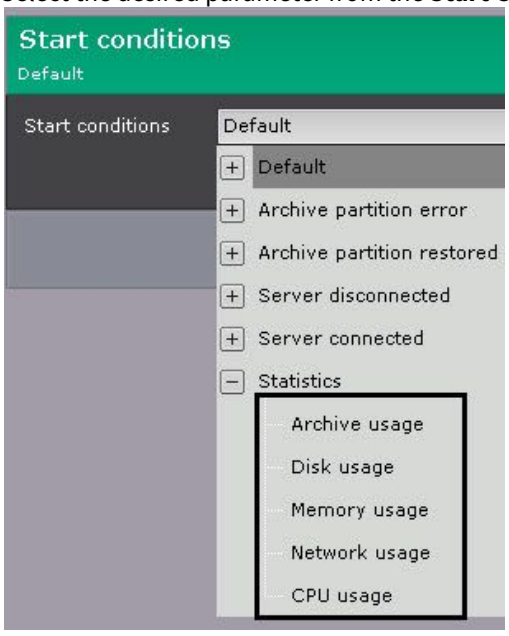
Event-triggered macros can be launched not only by events of particular type (see Configuring Filters for Event-driven Macros) but also by statistical parameters.

A macro can be initiated by the following parameters reaching pre-defined criteria:

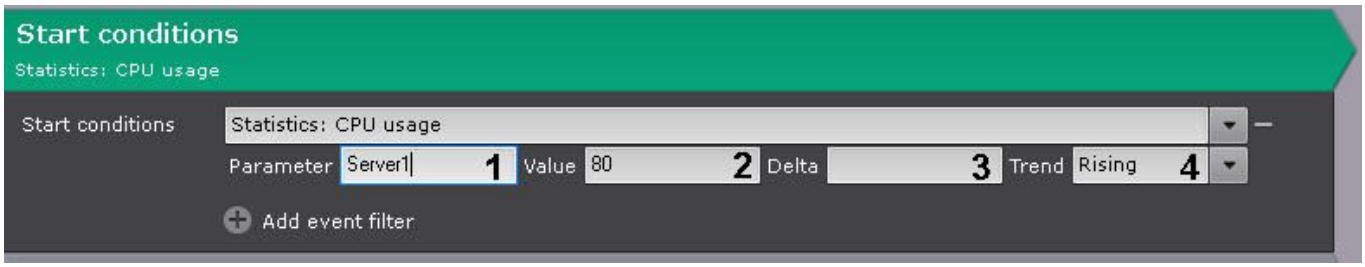
1. The percentage of used space in Archive.
2. The percentage of used space on a volume.
3. The percentage of used RAM on a Server.
4. The percentage of used network bandwidth on a Server.
5. The percentage of CPU load on a Server.

To set up triggering macros by statistics, do as follows:

1. Select the desired parameter from the **Start Conditions** list in the **Statistics** group.



2. Enter the parameter definition into the **Parameter** (**1**) field.



Archive usage	Archive in the following format: hosts/SERVER1/MultimediaStorage.AliceBlue/MultimediaStorage.
Disk usage	**SERVER1@C:**, where SERVER1 is the name of a server within the Axxon domain, C:\ is the volume name. **Important!** You cannot monitor storage capacity of a disk fully allocated for Archive.
Memory usage (RAM)	The name of a server within the Axxon domain.
Network usage	The name of a server within the Axxon domain.
CPU usage	The name of a server within the Axxon domain.

3. Enter the threshold value into the **Value** (**2**) field.
4. For **Leaving** condition, enter the range into the **Delta** (**3**) field (see section 5).
5. From the **Trend** (**4**) list, select a triggering condition for the macro.

Leaving	The macro is triggered if a parameter value goes out of the specified range [**Value** - **Delta**; **Value**].
Rising	The macro is triggered if the parameter value exceeds the threshold specified in the **Value** field.
Falling	The macro is triggered if the parameter value falls behind the threshold specified in the **Value** field.

> **Attention!**
>
> The triggering conditions are set not for current but for future events. For instance, if the current CPU load is 85%, and you set the triggering condition to exceeding 80%, the macro will be launched only when the CPU load exceeds 80% value next time.

6. If necessary, you can set several event and/or statistical conditions for triggering macros.

7.5.6 Settings specific to actions

7.5.6.1 Wait for event

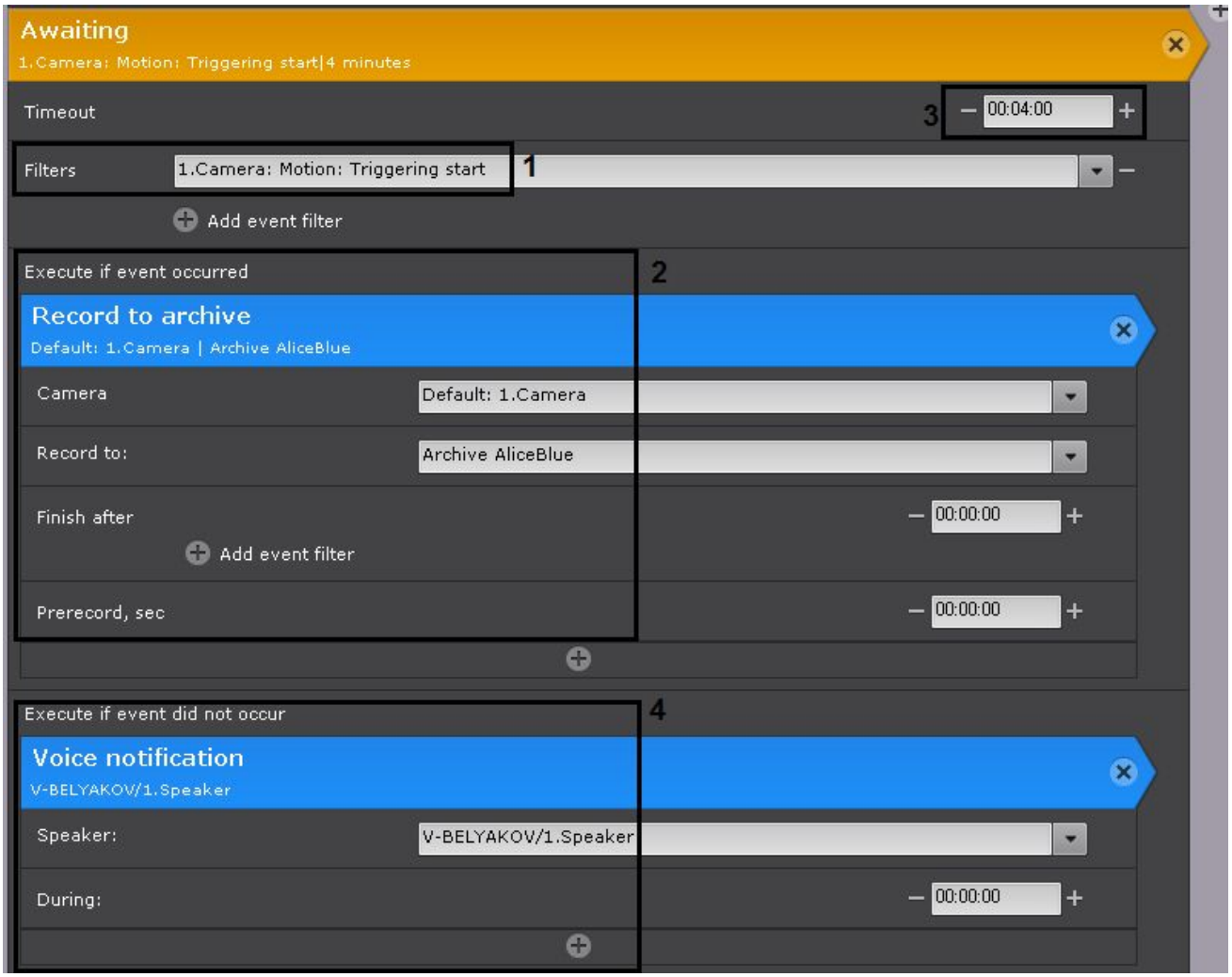
This is the IF condition for running a command (only after the specified events occur).

You can enter the following parameters in the **Awaiting** command:

1. The time-out format is HH:MM:SS.

2. Break command - here you enter one or more events that override the Wait command. If you do not specify events, the time-out applies.
3. If necessary, select and configure the action to perform when an event from Break Command occurs. A new **Awaiting** instance is also an option**.**
4. If necessary, select and configure the action to perform if none of the events that were set in Break Command occurred during time-out. A new **Awaiting** instance is also an option**.**

For example, this macro is conditioned by the **Motion detected event** on **Camera 1** (**1**).



When it occurs, the macro continues. This also starts recording (**2**). Further macro actions are executed, if any.

If this event does not occur, the time-out is 4 minutes (**3**). After this time, a sound notification (**4**) plays.

> **Attention!**
>
> The **Awaiting** command does not affect the commands below (outside of) it.

7.5.6.2 Wait for timeout

This command delays launch for downstream commands.

The time-out format is HH:MM:SS.

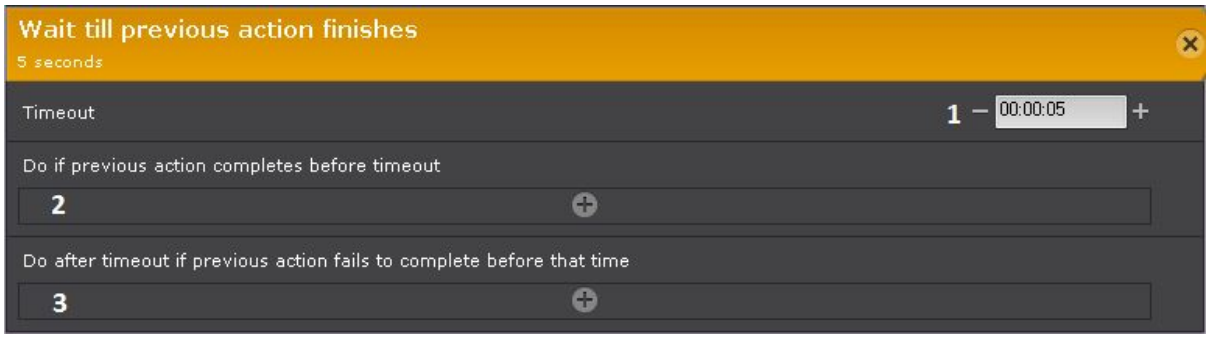
For example, when performing that macro, an alarm will be initiated in the system (**1**), and then after 10 seconds (**2**) - an audio alert (**3**).

7.5.6.3 Wait till previous action finishes

This is the IF condition for running a command (only if the previous steps are completed / not completed in the specified time).

To configure, set up the following parameters:

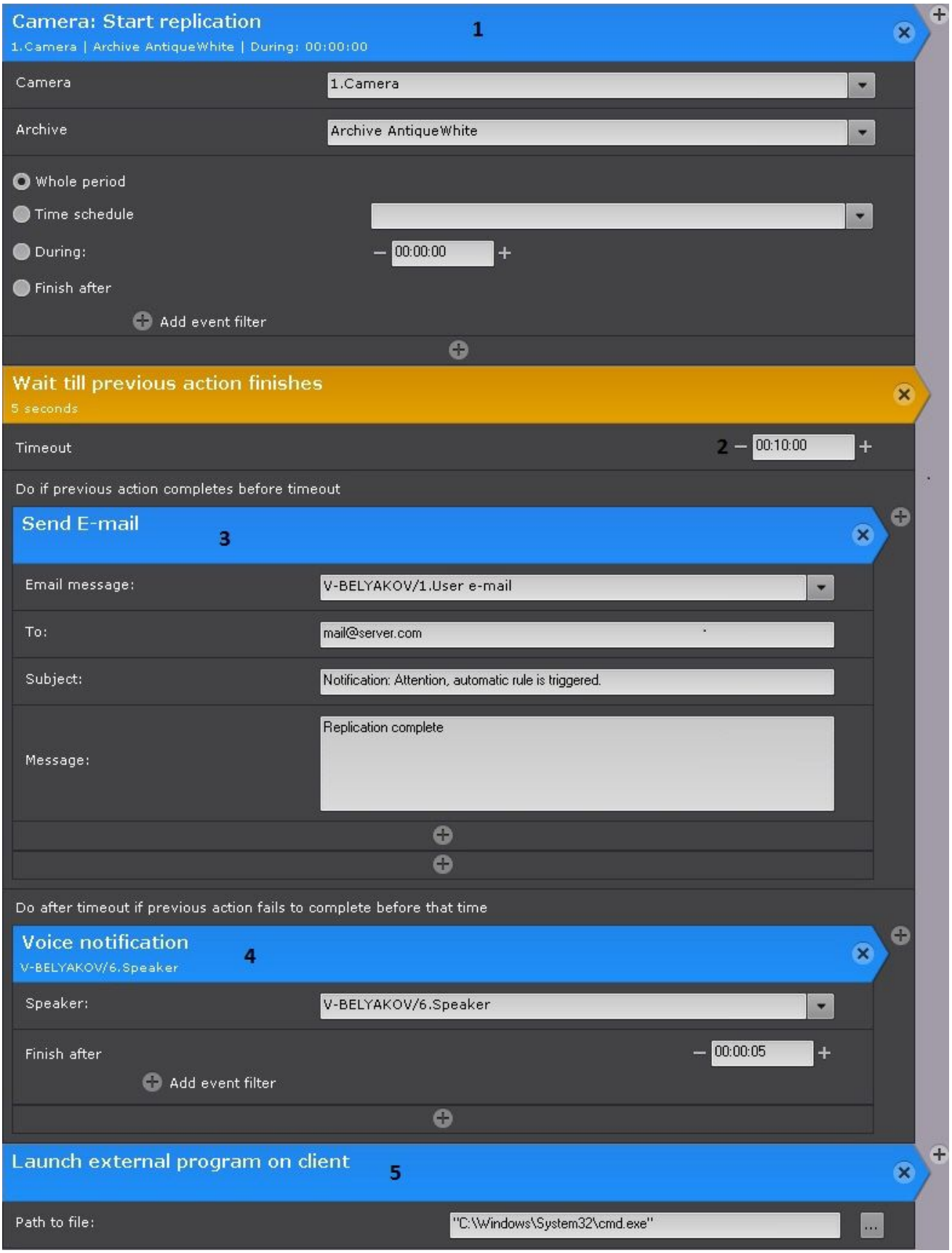
1. Set waiting period in HH:MM:SS format for previous action to be performed (1). If 00:00:00 is set, then waiting will last forever.



2. Specify the action to perform if the previous command was completed within the specified timeout (**2**).
3. Specify the action to perform if the previous action was **not** completed within the specified timeout (**3**). If the timeout is **00:00:00**, this setting is not applicable.

> **Attention!**
>
> This command does not affect the commands below (outside of) it.

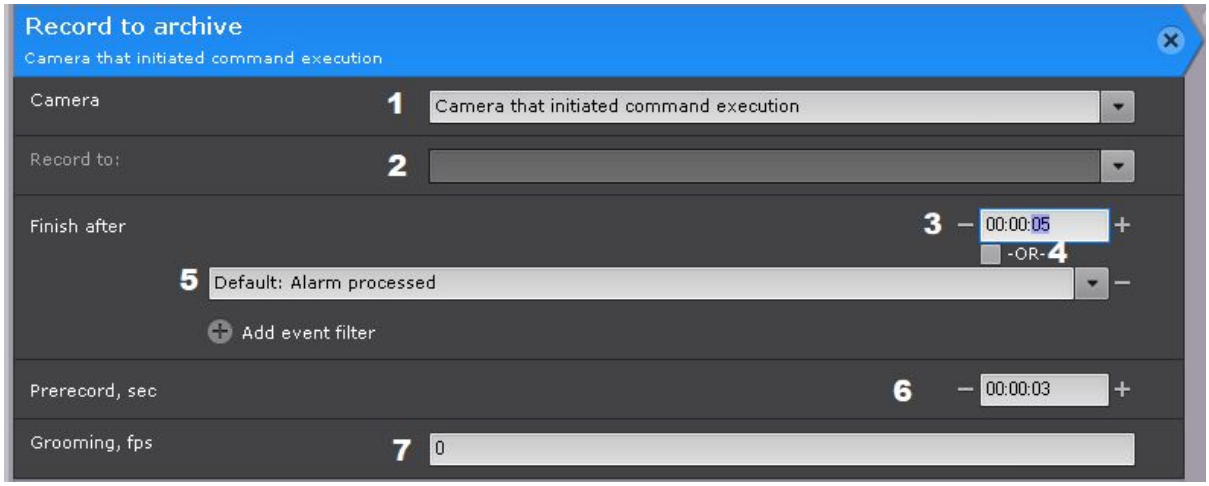
Example: In this macro, replication (**1**) and the program on the client (**5**) start at the same time. If replication is completed within 10 minutes (**2**), an Email message (**3**) is sent. Otherwise, a voice alert (**4**) is played.



7.5.6.4 Record to archive

To configure **Record to archive**:

1. Selecting a camera or group of cameras for recording (**1**). An implicit selection of a video camera is also allowed - **Camera that initiated command execution**.



> **Attention!**
>
> If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

2. Select an archive to write to (**2**).
3. Configuring conditions that end recording.

Condition	Description
Timer (**3**)	Only a timer value is set. Recording stops according to the time setting.
Events Filter (**5**)	One or several events are set, the timer is set to 00:00:00. Recording stops on any IF event.
Timer (**3**) + Intelligent event filter (IF) (**5**).	One or several events are set, the timer is set to non-zero. Recording stops when the set time interval expires after any IF event (trigger) occurs.
Timer (**3**) + **OR** flag (**4**) + IF (**5**).	One or several events are set, the timer is set to non-zero, the **OR** flag is set. In this case, the recording stops on any of the two conditions: after the time interval expires or if an IF event (trigger) occurs.

> **Note**
>
> The **OR** flag can be set only if the timer setting is not 00:00:00.

> **Note**
>
> An implicit selection of an event is allowed - **Last event for condition that initiated execution**.
> For example, if the event that triggered the execution of the command was the **Start time of detection tool trigger** from any type of detection tools, then the end event will be the **End time of detection tool trigger** from the same tool.

4. Set the pre-alarm recording time (**6**). The maximum pre-alarm recording time is 30 seconds.

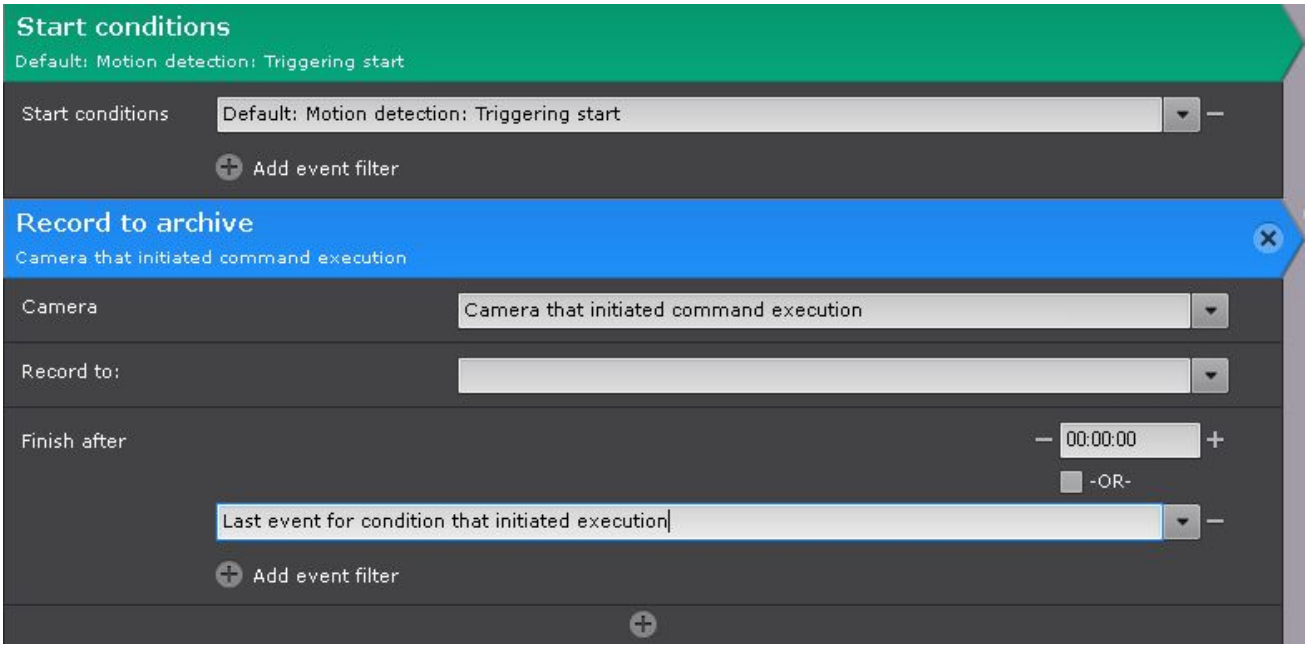
> **Attention!**
>
> By default, the pre-alarm recording time interval is set to the value specified in Archive settings (see Configuring recording to an archive).
> The longest pre-alarm recording time available in the Archive settings is used.
> Changing this value in a specific macro does not affect the Archive settings.

5. If you have cameras in continuous recording mode (see Configuring recording to an archive) and you want to record with specified fps (see example 2) change the frame rate, enter the required frame rate (**7**). After the macro command completes, recording resumes at the frame rate specified in the archive settings.
   You can use special codes:
   0 - do not change the current frame rate (default);
   -1- record only I-frames;
   1000 - record at the standard fps of the camera.

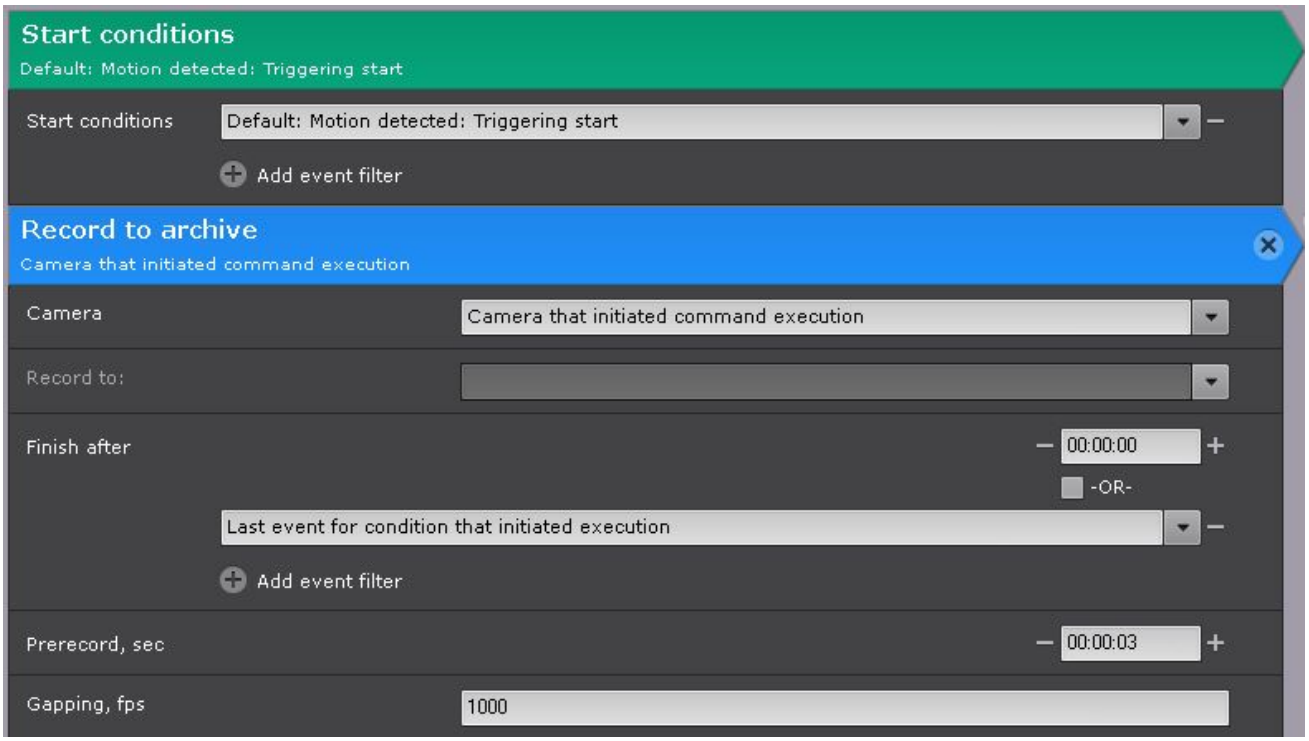
> **Attention!**
>
> FPS for pre-recording will not change.
> If the macro command is set to complete some time after a specified event has been received (see p. 3), the frame rate will change for this Check-in Event-time.

> **Attention!**
>
> When you prune by frame dropping, in all video streams except MJPEG , only I-fames (Intra-Coded Frame or Key Frames) are saved, so please use codes:**-1** and **1000** .
> If you go for a custom frame rate this will lead to dropping some key frames.
> MJPEG video contains only I-frames (Intra-coded pictures with a complete image), so it makes sense to set a desired frame rate here.

Example 1. A macro-command to initiate VMD-triggered recording to the Archive from any camera within **Default** Axxon domain.



Example 2. All video cameras from the **Default** Axxon Domain are set to continuously record video at the specified fps by dropping frames (see Configuring recording to an archive). When you have a motion detection event, you need to switch to full fps recording. Configure the following macro to do so:

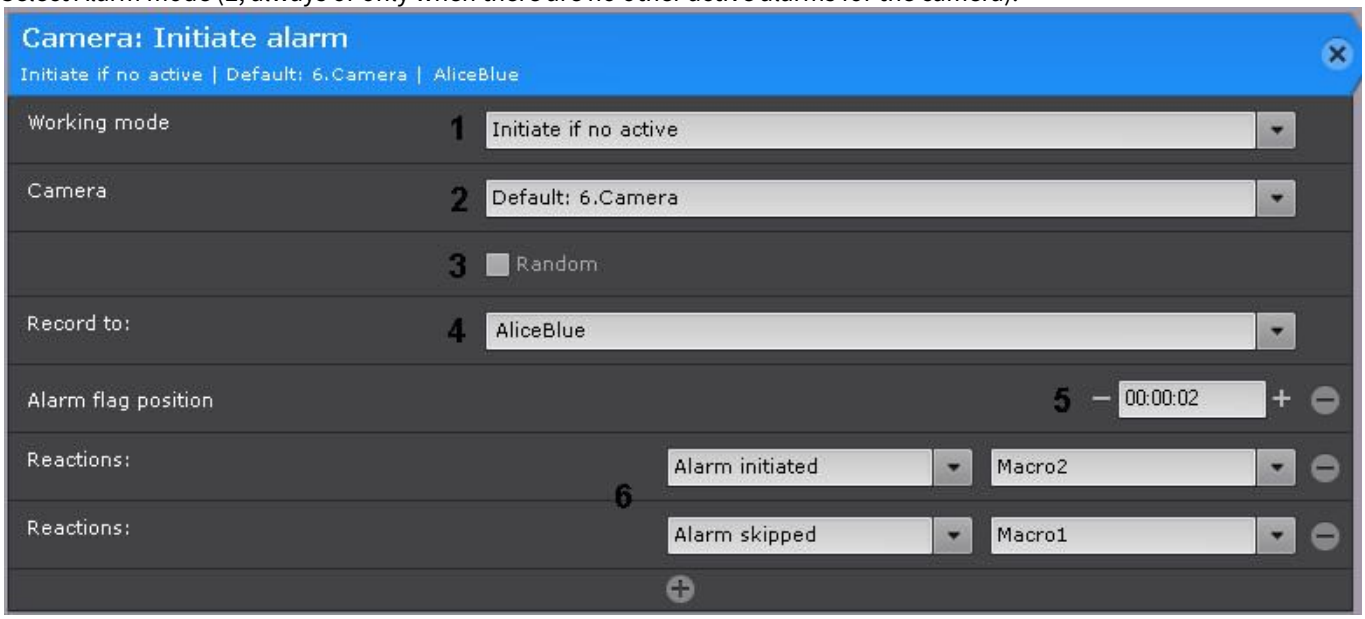


7.5.6.5 Trigger an alarm

This starts recording and an alarm.

Most of the parameters are from the **Record to archive** command settings (see Record to archive). Other than that, there are following settings:

1. Select Alarm mode (**1**, always or only when there are no other active alarms for the camera).



2. Selecting a camera or group of cameras (**2**). An implicit selection of a video camera is also allowed - **Camera that initiated command execution**.

Attention!

If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

3. If you selected a group of cameras or an Axxon domain at the previous step, you can select the **Random** (**3**) checkbox to initiate an alarm on a random camera from this group/domain.
4. Select an archive to write to (**4**).
5. In the **Alarm flag position** field, enter the number of seconds by which the alarm flag will be shifted back from the event time that started the macro (**5**).

   Note

   If the alarm flag position is set, the event footage plays from the moment corresponding to the flag's position, and not from the alarm start.

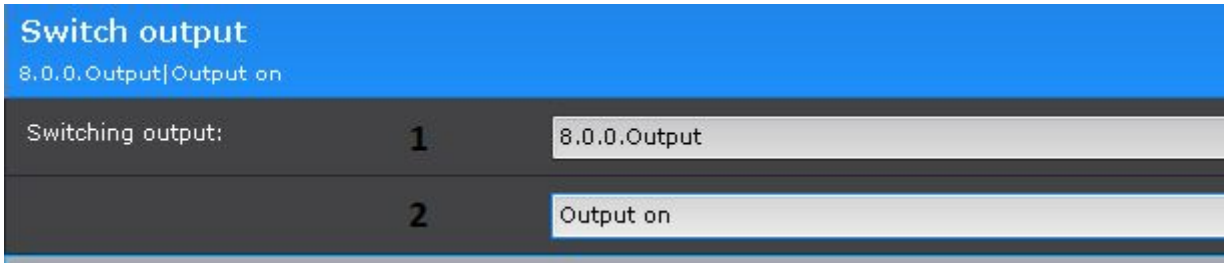
6. If necessary, configure one or more response scenarios (**6**). A response scenario automatically triggers the selected macro to start upon the specified alarm status.
   The following statuses are available:
   - Alarm initiated. In this case, the reaction follows immediately after the alarm is triggered.
   - Alarm being processed by user. Here, the reaction will follow after the operator accepts the alarm for processing.
   - Alarm skipped. In this case, the reaction launches when the user missed the alarm or skipped its classification.
   - Alarm processed. Here, the reaction launches when the alarm is classified with any status.
   - Alarm processed - confirmed alarm. Here, the reaction launches when the alarm is classified with the Confirmed status.
   - Alarm processed - Suspicious situation. Here, the reaction launches when the alarm is classified with the Suspicious status.
   - The alarm has been processed - a false alarm. Here, the reaction launches when the alarm is classified with the False status.

7.5.6.6 Switch output

This action switches a output to a pre-selected state.

To configure this action, do as follows:

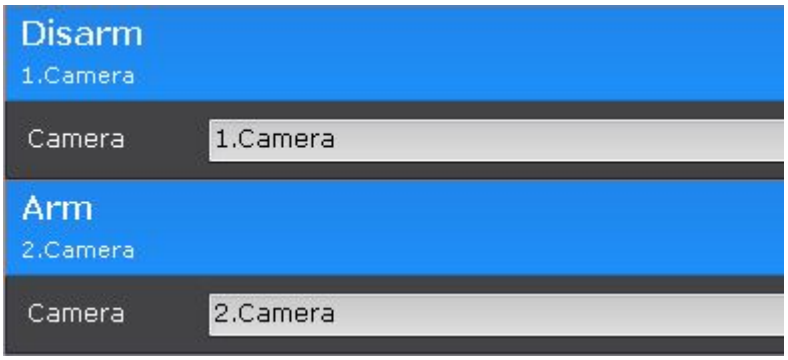
1. Select a output to switch by the macro (**1**). You can select any active output within your system, including outputs linked to another Server.



2. Outputs switch back after On-time (**2**)**,** or after Check-in Event-time (**3**) for any specified events**.**

7.5.6.7 Arm /disarm a camera

To configure these actions, select a camera or group of cameras that you want to arm or disarm. An implicit selection of a video camera is also allowed - **Camera that initiated command execution**.



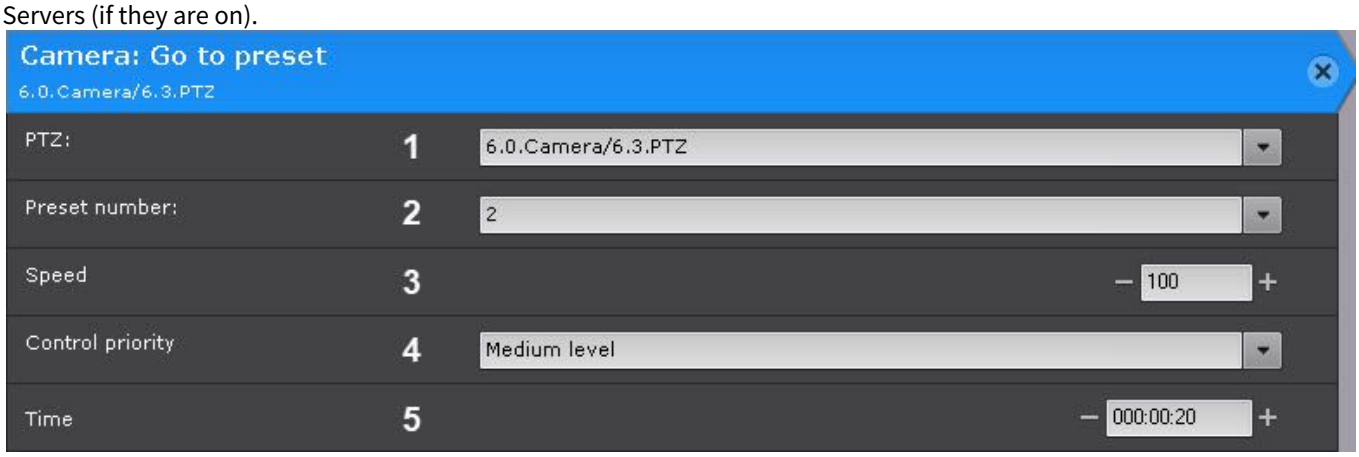
Attention!

If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

7.5.6.8 Switch to a PTZ camera preset

To configure the action, do the following:

1. Select a PTZ device that you want to use from the **PTZ** list (**1**). Any PTZ cameras can be used, including those from other Servers (if they are on).



2. Select the preset (**2**) to which you want to switch when a macro is triggered.
3. Set the rotation speed of the camera (**3**). The value should be in the range [1; 100].
4. Set the control priority of the camera (**4**). The priority determines the user with which access level (see Creating and configuring roles) will take over the control of the camera when the macro is running.
5. Set time (**5**). If the macro is running and the user has a lower access level than the macro, the user will be able to control the PTZ camera only after this time has elapsed.

Note

In order to create a sequential transition to specified presets at selected time intervals (**5**), set Wait till previous action finishes between the transition actions. You can also set Wait for timeout. In this case the transition between presets will take place after the timeout time.

7.5.6.9 View camera

It is possible to open the layout with the specified camera.

The **View camera** macro uses the following algorithm:

1. Searches for the layouts available to the current user that contain the selected camera.
2. Selects the layout with the minimum number of cells to display the selected camera.

3. If the required layout does not exist, creates a new layout with the selected camera.
4. Switches to the selected layout or the created layout.
5. Performs the specified action.

To configure the **View camera** macro, do the following:

1. Select the camera to be displayed (**1**) or **Camera that initiated command execution** (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros). You can select a group of cameras for the **Switch to archive** mode (see step 2).

   Attention!

   If the macro was triggered by a sensor or a relay (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that are not associated with the camera, the action will not be triggered.

2. Select the display mode (**2**).

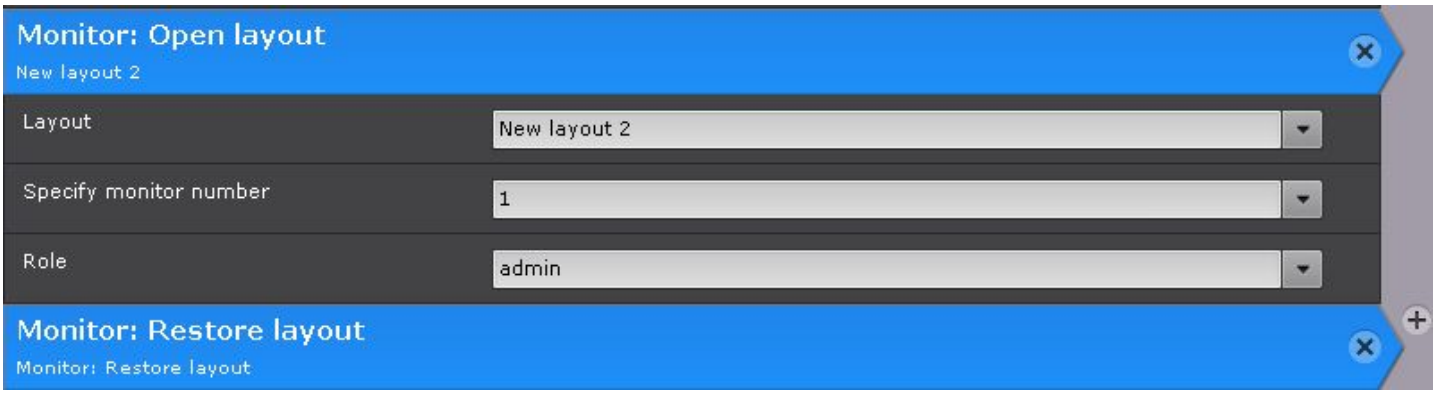
Display mode	Description
Select camera	The camera is highlighted on the layout
Zoom in camera	The camera is highlighted on the layout, the viewing tile takes up 98% of the screen
Zoom in and show map	The camera is highlighted on the layout, the viewing tile takes up 50% of the screen, the map under the tile shows the camera
Switch to immersion mode	Immersive mode is on, the viewing tile takes up 50% of the screen
Switch to archive mode	The camera is highlighted on the layout and it is in archive mode. If a group of cameras is specified, then a layout is created with all the cameras in archive mode
Mark camera	The camera is added and highlighted on the **Marked cameras** layout (see Creating special layouts)
Unmark camera	The camera is deleted from the **Marked cameras** layout (see Creating special layouts)

3. Specify the number of the monitor on which the camera should be displayed (**3**).
4. Select the user roles, for which this macro will be available (**4**).

The configuration of the **View camera** macro is complete.

7.5.6.10 Open layout

You can open any layout you created (the **Open layout** macro) or restore the previous one (the **Restore layout** macro).



To configure the **Open layout** macro, do the following:

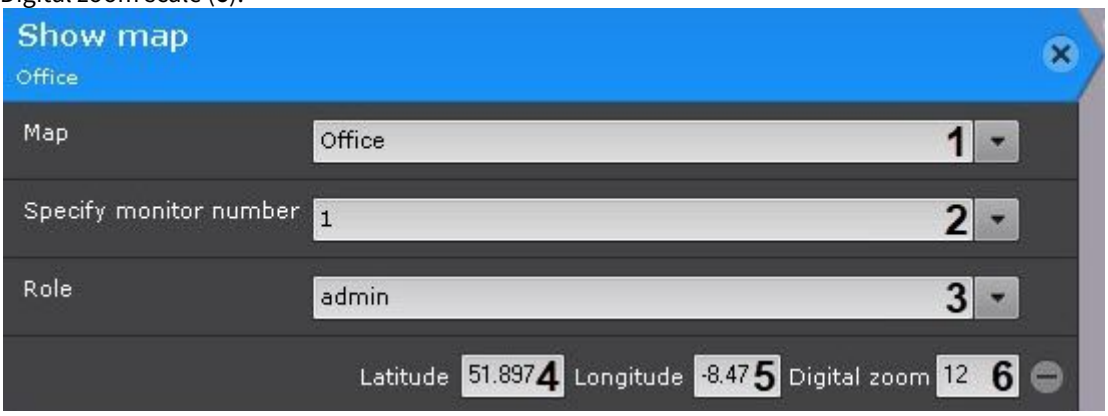
1. Select the layout (**1**).
2. Specify the number of the monitor on which you want to open the selected layout (**2**).
3. Select the role of users who can access this macro (**3**).

7.5.6.11 Show map

You can display any map added to the system on the required monitor (see Creating a new map).

To configure the **Show map** macro, do the following:

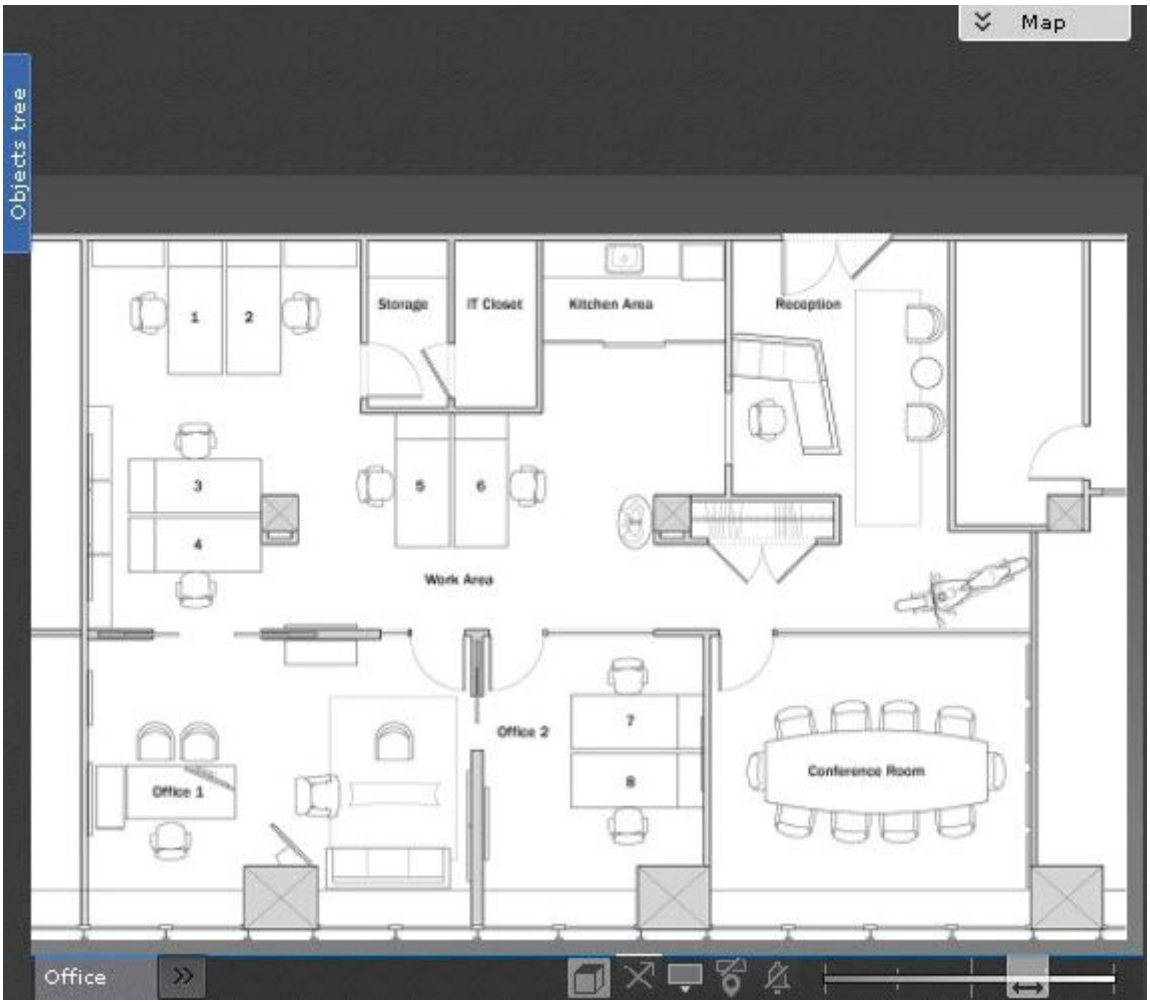
1. Select the map (**1**). When selecting a geomap, it is necessary to specify the following parameters to display the required area:
   a. Latitude (**4**).
   b. Longitude (**5**).
   c. Digital zoom scale (**6**).



2. Specify the number of the monitor on which you want to display the selected map (**2**).
3. Select the role of users who can access this macro (**3**).
4. Click the **Apply** button.

The **Show map** macro is now configured.

The selected map will be displayed on the specified monitor.

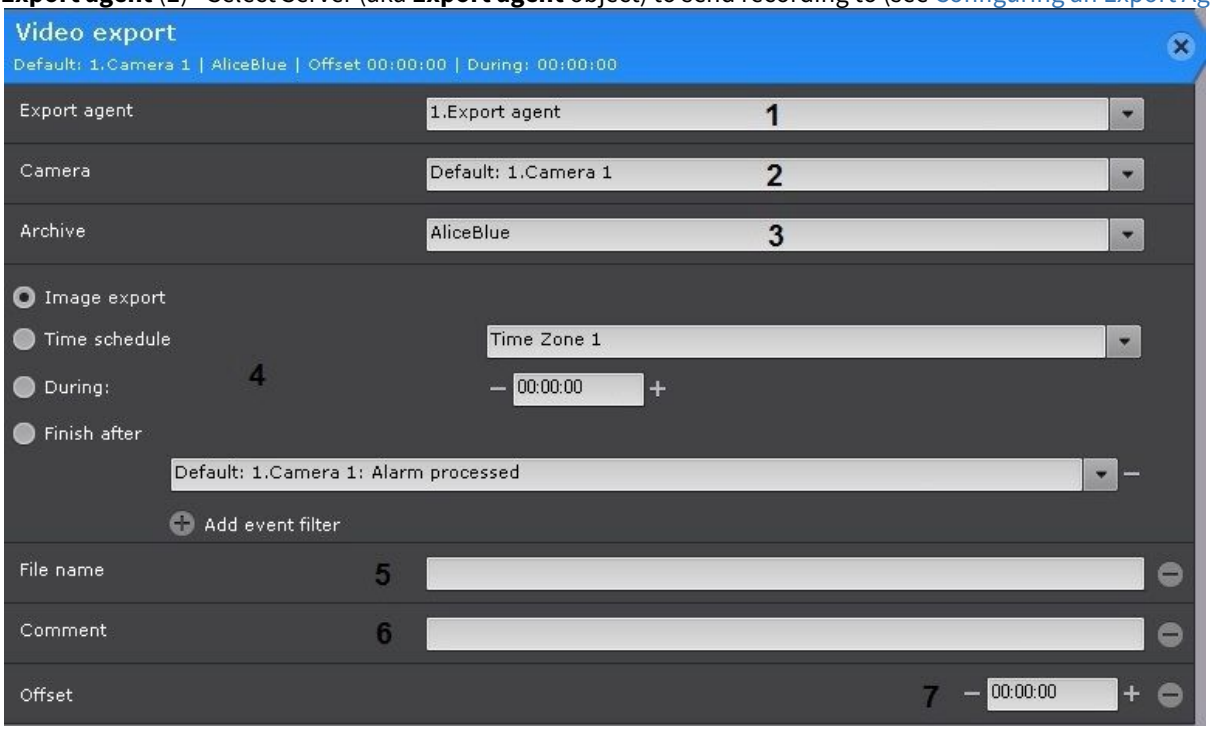


7.5.6.12 Starting export

This exports a snapshot or video.

To configure, set up the following parameters:

1. **Export agent** (**1**) - Select Server (aka **Export agent** object) to send recording to (see Configuring an Export Agent).



2. **Camera** (**2**) - select a camera for export. An implicit selection of a video camera is also allowed - **Camera that initiated command execution**.

> **Attention!**
>
> If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

3. **Archive** (**3**) - select an archive for export.
4. Sets the export interval (**4**).

Option	Description
Image export	Exports a snapshot with the time stamp identical to the start time of action. **Important! The image cannot be exported if the video camera does not have an archive.**
Time schedule	You need to select a time schedule. Exports images from within time schedule. Video recording interval - [Beginning of the specified time slot; the end of the specified time slot]
During	You should set the export duration in HH: MM: SS. The starting point of the exported video is the command start. End point is defined on the basis of the specified duration - (Interval [command start; command start + duration]).
Finish after	Select one or more events that will trigger export stop. The starting point of the exported video will be the command start, the end point - the moment of receiving any these events.

5. You can click the button to add additional parameters:
   a. File name (**6**).

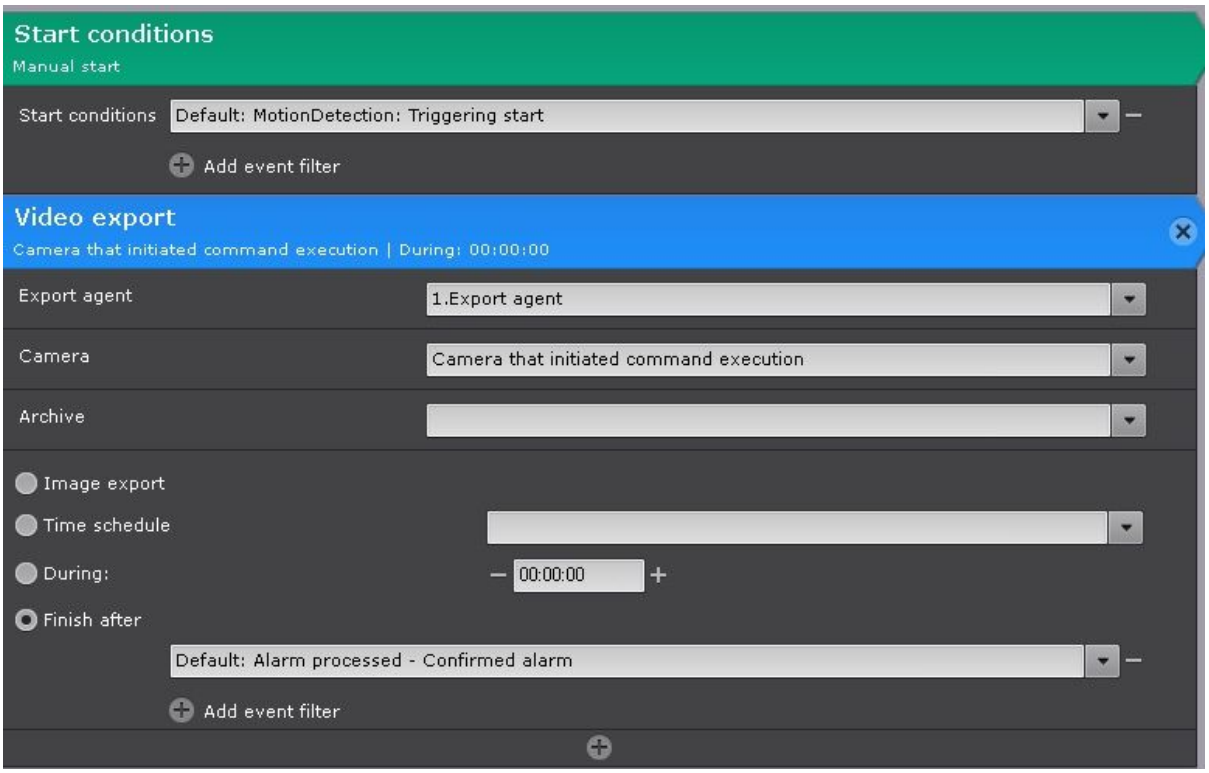
> **Attention!**
>
> You can use the following templates for file names and text comments:
> - **%startTime%** , or **[START_TIME]**, or **{startTime}**: the starting time of exported interval.
> - **%finishTime%** , or **[FINISH_TIME]**, or **{finishTime}** : the finishing time of exported interval.
>
> You may use the following templates for macros triggered by a text message from an event source (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros):

- **%startEvent%**, or **[START_EVENT]**, or **{startEvent}**: an event that triggered exporting.
- **%finishEvent%** , or **[FINISH_EVENT]**, or **{finishEvent}**: an event that stopped the export.

b. Comments superimposed as captions over the exported video (**7**).

c. **Offset** (**8**) is a time period used to roll back the start time of exported video. If you set this this parameter to non-zero, the time interval of the exported video will be as follows:
[action start - (duration + offset); action start - offset].
If exported video(s) fall into a specific slot on Time Schedule, this parameter is used to define the start time for video retrieval. For example, if you set the Offset (GUI: Buffer) to 48 hours, all videos from the given Time Schedule slot recorded within 48 hours before the action start will be exported.

Example: A macro command for automatically exporting video recordings of all alarm events evaluated by operators as "confirmed".



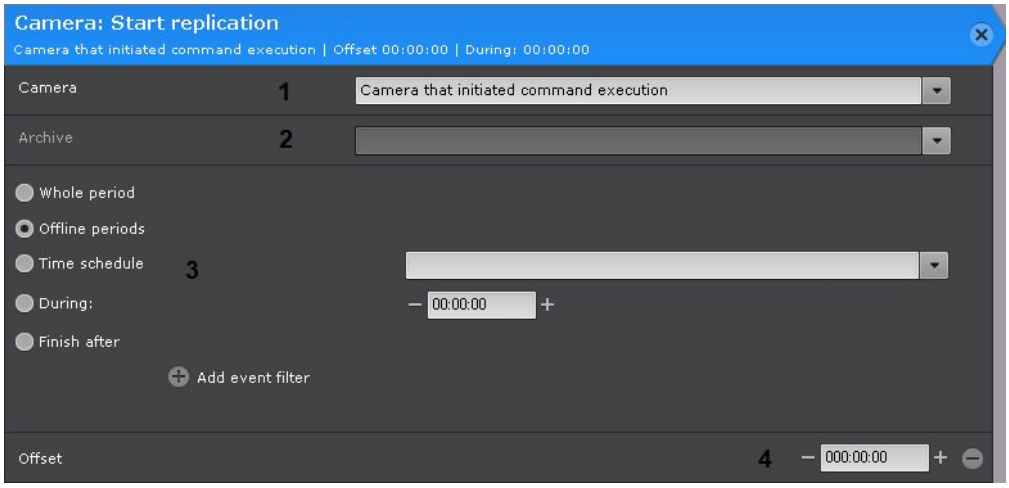
7.5.6.13 Start replication

This command starts the replication process.

To configure the command, perform the following:

1. Configure on-demand replication if replication is performed from the archive (see Configuring data replication). To replicate from the on-board storage (SD card or other storage embedded in the video camera), enable the corresponding object (The Embedded storage object).

2. Select a video camera or a group of cameras to replicate (**1**). An implicit selection of a video camera is also allowed - **Camera that initiated command execution**.



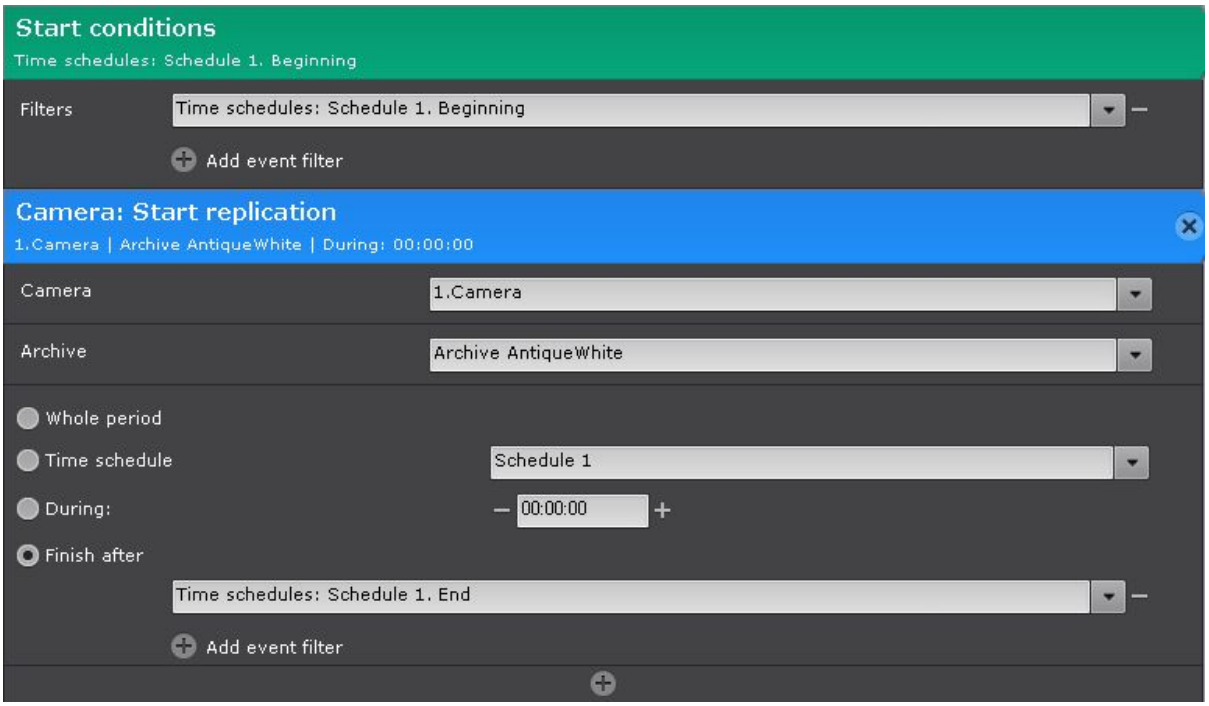
> **Attention!**
>
> If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

3. Select an archive file to which video recordings will be replicated (**2**).
4. Select the replication period (**3**).

Option	Description
Whole period	All missing video recordings made **prior** to the command start time will be copied.
Offline periods	The system copies footage recorded to embedded storage (camera's SD card) during offline periods (between consecutive **Signal lost** and **Signal restored** events). If no **Offset** parameter (see paragraph **5**) is specified, the replication covers offline footage recorded during the last 24 hours.
Time schedule	Select a time schedule (see Creating schedules). All recordings made according to the time schedule settings for the last **24** hours prior to the command start time will be copied.
During	Set the replication duration in HH:MM:SS. Video recordings from the period [start action, start action + duration] will be copied. An additional **Offset** parameter can be specified as needed (see **5**).
Finish after	Select one or more end events. All video recordings between the start point (when the action starts) and the end point (when the event is received) will be copied. **Important! Replication will not start until the end event is received.**

5. Specify **Offset**(**4**), if you specified **Duration** for replication. Video recordings from the period [start action - offset, start action + duration - offset] will be copied.

To run replication on schedule (corresponding to **Time schedule** 1), configure the macro as follows:



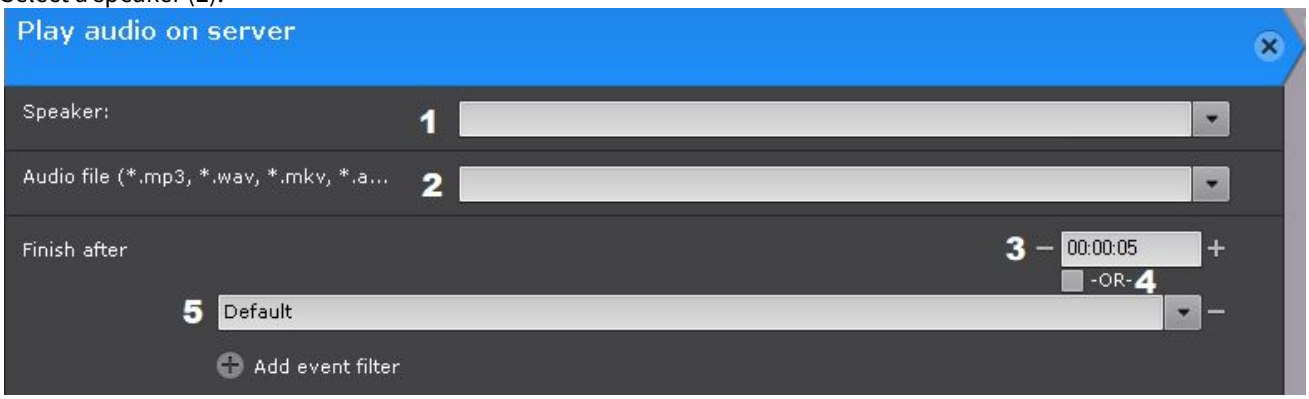
7.5.6.14 Play audio on Server

You can play back audio through a Server PC's loudspeaker.

> **Attention!**
>
> To make the client-side audio playback possible, you have to create a **Speaker** object allowing **Play on Server** playback mode (see The Speaker Object).

To configure the action, set up the parameters:

1. Select a speaker (**1**).



2. In the **Audio file** field (**2**), enter the full path to the audio notification file.
3. Configure a condition (IF event, trigger) that will cancel the notification:

Condition	Description
Timer (**3**)	Only a timer value is set. Alerts are cancelled according to the time setting.
Events Filter (**5**)	One or several events are set, the timer is set to 00:00:00. Alerts are cancelled according to the IF event (trigger).
Timer (**3**) + Intelligent event filter (IF) (**5**).	One or several events are set, the timer is set to non-zero. Alerts are cancelled in a given time after the selected IF event (trigger) occurs.

Timer (**3**) + **OR** flag (**4**) + IF (**5**).	One or several events are set, the timer is set to non-zero, the **OR** flag is set. In this case, the alert is cancelled on any of the two conditions: after the time interval expires or if an IF event (trigger) occurs.

Note

The **OR** flag can be set only if the timer setting is not 00:00:00.

Note

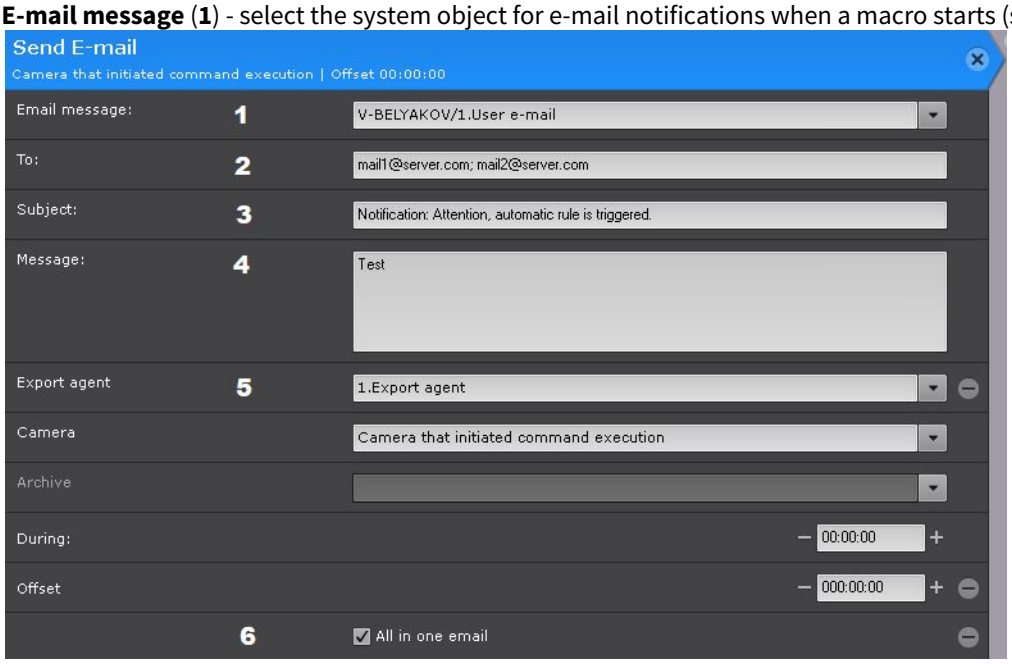
An implicit selection of an event is allowed - **Last event for condition that initiated execution**.
For example, if the event that triggered the execution of the command was the **Start time of detection tool trigger** from any type of detection tools, then the end event will be the **End time of detection tool trigger** from the same tool.

7.5.6.15 E-mail notification

This sends e-mails to the specified addresses. Exported videos or snapshots can be attached.

To configure the e-mail notification:

1. **E-mail message** (**1**) - select the system object for e-mail notifications when a macro starts (see The E-mail Object).



2. Enter the e-mail addresses of anyone who should be notified (**2**).

Note

Multiple e-mail addresses can be specified. Separate them with comma (,) or semicolon (;).

Note

Notifications will also be sent to the addresses you specified when configuring the **E-mail** object (see The E-mail Object).

3. **Subject** (**3**) - the subject of the e-mail notification that will be sent when a macro starts.
4. **Message** (**4**) - enter the text of the e-mail notification.

> **Note**
>
> You can use templates in the message (see Text templates in macros).

5. If necessary, you can attach exported videos or snapshots to your message. Click the button (**5**) to add and configure additional parameters. Configuration of these parameters is identical to configuration of export (see Starting export).

> **Note**
>
> If the **Period** is not specified, the snapshot is sent. You can set the format of video/snapshot export in the Export agent settings (see Configuring an Export Agent).

6. If a macro is launched from a group of cameras (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros), you can send the snapshots from all cameras as attachment in a single e-mail message. To do this, set the **All in one Email** checkbox (**6**). If this checkbox is not set, the camera snapshots will be sent in separate e-mails.

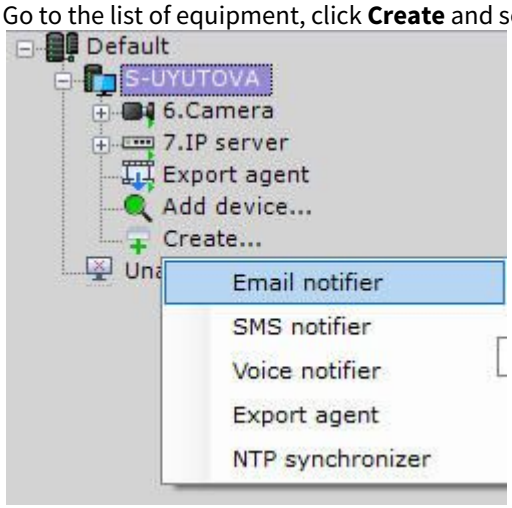
7.5.6.15.1 The E-mail Object

The **E-mail** object is used to configure electronic messages which can then be sent to a user as an automatic response when a detection tool is triggered.

7.5.6.15.1.1 Creating the E-mail Object

To create the **E-mail** object, do as follows:

1. Go to the list of equipment, click **Create** and select **Email notifier**.



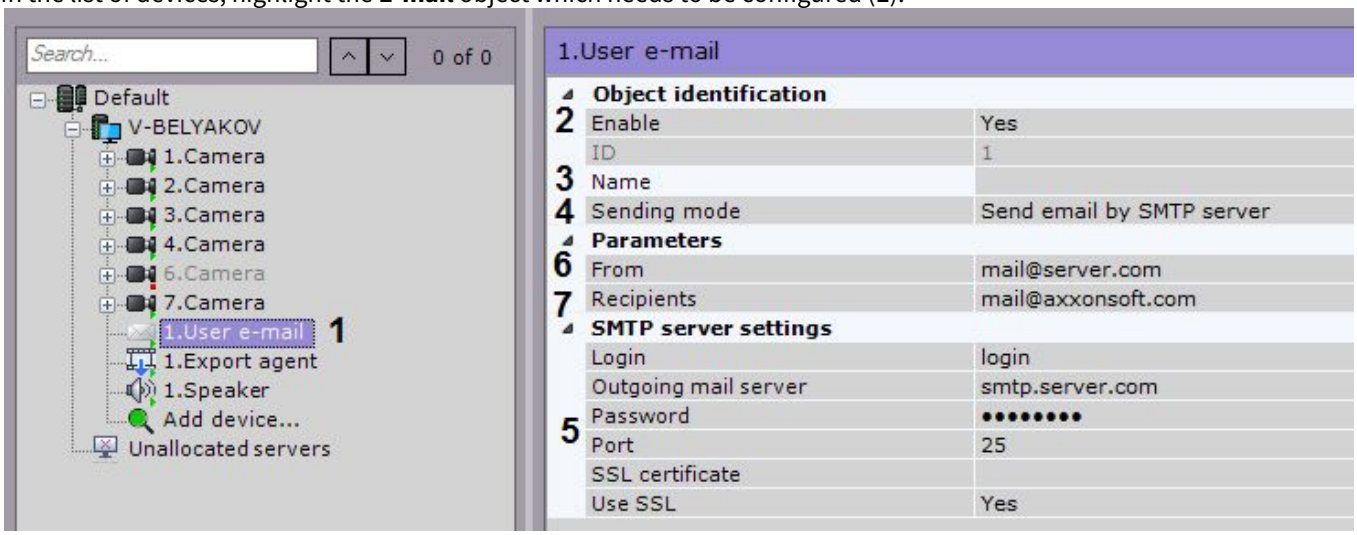
2. Click the **Apply** button.
3. When you do this, an **E-mail** object appears in the list of devices.

Creation of the **E-mail** object is now complete.

7.5.6.15.1.2 Configuring the E-mail Object

To configure an **E-mail** object, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the list of devices, highlight the **E-mail** object which needs to be configured (**1**).



2. Activate the **E-mail** object (**2**) by selecting **Yes** in the **Enable** list.
3. In the **Name** field (**3**) enter the desired name of the **E-mail** object.
4. Select the mode for sending e-mail alerts: through AxxonNet or through the specified SMTP server (**4**).

> **Attention!**
>
> To send alerts via AxxonNet, you should connect to it (see AxxonNet Setup and Operation).
> AxxonNet has a limit of 10 messages a day.

> **Note**
>
> Message via AxxonNet will be sent within one minute.

5. Configure the SMTP server, if this mode has been selected (**5**):
   a. In the **SSL certificate** field, specify the path to the SSL certificate file, if you use this protocol. If no certificate is specified, but the **Use SSL** parameter is enabled, then the mail server certificate will be used.
   b. If you need to use an SSL-encrypted connection when connecting to the outgoing mail server, select **Yes** from the **Use SSL** list.
   c. In the **Name** field, enter the name of the user account used to send messages on the outgoing mail server.
   d. In the **Password** field, enter the password for the user account on the outgoing mail server.
   e. In the **Port** field, enter the number of the port used by the outgoing mail server.
   f. In the **Outgoing mail server** field, enter the name of the outgoing SMTP mail server.
   g. In the **From** field, enter the e-mail address from which the messages will be sent (**6**).

> **Attention!**
>
> When using e-mail notification, mail servers may lock the user account, or deny authentication in some cases. We recommend you to set all security parameters to off in your e-mail account.

6. Enter e-mail addresses of anyone who should be notified (**7**).

> **Note**
>
> Several email addresses can be specified. Separate them with semicolon (**;**)

7. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of the **E-mail** object is now complete.

7.5.6.15.1.3 Checking E-mail Notification

To check e-mail notification from an **E-mail** object, send a test message by clicking the **Test** button.

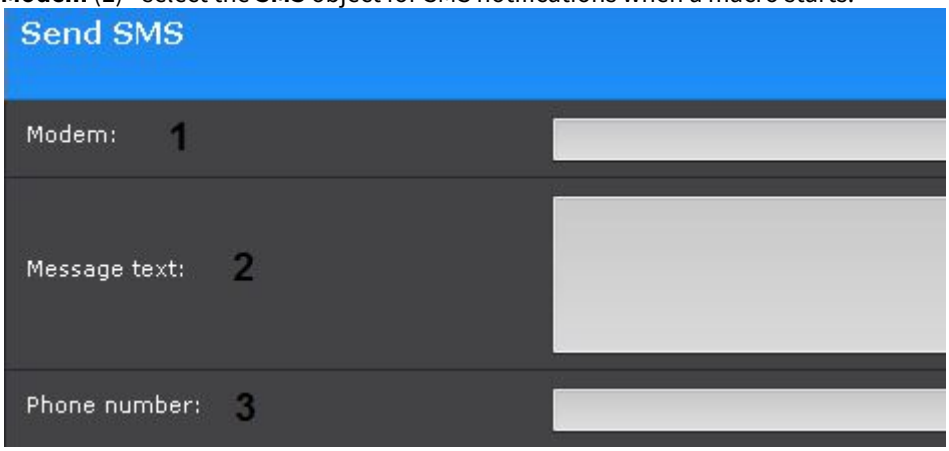
When you do this, the following message is sent to the e-mail address indicated in the **Recipients** field (see the section Configuring the E-mail Object): "Test message"

> **Note**
>
> If the recipient does not receive the message, make sure that the settings of the **E-mail** object have been properly configured

7.5.6.16 SMS notification

To configure the action, set up the parameters:

1. **Modem** (**1**) - select the **SMS** object for SMS notifications when a macro starts.



2. **Message text** (**2**) - enter the SMS text for SMS notifications.

> **Attention!**
>
> The number of characters in a message is limited to:
> - 160 ASCII characters;
> - 70 Unicode characters.
>
> If the limit is exceeded, a multi-part text message is transmitted.

> **Note**
>
> You can use templates to build a message body (see Text templates in macros).

3. Enter the phone numbers of anyone who should be notified (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> Several phone numbers can be specified. Separate them with semicolon (**;**).

> **Note**
>
> Notifications / alerts will also be sent at the phone numbers you specified when configuring The SMS Object

7.5.6.16.1 The SMS Object

The **SMS** object is used to configure SMS messages which can then be sent to users as an automatic response when a detection tool is triggered.

> **Attention!**
>
> To use SMS notification, you need a modem recognizable by the OS as a COM device. No other types of modems can be used for this purpose.
> For example, the following modem types are supported:
> 1. Siemens TC-35.
> 2. Flyer U12 (Windows 7 and higher).
>
> Other modems may work or not. We recommend you to check supported Windows versions for each particular device. Carrier-locked modems are not recommended.

> **Note**
>
> If a USB modem is used to send SMS messages, use the modem utility from the modem software bundle. It will unlock the modem for correct operation

7.5.6.16.1.1 Procedure of configuring SMS notifications

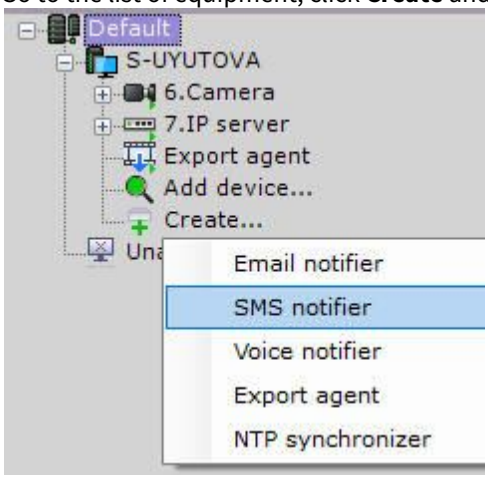
To configure SMS notifications:

1. Stop the Server.
2. Connect a modem and, in the utility supplied with the modem, wait for the signal level to be determined.
3. Make sure that the number of the SMS center is shown. Do not connect to the Internet.
4. Start the Server and Client. Create and configure an **SMS** object.

7.5.6.16.1.2 Creating the SMS Object

To create the **SMS** object, do as follows:

1. Go to the list of equipment, click **Create** and select **SMS notifier**.



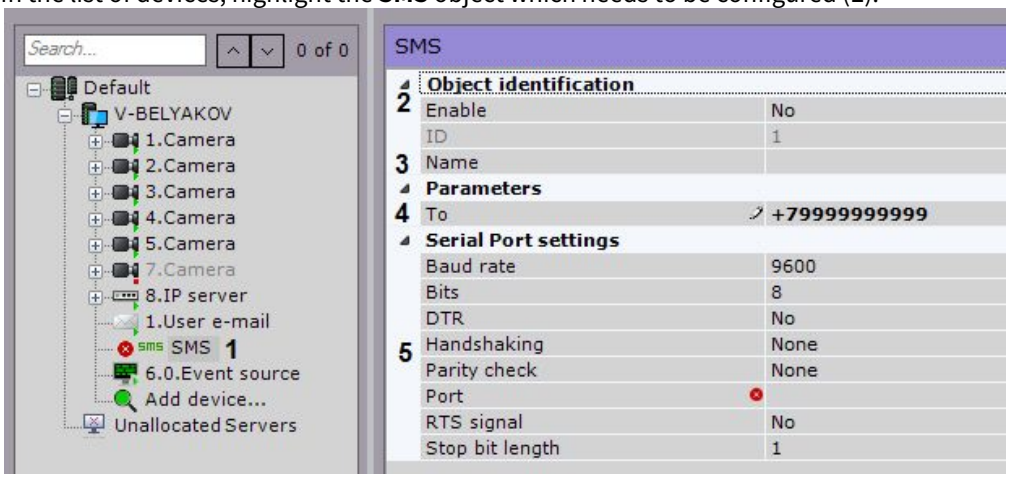
2. Click the **Apply** button.
3. When you do this, the **SMS** object appears in the list of devices.

Creation of the **SMS** object is now complete.

7.5.6.16.1.3 Configuring the SMS Object

To configure an **SMS** object, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the list of devices, highlight the **SMS** object which needs to be configured (**1**).



2. Activate the **SMS** object (**2**) by selecting **Yes** in the **Enable** list.
3. In the **Name** field (**3**) enter the desired name of the **SMS** object.
4. In the **To** field (**4**), enter the cellular telephone number, in international format (+<*country code*>*xxxxxxxxxx*), to which messages will be sent.
5. In the **SerialPort settings** group (**5**), indicate the port settings used to connect to the GSM modem by which SMS messages will be sent:
    a. If you need to use a DTR control signal, select **Yes** from the **DTR** list.
    b. In the **Bits** field, enter the number of bits in the byte of a data packet.
    c. In the **Stop bits length** field, enter the number of bits in the stop bit of a data packet.
    d. If you need to use a parity check when transmitting data, select the desired method of parity check from the Parity list.
    e. From the **Port** list, select the serial port used to connect to the GSM modem.
    f. If hardware control of the serial port data protocol is enabled (see step 5.8) and you need to use an RTS signal, select **Yes** from the **RTS signal** list.
    g. Select the speed for data transmission via the GSM modem from the **Baud rate** list.
    h. If you need to control the serial port data protocol, select the desired method of control from the **Handshaking** list: hardware (RTS/STS), software (XOn/XOff), or alternating.
6. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of the **SMS** object is now complete.

7.5.6.16.1.4 Checking SMS notifications

To check SMS notifications from an SMS message object, send a test message by clicking the **Test message** button.

When you do this, the following message is sent to the mobile number indicated in the **To** field: "This is a test message to check Axxon Next SMS notification."

> **Note**
>
> If the recipient does not receive the message, make sure that the settings of the SMS object have been properly configured

7.5.6.17 Push notification

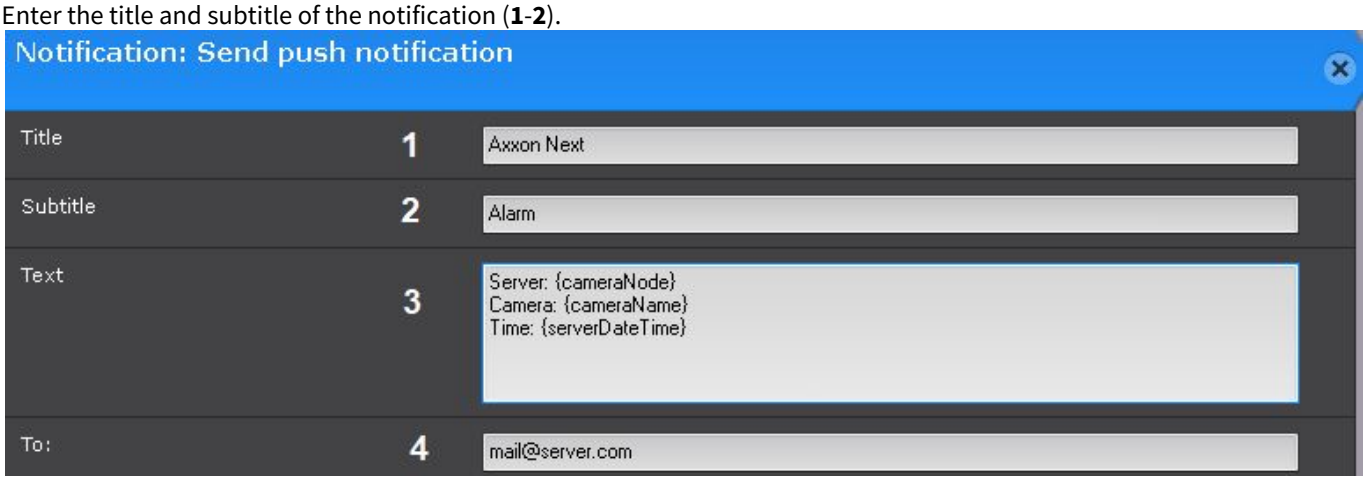
This command sends a push notification to the device with the AxxonNet app installed.

To run the command, make sure the following requirements are met:

- The Axxon Domain must be connected to AxxonNet (see Connecting Axxon Domain to AxxonNet).
- The person who is notified must log in with AxxonNet cloud credentials in the AxxonNet app.

To configure this command, do as follows:

1. Enter the title and subtitle of the notification (**1**-**2**).



2. Enter the main text of the notification (**3**). Text templates may be used (see Text templates in macros).
3. Enter the e-mail address of the user who will be notified (**4**). Only one address is allowed.

7.5.6.18 Starting an external program on Clients

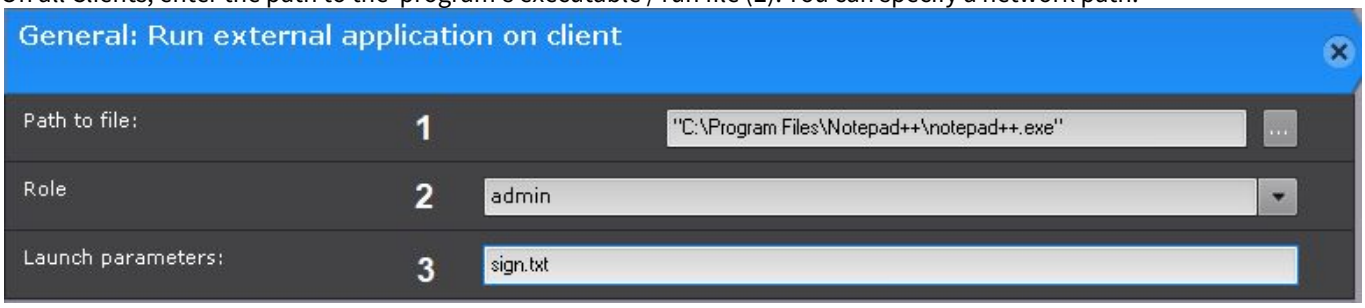
This starts an external program on your Axxon Next client.

The external program is started on all Clients that are connected to the domain.

> **Attention!**
>
> The external program is not started on a computer that is an Axxon Next Server, if the Client is not running on the computer when a macro is triggered.

To configure, do the following:

1. On all Clients, enter the path to the program's executable / run file (**1**). You can specify a network path.



2. Select users of the (external) program (**2**).
3. You can also add command-line options (**3**). When you start an external program, its directory matches the one in which the executable file is located. If there is a file in the startup parameters and it is located in the directory with the program's executable file, you do not need to specify the path to it.

> **Attention!**
>
> To run the program, you need administrator permissions. You have to disable UAC (in OS *Windows* Server 2012 versions, 8, 8.1 and you need to edit the registry), or start *Axxon Next* with administrator rights

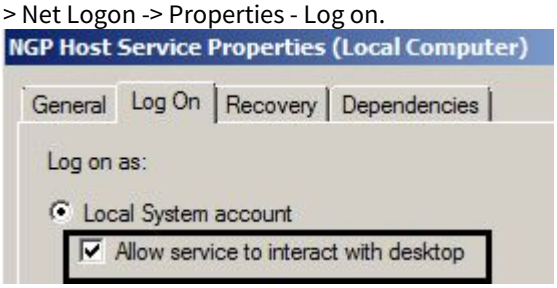
7.5.6.19 Starting an external program on Servers

This starts an external program on your Axxon domain.

> **Attention!**
>
> Any software containing a GUI is not recommended to be executed on the Server. If you encounter a problem launching interactive services, please refer to the Windows OS user manual.

To configure, do the following:

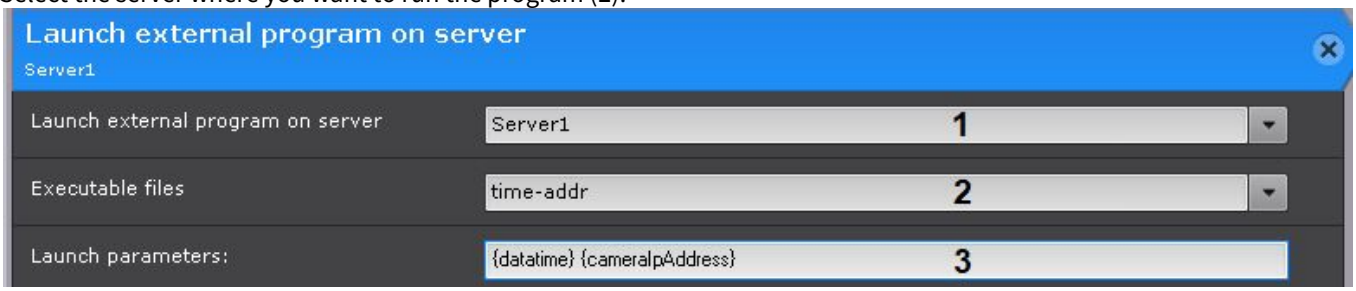
1. Allow interaction of the server **NGP Host service** with the desktop: Start > Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services > Net Logon -> Properties - Log on.



> **Note**
>
> For **Failover Server and Client** installation type (see Installation), you have to allow the **NGP RaFT supervisor service** to interact with desktop.

2. Add to folder <Directory where Axxon Next is installed>\UserScripts\ one or more .bat files with the application startup command.
   The command should include a path to the executable file. You can specify a network path and command-line options (see Starting an external program on Clients).

3. Select the server where you want to run the program (**1**).



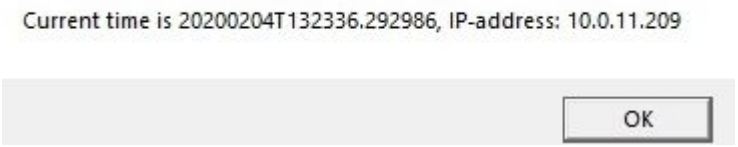
4. Select a bat. file with the run command (**2**).
5. Enter templates, if they were set via a bat file (**3**).

> **Attention!**
>
> If it is expected that the query result contains spaces and/or some special shell characters (> & | < etc.), then the template should be enclosed in quotation marks (""). For example, "{rectangles}". The entire template string should be enclosed in quotation marks.

Example 1: If you apply the following bat file:

```
SET "datatime=%1"
SET "cameraIpAddress=%2"

msg * Current time is %datatime%, IP-address: %cameraIpAddress%
```

executing the macro will lead to the following message:



Example 2: Exporting camera connection status events (offline/online) to a csv.bat file containing the following:

```
SELECT "timestamp"
    ,REGEXP_REPLACE("object_id", 'hosts/', '') as device,
    CASE
                                WHEN ("any_values"::json->>'state') = '4' THEN 'Signal Lost'
                                WHEN ("any_values"::json->>'state') = '3' THEN 'Signal
Restored'
                                ELSE ''
        END as state
FROM public."t_json_event"
WHERE type = '0' AND ("any_values"::json->>'state'='3' OR "any_values"::json->>'state'='4') AND
timestamp >= '20200211T0000'
ORDER by timestamp DESC
```

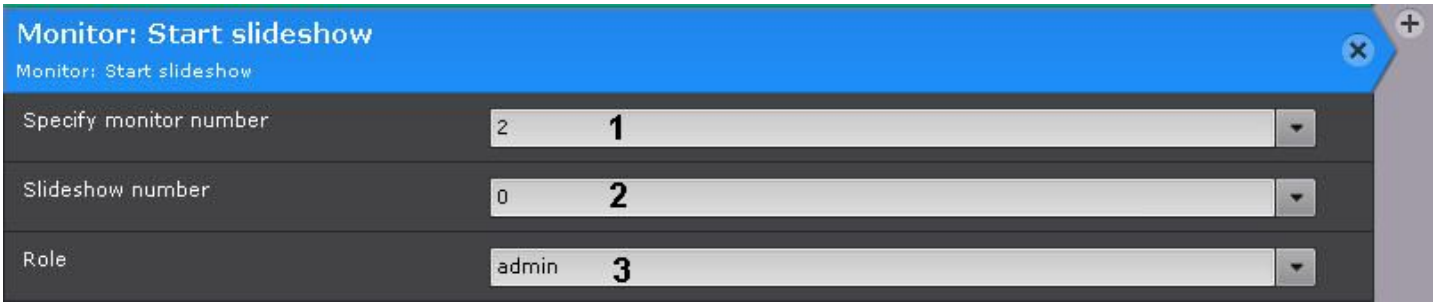
Example 3: Exporting detection tools triggering events to a csv.bat file containing the following:

```
SELECT "timestamp",
        REGEXP_REPLACE("object_id", 'hosts/', '') as device,
        CASE
                                WHEN ("any_values"::json->>'phase') = '1' THEN 'Closed'
                                WHEN ("any_values"::json->>'phase') = '2' THEN 'Opened'
```

```
                                ELSE ''
        END as state
FROM public."t_json_event"
WHERE type = '1' AND timestamp >= '20200209T110000' AND "object_id" LIKE '%ray%'
ORDER by timestamp DESC
```

7.5.6.20 Start/stop slideshow of layouts

These actions start and stop a specific layout slideshow (see Selection and Slideshow of Layouts) on the selected operator monitor for the assigned role.



To configure the **Start slideshow** action, set the following parameters:

1. Specify monitor number (**1**).

   Note

   If you select a dash (–) when selecting a monitor, the slideshow will run for the active monitor.

2. Specify Slideshow number (**2**).

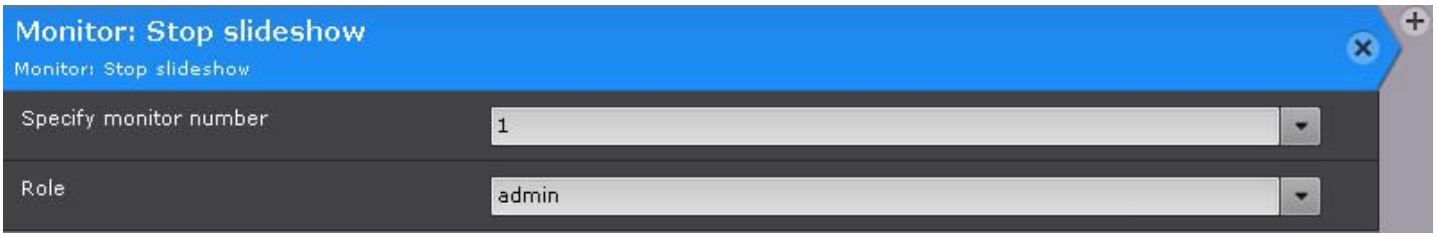
   Note

   The list starts with a zero. For example, **Slideshow #1** in the **Layouts** interface will have the number 0.

3. Select the role for which the macro will function (**3**).

   Note

   If you leave the **Role** field empty, the macro will function for all roles that have access to this rule.



The **Stop slideshow** action is configured in the same way. The macro stops the slideshow being played.

Note

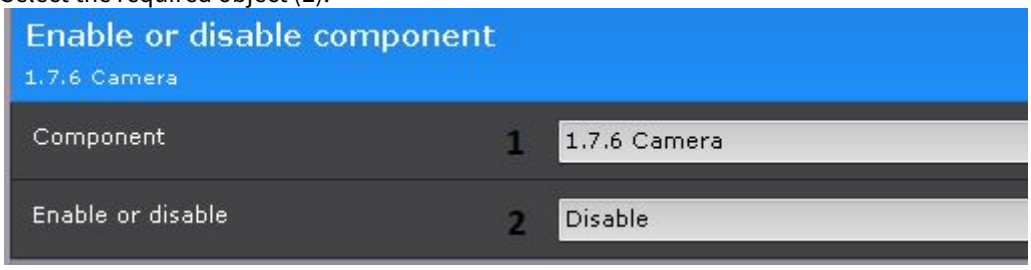
To stop the slideshow of the layouts, you can also select any video surveillance window by clicking the left mouse button. After restarting the Client, the slideshow resumes.

7.5.6.21 Enable/disable a component

This action enables or disables the selected camera, detection tool or input.

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select the required object (**1**).



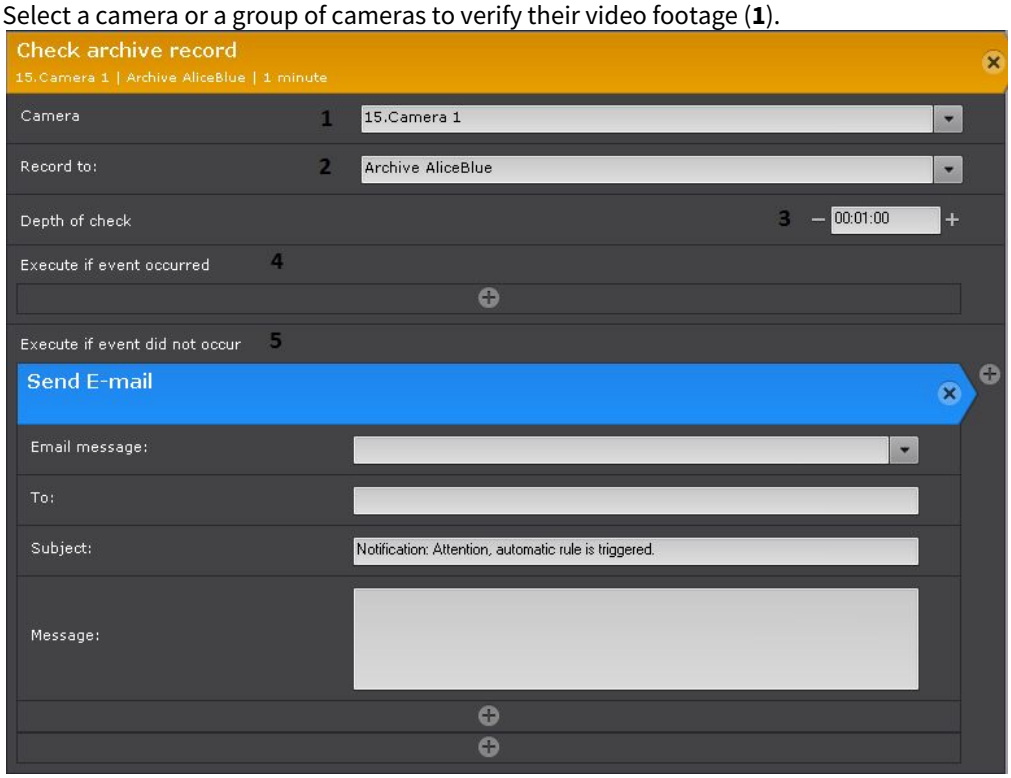
2. Select the desired command (**2**).

7.5.6.22 Checking for archive video recordings

This action checks recorded video from a specific camera or group of cameras for the specified period.

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select a camera or a group of cameras to verify their video footage (**1**).



> **Attention!**
>
> If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

2. Select an archive where you want to check if recorded video is available (**2**). If you leave the field empty, all recorded video in the camera's archives is checked.
3. Specify how far back in the past to scan (**3**). The verification time period covers: [the time of the action start - (minus) the depth of the check; start time of the action].
4. Select a reaction if the archive entries are found (**4**).
5. Select a reaction if the archive entries are not found (**5**).

Note

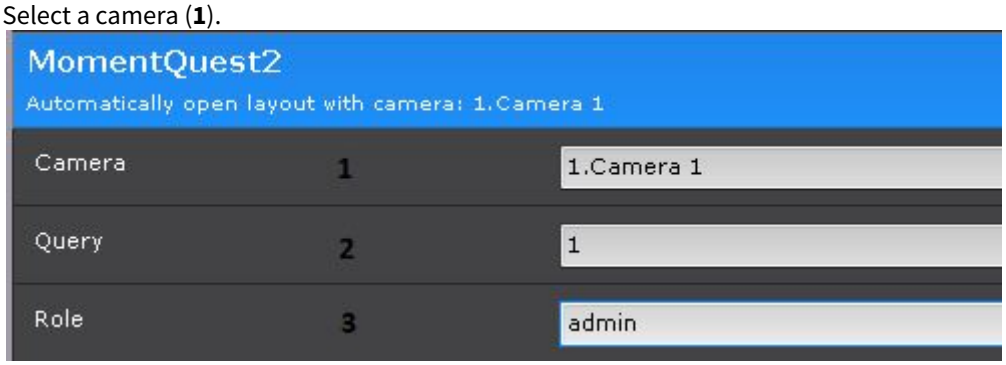
If E-mail - or SMS-notification is selected as a reaction, then the target cameras will be indicated in the message (if a group of cameras was selected) for which there are no entries in the archive for the specified period.
You can also use two special purpose templates in the message:
{failureRecordCheck} – failed verification of a record in a Archive (format: Server Name|Camera Name|Archive Name).
{successRecordCheck} – successful verification of a record in a Archive (format: Server Name|Camera Name|Archive Name).
Important! For proper execution of the macro, synchronize the time across all Servers within the Axxon domain.

7.5.6.23 Switching to Forensic Search results

This allows you to open saved search results.

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select a camera (**1**).



2. Select a previously saved search query (**2**).
3. You can target users by selecting a role (**3**).

7.5.6.24 Voice notification from Client

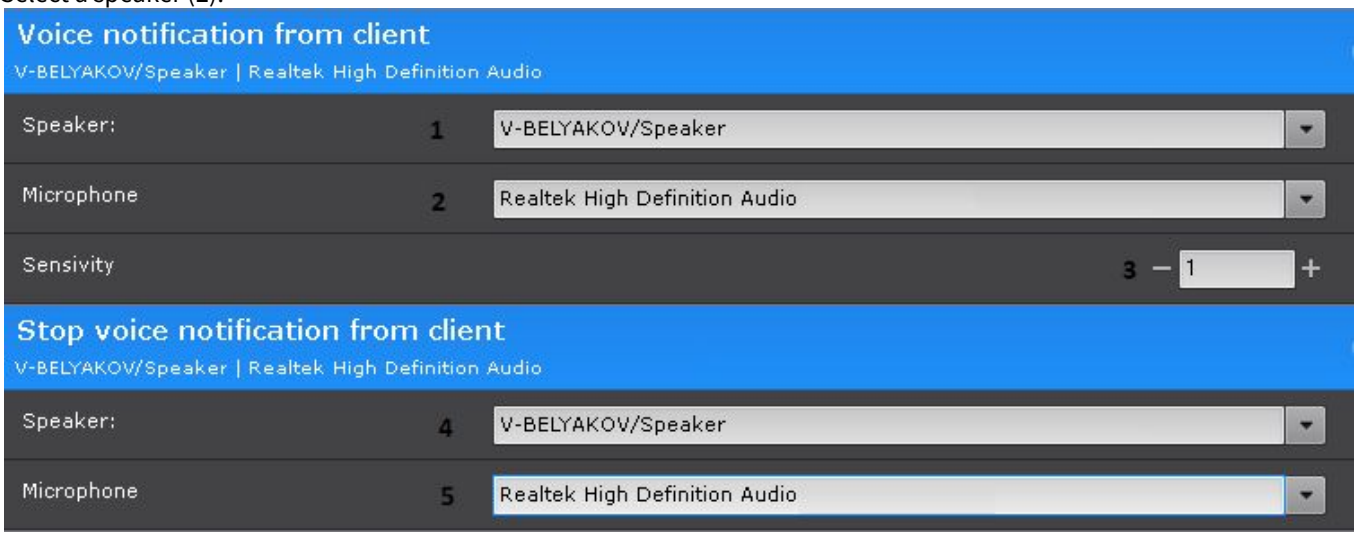
Use this action for routing the voice transmission from a client PC to a designated loudspeaker.

Attention!

If a Client resides behind the NAT, you have to specify the external IP address of the switch for this Client with a port range larger than 1000 (see Network settings utility).

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select a speaker (**1**).



2. Select a microphone (**2**).
3. Specify sensitivity from 0 to 100 (**3**).

To stop sound, use the **Stop voice notification from client** command on Client.

To configure this command, select a speaker (**4**) and a microphone (**5**).

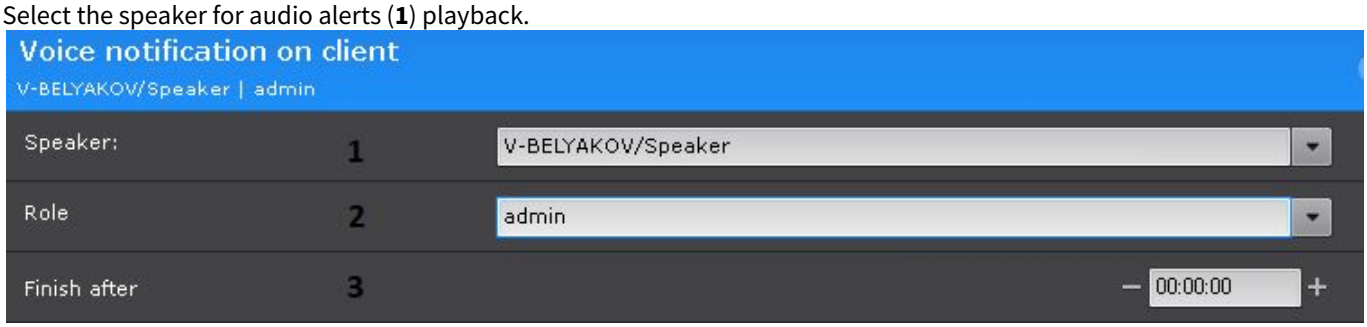
7.5.6.25 Voice notification on Client

You can play back audio via client PC's loudspeakers.

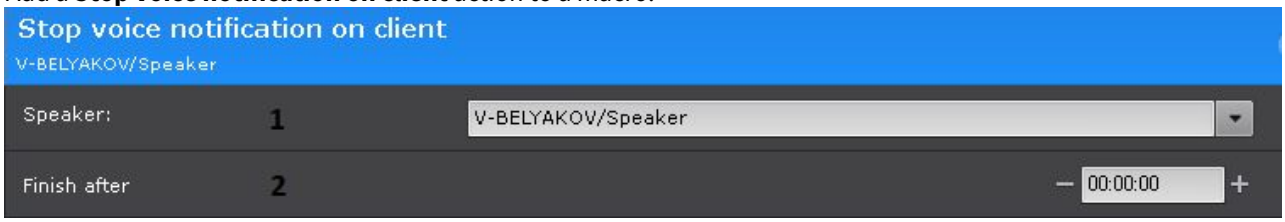
> **Attention!**
>
> To make the client-side audio playback possible, you have to create a **Speaker** object allowing **Play on Clients** playback mode (see The Speaker Object).

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select the speaker for audio alerts (**1**) playback.



2. Select a role to address alerts to specific users (**2**).
3. If you need to cancel audio alerts after some time, set the required time interval (**3**).
4. For event-triggered audio alerts cancellation, do the following:
   a. Create a new event macro with all required events filtered (see Create Macros, Configuring filters for event-driven macros).
   b. Add a **Stop voice notification on client** action to a macro.



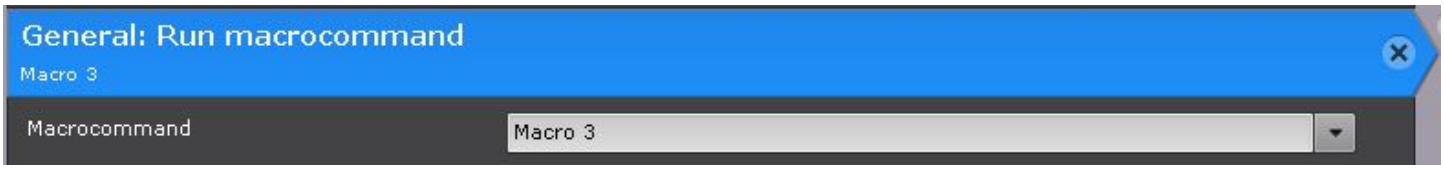
   c. Select the loudspeaker where you want to cancel audio alerts (**1**).

d. If you need to cancel alerts after a certain amount of time, set the required time interval (**2**).

7.5.6.26 Executing a macro

This action launches another macro.

To set up this procedure, select the necessary macro.



This action launches only event-related macros.

7.5.6.27 Alarm dispatch

This action consists of alarm management and evaluation.

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select a video camera or a group of cameras to dispatch an alarm (**1**).

> **Attention!**
>
> If the start of the macro was triggered by the activation of input or output (see Configuring filters for event-driven macros) that is not connected to any camera, you need to select a specific camera here. If you select a group of cameras or a camera that triggered the command, the action will not start.

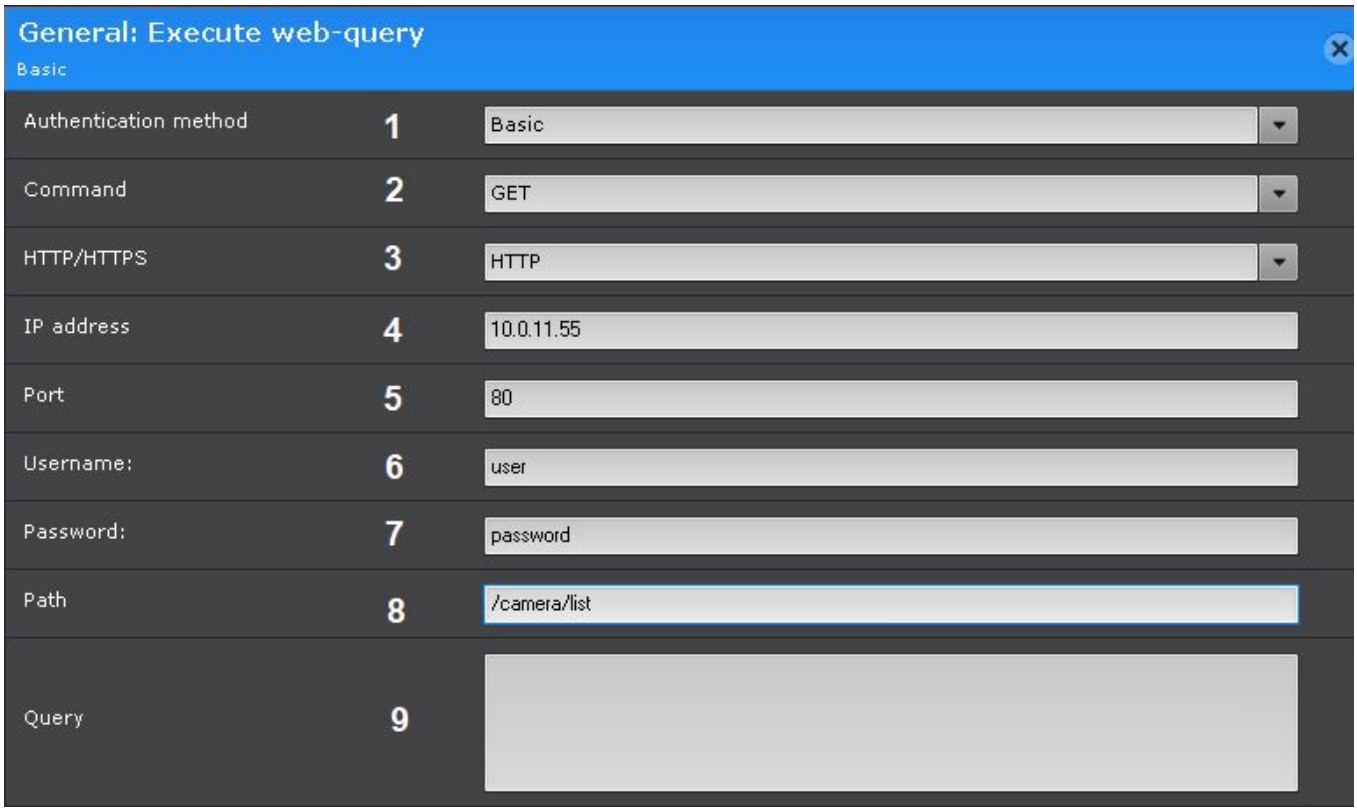
2. Select the alarm status (**2**).

7.5.6.28 Executing a web query

This action sends a GET or POST query to a specified Server.

To configure this action, do as follows:

1. Select the authentication method: Basic or Digest (**1**).



2. Select query type (**2**). 4 types are available: POST, GET, PUT, DELETE.
3. Select HTTP or HTTPS Server protocol (**3**).
4. Enter the IP address of the Server (**4**).
5. Enter the port number of the Server (**5**).
6. Enter the user name (**6**) and password (**7**) to be used for automatic authorization.
7. Enter query string (**8**).
8. For a POST query, enter its body (**9**).

> **Note**
>
> You can use templates to build a query body (see Text templates in macros).

7.5.6.29 Text templates in macros

You can use message templates in commands (see E-mail notification, SMS notification, Executing a web query) that involve sending notifications:

- {cameraNode} - Server name;
- {eventNode} - Server name (used if the macro launching condition is not linked to a particular camera);
- {cameraName} - name and short name of the camera that initiated the macro;
- {cameraLabel} - just the camera's name;
- {cameraIpAddress} - camera's IP address;
- {cameraId} - camera's ID;
- {cameraRef}- the VIDEOSOURCEID identifier;
- {list} - name of the List of Facial Templates or ANPR list;
- {plate} - recognized vehicle number;
- {plateDirection} - the direction of movement of the vehicle in the frame;

> **Note**
>
> Possible values:
> **1** - from top to bottom;

2 - from bottom to top.

- {name} - name of the recognized person from Lists of Facial Templates;
- {age} - age of the recognized individual;
- {gender} - gender of the recognized individual;

Attention!

The {age} and {gender} templates can be applied when the following conditions are met:

a. The **Gender and Age** parameter is activated in facial detection tool settings (see Configuring Face detection).
b. The **Face Appeared: Specified Triggering** event is selected as a launch condition for this macro (s).

- {appearedTime} - UTC time of object detection;
- {dateTime} - date and UTC time of triggering the macro in ISO format;
- {serverDateTime} - local Server time of triggering the macro in ISO format;
- {rectangles} - coordinates and size of the object that triggered the detection tool;
- statistics templates:
  - {cpuUsage} - percentage of CPU load on a Server;
  - {netUsage} - percentage of used network bandwidth on a Server;
  - {memoryUsage} - percentage of used RAM on a Server;
  - {diskUsage} - percentage of disk usage;
  - {archiveUsage} - percentage of Video Footage usage.

Attention!

You can apply statistics templates only if you launch a macro by a corresponding statistical condition (see Triggering macros by statistical data).

Note

Templates allow {} and %%. For example, %cameraId%.

Note

Date/time templates (such as dateTime, serverDateTime, appearedTime and serverAppearedTime) offer an extended input option which allows you to set date and time in arbitrary format. A format description parameter must be contained within a pair of @ symbols.
Here's an example: {dateTime@%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S@}. In this case, the actual format is presented as 2020-10-04 18:43:23.
Available parameters:

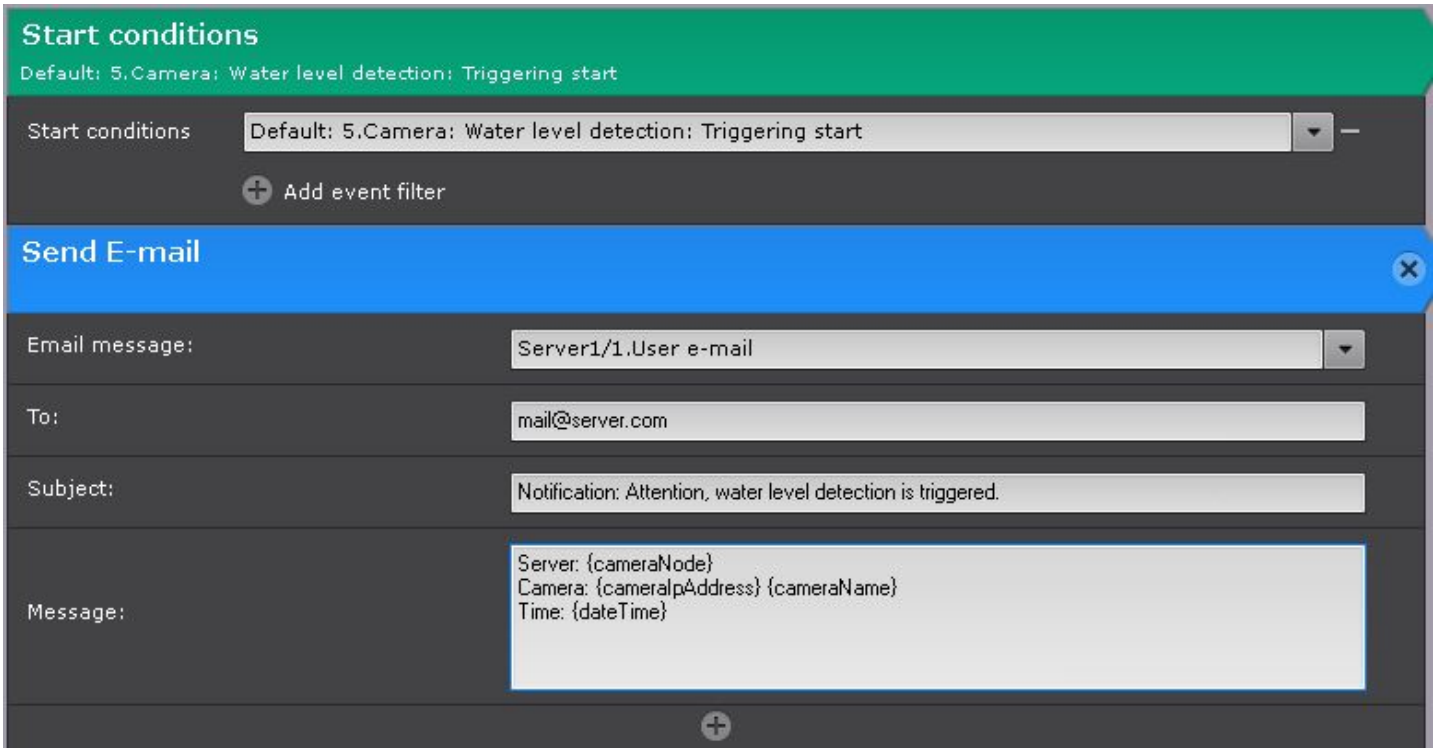
Parameter	Description
%a	Abbreviation for the day of the week
%A	Full name of the day of the week
%b	Abbreviation for the month
%B	Full name of the month
%y	Last two digits of the year
%Y	Full number of the year
%m	Month of the year
%d	Day of the month

Parameter	Description
%H	Hour in 24h format
%M	Minute as a decimal number
%S	Second as a decimal number
%F	Fractions of second

Combined parameters:

Parameter	Description
%D	Equivalent to %m/%d/%y
%T	Equivalent to %H:%M:%S

E.g. this macro sends an email of the following format when a water level detection tool triggers:



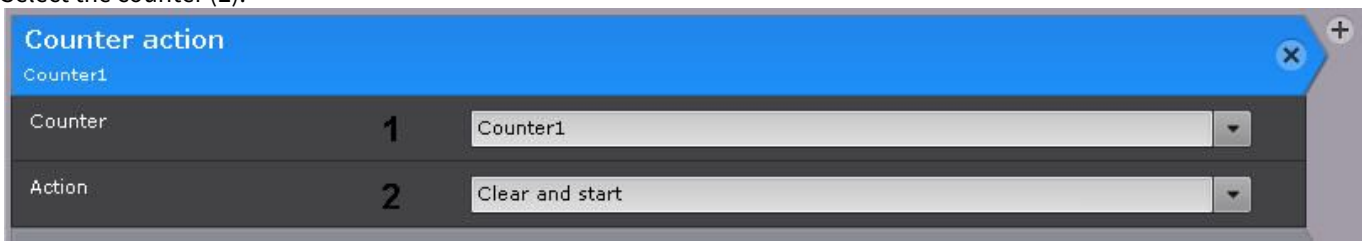

```
Subject: Notification: Attention, water level detection is triggered.

Server: Server1
Camera: 10.0.11.36 34.Camera
Time: 20190812T085517.926430
```

7.5.6.30 Managing the counter

This command allows you to run various operations with counters (see General information about the counters).

To configure this command, do as follows:

1. Select the counter (**1**).



2. Select the desired command (**2**).

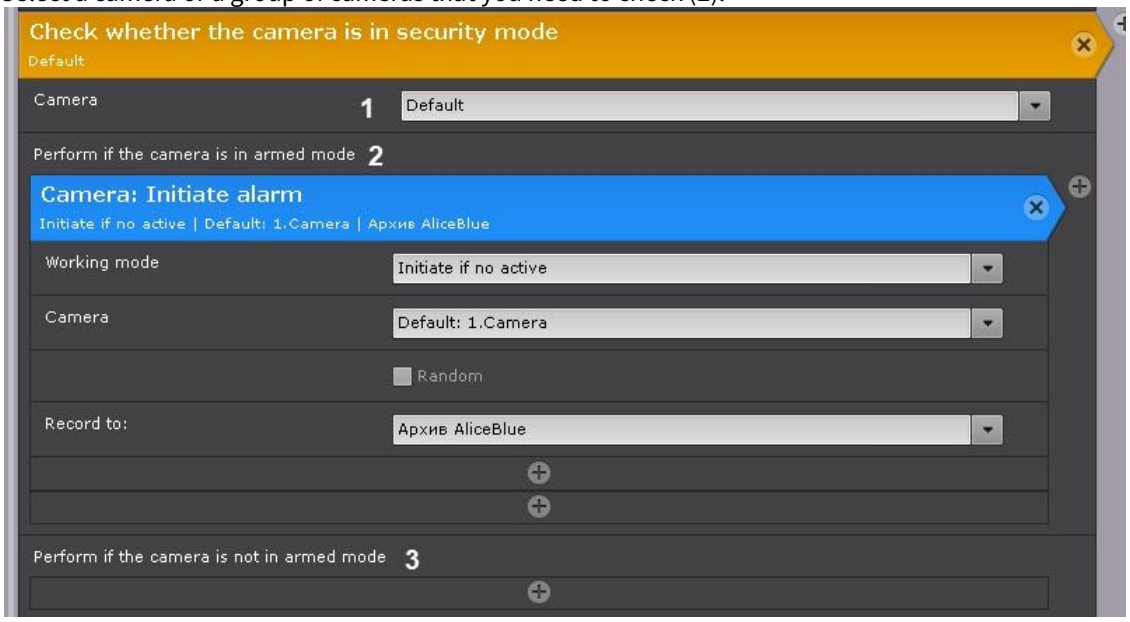
Command	Description
Start	Starting the counter. If the counter is running, its value changes as specified.
Stop	Stopping the counter. If the counter is on pause, its value does not change.
Clear	Resets the counter value to 0.
Clear and start	Resetting the counter value to 0 and starting it.
Stop and clear	Stopping the counter and resetting its value to 0.

7.5.6.31 Checking whether the camera is in armed mode

This command allows you to check whether a camera or a group of cameras is "armed" (see Arming and Disarming a Video Camera).

To configure this command, do as follows:

1. Select a camera or a group of cameras that you need to check (**1**).



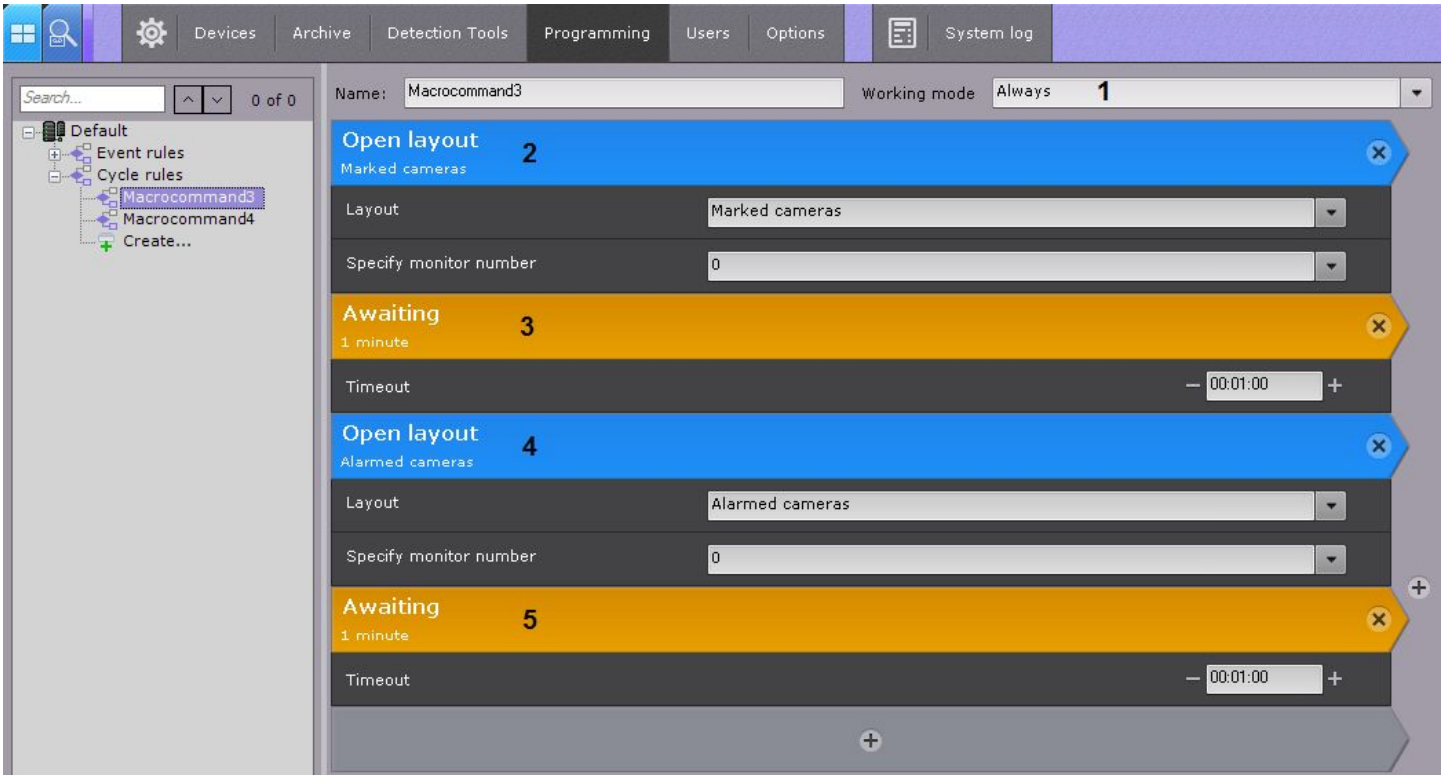
2. Select the response scenario if the camera checked is armed (**2**).
3. Select the response scenario if the camera checked is not armed (**3**).

7.5.7 Cyclical macros

Attention!

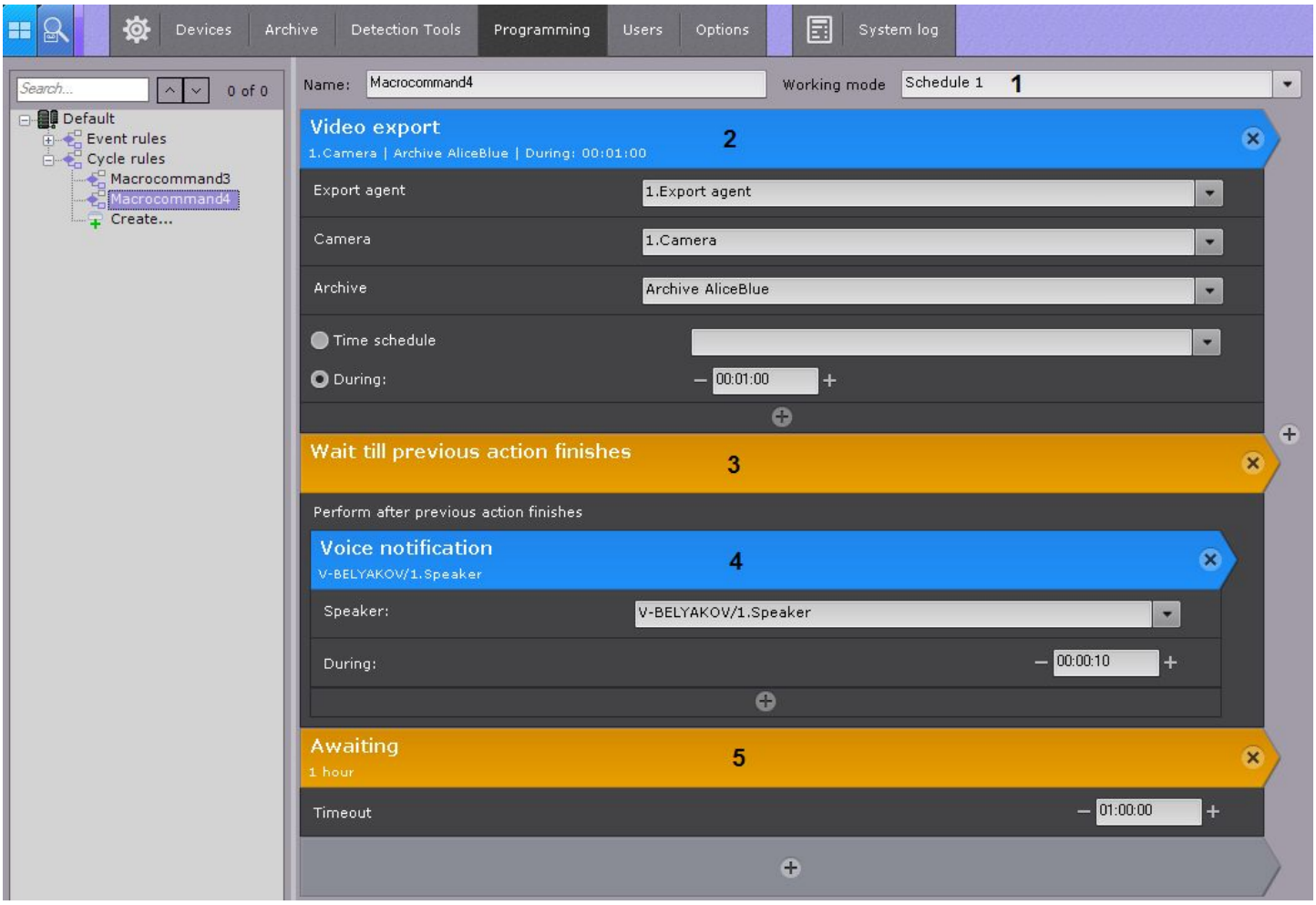
If you do not have the **Wait** command in a cyclic macro, the time-out between cycles is 1 second.

Example 1. This macro runs continuously (**1**), starting from the moment that you saved it.



The cycle consists of alternating layouts with marked cameras (**2**) and layouts with alarmed cameras (**4**). Interval - 1 minute (**3** , **5**).

Example 2. This macro runs continuously within the time schedule 1 (**1**).



Every hour (**5**) video from camera 1 is exported (**2**). After the export is completed (**3**), an audio alert is sounded (**4**).

Wait for timeout
Wait till previous action finishes

7.6 Configuring user permissions

In Axxon Next, every user has permissions based on their role.

By default, there is one role (**admin**) and one user (**root**). The **root** user belongs to the **admin** role and has rights to configure all components of the video surveillance system. To add a user with individual permissions, create a new role with the necessary permissions and then create a new user account.

Note

Only **admin** users can create other admin role users.

Roles and users can be added and configured in **Settings**, on the **Users** tab.

There are two types of users: local (stored in the Server database) and LDAP (see Connecting LDAP users).

To enable LDAP users, you must configure access to LDAP catalogs.

The actions of all system users are recorded in the system log (see The System Log).

Note

The following user actions are logged:

- Client started/quit
- Settings for hardware, archive, or detection tool are deleted/added or changed
- Macros are created, deleted, or changed
- User permissions are added, deleted, or changed
- Camera alarm is initiated
- Camera is armed/disarmed
- Create / edit comments
- Snapshot or video is exported
- PTZ

In all user-specific events, the user IP address is indicated.

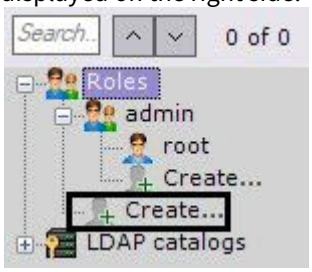
Date & time	Event type	Description
28/08/2020 17:38:27	Audit	Device "2.Face" of server "DESKTOP-PDDDG3B": Alarm initiated by user "admin"/"root" from IP address "192.168.15.9"
28/08/2020 17:38:26	Audit	Viewing of camera "2.Face" by user "admin"/"root" from IP address "192.168.15.9"

7.6.1 Creating and configuring roles

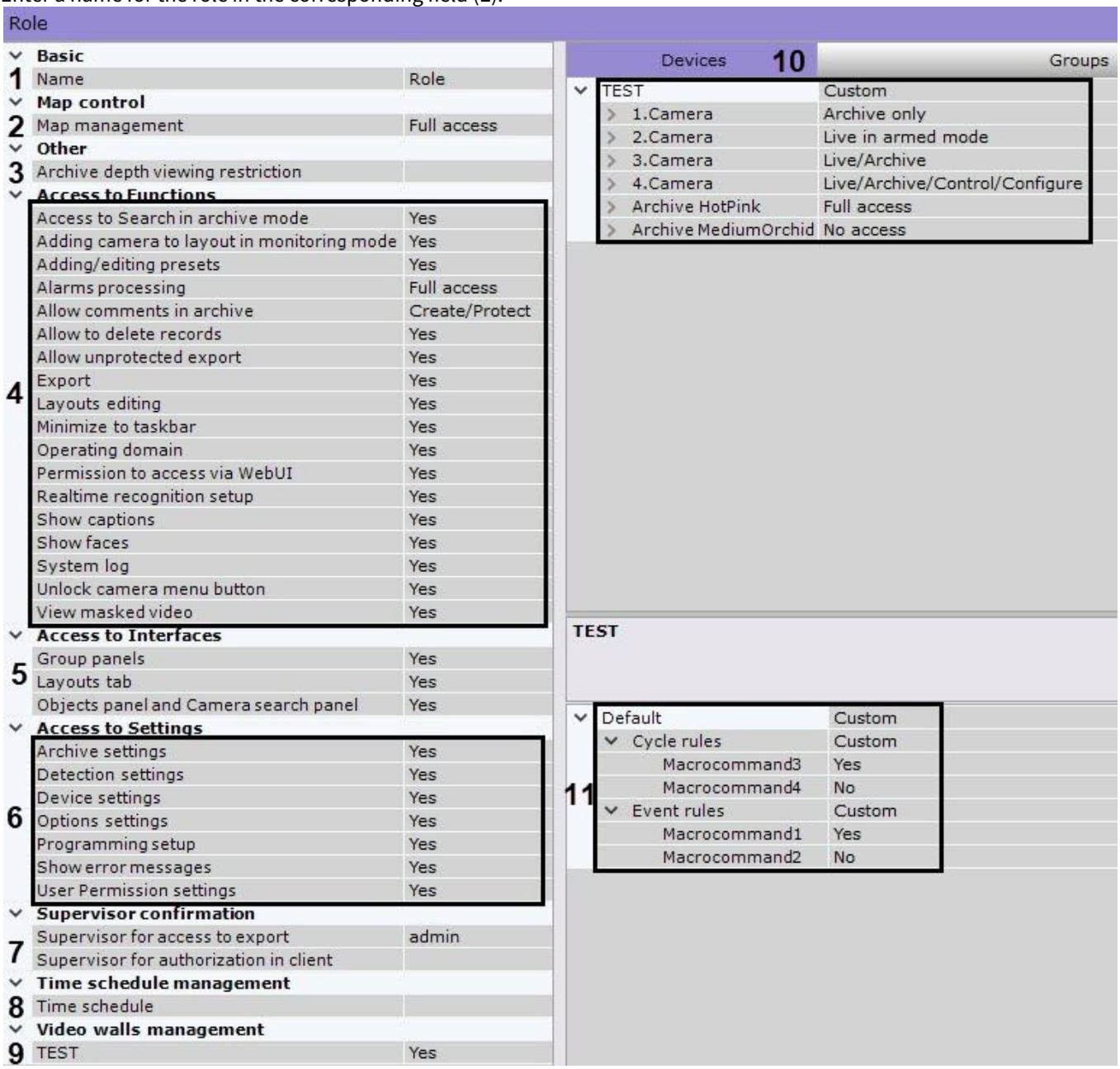
A role is intended for assigning a group of users individual rights and permissions for administration, management and/or monitoring of individual components of *Axxon Next*.

To create a new role, do the following:

1. At the end of the list of the system roles, click the **Create** link. The new role will be added to the system, with its properties displayed on the right side.



2. Enter a name for the role in the corresponding field (**1**).



3. Select the access level to the maps for users with the current role (**2**).

Access level	Description
View only	You can only view maps
View/move/scale	You can move and scale maps
Full access	All options available

4. If you need to limit the access of users of a given role to all system archives, you can specify the archive depth limit in hours in the **Archive depth viewing restriction** field (**3**). If no limit is set, users may access the entire video footage.
5. Set access permissions for *Axxon Next* functions (**4**). Access can be restricted to such features as:
   a. Archive search (see Video surveillance in Archive Search mode).
   b. Adding a camera to a layout in live video mode (see Adding cameras to cells).
   c. Access to private comments.
   d. Adding and editing presets for PTZ cameras (see Selecting a preset).
   e. Alarms Management (see Video surveillance in Alarm Management mode).

i. **No access** – users have no access to alarm videos.
ii. **View only** – users can view alarm videos but they can't evaluate alarms.
iii. **Full access** – users can view alarm videos and evaluate alarms.

f. Creating comments (see Operator comments) and protected records in video footage (see Protecting video footage from FIFO overwriting).

Access level	Description
No access	No comments allowed
Create	Add comments to the archive
Create / Protect	Add comments to the archive, create protected records
Create / Protect / Edit / Delete	Add comments to the archive, create and edit protected records

g. Removing videos from the footage archive (see Delete a part of an archive).
h. Allow unprotected export (see Frame export, Standard video export). Set **No** to require setting a password for exported images and video (see Exporting Frames and Video Recordings).
i. Exporting frames and video recordings (see Exporting Frames and Video Recordings).
j. Editing layouts (see Editing layouts).
k. Minimizing the Client to the system tray (see Interface of the Axxon Next Software Package).
l. Managing an Axxon domain (see Axxon Domain operations).
m. Access to the Web server (see Working with Axxon Next Through the Web Client).
n. Show captions (see Viewing titles from POS terminals).
o. Show faces (see Masking faces).
p. Viewing the system log (see The System Log).
q. Context menu of a video camera in a viewing tile (see Viewing Tile Context Menu).
r. View masked video (see Setting up privacy masking in Video Footage, Specific settings for people masking).

6. Configure the access rights to the following interfaces (**5**):
   a. to the **Layouts** tab. This parameter applies to both the main Client and the Web client (see Web client's GUI).
   b. to video camera groups in the **Hardware** tab and to video camera groups in the layout interface.
   c. For Objects panel (see Objects Panel) and Camera search panel (see Camera Search Panel).
7. Configure access rights to the **Settings** tabs and to the system error messages (**6**).

Attention!

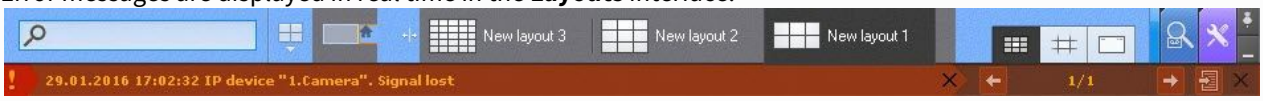
If you set the **User Permission settings** parameter to **Device access rights only**, all users of the given role will be permitted to change only access rights to connected devices.

Attention!

If the **Programming setup** is not available for the user role, the user will not be able to use the created macros until the appropriate rights are granted.

Note

Error messages are displayed in real time in the **Layouts** interface.



8. Set the parameters to apply the four-eye principle (**7**):
   a. If the administrator has to confirm the launch of export for users of this role (see Exporting Frames and Video Recordings). select the appropriate role in the **Supervisor for access to export** list.
   b. If the administrator has to confirm the login of users of this role (see Starting an Axxon Next Client), select the corresponding role in the **Supervisor for authorization in client** list.
9. If you need to grant the users in this role permissions only for a certain period of time, select a **Time schedule** (**8**) from the list. These users will not be able to use their permissions outside of the selected time schedule.

10. Configure the rights to manage connected Clients' monitors by setting permissions for each Server on an Axxon domain (**9**). A user who has management permissions for the monitors of a particular Server can manage monitors of any Client connected to that Server.
11. Set access permissions to hardware and archives on an Axxon domain (**10**). You can set permissions for all Server devices, for a specific device (the **Devices** tab) or a group of devices (the **Groups** tab, see Configuring video camera groups). You cannot switch tabs before you have saved the newly created role. You should save your changes while editing permissions in any tab and then you get access to another tab.

> **Attention!**
>
> If a camera belongs to different groups that have different access settings, then the last set access permission is applied to the camera.

Device	Access permissions	Description
Video camera	No access	You cannot access the device
	Archive only	You can only view video footage in archive
	Live in Armed mode	You can view video from the camera only when the camera is armed
	Live	You can view live video from the camera. Other functions and device configuration are not available
	Live/Archive	You can view live and recorded video from the camera. You cannot arm/disarm/configure the camera
	Live/Archive/Control	All functions available. You cannot configure the device
	Live/Archive/Control/Configure	All functions and settings available
Microphone	No access	You cannot listen to live sound from the video camera. You cannot listen to sound recordings from the archive
	Live Audio	You can listen to live sound from the video camera (the microphone should be turned on). You cannot listen to sound recordings from the archive
	Live Audio and Archive	All functions are available
PTZ	No access	You cannot control the PTZ device
	Minimum level	You can control the PTZ device with the corresponding priority (see Controlling a PTZ Camera)
	Low level	
	Medium level	
	High level	
	Maximum level	
Archive	No access	Access is not provided to this archive
	Full access	Archive is available for all functions

You can configure group rights for accessing devices and archives of a particular Server. To do so, select an access level for the **Server** object. Depending on the selected level, particular access levels are automatically configured for the devices and archives of the relevant Server:

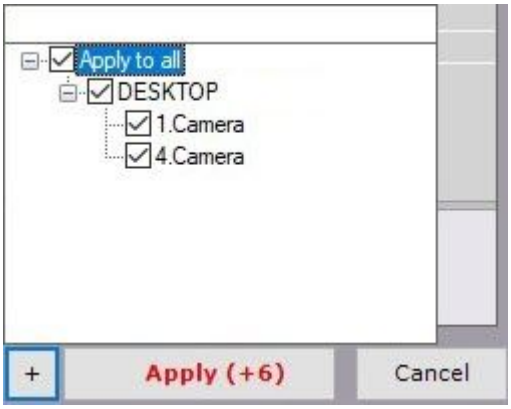
Server access level	Device/archive	Device/archive access level
Custom	-	Access levels for devices and archives are set manually

No access	-	No access to devices and archives
Archive Only	Video camera	Archive only
	Microphone	Live Audio and Archive
	PTZ	Medium level
	Archive	Full access
Live in Armed Mode	Video camera	You can view armed cameras
	Microphone	Live Audio
	PTZ	Medium level
	Archive	No access
Live	Video camera	You can view live video
	Microphone	Live Audio
	PTZ	Medium level
	Archive	No access
Live/Archive	Video camera	You can view live and recorded video
	Microphone	Live Audio and Archive
	PTZ	Medium level
	Archive	Full access
Live/Archive/Control	Video camera	All functions. Configuration not available
	Microphone	Live Audio and Archive
	PTZ	Medium level
	Archive	Full access
Live/Archive/Control/Configure	Video camera	All functions + configuration available
	Microphone	Live Audio and Archive
	PTZ	Maximum level
	Archive	Full access

In addition, you can select the level of access to one camera and extend it to other cameras. To do it, do the following:

a. Select the access level for a required camera.

b. Click the + button and select cameras the same settings should be applied to.



To quickly select multiple cameras, hold down the **Shift** key, select the first and last camera the settings should be applied to. Selecting any camera from highlighted ones will result in selecting them all.

12. Select the appropriate access level to set the possibility to manually run all or some macros (see Configuring Macros and Counters) from the **Layouts** interface (**11**).

> **Attention!**
>
> By default, created macros are available only to users from the admin group.
> Users outside the admin group can create macros if they have the permissions to create them. They cannot use them until they have the permissions to use them.

13. Click the **Apply** button to save the role.

The new role has been created.

You can copy roles. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Select the role to copy.
2. Click the **Create** button.

This creates a new identical role.

> **Note**
>
> To create an empty user role with no parameters specified, select the **Roles** common group, and click the **Create** button.

To delete a role, do the following:

1. Select the role to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** button.

> **Note**
>
> You cannot delete a role if the user who is logged in belongs to that role.

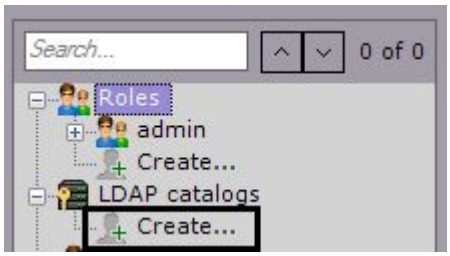
3. Click the **Apply** button.

The role has been deleted. All users who belong to this role will also be deleted.

7.6.2 Connecting to an LDAP catalog

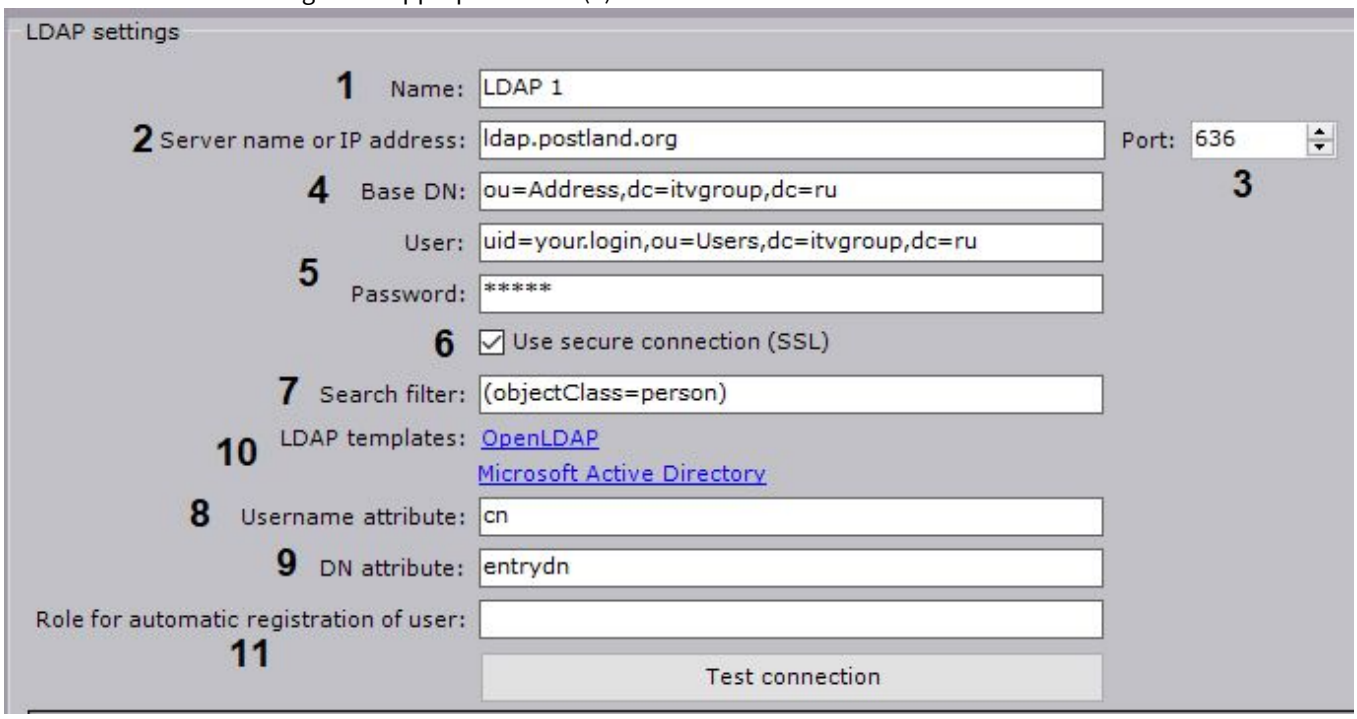
To connect to an LDAP catalog:

1. In the **LDAP Catalogs** group, click **Create**.



An **LDAP** object is added in the system. On the right, a panel displays configuration settings for the **LDAP** catalog.

2. Enter a name for the catalog in the appropriate field (**1**).



3. Enter the address of the LDAP catalog server (**2**) and port (**3**).
4. In the **Base DN** field, enter the Distinguished Name of the branch from which to start search (**4**).

> **Attention!**
>
> If LDAP users are located in multiple directories with a tree-like structure, you cannot establish instant synchronization across all users.
> To synchronize each user group within a DN branch, you have to specify the path to the corresponding directory.
> For example, LDAP contains a directory **Employees** including subdirectories **Managers**, **Cashiers** and **Salesmen.**
> DN branches for synchronizing users within **Managers** directory:
> ou=Managers,ou=Employees,dc=example,dc=com.
> DN branches for synchronizing users within **Cashiers** directory:
> ou=Cashiers,ou=Employees,dc=example,dc=com.
> DN branches for synchronizing users within **Salesmen** directory:
> ou=Salesmen,ou=Employees,dc=example,dc=com.

5. Enter the name of a user who has write access to the base DN, in LDAP format (RDN + DN) with password (**5**).
6. If encryption (SSL) is required for connecting to the LDAP server, select the corresponding check box (**6**).
7. In the **Search filter** field, enter a string for filtering catalog entries (**7**).

> **Attention!**
>
> To upload users by groups, not by directories, you should use the Member Of filter attribute. For example:

```
(&(objectClass=user)(memberof=CN=YourGroup,OU=Users,DC=YourDomain,DC=com))
```

8. In the **Login attribute** field, enter the field from which the user's login is obtained (**8**).

> **Note**
>
> To search users by attribute **sAMAccountName**, enter their names in small letters - **samaccountname**

9. In the **DN attribute** field, enter the field from which the user's DN is obtained (**9**).

> **Note**
>
> To set a login and DN attribute, you can use Microsoft Active Directory and OpenLDAP LDAP templates. To use a template, click the relevant link (**10**).

10. Specify a default user role for users created via LDAP (**11**). If no role is specified, no automatic user creation will be possible for this catalog.
11. Click the **Apply** button.

The LDAP catalog is now added to the system.

To test the connection, click the **Test connection** button. If connection is successful, the form on the lower part of the screen displays information about the catalog users. Otherwise, an error message appears.

cn	entrydn
alexey dyndalev	cn=alexey dyndalev,ou=qa,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
andrey vasiliev	cn=andrey vasiliev,ou=dev,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
danil serov	cn=danil serov,ou=dev,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
ilya smirnov	cn=ilya smirnov,ou=it,ou=common,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
name1 surname1	cn=name1 surname1,ou=load,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
name2 surname2	cn=name2 surname2,ou=load,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
name3 surname3	cn=name3 surname3,ou=load,ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com

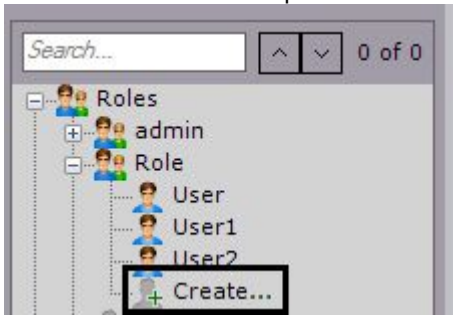
7.6.3 Working with users

In Axxon Next, multiple users can be assigned to the same role. A user will be granted the permissions for administration, management and/or monitoring that are indicated in the settings of the user's role. When adding a new user, the name and password necessary for that user to log in to the system are specified.

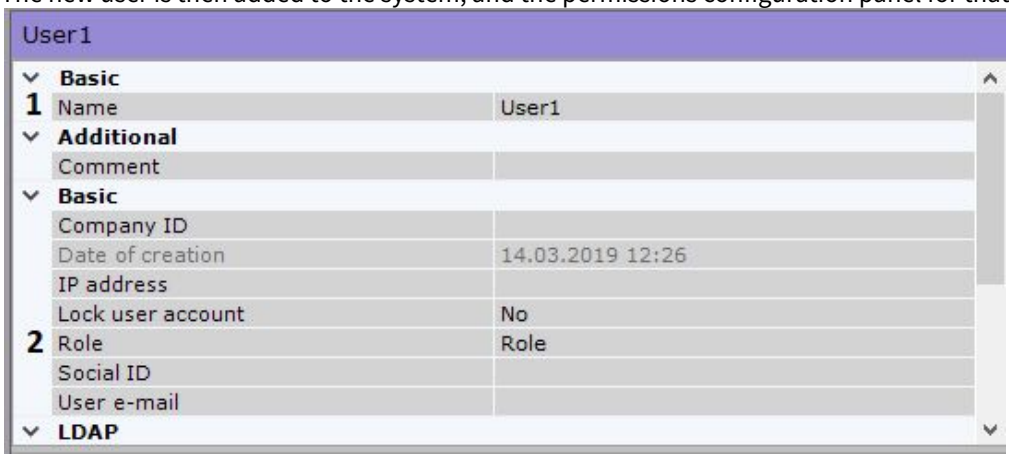
7.6.3.1 Creating local users

To add a new local user:

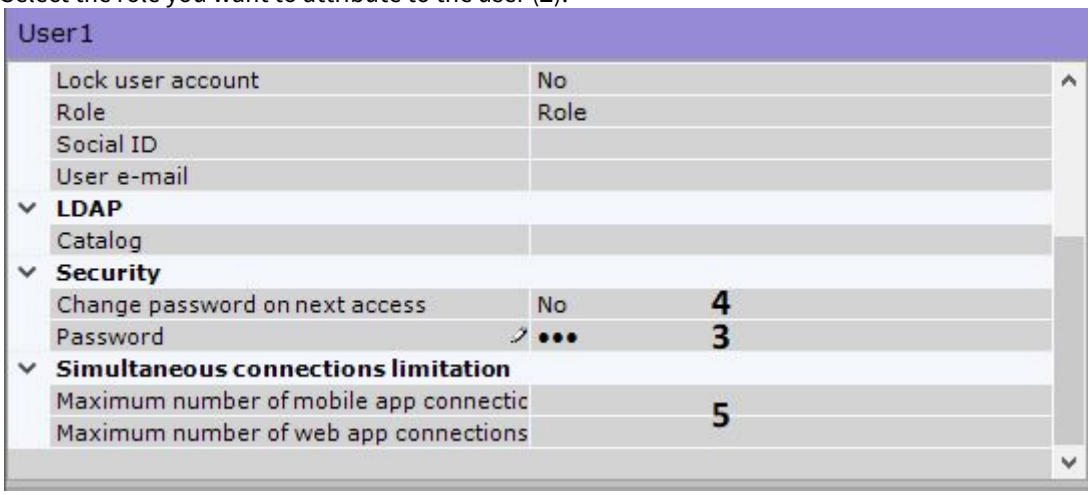
1. At the end of the list for a particular role click the **Create** link.



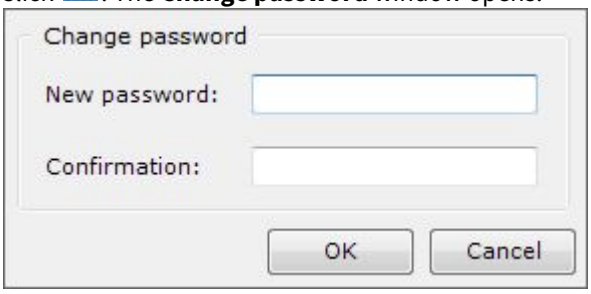
The new user is then added to the system, and the permissions configuration panel for that user opens on the right.



2. Enter a user name (**1**).
3. Select the role you want to attribute to the user (**2**).



4. Enter the password in the **Security** configuration group (**3**).
   a. Click . The **Change password** window opens.



   b. Enter the user's assigned password in the **New password** field.
   c. Retype the assigned password in the **Confirmation** field.
   d. Click **OK** to save the settings.
5. To force a user to change the password upon the next connection to the Client, set the corresponding parameter (**4**) to **Yes**.
6. If you want to limit the number of connections for a user through Web or mobile clients, do as follows: specify a maximum number of connections (**5**). The **Maximum number of web app connections** parameter also sets a limit on maximum number of RTSP queries from a particular user.

> **Attention!**
>
> The limit on the number of connections will take effect after the server is restarted (see Launching and Closing the Axxon Next Software Package).

7. If necessary, enter additional information about the user (e-mail, IP address, personal and company ID, etc.) in appropriate fields.
8. Click the **Apply** button to save the settings.

The user has now been added and assigned a role.

7.6.3.2 Locking a user account

You can lock user accounts to prevent unwanted logins.

To do this:

1. Select a user account (**1**).

2. In the **Lock User Account** field, select **Yes** (**2**).
3. Click **Apply**.

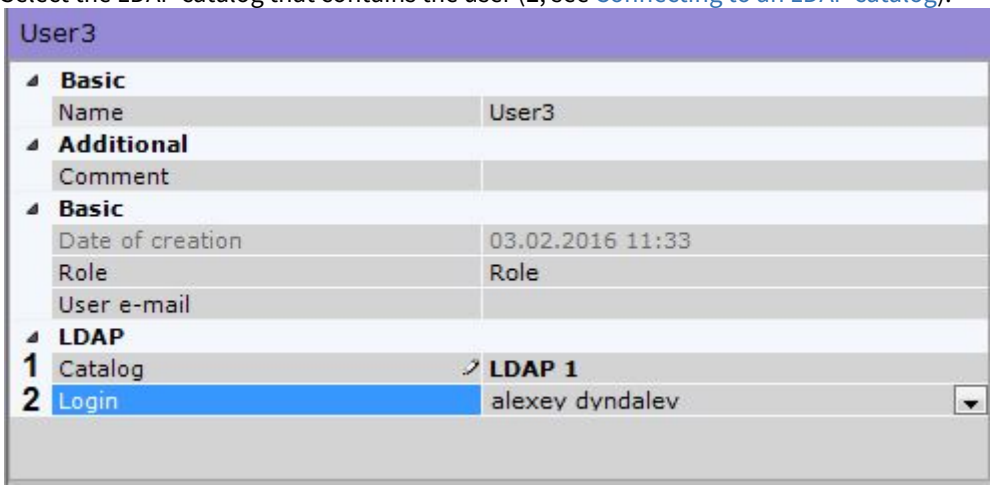
To unlock an account, select **No** in the **Lock User Account** field.

7.6.3.3 Creating LDAP connections

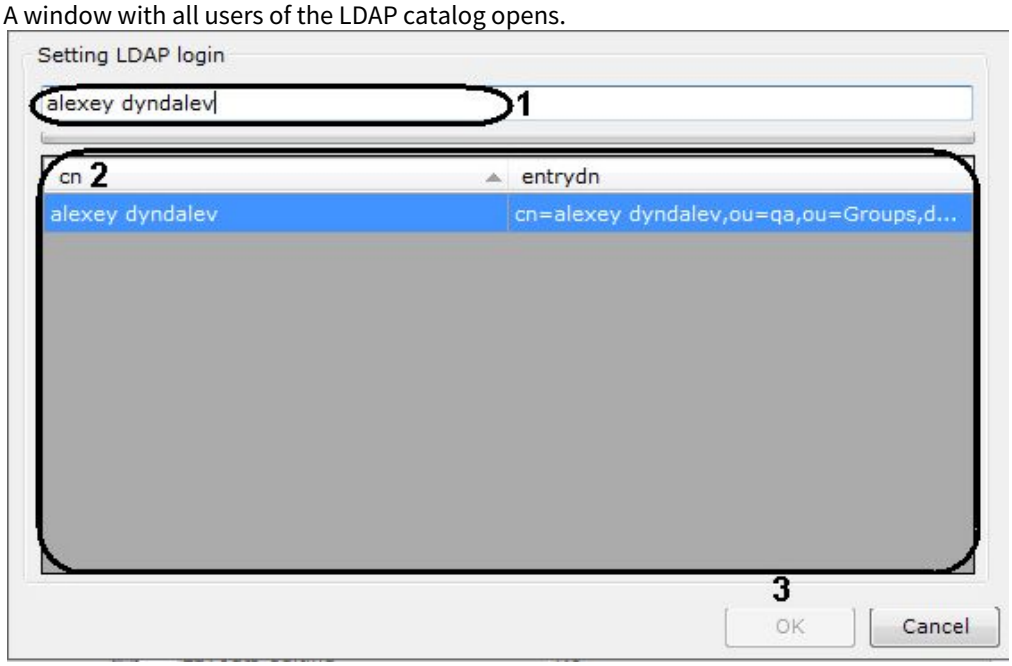
When adding an LDAP user, the user's login is selected from the specified LDAP catalog. No password is required.

To add an LDAP user:

1. Add the user to the system (see Creating local users).
2. Select the LDAP catalog that contains the user (**1**, see Connecting to an LDAP catalog).



3. In the **Login** field, click the button (**2**).
   A window with all users of the LDAP catalog opens.



4. Find a user via search (**1**) or manually select a user from the list (**2**). Click **OK** (**3**).
5. Specify the other user settings (see Creating local users).
6. Click the **Apply** button to save the settings.

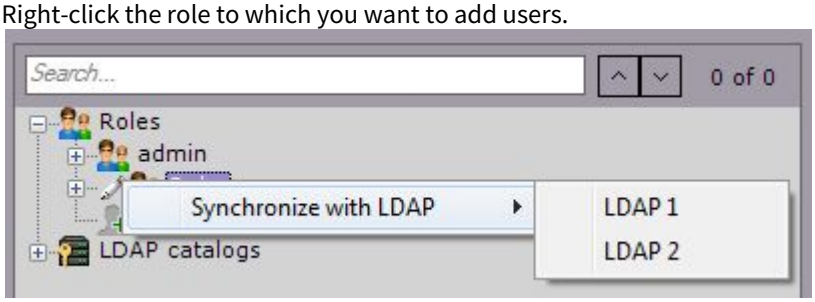
The user has now been added and assigned a role.

When an LDAP user connects, the user's login from Server settings is used with the password from the LDAP catalog.

7.6.3.4 Synchronize LDAP users

To add users from an LDAP directory to a specific role, do as follows:

1. Right-click the role to which you want to add users.



2. Choose **Synchronize with LDAP** and then the required LDAP directory (see Connecting to an LDAP catalog).

All users in the selected directory will be added to this role. By default, the user name will match the login in the LDAP directory.

7.6.3.5 Deleting users

To delete a user from the tree:

1. Select the user to delete.
2. Click **Delete**.

> **Note**
>
> You cannot delete the user through which you logged into the system.

3. Click the **Apply** button to save the settings.

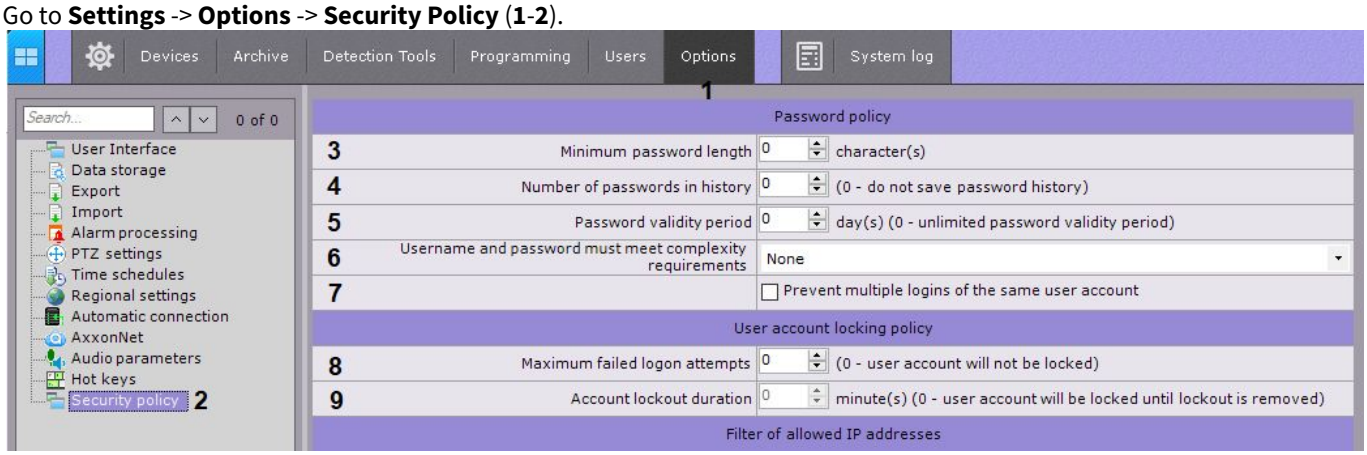
The user has now been deleted from the tree.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you delete a user account on the LDAP server, it will be automatically deleted from *Axxon Next* VMS.

7.6.4 Configuring the user security policy

To configure the user security policy, do as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** -> **Options** -> **Security Policy** (**1**-**2**).

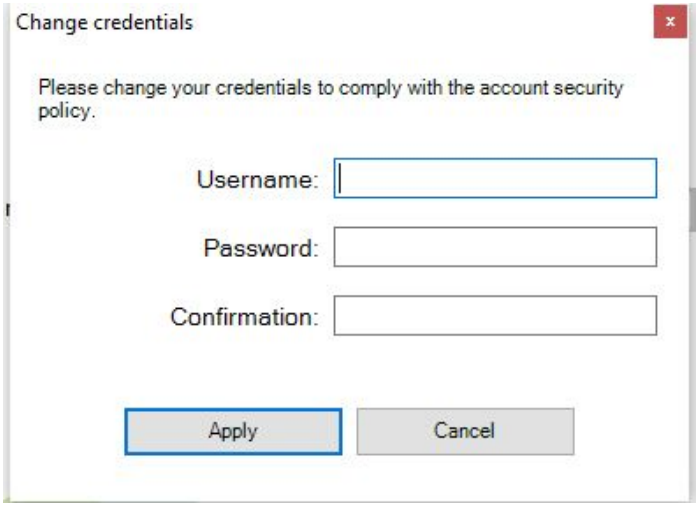


2. Set the minimum password length (**3**).
3. Set the number of most recent passwords for each user to be stored (**4**). **0** – do not store password history. If this value is non-zero**,** passwords stored in history may not be reused.
4. Set password expiration time interval in days (**5**). After the time interval expires, the user will be prompted to set a new password. **0** — the password never expires.
5. Select positions to meet complexity requirements: nothing, password only, user name and password (**6**).
   The requirements:
   a. user name:
      i. must contain no less than 6 characters and at least 2 digits;
      ii. must not include common role names, such as: admin, administrator, administrator1, root, super, superuser, supervisor.
   b. The password has to contain at least 8 characters, which must meet at least 3 requirements listed below:
      i. at least 1 capital letter;
      ii. at least 2 lowercase letters;
      iii. at least 3 digits;
      iv. at least 4 special characters, such as: !\"#$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^_`{|}~
6. If you need to limit the number of sessions per user to one, check the corresponding box (**7**). This requirement also applies to web and mobile Clients.
7. Set the number of failed login attempts to lock a user's account (**8**). **0** – no account locking on incorrect passwords.

> **Attention!**
>
> When unblocked, the user is offered only one authentication attempt. A successful authentication will reset the failed attempts counter to zero, otherwise the user account will be blocked again.

8. Set the duration of user account locking on failed login attempts, in minutes (**9**). **0** – the account can be unlocked by the administrator only.
9. Click **Apply**.

> **Attention!**
>
> If any user accounts created in your system before you applied changes in security policy are incompatible with the new requirements, the users will be prompted to change their credentials upon their next login.



7.7 Configuring Layouts

Axxon Next allows users to configure custom layouts.

Separate layouts are configured for each user of the system. To configure layouts, log into any Server of Axxon-domain under the appropriate user name and configure the layouts for that user. Layouts created for the user will be available when you connect from any Client to any Server in the Axxon-domain. The layout is selected for display and editing only for a specific user - other users of the system will not see any changes on their screen.

> **Note**
>
> Creation, editing, copying, and deletion of layouts are available to users that belong to roles with the **Changing custom layouts** component activated (see Configuring user permissions).

After you configure a user's layouts, you may want to limit that user's privileges.

7.7.1 Creating and deleting layouts

Layouts are created based on standard layout types. To create a new layout, click the button in the context menu and select one of the standard layouts.

This takes you to layout editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode).

> **Note**
>
> A new layout is also created when you select a video camera that is not displayed in any previously created layout (see Objects Panel, Camera Search Panel).
> If you do this, layout editing mode does not start and the layout will not be saved.

The newly created layout will be named automatically. You can rename it later.

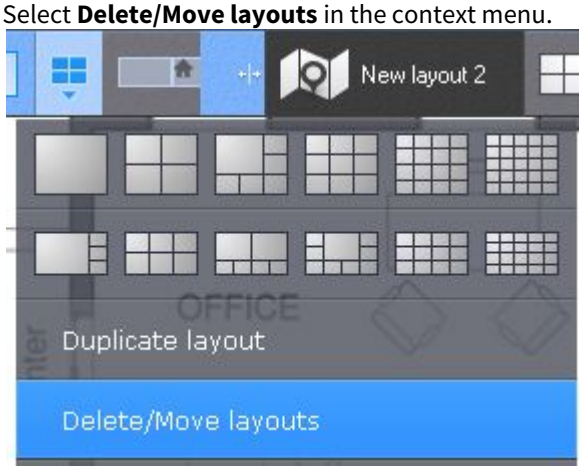
To save the layout, exit layout editing mode and save changes (see Exiting layout editing mode).

The layout will then be placed at the beginning of the list in the layout panel.

If you do not save changes and exit, the layout will not be saved.

To delete layouts:

1. Select **Delete/Move layouts** in the context menu.



> **Note**
>
> You can not access it in the Layout Editing mode though.

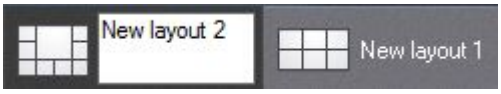
2. Click the button to delete layouts.
3. Click **Save**.

You will exit **Manage Layouts** mode and save changes.

The layouts have now been deleted.

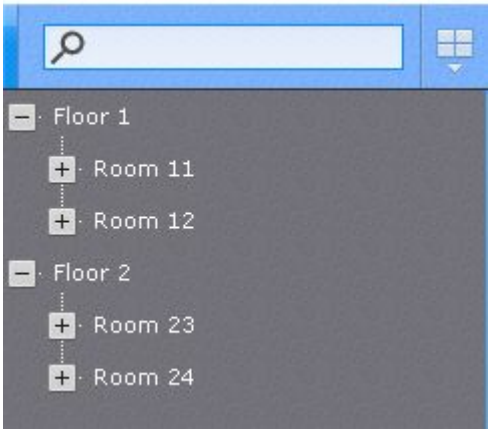
7.7.2 Rename Layouts

To rename a layout, double left-click and enter a new name.



You can rename layouts in Manage Layouts mode either.

Using the "\" symbol in the layout name, you can build a layout tree in the Object Panel (see Objects Panel).



7.7.3 Reorder Layouts

To reorder layouts in the ribbon:

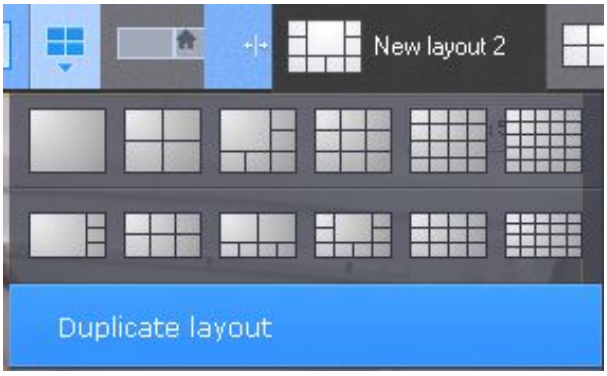
1. Go to Manage Layouts mode (see Creating and deleting layouts).
2. Drag & drop layouts
3. Click **Save**.

You have now reordered layouts.

7.7.4 Layout copying

You can copy existing layouts.

Select the layout that you want to copy. Click the button to open the context menu and select **Duplicate layout**.



An identical layout is then created.

> **Note**
>
> Layouts cannot be copied while in editing mode

7.7.5 Editing layouts

Every layout consists of cells, which are viewing portals that can hold either video cameras or information boards.

Axxon Next offers 5 types of information boards that can be added to layouts:

1. Events Board.
2. Health Board (for servers and cameras).
3. Statistics Board.
4. Dialog Board.
5. Web Board

Information boards are available on the layouts ribbon in editing mode.

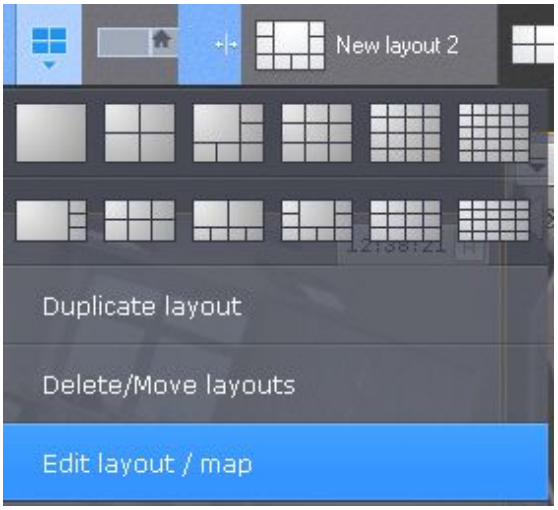
When a camera is added to a cell, a viewing tile appears.

7.7.5.1 Switching to layout editing mode

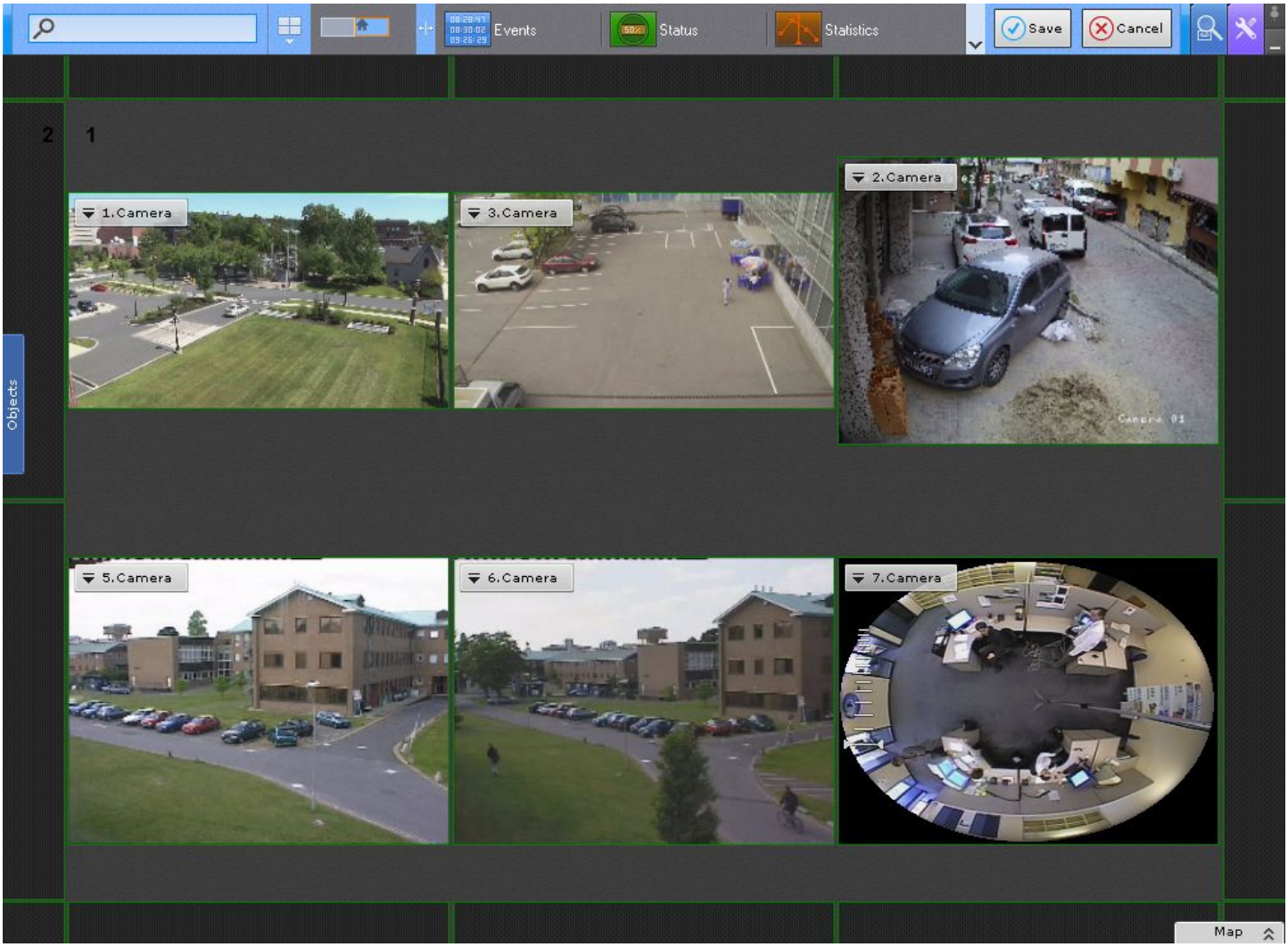
When you create a layout, you are automatically taken to the layout editing mode. Alternately, you can click the button and select **Edit layout / map** in the context menu of the layouts ribbon.

Note

To use layout editing mode, you must have required permissions.



In layout editing mode, space is divided by a grid of equal-sized squares for holding viewing tiles (**1**).



On the edge of the layout there are grid square fragments (**2**), which are parts of ordinary empty cells and allow adding new cells to the layout (see Adding new cells to a layout).

7.7.5.2 Selecting a layout for editing

To edit a layout, do as follows:

1. Go to the layout you want to change (see The Layouts panel)
2. Switch to the Layout Editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode)

Otherwise, select a layout for editing in the layouts ribbon. You can also use layout editing mode to create a new layout (see Creating and deleting layouts) for editing.

7.7.5.3 Configuring layout cells

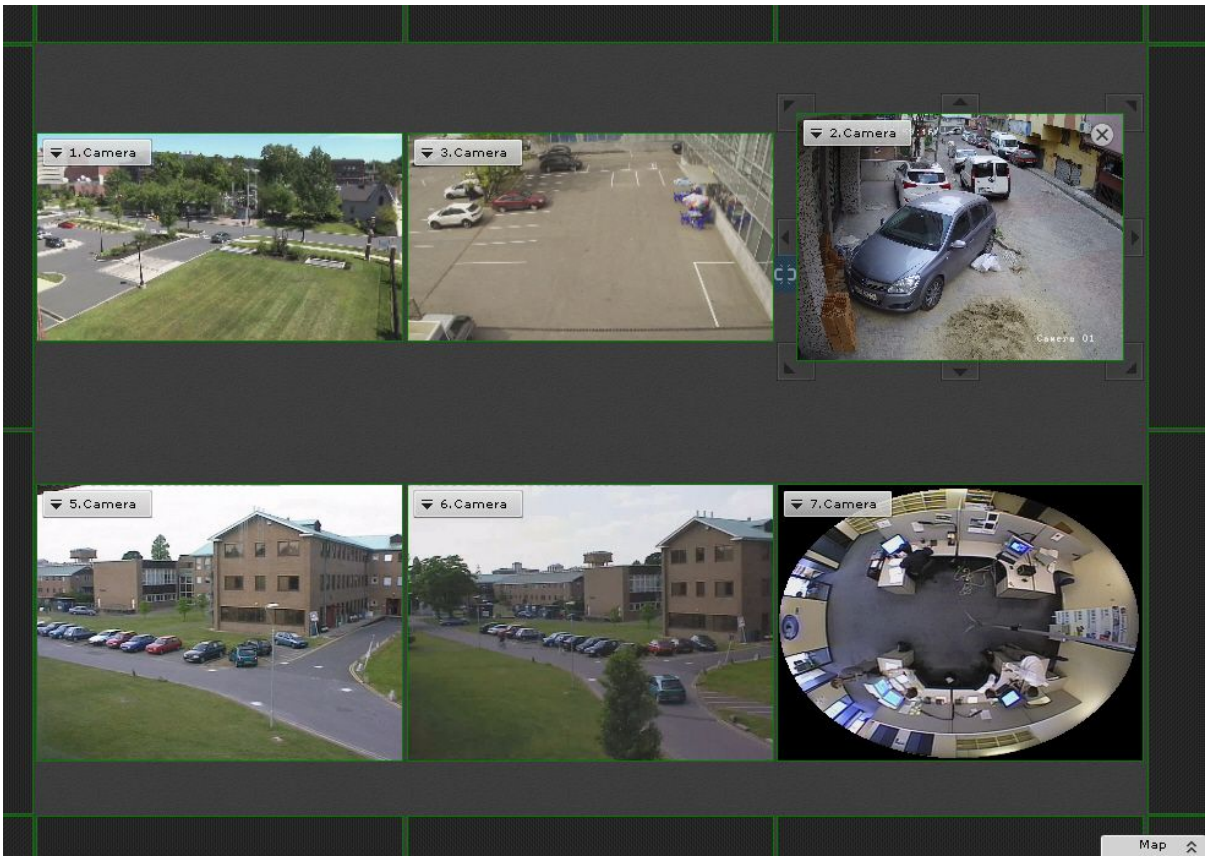
7.7.5.3.1 Adding new cells to a layout

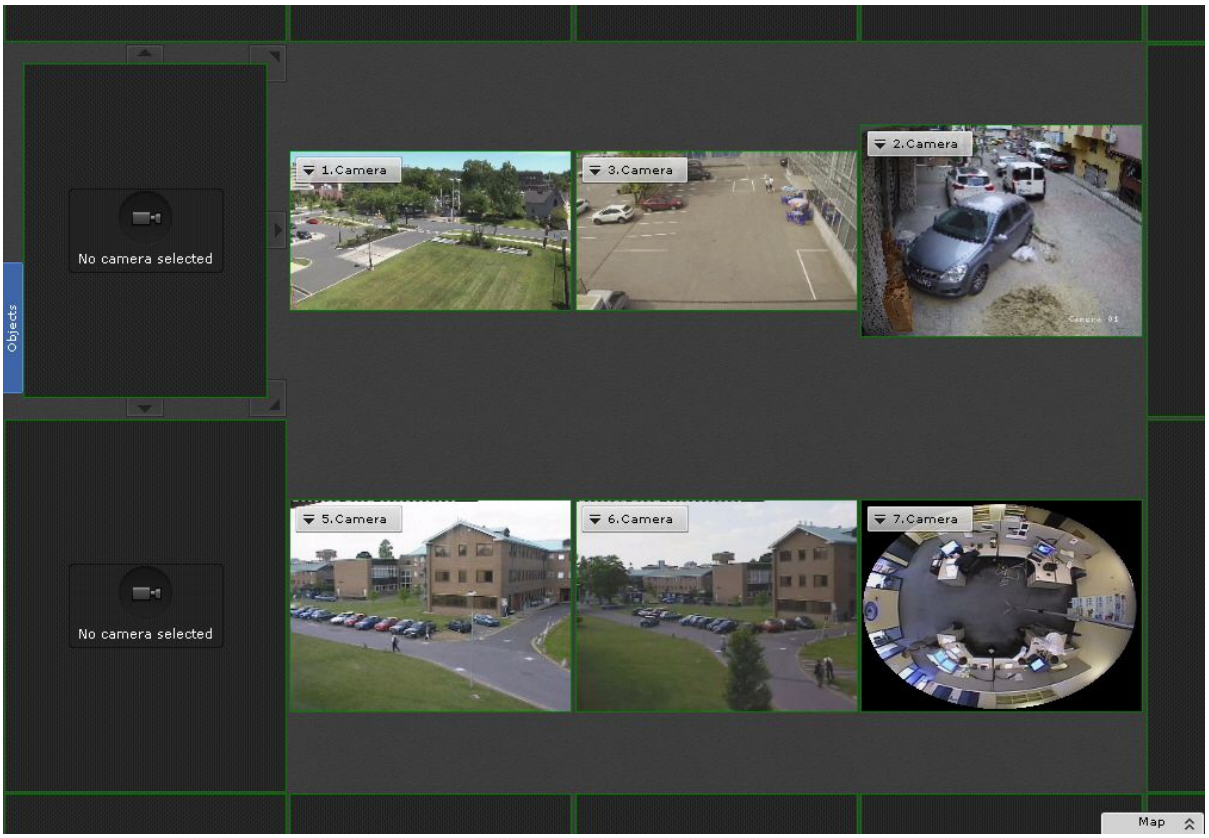
> Switching to layout editing mode

You can add new cells to a layout in one of three ways:

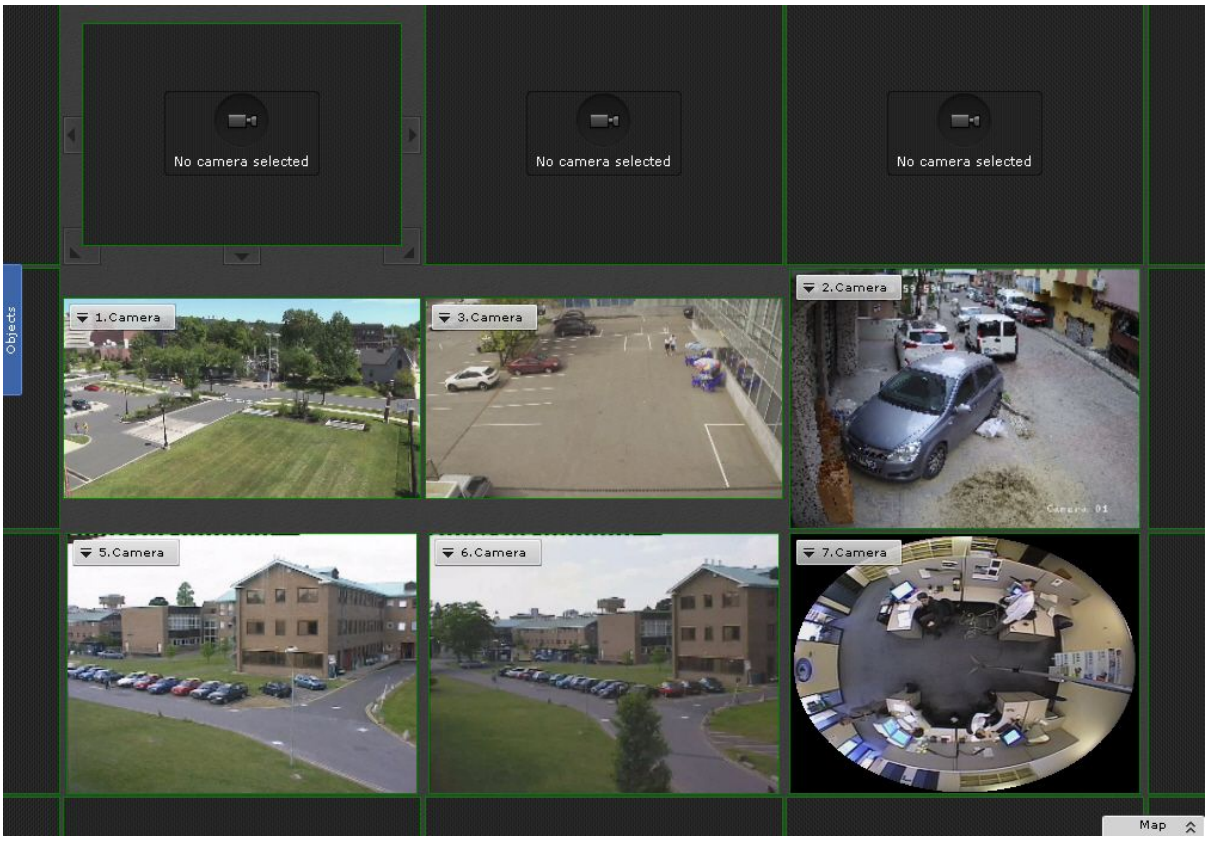
1. Drag a non-empty cell onto a grid square fragment (see Moving cells).
2. Left-click a grid square fragment and resize it (see Resizing cells).
3. Left-click a grid square fragment and select a video camera or information board in it (see Adding cameras to cells).

Cells are added in rows. For example, when editing a six-square (3*2) layout, a column of two grid squares is added when a fragment is chosen on the left or right side of the screen.

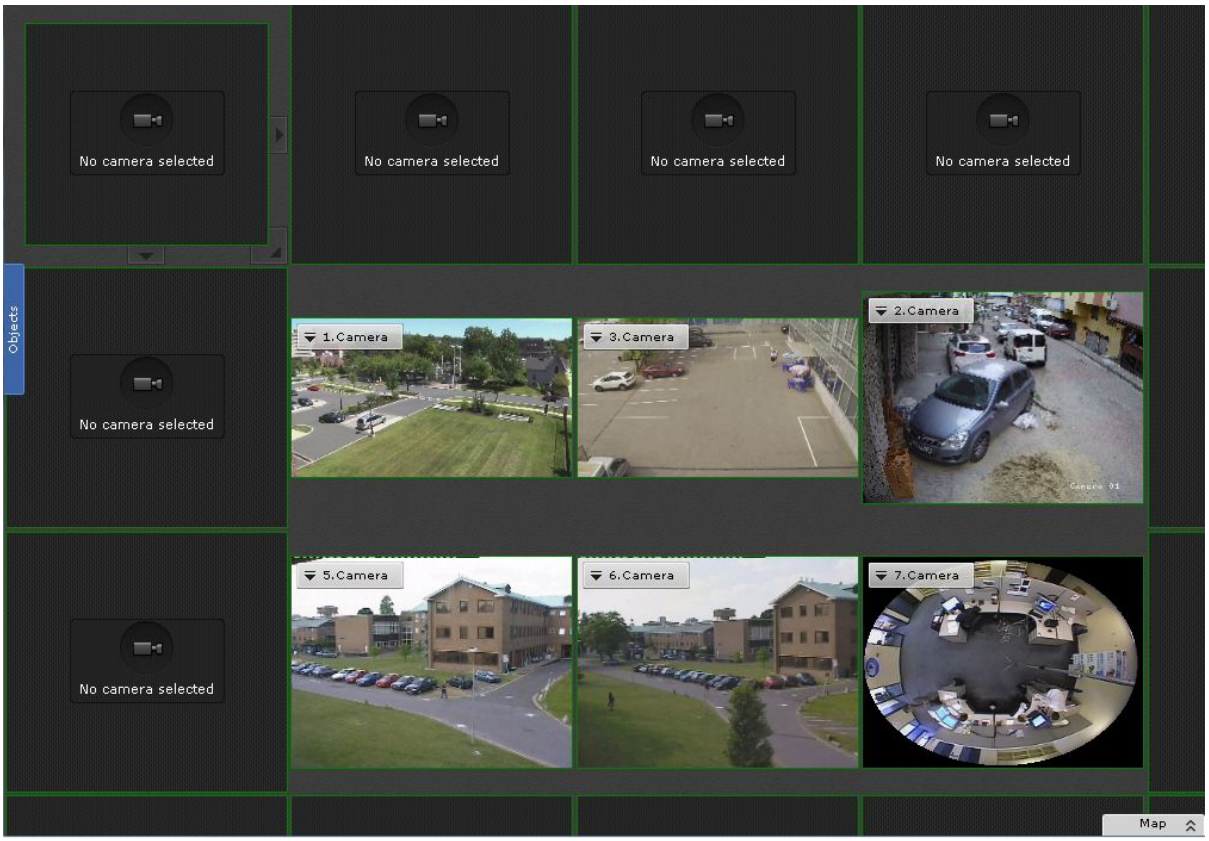




A row of three squares is added when you select a fragment from the upper or lower part of the screen.



When you select a corner fragment, both a row and column are added.



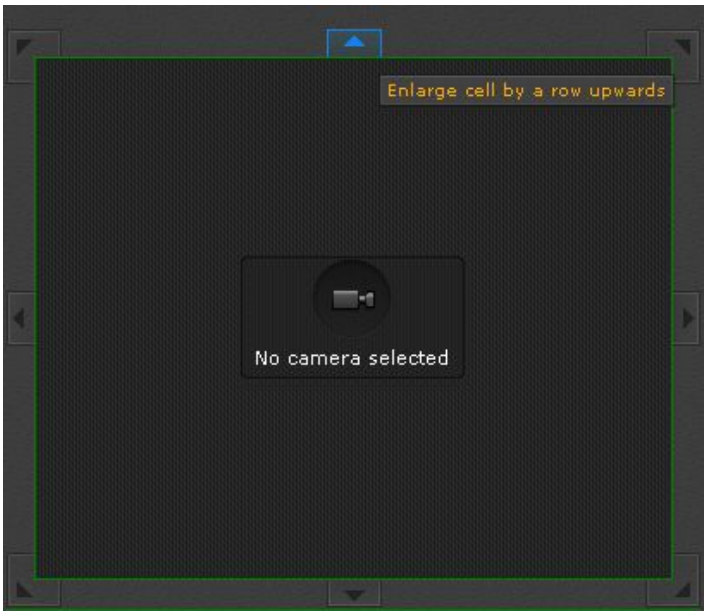
7.7.5.3.2 Resizing cells

Switching to layout editing mode

To resize a cell, use the buttons on its edges.

Button	Action	Button	Action
	Increases the cell by a column to the left and row above		Increases the cell by a column to the right and row below
	Increases the cell by a column to the left		Increases the cell by a column to the right
	Increases the cell by a column to the left and row below		Increases the cell by a column to the right and row above
	Increases the cell by a row below		Increases the cell by a row above

When you point the cursor at any button, a darkened area that shows the size of the cell after resizing is displayed.



You can also select and resize any tile. To resize, click the button on the cell border and expand / contract the cell as you wish. You can resize the cell only in one direction. You cannot resize the cell in two directions with the corner buttons.

If you expand a tile, the neighboring tiles contract and vice versa.

Note

If the cell is in the outermost top / bottom row or left | right column, you cannot resize it by clicking and dragging the borders. You should add an extra cell to the current row or column first

Attention!

If you expand the cell over the next one or several cells, they are deleted.

7.7.5.3.3 Moving cells

Switching to layout editing mode

To move a cell, left-click the frame of the grid square fragment and drag it to the necessary position.

The cells are then switched: the contents of the previously occupied cell are moved to the location of the cell being moved.

If a cell is moved to a grid square fragment, new cells are added to the layout (see Adding new cells to a layout).

7.7.5.3.4 Adding cameras to cells

Switching to layout editing mode

There are two ways to add a video camera to a cell:

1. Using the Objects Panel;
2. Using the Camera Search Panel.

A video camera can be added to an empty cell or to a cell containing an information panel or another video camera.

Note

Cameras from any Axxon-domain can be added to the layout.

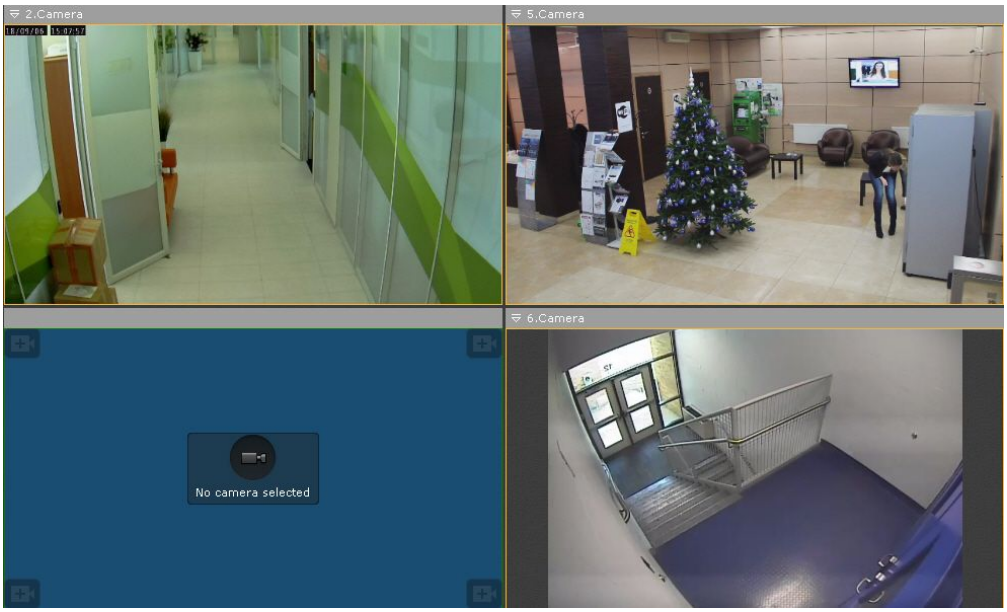
> **Note**
>
> The same video camera can be added to several cells of the same layout.

Adding a Video Camera Using the Objects Panel

To add a video camera using the Objects Panel, perform the following steps:

1. Switch the cell to the active mode (with a mouse click).
2. Click a video camera in the Objects Panel (see Objects Panel).

You can drag&drop cameras to a cell too. The empty cell with the cursor in it, is highlighted when you drag the camera.



To add multiple cameras to a layout, do the following:

1. In the objects pane, shift-click several cameras to select.
2. Left-click on any selected camera.
3. Drag the icon onto the layout.
4. Release the mouse button.

You can use the Object Panel for adding all cameras within a group / Axxon domain to the layout. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. left click on the group / Axxon domain in the panel;
2. while keeping the mouse button pressed, move the cursor to the layout;
3. release the mouse button.

Adding a Video Camera Using the Camera Search Panel

To add a video camera to a cell, perform the following steps:

1. Switch the cell to the active mode (with a mouse click) and select a video camera from the list in the Camera Search Panel (see Camera Search Panel).
2. Select a video camera from the list in the Camera Search Panel with the mouse pointer and, holding down the mouse button, move the pointer into a cell. Then release the button.

7.7.5.3.5 Adding information boards to cells

> Switching to layout editing mode

You can add information boards to cells in two ways:

1. Activate the cell (by clicking it) and select the information board that you want to add to the cell.

2. Click an information board to select it. Drag the information board to the layout cell and then release the mouse.

You can add an information board to an empty cell or to a cell that contains a camera or other information board.

> **Note**
>
> After you add an information board to the cell, you should configure it (see Configuring information boards).

7.7.5.3.6 Linking cells

> Switching to layout editing mode

You can link cells.

To create a link, select a cell and click the button on the border. To delete the link, click .

You can create the following links:

1. A viewing tile to a viewing tile. You can link cells from the same row only.
   This way you can hide cell borders in live view and have a virtually merged FoV from several cameras.

2. An information board to viewing tile. This way you can link adjacent cells, up / down and across. A single information board can be linked with multiple cameras. If the viewing tile is linked to Event Board, you can click an event and switch to the Archive mode (see Switching a camera linked to an Events Board to the archives).
3. Also, you can link 2 information panels or empty cells to panels (see Configuring Alerted Cameras layouts).

All linked cells have a different scaling logic (see Scaling the Viewing Tile).

7.7.5.3.7 Merging videos from adjacent cameras (FrameMerge)

> Switching to layout editing mode

FrameMerge stitches video feeds from neighboring cameras into a single panoramic view.

The resulting video is available:

- as live video feeds,
- as recorded footage,
- as exported video files.

> **Attention!**
>
> The maximum horizontal resolution of exported video is 8184 pixels.

To use this option, cameras and their video feeds must match the following conditions:

1. Install cameras as close to each other as possible.
2. No more than 3 cameras' feeds can be merged horizontally.
3. The cameras must have:
   a. pixel resolution of no less than 640 * 480;
   b. identical aspect ratio for the high and low bitrate streams;
   c. identical parameters of lenses.
4. You have to synchronize time on all cameras (for example, via NTP protocol).
5. Camera jitter must not result in more than 1% image shift in both directions.
6. The recommended image overlap across adjacent cameras is 20–25 percent of image width.
7. Camera images must be aligned vertically.

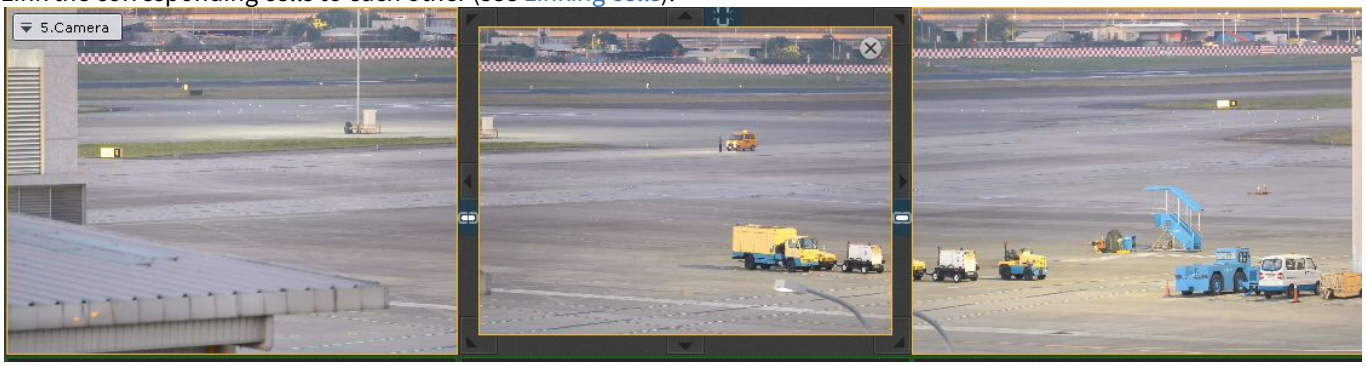
For best results in merging, ensure the following:

1. Daylight illumination.
2. Sufficient light to capture small details.
3. No over-exposed areas within the scene.
4. Minimum video noise and compression artifacts.
5. Moving objects must be visually separated within the FOV.
6. Same set of objects in overlapping areas.

> **Attention!**
>
> If overlapping areas are plain monochrome (e.g. the sky), no merging is possible.

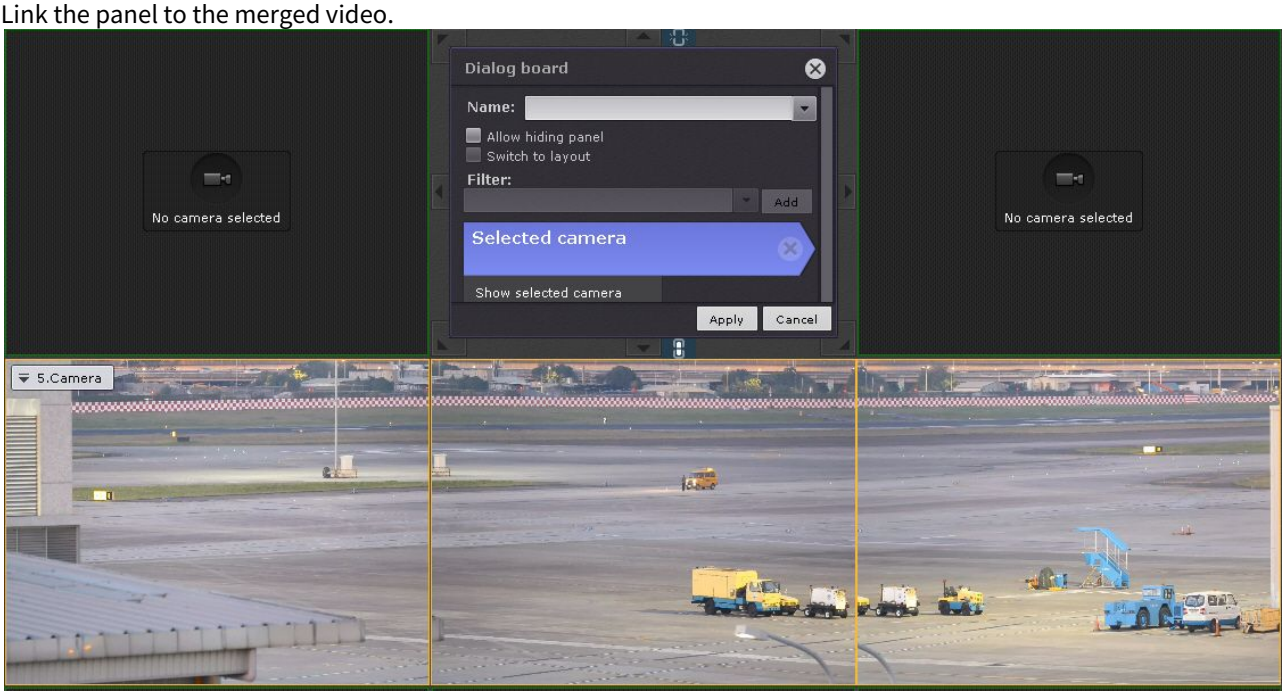
To configure video merging, do the following:

1. Place the cameras horizontally within the layout.
2. Link the corresponding cells to each other (see Linking cells).



3. If you need to display a sub-area of the merged video in a separate window, do the following:
   a. Add a dialog board to the layout (see Configure the Dialog Board).
   b. Configure the panel to display the selected camera.

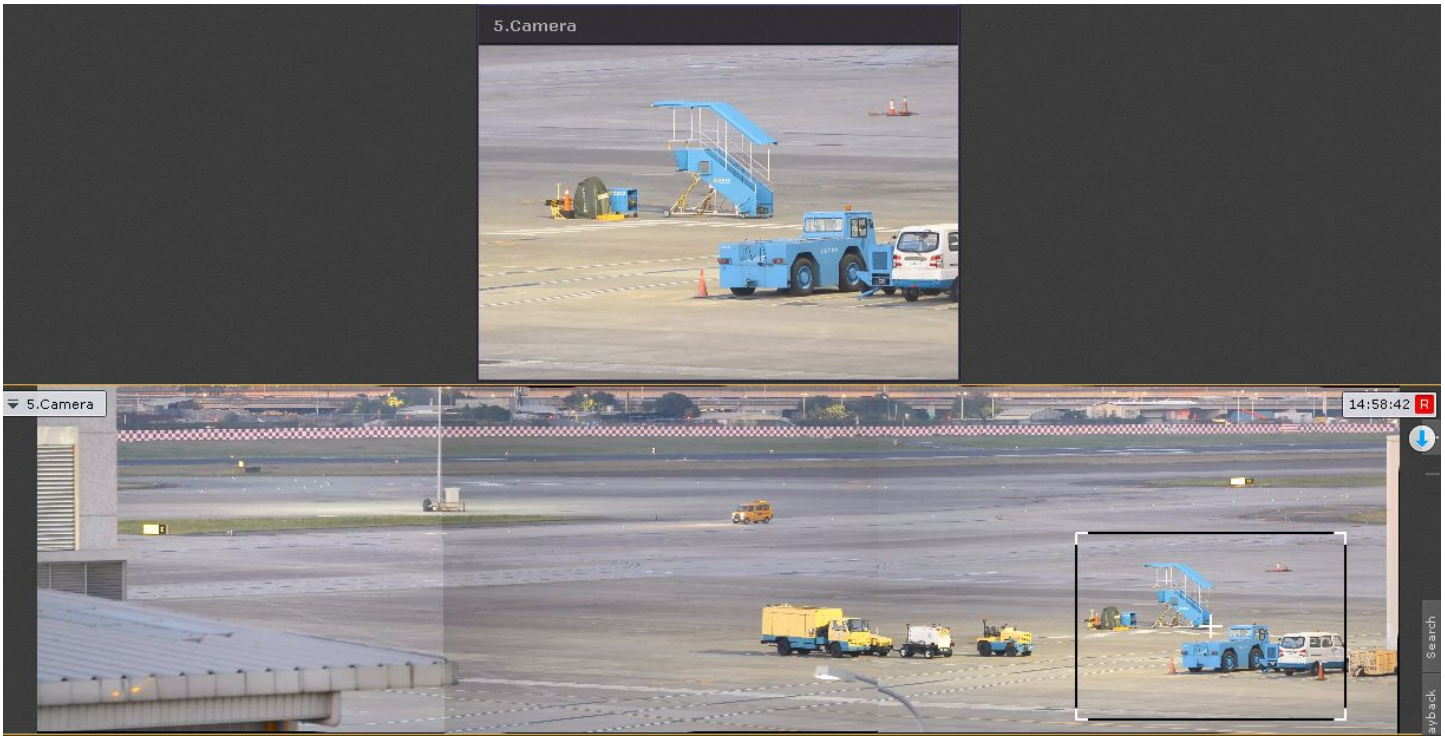
c. Link the panel to the merged video.



4. Save the layout.

While merging video feeds, the system automatically scans images from adjacent cameras for appropriate stitching points.

The resulting image will be displayed in a single viewing window. If you select a rectangular area within the video image (as for Area zoom function, see Control using Areazoom), the cropped image appears in the dialog board.



Attention!

Do not move or reposition cameras after merging their video feeds.
If any of the cameras change its position, you have to reconfigure the merging.

7.7.5.3.8 Clearing cells

Switching to layout editing mode

To remove an information board or camera from a cell, in the upper-right corner, click the button.

If clearing cells in a row or column removes content from all of these cells, the entire row and/or column is removed from the layout.

7.7.5.4 Configuring viewing tiles

7.7.5.4.1 Selecting default functions for viewing tiles

Switching to layout editing mode

Default values for video stream quality, object tracking, autozoom, and video display (contrast, focus, deinterlacing and flip) functions can be set for viewing tiles.

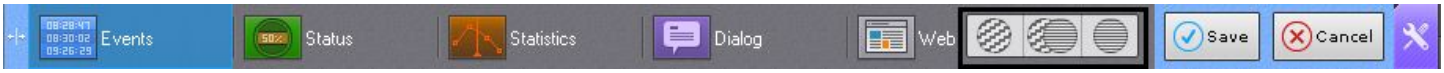
After the user switches to a layout, these functions are activated automatically.

To set a function as a default one, activate it during layout editing mode (see Selecting video stream quality in a viewing tile, Tracking objects, Autozoom, Video image processing, Selecting viewing mode for videos from a fisheye camera) and save changes before exiting the mode.

7.7.5.4.2 Select the default video stream for each camera within your layout

Switching to layout editing mode

Use the upper panel to select the default video stream for all cameras within the layout:



- low quality stream.

- GreenStream. The default setting for video stream is low-quality. Upon selection of a Camera Window, the highest resolution stream is displayed by default. After you switch to another Camera Window, the inactive camera window returns to lower resolution / fps display

- high quality stream.

7.7.5.4.3 Selecting the default video mode for a camera

Switching to layout editing mode

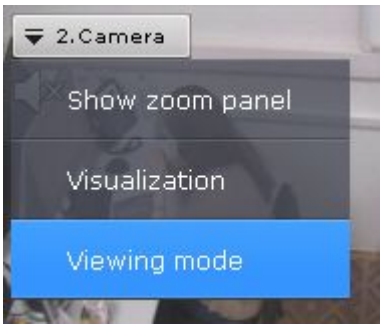
By default, when you switch to a layout, all video cameras are in real-time / live viewing mode.

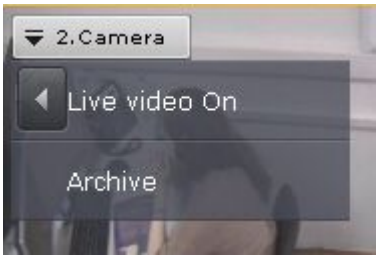
You can select a default video mode for each camera: real-time mode or archive mode.

Note

This function is not available if the camera is not attached to an archive.

To select a default video mode, in the context menu of the viewing tile, select **Viewing mode** and select the necessary mode.





If archive mode is selected, when you switch to the layout, the camera is immediately in archive mode.

7.7.5.4.4 Moving input and output icons in a viewing tile

> Switching to layout editing mode

You can move input and output icons in a viewing tile.

To do so, left-click the input or output icon and drag it to the place in the viewing tile where you want to put the icon.

7.7.5.4.5 Configuring default zoom levels (the Fit screen function)

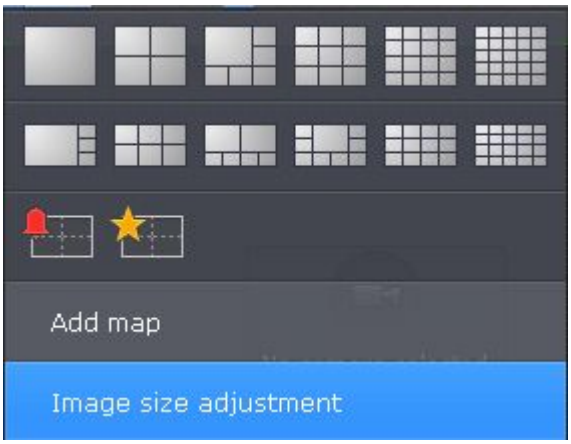
> Switching to layout editing mode

The Fit screen function allows displaying a viewing tile by default so that it occupies all of the available space on the screen (full screen). The default zoom level for full screen display is calculated automatically as a minimum zoom value thal allows filling the available screen space with the viewing tile contents.

To enable the Fit screen function for a specific video tile, display the digital zoom controller (see Digitally Zooming Video Images), click the button on it, and save changes when exiting editing mode.

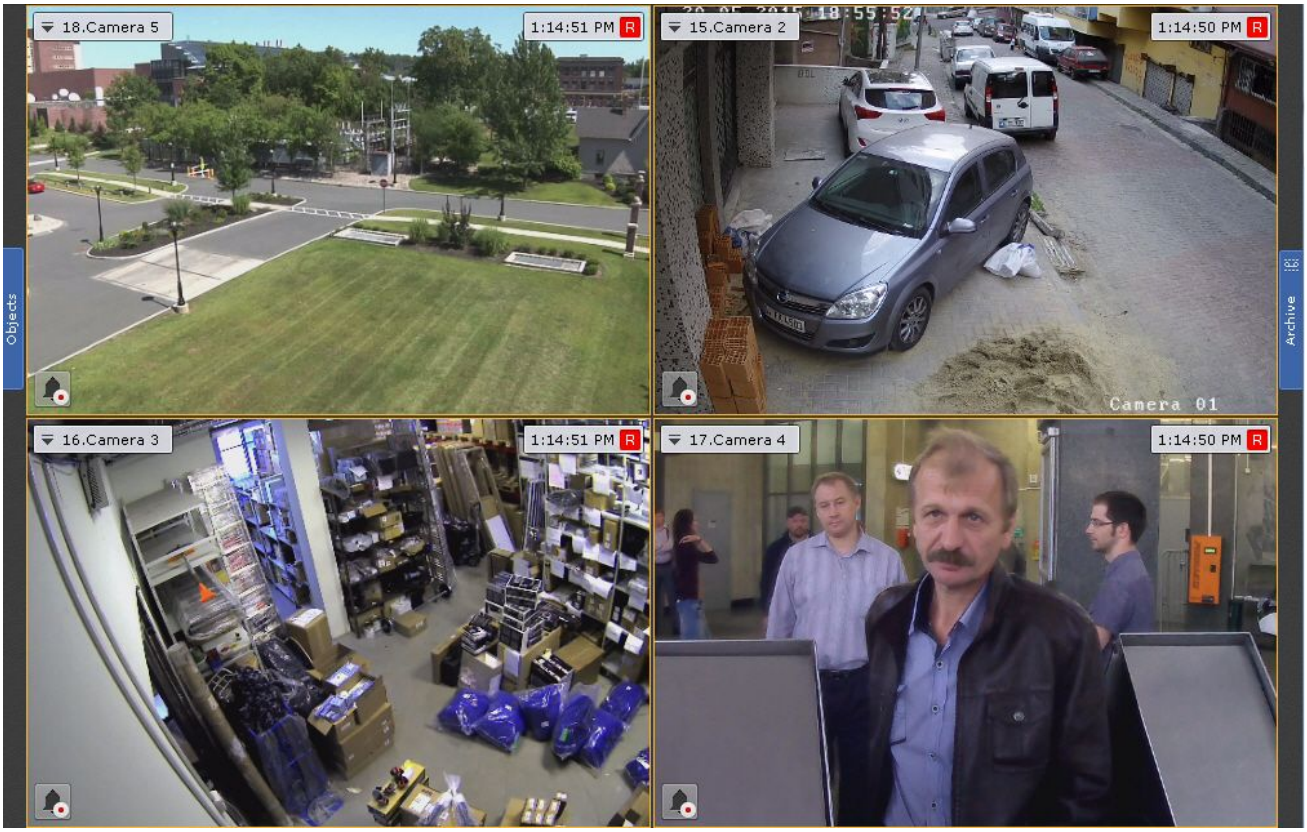
> **Note**
>
> To disable the Fit screen function, click the button again.

To enable the Fit screen function for all video tiles on the layout open the context menu and select **Image size adjustment**.



> **Note**
>
> To disable Fit screen across all layouts reselect **Image size adjustment**.

Now when a user switches to this layout, the video in the viewing tile is displayed at the calculated minimum necessary level of digital zoom and the viewing tile occupies all available space.



7.7.5.4.6 Configuring pan/tilt angle for video cameras with Immervision lenses in 180o Panorama display format

Switching to layout editing mode

You can set the pan/tilt angle for fisheye cameras in 180^{o} Panorama display format when switching to a layout.

This is useful when needing to display the entire viewable area in the layout (two areas of 180^{o} each). In this case, the video camera is added twice but with different viewing angles.

To set the viewing angle, click and hold the button (see 180 degree Panorama).

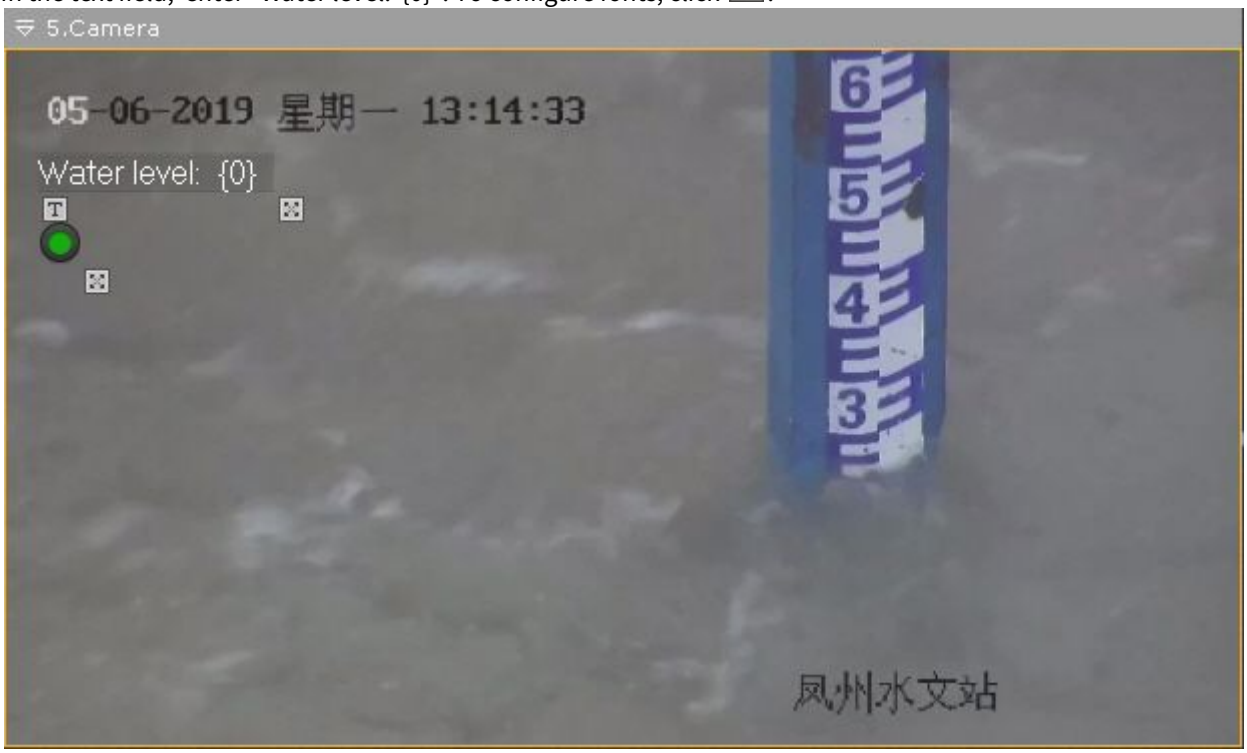
7.7.5.4.7 Configuring display of water level detection

Switching to layout editing mode

If you have created a water level detector for a camera (see Configuring water level detection), you can see the water level sensor in the camera window.

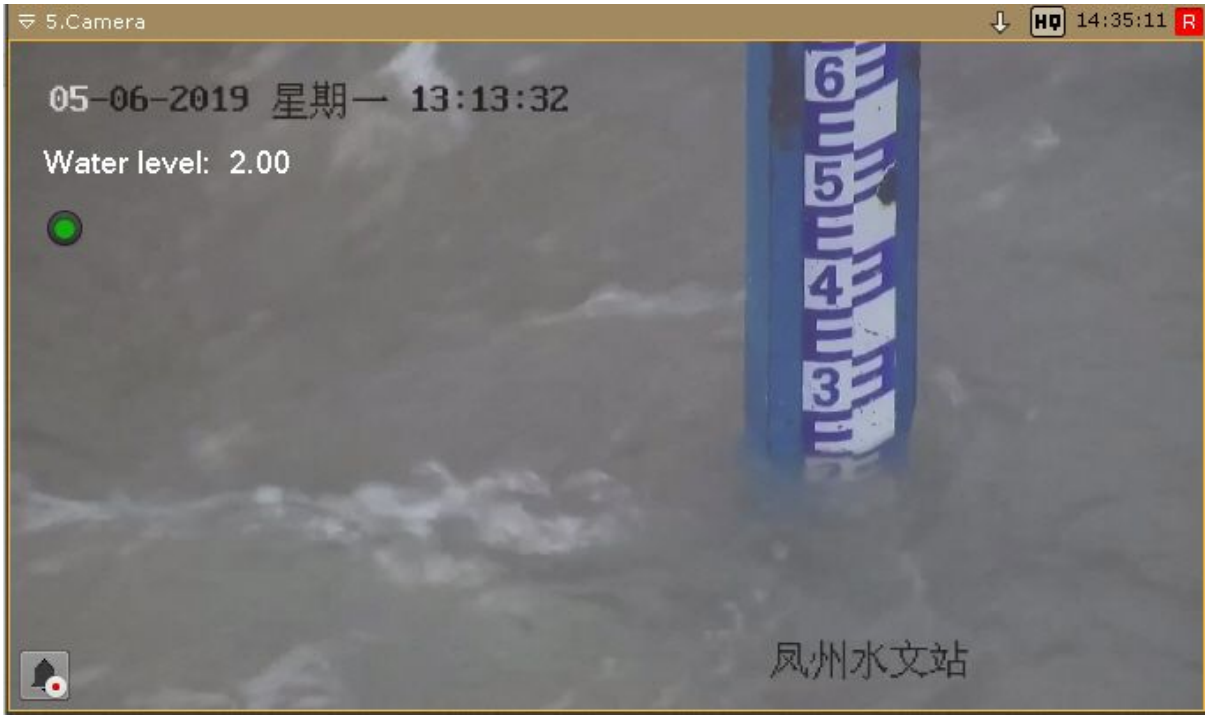
You can also display numerical value of current water levels for the detector. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. In the text field, enter "Water level: {0}". To configure fonts, click T.



2. Use buttons to scale up / down the text and the sensor icon.
3. You can move the sensor just as any other object (see Moving input and output icons in a viewing tile).

When the layout is saved, you see the information displayed in the camera window.



7.7.5.4.8 Adding links to other cameras to the Camera Window

Switching to layout editing mode

You can add links to other cameras to the Camera Window. If you click on such a link, you go to the corresponding camera's window (see Switching to other camera via a link in the Camera window).

To add a link, do the following:

1. While holding the Ctrl button on your PC keyboard, left-click the camera icon on the Objects panel (see Objects Panel), and drag it into the Camera window.

   A link will be added to a window as a thumbnail .
2. To rotate the thumbnail, click . Each click rotates the thumbnail by 45°.

   Note

   If you add a text note to the link (see 3), the thumbnail disappears after you rotate it by 360°, and you will have just the text to switch to another camera.
   To bring back the thumbnail, click .

   Note

   To remove the link, click the button.
3. If required, you can add a text comment to a link via the appropriate text field. To set font attributes, click the button.
4. Use buttons to scale up / down the text and the thumbnail.
5. You can move the link just as any other object (see Moving input and output icons in a viewing tile).

When the layout is saved, you see the newly created link in the camera window.

7.7.5.5 Configuring information boards

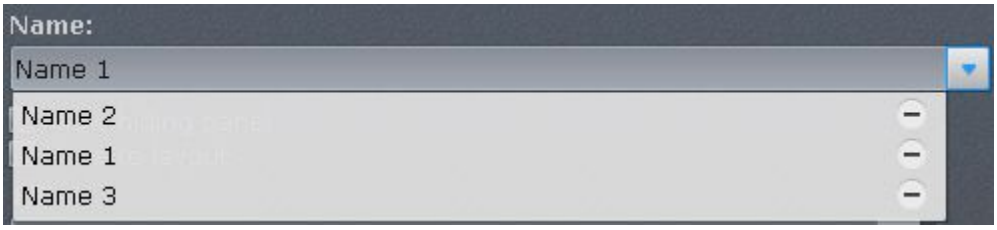
7.7.5.5.1 Configuring information board templates

> Switching to layout editing mode

To save information board parameters as a template, specify a name when configuring an information board.

If a name is not specified for the information board (it is not necessary to specify one), no template with the information board parameters is saved or made available when creating new information boards.

When configuring a new information board, you can use previous templates for the type of information board in question by selecting one from the **Name** list.



If you save the new information board with the same name, the template parameters are updated and all information boards based on the template are updated as well.

To delete a template, in the **Name** list, click the button across from the template. The parameters of information boards based on the deleted template are saved, but their names are discarded.

7.7.5.5.2 Configuring Events Boards

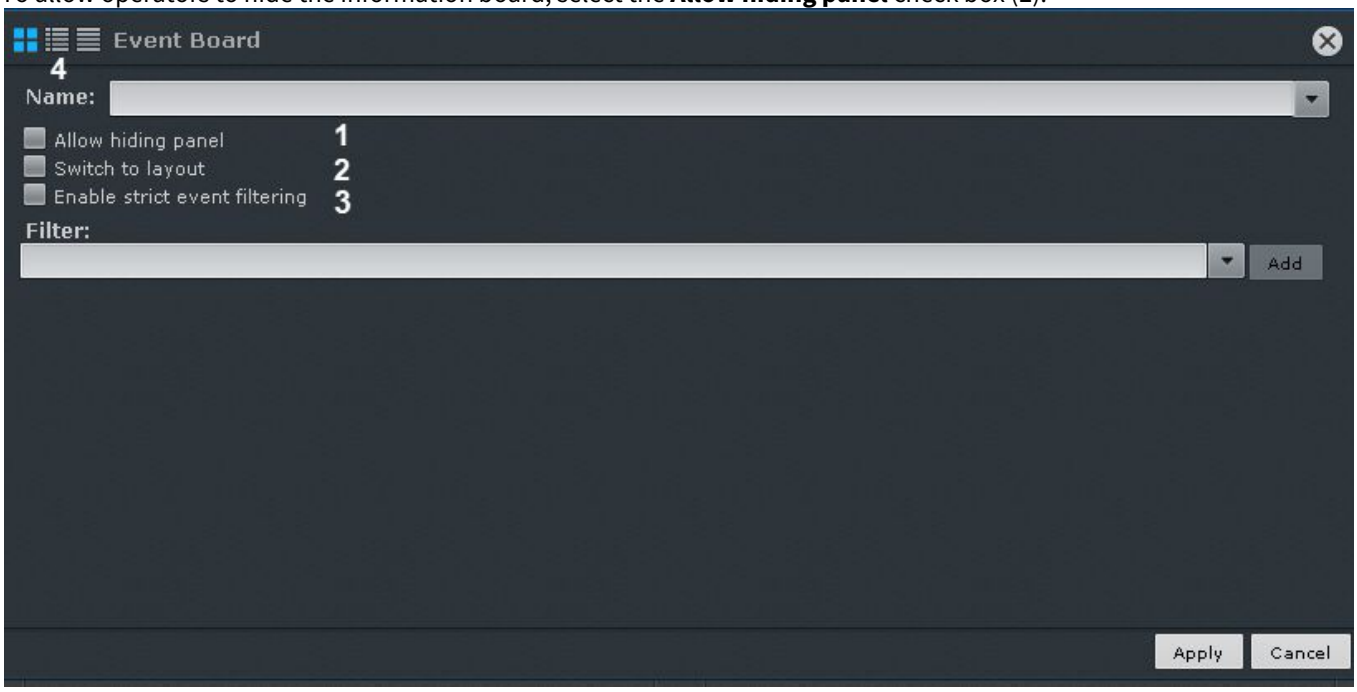
> Switching to layout editing mode

Events Boards display some or all system events.

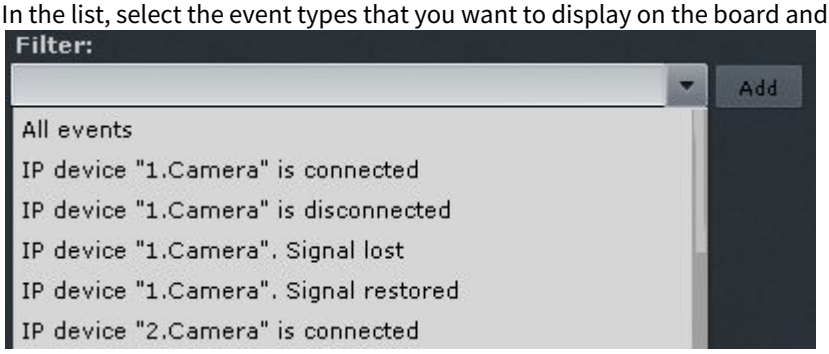
To configure an Events Board:

1. Add an information board to the layout (see Adding information boards to cells).
2. In the upper-right corner, click the button.

3. To allow operators to hide the information board, select the **Allow hiding panel** check box (**1**).



4. To automatically open the layout with this information board when an event matching the filter occurs, select the **Switch to layout** check box (**2**) (see paragraph 5).
   If other layouts contain information boards with the same parameters, the layout with the smallest number of cells is opened. If there are multiple layouts with identical numbers of cells, the layout that comes first in the alphabet is chosen. If a layout containing this information board is open when an event is received, no switch to another layout is performed.
5. By default, some events on the Event board come with audit events. If no display of audit events is required, select the **Enables strict messages filtering** checkbox (**3**).
6. In the list, select the event types that you want to display on the board and click **Add**.



To add events of the same type from different devices, enter the name of the event in the **Filter** field. This will list only the events of the chosen type. To list all events, clear the filter field.

> **Note**
>
> To remove an added event type, click the button

If no event type is selected, all system events are displayed on the information board.

> **Note**
>
> You can also add any text to the filter. For example, if you add **Signal lost** filter, Event Board will display event data from all devices in the system.

> **Note**

To display facial detection tool triggering, we recommend that you select 2 events: **Triggered detection "Face appeared** and **Triggered specified detection "Face appeared**.

7. Select the default view for information on the Events Board (see Options for displaying information on Events Boards): the first frame of the event and time, first frame and text, or text only (**4**).
8. Click the **Apply** button to save changes (**4**).

Configuration of the Events Board is complete.

7.7.5.5.3 Configuring a Health Board

Switching to layout editing mode

Health Boards display the status of selected system servers and connected cameras.

To configure a Health Board:

1. Add an information board to the layout (see Adding information boards to cells).
2. In the upper-right corner, click the button.
3. To allow operators to hide the information board, select the **Allow hiding panel** check box (**1**).

4. To automatically open the layout with this information board when the status of a monitored server or camera changes, select the **Move to layout** check box (**2**) (see paragraphs 5 and 6).
   If other layouts contain information boards with the same parameters, the layout with the smallest number of cells is opened. If there are multiple layouts with identical numbers of cells, the layout that comes first in the alphabet is chosen.
   If a layout containing this information board is open when an event is received, no switch to another layout is performed.
5. Select the Servers you want to monitor. To do so, select one server or all servers from the Axxon domain (click **All selected Servers**) and click the **Add** button (**3**).

   Note

   To remove the selected server, click the button

6. To display the status of only distressed servers out of those selected, select **Only malfunctioning Servers** (**3**).
   A server is classified as distressed if any of the following are true:
   a. Any component (CPU, hard disk, or network connection) is in critical condition.
   b. There is no connection to the Server.
   c. Any video cameras of the Server are in critical condition.

> **Note**
>
> Information about the status of Servers and cameras is given in the section Working with Health Boards.

7. Select the default view for display of information on the Health Board (see Working with Health Boards): diagram, diagram with text, or table (**4**).
8. Click the **Apply** button to save changes (**5**).

Configuration of the Health Board is complete.

7.7.5.5.4 Configuring a Statistics Board

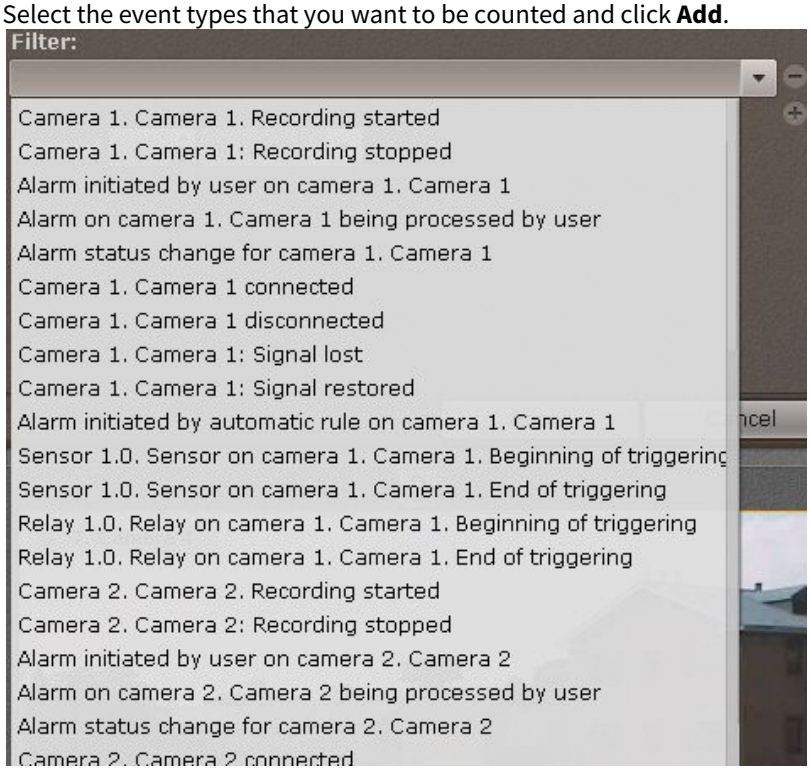
> Switching to layout editing mode

Statistics Boards display information on the number of events of the selected type or types, as a number and graph.

To configure a Statistics Board:

1. Add an information board to the layout (see Adding information boards to cells).
2. In the upper-right corner, click the button.
3. To allow operators to hide the information board from a layout, select the **Allow hiding panel** check box (**1**).

4. Select the event types that you want to be counted and click **Add**.



To add events of the same type from different devices, enter the name of the event in the **Filter** field. This will list only the events of the chosen type. To list all events, clear the filter field.

> **Note**
>
> To remove an added event type, click the button.

If no event type is selected, all system events are counted.

5. Select the time period for display of statistics on the graph (**2**).
6. Click **Apply** to save the changes (**3**).

Configuration of the Statistics Board is complete.

7.7.5.5.5 Configure the Web Board

> Switching to layout editing mode

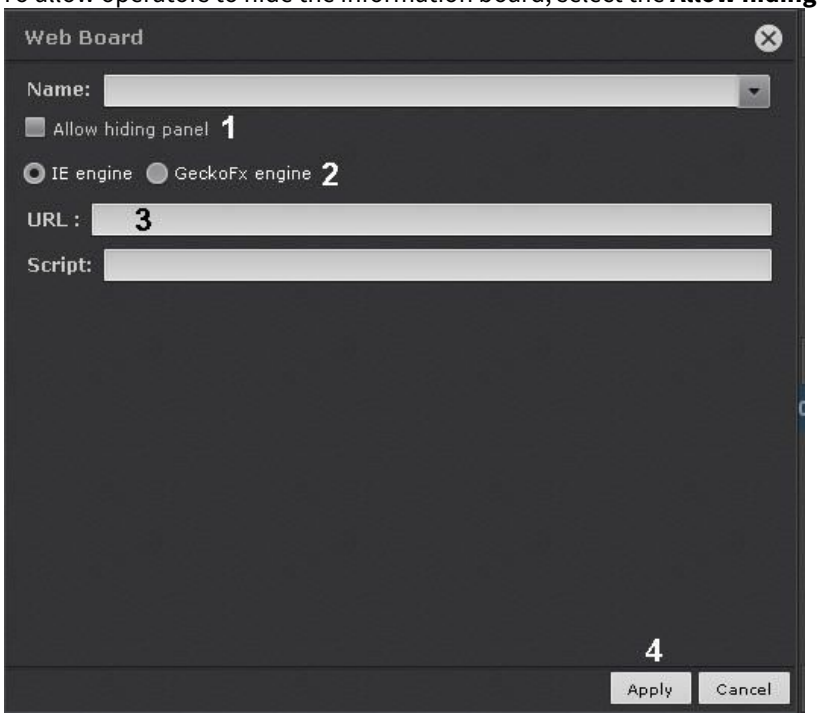
Web Board allows users to view a selected web page in the tile.

> **Note**
>
> *Axxon Next* VMS shows web pages in Internet Explorer.

To configure **Web Board**:

1. Add an information board to the layout (see Adding information boards to cells).
2. In the upper-right corner, click the button.

3. To allow operators to hide the information board, select the **Allow hiding panel** check box (**1**).



4. Select the web page output: Internet Explorer or Gecko (**2**).
5. Enter the address in the **URL** field (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> The **URL** field supports addresses in the following formats:
> - http://www.site.com
> - http://site.com
> - https://www.site.com
> - https://site.com
> - www.site.com
> - site.com
> - [IP-adress]
> - [IP-adress]:[Port]
> - http://[IP-adress]
> - http://[IP-adress]:[Port]

6. Click the **Apply** button to save changes (**4**).

Configuration of the **Web Board** is complete.

7.7.5.5.6 Configure the Dialog Board

> Switching to layout editing mode

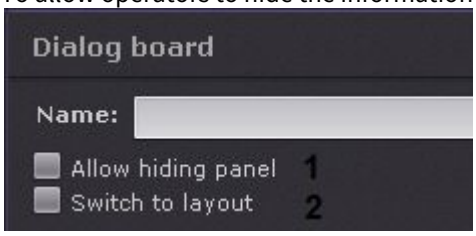
Dialog Board allows users to view info about alerts / detection events and quickly start macros to respond.

In addition, the panel can display:

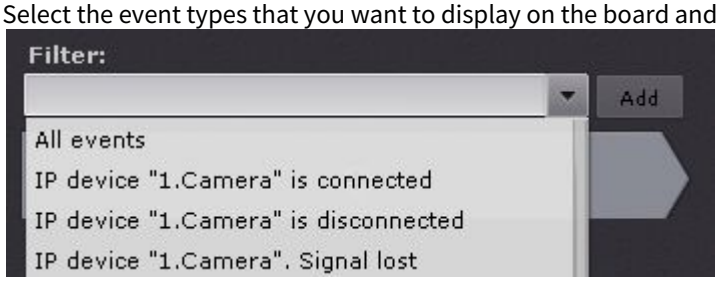
- video from the selected camera on the layout;
- video from the Related camera for the selected camera on the layout;
- video from the Related camera for the camera linked to the panel;
- alarm event from the selected or linked camera;
- still image.

You can configure Dialog Board as follows:

1. Add an information board to the layout (see Adding information boards to cells).
2. In the upper-right corner, click the button.
3. To allow operators to hide the information board, select the **Allow hiding panel** check box (**1**).



4. Select the **Switch to layout** check box (**2**) (see paragraph 5) to automatically open the layout with this information board when an event matching the filter occurs.
   If other layouts contain information boards with the same parameters, the layout with the smallest number of cells is opened. If there are multiple layouts with identical numbers of cells, the layout that comes first in the alphabet is chosen.
   If a layout containing this information board is open when an event is received, no switch to another layout is performed.
5. Select the event types that you want to display on the board and click **Add**.

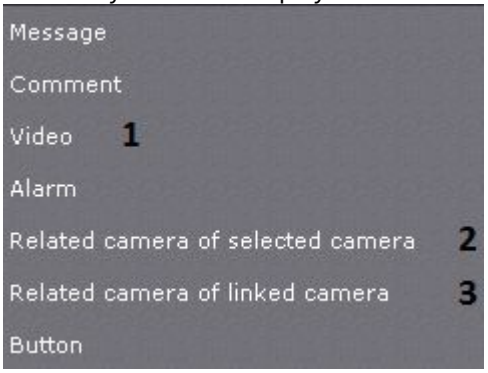


   To add events of the same type from different devices, enter the name of the event in the **Filter** field. This will list only the events of the chosen type. To list all events, clear the filter field.

> **Note**
>
> To remove an added event type, click the button.

> **Note**
>
> If the board has video, the event filter is not required.

   If no event type is selected, all system events are displayed on the information board.
6. Configure the information board:
   a. If you want video on the board, then click the button and select the item in the menu. You cannot add other elements if you have video here.
      i. **Video** – if you want to display video from the selected camera (**1**).



      ii. **Related camera of selected camera** - if you want to display video from the related (alternative, see The Video Camera Object) camera of the selected camera (**2**).

iii. **Related camera of linked camera** - if you want to display video from the related (alternative, see The Video Camera Object) camera of the linked camera (**3**). In this case, the panel must be connected to some camera window.

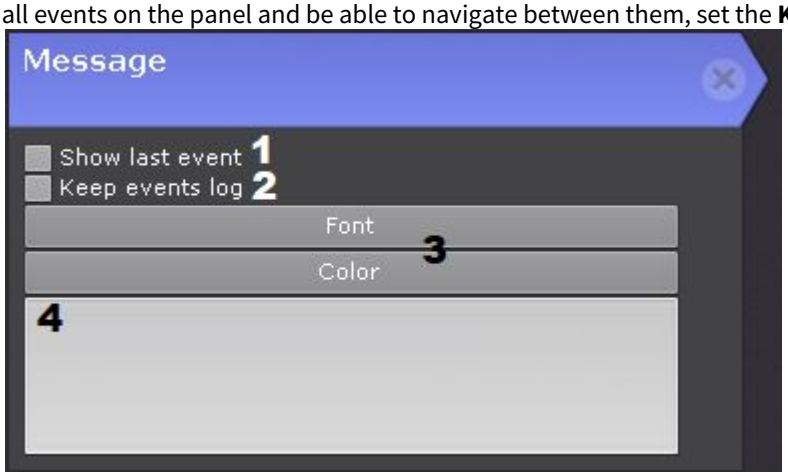
b. If you want to display a still image on the panel, select the "**Image**" element. To do this, select a desired image in JPEG, PNG or BMP format (**1**) and, if necessary, adjust it to panel size (**2**).

c. If you want to display an alarm event in the panel from the selected or linked camera, select **Alarm**. If the panel is linked to any camera window, then alarms from this camera will be displayed. If the panel is not linked to any tile, then alarms from any selected camera will be displayed.

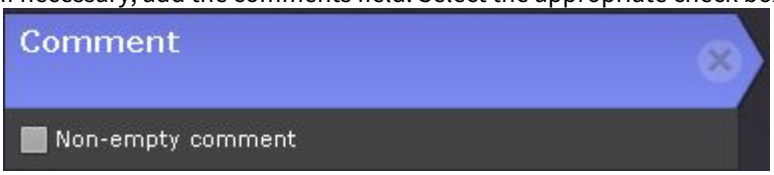
When you add the **Alarm** item to the message panel, you can also add pre-programmed buttons to evaluate the alarm event (see item **e** below). It is color-coded as follows:
Green - **False alarm**
Yellow - **Non-critical alarm**
Red - **Critical alarm**

d. If necessary, add a message that will be displayed on the panel in case of event (**4**). You can select the font and color (**3**) of the message. If it is necessary to display the event text, set the **Show last event** checkbox (**1**). To keep

all events on the panel and be able to navigate between them, set the **Keep events log** checkbox (**2**).



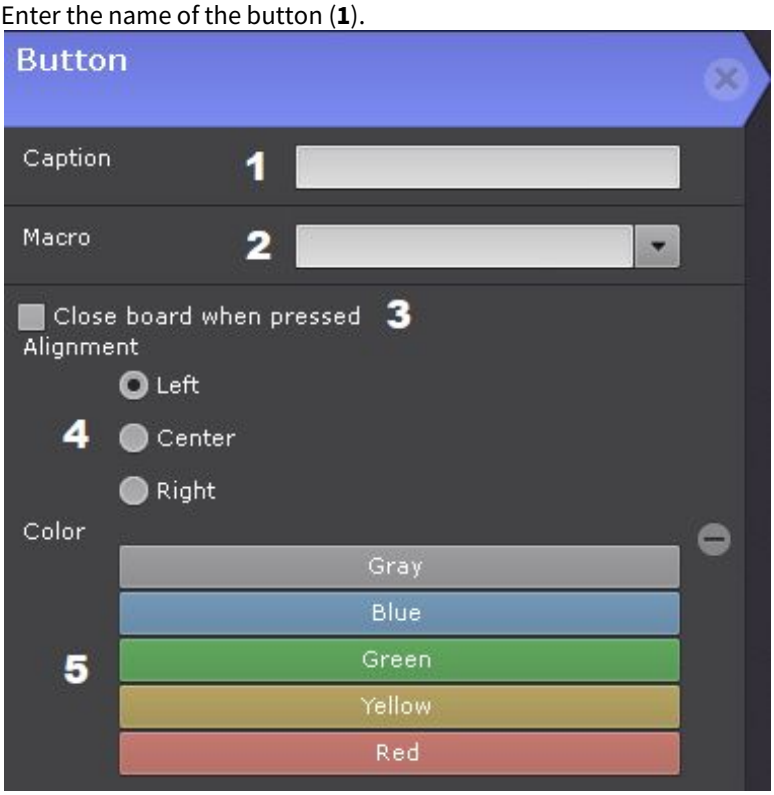
e. If necessary, add the comments field. Select the appropriate check box to make comments mandatory.



f. Add one or more Response Buttons.

To configure Response Buttons, you should set the mandatory and optional parameters (by clicking):

- Enter the name of the button (**1**).



- Select a macro that will start when you click the button (**2**).
- If you want to hide the board after pressing the response button, select the checkbox (**3**).
- Select location for the button: On the left, in the center, on the right (**4**).
- Select a color (**5**).

7. Click **Apply** to save the changes

Configuration of the Dialog Board is complete.

7.7.5.6 Configuring Alarms Panel on a layout

You can configure the size of Alarms Panel (see Alarms Panel) with included videos for each layout separately.

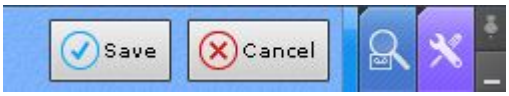
To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Go to the desired layout.
2. Open the Alarms Panel and set desired sizes of videos, and of the panel itself (see Alarms Panel).
3. Switch to the Layout Editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode).
4. Exit the Layout Editing mode and save changes (see Exiting layout editing mode).

The Alarms Panel will always open as you have specified it for this layout.

7.7.5.7 Exiting layout editing mode

To exit layout editing mode and save changes, click **Save** in the upper panel.



To exit editing mode without saving changes, click **Cancel**.

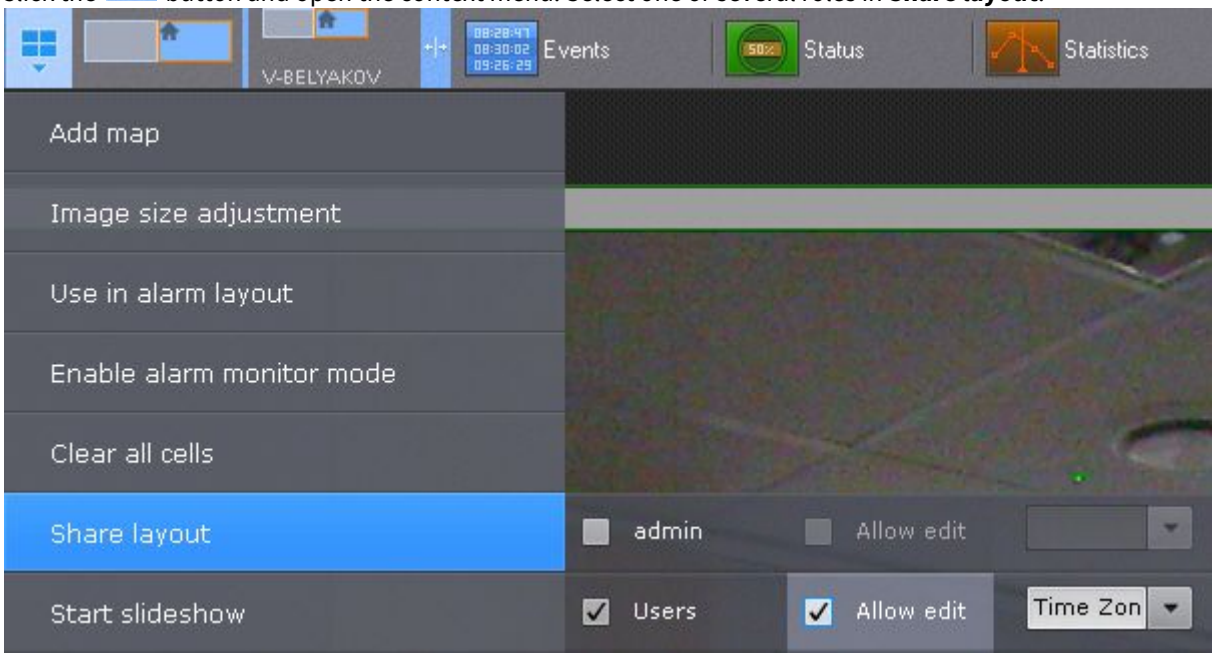
7.7.6 Share Layouts

You can share custom layouts with other users. The user can share only his/her custom layouts.

> **Note**
>
> This feature comes in handy, when it is only the administrator's job to create and edit layouts. After configuring, the administrator can assign the layouts to users/roles.

To share a layout, complete the following steps:

1. Select a layout (see Selecting a layout for editing) and go to Layout Editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode).
2. Click the button and open the context menu. Select one or several roles in **Share layout**.



> **Note**

> You can select the roles of the selected Axxon domain. Axxon domain can be selected on the Camera Search Panel.

3. If you want to grant rights to edit layouts, select the **Allow edit** checkbox for the required user role.
4. If you want to make the layout accessible only within a pre-defined time window, select the corresponding Time Zone from the list.
5. Exit layout editing mode (see Exiting layout editing mode).

This layout is shared with other users.

These users can not edit and share this layout. They can:

1. Work with layout (see The Layouts panel).
2. Delete it from their list (see Creating and deleting layouts).

> **Note**
>
> Only the layout owner can completely remove it from the VMS.
> Upon removal, the layout becomes unavailable to all users. If the removed layout was open on some user's monitor, it is immediately replaced by another layout.

3. Copy the layout (see Layout copying). If you copy the layout, you are the owner of your copy. You can edit it.

Shared layouts are sealed with the following sign:

7.7.7 Configuring special layouts

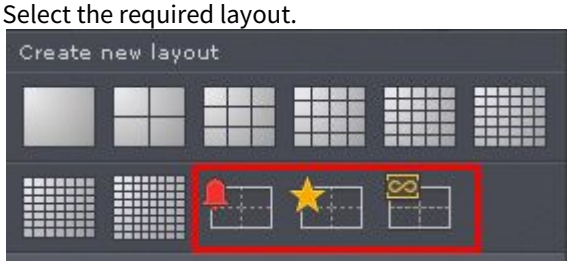
7.7.7.1 Creating special layouts

There are three special layouts available in *Axxon Next*:

1. Marked cameras — displays all marked cameras .
2. Alarmed cameras — displays all cameras with alarms .
3. Dynamic layout — displays the cameras added from the **Object Panel** in Live video mode .

To create a special layout, do as follows:

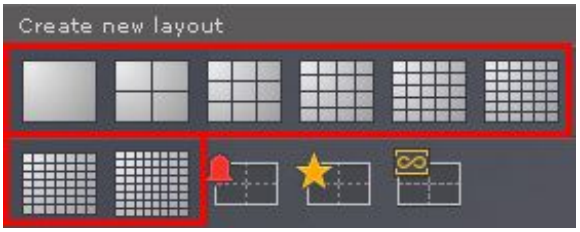
1. Click to open the **Layouts** context menu.
2. Select the required layout.



The layout is created and added to the panel.

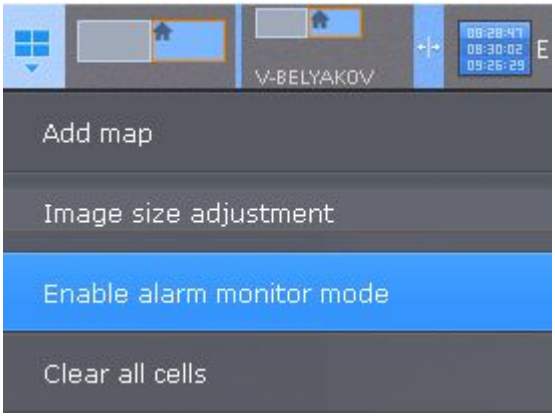
You can limit the number of cameras on special layouts by the layout format — 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64 (to select the format, click on the corresponding button in the menu). The **Dynamic layout** is created empty.

> **Note**
>
> By default, the **Marked cameras** layout is 3 * 3, and the **Alarmed cameras** layout changes automatically depending on the number of alarms.



> **Note**
>
> To return to automatic change of the **Alarmed cameras** layout, click the format that you selected again.

You can change any standard layout to an alarmed one. To do this, in the layout editing mode, open the menu and select **Enable alarm monitor mode**.



In this mode, only alarmed cameras will be displayed.

If the alarm monitor mode is enabled, the layout will be marked with

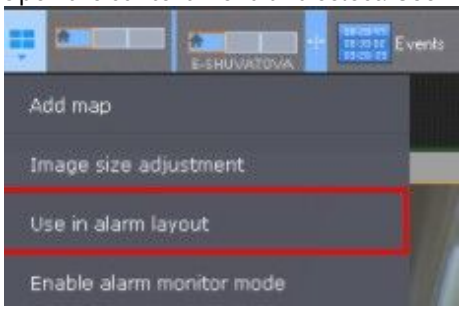
.

7.7.7.2 Configuring Alerted Cameras layouts

By default, special layout display alerts from all cameras. You can limit this: alerts only from the selected layouts.

To do this:

1. Select the layout (see Selecting a layout for editing).
2. Open the context menu and select: **Use in alarm layout**.

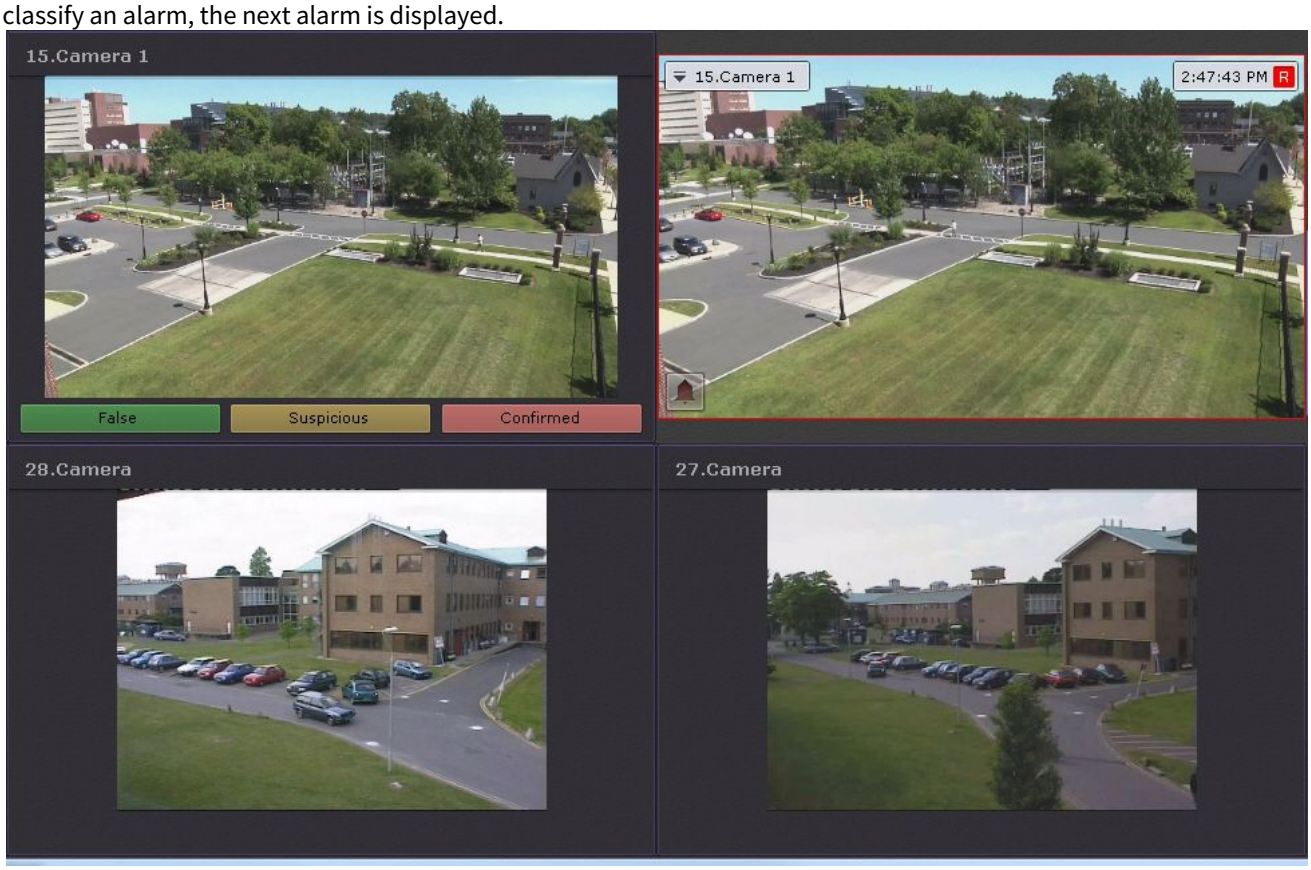


3. Save changes (see Exiting layout editing mode).

> **Note**
>
> To undo, select: **Disable use in alarm layout**.

Also, you can customize the layout with active alarms to show:

1. An alarm and the Alarm Management option (**1**). If there are several alarms, the longest-standing alarm is displayed. If you classify an alarm, the next alarm is displayed.

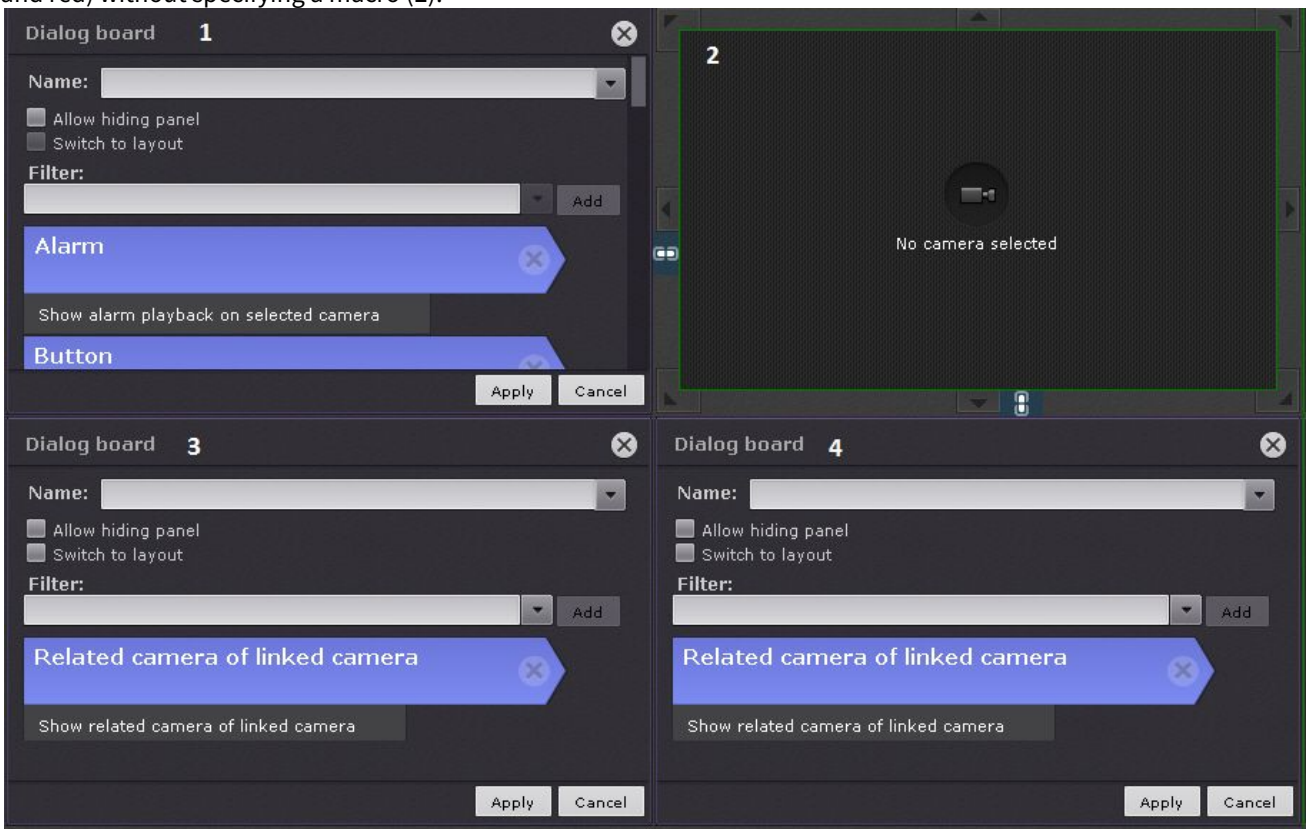


2. An alerted camera in Live Video mode (**2**).
3. 2 additional cameras (**3**, **4**) in Live Video mode (for example, the 2 nearest ones to the alarmed one).

Do the following:

1. Switch to the Layout Editing mode (see Switching to layout editing mode).

2. In the first cell, add a Dialog board (see Configure the Dialog Board) with the **Alarm** element and 3 buttons (green, yellow and red) without specifying a macro (**1**).



3. Leave the second cell empty (**2**).
4. In the third and fourth cells, add a message panel with **Related camera of linked camera** (**3**, **4**).
5. Link cells as follows: 1 with 2, 2 with 4, 3 with 4 (see Linking cells).
6. Save the layout.
7. For each camera, select 2 stand-by cameras (for example, those closest to it, see The Video Camera Object).

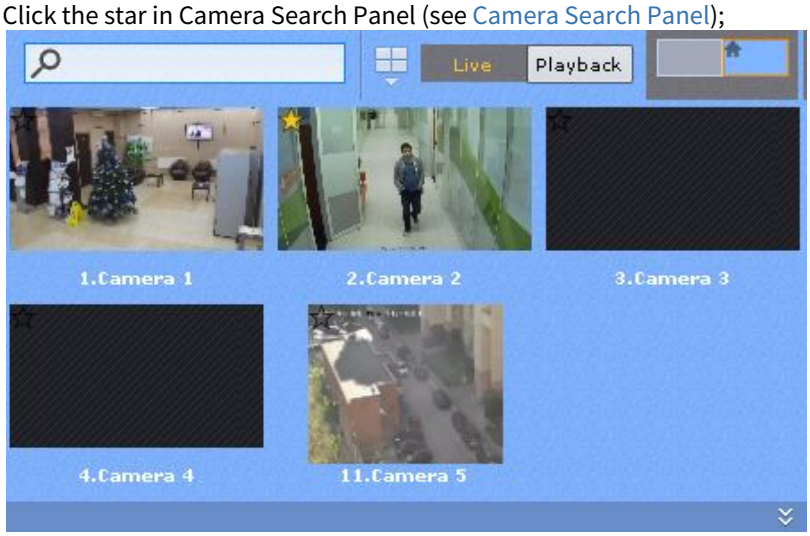
> **Note**
>
> In cell **4**, the first stand-by camera will be displayed, in cell **3** - the second.

7.7.7.3 Configuring Selected Cameras layout

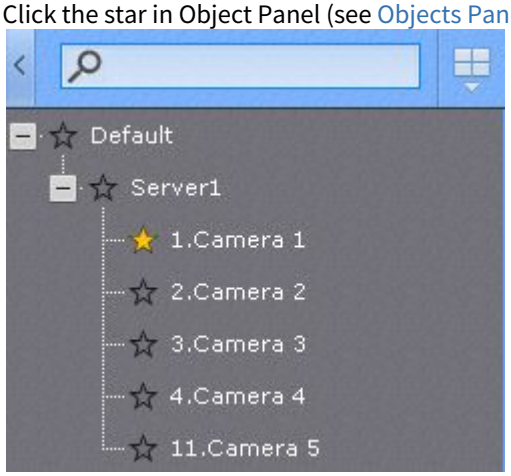
To add a tag to a video camera, do one of the following actions:

- Click the star in the top left corner of the camera window;

- Click the star in Camera Search Panel (see Camera Search Panel);



- Click the star in Object Panel (see Objects Panel);



Attention!

You can add tags to cameras on any video wall (see Managing monitors on a local Client)

If you exceed the maximum number of cameras allowed, only the cameras most recently selected remain on the layout.

Note

To remove the tag, click the star again .

You can move cameras around on layouts by drag-and-drop.

Attention!

Camera windows are not saved on the layout. After restarting the client or server, you should add them again.

Note

You can use Duplicate layout to create a copy of the current special layout.

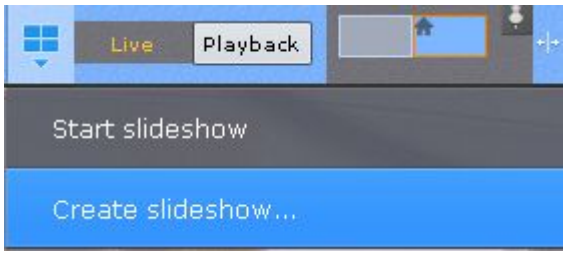
7.7.8 Configuring user-defined slide shows

A slide show is a set of layouts displayed on the operator's screen in a specified order for a specified dwelling time (see Configuring Slideshow parameters).

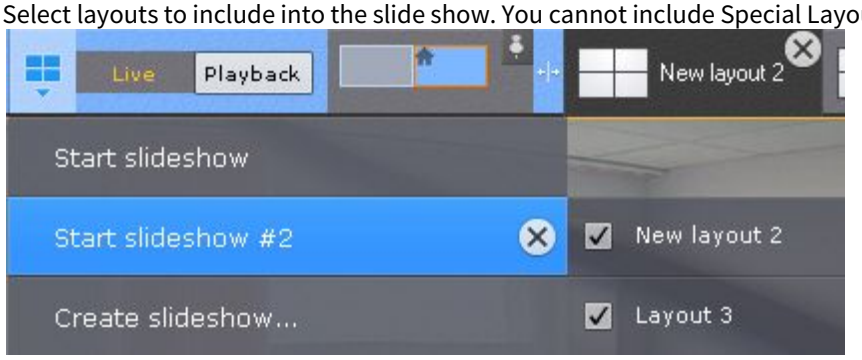
By default, the system includes only one slide show that includes all available layouts.

To create a user-defined slide show, do the following:

1. Go to Manage Layouts mode (see Creating and deleting layouts).
2. Click and select **Create slideshow**.



3. Select layouts to include into the slide show. You cannot include Special Layouts into slide show.



4. Click **Save**.

To remove a user-defined slide show, click the button.

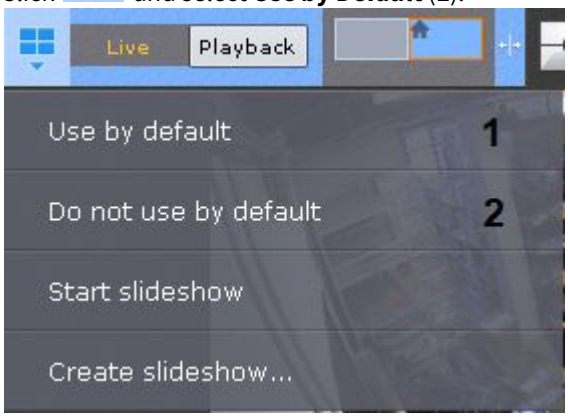
7.7.9 Setting the default layout

You can set a default layout to be displayed after you launch the Web Client.

To set the default layout, do the following:

1. Go to Manage Layouts mode (see Creating and deleting layouts).
2. Go to the desired layout.

3. Click and select **Use by Default** (**1**).



Now, the current layout is assigned as default.

To assign another layout as default, repeat the steps above.

To make the system operate without a default layout, click and select **Do not use by default** (**2**).

7.7.10 Setting a layout ID

You can set an ID for a layout. This may appear useful for calling layouts with hotkeys (see Notes regarding hot key actions).

To specify an ID, do the following:

1. Double click on a layout thumbnail.

2. Enter an ID.

3. Click anywhere in the Client UI.

Now, the ID is added and displayed before the layout name.

Note

When you hover the mouse cursor over a layout, the name and ID (if specified) of the layout are displayed separately.

7.8 Configuring Video Wall

A Video Wall is a set of display monitors physically and logically connected to act as a single screen.

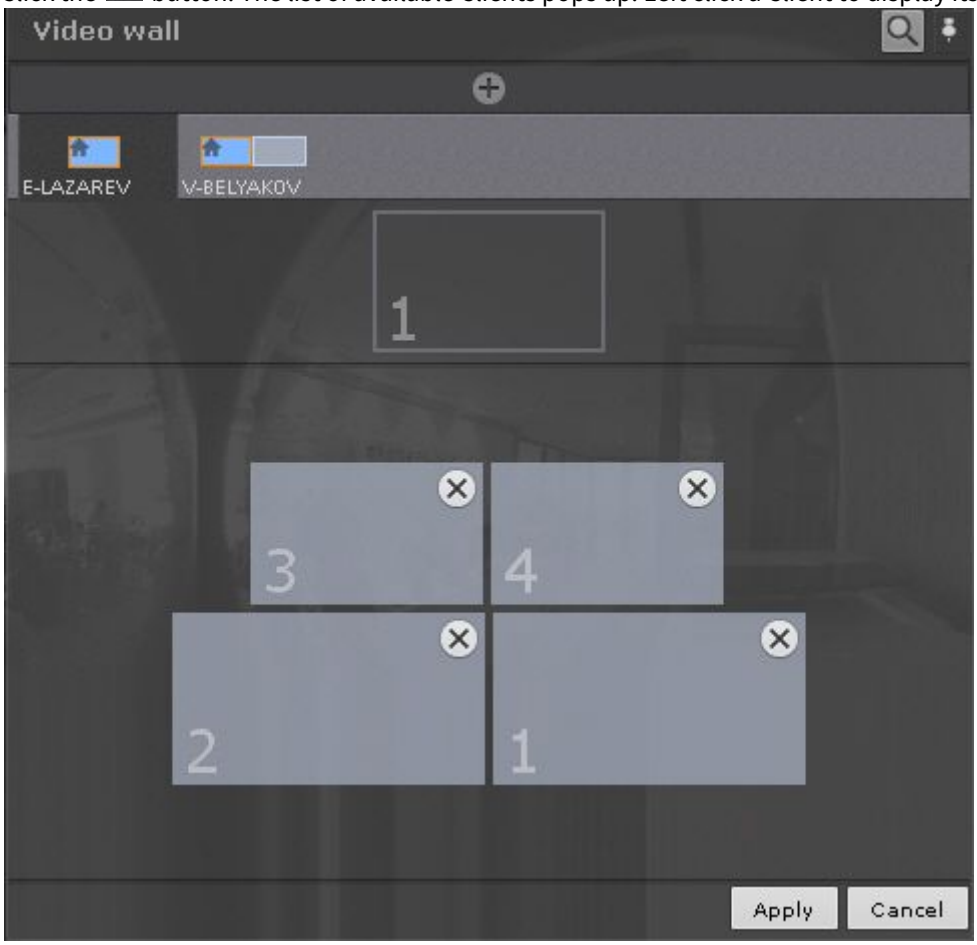
A video wall may include any monitor connected to any Client within the Axxon domain.

You can set up a video wall via a dedicated panel (see Video Wall Panel).

7

To set up a video wall, do the following:

1. Click the button.
2. Click the button. The list of available Clients pops up. Left click a Client to display its active monitors.



3. Drag and drop monitor icons according to their monitors' physical locations on the video wall.

> **Note**
>
> An ID number is assigned to each monitor added to a video wall. To display the ID number of a monitor, click .

4. Click **Apply**.

Now, the video wall is configured.

> **Note**
>
> You can manage video wall's monitors the same way as Client monitors (see Managing monitors on a local Client, Managing monitors on remote Clients within the Axxon domain).

7.9 Configuring the Interactive Map

Configuration of the interactive map is performed in layout editing mode (see the sections Interactive Map, Switching to layout editing mode).

> **Note**
>
> Creation, editing, and deletion of interactive maps are available to users with roles for which the **Change maps** component is activated (see the section Configuring user permissions).

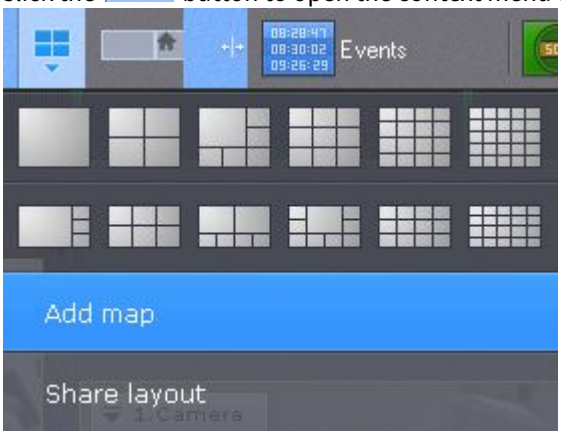
7.9.1 Creating a new map

To create a new map, complete the following steps:

1. Do one of the following four actions:

   a. In the lower-left part of the screen, click the button (after displaying the map, see Opening and closing the map).

b. Click the button to open the context menu of the layouts ribbon and select **Add map**;



c. In the map context menu (right-click on the empty background), select **Add new map**;

d. Select a video camera from the list on the video camera panel by clicking on it and, while holding down the mouse button, move the cursor to the empty map background and then release the mouse button.

> **Note**
>
> Actions **c** and **d** are available, if no maps have been created in the system.

2. Enter the name of the map (**1**).

3. Select what will be used as a map: an image or geodata from OpenStreetMap (**2**).

> **Attention!**
>
> *Axxon Next* relies on geodata from OpenStreetMap provider received via Mapbox service.
> Creation of a map based on OpenStreetMap geodata provider is limited by default. To create OpenStreetMap maps, you should:
> 1. Purchase an OpenStreetMap license for Static Tiles API from MapBox provider: https://www.mapbox.com/pricing/#gltile
> 2. Quit the Client (see Shutting down an Axxon Next Client).
> 3. Open a configuration file *AxxonNext.exe.config* in a word processor. The file is located in the <Installation Directory of Axxon Next>\ bin.
> 4. Find the OpenStreetMap parameters group.

```
    </provider>
      <provider name="OpenStreetMap">
      <param name="Id" value="32AAE9D2-CB9D-4B45-8BB8-CE180629600D"/>
      <param name="Copyright" value="© MapBox, © OpenStreetMap"/>
      <param name="MinZoom" value="3"/>
      <param name="MaxZoom" value="17"/>
      <param name="DefaultZoom" value="9"/>
      <param name="Enabled" value="true"/>
      <param name="ApiKey"
value="pk.eyJ1Ijoicm9tYW5rYWgfdmluIiwiYSI6ImNpcjF5bytryuzNjAwN3podm5uc2ZuaXVtc
DMifQ.bUKBmLRZtczKqyOWSwvsZg"/>
    </provider>
  </mapProviders>
```

> 5. Set the **true** value for the **Enabled** parameter.

6. For the **ApiKey** parameter, enter the received key.
7. Save the changes to the file.
8. Run the Client (see Starting an Axxon Next Client).

As a result, it will be possible to use the geodata from OpenStreetMap provider as a map. When used, all requested map fragments will be saved on the computer hard drive, on which *Axxon Next* user interface is running. When the map fragments are reloaded, OpenStreetMap service is not accessed.

Note

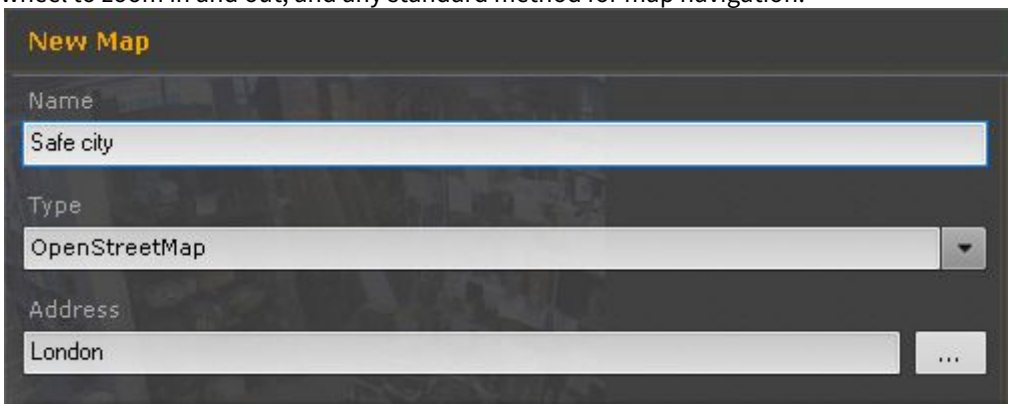
The maximum image size is 4 million pixels (the number of pixels at 2000x2000 resolution). If a larger image is selected, no map is created.

4. In the corresponding field (**3**), click the ... button and select the image that will be used as the site plan (if the **Raster image** map type is selected). The supported formats are png, jpg, jpeg, jpe, gif and bmp.

Note

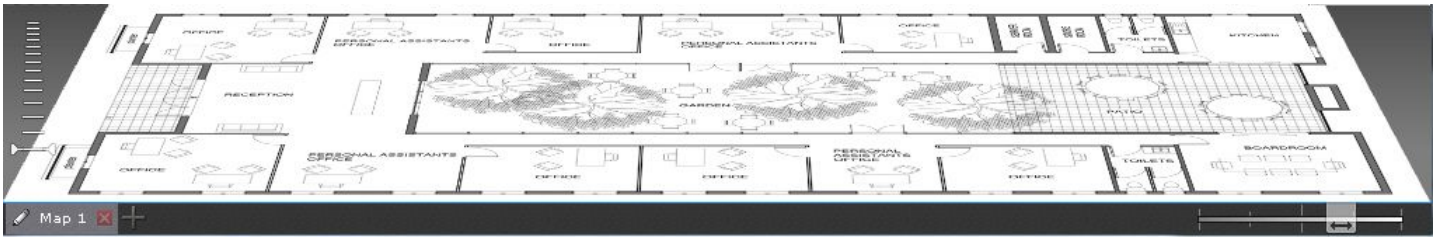
If the image is not selected, a map with a white background will be created.

5. If you use a geomaps, enter the address, or the postal index, or OpenStreetMap coordinates (refer to provider's website for details) of the desired location into the **Address** field, then click the ... button. Use the slider or the mouse scroll wheel to zoom in and out, and any standard method for map navigation.



6. Select the users who can access the map (**4**): all users, current user only (**Not shared** position), selected roles only (**5**).
7. Click the **Apply** button.

Creation of a new map is complete.



7.9.2 Adding system objects to the map

You can add these types of objects to your map:

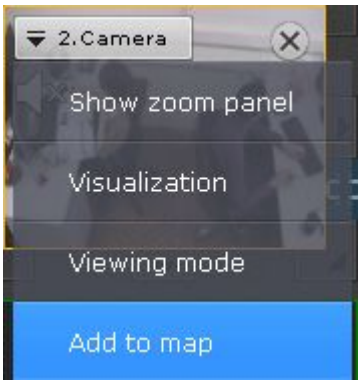
- video cameras;
- outputs (relays);
- inputs (sensors);
- macros;
- counters;
- switches to another map.

7.9.2.1 Adding video cameras and changing size of their icons on the map

You can add cameras to the map in one of two ways:

1. By using the viewing tile context menu.
2. By dragging a video camera icon from Camera Search Panel (see Camera Search Panel) or Object Panel (see Objects Panel) to the map.

To add a camera to the map, in the context menu of the viewing tile, select **Add to map**.



The camera is added to the map.

> **Attention!**
>
> When you add a video camera with specified coordinates to the geomap (see The Video Camera Object), the video camera icon is automatically positioned according to the coordinates.
> If a video camera has a built-in GPS tracker, its location on the geomap changes automatically according to the received data (see Configuring cameras with a built-in GPS tracker).

Also, to add a video camera to the map, you can left-click a video camera's icon in the video camera search panel or object panel and drag it to the map.

If you use this method to transfer a group of cameras to the Map, all cameras within the group will be added.

To change the size of camera icons, use the **Change icon size** slider in the lower right corner of the screen in the layout editing mode.

7.9.2.2 Adding inputs and outputs

Only Input and Output bjects that have been activated can be added to the map.

To add inputs/outputs to the Map, do the following:

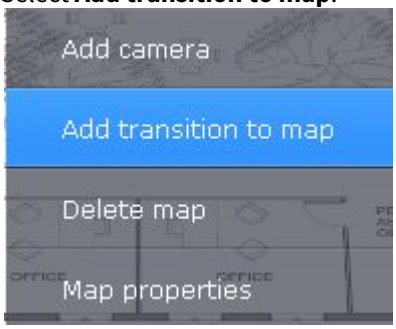
1. Open Objects Panel (see Objects Panel).
2. Drag and drop the inputs/outputs to the map.

7.9.2.3 Adding switches to another map

You can add a "switch" to another map in one of two ways:

1. Select the tab of the map to which you want the switch to point and, without releasing the mouse button, drag it to the map and release the mouse button.
2. By using the map context menu.

1. Select **Add transition to map**.



2. Select the map in the system to which the new switch will point.

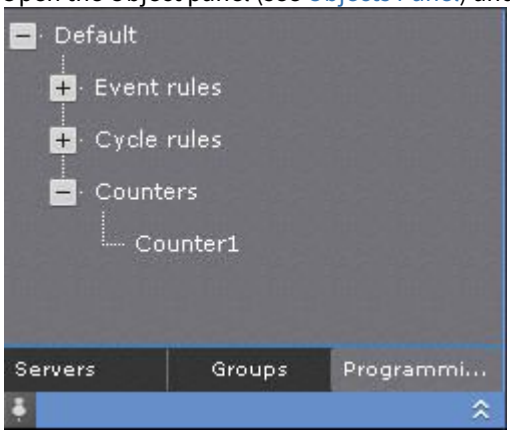
Addition of the switch is now complete

Then drag the switch icon to the necessary place on the map.

7.9.2.4 Adding counters

To add counters (see General information about the counters) to the map, do as follows:

1. Open the Object panel (see Objects Panel) and go to the **Programming** tab.



2. Drag and drop the counter to the map.

3. To set up a counter on the map, do as follows:

   a. Configure the counter coverage area on the map. You can do so by dragging the anchor points of the area . To add a new point, click . To delete it, right - click on the point.

   > **Note**
   >
   > To remove the counter from the map, click the point .

   b. Select the color of the counter.

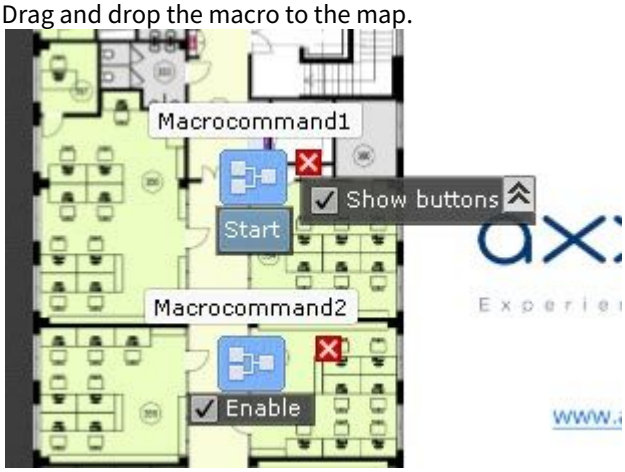
> **Note**
>
> To hide/display the color settings, use and buttons.

7.9.2.5 Adding macros

To add macros (see General information about the macros) to the map, do as follows:

1. Open Object Panel (see Objects Panel) and go to the **Programming** tab.

2. Drag and drop the macro to the map.



3. By default, for event-driven macros you will see the Start button, and the on/off checkbox for cyclic macros. To hide them, deselect the **Show buttons** checkbox. In this case, you can manage the macros only through the context menu.

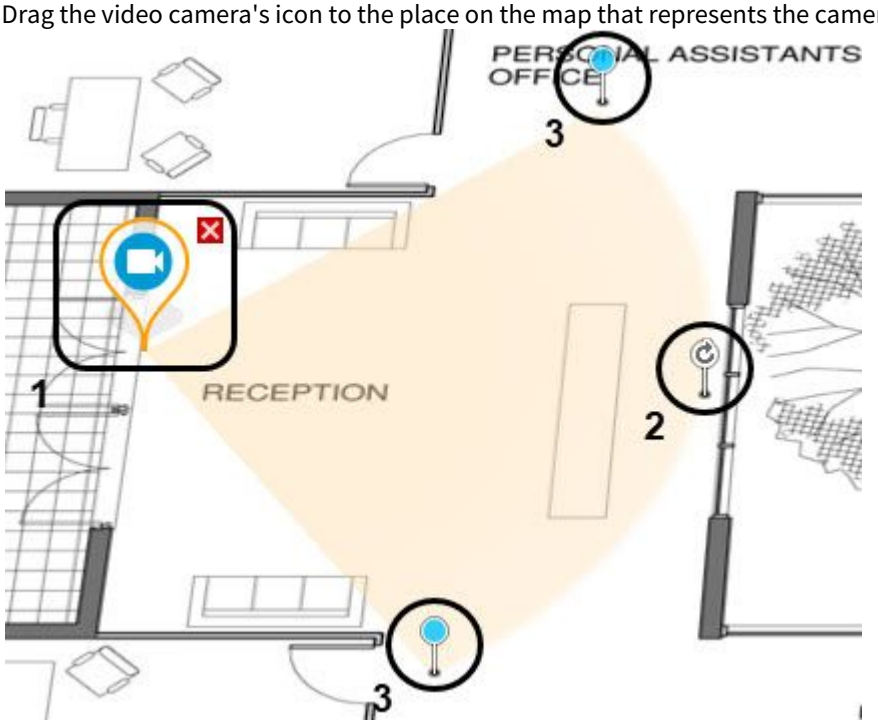
> **Note**
>
> To remove a macro from the map, click .

7.9.3 Configuring cameras on the map

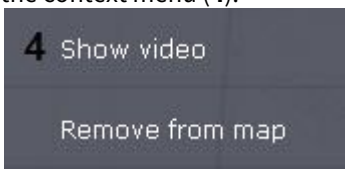
7.9.3.1 Configuring a camera in standard map viewing mode

After you add a camera to the map (see Adding video cameras and changing size of their icons on the map), perform the following actions:

1. Drag the video camera's icon to the place on the map that represents the camera's actual location at the site (**1**).

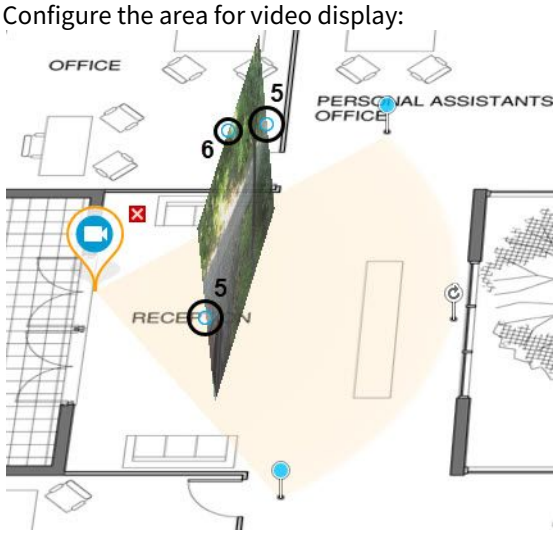


2. Set the video camera's field of view in the same direction as at the real site (**2**).
3. On the map, use the nodal points to adjust the video camera's field of view to match the actual situation at the site (**3**).
4. To display the video image, right-click on the area of the video camera's field of view and select the **Show video** item from the context menu (**4**).



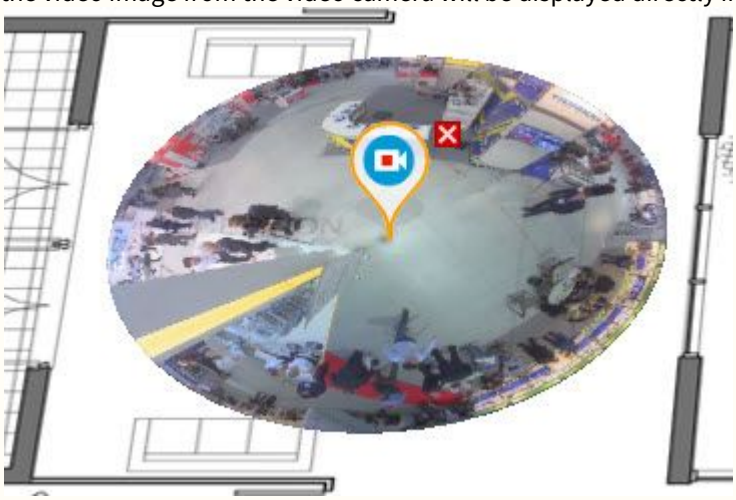
> **Note**
>
> This option (**Show video** or **Hide video**) can be configured separately from the layout editing mode. In this case, the parameter setting will be saved until the client is restarted.

5. Configure the area for video display:



Important!

To display the video image when using ceiling-mounted fish-eye cameras (see Configuring fisheye cameras), it is necessary to set the area of the camera's field of view (**3**) in the form of a circle (360° field of view). In this case, the video image from the video camera will be displayed directly in the specified area:



To enable this feature on cameras with Immervision lenses, it is necessary to select the **PTZ** display mode (see Configuring fisheye cameras).
If the camera's fish-eye field of view is different from the ceiling position, the video image display area is not available.

a. using dots (**5**), adjust the size of the video image area − left-click the dot, hold and drag the cursor;
b. using a dot (**6**), change the tilt angle of the area;

Note

You can switch map display to "flat" while working with the Map (see Customizing an Interactive Map).

c. using the slider in the lower right corner of the screen, adjust the transparency of the video image display area.

Configuration of the camera in standard map viewing mode is complete.

7.9.3.2 Configuring cameras in immersion mode

You can link video to the objects shown on a map. This allows making video surveillance more visual and informative.

The feature is available through immersion mode (see Immersive mode).

To link video to a map, use the four attachment points. Objects in the video need to be linked to their depiction on the site map.

To link objects with symbols on the map:

1. Click an object in the video. A point is added.

Important!

When specifying points on an image, follow the rules:
1. All 4 points should belong to the same horizontal plane. Place points on the floor or on the ground.
2. Do not place 3 points on one line.
3. Points should show the perspective of the plane.

2. Click on the depiction of the object on the map. A second point is added, connected by a line to the first point.

Important!

When a fourth link is made, it is possible that the second point cannot be placed in some areas. This occurs when the system cannot find a valid angle for displaying the video and map for the given links. Most likely, the links have been set incorrectly.

After a fourth link is added, an angle is chosen so that the surveillance objects in the video and on the map coincide.

To remove a link, place the cursor above the first point in the link and click the button. After all links are added, it is possible to change the location of previously set points by dragging them while holding the left mouse button.

To save links between video and the map, exit layout editing mode and save changes. The links you make are discarded if any of the following occur before you exit and save changes:

- The position of the video camera icon on the map is changed.
- The angle of display of the video display area for the camera on the map is changed.
- The field of view of the camera on the map is changed in any way.

7.9.3.3 Configuring cameras with a built-in GPS tracker

Some devices contain a built-in GPS tracker that transmits the current coordinates of the device to Axxon Next VMS.

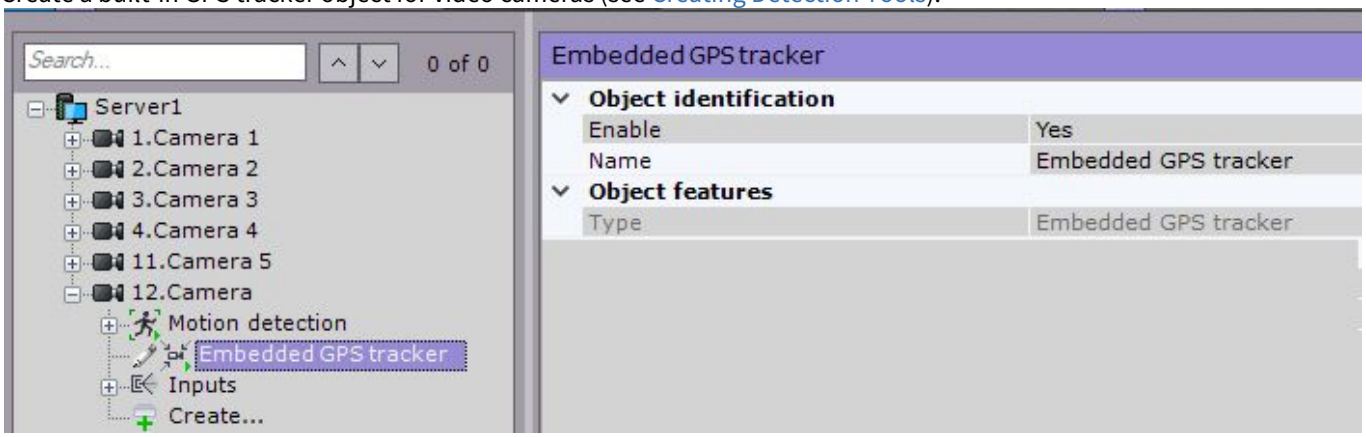
Location of these devices / cameras and their feeds are automatically geotagged when displayed on a geo map.

Note

This feature is widely used when cameras are installed, for example, in ambulances or public transport.

To enable this feature, do as follows:

1. Create a built-in GPS tracker object for video cameras (see Creating Detection Tools).



2. Create a geomap (see Creating a new map).
3. Add video cameras to the geomap (see Adding video cameras and changing size of their icons on the map).

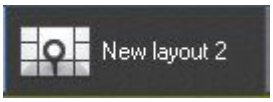
7.9.4 Attaching a map to a layout

You can attach a map to a layout. This means that when you switch to the layout, the attached map opens automatically.

To attach a map to a layout:

1. Select the layout with which you want to associate the map in the layouts ribbon or create a new layout (see Creating and deleting layouts and Selecting a layout for editing).
2. Go to map editing mode (see the section Opening and closing the map)
3. Go to an existing map with which you want to associate the layout or create a new map (see the sections Switching between maps and Creating a new map).
4. Save changesand exit layout editing mode (see Exiting layout editing mode).

After you save the layout, its icon resembles than shown in picture below.

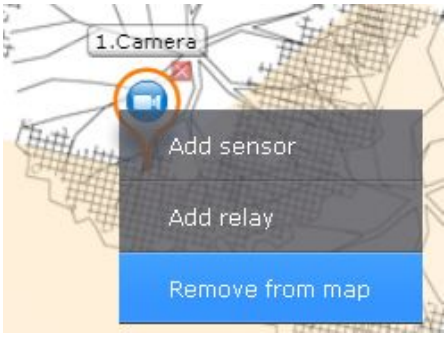


If a map is open in 2D mode when you save a layout, when you switch to that layout, the map will always open in 2D mode. The layout icon resembles that shown in picture below.

The map is now attached to the layout.

7.9.5 Removing objects from the map

To remove an object from the map, click the button next to the object's icon, or right-click on the object's icon and in the context menu select **Remove from map**.



> **Note**
>
> You can remove a map switch only by clicking the button.

7.9.6 Configuring the floors

7.9.6.1 Creating a floor

A new floor is created as follows:

1. Right-click on the map and in the map context menu, select the **Add child map** item.

> **Note**
>
> You can add a floor to an existing map (see Creating a new map).

2. Enter the name of the floor (**1**).

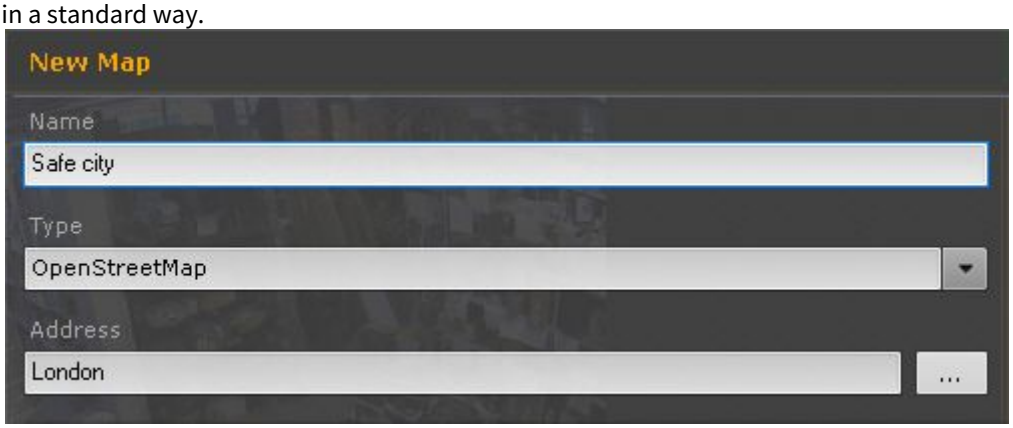
3. Select the item that will be used as a floor map: an image or geodata from the OpenStreetMap provider (**2**).

> **Note**
>
> *Axxon Next* uses the geodata provided by the OpenStreetMap through the Mapbox service. The connection to the service is described on the Creating a new map page.

4. Clicks the ... button and select the image (**3**), which will be used as a graphic plan of the protected area (if the **Raster image** type is chosen). Supported formats: png, jpg, jpeg, jpe, gif and bmp. If no image is selected, a floor with a white background will be created.

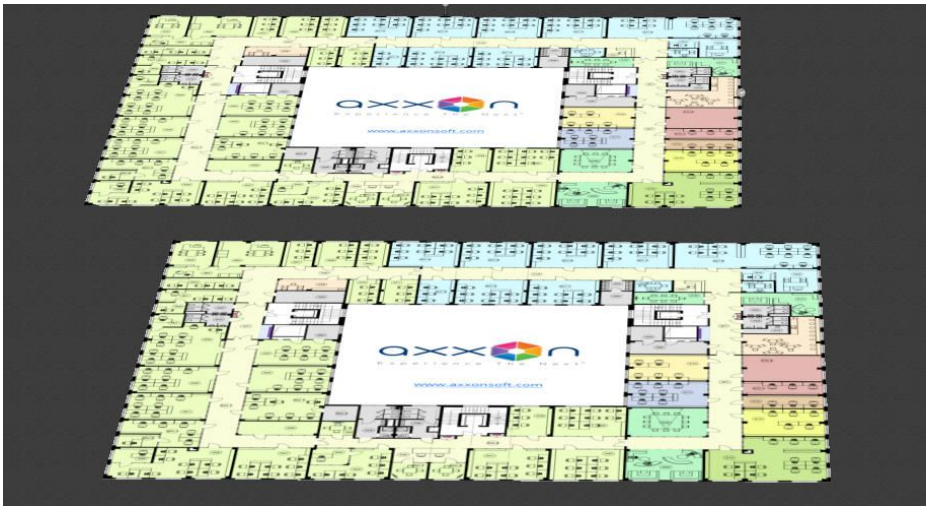
> **Note**
>
> The maximum image size is 4 million pixels (the number of pixels in the resolution 2000x2000). The floor will not be created if a selected image is larger than the allowed size.

5. If a geo map is used, in the **Address** field, enter either the address, or the zip code, or the geographical coordinates of the required area on the OpenStreetMap map (for details on browsing the OpenStreetMap, see the provider's website) and click the ... button. You can scale the floor using the scale slider or the mouse wheel, you can move around the floor in a standard way.



6. Select the users for whom the floor will be available (**4**): for everyone, only for the current user (**Nobody** option), for users of the selected roles (**5**).
7. Click the **Apply** button.
8. If necessary, repeat steps 1-7, adding a new floor to the last created floor.

The floor is created.

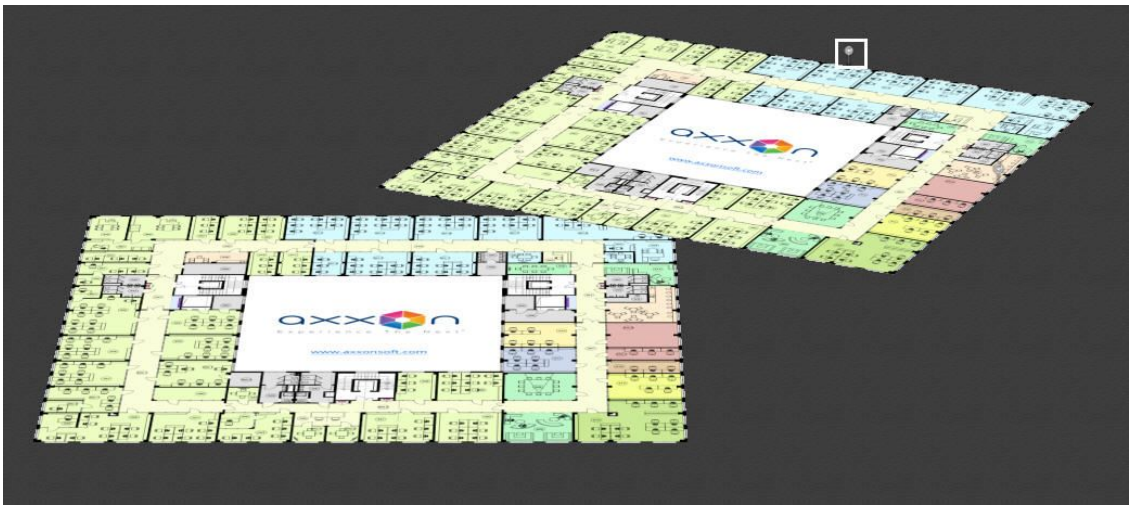


7.9.6.2 Configuring floor location on the map

To shift a floor in an arbitrary direction, click on the floor image and, while holding down the left mouse button, move the image to the required location.

> **Note**
>
> Both the selected floor and the floors created on its basis will move.

To rotate or resize the floor image, click and hold the button, and rotate or enlarge the floor image.



7.9.6.3 Editing a floor

When you create a floor, each new floor is created as a separate map. To edit a floor, go to the tab with its map:

The same functions are available for editing a floor as for a map:

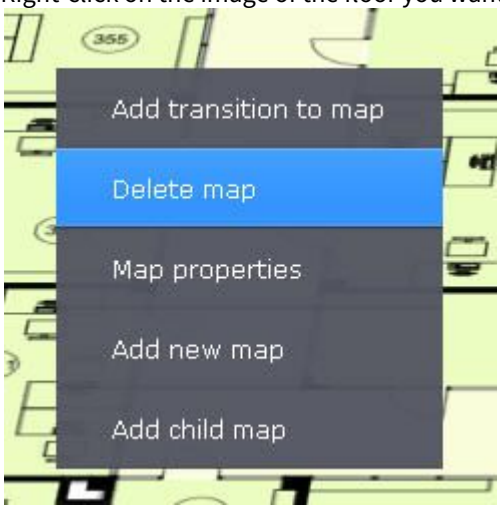
1. Adding objects to the floor — see Adding system objects to the map.
2. Configuring the display of added video cameras — see Configuring cameras on the map.
3. Removing objects from a floor — see Removing objects from the map.
4. Changing the type and display — see Changing map type and display.
5. Changing the name of the floor — see Renaming the map.

7.9.6.4 Removing a floor

You can delete a floor in two ways:

1. In the lower left corner of the screen, click the button on the tab corresponding to the floor you want to delete:

2. Right-click on the image of the floor you want to delete and select the **Delete map** item from the context menu:



7.9.7 Setting keywords for geo map search

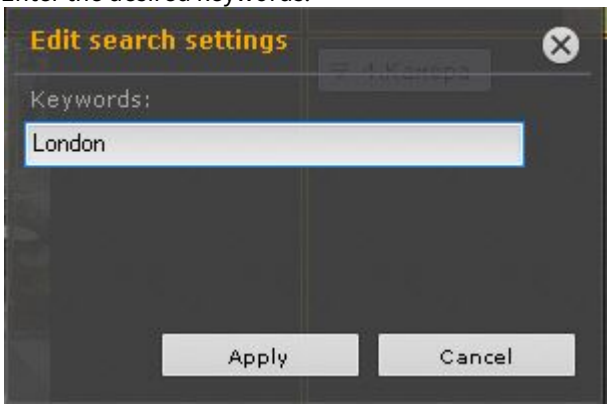
The keywords are needed to locate a site or a street on OpenStreetMap.

For example, if you are searching for a site or a street in a particular city/town, the name of the town has to be entered as a keyword.

The default keyword is the address set during the map creation process (see Creating a new map).

To set new keywords, you need to:

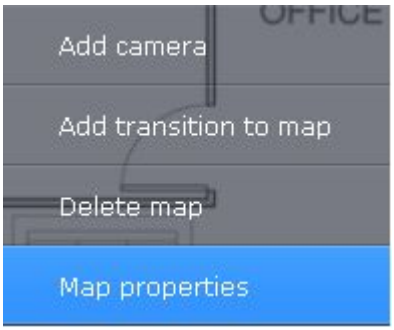
1. Click in the lower panel.
2. Enter the desired keywords.



3. Click **Apply**.

7.9.8 Changing map type and display

You can change the type and display of a map that has been created previously. To do so, open the map context menu and select **Map properties**.



A map properties configuration window opens, which is similar to the map creation window (see Creating a new map).

7.9.9 Renaming the map

To rename the map, in the lower-left corner of the screen, left-click a tab and specify a new name.

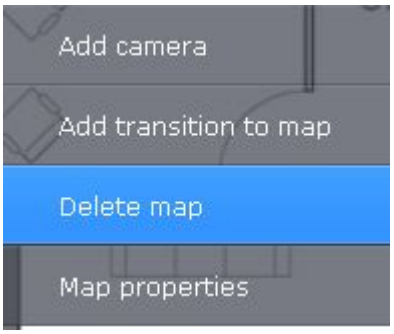
7.9.10 Sorting of map lists

You can change the order of tabs for previously created maps. By default, tabs with maps are ordered by creation date.

To change the order, drag and drop tabs as necessary. Left-click a tab and drag it to the desired location.

7.9.11 Deleting a map

To delete a map, in the lower-left corner of the screen, select the button on the corresponding tab. Alternatively, in the context menu, you can select **Delete map**.



7.10 System preferences

7.10.1 Server settings

7.10.1.1 Configuring Forensic Search MomentQuest in Archive

On the page:

- Turning on the video stream metadata recording
- Configuring user permissions for Forensic Search in archive

To make it possible to perform Forensic Search MomentQuest of the archives of a video camera, the following conditions must be met:

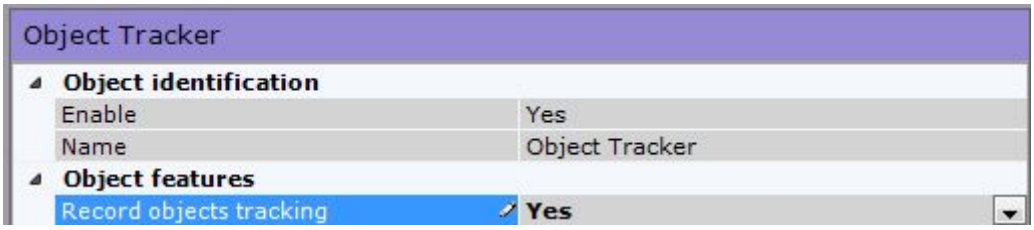
1. Video meets the requirements (see Video suitability for Forensic Search of recorded video (requirements)).
2. There are video stream recordings from the desired video camera in the archive (see Configuring recording to an archive).
3. There are metadata recordings from this video stream in the object trajectory database. Metadata can be generated by Axxon Next (see General information on Scene Analytics, Face detection tools) or received from a video camera (see Embedded Detection Tools).
4. The user has the appropriate permissions.

This section contains information on how to configure the Axxon Next software package to satisfy these conditions.

7.10.1.1.1 Turning on the video stream metadata recording

To enable metadata recording, select **Yes** in the **Record Object Tracking** list for the corresponding detection tool (object tracker, facial recognition, base motion detection, onboard video analytics).

> **Note**
>
> The metadata recording is enabled by default.

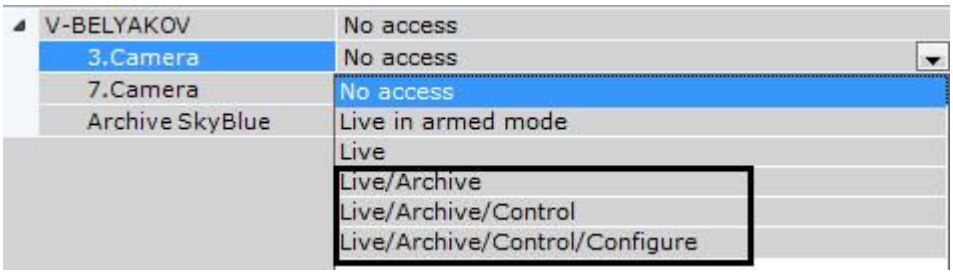


In video motion detection (VMD) settings, you have to activate the **Object Tracking** parameter (see Setting up VMD-based Scene Analytics).

> **Note**
>
> Information on configuring storage of metadata is provided in the section titled Configuring storage of the archive, system log, and metadata

7.10.1.1.2 Configuring user permissions for Forensic Search in archive

You need **Live/Archive**, **Live/Archive/Control** or **Live/Archive/Control/Configure** permissions for a video camera to perform a smart search (see Configuring user permissions).



7.10.1.1.3 Video suitability for Forensic Search of recorded video (requirements)

For Forensic Search of recorded video to be possible, video must meet the same requirements as those applied to video for detection tools (see Video requirements for scene analytics detection).

In addition, the minimum and maximum detectable object speeds in video are related to the camera's frame rate.

1. The maximum detectable speed depends on the size of the object. The following table shows the relationship between the maximum detectable speed and the frame rate for typical objects (people and cars):

Frame rate	Maximum detectable speed for people	Maximum detectable speed for cars
6 fps	5 km/hr	40 km/hr
12 fps	10 km/hr	85 km/hr
25 fps	20 km/hr	170 km/hr

   So if it is necessary, for example, to detect people moving at speeds of up to 10 km/hr, it is sufficient to record at 12 fps.
2. The minimum object speed should be such that the object moves at a rate of at least 1 pixel per frame.

7.10.1.2 Setting up privacy masking

7.10.1.2.1 Masking faces

You can mask recognized faces of a designated users' group (role).

The face(s) will be masked:

- during Live or Video Footage viewing,
- during Video Footage search.

> **Attention!**
>
> Privacy masks are displayed in the standalone Client software only. You cannot use masks with both web and mobile Clients.

To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Create and configure Face Detection Tools for cameras where face masking is necessary (see Functions of face detection tools).
2. Set **No** for the **Show Faces** parameter in the Role Settings panel (see Creating and configuring roles).

As a result, faces will be masked on all designated cameras' videos for all users belonging to this role.

7.10.1.2.2 Setting up privacy masking in Video Footage

You can mask any objects from Video Footage viewing by any particular user.

The objects will be masked:

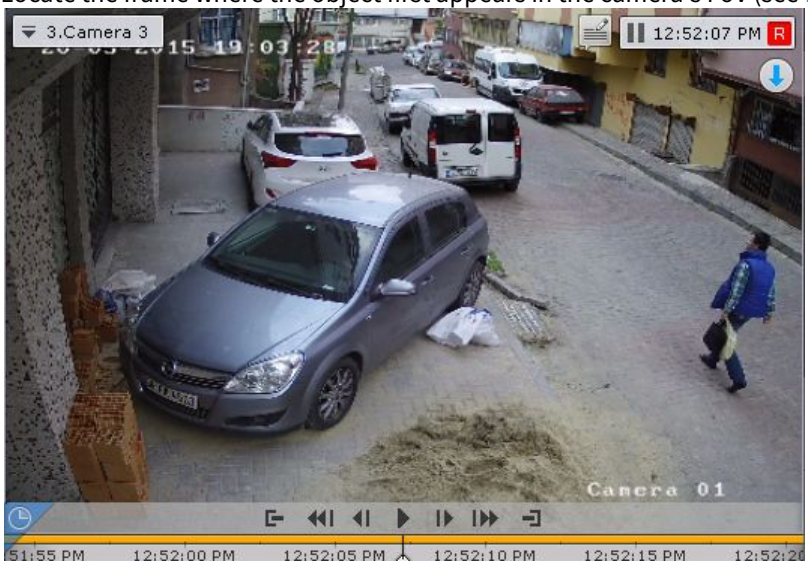
- during Video Footage viewing,
- during Video Footage search,
- on exported videos.

> **Attention!**
>
> Privacy masks are displayed in the standalone Client software only. You cannot use masks with both web and mobile Clients.

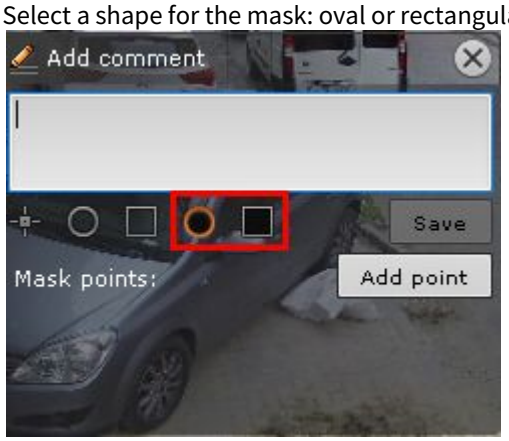
To do this, set **No** for the **Show Recorded Videos Unmasked** option in Role Settings (see Creating and configuring roles). The objects will be masked for all users belonging to this role.

To mask an object from Video Footage viewing, do the following:

1. Proceed to Archive Mode and find the object to be masked (see Switching to Archive Mode).
2. Locate the frame where the object first appears in the camera's FoV (see Navigating in the Archive).

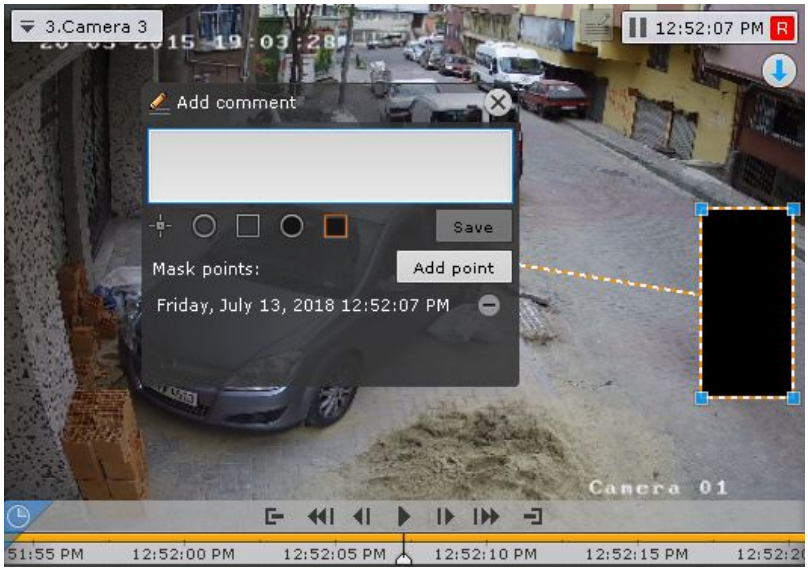


3. Click the button.
4. Select a shape for the mask: oval or rectangular.

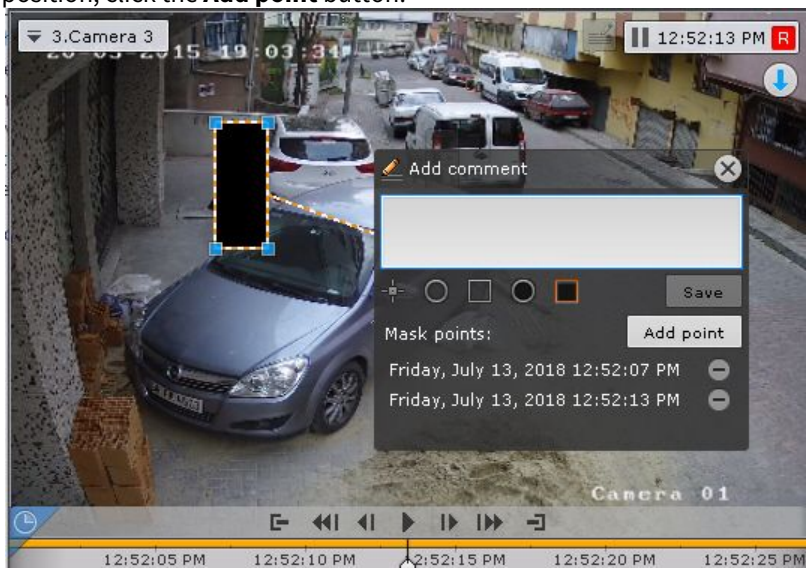


5. Apply the mask over the object.

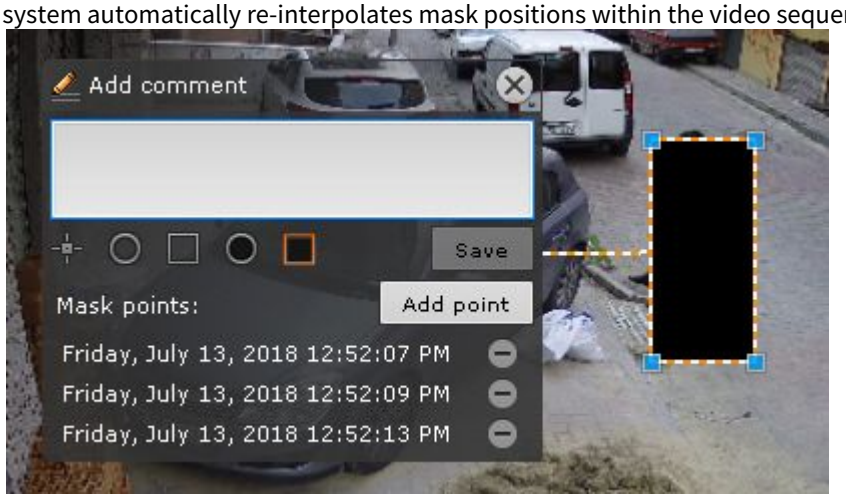
> **Note**
>
> The procedure of setting up a mask is similar to adding a comment (see Adding a comment)



6. Locate the last frame before the object disappears from the camera's FoV and place the mask over it. To save mask position, click the **Add point** button.



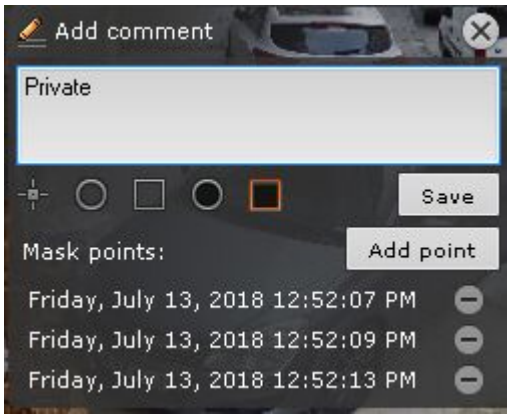
7. The system automatically interpolates the mask position on intermediate frames, assuming the object's motion is uniform and rectilinear.
8. Check the video. If necessary, you can specify additional mask positions on intermediate frames for better masking. The system automatically re-interpolates mask positions within the video sequence.



> **Note**
>
> To remove a mask position, click the button.

9. After setting all necessary mask positions, enter your text notes and click **Save**.

> **Attention!**
>
> After the mask is saved, you can not delete it. Only the users having roles where **View masked video in archive** parameter is set to **Yes** may bypass the masking (see Creating and configuring roles).



The object is now hidden. When viewing the Video Footage, users without appropriate access rights will see the object masked.

7.10.1.3 Analyzing video from external systems (Offline Analytics)

You can run *Axxon Nex*t analytics on any video file from either external or internal storage.

To do this, you need to import the video file and index it.

After that, you will have the following options available:

1. Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest).
2. Face search.
3. LPR search.
4. Searching comments.

> **Note**
>
> You can search only by text comments entered after the video is imported.

5. Compressed playback of archives (TimeCompressor).
6. Search by events (only from Abandoned Object detection).

Select a mirror archive (see Selecting an Archive) to run video analytics on and **Offline analytics** for metadata source (see Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest).

7.10.1.3.1 Importing video to Axxon Next

To import external video data, do as follows:

1. Create an archive. It must be equal to or larger than the total size of all files in it (see Creating archives).
2. Run IP Device Discovery Wizard (see Adding and removing IP devices):
   a. In the form for manually adding an IP device, select **AxxonSoft** in the **Vendor** drop-down list (**1**).

   b. Select **ExternalArchive** from the models list (**2**).
   c. Select the archive file to which video recordings will be added (**3**).
   d. Click the button

> **Attention!**
>
> When you add a camera:
> 1) continuous replication from the on-board storage to the selected archive file (see Configuring data replication);
> 2) the **Scene Analytics** object will be created (see Creating Detection Tools) and metadata enabled (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics).

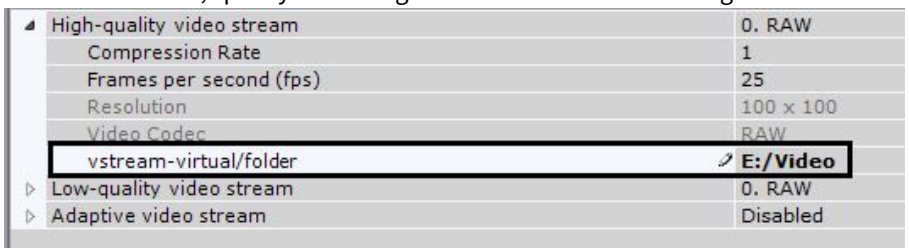
3. Configure **Object Tracking** (see Setting General Parameters). If you want to find persons and car numbers in video footage, then create and configure the appropriate detection tools (see Configuring License plate recognition (VT), Configuring Face detection).

> **Attention!**
>
> Do not remove the Object Tracker from your system. Otherwise you cannot import videos into your system.

4. If necessary, change the mode of data replication (see Configuring data replication). If you select **On Demand** mode you can start the analysis of the video image manually (see Indexing video from external sources).

> **Attention!**
>
> Replication is performed only to the end of the archive. It is not possible to overwrite existing data in the archive (see Configuring data replication).
> If you ignore this rule, the videos will not be indexed.
>
> It's preferable to import all the videos from a folder at once, otherwise you have to manually remove metadata and records from the Archive before the next replication (see Indexing video from external sources).

5. In the **Folder** field, specify the storage location of the video footage that will be used as External Archive.



> **Attention!**
>
> The following compression algorithms are supported: MJPEG, MPEG-2, MPEG-4, MxPEG, H.264, H.265, Hik264 (x86 only) as well as uncompressed ('raw") video.
> A "raw" format is a stream of consecutive frames without time stamps.

6. Imported folders with video footage or video files must be ISO 8601 timestamped: YYYYMMDD**T**HHMMSS.
   a. If the timestamp is in the folder name, all the videos starting from the specified date and time will be imported without exception. The video recordings are ordered according to the file name as follows:

> **Note**
>
> For example, if the **20160719T100000_camera1** folder contains 3 files (1.avi, 2.avi, 3.avi), they will come into the archive as follows:
> 1.avi: [19 July 2016, 10:00:00; 19 July 2016, 10:00:00 + the duration of 1.avi].
> 2.avi: [19 July 2016, 10:00:00 + the duration of 1.avi; 19 July 2016, 10:00:00 + the duration of 1.avi and 2.avi].
> 3.avi: [19 July 2016, 10:00:00 + the duration of 1.avi and 2.avi; 19 July 2016, 10:00:00 + the duration of 1.avi and 2.avi and 3.avi].

b. If the folder name does not have the timestamp, all the video files will be imported in accordance with their timestamps. If the file name is incorrect, the starting point of the recording on the timeline will correspond to the modification date of the file.

> **Attention!**
>
> *Axxon Next* operation may be incorrect if video recordings in the folder overlap. No error messages are displayed in this case.
> The date in the folder name or file name (or their creation dates) may not precede the metadata storage period as defined in the system (see Configuring storage of the system log and metadata).

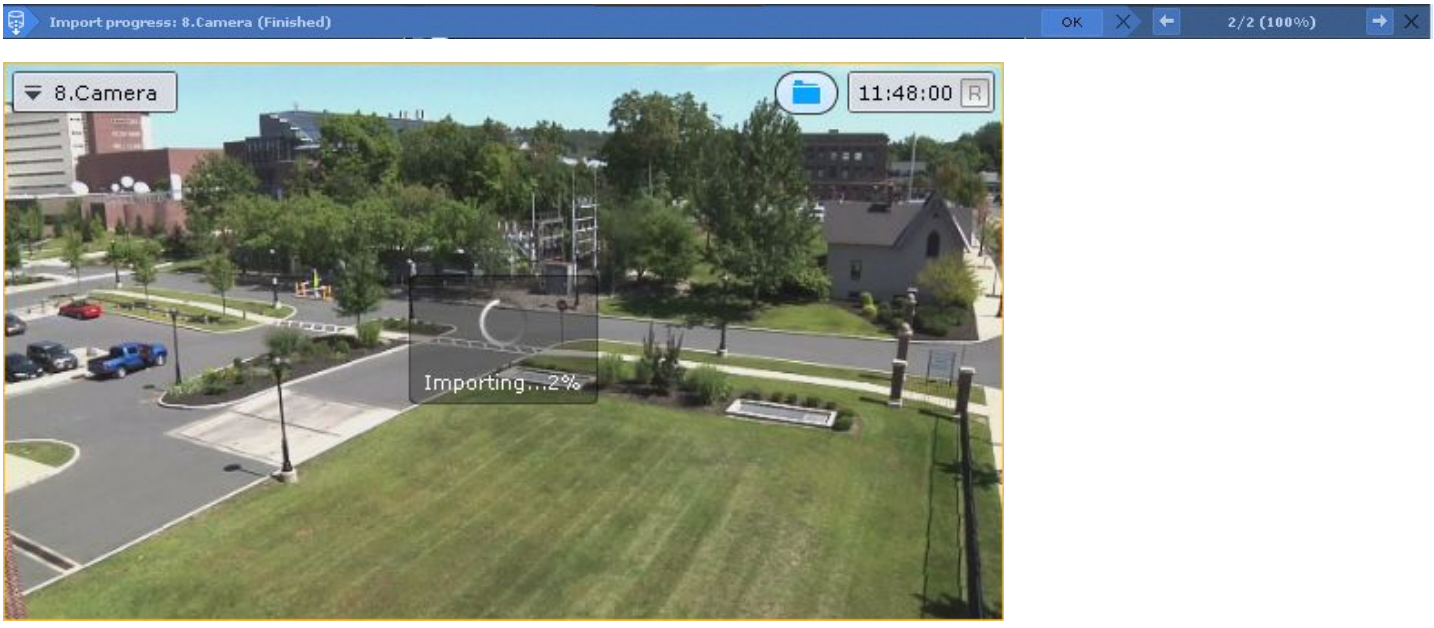
If you add a **Z** character to the end of the timestamp, the time zones for the videos will be GMT +0, otherwise – the time zone of the Server.
For example, 20150701T165130Z.avi. In the Archive mode, this video recording will fit into the timeline from 1 July 2015, 16:51:30 GMT +0 to July 1, 2015, 16:51:30 + recording time GMT +0.

7. Click the **Apply** button.

7.10.1.3.2 Indexing video from external sources

By default, indexing starts automatically after specifying video files (see Importing video to Axxon Next).

This may take a while and increase the CPU usage. Similar to the export process, the status of the indexing process is displayed at the top of the screen (see Viewing export progress) and in the viewing tile.



> **Attention!**
>
> You should not view the replicated archive during indexing.
> Also, do not run multiple simultaneous indexing procedures.

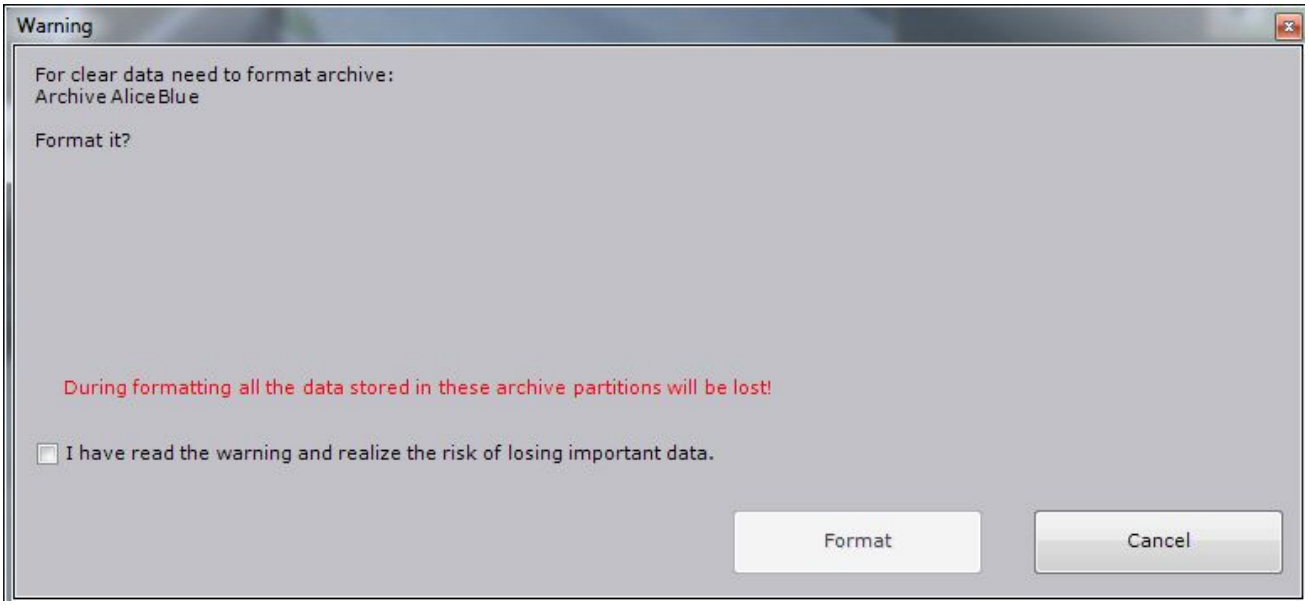
If you set the **On demand** replication period (see Configuring data replication), then to start the indexing procedure select **Start import process** (**1**) from the context menu of the viewing tile.

If you want to index the video from another folder, click **Import folder** (**2**), or click in the viewing tile.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you change the folder, all files in Mirror Archive and metadata will be lost.

> **Attention!**
>
> You can select only the folder specified in the settings and its sub-folders

To remove metadata and video from an archive, select **Clear offline analytics data** (**3**) and confirm file formatting.

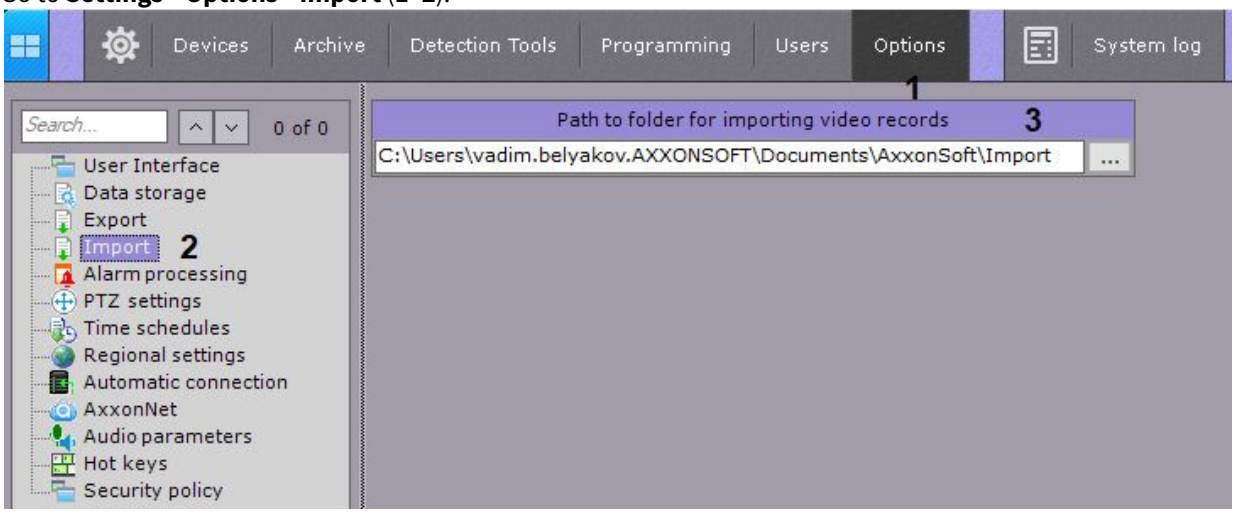


7.10.1.3.3 How to set a folder to import videos from

If you need videos from a different folder on Server to be indexed in addition to already processed footage, you can select only the folder specified in the settings, and its sub-folders (see Indexing video from external sources).

To specify the folder, do the following:

1. Go to **Settings**->**Options**->**Import** (**1–2**).



2. Specify the path to the folder (**3**).
3. Click the **Apply** button.

7.10.1.4 Configuring hardware video decoding for display on the Client

In Axxon Next, there are two ways for hardware accelerated video decoding:

1. Using Intel Quick Sync Video (see Hardware-based decoding with Intel Quick Sync Video).
2. Using the NVDEC chip on NVIDIA graphics cards (see Hardware-based decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips).

In addition, decoding with both Intel QSV and NVDEC is possible (see Parallel decoding with both Intel's Quick Sync Video and NVIDIA's NVDEC).

7.10.1.4.1 Hardware-based decoding with Intel Quick Sync Video

Intel Quick Sync Video (QSV) is a technology available on some Intel processors that provides hardware acceleration for video encoding and decoding. QSV provides faster and more energy efficient processing of video content.

Attention!

Axxon Next applies Intel QSV for decoding:

1. Video formats: H.264, H.265 and H.265+.
2. Live mode, Archive mode (forward playback only) and TimeCompressor mode.

Attention!

If the Client shares the same PC with the Server, which applies a detection tool to a video stream, Intel Quick Sync Video will not be used for displaying this stream.

Note

Maximum pixel resolution depends on your particular version of the Intel Quick Sync. For details, refer to https://www.intel.com/content/www/us/en/homepage.html.

To use Intel Quick Sync Video, make sure your system meets the following requirements:

1. The CPU should have an integrated graphics core with Intel Quick Sync Video support.

   Note

   You can check if the CPU supports QSV here.

   Attention!

   For H.265 and H.265+ video formats, Intel Quick Sync Video technology is supported only on Intel processors with microarchitecture: Braswell (only decoding), Cherry Trail (only decoding), Skylake, Apollo Lake, Kaby Lake, Gemini, Coffee Lake and newer microarchitecture.

2. The mainboard supports the GPU core (includes Flexible Display Interface).
3. The graphics driver supports QSV. We recommend using the latest version of the Intel HD Graphics Driver.

   Note

   You can also update the driver automatically using the Intel Driver Update Utility.

To activate the Intel QSV in *Axxon Next* you need to:

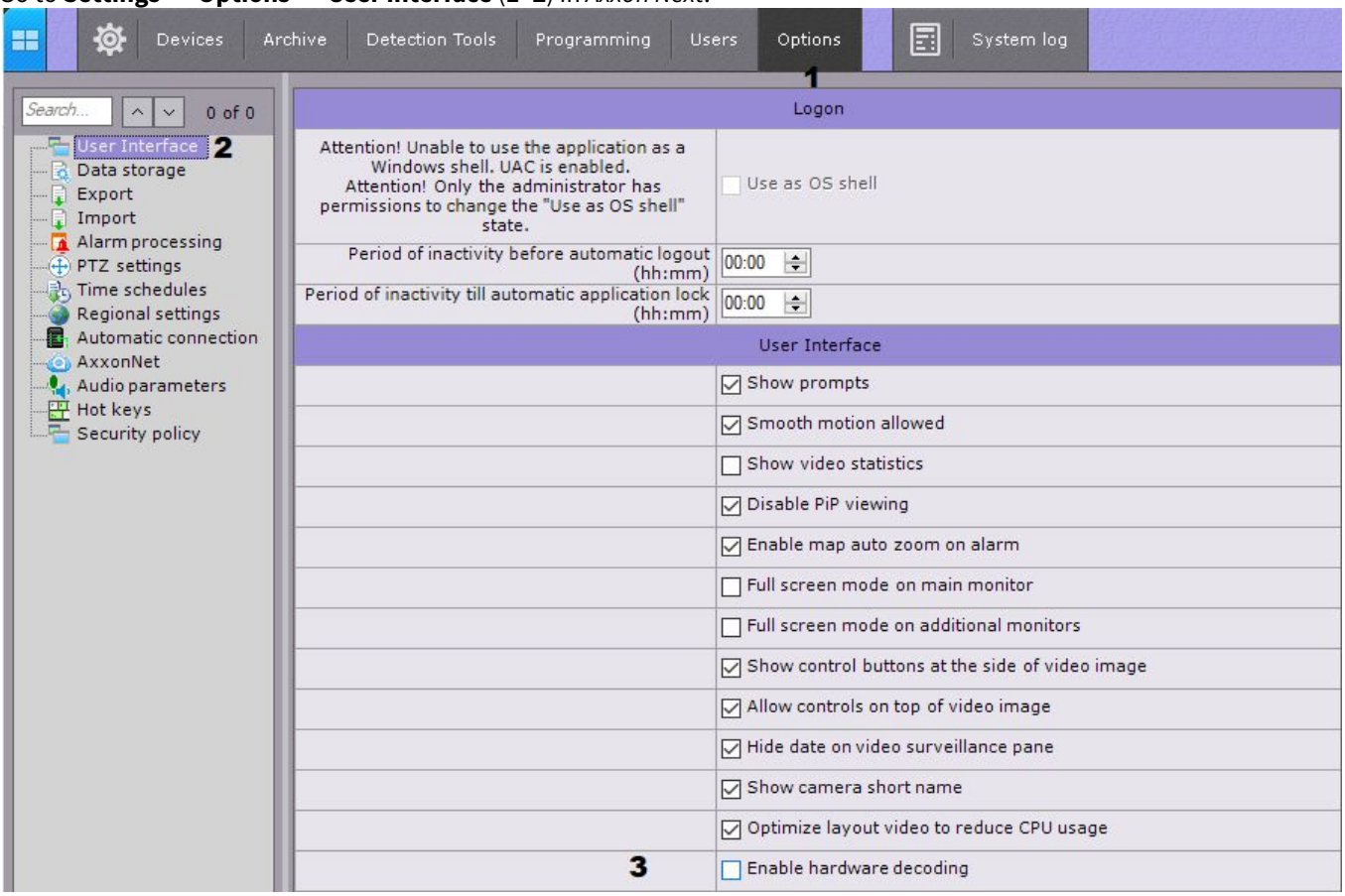
1. Enable using the integrated graphics core in the BIOS settings.

   Note

   Depending on the BIOS version, the option may be named differently (**iGPU**, **Internal Graphics**, **Integrated Graphics Adapter** - **PEG**).

2. It is not allowed to use an integrated graphics core and an external graphics card at the same time. In this case, to use Intel QSV, do as follows:
   a. Enable **Multi-Monitor** in the BIOS settings.
   b. In Windows OS connect a virtual monitor to the integrated graphics core and extend the desktop to it.

3. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**) in *Axxon Next*.



4. Select the **Enable Hardware Decoding** checkbox (**3**).
5. Click the **Apply** button.

7.10.1.4.2 Hardware-based decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips

NVIDIA GPUs contain a hardware-based decoder (a chip referred to as NVDEC) which provides fully-accelerated hardware-based video decoding for several popular codecs. With complete decoding offloaded to NVDEC, the graphics card and the CPU are free for other operations and you can increase the number of video cameras displayed on the Client.

In addition, if you have the NVDEC dedicated hardware video decoder running on Servers, you can get video streaming directly to GPU (see Detection tools implementation on processors) for analysis and detection purposes, bypassing RAM.

Attention!

In *Axxon Next VMS*, the NVDEC chips are used to decode:

1. video compressed with the following codecs: H.264, H.265 and MPEG-2.
2. In Live Video, Archive Video, and TimeCompressor.

Attention!

Before you start, please make sure to install the latest driver for your NVIDIA GPU.

Note

Please see the list of supported devices for the NVDEC chips on the NVIDIA official website.

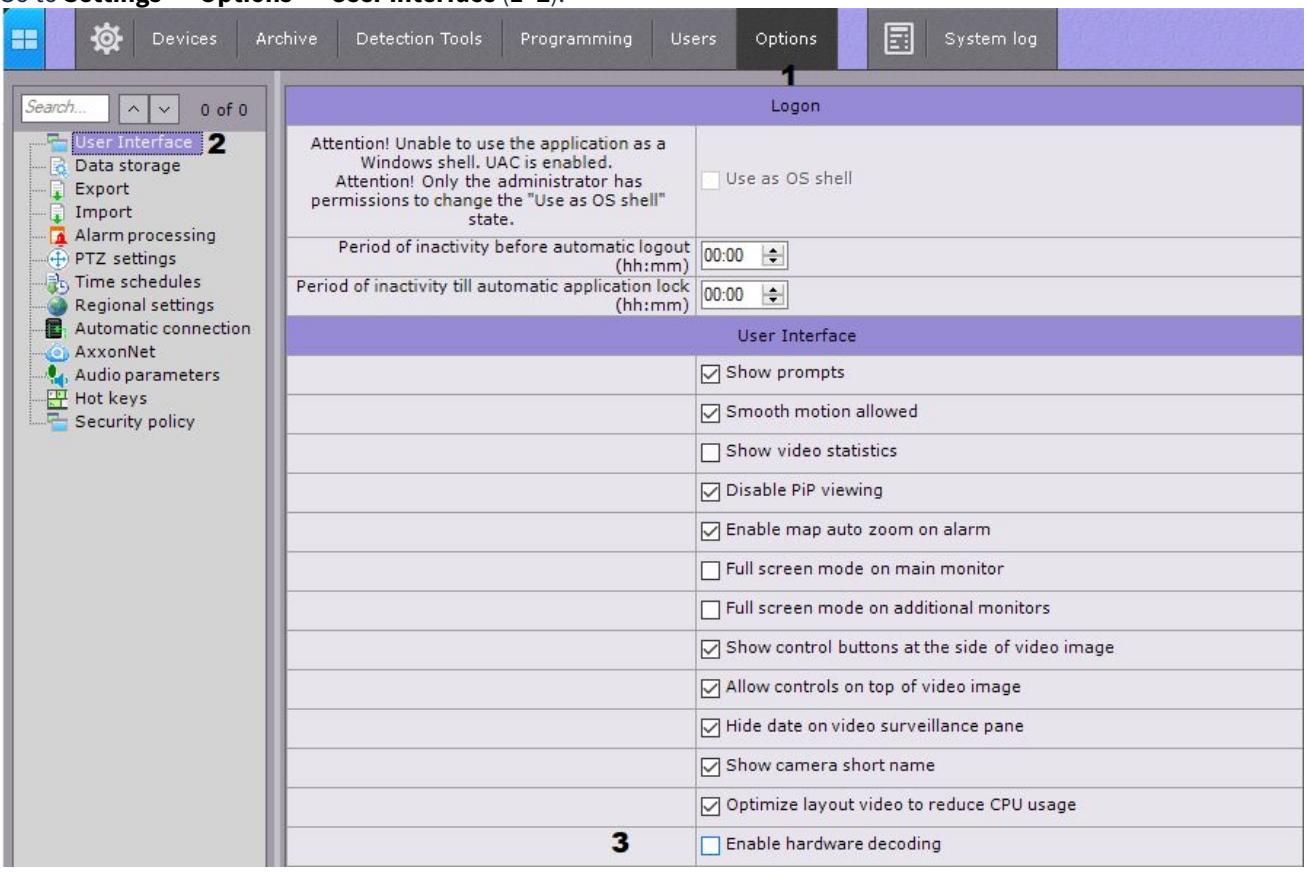
When decoding with NVDEC, the following limitations apply:

1. Maximum video resolution for H.264 - 4096x4096.

2. Maximum video resolution for H.265 - 8192x8192.
3. The maximum total frame rate per second for the H.264 codec is 648 fps.

To enable decoding with NVDEC, do as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. Select the **Enable Hardware Decoding** checkbox (**3**).
3. Click **Apply**.

7.10.1.4.3 Parallel decoding with both Intel's Quick Sync Video and NVidia's NVDEC

In Axxon Next, decoding with both Intel QSV and NVDEC is possible.

In this case, NVIDIA devices are the first to take up the decoding job. Then, if they max out, Intel QSV takes over and offloads NVIDIA's chip.

For simultaneous decoding, you have to configure it on both Intel Quick Sync Video (see Hardware-based decoding with Intel Quick Sync Video) and Nvidia's NVDEC chips (see Hardware-based decoding with NVIDIA NVDEC chips).

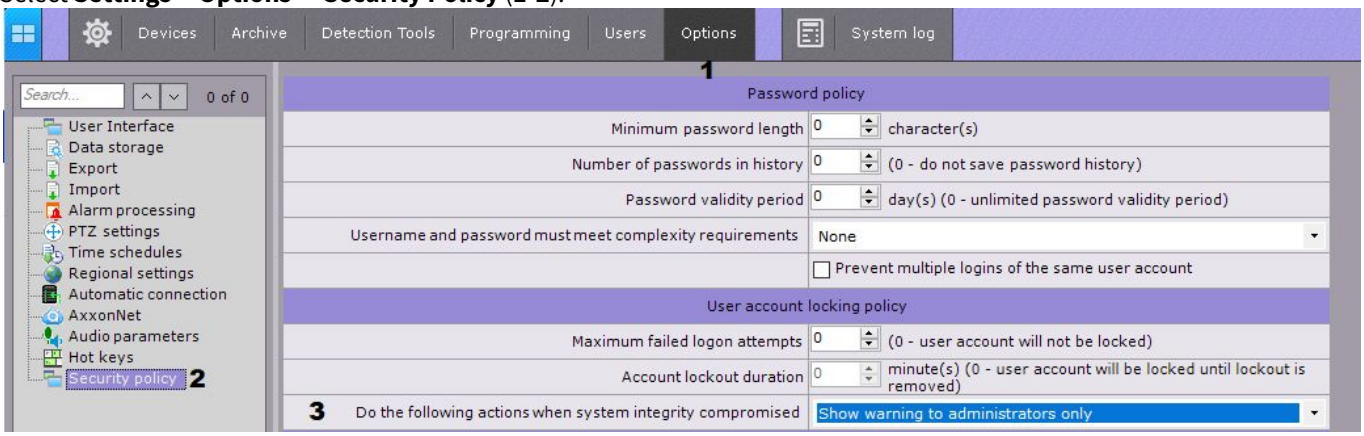
7.10.1.5 Configuring automatic response when Axxon Next VMS PC integrity check fails

When you start Servers and Clients , Axxon Next automatically checks the digital signature for all executable files (exe, dll, so).

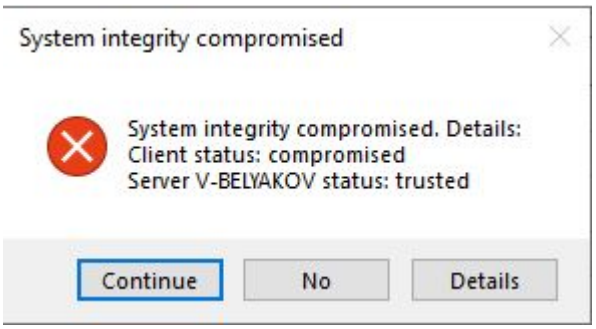
If all files are in place and match their signatures, the "System integrity check passed successfully" record appears in the system log (see The System Log).

Otherwise, you can set the system to automatically perform one of the pre-configured actions. To select a response, do as follows:

1. Select **Settings**-> **Options** -> **Security Policy** (**1-2**).



2. From the **Do the following actions when system integrity compromised** (**3**) choose the necessary response:
   a. **Show warning to administrators only** - if selected, when the Client starts , an alert will be displayed for users of the **admin**.



> **Note**
>
> To resume launching the Client, click **Continue**; to quit, click **No**. To open a text file containing the list of compromised files, click **Details**.

   b. **Show warning to all users** - in this case, all users will be alerted.
   c. **Block users without admin rights** - allows only users in the **Admin** role to access the Server. For all non-administrators who were in the system at the time of the check, the Client will shut down and a notification will be displayed.
   d. **Stop non-vital services** - shuts down all system objects that are subject to licensing (video cameras, detection tools, etc.). Upon launching the Client, each user will see a notification message.
3. Click **Apply**.

7.10.1.6 Configuring storage of the system log and metadata

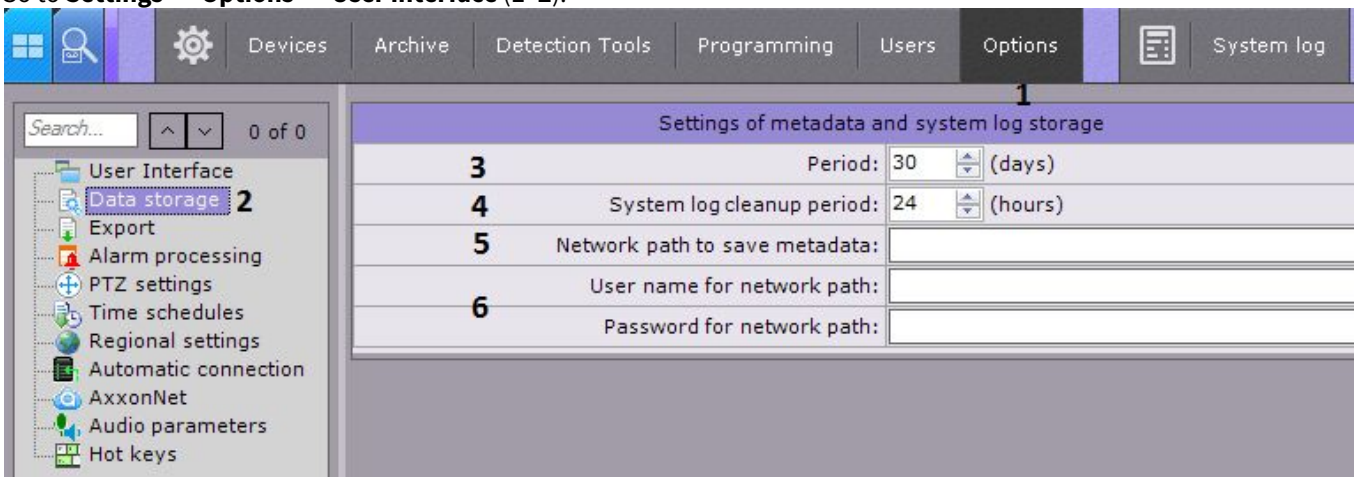
The system log is a log containing system information on events, including system error entries.

The system log is stored in a local database for each server. You can set access to the system log for a user group in the **Users** tab under **Settings** (see the section titled Configuring user permissions).

By default, metadata files are stored in Server's metadata database: C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\Metadata\vmda_db\VMDA_DB.0\vmda_schema; if necessary, you can place them on any available network storage.

To configure storage of the system log and metadata:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. In the **Period** field, enter the amount of days to store the system log in the Server's database and to store metadata in the database (**3**). The maximum time is 1000 days.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you enter **zero** value:
> - System Log events will be stored 0 days;
> - metadata retention time becomes unlimited.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you have less than 15 GB of free disk space, the metadata DB is overwritten - new data records over the oldest data records.

3. In the appropriate field, enter the amount of hours after which outdated events will be purged from the system log (**4**). Outdated events are events that have been stored in the system log for a period greater than that indicated in step 2.

> **Note**
>
> The metadata database is purged of video recordings that have been stored for more than the specified storage period:
> 1. Every 12 hours after *Axxon Next* is started.
> 2. Every time you start the MomentQuest forensic search tool (see Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest)).
>
> If the camera is not recording when DB is cleaned up, then its recordings are preserved irrespective of their timestamp.

4. The metadata database can be stored on NAS if necessary (by default, it is located locally as set during Installation). Do the following:
   a. Enter a path to the network destination for metadata database (**5**).
   b. Enter the user name and password (**6**). The user must have permissions to access the NAS.

> **Note**
>
> If you clear the path to NAS, metadata will be stored in the local database again

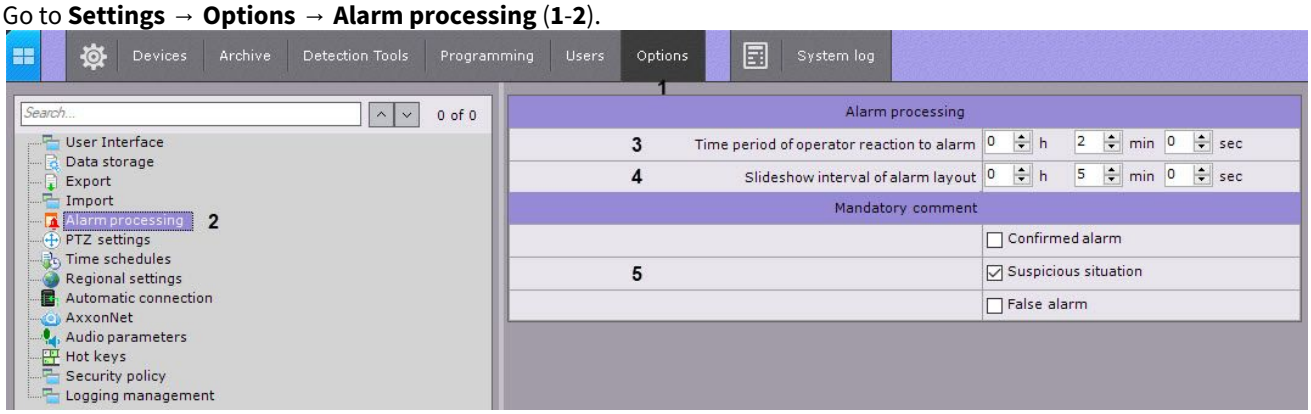
5. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of the system log is now complete.

7.10.1.7 Configuring Alarm Management Mode

To configure alarm handling in the system, you must perform the following steps:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **Alarm processing** (**1**-**2**).



2. In the **Time period of operator reaction to alarm** field, enter the time during which an operator who accepted an alarm for processing and exited alarm mode without evaluating it must return to alarm mode (**3**). The minimum value is 2 minutes.

> **Note**
>
> To take an alarm for processing, it is necessary to switch to the alarm management mode.

> **Note**
>
> After an alarm is taken into processing, the time for handling it is not limited.

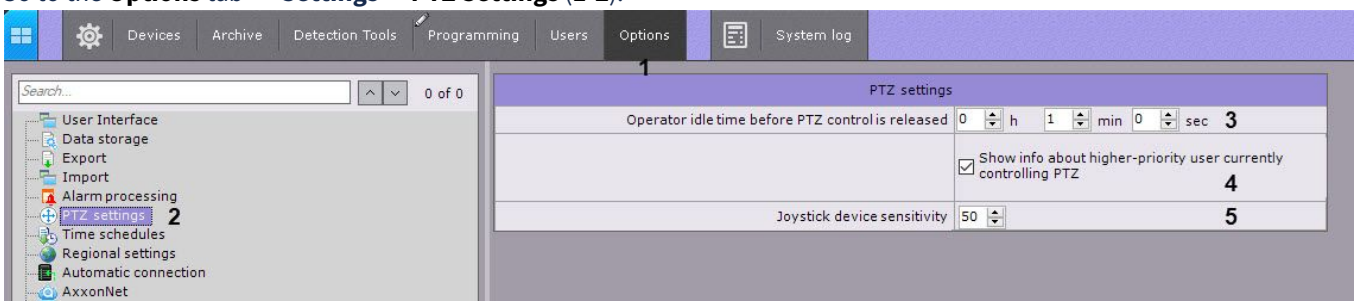
3. Set the slideshow interval of alarm layout (**4**, see Working with Special layouts). After the specified time has elapsed, the alarm will be removed from the layout and its place will be taken by the next one, which has not yet been displayed on the layout.
4. Select the alarm classifications after accepting which the operator is required to enter a comment (**5**).
5. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of alarm handling is now complete.

7.10.1.8 Configuring PTZ control

To configure PTZ control, do as follows:

1. Go to the **Options** tab → **Settings** → **PTZ Settings** (**1**-**2**).



2. Set the operator idle time in hours, minutes and seconds (**3**). When the time runs out, the PTZ control is unlocked automatically if the operator did not perform any actions.
3. By default, if the higher priority user controls the PTZ camera, then the PTZ control panel displays the name of the user. To disable the display of this information, clear the corresponding checkbox (**4**).
4. Set the **Joystick device sensitivity** (**5**, see Joystick Configuration). The sensitivity range depends on the value specified in the device model repository for a particular device.

Note

For example, the following is specified in the Axis T8311 device model repository:

```
<property id="deviceSensitivity" xsi:type="PropertyIntRangeType">
<value>
<min>5</min>
<max>100</max>
<default>50</default>
</value>
</property>
```

This means that the sensitivity for this device can be set in the range from 5 to 100.

5. Click the **Apply** button.

PTZ control is now configured.

Controlling a PTZ Camera
Creating and configuring roles

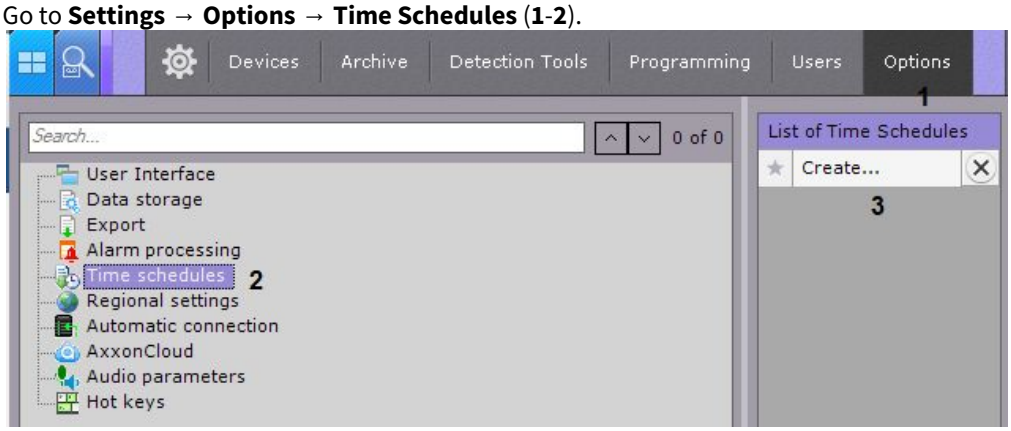
7.10.1.9 Configuring schedules

A schedule consists of all the time intervals for which video streams from video cameras will be recorded to archive.

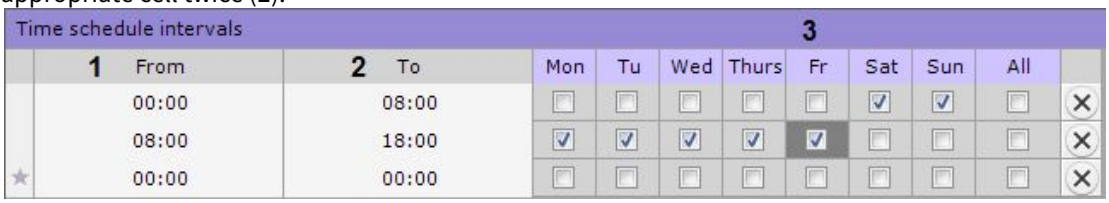
7.10.1.9.1 Creating schedules

To create a schedule, complete the following steps:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **Time Schedules** (**1**-**2**).



2. In the **List of schedules**, enter the name of the required schedule (**3**) and click .
3. Set the time intervals for the schedule:
   a. Enter the interval's start time in the **From** column with the help of the buttons accessible by left-clicking the appropriate cell twice (**1**).

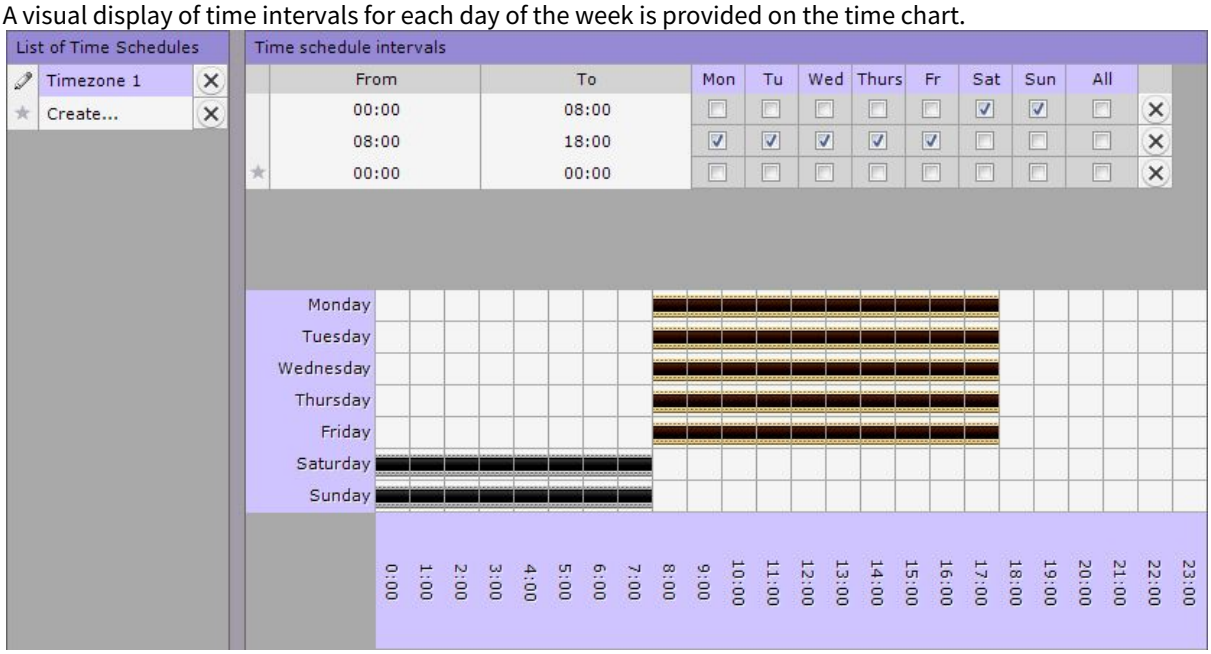


Button	Action
	Shift the interval start back by 1 hour
	Shift the interval start back by 5 minutes
	Shift the interval start ahead by 5 minutes
	Shift the interval start ahead by 1 hour

b. Enter the interval's end time in the **To** column with the help of the buttons accessible by left-clicking the appropriate cell twice (**2**).
c. Select the days of the week to be included in the interval by selecting the appropriate check boxes (**3**).
d. Create the necessary number of intervals to be included in the schedule

> **Note**
>
> To delete a time interval, click in the corresponding row

A visual display of time intervals for each day of the week is provided on the time chart.



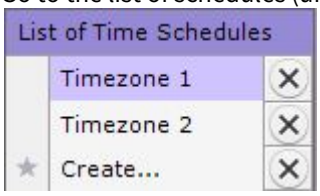
4. Click the **Apply** button.

Creation of a schedule is now complete.

> Configuring recording to an archive
> Create Macros

7.10.1.9.2 Deleting a schedule

To delete a schedule, complete the following steps:

1. Go to the list of schedules (under **Settings** → **Options** → **Time Schedules**).


2. Click beside the schedule that you want to delete.
3. Click the **Apply** button.

Deletion of a schedule is now complete.

7.10.1.10 Configuring the Server ports

On this page:

- Changing the gRPC API port
- Changing the port range of the Server
- Changing the PostgreSQL database port
  - Changing the PostgreSQL database port by removing Axxon Next completely
  - Changing the PostgreSQL database port in the configuration

After Axxon Next is installed, you can change the port range for Servers, the gRPC API port number, and the PostgreSQL database port (see Ports used by the Axxon Next Software Package).

7.10.1.10.1 Changing the gRPC API port

To change the gRPC API port number, create an NGP_NATIVE_BL_PORT system variable, and set its value to the required port number (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable).

7.10.1.10.2 Changing the port range of the Server

To change the port range for a Server, use the Network settings utility (see Network settings utility).

7.10.1.10.3 Changing the PostgreSQL database port

In Axxon Next 4.5.0, the default port of PostgreSQL database was replaced for 20110. If you upgrade your system from a previous version (see Update), the old port number 49998 is preserved.

There are two ways to change it:

1. Complete removal of Axxon Next and PostgreSQL with all data.
2. Configuration changes.

7.10.1.10.3.1 Changing the PostgreSQL database port by removing Axxon Next completely

To do this:

1. Remove Axxon Next without saving the configuration (see Removal).
2. Remove PostgreSQL.
3. Delete all folders with PostgreSQL.NGP in their names in the C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\ folder.
4. Delete the HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\PostgreSQL\ registry section.
5. Restart the computer.
6. Install Axxon Next (see Installation).

7.10.1.10.3.2 Changing the PostgreSQL database port in the configuration

If it is necessary to change the PostgreSQL database port and at the same time save the system and database configuration, then do the following:

1. Run the command line as Administrator.
2. Stop Axxon Next services:

```
powershell -Command "get-service NGP_* | stop-service"
```

3. Stop PostgreSQL service:

```
powershell -Command "get-service postgresql* | stop-service"
```

4. Open the postgresql.conf configuration file in the editor, located in the C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft\PostgreSQL.NGP\Data folder.
5. Find the line port = 49998 and change the port value to 20110.
6. Save changes to the file.
7. Open the Registry Editor and go to the HKLM\SOFTWARE\PostgreSQL\Services\postgresql-9.5 section. The version number in the section name may differ from 9.5.
8. Change the value of the **Port** parameter from 49998 to 20110.
9. On the command line, run the following commands in sequence:

> **Note**
>
> The first two commands use the default Axxon Next installation paths (see Installation). If other paths are used, then it is necessary to change the commands.

```
set CONFIG_PATH=C:\ProgramData\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext
```

```
set InstallDir=C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\EventDatabase.0\"
```

```
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<port>49998</port>', '<port>20110</port>' |
Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\"
```

```
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- EventDatabase.0/main.conf
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\EventDatabase.0\"
```

```
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<port>49998</port>', '<port>20110</port>' |
Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\"
```

```
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- EventDatabase.0/main.conf
```

10. If there is a main.conf file in the C:\ProgramData\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\Config.local\config_repo\ObjectSearcher.0 folder, and there is a <port>49998</port> parameter in this file, then run the following commands in sequence:

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\ObjectSearcher.0\"
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<port>49998</port>', '<port>20110</port>' |
Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\"
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- ObjectSearcher.0/main.conf
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\ObjectSearcher.0\"
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<port>49998</port>', '<port>20110</port>' |
Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\"
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- ObjectSearcher.0/main.conf
```

If there is no main.conf file in the folder, or if the **port** parameter is missing in the file, then skip this step.

11. If there is a main.conf file in the C:\ProgramData\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\Config.local\config_repo\RealtimeRecognizer.0 folder, and there is a <port>49998</port> parameter in this file, then run the following commands in sequence:

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\RealtimeRecognizer.0\"
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<port>49998</port>', '<port>20110</port>' |
Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\"
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- RealtimeRecognizer.0/main.conf
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\RealtimeRecognizer.0\"
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<port>49998</port>', '<port>20110</port>' |
Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\"
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- RealtimeRecognizer.0/main.conf
```

If there is no main.conf file in the folder, or if the **port** parameter is missing in the file, then skip this step.

12. If there is a main.conf file in the C:\ProgramData\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\Config.local\config_repo\VMDA2_DB.0 folder, and there is a <port>49998</port> parameter in this file, then run the following commands in sequence:

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\VMDA2_DB.0\"
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<pg_port>49998</pg_port>', '<pg_port>20110</
pg_port>' | Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf""
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\config_repo\"
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- VMDA2_DB.0/main.conf
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\VMDA2_DB.0\"
powershell -Command "(gc main.conf) -replace '<pg_port>49998</pg_port>', '<pg_port>20110</
pg_port>' | Out-File -encoding ASCII main.conf"
```

```
cd "%CONFIG_PATH%\Config.local\clone_config_repo\"
"%InstallDir%\bin\hg.exe" commit --verbose "--message=change DB port" --user "Manual
change DB" -- VMDA2_DB.0/main.conf
```

If there is no main.conf file in the folder, or if the **port** parameter is missing in the file, then skip this step.

13. Run the PostgreSQL service:

```
powershell -Command "get-service postgresql* | start-service"
```

14. Run the Axxon Next services:

```
powershell -Command "get-service NGP_* | start-service"
```

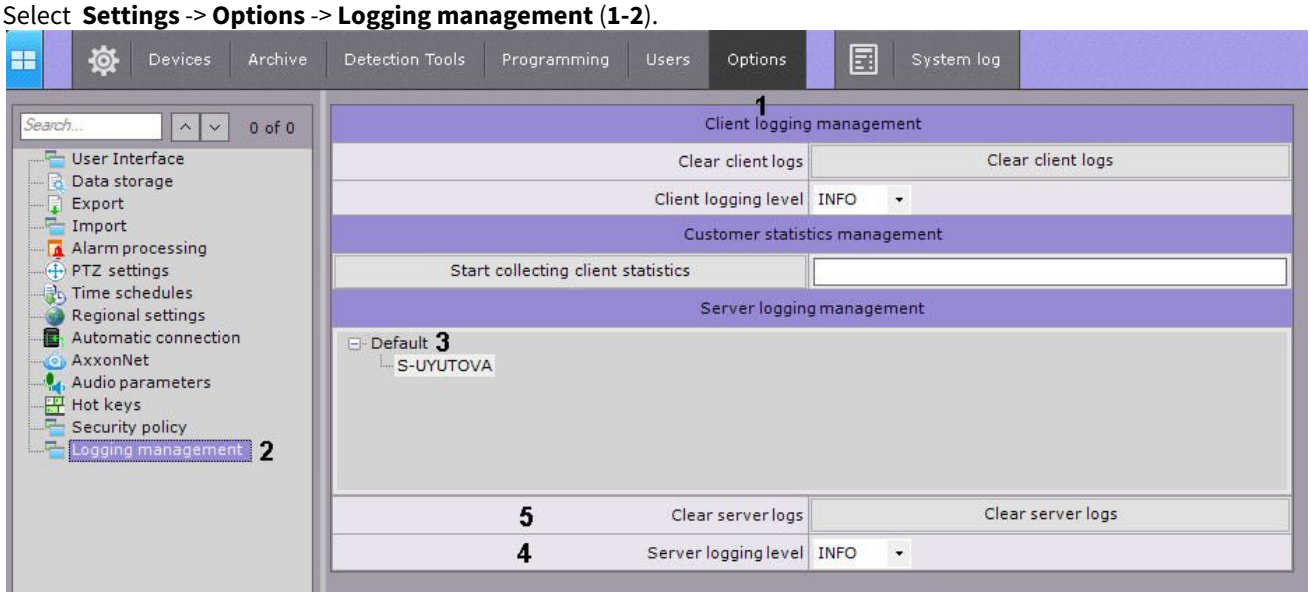
7.10.1.11 Configuring Server logging

By default, the Server logging level is set in a special utility

You can change the logging level of the Server and restart it for changes to take effect. The next time the Server is started, the logging level will correspond to the new settings in the logging management utility (see Log Management Utility).

To change the Server logging level, do as follows:

1. Select **Settings** -> **Options** -> **Logging management** (**1-2**).



2. Select the Axxon Domain Server where you want to change the logging level (**3**).
3. Select the desired logging level (**4**). Levels are described in more detail here Configuring Logging Levels.
4. Click **Apply**.

You can also delete all Server logs. Please follow the steps below:

1. Click **Clear server logs** (**5**).
2. Click **Apply**.

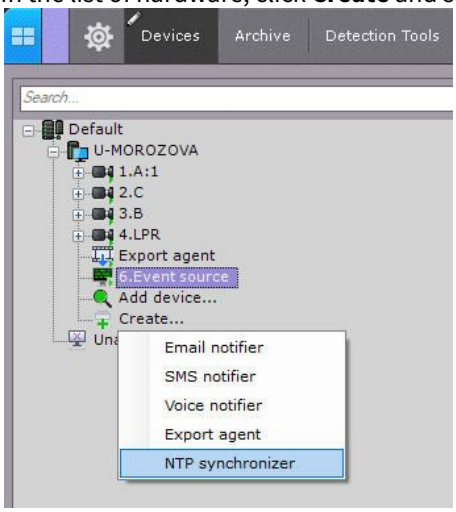
7.10.1.12 Configuring NTP synchronization

By default, the server time is synchronized with the OS time. It is possible to synchronize the server time with the NTP server. For this, the following conditions should be met:

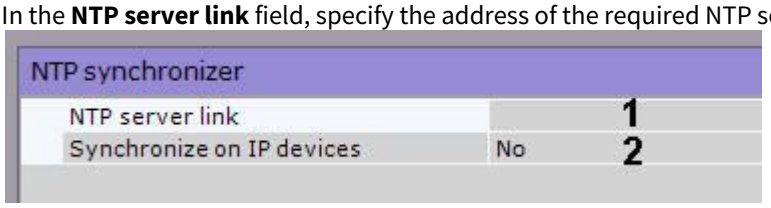
1. Axxon Next is installed on Windows OS.
2. In Windows OS, the **Set time zone automatically** option is enabled. To enable it, in Windows 10 go to **Settings > Time & Language**.

To configure NTP synchronization, do the following:

1. In the list of hardware, click **Create** and select **NTP synchronizer**.



2. In the **NTP server link** field, specify the address of the required NTP server (**1**).



3. In the **Synchronize on IP devices** drop-down list (**2**), select **Yes** to enable time synchronization for IP devices connected to the Server.

   Note

   NTP time synchronization on IP devices works only for devices that support this feature.

4. Click the **Apply** button.

NTP synchronization will be performed automatically once every 24 hours, and when the settings are changed.

7.10.2 Client settings

7.10.2.1 Configuring the user interface

7.10.2.1.1 Selecting the interface language

When working with *Axxon Next*, the user can choose the interface language.

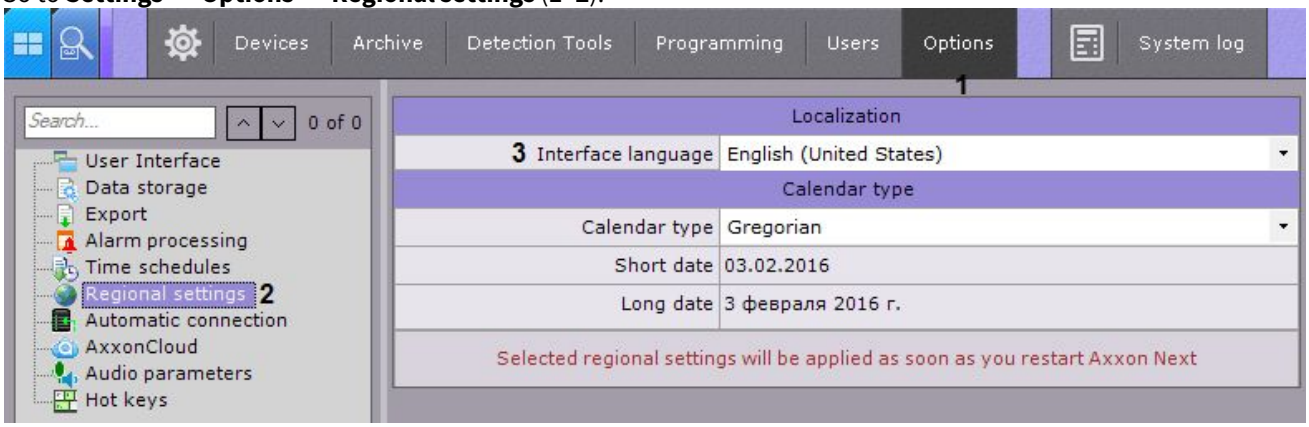
Attention!

The events are recorded in the system log in the same language as the Server's operating system language.

User apps are run in a selected language with the exception of the System Log which registers events in Server's GUI language.

To select the interface language, complete the following steps:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **Regional settings** (**1**–**2**).



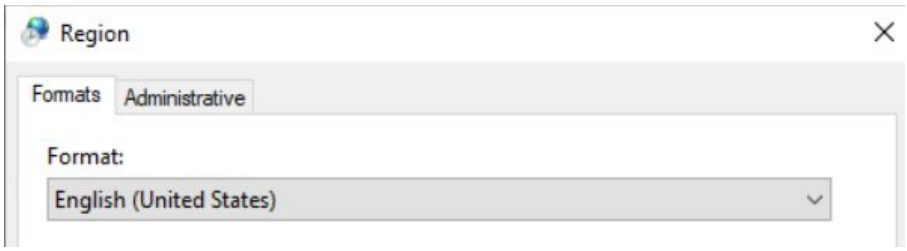
2. Select an interface language from the interface language drop-down list (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
4. Restart *Axxon Next*.

The newly selected interface language will be applied once *Axxon Next* is restarted.

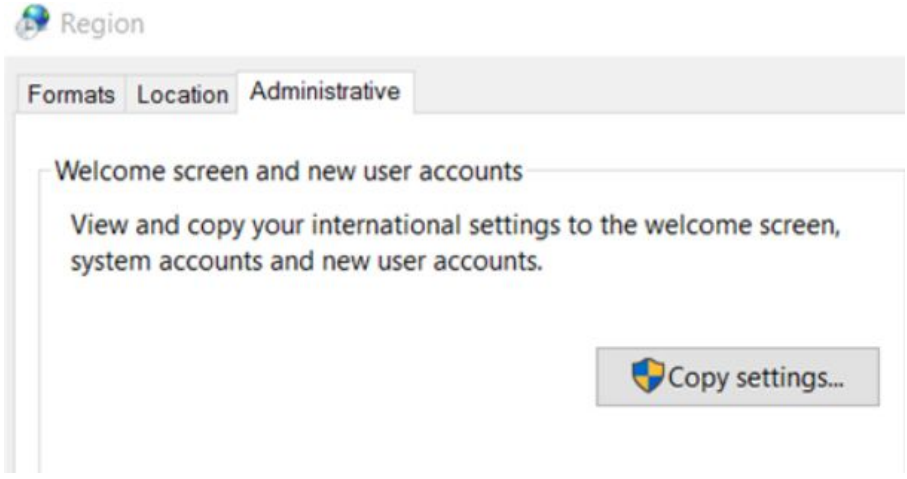
To change the events language in system log, do the following:

1. On the Server, go to **Control Panel** → **Clock and Region (Time & Language)**.

> **Note**
>
> Here follows the setup sequence for Windows 10.

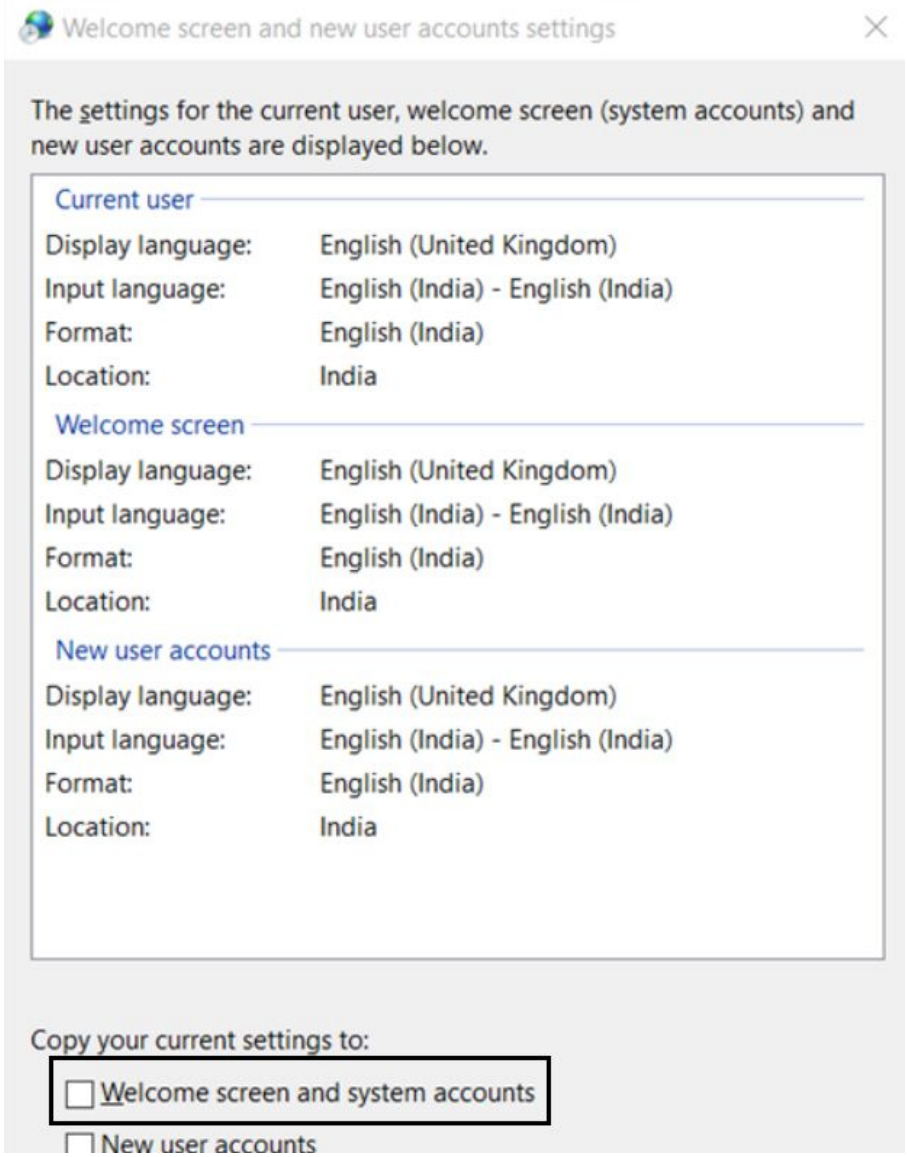


2. Select the required language from the **Format** dropdown list.
3. Go to the **Administrative** tab.



4. Click the **Copy settings** button.

5. In the **Copy your current settings to area**, select the **Welcome screen and system accounts** checkbox.



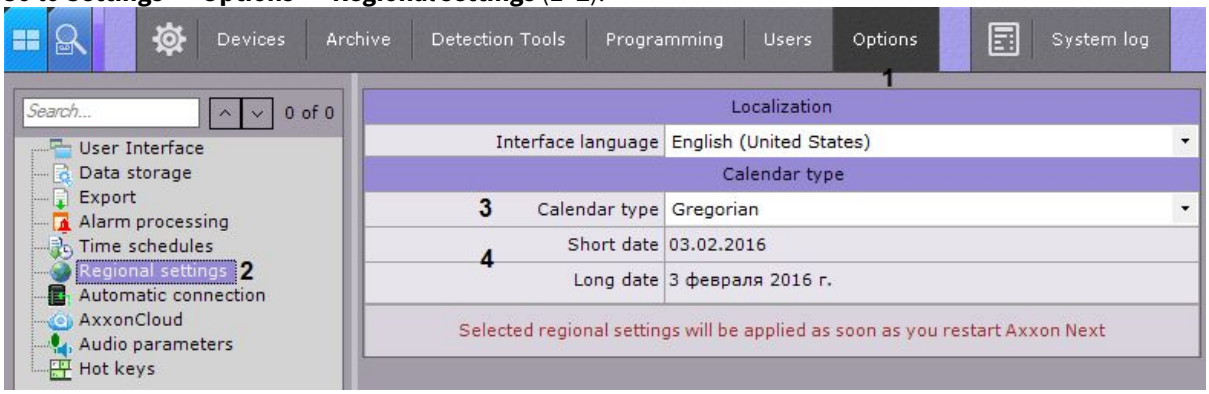
6. Click **OK** in two windows, one after another.
7. Restart the Server (see Shutting down a Server, Starting a Server).

7.10.2.1.2 Selecting the calendar type

When working with *Axxon Next*, the user can choose the type of calendar used (Gregorian or Persian).

To select the interface language, complete the following steps:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **Regional settings** (**1**–**2**).



2. Select the calendar type that is used in Axxon Next from the calendar drop-down list (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> In the *Axxon Next* VMS, time and date formats and values are defined on the OS level (**4**).

3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
4. Restart *Axxon Next*.

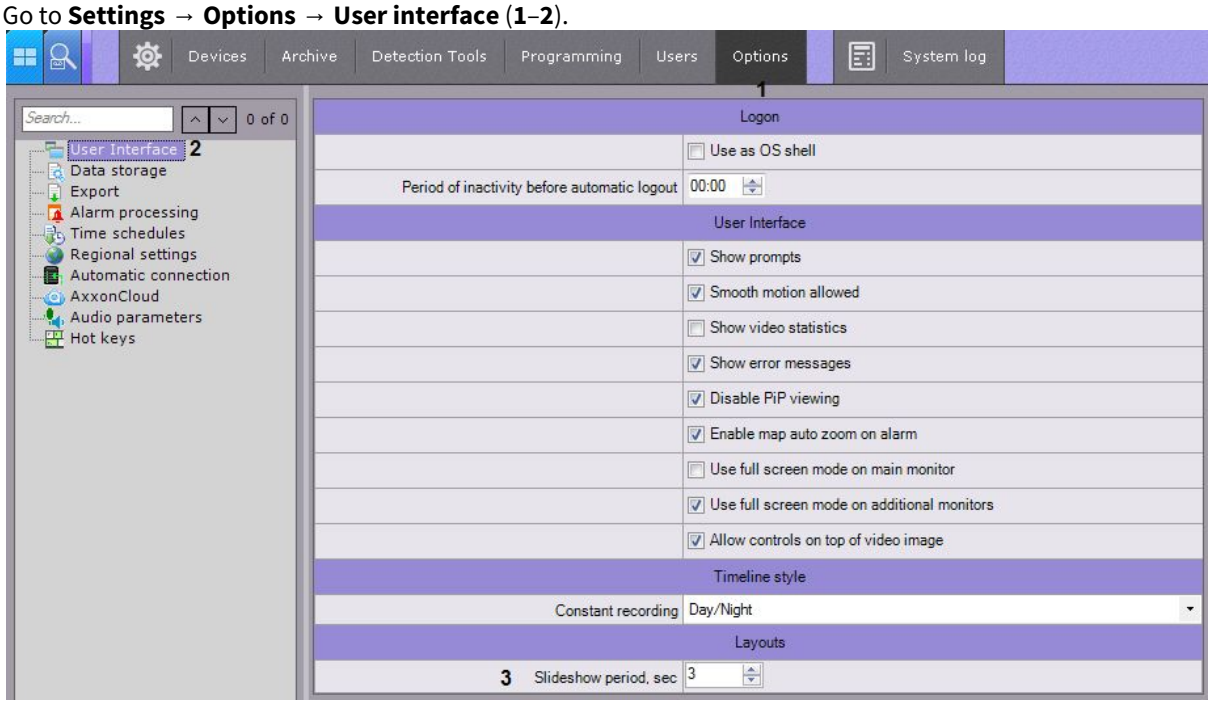
The newly selected calendar type will be applied once *Axxon Next* is restarted.

7.10.2.1.3 Configuring Slideshow parameters

Slideshow mode is a cyclical switching of layouts according to an assigned frequency (dwell-time). Slideshow is launched using the context menu of the layouts ribbon.

To configure the slideshow dwell-time, perform the following:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. Set the slideshow dwell-time, in seconds, in the corresponding field (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

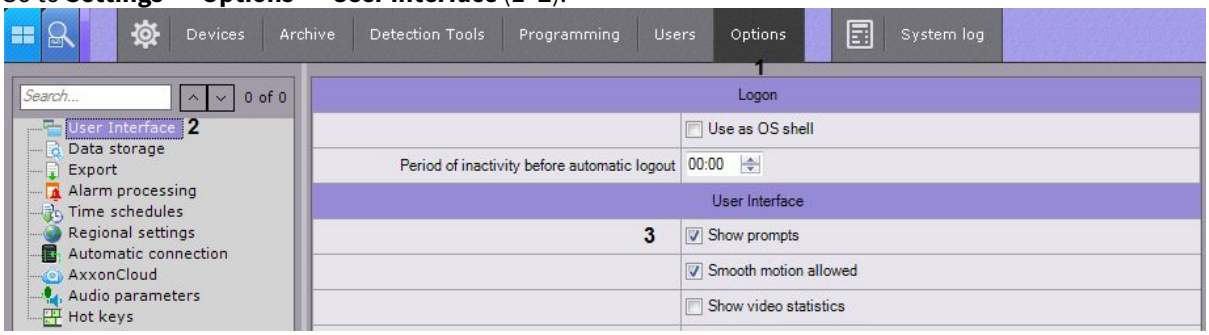
The slideshow dwell-time is now set.

> **Note**
>
> Switching layout modes is allowed only for users with **Layout configuration** permissions

7.10.2.1.4 Hiding tooltips

In Axxon Next, tool tips are displayed when the cursor is moved over a control element. Tooltips are enabled by default. To turn off tooltips, perform the following:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



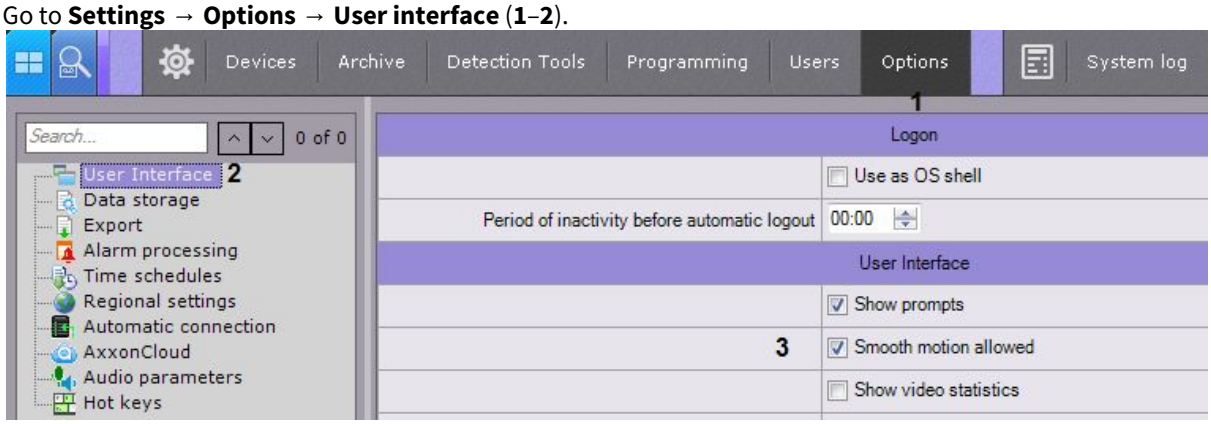
2. Clear the **Show prompts** check box (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

Tooltips are now disabled. Tooltips can be re-enabled by simply selecting the **Show prompts** check box.

7.10.2.1.5 Configuring animation

Smooth motion is needed to smoothly change the position of viewing tiles, as well as for smooth switching between tabs. Animation for viewing tiles is enabled by default. To disable this option, perform the following:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. Clear the **Smooth motion allowed** check box (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

Animation for viewing tiles will now be disabled.

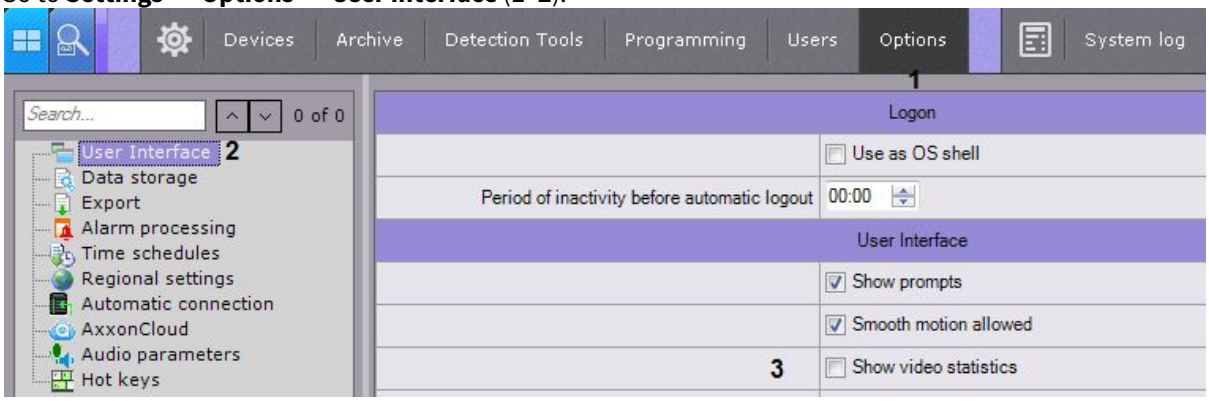
7.10.2.1.6 Configuring Display of Video Statistics

You can display the following video statistics in the viewing tile:

1. Frame rate of the displayed video stream
2. Frame rate of the video stream received from a video camera or an archive
3. Bit rate of a compressed video stream
4. Resolution of the displayed video stream

To use this option you must perform the following steps:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. Select the **Show video statistics** check box (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

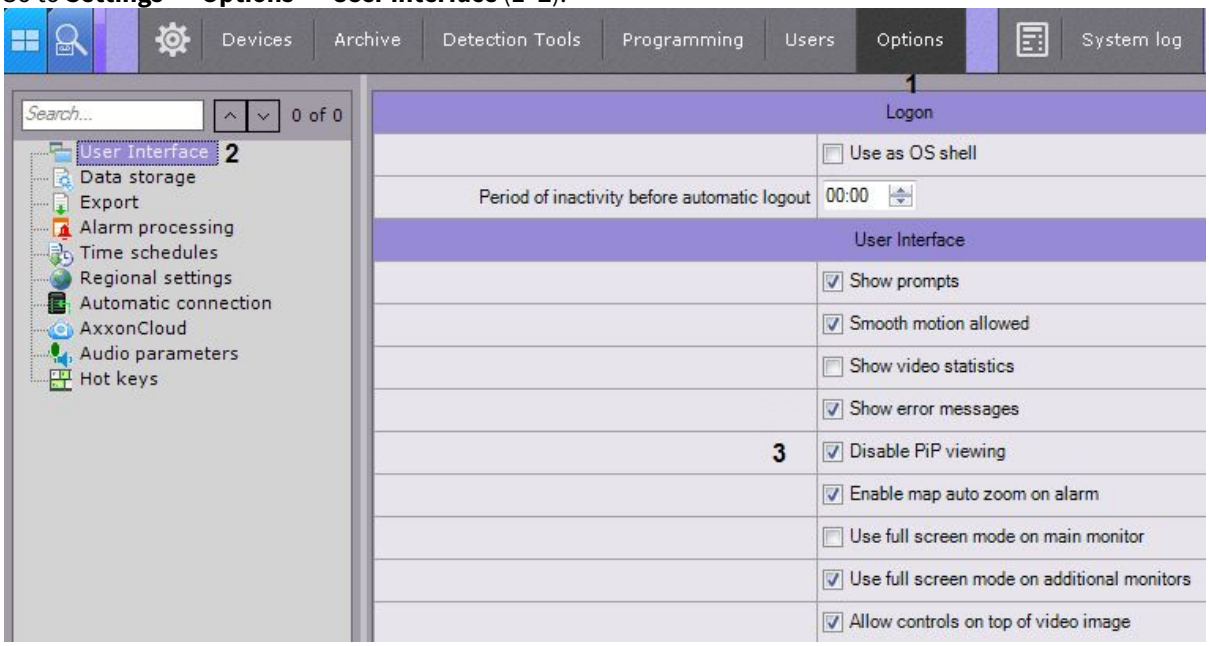
The video statistics will now be displayed in the viewing tile for all modes (Live Video, Archive, Alarm, and Archive Search).

7.10.2.1.7 Configuring previews of alarm events

You can disable previews of alarm events in the viewing tile.

To do this, follow the steps below:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



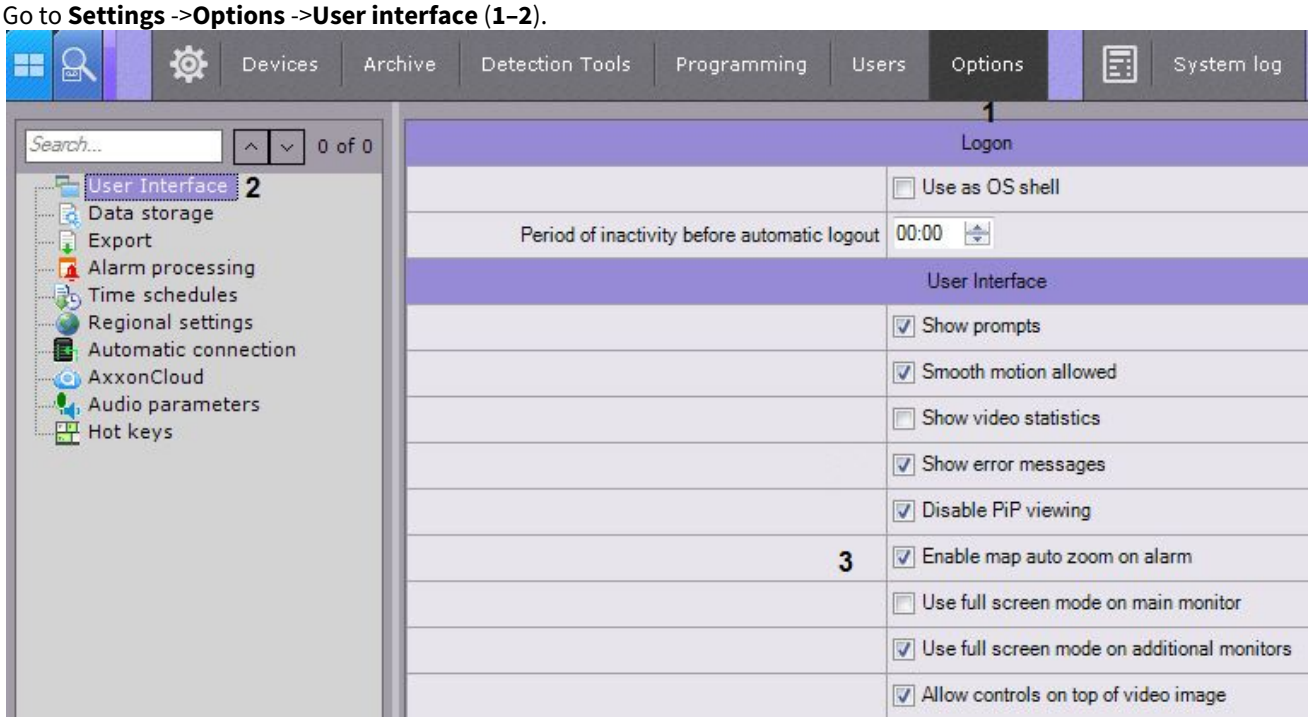
2. Select the **Disable PiP viewing** check box (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

After you complete these actions, previews of alarm events will be disabled.

7.10.2.1.8 Configuring map autozoom

When an alarm occurs, the map can be automatically resized and refocused so as to place the icon of the alarm camera at the center of the map. To enable this option:

1. Go to **Settings** ->**Options** ->**User interface** (**1**–**2**).



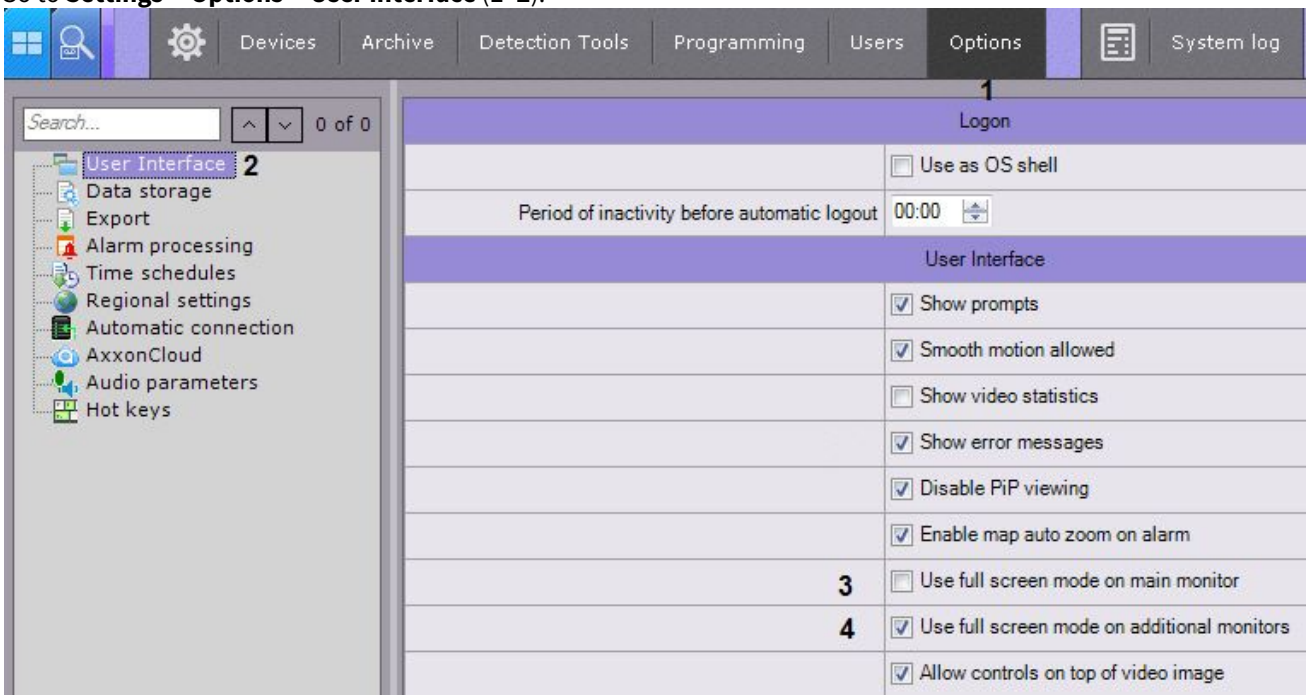
2. Select the **Enable map auto zoom on alarm** (**3**) check box.
3. Click the **Apply** button to save changes.

7.10.2.1.9 Configuring the Client screen mode (full screen or window)

By default, the Client (main monitor and all additional monitors) is displayed in full-screen mode.

It is possible to use window mode both on the main monitor and on additional monitors. Do the following:

1. Go to **Settings** ->**Options** ->**User interface** (**1–2**).



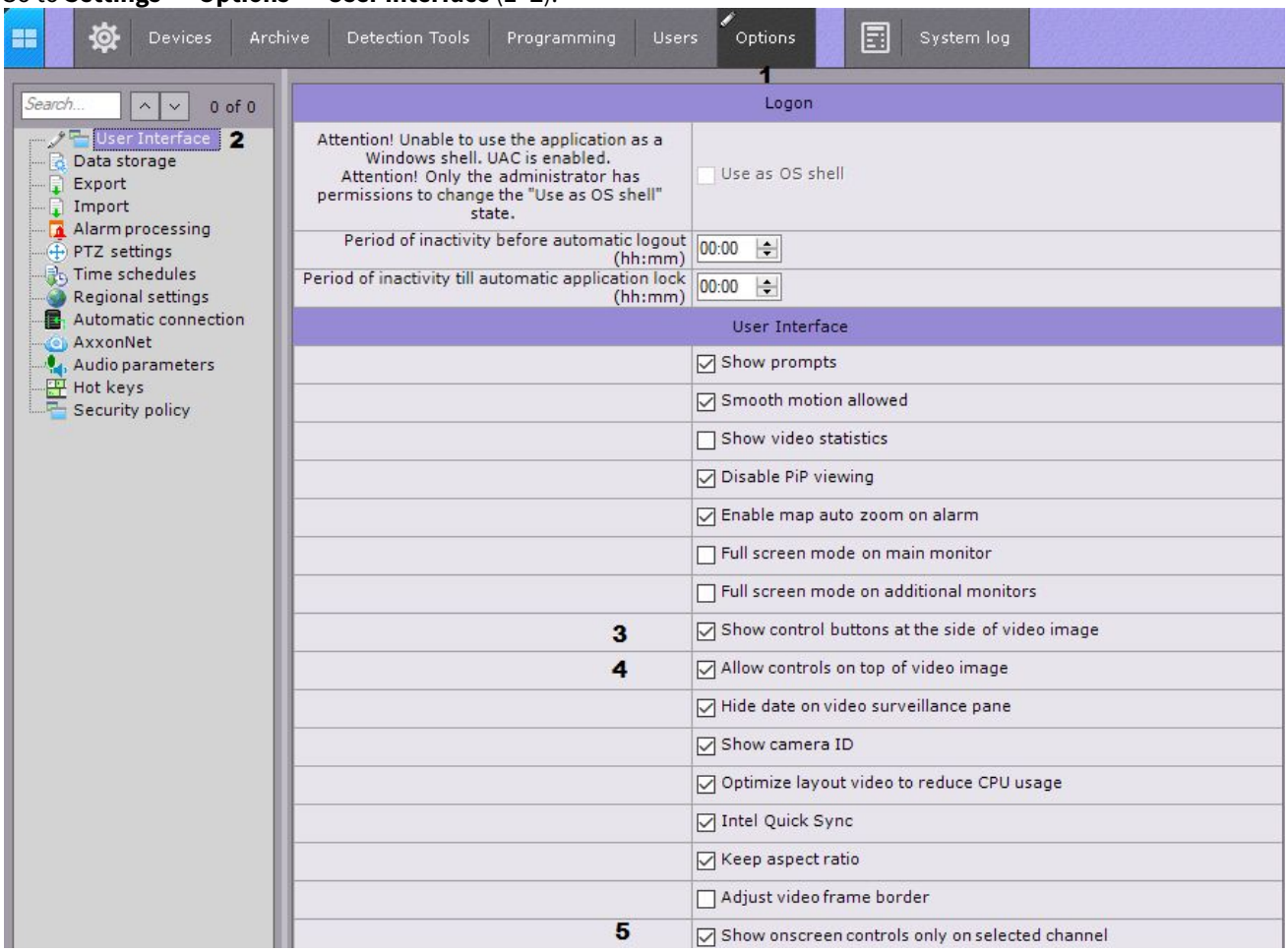
2. To use window mode on the main monitor, clear the **Use full screen on main monitor** check box (**3**).
3. To use window mode on additional monitors, clear the **Use full screen on additional monitor** check box (**4**).
4. Click the **Apply** button to save changes.

For changes to take effect, quit the Client and start it again.

7.10.2.1.10 Configuring the Appearance of the Viewing Tile

To configuring the appearance of the viewing tiles:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. By default, surveillance mode selector buttons are located outside the Camera window. If you prefer having them inside the window, uncheck the **Selector Buttons Outside** box (3).

> **Attention!**
>
> In this case, you cannot use digital zoom (in both real time and archive viewing modes) and immersive mode in the Camera window.

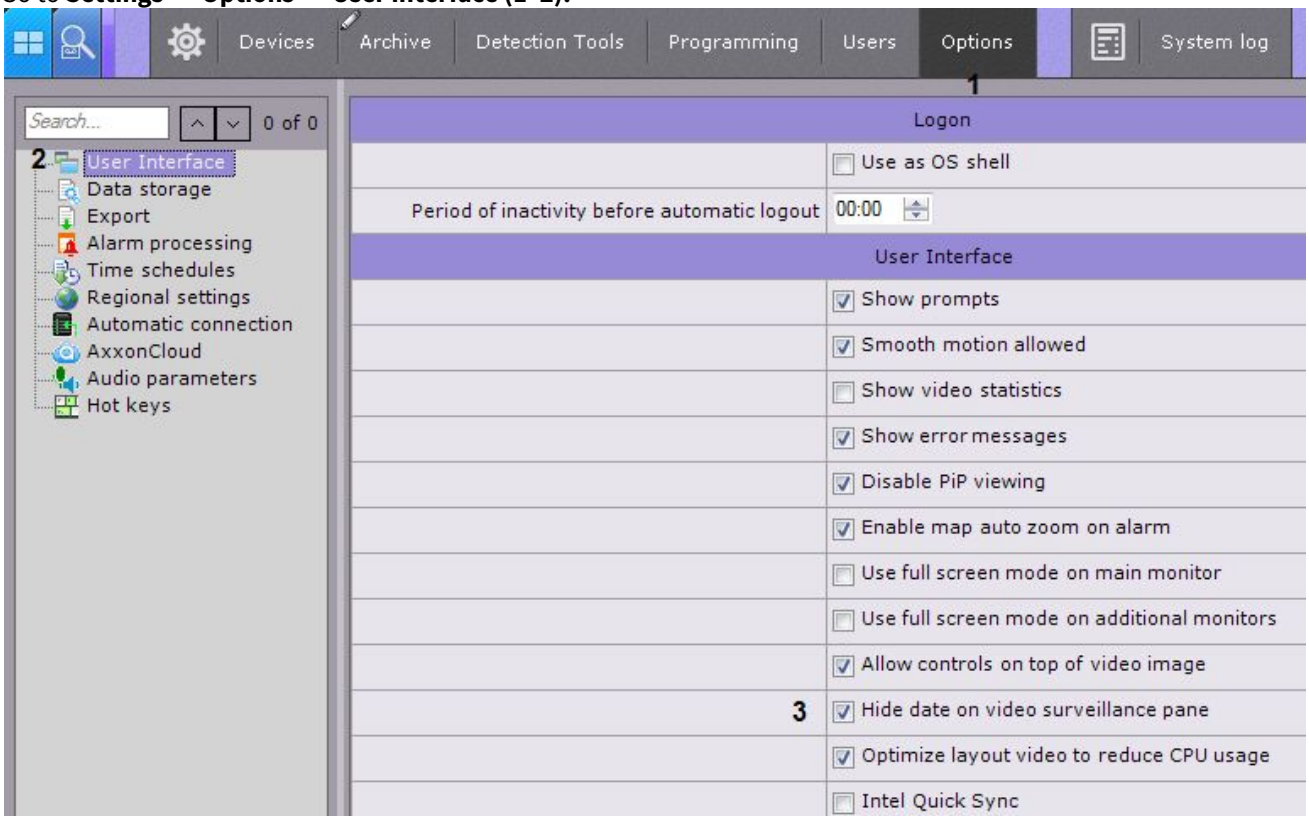
3. By default, the Viewing Tile elements (context menus, export buttons, PTZ mode select buttons, etc.) are displayed over the video. To move the controls outside the video area uncheck the **Allow controls on top of video image** checkbox (**4**).
4. If you don't need to display window elements in other windows than the active one, select the **Show onscreen controls only on selected channel** checkbox (**5**). This parameter is valid only if the **Allow controls on top of video image** checkbox is selected (**4**).
5. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
6. Reopen the Layout or create a new one.

7.10.2.1.11 Configure Time Display

By default, the time indicator (see Time Display) in the viewing tile does not display the date.

To display the date, do as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface (1–2).**



2. Uncheck the **Hide date on video surveilance pane** checkbox (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
4. Reopen the Layout or create a new one (see Layouts Management).

Also, you can hide the time indicator in the camera window. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Go to Role settings (see Creating and configuring roles).
2. In **Access to Functions** set **No** for **Unlock camera menu button**.
3. Set the camera access level - **Live**.

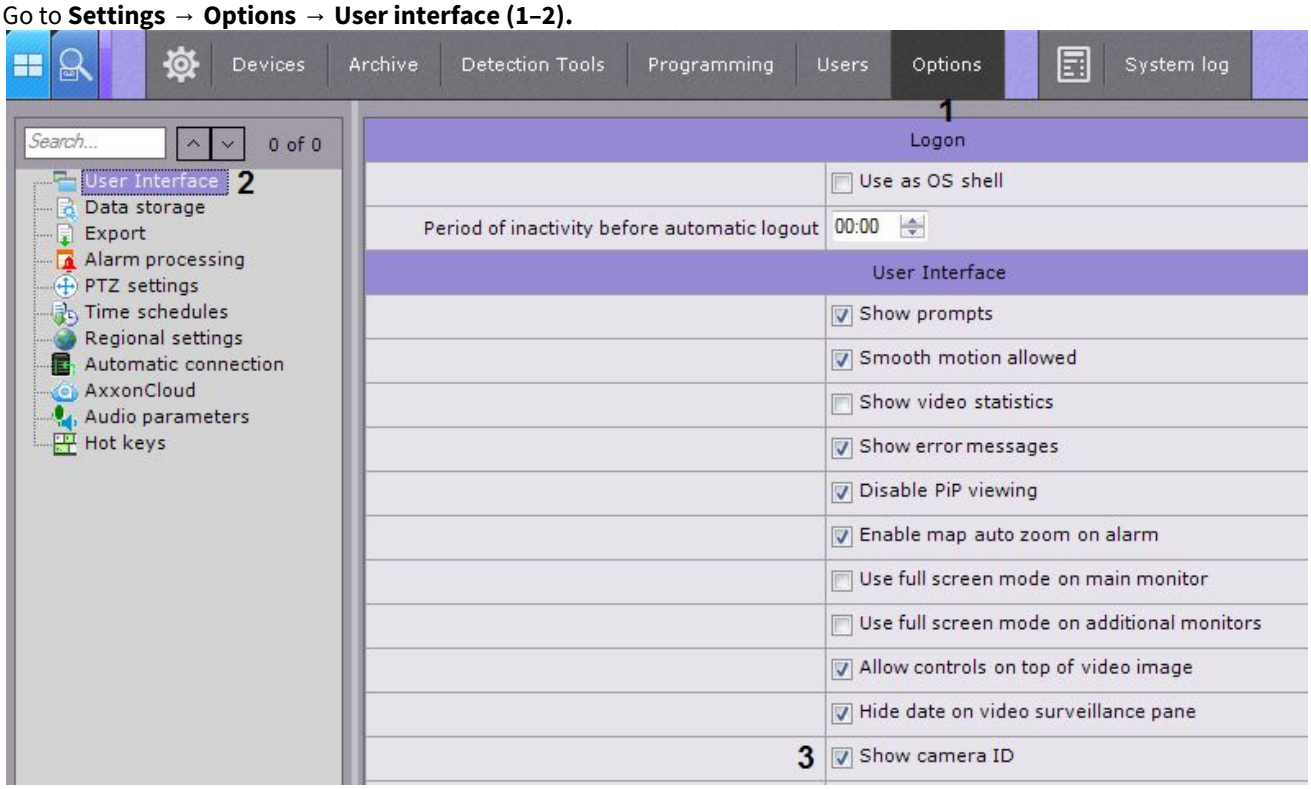
This will hide the time indicator for user with this role's permissions on all target cameras.

7.10.2.1.12 Configuring the display of the camera ID

By default, camera ID is displayed in the viewing tile.

To disable displaying the ID, do as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface (1–2).**



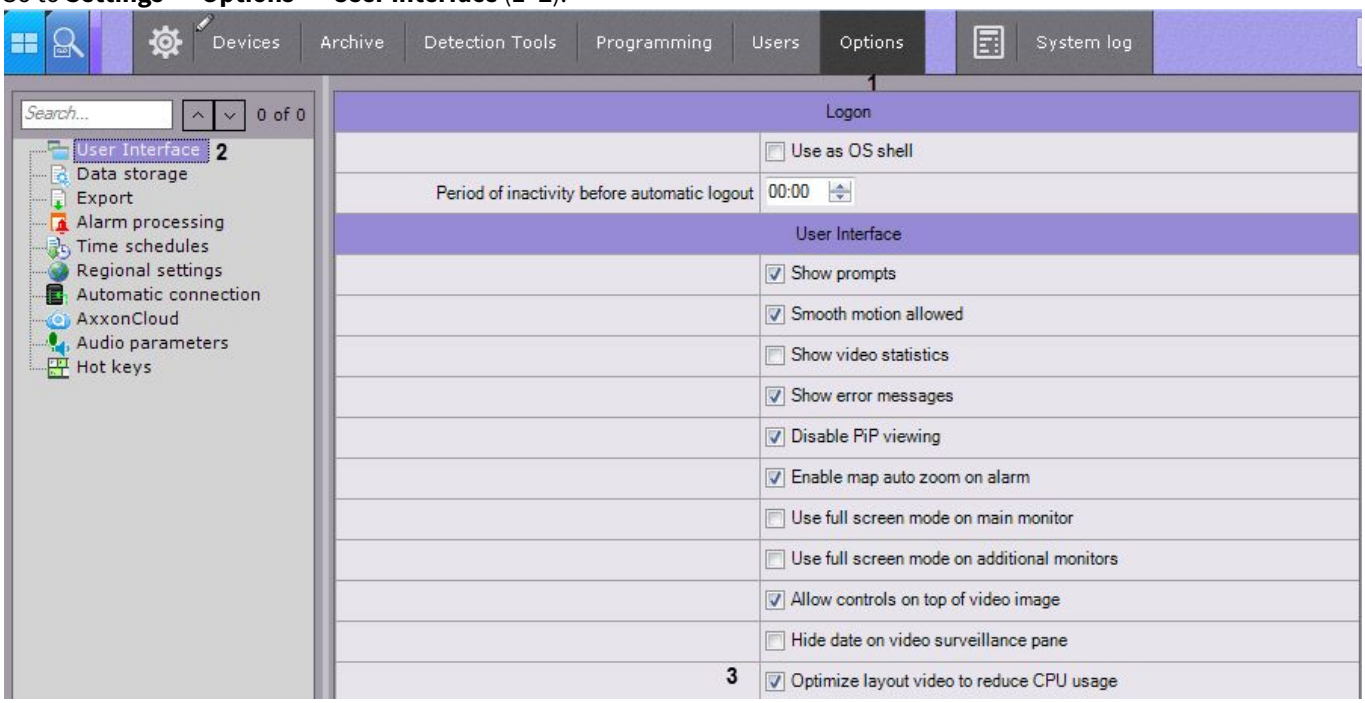
2. Uncheck the **Show camera ID** checkbox (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
4. Reopen the Layout (see Layouts Management).

7.10.2.1.13 Prune Video to Window Resolution

You can cut (prune) video resolution to fit the resolution of the viewing tile. This makes sense when the camera window (i.e. viewing tile) resolution is smaller than that of the video feed. This allows conserving CPU and bandwidth.

Video optimization is enabled by default. To disable, do as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).

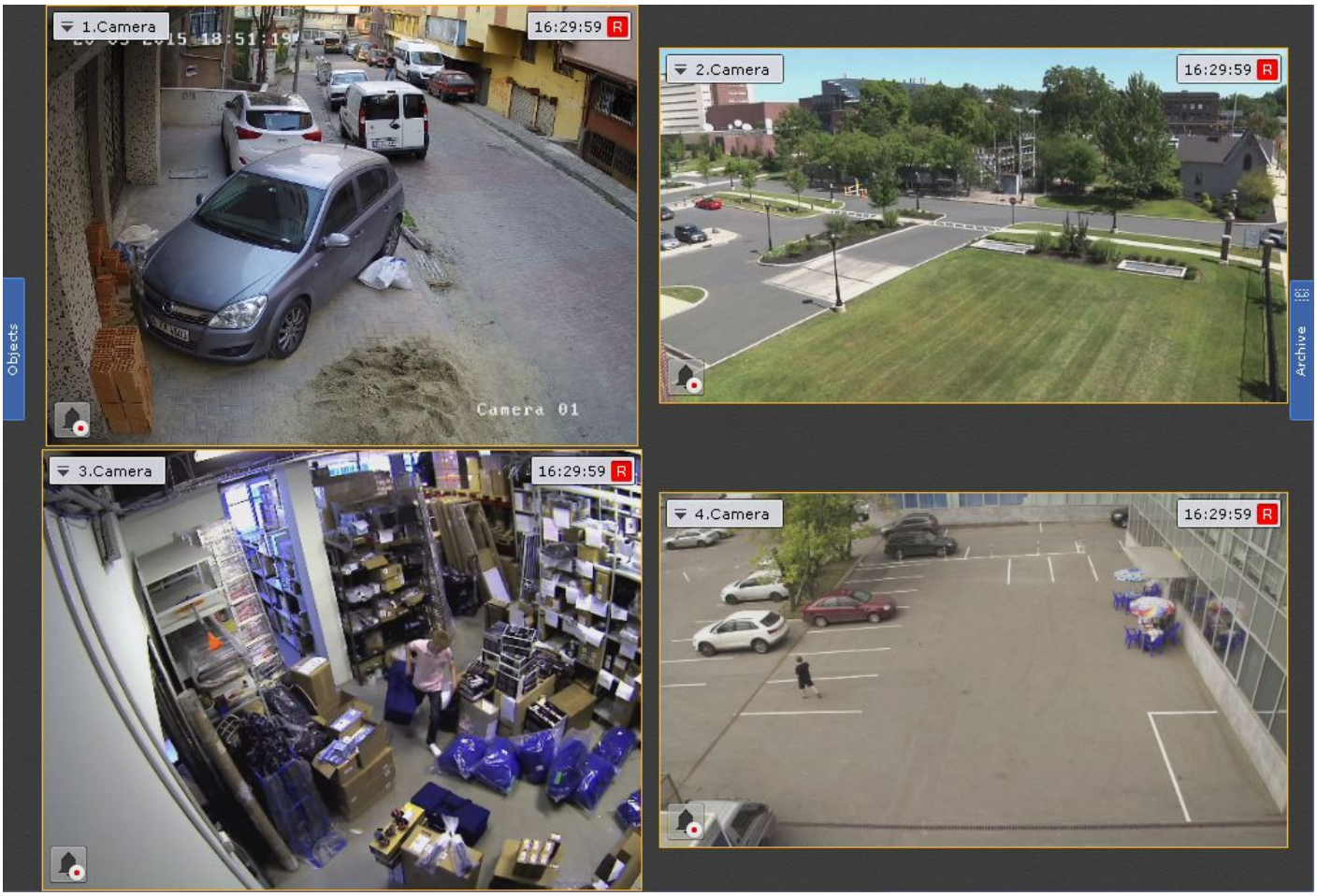


2. Uncheck the **Optimize layout video to reduce CPU usage** check box (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

> **Note**
>
> When you enable the option, you may notice image quality drop.

7.10.2.1.14 Configuring tiles on the layout

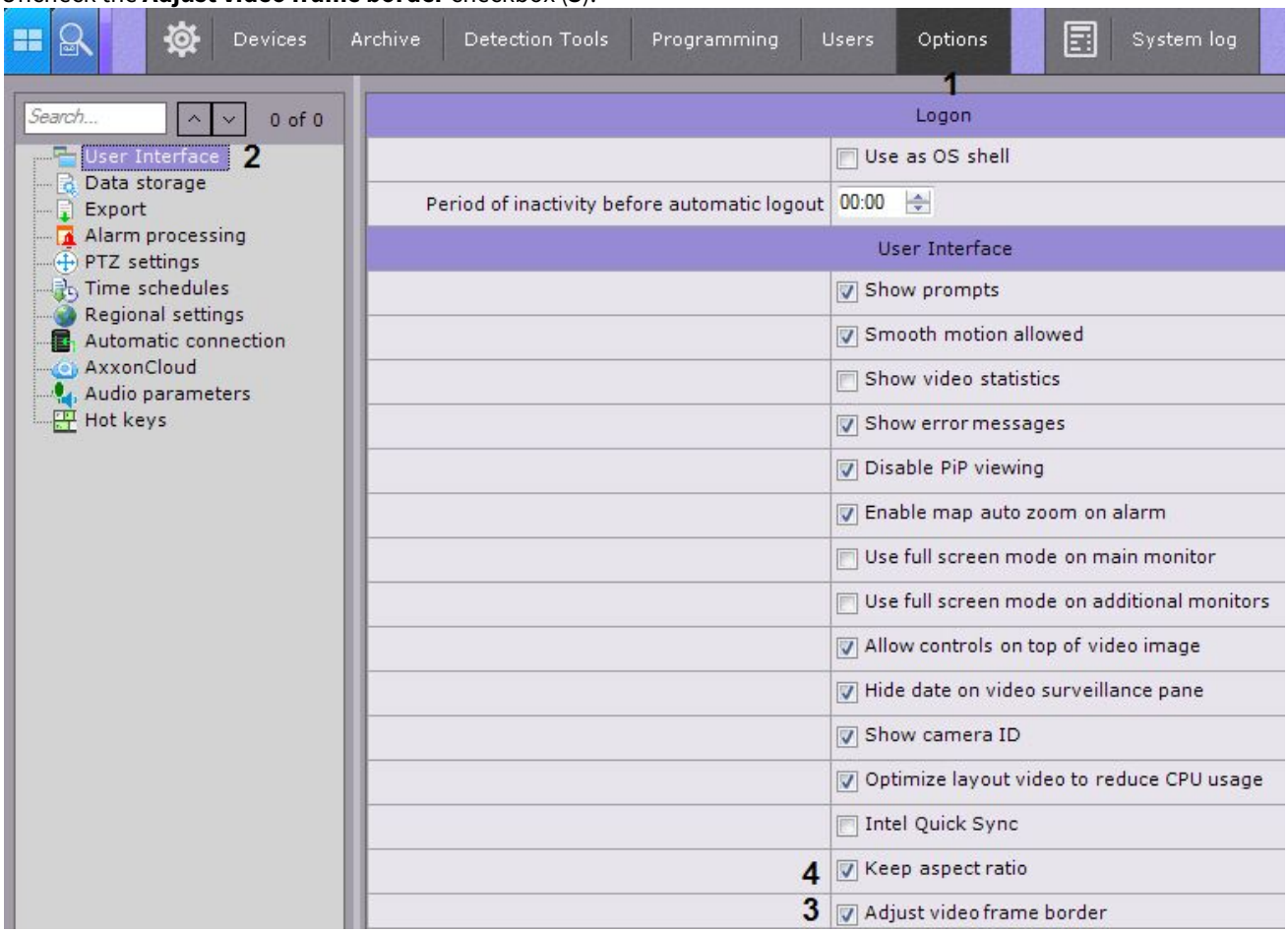
By default, the size of tiles is proportional to the video resolution.



To fix the size and expand tiles to all free space on the layout area, do as follows:

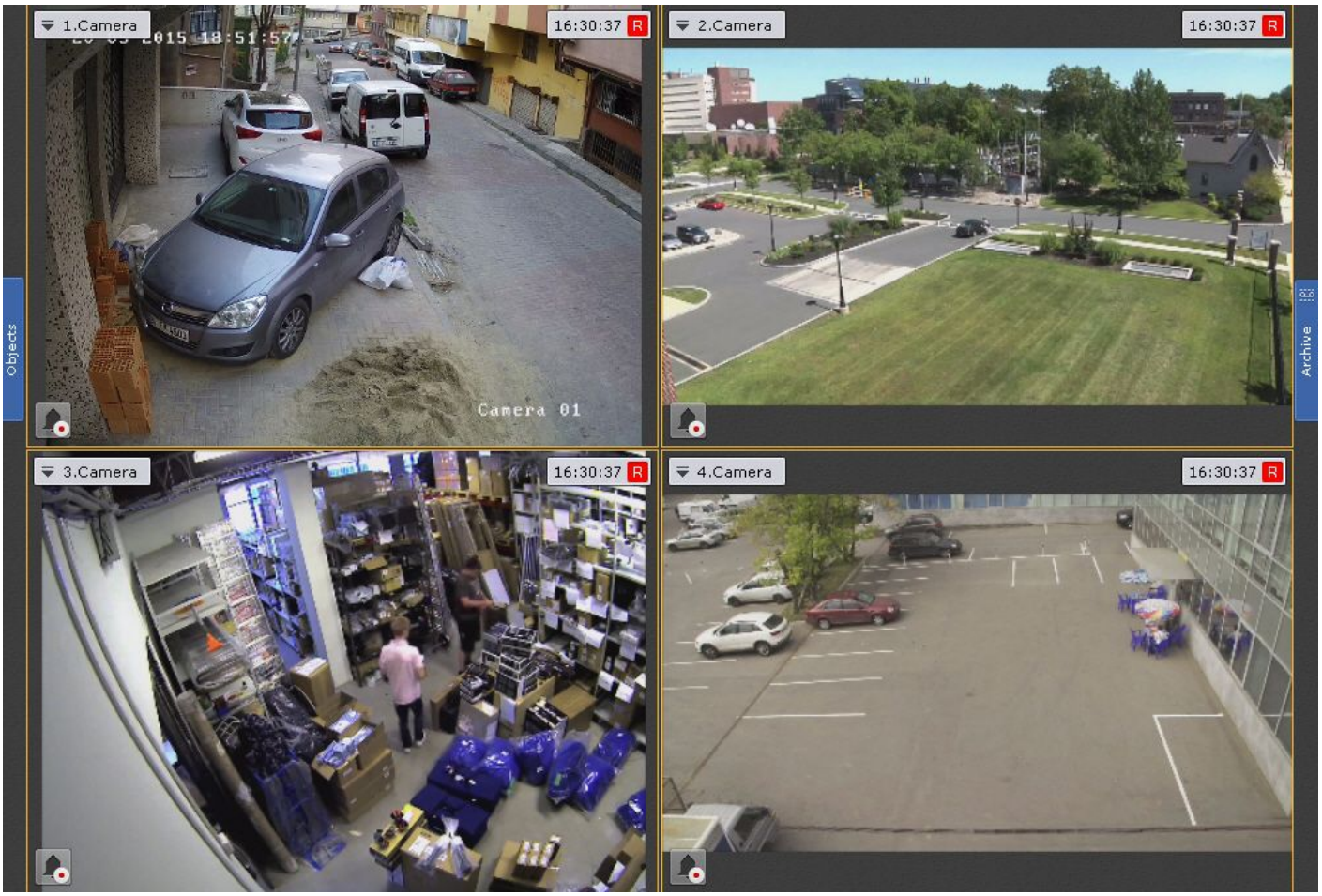
1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface (1–2).**

2. Uncheck the **Adjust video frame border** checkbox (**3**).



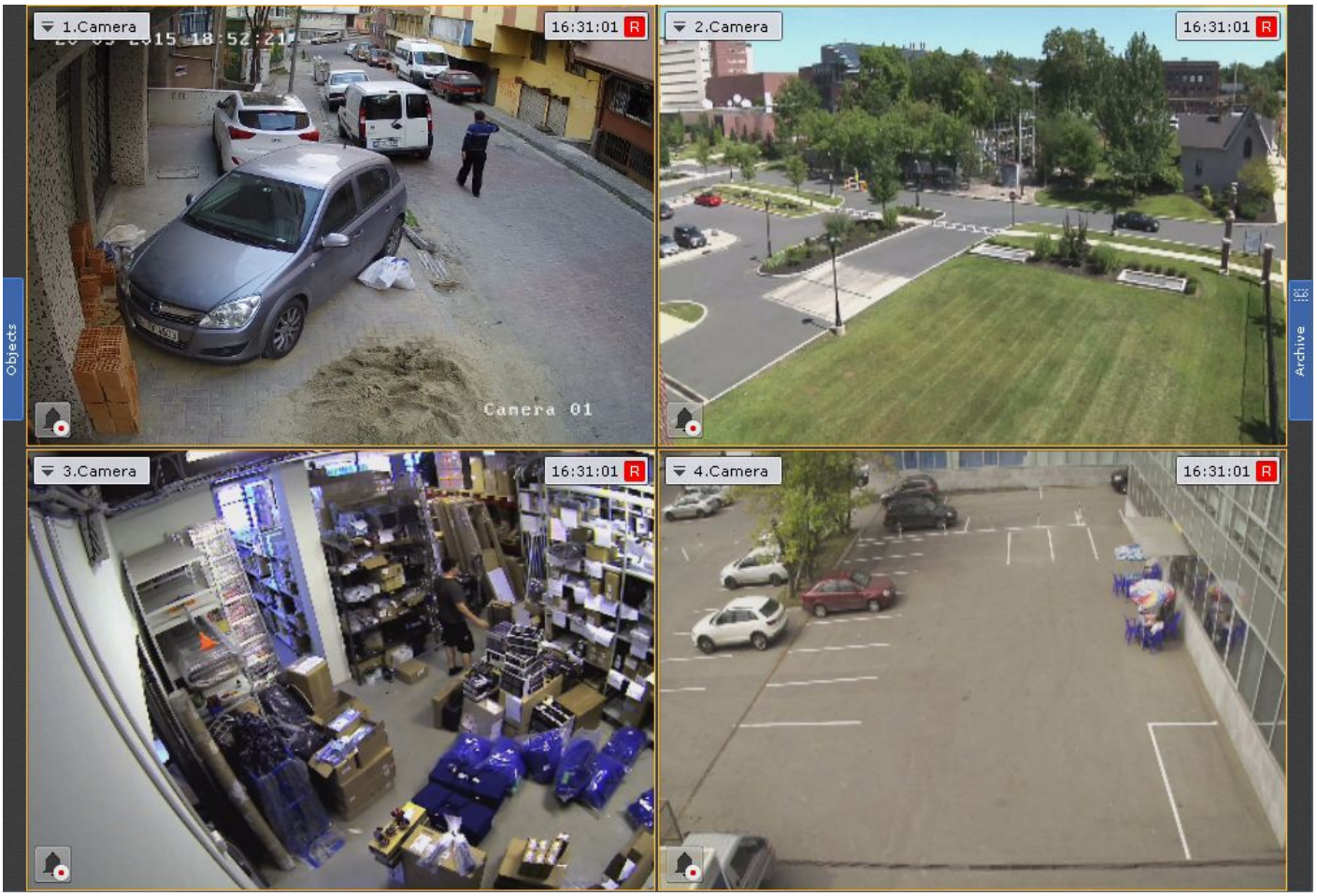
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
4. Reopen the Layout (see Layouts Management).

The video will retain its aspect ratio.



To expand video to all window, do as follows:

1. Uncheck the **Keep aspect ratio** checkbox (**3**).
2. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
3. Reopen the Layout (see Layouts Management).



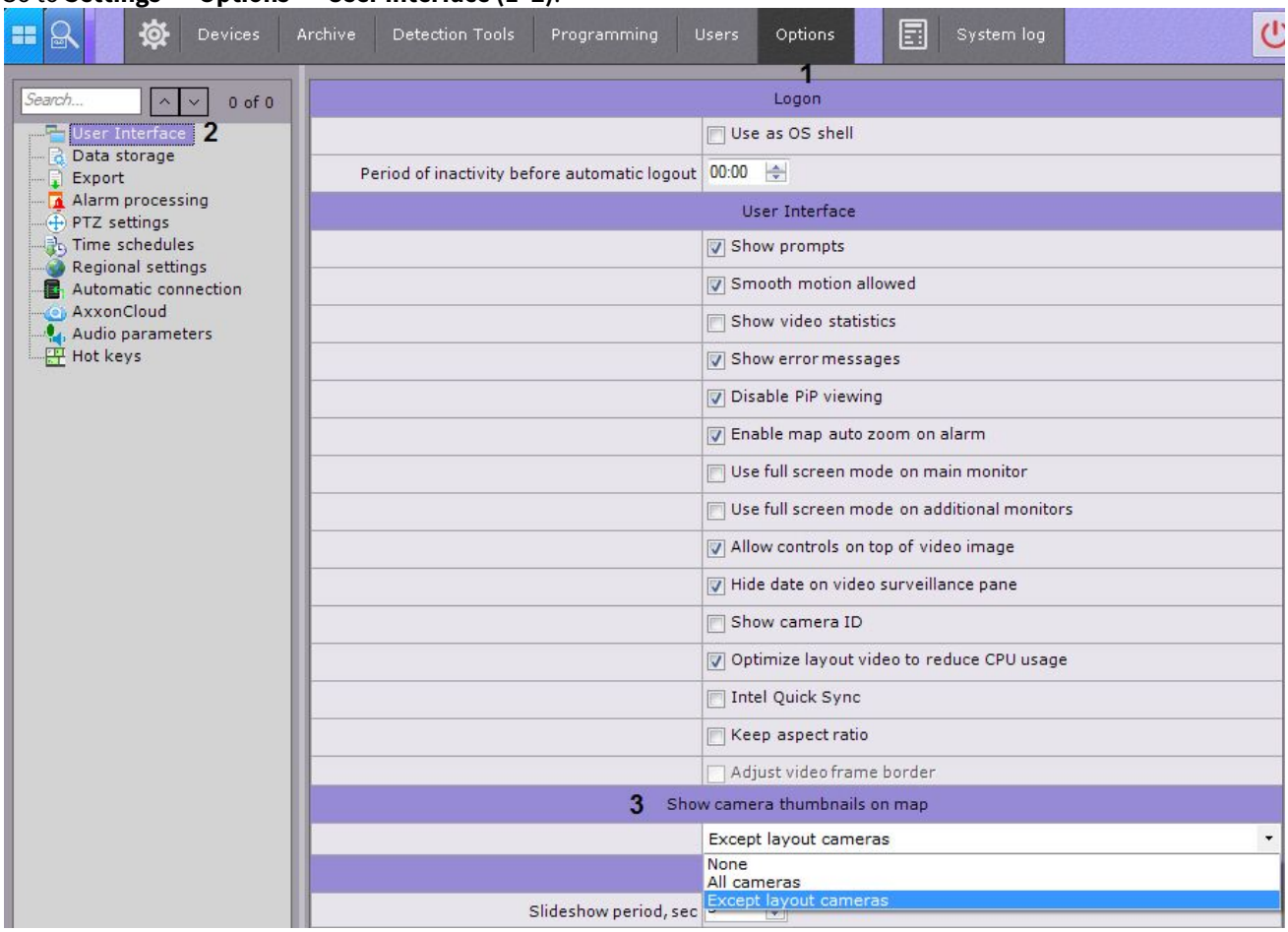
Configuring Layouts
Configuring viewing tiles

7.10.2.1.15 Configuring video display on the map

By default, the map shows video (see Configuring a camera in standard map viewing mode) only from cameras that are not on the current layout.

You can enable or disable video from all cameras on the map:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface (1–2)**.



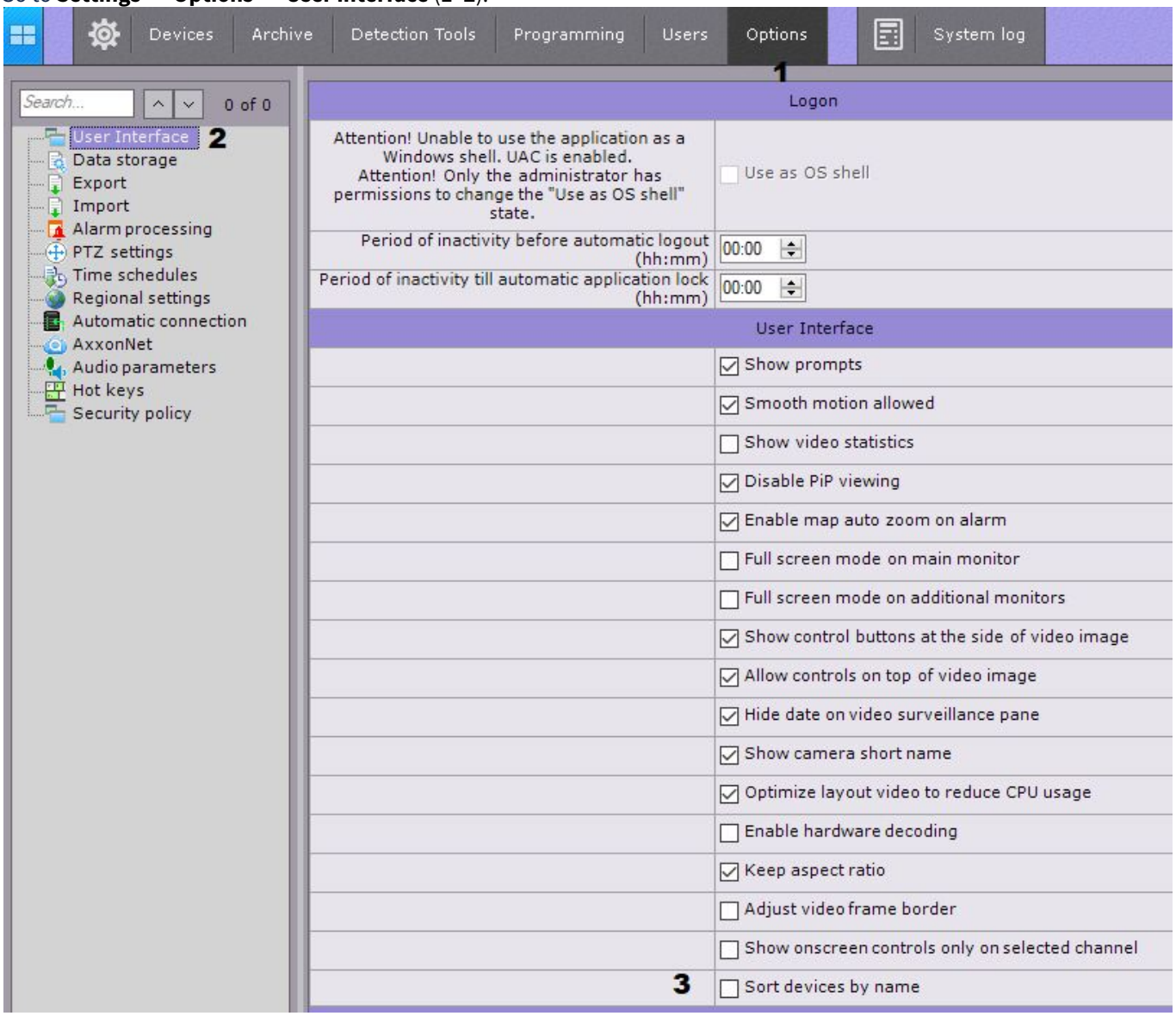
2. Choose video display mode on the map (**3**).
3. Click **Apply** to save the changes.
4. Reopen the Layout (see Layouts Management).

7.10.2.1.16 Configuring camera sorting on Object Panel

By default, cameras on Object Panel (see Objects Panel) are sorted by short name (see The Video Camera Object).

To sort by full name, do as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. Select the checkbox **Sort devices by name** (**3**).
3. Click **Apply**.

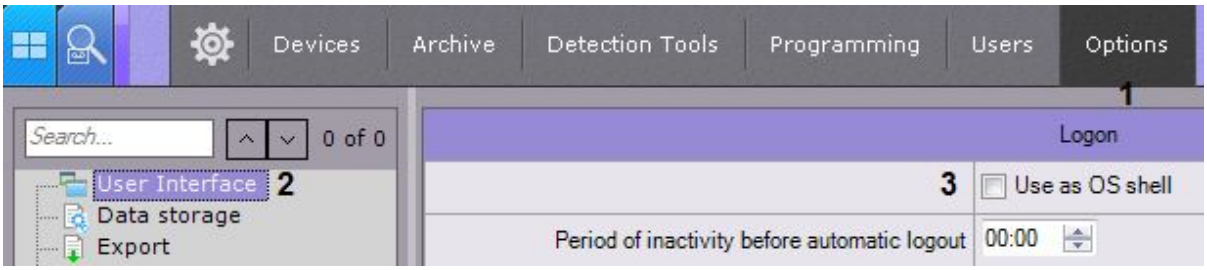
7.10.2.2 Configuring how Axxon Next starts

7.10.2.2.1 Configuring Axxon Next instead of the standard Windows OS shell

Autorun of Axxon Next, instead of the standard Windows OS shell, is used in cases where you need to restrict access to computers running the digital video surveillance system, including preventing the launch of various applications, file copying and deletion, various Windows operations, and other non-standard use of the computers.

If you configure *Axxon Next* to autorun instead of the standard Windows shell, *Axxon Next* will launch instead of Windows *Explorer* immediately after Windows loads. This makes it impossible for the user to launch certain applications installed on the computer or to work with certain program dialog boxes.

To activate autorun of the Axxon Next software package instead of the standard Windows shell, select the **Use as OS shell** check box in **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** and click **Apply**.



Axxon Next will now launch instead of the standard Windows shell the next time you start Windows.

> **Note**
>
> If User Accounts Control is enabled in the Windows OS, Axxon Next VMS cannot automatically start in place of OS shell (the appropriate check box is grayed out). Disable UAC. *In* Windows OS 8, 8.1 and 10 you also need to make changes to the registry and reboot your PC.

7.10.2.2.2 Configuring Cross-System Client and autologon

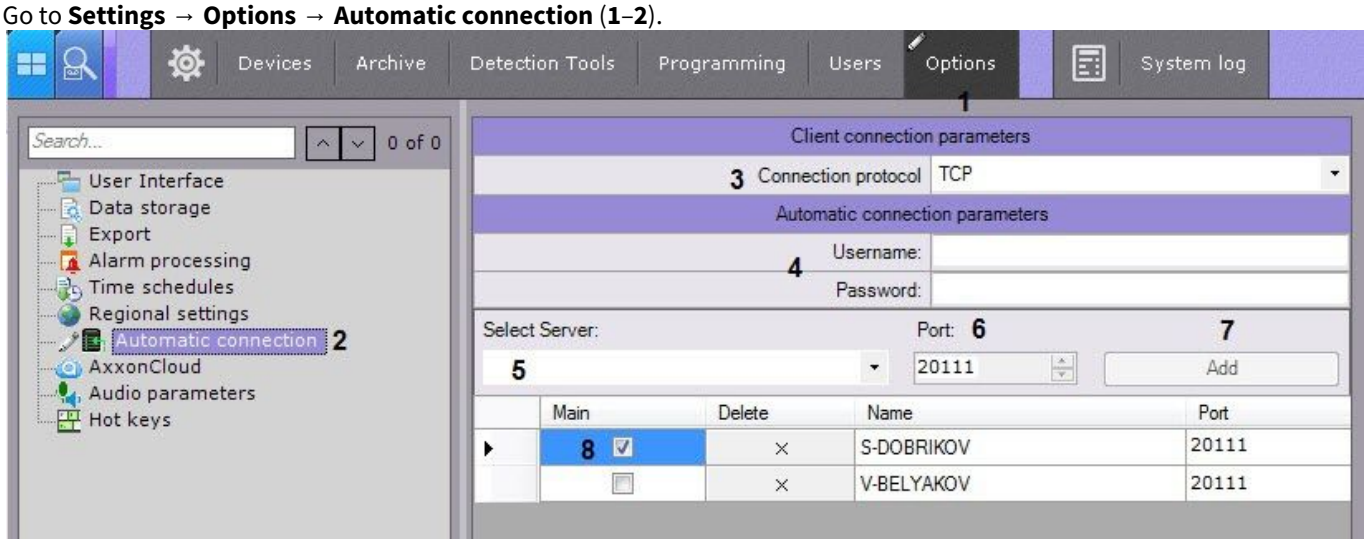
It is possible for the Client to automatically connect to Servers on different Axxon domains - Cross-System Client.

For this to take place, the following conditions must be true:

- Professional or Universe license has been activated on each Server to which the Client is connected.
- Connection to all Servers made via with the same user name/password combination on each Axxon domain.
- Server names and IP addresses are unique.

Configuration of automatic connection to Servers on different Axxon domains is performed as follows:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **Automatic connection** (**1**–**2**).



2. Configuring the protocol used by Clients to connect to the Server allows prioritizing reliability or speed of data transmission (**3**).The connection protocol is set individually for each Server in an Axxon-domain. All Clients connected to the Server will receive video streams over the selected protocol.
Descriptions and recommendations for selecting a protocol are given in the table.

Protocol	Description
TCP	This protocol is more reliable but bandwidth-intensive. Recommended for Servers with small numbers of cameras.
UDP unicast	UDP is typically faster but less reliable for data transmission. Unicast involves data transmission to a single recipient. This protocol is best for Servers with many cameras connected to a single Client.

Protocol	Description
UDP multicast	Multicast refers to data transmission to a group of recipients. This protocol is designed for Servers with many cameras connected to multiple Clients. **Important!** This protocol has to be supported by all network components, in particular, switches.

3. Type the user name and password needed for logging in to each Axxon domain (**4**).
4. Indicate the Servers to connect to. For each Server, perform the following steps:
   a. Select the Server in the list (**5**).
   b. Indicate the port for connecting to the Server (**6**).

      > **Note**
      >
      > If the **Port** field is left blank, the standard port (20111) will be used for connecting

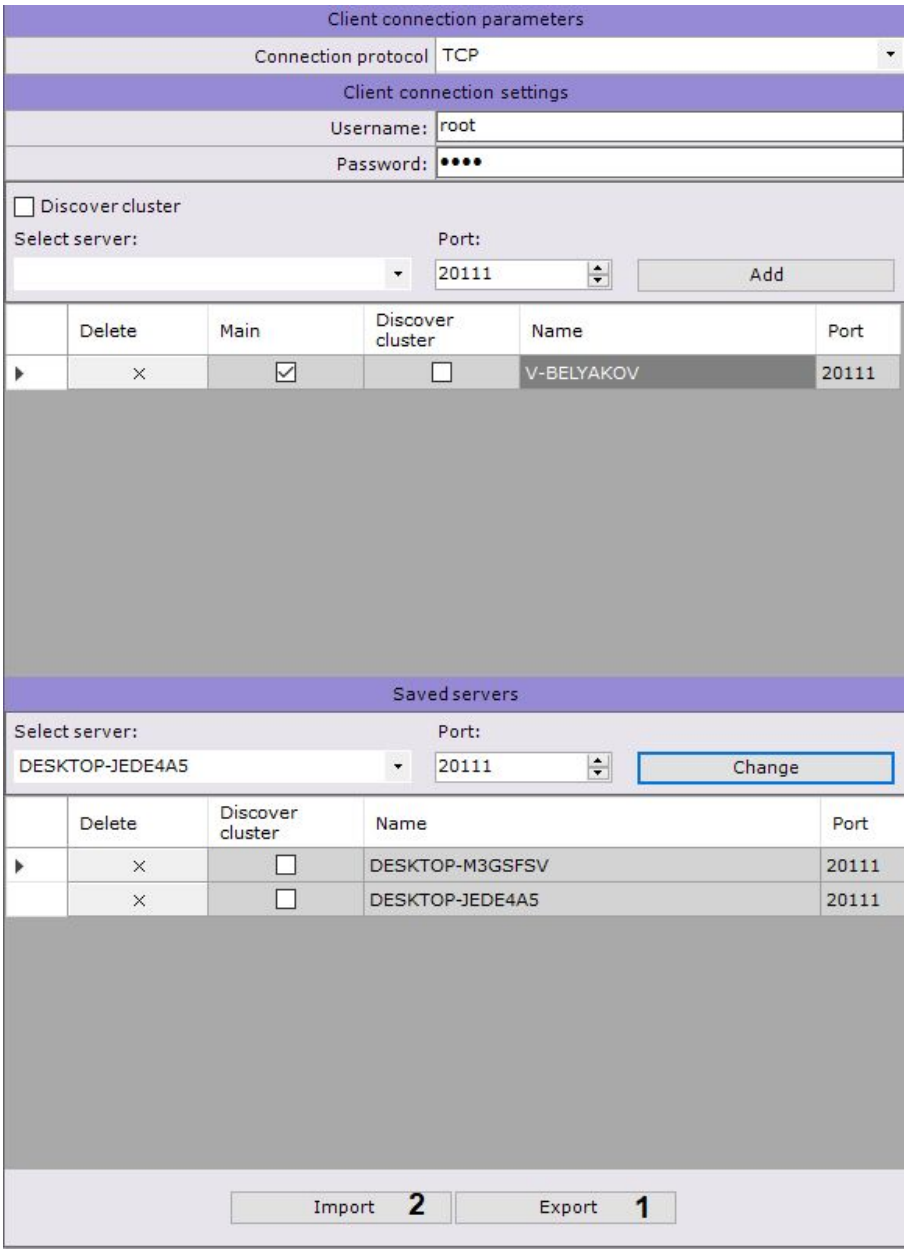
   c. Click the **Add** button (**7**).

      > **Note**
      >
      > It is possible to connect to only one Server on an Axxon domain. So when a Server is added to the list, all other Servers on the Axxon domain become unavailable for selection

      > **Note**
      >
      > To remove a Server from the list, click the × button

5. After all Servers have been added to the list, select the main Axxon domain.
   When connecting, the Client will use the parameters (maps, layouts, user rights) of the main Axxon domain.
   To select a main Axxon domain, select the check box in the relevant column of a Server that is on the Axxon domain (**7**).
6. Click the **Apply** button.

Click **Export** (**1**) to save the automatic Server connection and Preferred Servers (see Selecting Preferred Servers) configuration to the JSON file.

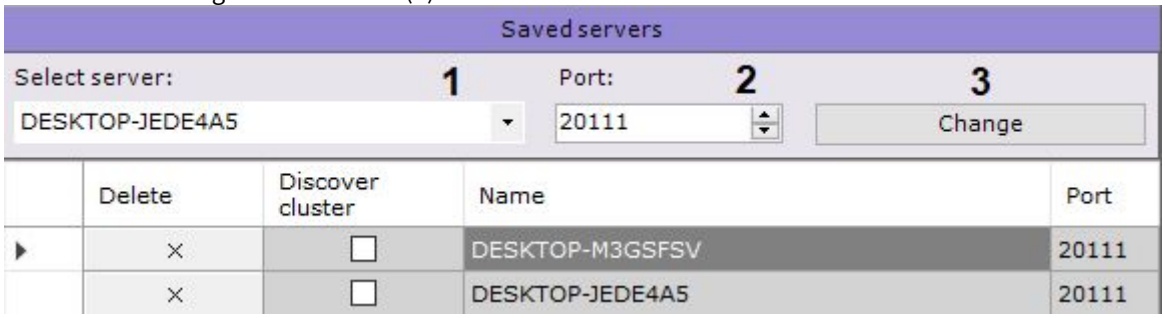


To load the preset configuration to other Clients, do the following:

1. Click **Import** (**2**).
2. Click **Apply**.

To change a port on an added Server, do the following:

1. Select this Server again from the list (**1**).

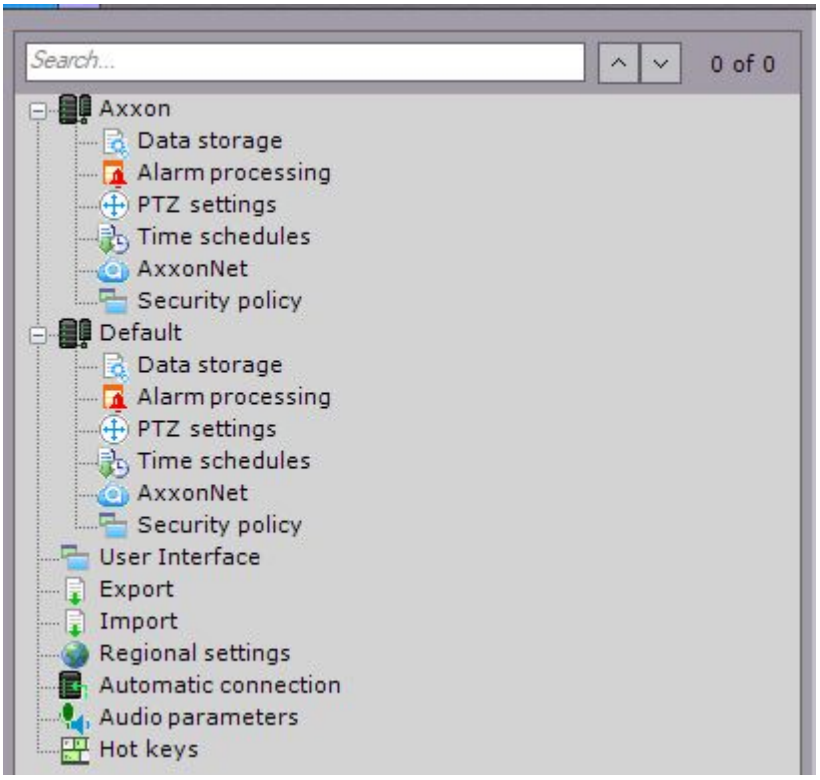


2. Enter a new port (**2**).
3. Click **Change** (**3**).

Autoconnection to Servers on different Axxon domains is now complete.

The next time Axxon Next is started, connection to the selected Servers with the specified user credentials will occur automatically.

If the Client is connected to several Servers, the Server settings are reproduced for each Server (see Server settings).

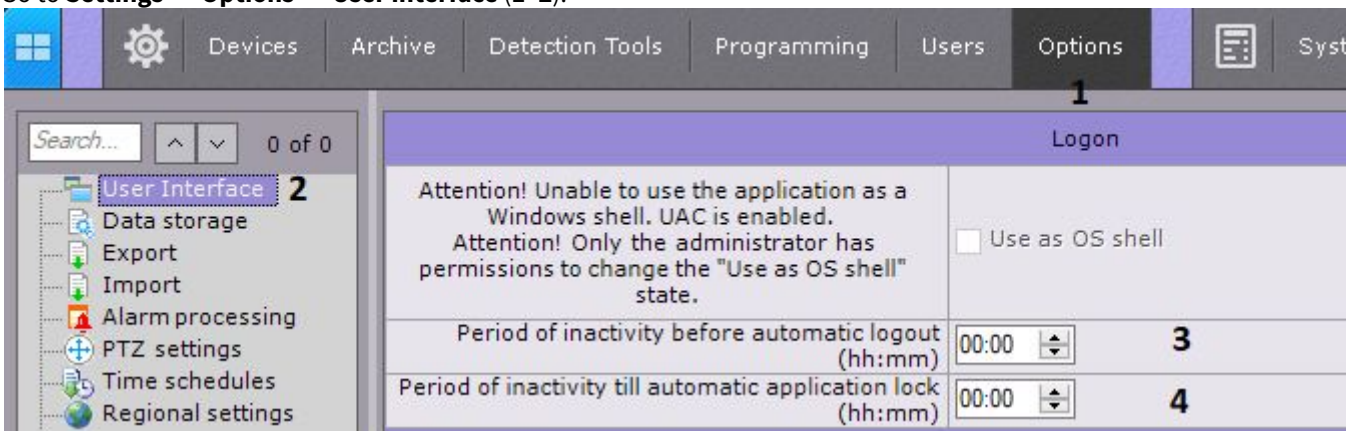


7.10.2.2.3 Configuring automatic exiting and locking of the Client

You can set the system to automatically exit and/or lock the Client if the user stays idle for a pre-determined time, i.e. no signals come from HID devices (keyboard, mouse, joystick, etc.).

To do so:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **User interface** (**1**–**2**).



2. In the **Period of inactivity before automatic logout** field, enter the duration of user inactivity after which the Client should be quit (**3**).
   If the field is blank or equals 00:00, the Client will not be quit.
3. Enter a value in the **Idle Time before Locking** field to set the time interval (**4**). To unlock the Client, the user has to re-login.
   If the field is left blank or the value is set to 00:00, no locking will occur.

> **Note**
>
> If a viewing layout is open, no automatic blocking occurs.

> **Note**
>
> You can lock the Client at any time using hotkeys (see Assigning hot keys, Appendix 6. Hotkeys in Axxon Next).

4. Click the **Apply** button.

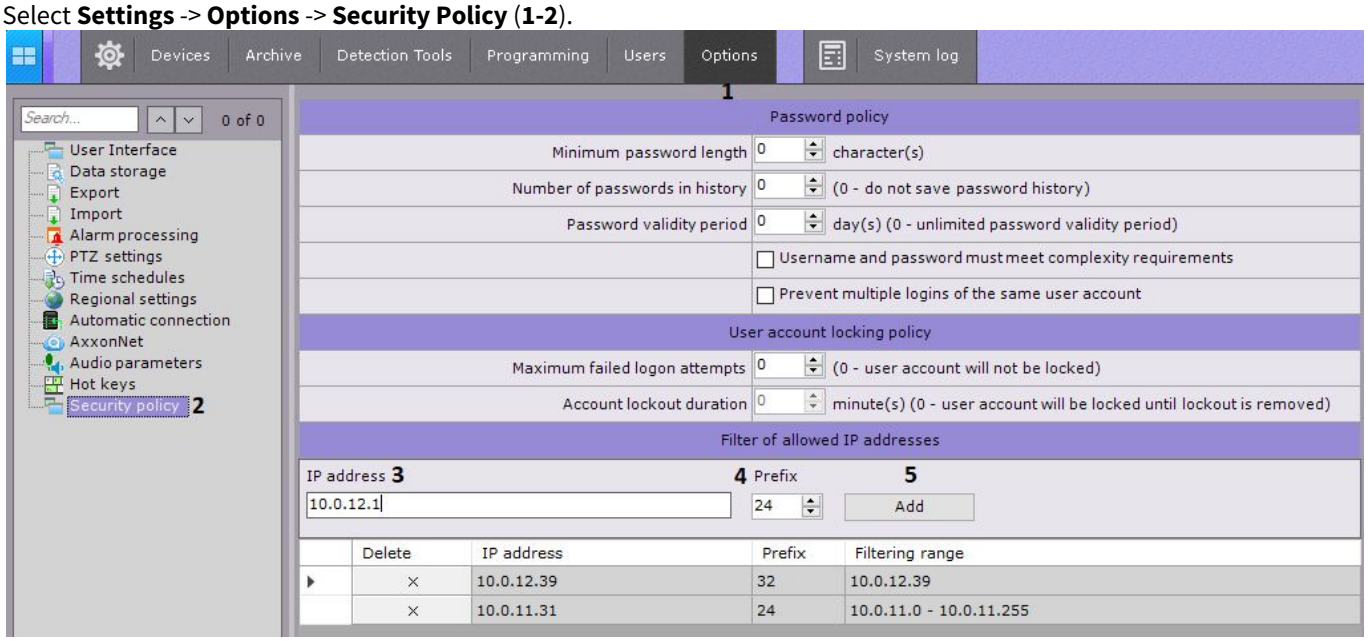
Configuration of automatic quit of the Client is now complete.

7.10.2.2.4 IP address filtering configuration

You can restrict remote clients' access to the server to a range of IP addresses.

To do this:

1. Select **Settings** -> **Options** -> **Security Policy** (**1-2**).



2. In the **Filter of allowed IP addresses** group, enter the IP address (**3**) and subnet mask (**4**) to set the range of addresses from which a connection will be permitted.
3. Click the **Add** button (**5**).
4. Click **Apply**.

The range is now added to the list. No connection will be possible from addresses not in the list.

To remove an address or a range from the list, do the following:

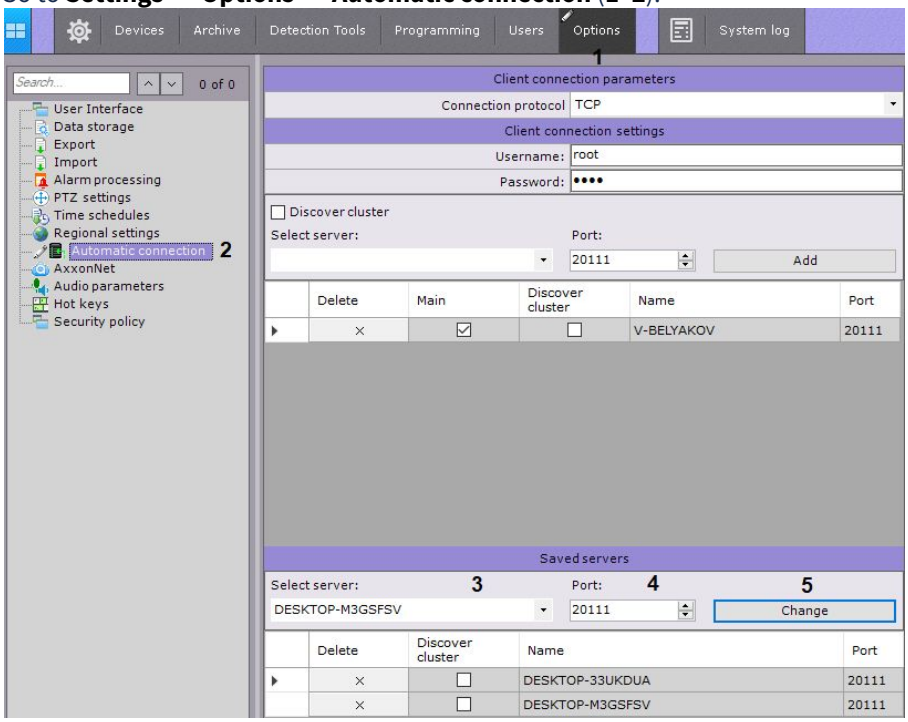
1. Click the ✕ button.
2. Click **Apply**.

7.10.2.2.5 Selecting Preferred Servers

You can set Preferred Servers, which will be displayed at the top of the list when you launch Client (see Starting an Axxon Next Client).

To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Go to **Settings** → **Options** → **Automatic connection** (**1**–**2**).



2. In the **Saved servers** group, select the Server from the list (**3**).
3. Change the default port if needed (**4**).
4. Click **Add** (**5**).
5. Repeat the steps for all target Servers.
6. Click **Apply**.

> **Note**
>
> You can save the Preferred Servers list to a JSON file and load it to another Client (see Configuring Cross-System Client and autologon).

7.10.2.3 Configuring export

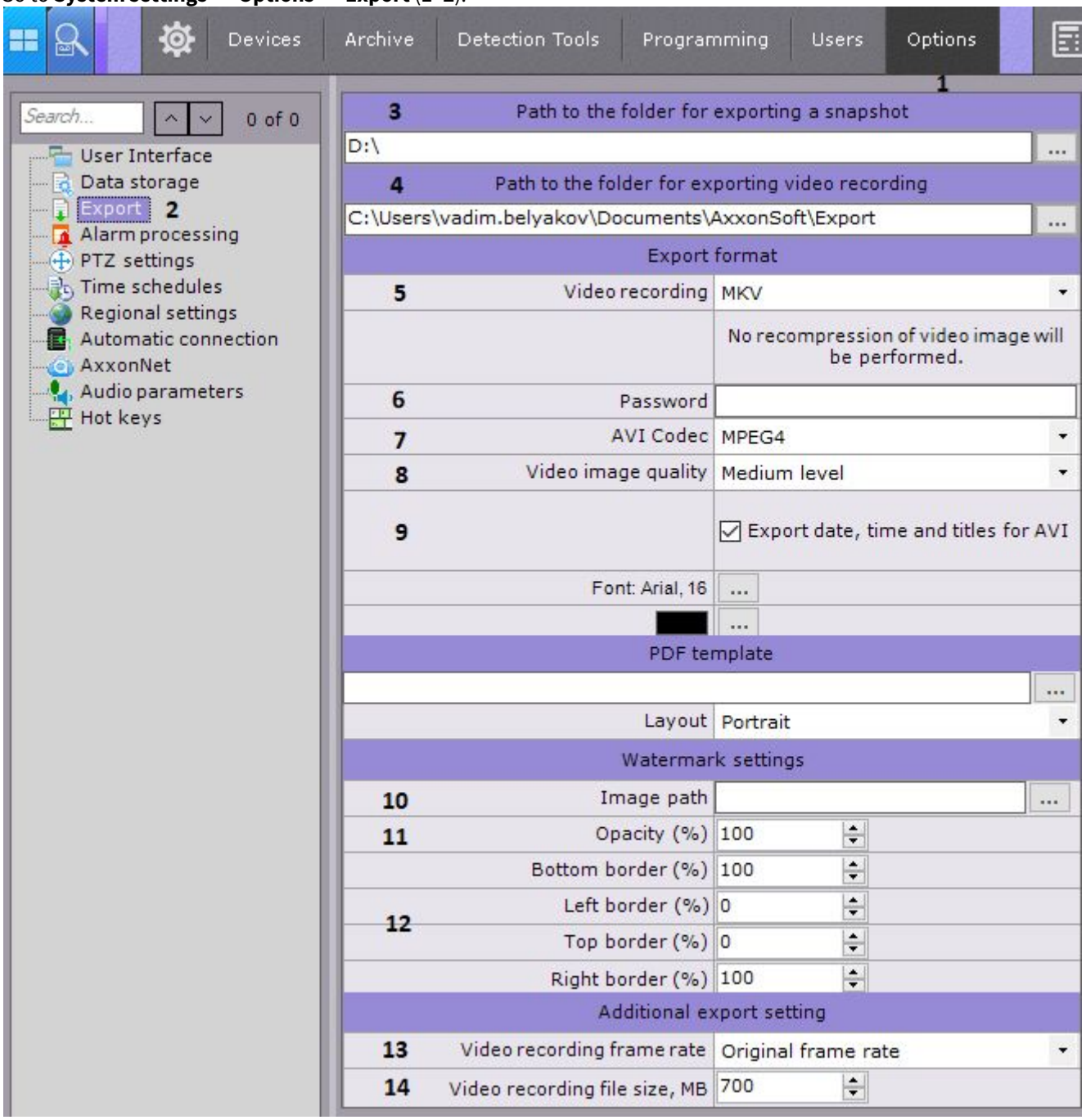
7.10.2.3.1 Configuring export options

Configuring export includes:

- Setting the default destination folders for exported files.
- Setting the default formats for export of video and snapshots.
- Configuring export of video in AVI format.
- Configuring the template for export of snapshots in PDF format.
- Other export settings.

Configure export as follows:

1. Go to **System settings** → **Options** → **Export** (**1**–**2**).



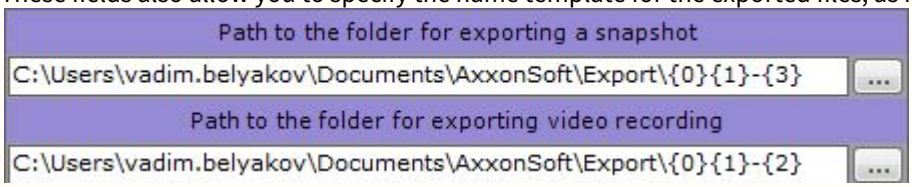
2. In the **Path to the folder for exporting a snapshot** (**3**) and **Pathto the folder for exporting video recording** (**4**), enter the full path to the folders where exported files are to be saved. To do this, click the button ....

> **Note**
>
> During export you can specify any path.

> **Note**
>
> By default, on Windows XP, exported files are stored in C:\Documents and Settings\User\My Documents\AxxonSoft\Export\. On Windows 7 and Windows Vista, they are stored in C:\Users\User\Documents\AxxonSoft\Export\.

Attention!

These fields also allow you to specify the name template for the exported files, as follows:



{0} – Camera ID.
{1} – Camera name
{2} – Date.
{3} – Time.
{4} – Recording duration (for video export only).

3. Select the default formats for export of video and snapshots (**5**). You can select any available format during export. Snapshots can be exported in two formats: JPG and PDF. Videos can be exported into the following 4 formats: MP4, MKV, EXE and AVI.

Note

Video is exported in MKV format without recompression.
Video is exported in AVI format with recompression in the selected codec (see point 4).
When video is exported in EXE format, a self-contained executable file is generated, containing video, playback tools, and necessary codecs.

4. If you want to export to an encrypted zip archive, set a password (**6**). If you are exporting an .exe file, you will need to enter a password when you open the file.
5. Specify settings for video export in AVI format: Select a codec (**7**) and compression quality (**8**).
6. If you want to superimpose captions in the exported video, select the **Export date, time, and AVI titles** check box. When exporting to MKV, captions are always added, you can turn them off when playing (**9**).
7. You can watermark exported video footage as follows:

Attention!

The watermark settings are applied to the entire Axxon domain.

   a. Select a file with a watermark (**10**). PNG, JPEG, BMP pictures are allowed.
   b. Set the transparency of the watermark: 100% – opaque, 0% – completely transparent (**11**).
   c. Set the location of the watermark (**12**). To do this, specify the border of the watermarked area on each side of the frame as percentage of the frame size. The top left corner should be taken as the origin point.
   For example, with the default settings (Left **0**, Top **0**, Right **100**, Bottom **100**), the watermarked area will occupy the entire frame, and the watermark will be placed in the center of the image. To place the watermark in a corner, specify the following values:
      i. for the upper left corner — Left **0**, Top **0**, Right **watermark width as percentage of the frame width**, Bottom **watermark height as percentage of the frame height**;
      ii. for the lower left corner — Left **0**, Top **100 minus watermark height as percentage of the frame height**, Right **watermark width as percentage of the frame width**, Bottom **100**;
      iii. for the upper right corner — Left **100 minus watermark width as percentage of the frame width**, Top **0**, Right **100**, Bottom **watermark height as percentage of the frame height**;
      iv. for the lower right corner — Left **100 minus watermark width as percentage of the frame width**, Top **100 minus watermark height as percentage of the frame height**, Right **100**, Bottom **100**.
8. Set a frame rate for the exported video in one of two ways:
   a. Select a value from the **Video recording frame rate** drop-down list: if **1/2** is selected, the exported frame rate will be two times smaller than the original one; if **1/4** is selected — four times smaller, and if **1/8** is selected — eight times smaller (**13**).

> **Note**
>
> The minimum frame rate of exported video is 1 fps.

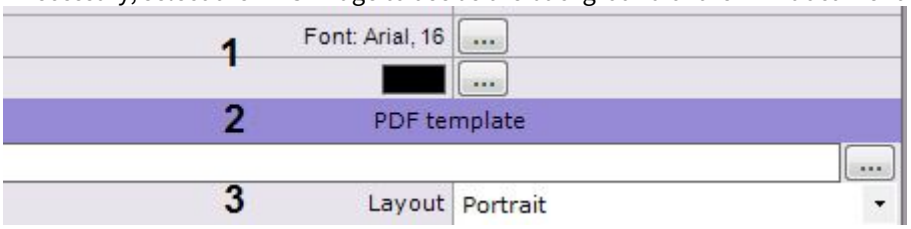
b. Set the frame rate manually (**15**). Possible values: from 1 to 300.

9. Set the limit for an exported video file size in megabytes (**14**). If the exported video exceeds the specified size, multiple export files will be created.

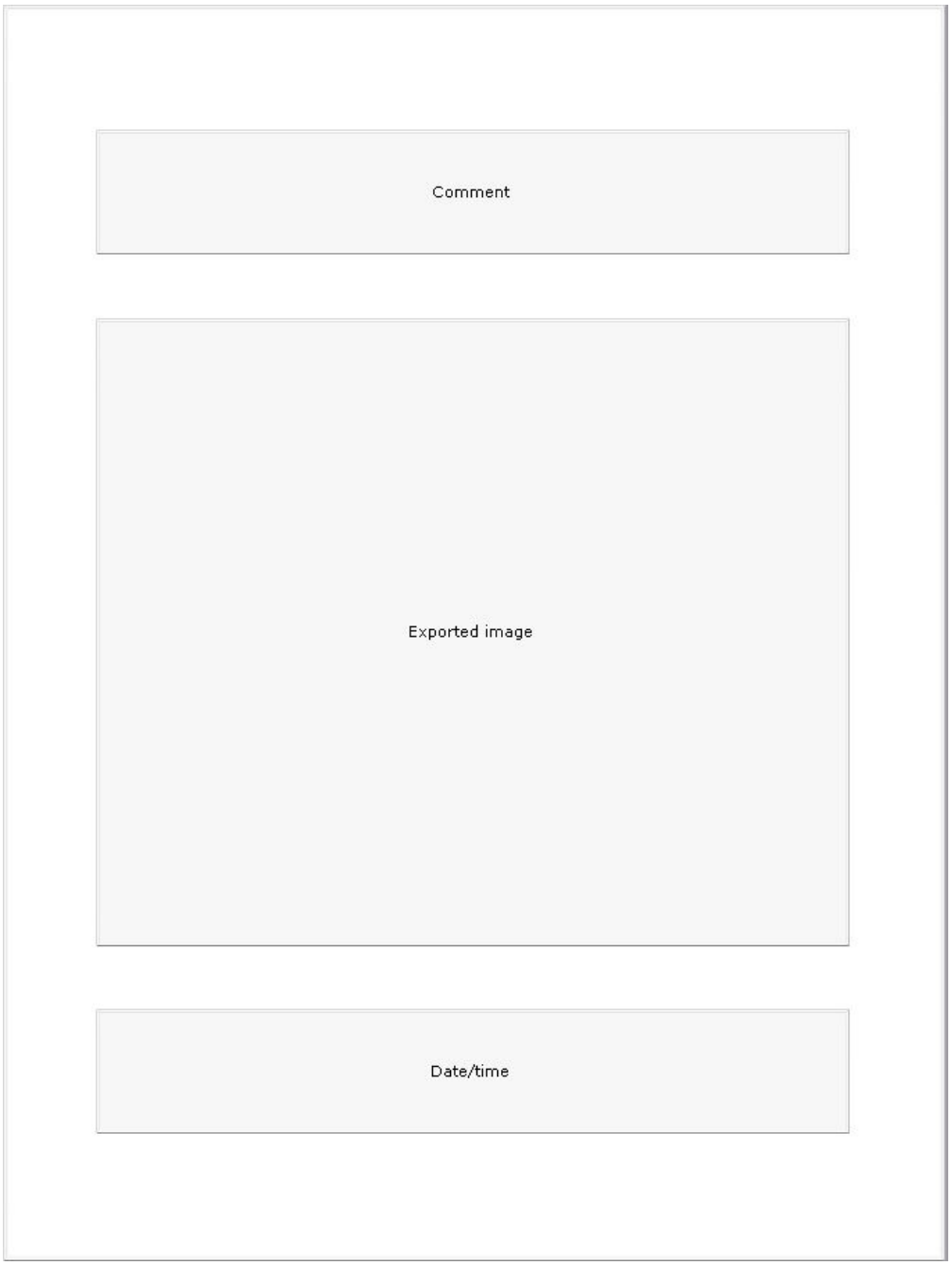
> **Note**
>
> The minimum value is 5 megabytes.
> Due to Windows limitations, you cannot export files of more than 4 Gb to EXE format.

> **Attention!**
>
> **Zero** value sets export to a single file irrelevant to its size.

10. If it is necessary to change the speed of the exported video, then set the acceleration factor from 0 to 128 in the **Speed** field (**16**). You can enter fractional values. For example, if you set **10** for the original 10-minute video, it will be exported to a 1-minute recording.
11. Configure a template for export of snapshots in PDF format:
    a. Select the font and font color (**1**).
    b. If necessary, select the PNG image to use as the background of the PDF document (**2**).



    c. Select the document orientation (**3**).
    Exported PDFs consist of three sections: comment entered during export; date and time of the snapshot; and snapshot image.
    d. Configure the size of the sections and their position on the page.



Note

Section sizes and positions can be changed like standard windows.

12. Click the **Apply** button.

Export configuration is now complete.

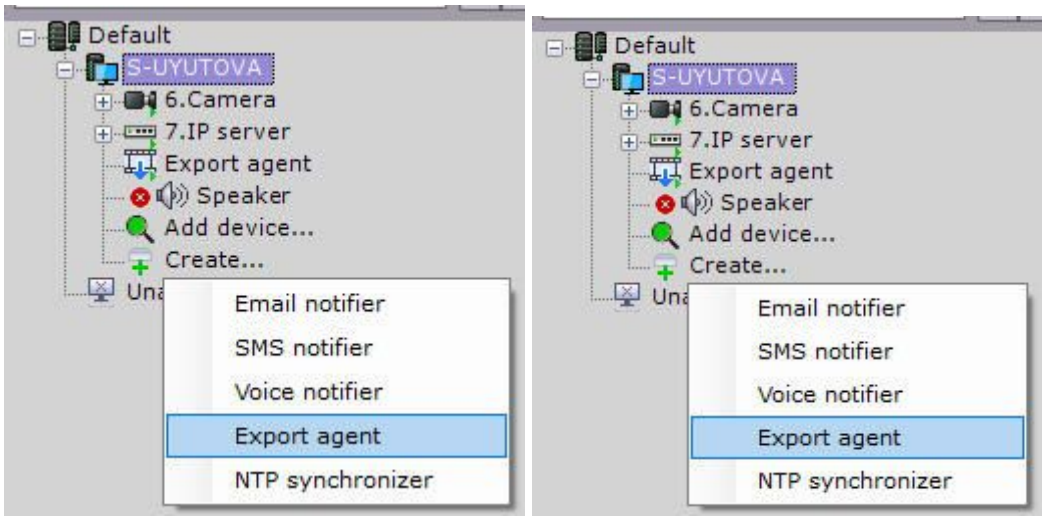
7.10.2.3.2 Configuring an Export Agent

Export Agent is a service that allows automatically exporting snapshots and video to a particular Server when a defined system event occurs.

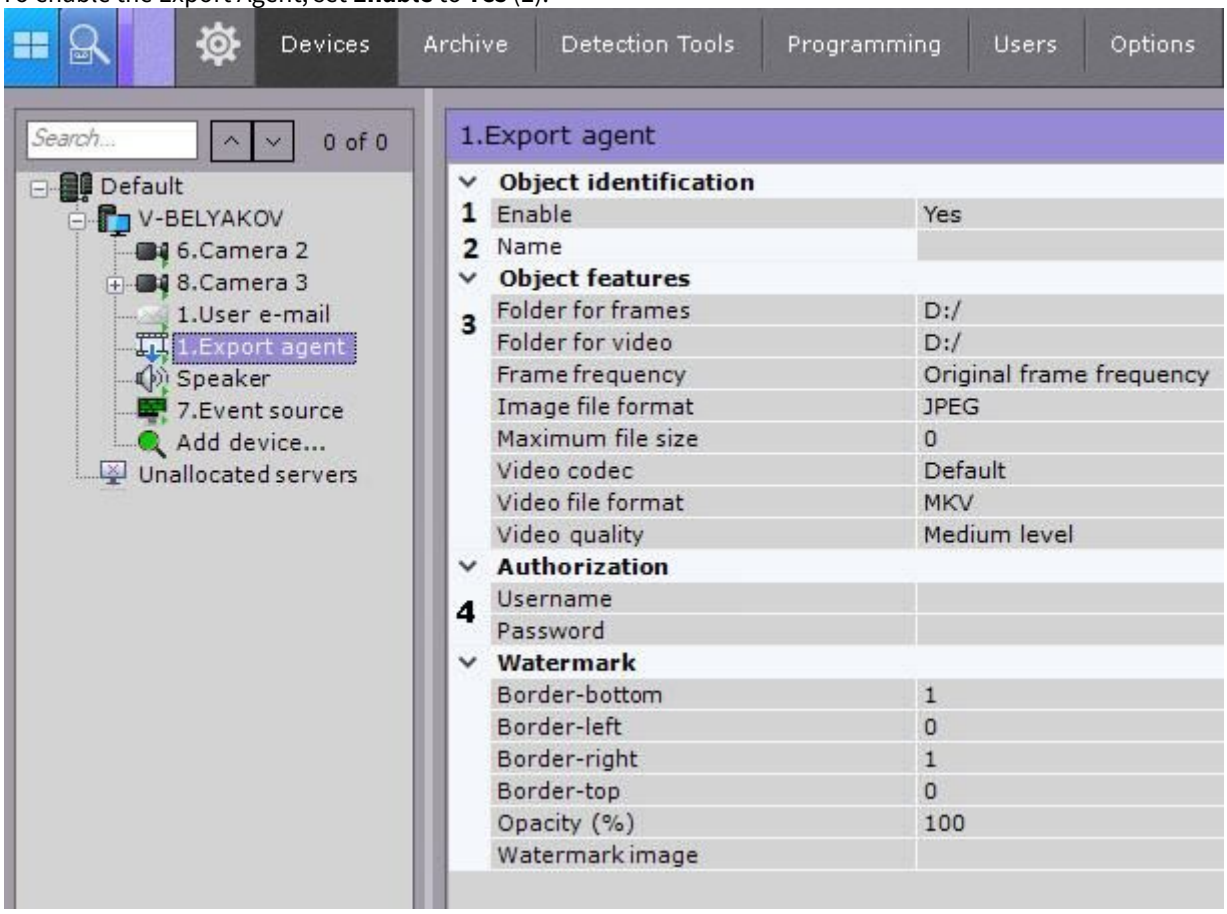
Automatic export of snapshots and videos will start when the relevant macro is run.

To create and configure Export Agent, do as follows:

1. Go to the list of equipment, click **Create** and select **Export Agent**.



2. To enable the Export Agent, set **Enable** to **Yes** (**1**).



3. In the relevant field, set the object name (**2**).
4. Specify full paths to the folders that will store the exported snapshots and video (**3**). To do so, click the button in the relevant field. For network folders, enter the user name and password (**4**). The user must have permissions to access the NAS.
5. Specify other export options. See Configuring export options for more info.
6. Click the **Apply** button.

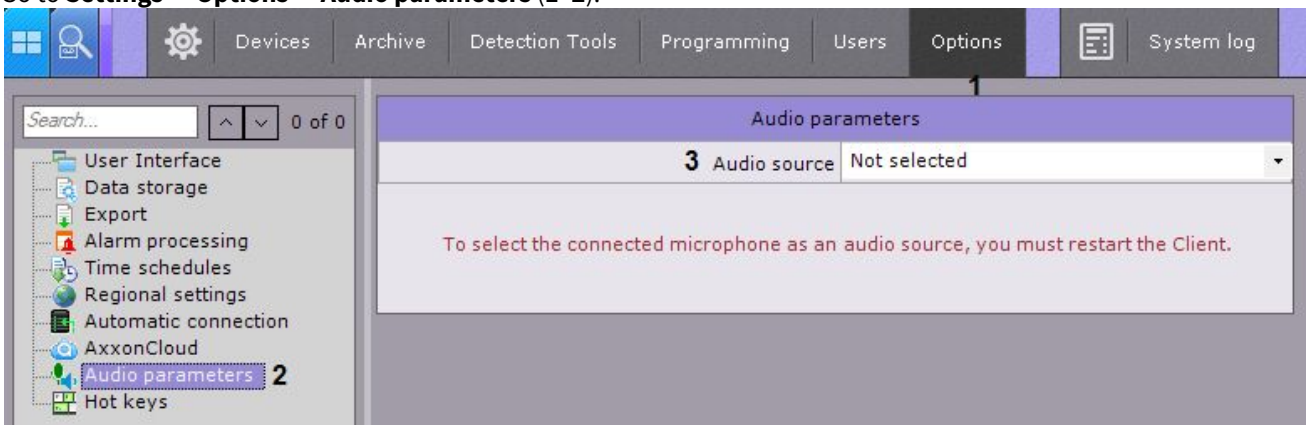
Creation and configuration of the Export Agent are now complete.

7.10.2.4 Configuring audio on the Client

To broadcast audio from the Client microphone on a camera speaker, you must configure audio on the Client.

Do the following:

1. Go to **Settings** -> **Options** -> **Audio parameters** (**1–2**).



2. In the **Audio source** field, select the system device that will be used as the audio source for playback on the camera speaker (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> The default device is shown in the list in bold.

3. Click the **Apply** button.

Configuration of audio on the Client is now complete.

7.10.2.5 Configuring hot keys

7.10.2.5.1 Introduction to hot keys in Axxon Next

In Axxon Next, hot keys for standard keyboards and joysticks can be set to perform certain actions.

The operator's work with hotkeys is divided into 6 modes:

1. Global mode, in which a hot key is always available.
2. Live Video mode.
3. Archive viewing and search in archive mode.
4. TimeCompressor mode.
5. Alarm Processing mode.
6. Programming - running macros.

When setting hot keys, keep the following rules in mind:

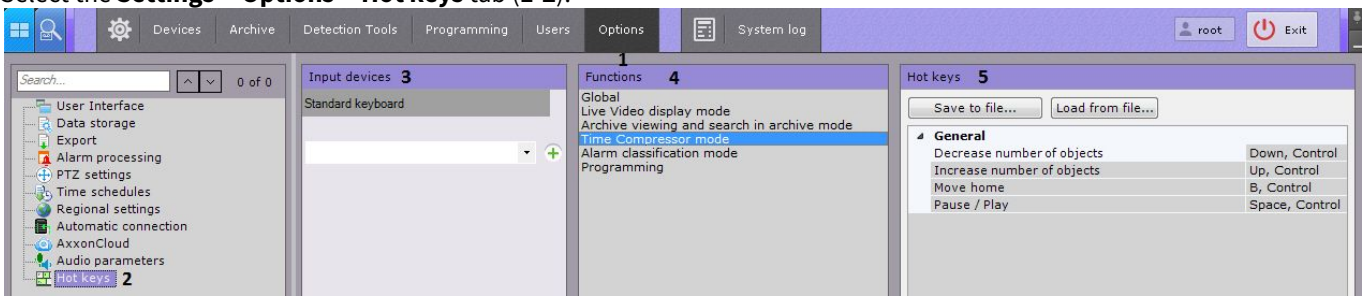
- The same shortcut can be used for different actions in different modes.
- A shortcut in any particular mode can be associated with only one action.
- Shortcuts set in Global mode cannot be redefined in other modes.
- Hot keys are available only when the Client is active.
- On standard keyboards, alphanumeric keys must be preceded by modifier keys (CTRL, ALT, SHIFT).
- During system configuration (when the Settings tab is open), only one action with hot keys is available: go to layouts (the Activate panel of configuration command).

> **Note**
>
> Please refer to the list of hotkeys in Appendix 6 to this guide.

7.10.2.5.2 Assigning hot keys

To assign hot keys:

1. Select the **Settings** ->**Options** ->**Hot keys** tab (**1**-**2**).



2. In the list, select the device for which you want to configure hot keys (**3**).
3. Select the mode for which you want to configure hot keys (**4**, see Introduction to hot keys in Axxon Next).
4. To assign a shortcut to a specific action:
   a. Double-click the current shortcut assigned to the action (**5**). The field is now cleared.

      Note

      For some actions in Global mode, you cannot change the default hot keys.

   b. Press the key/key combination/joystick button to assign to the action.

      Note

      If the field is left empty, no hot key will be assigned to the action.

5. Assign hot keys for all actions of interest.
6. Click the **Apply** button.

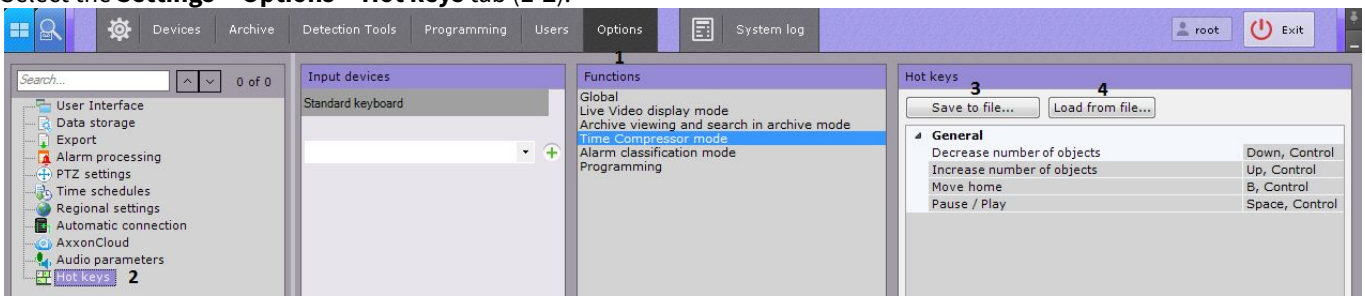
Assignment of hot keys is now complete.

7.10.2.5.3 Exporting and importing hot keys

You can export and import hot key configuration files from and to the Client. Export and import of hot keys is performed via files in XML format.

To export hot keys:

1. Select the **Settings** ->**Options** ->**Hot keys** tab (**1**-**2**).



2. Click the **Save to file** button (**3**).
3. Select where to save the file and give it a name.

Export of hot keys is now complete.

To import hot keys:

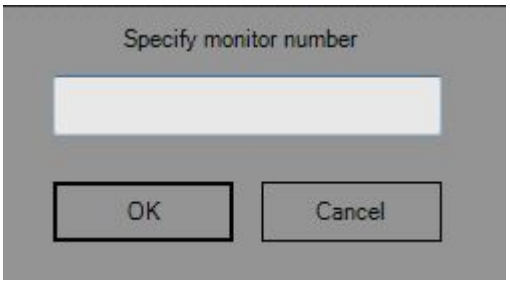
1. Select the **Settings** ->**Options** ->**Hot keys** tab (**1**-**2**).
2. Click the **Load from file** button.
3. Select a file that contains a hot key configuration. Click the **Open** button.
   The hot key combinations are imported into the Client, so long as a valid file is selected.
4. Click the **Apply** button.

Import of hot keys is now complete.

7.10.2.5.4 Notes regarding hot key actions

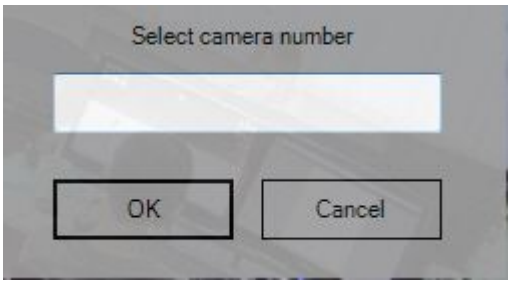
To select an active monitor in a multi-monitor configuration (see Managing monitors on a local Client), click **Select Monitor by number** (Global mode).

When you click the button or press the hotkeys, a window opens, where you can enter the monitor ID.



Enter the monitor ID and click **OK**. This monitor becomes active.

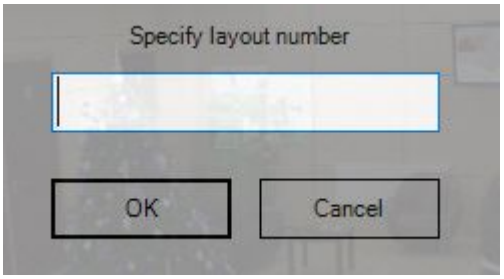
When a key or key combination assigned to the **Camera selection in current layout** action (Global mode) is pressed, the go to camera by ID window opens.



Enter the destination camera's user- friendly ID (see The Video Camera Object), then click **OK**.

If the current layout contains a camera with the specified ID, the relevant viewing tile becomes active. If the current layout does not contain a camera with the specified ID, a minimum layout containing the camera is opened.

If you press hotkeys for **Select layout by number** (Global mode), a window opens requesting you to enter the layout number. The layouts are sorted left to right, starting from 1.



Enter the number of a desired layout, then click **OK**.

If you press hotkeys for **Select layout by ID** (Global mode), a window opens requesting you to enter the layout ID (see Setting a layout ID).

In all other cases, no system actions occur.

Descriptions of other non-trivial actions performed via hot keys are given in the table.

Mode	Action	Description

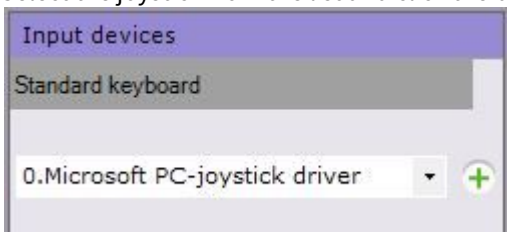
Global (general)	Navigation (up, left, down, right)	Navigate or move within the selected interface element. These keys are active only when a navigable menu or panel/ribbon is open.
	Activate layout ribbon	When this key is pressed, the layout ribbon expands, allowing to navigate between and select layouts. When the ribbon is minimized or a layout is selected, the relevant viewing tile becomes active.
	Activate panel of video walls	When this key is pressed, the panel of video walls expands, allowing to navigate between available monitors. When the panel is minimized, the viewing tile becomes active.
	Activate camera panel	When this key is pressed, the camera panel expands, allowing to navigate between and select cameras. When the panel is minimized or a camera is selected, a viewing tile becomes active.
	Activate panel of configuration	Pressing this key a second time opens the tools panel, on the **Layouts** ribbon.
	Open alarm panel	Pressing this key again minimizes the panel.
	Open panel with hardware list (left)	Pressing this key again minimizes the panel.
Global (map)	Switch to 3D mode	If the map is in 2D mode, clicking this button switches to 3D mode. If the map is in 3D mode, clicking this button hides the map.
Live Video mode	Open the menu of the selected camera and select a menu item.	Pressing this key again closes the menu.
	Switch to Archive mode	If a viewing tile in a layout is active, the archive is opened only for that particular camera. Pressing this key again switches to Live Video mode. If there are no active viewing tiles in the layout, the archive is opened for all cameras in the layout.
Archive viewing and search in archive mode	Go to Search in Archive mode.	Pressing this key again switches to Archive mode.
	Go to the next/previous frame	Holding this key moves forward/backward frame by frame until the key is released.
	Go to the next/previous video clip	Holding this key moves forward/backward between video clips until the key is released
	Go to TimeCompressor mode	Pressing this key again switches to standard archive mode.
	Open list of timeline events	Pressing this key again closes the list.

	Move to next hour Move to next month Move to next timestamp Move to previous hour Move to previous month Move to previous timestamp	Listed are the actions available while operating the Calendar (see Navigating Using the Timeline).

7.10.2.5.5 Joystick Configuration

To configure the joystick, do as follows:

1. Connect the joystick to a computer.
2. Calibrate the joystick.
3. Select the joystick from the list and click the button .



4. Set keyboard shortcuts, and click **Apply**.
5. Configure the sensitivity for PTZ controls:
   a. Start a text processor (i.e. Notepad) and open the file <Joystick_Name> .xml, which is located in C:\Users\<User_Name>\AppData\Local\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\HotKeysXmlConfigurationFiles.
   b. Set the sensitivity for commands in **<Sensitivity>0.2</Sensitivity>**.

```
<HotKeysSchemaDeviceCommands>
<CommandName>DiscreteZoomOut</CommandName>
<HotKey>A2-</HotKey>
<Sensitivity>0.2</Sensitivity>
</HotKeysSchemaDeviceCommands>
```

The sensitivity values range from 0.0 (low sensitivity) to 1.0 (high sensitivity). Please see the commands that have sensitivity settings in the table.

Command	Command description
DiscreteMoveXAxisRight	Pan right (Move right)
DiscreteMoveXAxisLeft	Pan left (Move left)
DiscreteMoveYAxisUp	Tilt up (Move up)
DiscreteMoveYAxisDown	Tilt down (Move down)
DiscreteZoomIn	Zoom in
DiscreteZoomOut	Zoom out
DiscreteFocusNear	Reduce the focal length
DiscreteFocusFar	Increase the focal length
DiscreteIrisOpen	Open the iris

DiscreteIrisClose	Close the iris

Attention!

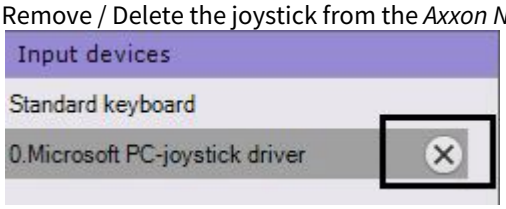
Do not set values outside the range and edit other parameters in the file.

c. Save the changes to the file.

Joystick configuration is now complete.

If the joystick is already configured the specified file does not have the **Sensitivity** parameter, do as follows:

1. Remove / Delete the joystick from the *Axxon Next VMS*.



2. Click the **Apply** button.
3. Add and configure the joystick again.

7.10.2.6 Configuring video capturing on operator monitor

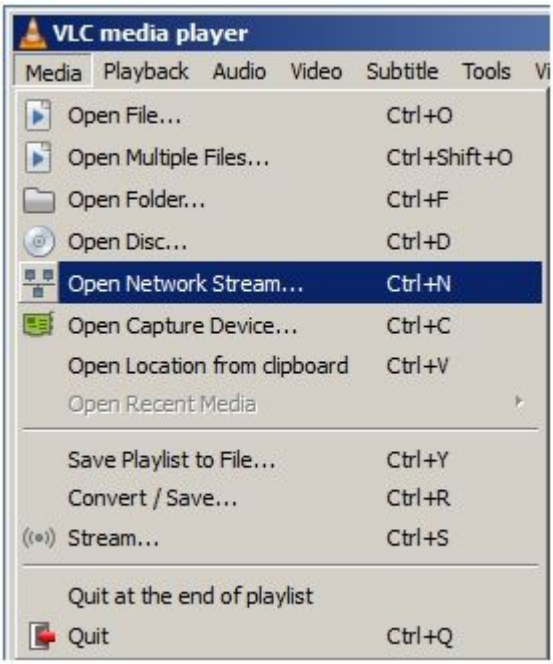
Record of video from computer monitor is performed to control operator actions. Video from computer monitor can be transmitted to the *Axxon Next* software package by general protocols using external programs, for example:

1. By RTSP protocol using the VLC Media Player.
2. By ONVIF protocol using the ScreenOnvif program which can be got in the http://screenonvif.com/en web-site.

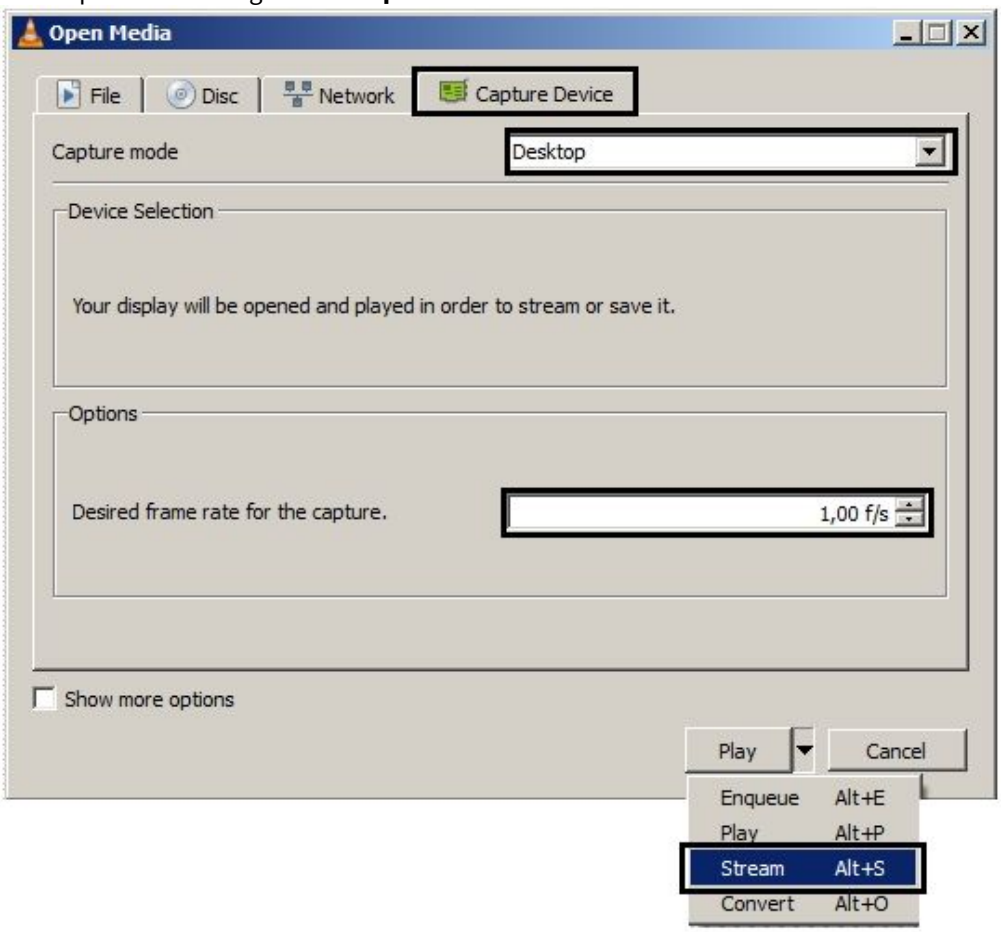
Example of the VLC Media Player configuring for transmitting video from computer monitor to the *Axxon Next* by the RTSP protocol is presented in this section. Configuring of the *Axxon Next* software package to receive and record this video stream is performed by standard means as described in the Configuring an RTSP Server and Configuring recording to an archive sections.

Configuring the VLC Media Player for transmitting video from computer monitor to the *Axxon Next* software package by the RTSP protocol is performed the following way:

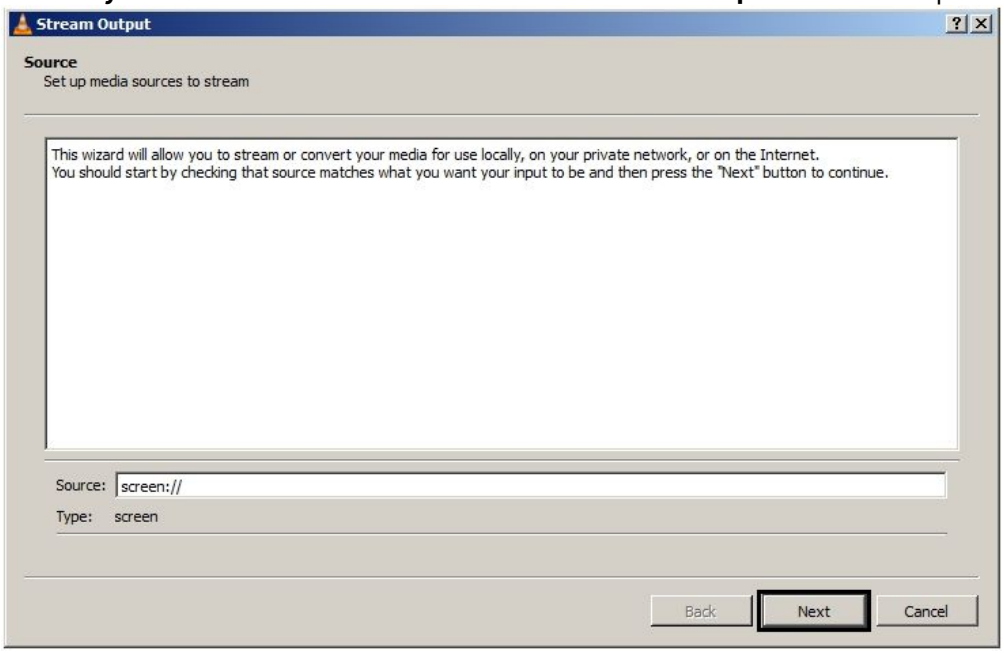
1. Run the VLC Media Player.
2. Select the **Open Network Stream item...** in the **Media** menu.



3. In the opened window go to the **Capture Device** tab.

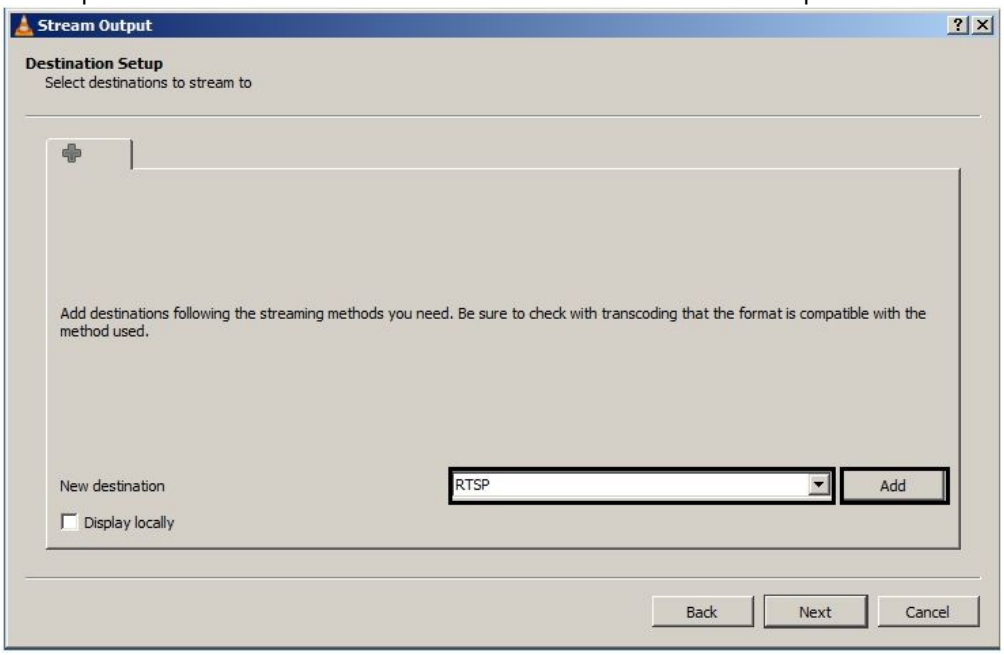


4. In the **Capture mode** drop-down list select the **Desktop** value.
5. Set the desired frame rate for the capture in the corresponding field.
6. In the **Play** list select the **Stream** value. As a result the **Stream Output** window will open.

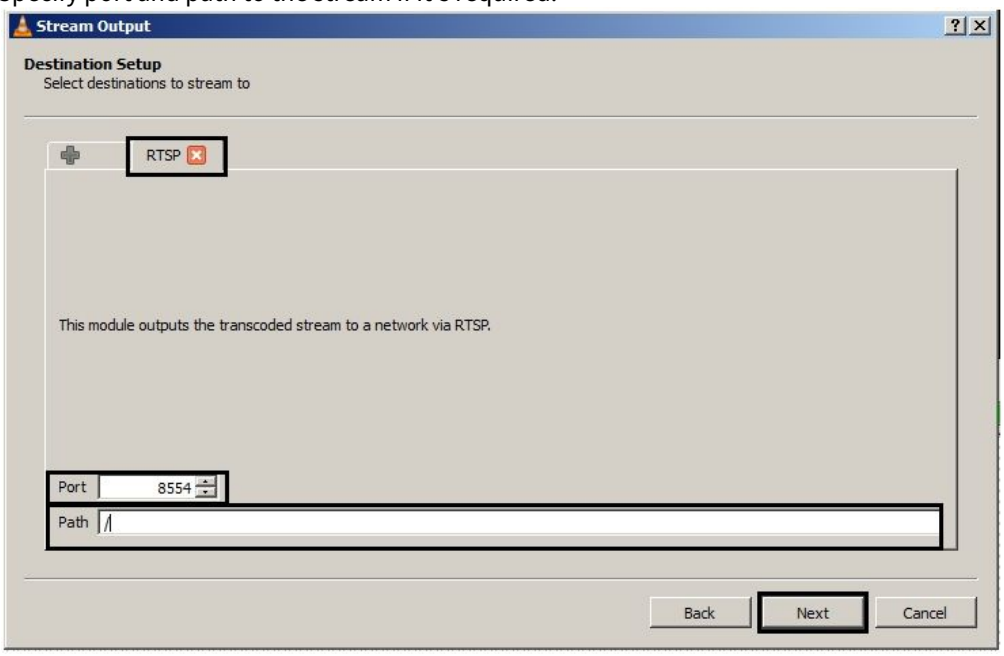


7. Click the **Next** button.

8. In the opened window select the **RTSP** value in the **New destination** drop-down list and click **Add** button.

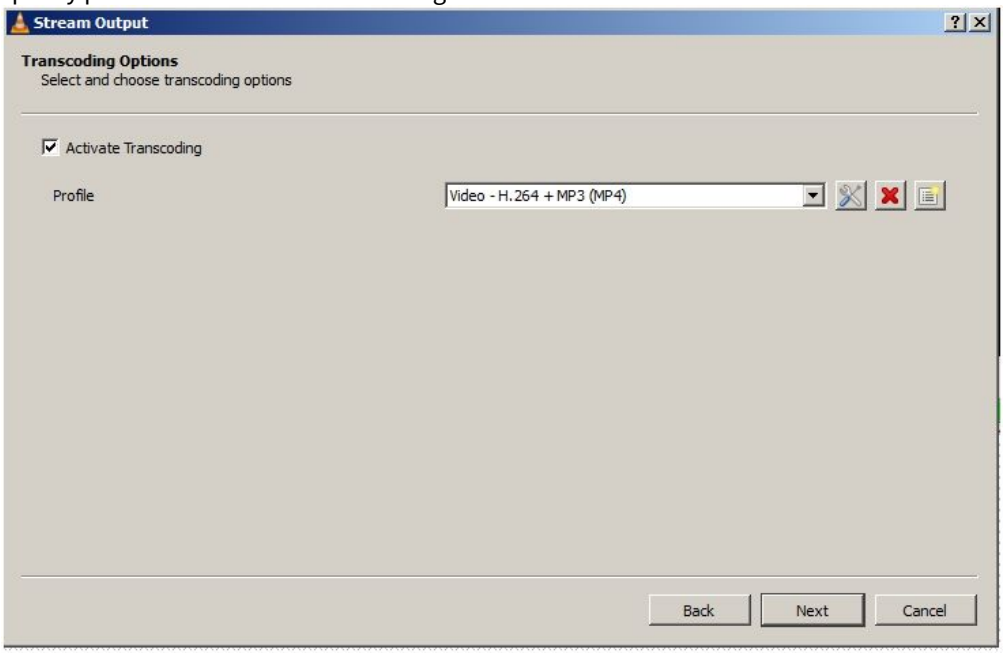


9. Go to the **RTSP** tab.
10. Specify port and path to the stream if it's required.

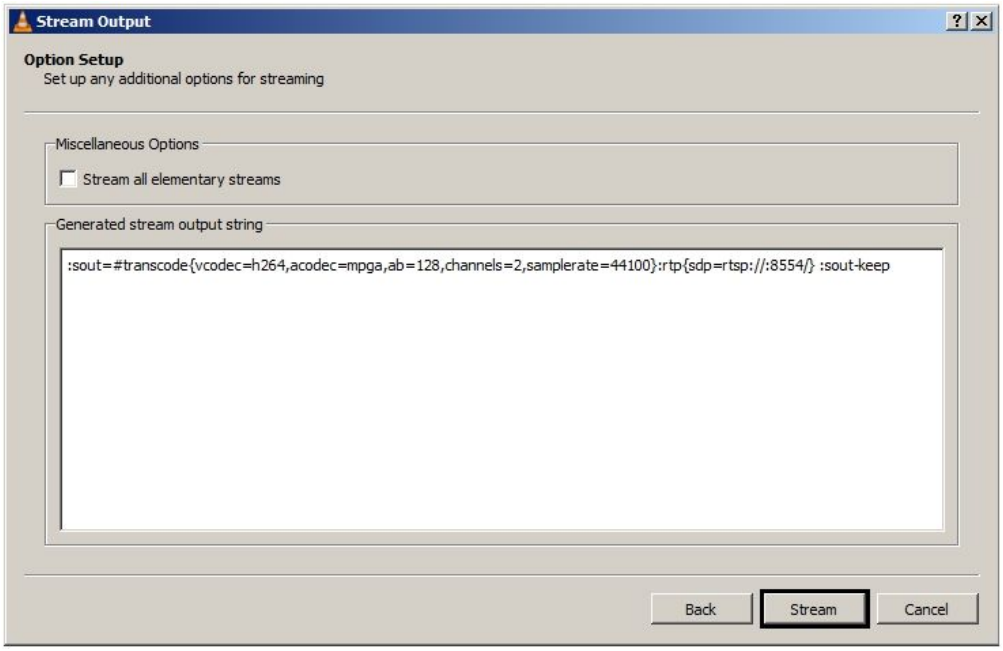


11. Click **Next** button.

12. Specify parameters of video transcoding and click **Next** button.



13. Click **Stream** button in the opened window.



After that configure receiving of the RTSP stream and its record to the archive in the *Axxon Next* software package – see Configuring connection of devices via RTSP and Configuring recording to an archive sections.

Configuring of the VLC Media Player for transmitting video from computer monitor by the RTSP protocol to the *Axxon Next* software package is completed.

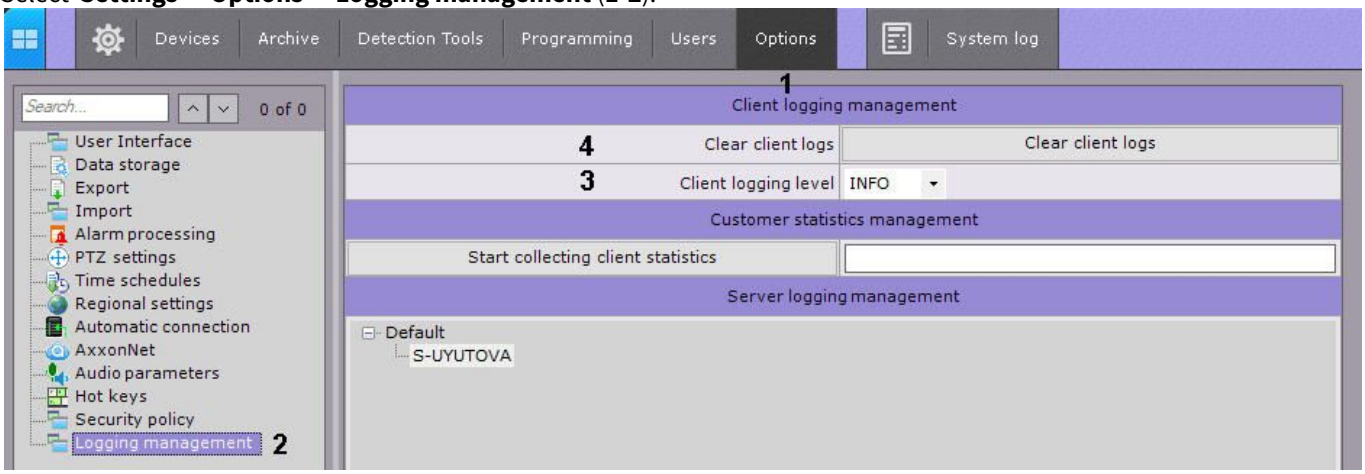
7.10.2.7 Configuring Client logging and statistics collection

By default, the Client logging level is set in a special utility.

You can change the logging level of the Client and restart it for changes to take effect. The next time the Client is started, the logging level will correspond to the new settings in the logging management utility (see Log Management Utility).

To change the logging level of the Client, do as follows:

1. Select **Settings** -> **Options** -> **Logging management** (**1-2**).



2. Select the desired logging level (**3**). Levels are described in more detail here Configuring Logging Levels.
3. Click **Apply**.

To collect client statistics, do the following:

1. Enter the port in field (**4**). The default is port 1.
2. Click the **Start collecting client statistics** button.
3. Click the **Apply** button.

> **Note**
>
> Statistics data are available at the link http://localhost:N+1, where N is the number of the entered port.

To stop collecting client statistics, click the **Stop collecting client statistics** button, which will be displayed instead of the **Start collecting client statistics** button.

You can also delete all the Client logs. Please follow the steps below:

1. Click **Clear client logs** (**4**).
2. Click **Apply**.

7.11 Configuring Failover VMS

7.11.1 General information about a failover system

A failover system automatically prevents data loss when one of the servers in the system fails.

In a failover system, the servers are combined into a logical structure - the cluster.

The Axxon Next Failover system has two types of configuration.

1. The basic configuration allows system supervisors to permit launching Axxon Next servers (nodes) on any Servers within the system.

   > **Note**
   >
   > While selecting a Server to transfer a node to, the supervisor tries to keep in balance the whole cluster's performance. If all Servers deliver more or less the same performance, the selection is performed randomly. If Servers significantly differ in their performance, the supervisor may launch several nodes on a more capable Server, and no nodes on a less capable one.

2. In the configuration with the specified backup Server, a node from the primary Server can be migrated only to the backup Server. After the primary Server is back online, the node is returned.

Node migration is automatic and takes no more than one minute.

Note

In a system counting 100 cameras, the node is transferred in less than one minute in both Failover System configuration types. All Servers within the system have identical specifications: Intel i5-7400 3GHz 4-core CPU, 16Gb RAM.

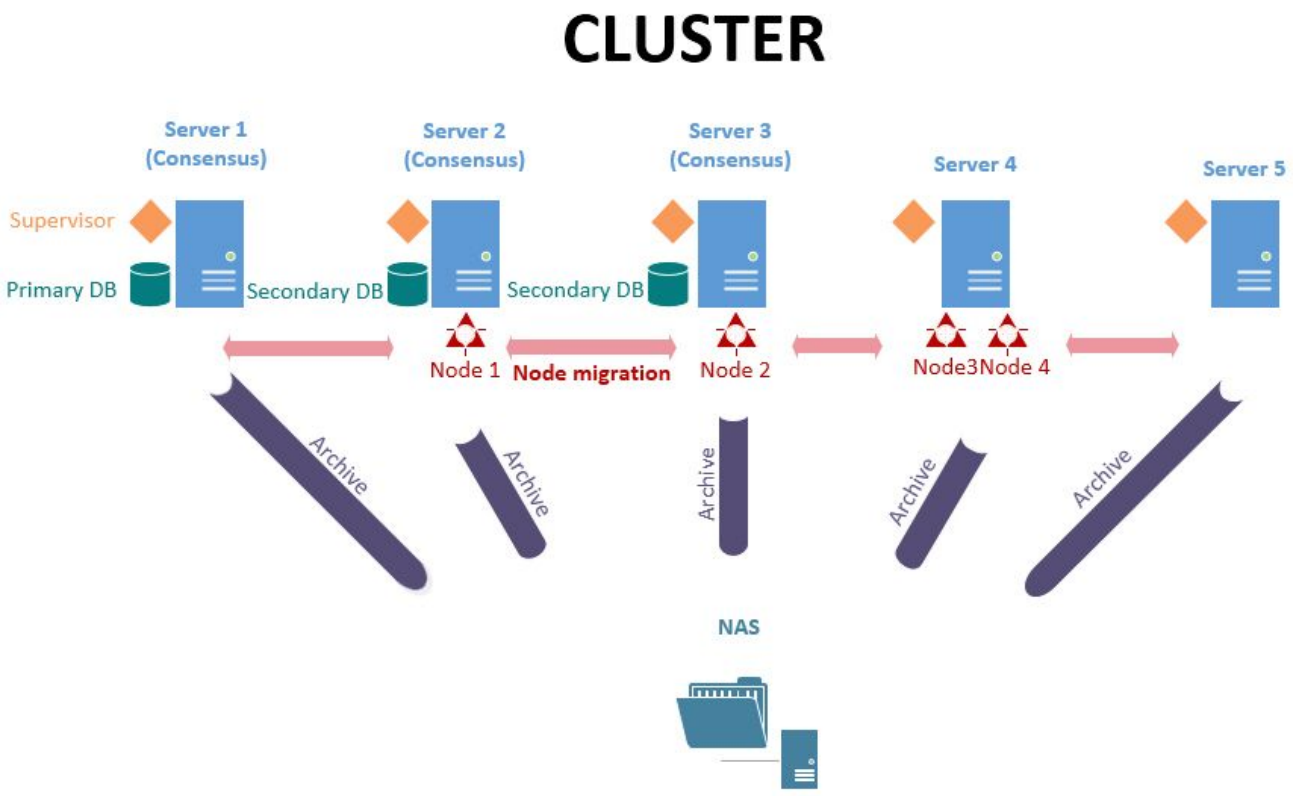
This section contains the following terms:

- **Server** -a computer with **Failover Server and Client** configuration of Axxon Next installed.
- **Node**- an instance of the Server services. A Server can have multiple nodes running.
- **Cluster**- logical grouping of Servers that allows migration of clusters between them. A cluster may encompass nodes from different Axxon domains.
- **Supervisor**- the service that monitors the status of nodes and their migration.

To implement Failover in your system, we strongly recommend that:

- The system administrator should have full control over all communication channels and hardware that provides fault tolerance at all times.
- You should build a cluster from servers in the same LAN.
- Use only the network archives, that are available from all servers in the cluster.

Example:



7.11.2 Ports used by the failover system

Each failover system server uses the following ports:

- 4000 (Supervisor Web Interface, only TCP).
- 4646 (Nomad HTTP API, only TCP).
- 4647 (Nomad RPC, only TCP).
- 4648 (Nomad LAN/WAN Serf (Gossip), TCP and UDP).
- 8300 (Consul Server RPC, only TCP).
- 8301 (Consul LAN Serf (Gossip), TCP and UDP).
- 8302 (Consul WAN Serf (Gossip), TCP and UDP).
- 8500 (Consul HTTP API, only TCP).

- 8600 (Consul DNS, TCP and UDP).

Moreover, each node of the cluster has its pre-defined unique port range (see Installation).
For best results, use port numbers from 20111 to 32000.

7.11.3 Supervisor Web Interface

You can configure a failover system in the Supervisor Web interface at http://localhost:4000.

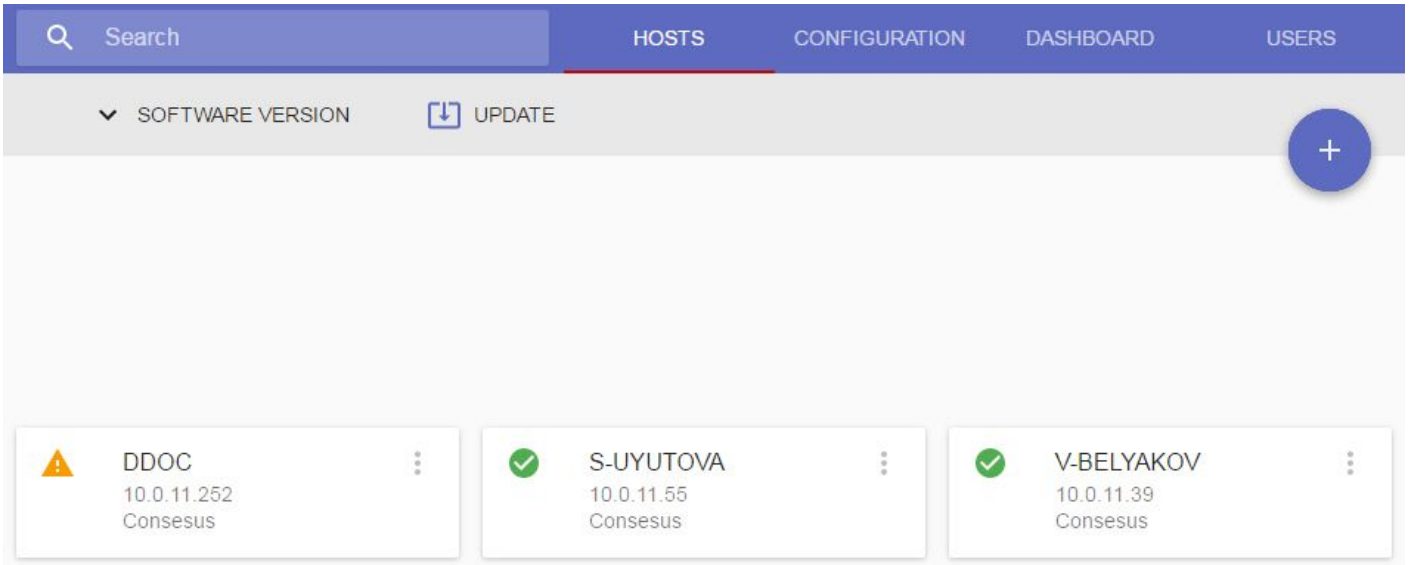
Note

After installation, a shortcut is added to your desktop.

On Linux OS, no additional shortcuts are created after installation. To access the supervisor web interface, go to http://localhost:4000.

The Supervisor Web interface has 4 tabs:

1. **Hosts** - Creating a Cluster.
2. **Configuration** - Failover Database, Configure a Failover System Cluster.
3. **Dashboard** - Cluster Monitoring.
4. **Users** - Set up access to a supervisor.



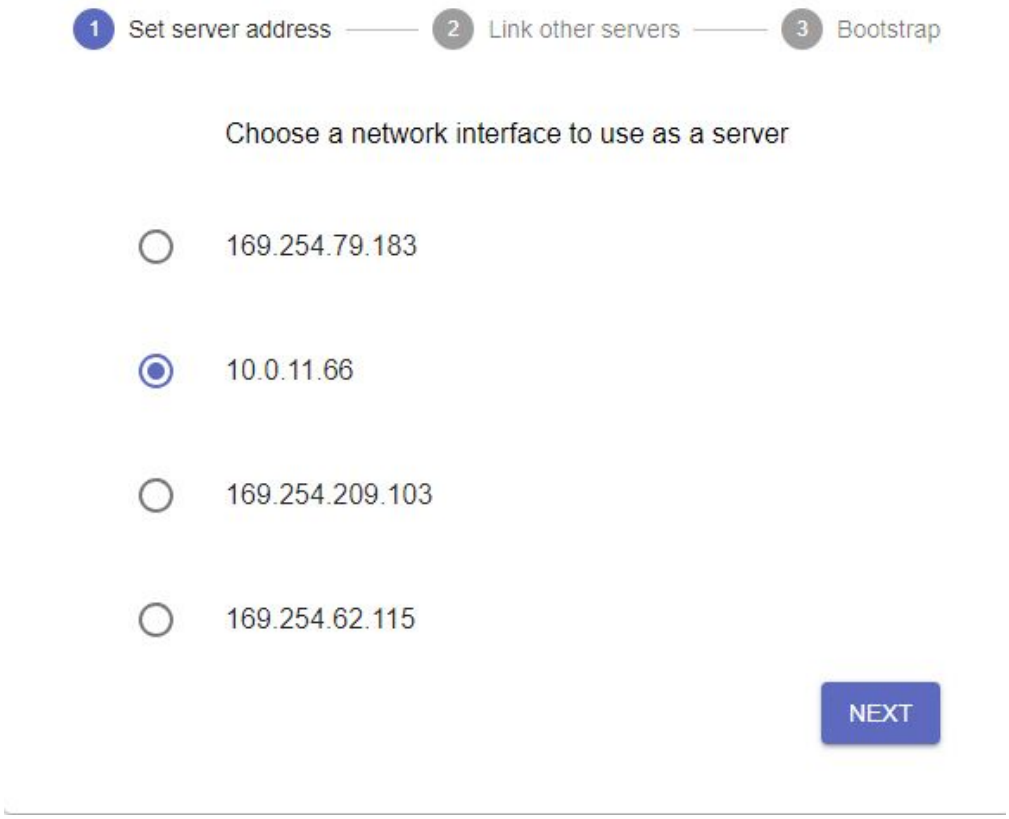
To find out your version of *Axxon Next* and *Driverpack*, click **Software version**.

To search hosts and servers, enter their names in the search bar in the **Host** tab or **Dashboard** tabs at the top of the window.

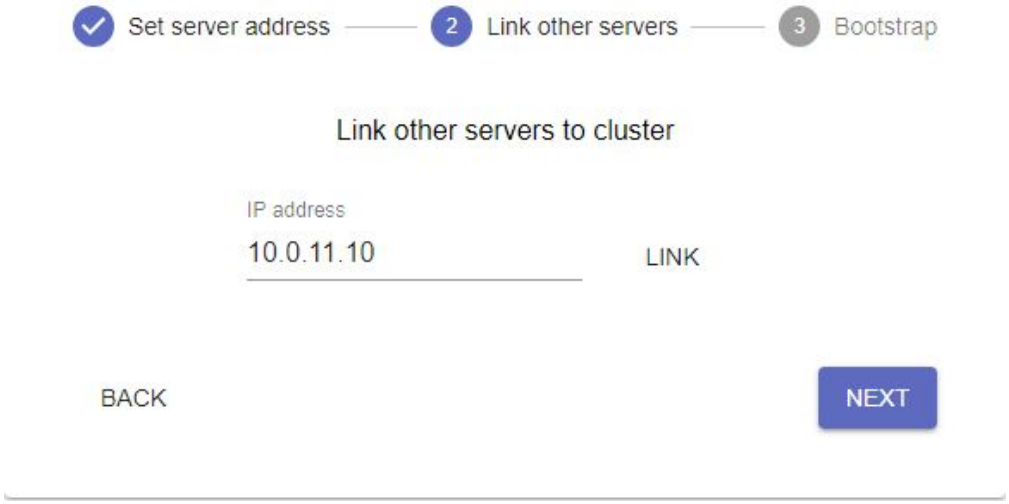
7.11.4 Creating a Cluster

The first time you launch the Supervisor, you should initialize the cluster. To do this:

1. Select the Server's IP address from the list and click **Next**.



2. Add the required Servers to the cluster. To do this, enter the IP address and click **Link**.



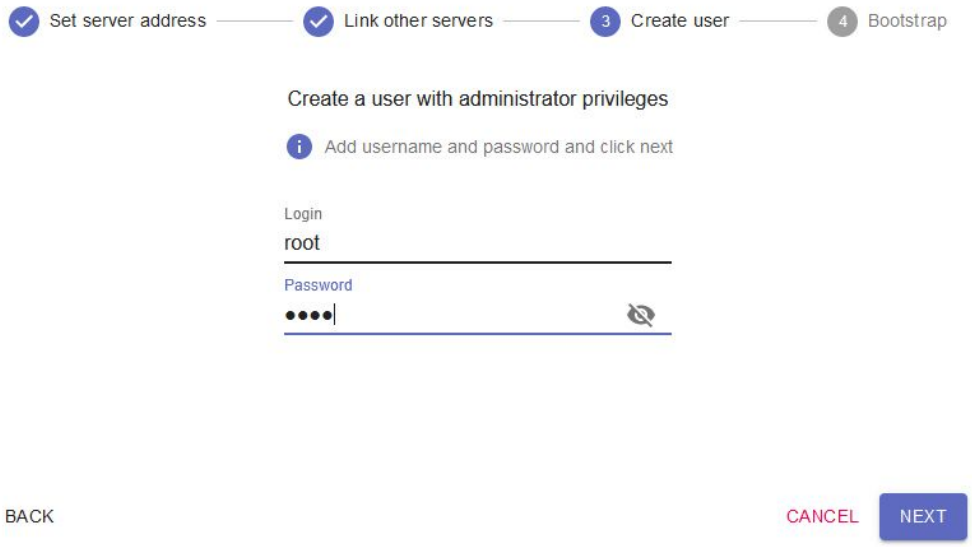
Attention!

All Cluster servers must be accessible to each other.
All servers must be hosted on computers with the same architecture (x 86, x 64).

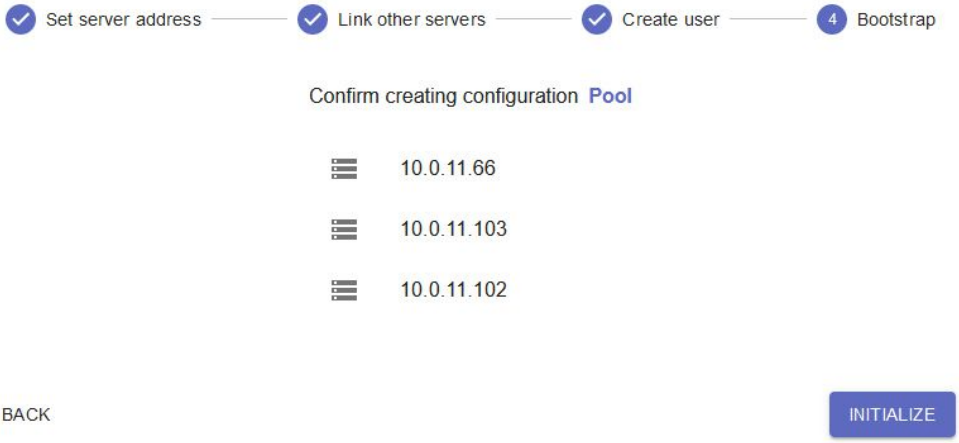
Attention!

The first three Servers added become the master Servers.
The operation of the cluster is coordinated by its master Servers, which, in particular, take decisions to migrate nodes from one Server to another.
You can have 3 or master servers in the cluster.
If only two Servers are added, they can be configured as **1+1** (primary + backup Server).

3. If required, you can add a user with administrator rights. After the cluster is created, only this user will have access to the supervisor. Please follow the steps below:
   a. Click the **Add** button.



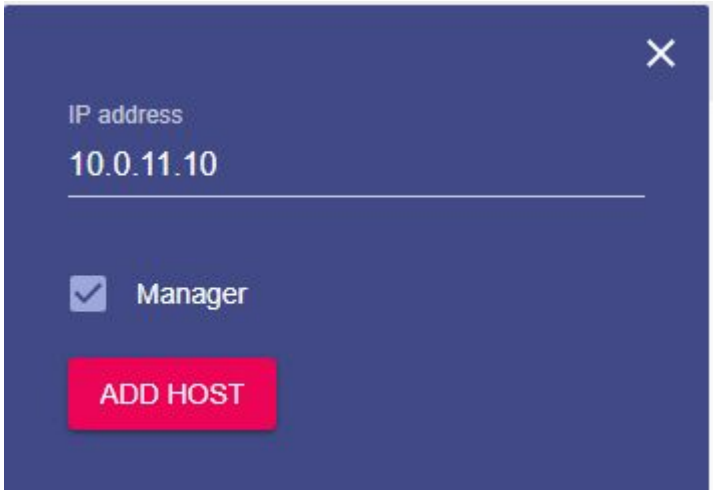
   b. Enter access credentials and click the **Next** button.
4. After you added all servers, click the **Initialize** button.



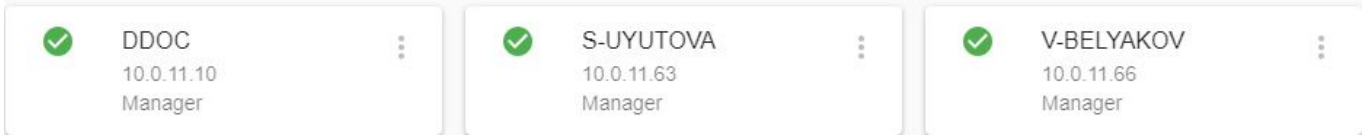
This will initialize the cluster based on the selected Servers. To add more Servers to the cluster, do the following:

1. On the **Hosts** tab, click .

2. Enter the IP address of the server (**1**).



3. If the server you are adding is master, select the **Manager** checkbox (**2**).
4. Click **Add Host** (**3**).
5. Add all required Servers.



Note

To remove a server from the cluster, click ⋮ and then Remove.

Attention!

To change the IP addresses of the server in the cluster, do as follows:

1. Remove the server from the cluster.
2. Change the IP address of the server.
3. Add the server with a new IP address.

7.11.5 Failover Database

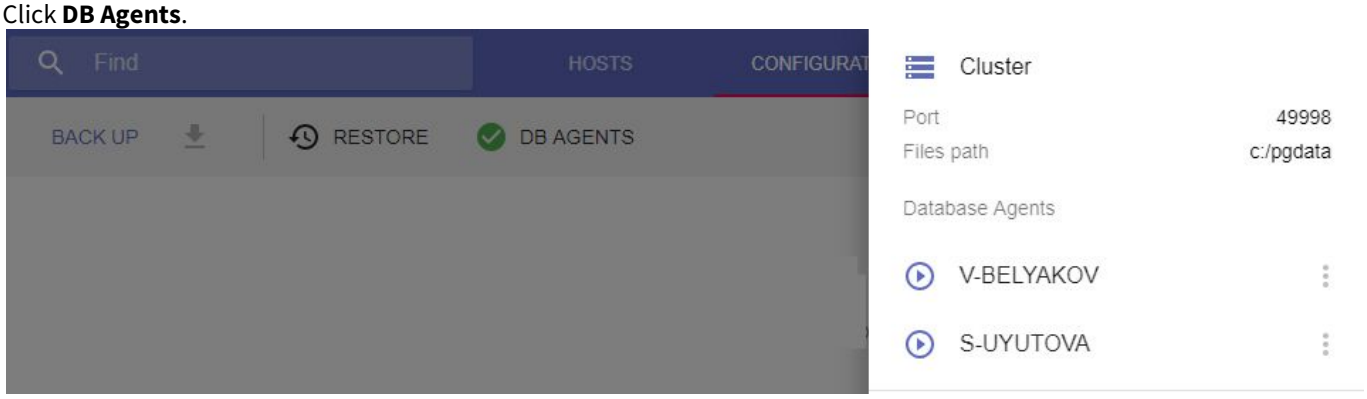
By default, the database is created automatically when the cluster is initialized, and its agents are launched on the master Servers.

The database is located in the C:\pgdata folder and uses port 49998.

To manage database agents, do the following:

1. Go to the **Configuration** tab.

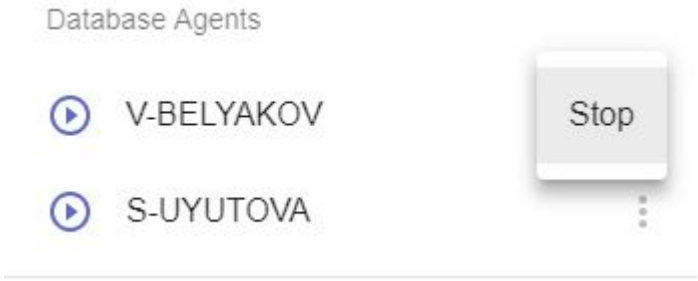
2. Click **DB Agents**.



3. The icon next to the Server indicates the current status of the agent.

Icon	Status
	Launch expected
	Launched
	Stopped

4. Click to stop or launch the agent, and select the required action.



7.11.6 Configure a Failover System Cluster

A failover system can be configured two ways:

1. Basic configuration. There are no pre-assigned backup Servers in this configuration. The supervisor independently decides where to host a particular node. Only network archives can be used in this configuration.
2. Configuration with the specified backup Server. In this configuration, a backup server is assigned to host a node which for some reason cannot operate on its primary server. Along with network archives, local archives can be used in this configuration.

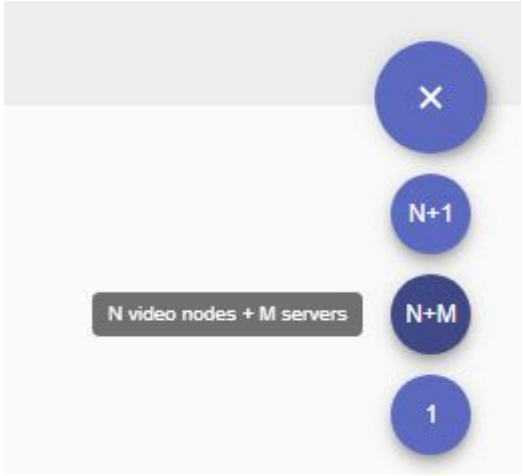
In addition, you can create independent nodes.

7.11.6.1 Setting up basic configuration

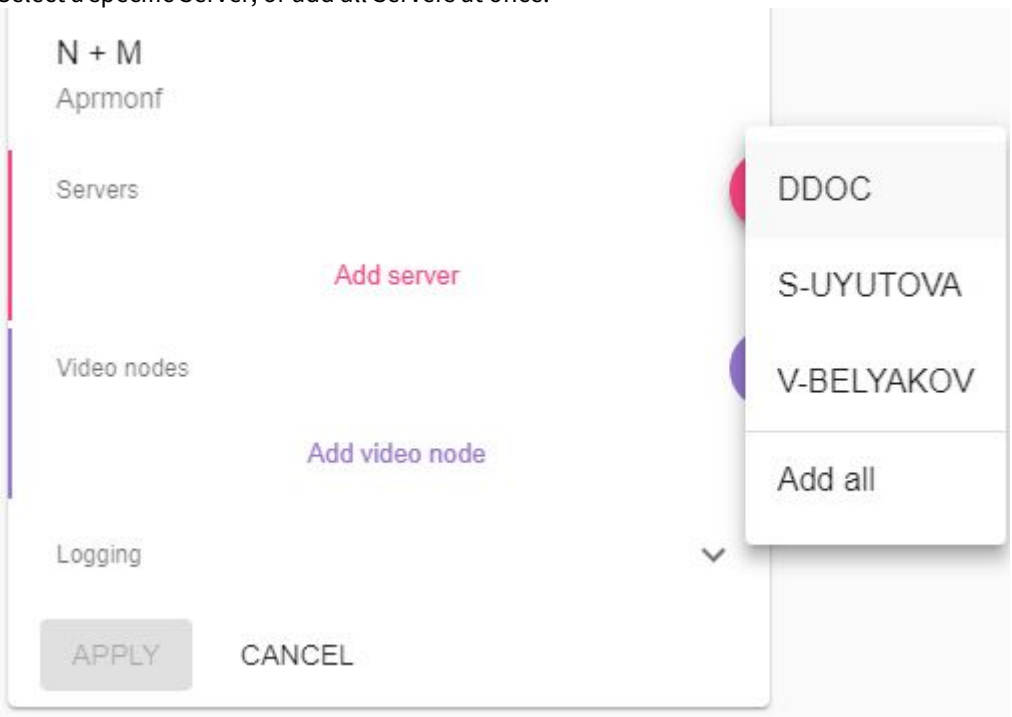
To set up a basic configuration of a Failover system, do the following:

1. Go to the **Configuration** tab.

2. Hover the mouse cursor over the + button and click the **N+M** button.



3. Add Servers to the configuration.
   a. Click +.
   b. Select a specific Server, or add all Servers at once.



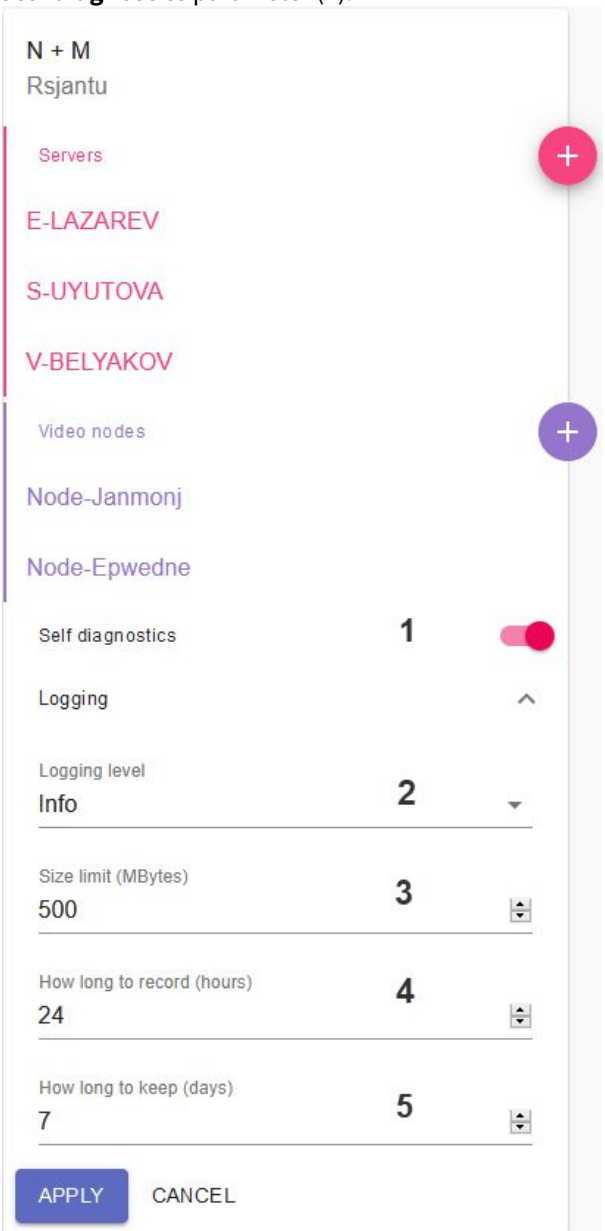
4. Create nodes:
   a. Click +.
   b. Enter the node name and click the **Proceed** button.

> **Attention!**
>
> A node name may contain Latin and numerical characters, and the "-" symbol.

c. Create the required number of nodes.

> **Attention!**
>
> The number of nodes should be less than the number of Servers.

5. By default, the self-diagnostics service is running on all nodes (see Self-diagnostics service). To stop it, de-activate the **Self-diagnostics** parameter (**1**).

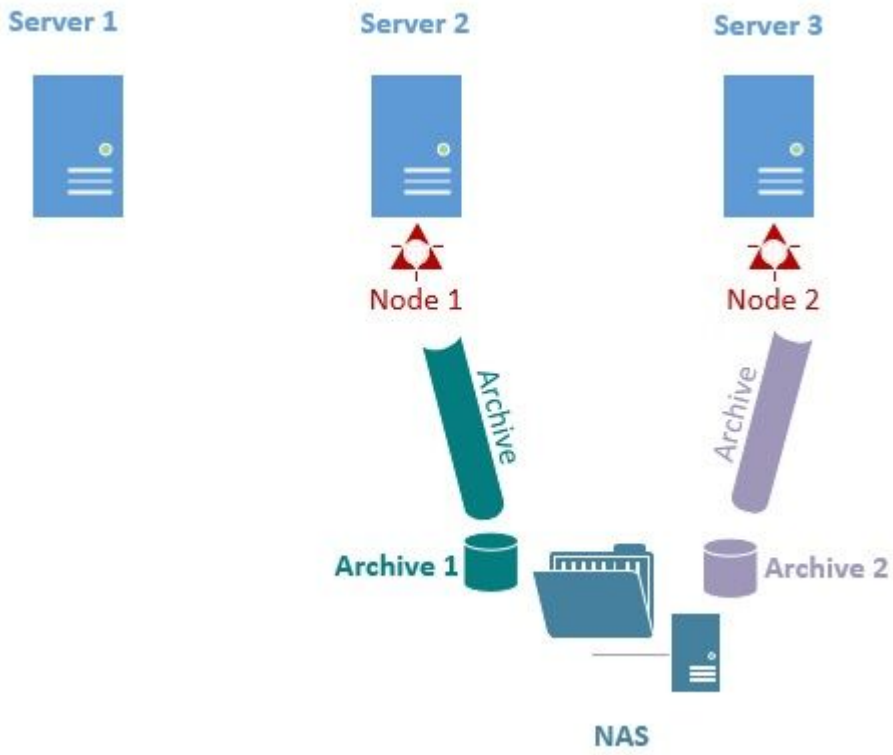


6. Click the **Logging** button to set the logging options:
   a. Select Logging Level (**2**, see Configuring Logging Levels).
   b. Set the settings for the archive of logs (**3**-**5**, see Configuring a Log Archive).
7. Click the **Apply** button.

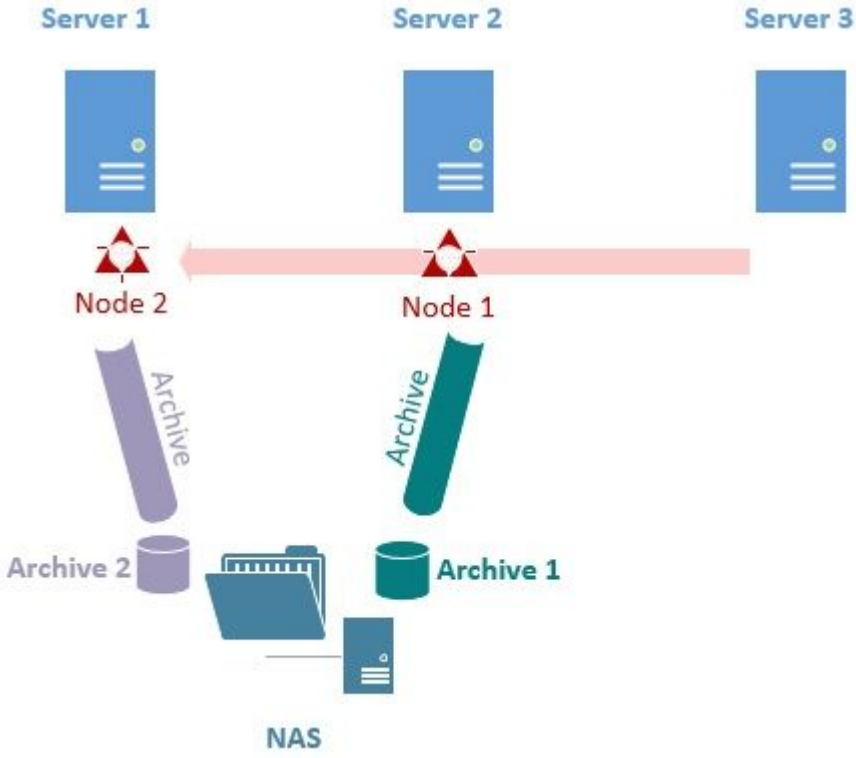
   The configuration is now created, and the nodes are now automatically started.
8. Merge all nodes into a single Axxon domain (see Connecting to a Node and Configuring of an Axxon domain).

9. In a Failover system, we recommend you to physically locate the footage archive on a separate NAS that all servers in the cluster have access to.

For each node, create a separate archive on the NAS (see Creating a network archive).



If the node is moved to a different server, it will continue to write to the specified archive.



The basic configuration of the Failover system is now complete.

If necessary, you can further edit the configuration. To do so, click . You can perform the following actions:

- add / remove Servers;
- add / delete nodes;
- activate / de-activate the self-diagnostics service;
- change logging parameters;
- completely remove the configuration.

To manually stop or launch a node, click and select the required action.

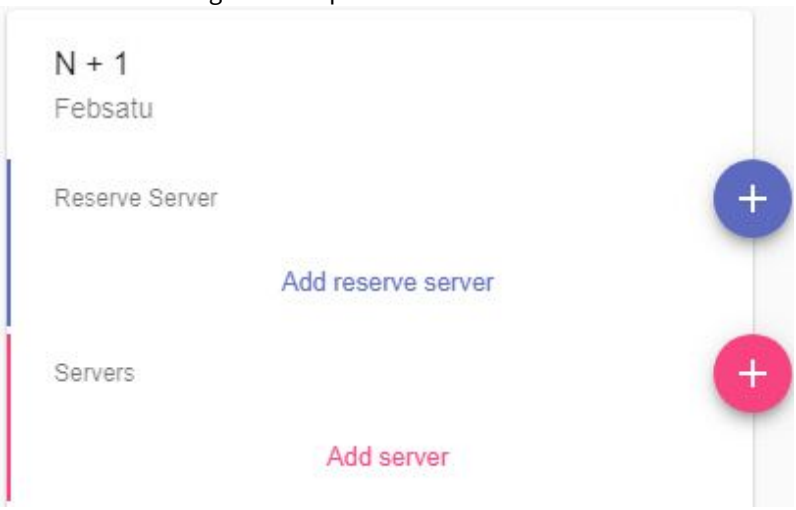
7.11.6.2 Setting up a configuration with the backup Server

A configuration with the backup Server can include two or more Servers.

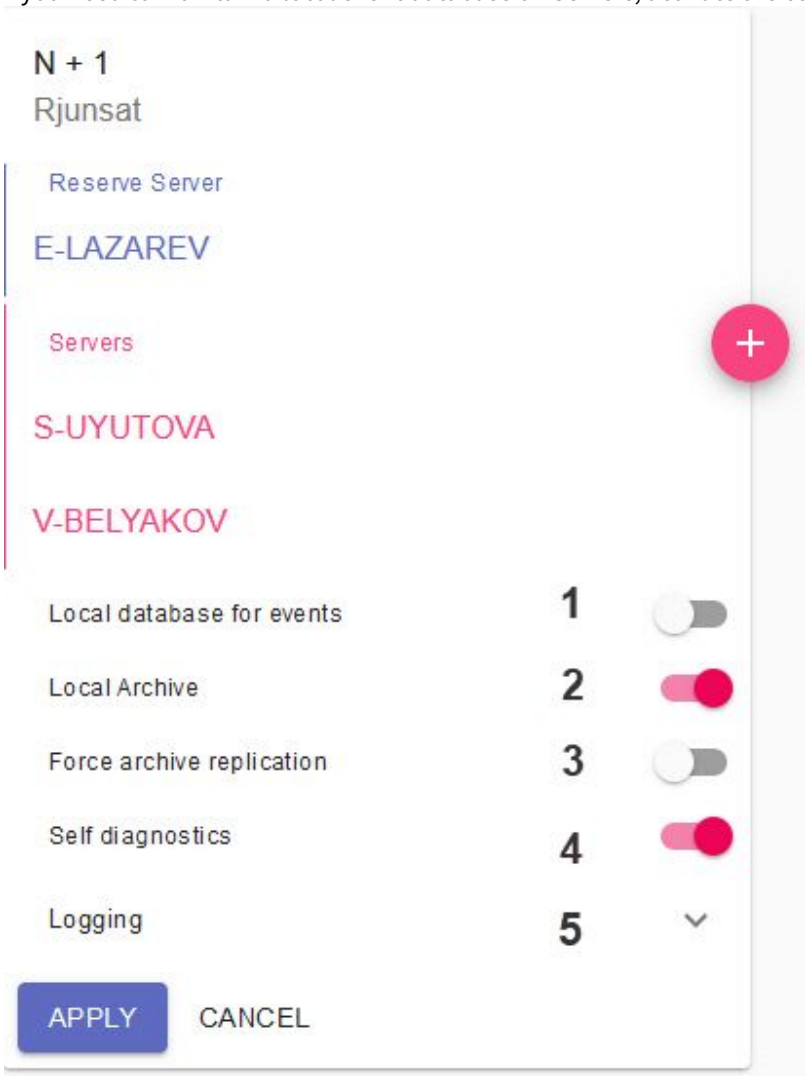
To set up the configuration, do the following:

1. Hover the mouse cursor over the button and click the **N+1** button.

2. Click and assign a backup Server.



3. Click and add primary Servers.
4. If you need to maintain a local event database on Servers, activate the corresponding switch (**1**).



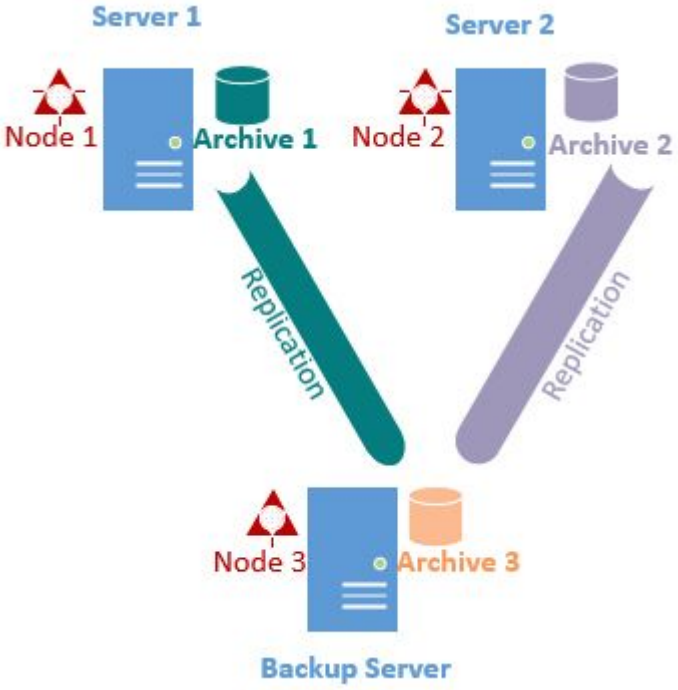
5. If you need to maintain local footage archives on primary Servers, activate the corresponding switch (**2**).

Attention!

The local video footag will be created as a 10 GB file located in the C:/temp_arch folder. If the node is migrated from a primary Server to a backup one, video data will be recorded to this file and replicated to the main Archive (video footage) on the backup Server (see paragraph 10).

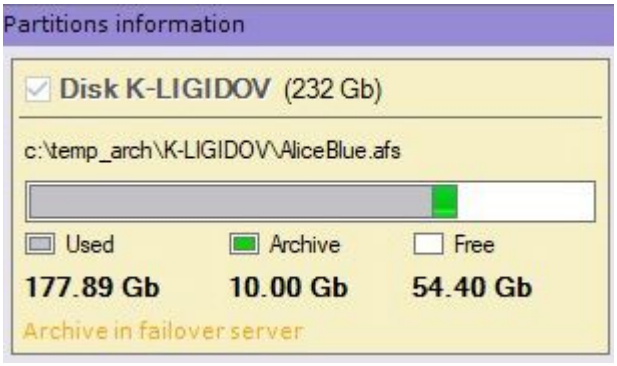
6. If you need to replicate local archives to the backup Server on permanent basis, activate the corresponding switch (**3**). Otherwise, the replication will be performed only when the corresponding node is migrated to the backup server.
7. By default, the self-diagnostics service is running on all nodes (see Self-diagnostics service). To stop it, de-activate the **Self-diagnostics** parameter (**4**).
8. Click the **Logging** button to set the logging options (**5**, see Setting up basic configuration).
9. Click the **Apply** button.
   The configuration is now created, and the nodes are now automatically started. "Failover" string will be automatically added to the name of the backup node.

10. Merge all nodes into a single Axxon domain (see Connecting to a Node and Configuring of an Axxon domain).
11. Configure the footage archives operation:
    a. On the backup node, create an archive for replication (see Creating archives).
    b. On the primary nodes, configure the replication from the primary Servers' archives to the backup node's archive. The replication period should be set to **Always** (see Configuring data replication). You have to set the replication time period to **Always** regardless of the value of the **Forced Replication** parameter (see paragraph **6**).



Configuration of the Failover system is now complete.

When a node is migrated to the Failover Server, the latter creates a temporary 10 GB archive in C:\temp_arch which Axxon Next refers to as **Archive in Failover Server**.

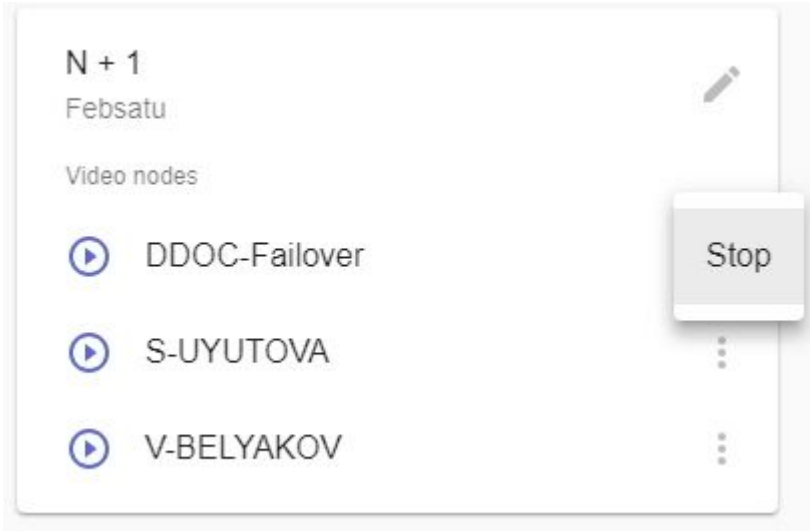


Its records will be replicated to Backup Server's main archive (see **Archive 3** on the picture above) .

If necessary, you can further edit the configuration. To do so, click . You can perform the following actions:

- add / remove Servers;
- add / delete nodes;
- activate / de-activate the self-diagnostics service;
- change logging parameters;
- completely remove the configuration.

To manually stop or launch a node, click and select the required action.



7.11.6.3 Creating and configuring independent nodes

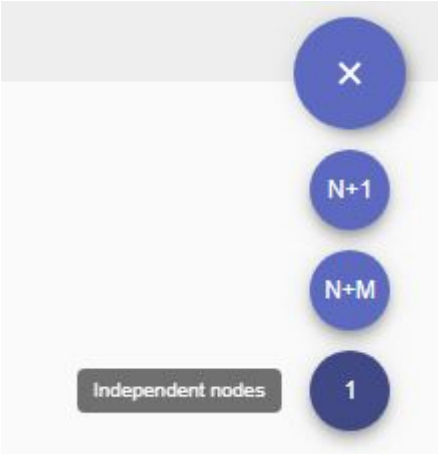
You can host separate nodes on cluster's Servers which are not used by any configuration.

Failover doesn't cover these nodes since they rely on local databases. If the host Server fails, the nodes can not be migrated.

To create an independent node, do as follows:

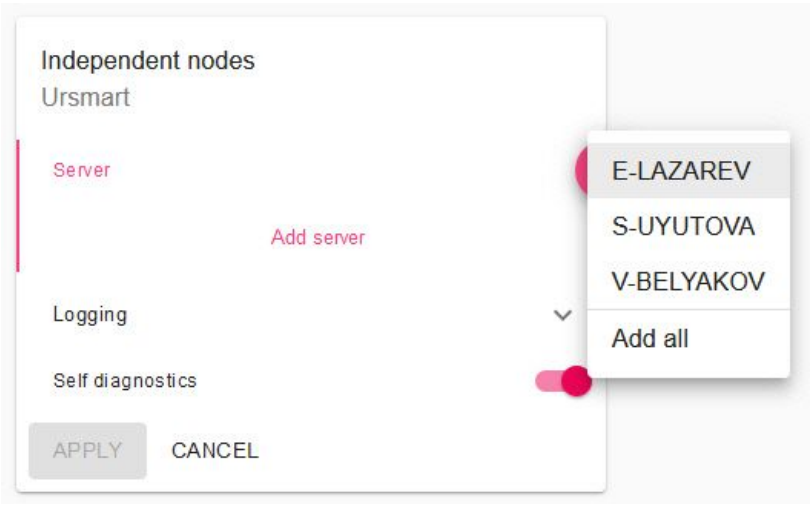
1. Go to the **Configuration** tab.

2. Point the cursor at + and click **1**.



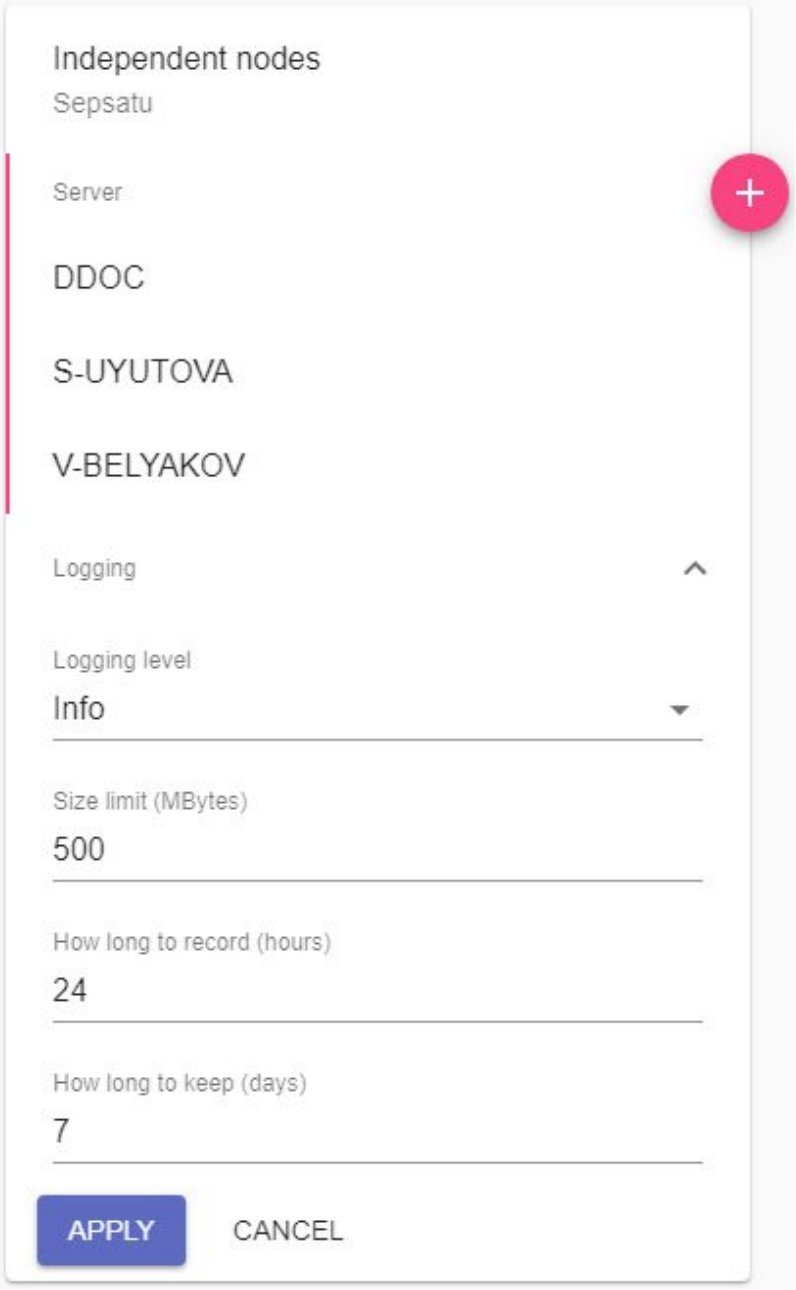
3. Click + and select Servers where independent nodes should be launched.

> **Attention!**
>
> You can create only one independent node on each server.



4. By default, the self-diagnostics service is running (see Self-diagnostics service). To stop it, de-activate the **Self-diagnostics** parameter (**1**).

5. Click the **Logging** button to set the logging options (see Setting up basic configuration).

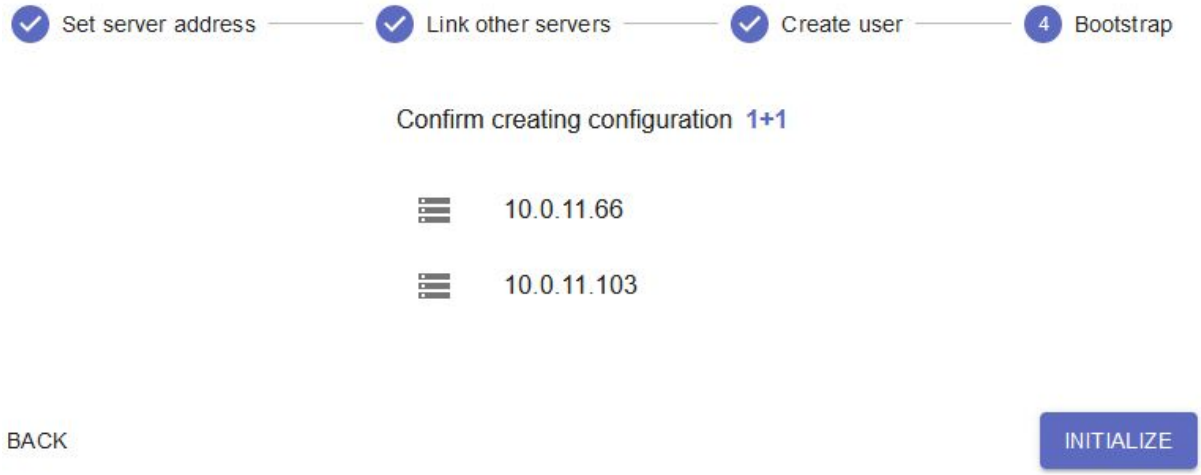


6. Click the **Apply** button.

The nodes are now created; they should start automatically.

7.11.6.4 1+1 Cluster Configuration

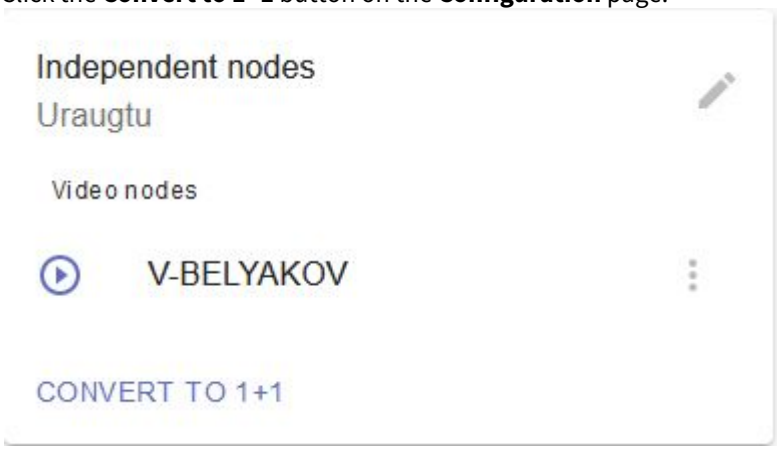
Before setting up a cluster in this configuration, you have to initialize the cluster after two Servers have been added.



In this case, the primary node will reside on the Server from which the cluster was initialized.

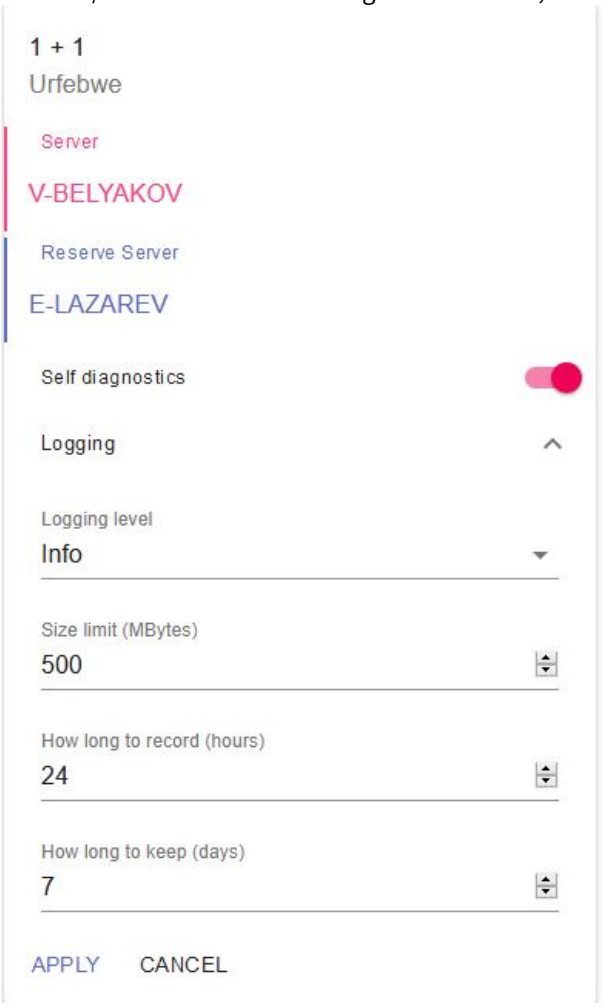
If a cluster has been initialized on one Server only:

1. Add the second Server to the configuration.
2. Click the **Convert to 1+1** button on the **Configuration** page.



If necessary, you can further edit the configuration. To do so, click . You can perform the following actions:

- activate / de-activate the self-diagnostics service;



- change logging parameters;

In this configuration, a local Archive (video footage) will be automatically created as a 10 GB file located in the C:/temp_arch folder.

If a node is transferred to a backup Server, the primary archive must be replicated as a backup archive. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. On the backup node, create an archive for replication (see Creating archives).
2. On the primary nodes, configure the replication from the primary Servers' archives to the backup node's archive. The replication period should be set to **Always** (see Configuring data replication). You have to set the replication time period to **Always**.

Note

Further changes in the configuration may include only logging parameters. To do this, click the button .

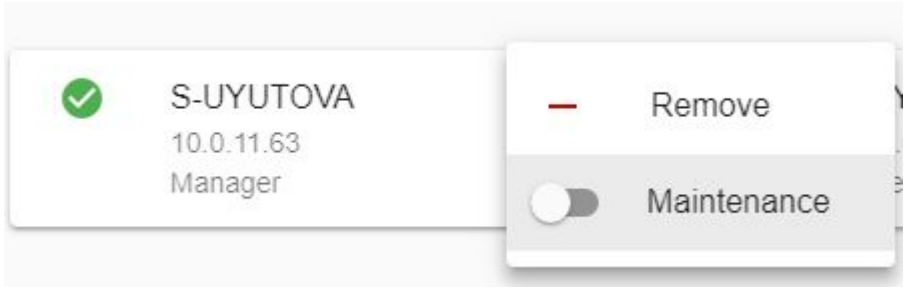
Attention!

If the backup Server fails while the system is running, you cannot stop the primary node.
If the backup server is down, the primary node will not restart.

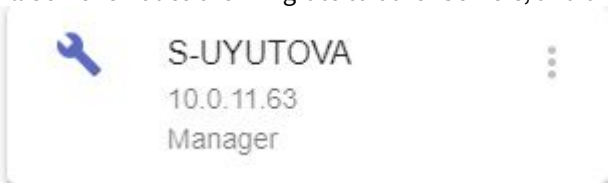
7.11.6.5 Suspending a Server within a cluster

In some cases, you may need to temporarily suspend the operation of a Server within a cluster. To do this:

1. Open the Server menu on the **Configuration** page.
2. Activate the **Maintenance** switch.



All Server's nodes then migrate to other Servers, and the status of the Server is updated.

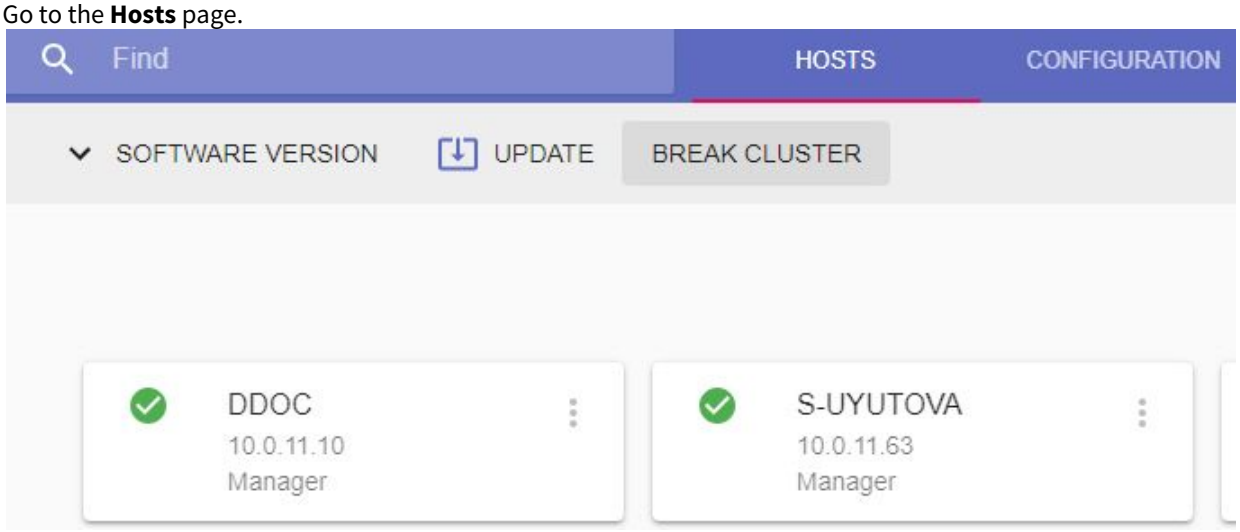


To resume the Server's operation within the cluster, toggle the Service switch to its initial position.

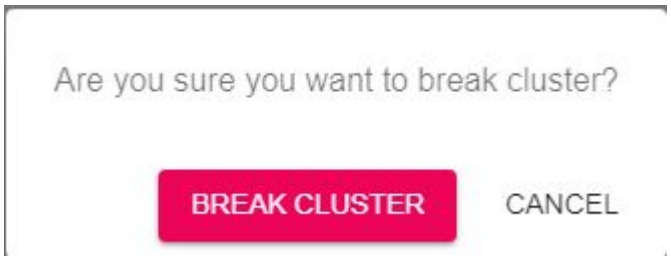
7.11.6.6 Disbanding a cluster

To disband a cluster, do the following:

1. Go to the **Hosts** page.



2. Click the **Break Cluster** button.
3. Confirm the action.



The cluster is now disbanded.

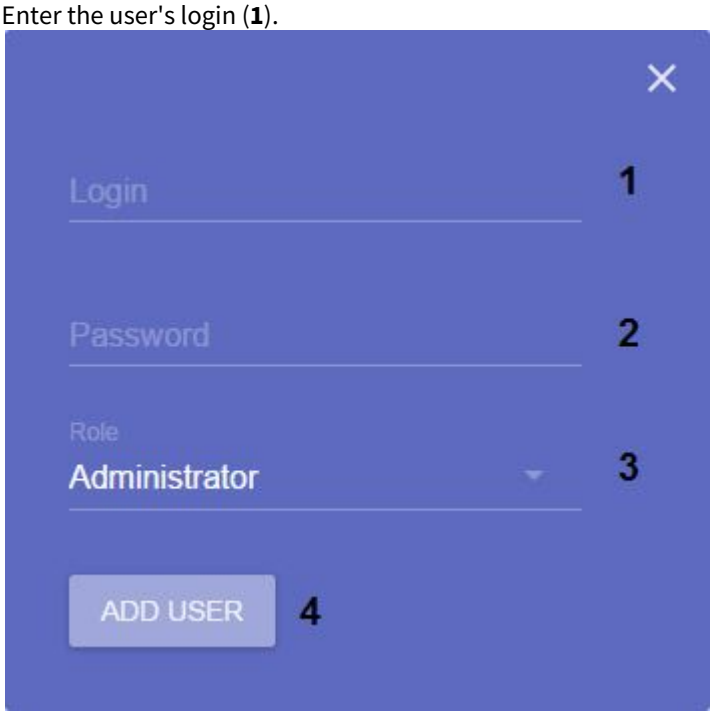
7.11.7 Set up access to a supervisor

When you launch the supervisor for the first time and create the cluster, you can create a user with the **Administrator** role (see Creating a Cluster).

In the future, you can create users with two roles: **Administrator** or **Operator**. Administrators have full access to the cluster configuration while operators can only view the configuration and monitor the state of the system.

Users can created in the **Users** tab. To create a user:

1. Click the + button.
2. Enter the user's login (**1**).

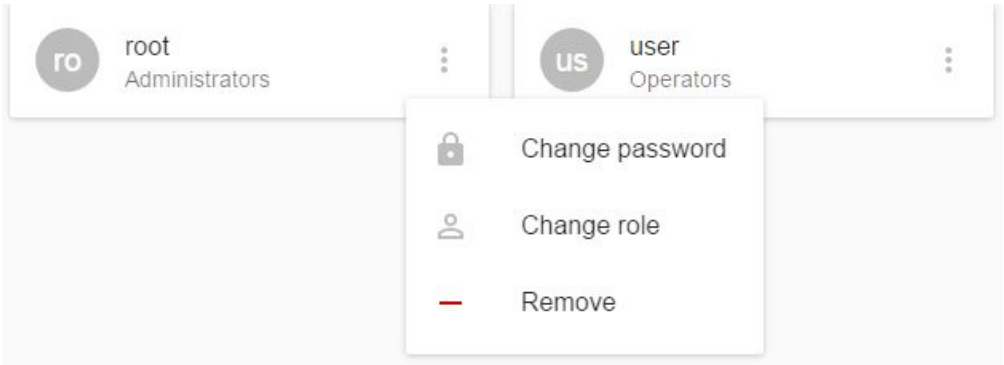


3. Enter the user's password (**2**).
4. Select the role to which the user will be added (**3**).

> **Note**
>
> The first user you create will be automatically added to the **Administrators** role

5. Click the **Add User** button (**4**).

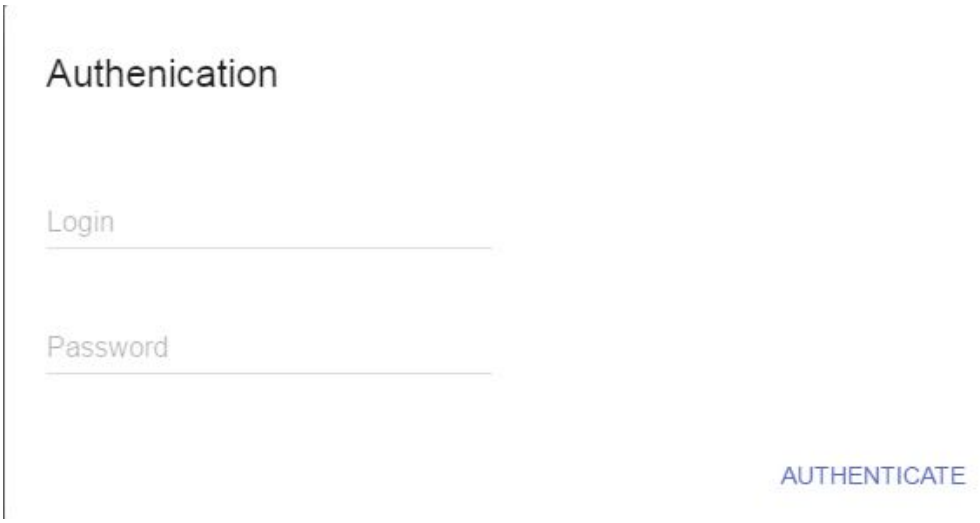
User creation is complete. Click ⋮ to edit the user.



The following operations are allowed:

- Change password.
- Change role.
- Delete user.

If at least one user was created, then the authentication is required when connecting to the Supervisor web interface.



7.11.8 Configuration backup and restore for failover VMS

You can back up your cluster, DBs, and nodes configuration and restore it.

By default, backup copies of the cluster configuration are created each 24 hours on each Manager Server. If a backup copy was created by operator's command, the next automatic backup will be performed not earlier than after 24 hours.

> **Attention!**
>
> The object trajectory DB cannot be backed up. In the event of server hardware failure, all metadata stored in the database will be lost irretrievably.

To create a backup:

1. Go to the **Configuration** tab.
2. Click the **Back up** button (**1**) and download the backup by clicking the button.

To restore a configuration from a backup:

Create a cluster first.

1. Go to the **Configuration** tab.
2. Click the **Restore** button (**2**) and select the file with the configuration backup.

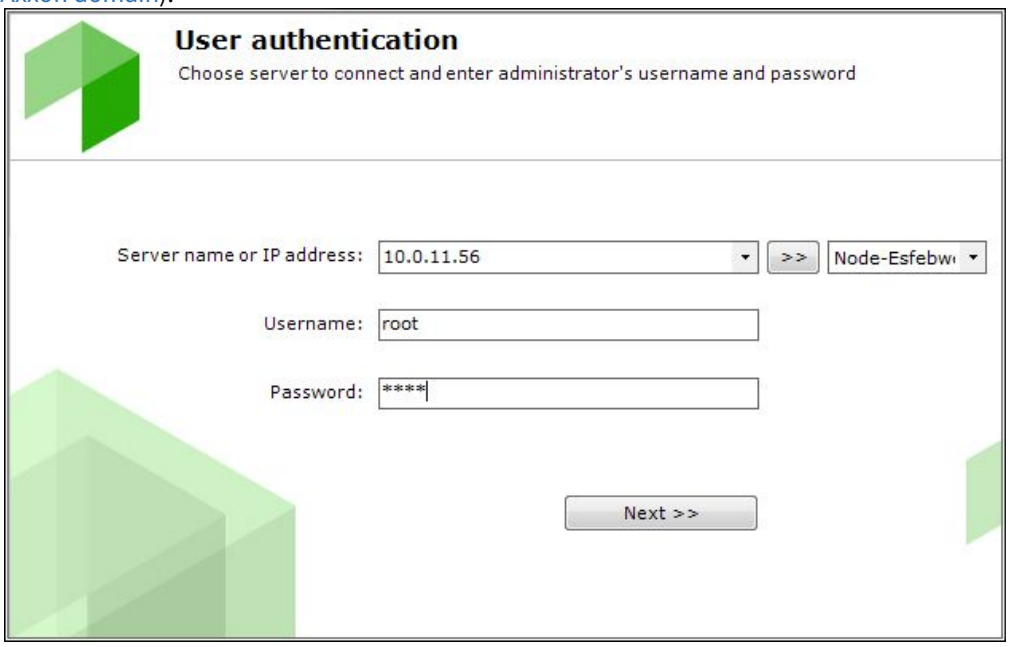
3. Click the **Restore** button.

> **Attention!**
>
> Restoring configuration will stop all active tasks.

Configuration restore completed.

To transfer the configuration from a common security server to a failover system:

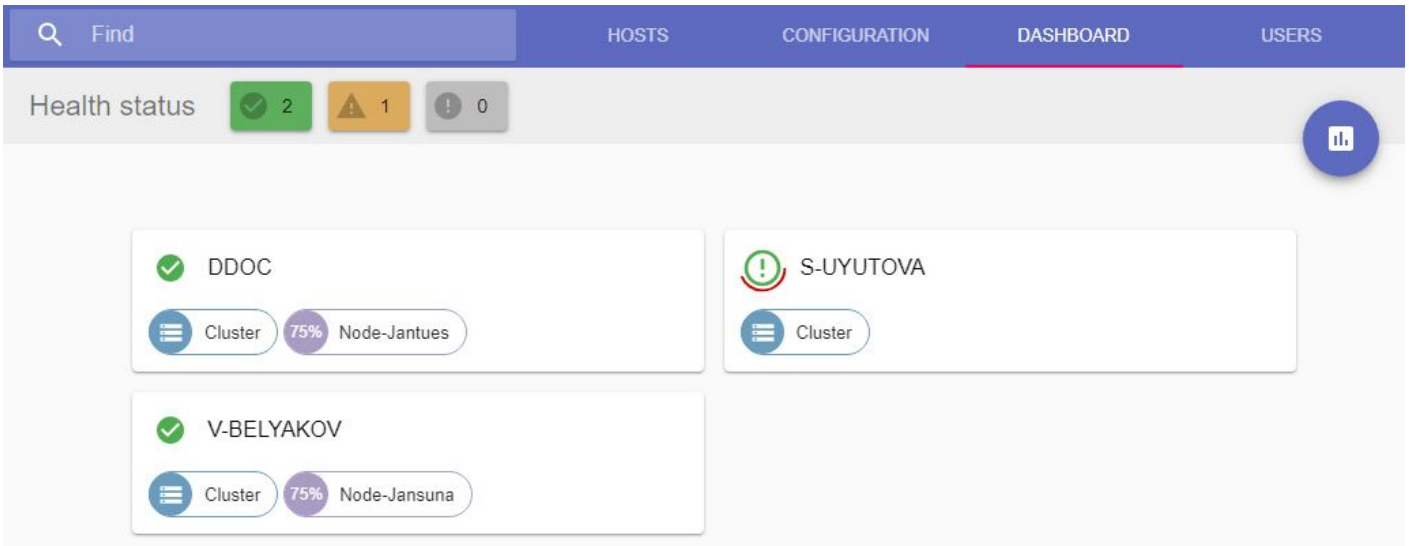
1. Create a copy of the configuration on the server (see Backing up a configuration).
2. Connect to the configuration backup and restore utility on the node (see Connecting to a Node and Configuring of an Axxon domain).



3. Restore the saved configuration (see Restoring a configuration).

7.11.9 Cluster Monitoring

You can monitor clusters in the **Dashboard** tab.



The following information is available:

1. The status of all cluster servers. All cluster servers are cross-checked against a number of criteria. The status info of a server reflects the cross-check results.

Status	Description
	The server successfully passed all checks.

Status	Description
	The server did not pass some checks. The red stripe around the icon reflects the percentage of failed checks.

2. The percentage of allocated CPU resources is calculated for all running nodes. For example, for a node consuming 9300 standard units out of total of 12400, the percentage is: (9300/12400)*100%=75%.

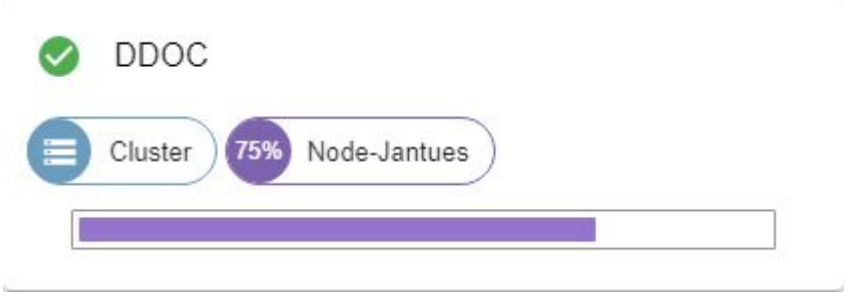
   Attention!

   This parameter does not reflect the actual Server CPU load; the amount of the node related load can be either higher or lower than the displayed value.

3. Running database servers and their statuses.

Status	Description
	The database server is running.
	The database server is running, some checks failed.
	The database server is stopped.

To open the CPU server load diagram, click **Show Resource**.



You can filter servers by status using the **Health status** panel.

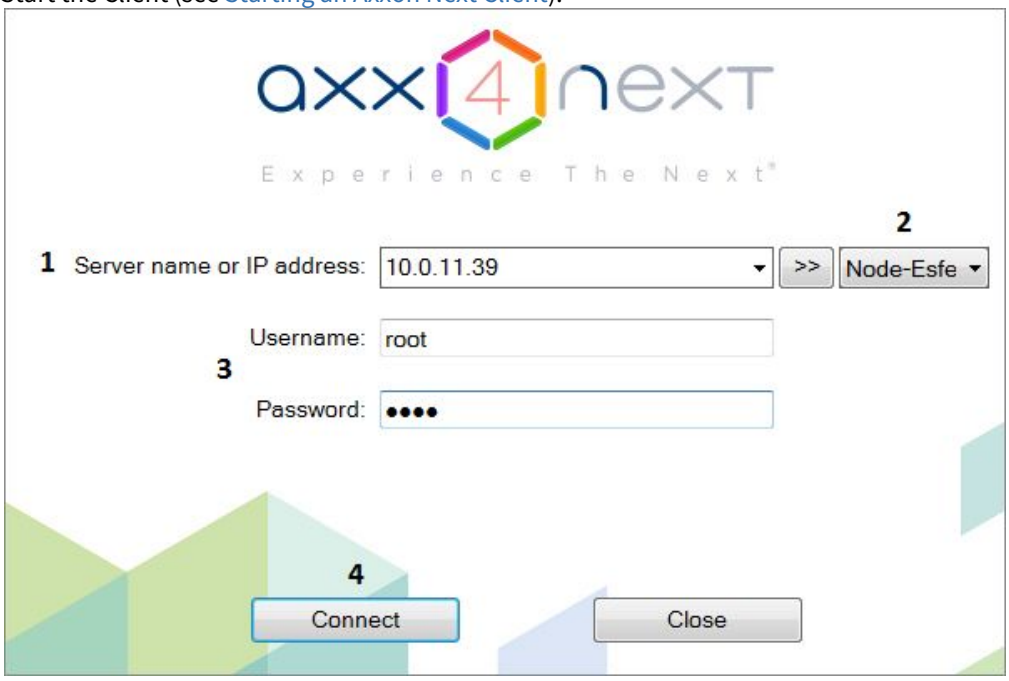
Status	Description
	Servers that passed all checks.
	Servers that did not pass some of the checks.
	Servers that failed all checks.

The icon indicates the number of cluster servers in this status

7.11.10 Connecting to a Node and Configuring of an Axxon domain

When the cluster is configured, connect the client to the node. Do the following:

1. Start the Client (see Starting an Axxon Next Client).



2. Enter the IP address of any cluster server (**1**) and click the >> button.

> **Attention!**
>
> You cannot connect to a node located behind a NAT.

3. Select from the list the node you want to connect to (**2**). Enter first characters of the node name into this field, and the fast search starts.
4. Enter the user name and password (**3**) and click **Connect** (**4**).

During the first connection to the node, you will be prompted to create an Axxon domain (see Creating a new domain).

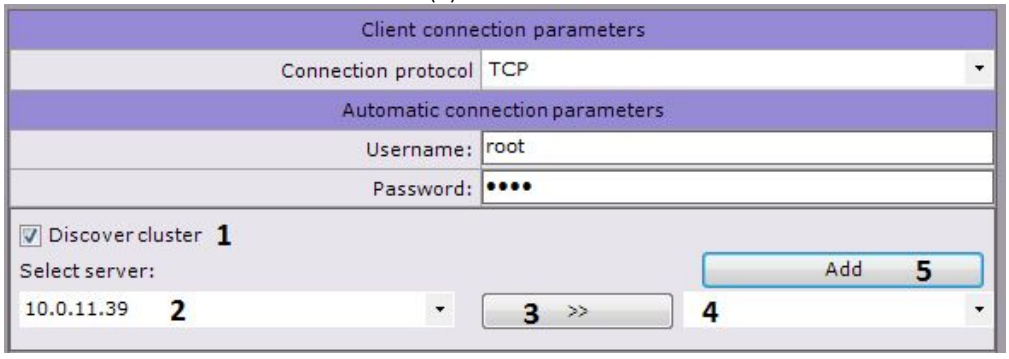
You can then merge nodes into a unified logical structure following standard procedures of Axxon domain configuration (see Configuring Axxon domains).

> **Attention!**
>
> An Axxon domain cannot include nodes from different clusters.

7.11.11 Configuring automatic connections to nodes

Configuring automatic connections to a failover system is similar to setting up an automatic connection to a common security server (see Configuring Cross-System Client and autologon), with a few minor changes. To add a node to autostart, do as follows:

1. Select the **Discover cluster** check box (**1**).



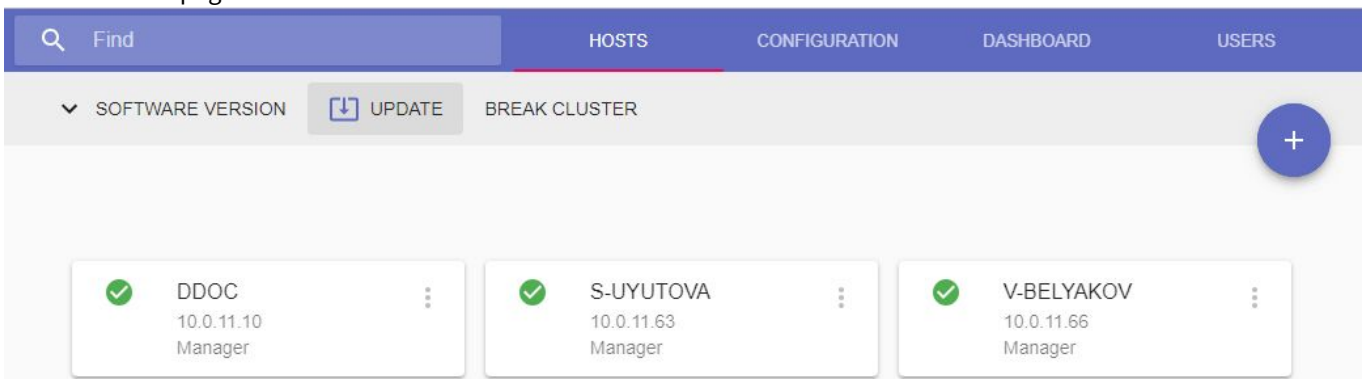
2. Enter the IP address of any cluster server (**2**) and click the button (**3**).

3. Select from the list the node you want to add to autostart (**4**).
4. Click the **Add** button (**5**).

7.11.12 Upgrading Servers within a cluster

To upgrade all Servers within a cluster, do the following:

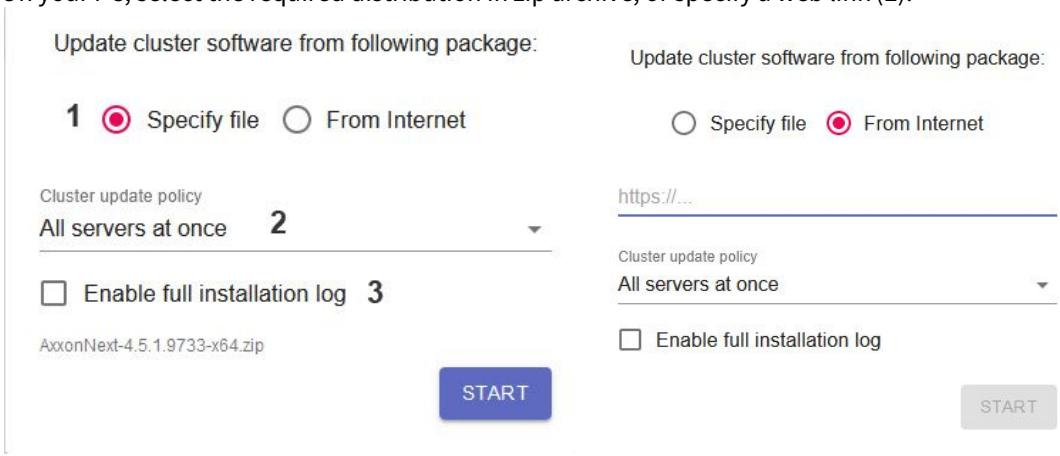
1. Go to the **Hosts** page.



2. Click **Update**.

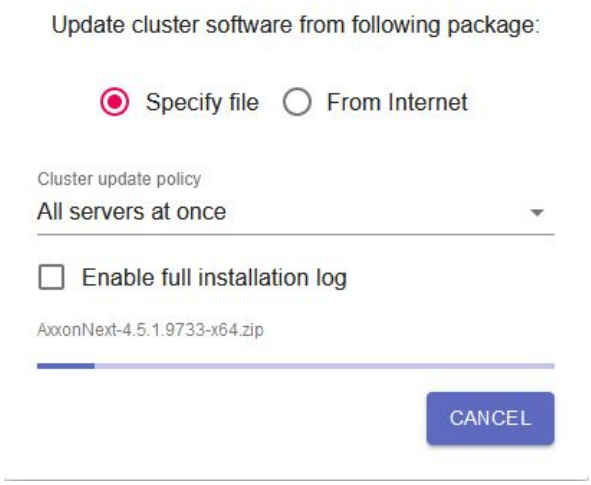
> **Attention!**
>
> You can bulk upgrade the entire cluster only if all of its servers are accessible.

3. On your PC, select the required distribution in zip archive, or specify a web link (**1**).

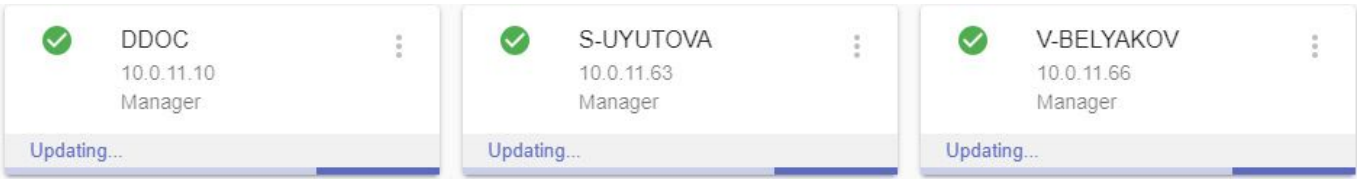


4. Select the update method: all Servers simultaneously, or one after another (**2**). In the former case, all nodes operation will be halted until the update is finished, in the latter case the nodes will operate without interruption.
5. To record all installation-related events to a log file (**3**), select the **Enable full installation log** check box.
6. Click **Start**.

The installation package download starts. You can cancel the update unless the download is complete.



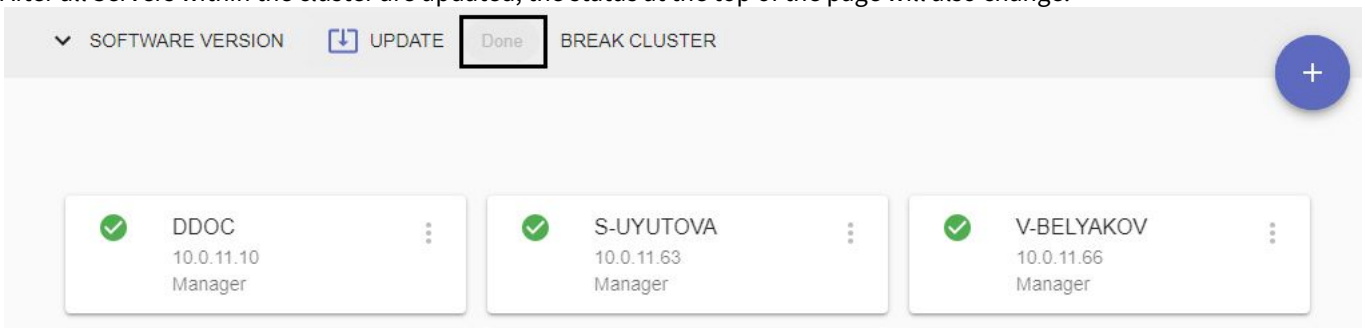
7. After the installation package is downloaded, the Axxon Next software suite will be updated in quiet mode on all Servers within the cluster. Depending on the previously selected update method, the Servers will be updated simultaneously or one after another.



After the update is completed on a Server, its status will change to **Done**.

> **Note**
>
> If the upgrade fails, you will see the **Error** message in the status bar.

After all Servers within the cluster are updated, the status at the top of the page will also change.



7.11.13 Setting network interfaces for system nodes operation

By default, failover system nodes use all available network interfaces.

To limit the number of network interfaces, do the following:

1. Locate the file C:\Program Files\RaftLauncher\current\raft-settings.xml and add a new parameter:

```
<item key="NGP_IFACE_WHITELIST">172.17.0.0/16</item>
```

Use the following settings format: "IP-address1 / number of unit bits in the mask, IP-address2 /number of unit bits in the mask"

2. Add the same parameter to another file: C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\bin\raft\raft-settings.xml .

7.12 Self-diagnostics service

7.12.1 What is the self-diagnostics service

The Self-checking Service collects system metrics and checks all Axxon Next VMS components. The data obtained are compared with the indicators of normal operation of the system. When deviations occur, system health alerts are generated, which can be tracked in the web interface (see Viewing metrics in the Self-diagnostics Service).

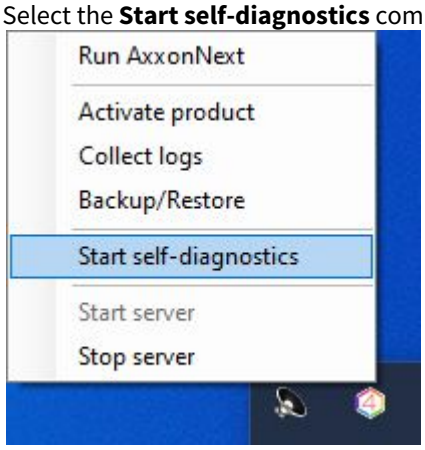
Examples of system health tracking:

- Out of RAM;
- Camera is connected but does not send data;
- No events from a detection tool;
- No records in Video Footage;
- No footage is recorded on detection;
- Out of system disk space.

7.12.2 Starting and stopping the self-diagnostics service

To launch the self-diagnostics service, complete one of the following two actions:

1. Select the **Start self-diagnostics** command in the Axxon Next Tray Tool utility**,**



2. Launch the NGP_Self_Diagnostics.

> **Note**
>
> In a failover system, the self-diagnostics service is activated / de-activated in cluster settings (see Configure a Failover System Cluster).

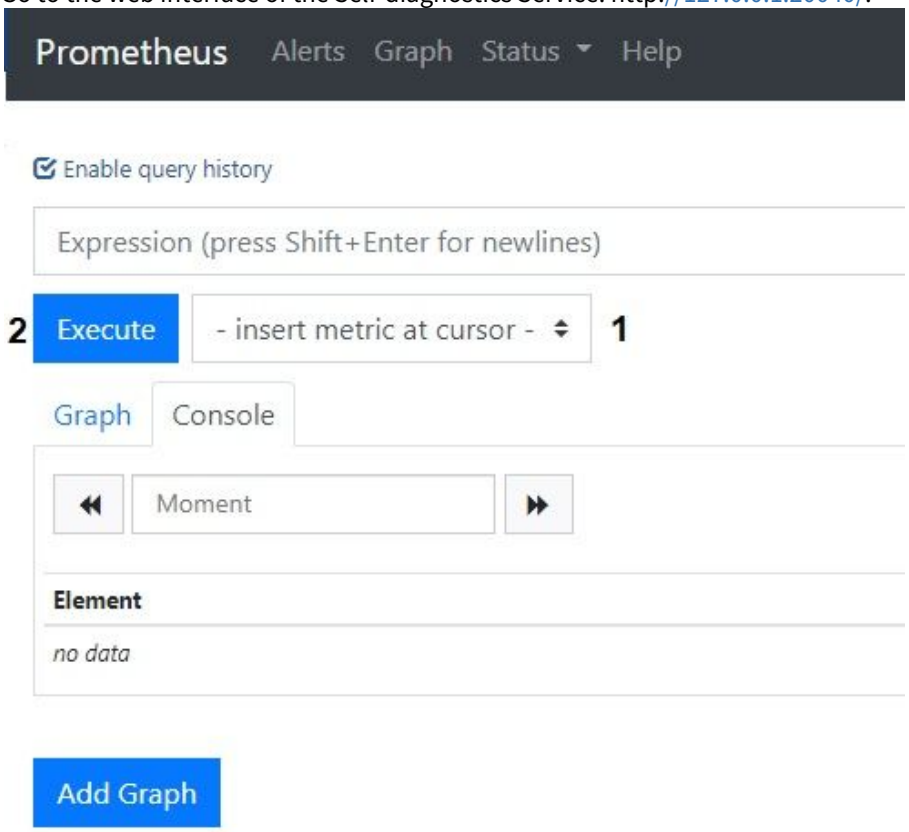
To stop the self-diagnostics service, complete one of the following actions:

1. Select the **Stop self-diagnostics** commandin the Axxon Next Tray Tool utility,
2. Stop the NGP_Self_Diagnostics.

7.12.3 Viewing metrics in the Self-diagnostics Service

To view the system status data, you need to:

1. Go to the web interface of the Self-diagnostics Service: http://127.0.0.1:20040/.



2. Select the required metric in the list (**1**) or enter the query in the **Expression** field.

Description of useful metrics

Metric	Description
ALERTS_FOR_STATE	Troubleshooting by Self-diagnostics Service. **Example** `ALERTS_FOR_STATE{alertname="ipint_is_not_activated",ep_name="hosts/Server1/DeviceIpint.99",instance="127.0.0.1:20108",job="ngp_exporter",ngp_alert="true"}` Possible values of the alert name parameter: • **low_os_memory** - Out of RAM; • **ipint_is_not_activated** - Camera is connected but does not send data; • **no_samples_in_detector** - No events from a detection tool; • **restart_services_when_archive_source_not_activated** - the archive is not working; • **restart_services_when_no_samples_in_archive** - recording to archive with 0 FPS; • **restart_services_when_no_ping_from_detector_to_archive** - No footage is recorded on detection; • **logs_disk_space_is_low** / **db_disk_space_is_low** - Out of system disk space.
ngp_archive_channel_fps	The frame rate of all video cameras recording to archive.
ngp_cpu_total_usage	The percentage of CPU load on a Server.

Metric	Description
ngp_fps	The frame rate of all Server video cameras, all detection tools and their decoders.

The request allows for:

a. Using multiple metrics.
b. Using expressions to find issues. For example, a query like ngp_fps <17 will return all metrics where fps was less than 17. The full list of logical and arithmetic operators is listed in the official Prometheus documentation.
c. Filtering by any of the parameters. For example, a query like ngp_fps{ep_name=~"hosts/R-PROKOFIEV/DeviceIpint.2/SourceEndpoint.video:0:0"} will return fps values only for the specified source.

   Examples of useful queries:
   CPU load shedule by analogy with the Windows System Monitor:

```
sum by (process_id) (100 / scalar(wmi_cs_logical_processors) *
(irate(wmi_process_cpu_time_total{job="os_exporter", process="AppHost"}[10m]))) or
ngp_cpu_total_usage
```

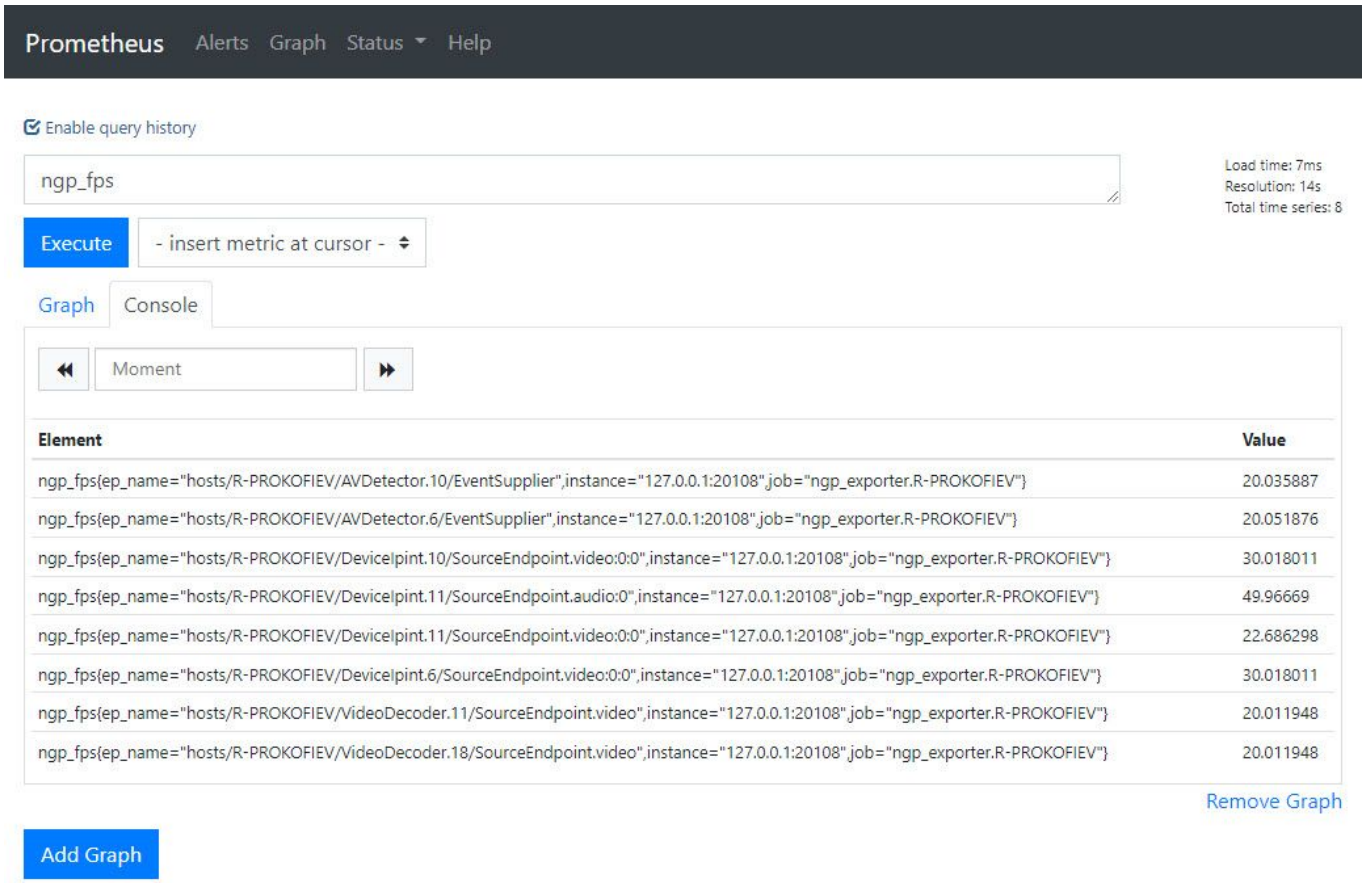
   The shedule of RAM usage by AppHost processes and the total amount of memory:

```
sum by (process_id) (avg_over_time(wmi_process_working_set{job=~"os_exporter",
process="AppHost"}[5m])) or
avg_over_time(wmi_os_virtual_memory_bytes{job=~"os_exporter"}[5m])
```

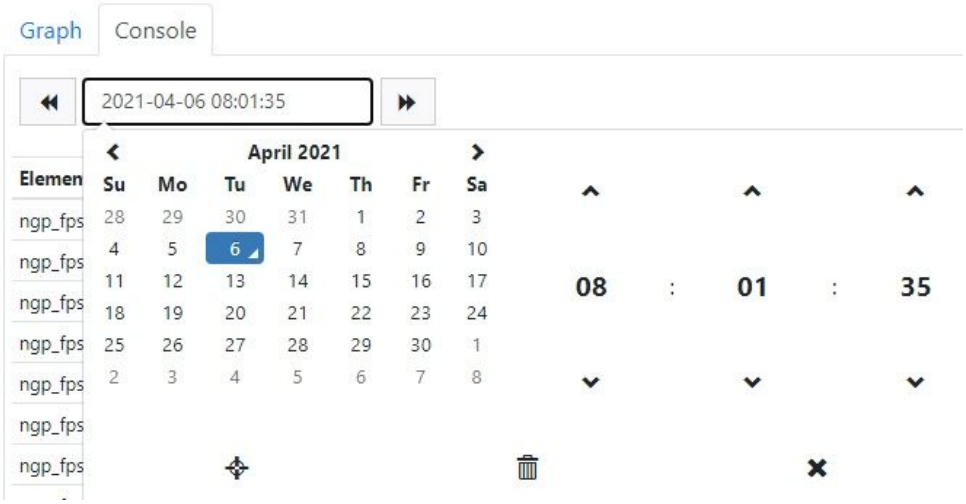
   Percentage of RAM usage:

```
100.0 - 100 * avg_over_time(wmi_os_virtual_memory_free_bytes{job=~"os_exporter"}
[5m]) / avg_over_time(wmi_os_virtual_memory_bytes{job=~"os_exporter"}[5m])
```

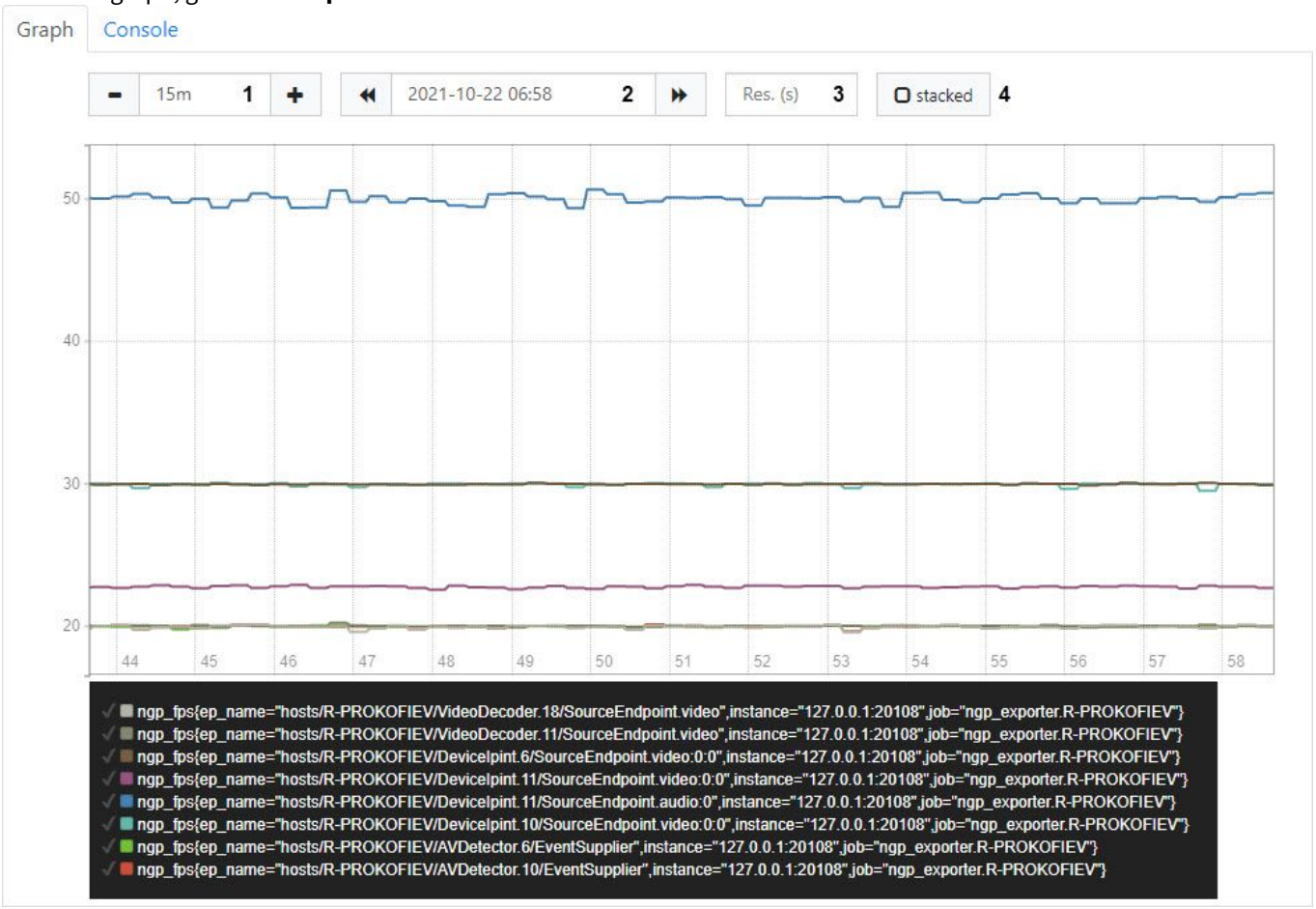
3. Click **Execute** (**2**).
   The **Console** tab will issue all possible values of all items at the time the request is completed.



4. When you set a date and time in your calendar, the data will be updated.



5. To build a graph, go to the **Graph** tab.



In field **1**, set the time slot of the graph, in field **2** set its end point, in filed **3** set the interval between data points. To fill the chart, select the stacked (**4**) checkbox.

8 Working with the Axxon Next Software Package

8.1 Main Elements of the User Interface

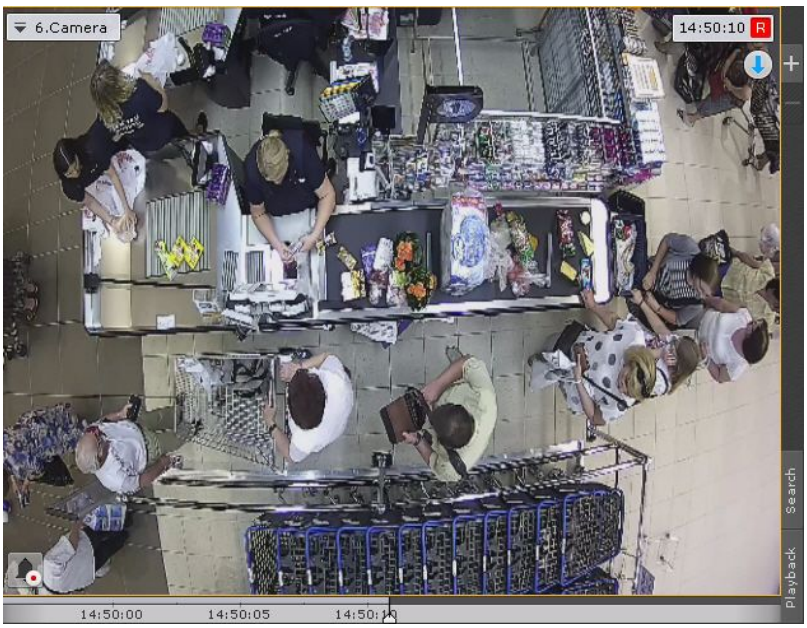
8.1.1 Viewing Tile

A viewing tile is used to display video stream on the monitor of a computer with specific parameters for the purpose of video surveillance, archive viewing, and forensic search in archives. The viewing tile also has a function which allows the generation and evaluation of alarm events in the process of video monitoring of a guarded location.

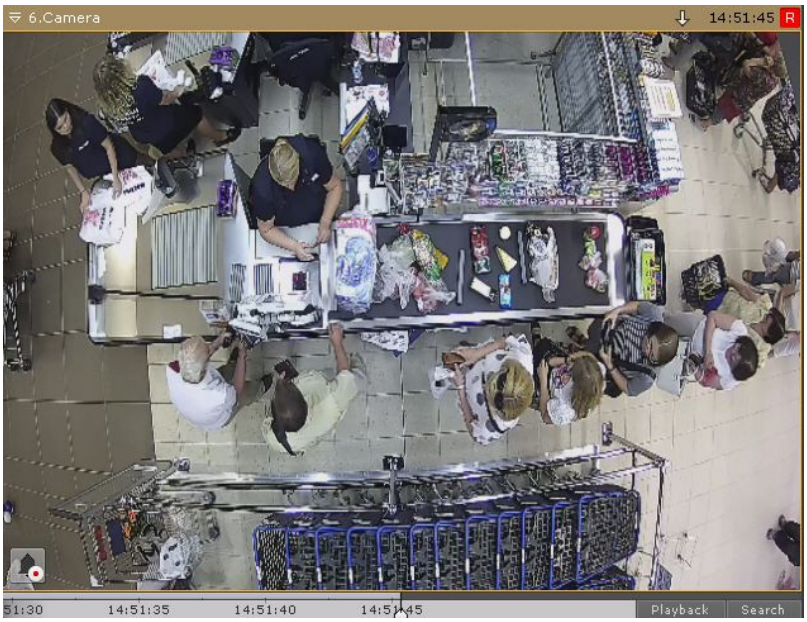
The Camera window has flexible display options (see Configuring the Appearance of the Viewing Tile):

- Control buttons over the video image, mode selector buttons inside the window.

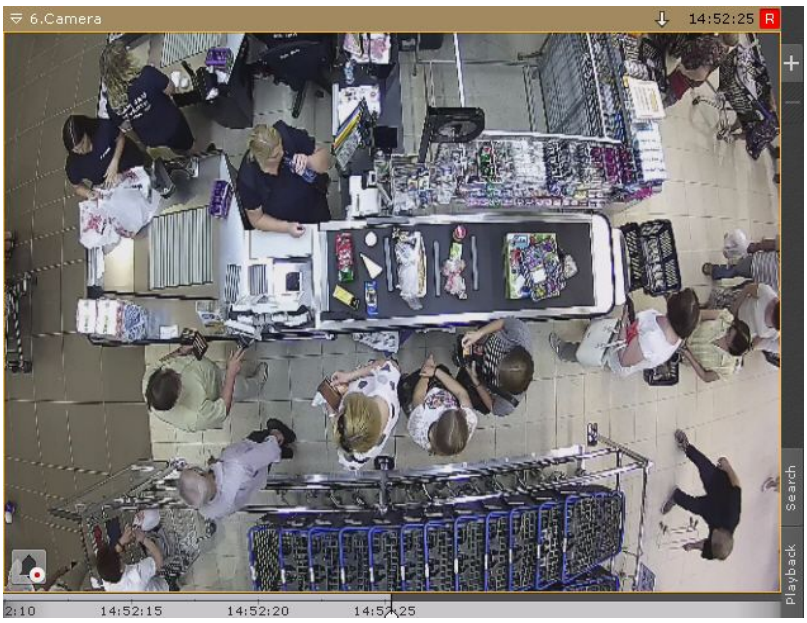
- Control buttons over the video, selector buttons outside.



- Control buttons outside the video, selector buttons inside.



- Control buttons and selector buttons outside the video image.



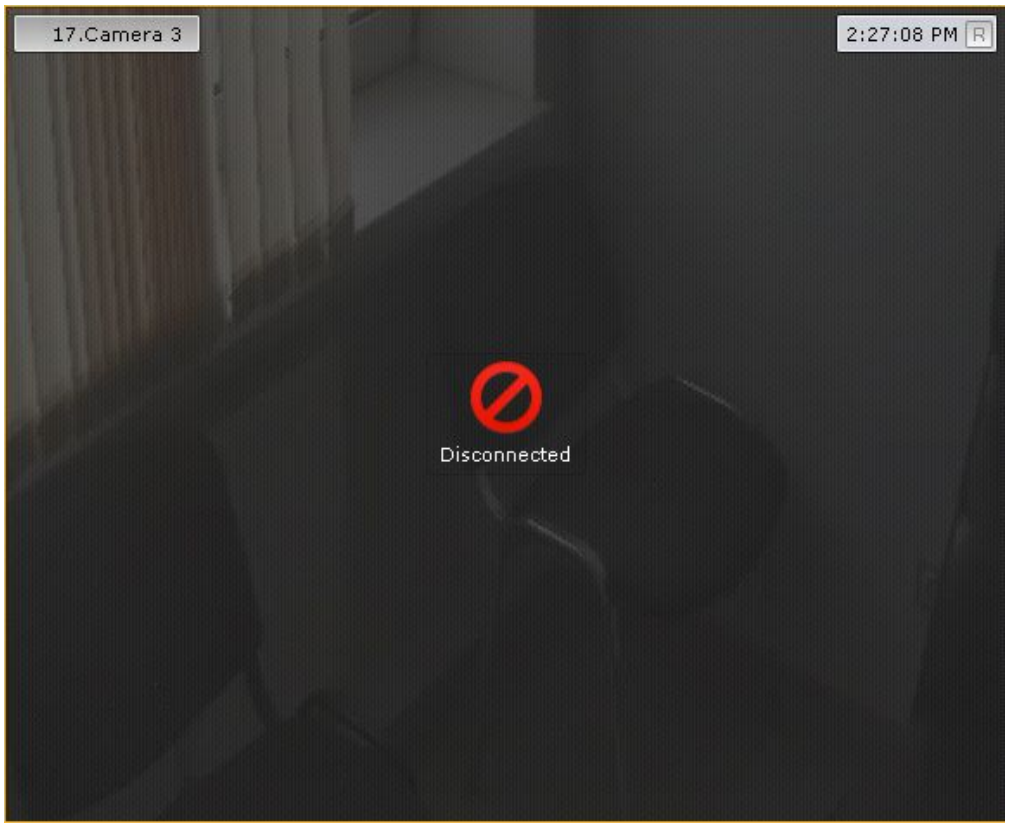
There are two states of a camera window within the layout: active or inactive.

A window in active state includes an additional navigation panel (see Advanced archive navigation panel) and video mode selection tabs (see Video Surveillance Mode Selection Tabs).

To switch a window to active state, click anywhere inside the window; clicking outside de-activates it.

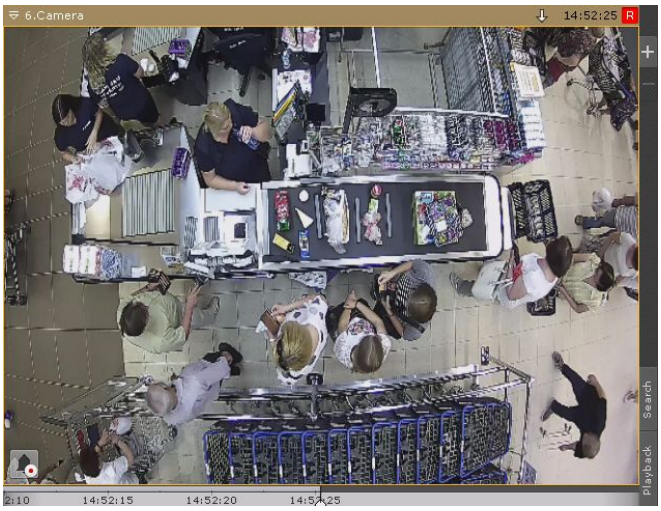
A more detailed description of the functions of the viewing tile can be found in the section titled Video Surveillance.

If the connection to the camera is lost, the camera window is darkened and you get a corresponding message on the most recently received image.



To copy the camera name to the Clipboard, right-click on it

.



8.1.1.1 Color Coding of Frames

Color coding of the frame of a viewing tile is used to indicate the status of the video camera.

Color of viewing tile frame	**Camera status**
Red	Active alarm
No active camera alarms	
Green	Camera disarmed

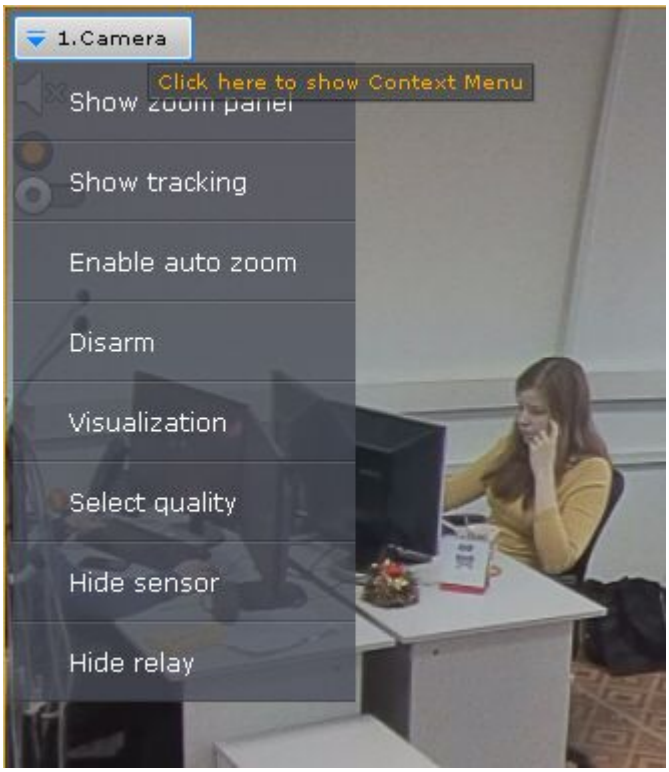
Yellow	Camera armed
Gray	Archive mode

8.1.1.2 Viewing Tile Context Menu

The viewing tile context menu is used to access the following functions (depending on the enabled surveillance mode):

1. Video surveillance
2. Audio monitoring
3. Exporting frames and recordings
4. Object tracking

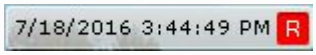
To bring up the viewing tile context menu (**1**), left-click the video camera icon in the upper left-hand corner of the tile (**2**).



8.1.1.3 Time Display

The time display appears in the upper right-hand corner of the viewing tile.

Note

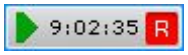
Depending on the settings (see Configure Time Display), the indicator may show the date 

Current time of Client is displayed on the indicator in real-time mode:

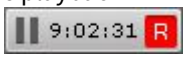
.

If the Client's time is different from the Server time, the Server time will also be displayed below the indicator.

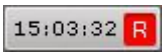
In archive, alarm, and video frame search modes, it shows the time of the fragment being viewed and the playback mode:

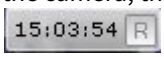
1. Forward playback 

.
2. Reverse playback

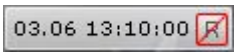
.
3. Pause 

.

If the video is currently being recorded from the camera, the letter **R** is displayed in red to the right of the clock: 

. Otherwise, the letter **R** is displayed in gray: 

.

If the camera is not linked to the archive, the letter **R** is crossed out: 

.

8.1.1.4 Display of Video Statistics

You can display video statistics in the viewing tile (see the section titled Configuring Display of Video Statistics). In real-time mode the video display statistics are shown. In Alarm, Archive, and Clip Search modes, it shows the time of the fragment being viewed and the playback mode:

Video statistic	Parameter description
Client-side FPS	Frame rate of the displayed video stream.
Server-side FPS	Frame rate of the video stream received from a video camera or an archive.
Bitrate	Bitrate of a compressed video stream.
Frame size	Resolution of the displayed video stream.

Note

The video stream parameters are updated every 10 seconds.

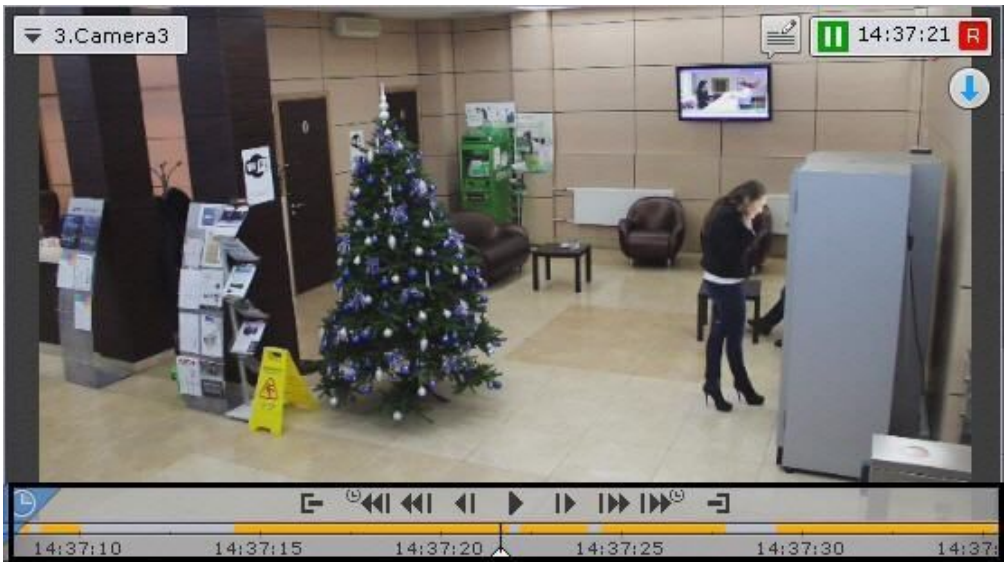
8.1.1.5 Video Surveillance Mode Selection Tabs

To select the video surveillance mode, use the tabs in the lower right-hand part of the viewing tile:

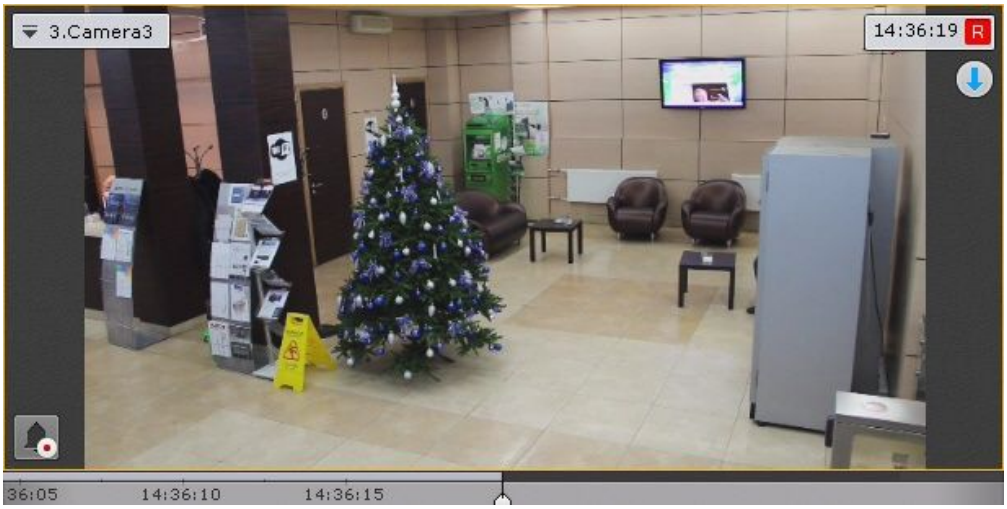
Alarm Management mode is activated when an alarm is triggered (see Initiating an Alarm).

8.1.1.6 Advanced archive navigation panel

The advanced archive navigation panel is displayed in the lower portion of the screen in **Archive** or **Archive Search** modes.



When you click a live camera tile, the advanced navigation panel shows only the timeline and the archive selection button.



> **Note**
>
> If the camera is not linked to a video archive, the panel will be unavailable

In Live Video mode, if you click the timeline, you go to Archive mode.

The advanced archive navigation panel includes the following components:

1. Timeline;
2. Playback control buttons;
3. Archive selection button;
4. Tabs for compressed and standard archive playback modes.

Tracks are marked in different colors depending on the alarm status or detection tool activation:

Condition	Track color
Archive absent (**1**)	Gray
Archive (**2**)	White
Archive present, alarm active (**3**)	Red
Archive present, detection tool activated (no alarm) (**4**)	Yellow

Additionally, the timeline on the advanced archive navigation panel features missing footage tags . A tag is displayed when footage is missing for over 40% of the currently visible part of the timeline.

Depending on the duration of the missing footage, tags may have different thickness:

1. - less than one hour;
2. - from 1 to 24 hours;
3. - more than 24 hours.

The duration of missing footage is indicated near the tag.

The date of the first recording in a Video Footage archive is displayed near the left edge of the archive stripe.

Note

In this case, the archive portion left of the marker contains videos shot when the camera was not linked to this particular Archive.

The playback control buttons on the advanced navigation panel are the same as the buttons on the playback panel (see The Playback Panel). The advanced archive navigation panel also has the buttons to jump forward and back by **N** seconds: and .

N - is a step value, 30 sec by default. If you press Ctrl + once, you increase the jump step by 30 sec, if you hit Ctrl + - you cut the jump step by 30 sec. The maximum step value is - 300 seconds.

The advanced archive navigation panel is used to position the archive at a specific time, control playback, and switch to compressed archive playback mode.

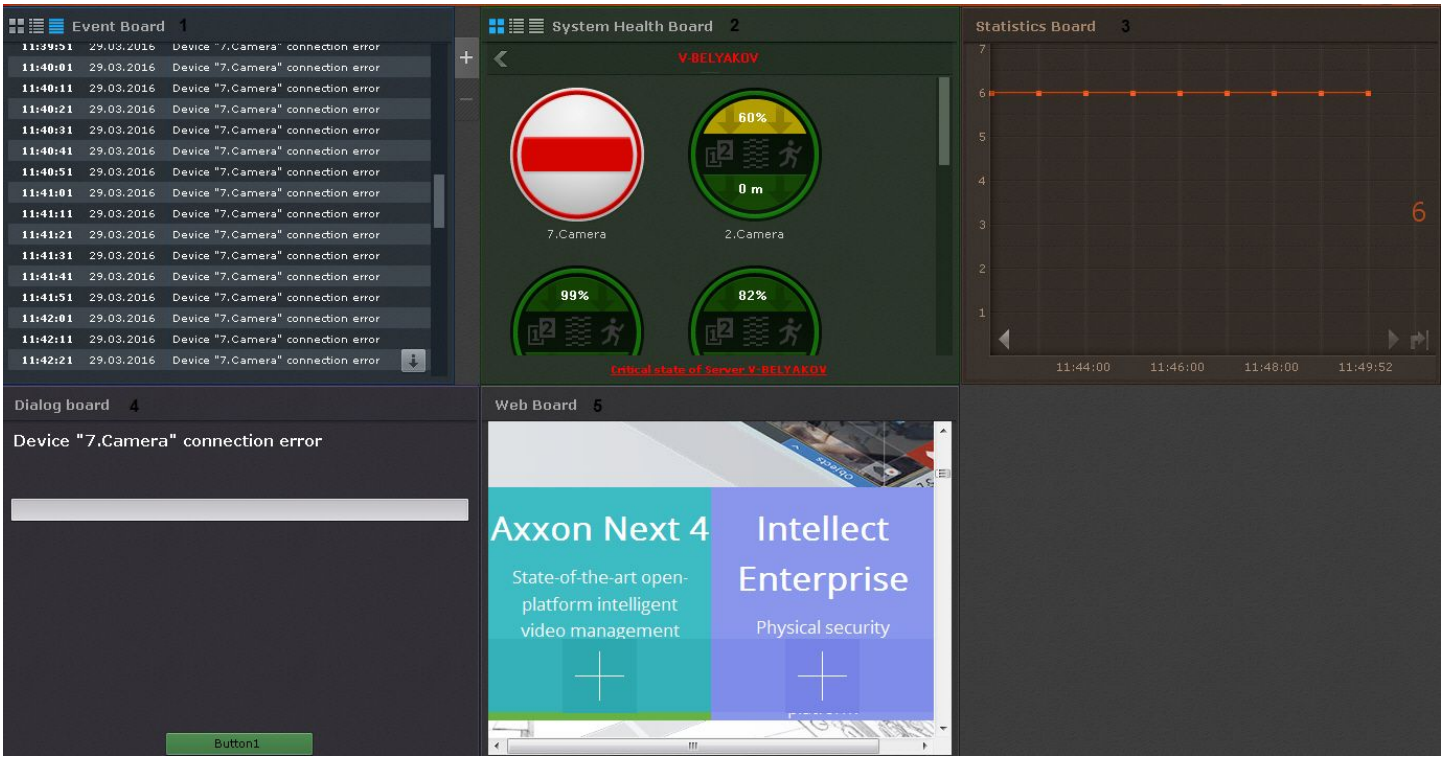
The advanced archive navigation panel works completely in sync with the playback panel and the timeline:

1. The playback mode selected on the advanced navigation panel is displayed on the playback panel.
2. The playback speed that is set on the playback panel will be used as the playback speed when playback is restarted on the advanced navigation panel, and vice versa.
3. Any movement through the main timeline is duplicated onto the timeline of the advanced navigation panel.

8.1.2 Information boards

Information boards offer a quick view of system status and events. There are three kinds of information boards, each displaying a specific type of information:

1. Events Board (**1**).
2. Health Board (**2**).
3. Statistics Board (**3**).
4. Dialog board (**4**).
5. Web board (**5**).

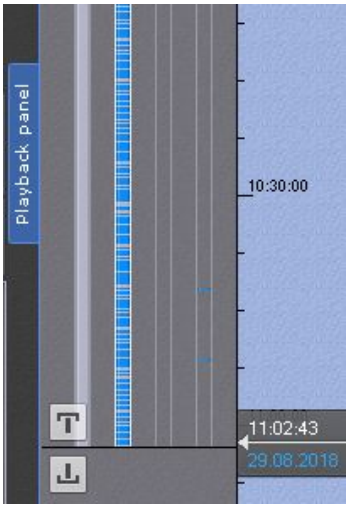


To learn about information boards, consult the relevant section.

8.1.3 The Archive Navigation Panel

8.1.3.1 Show and Hide the Archive Navigation Panel

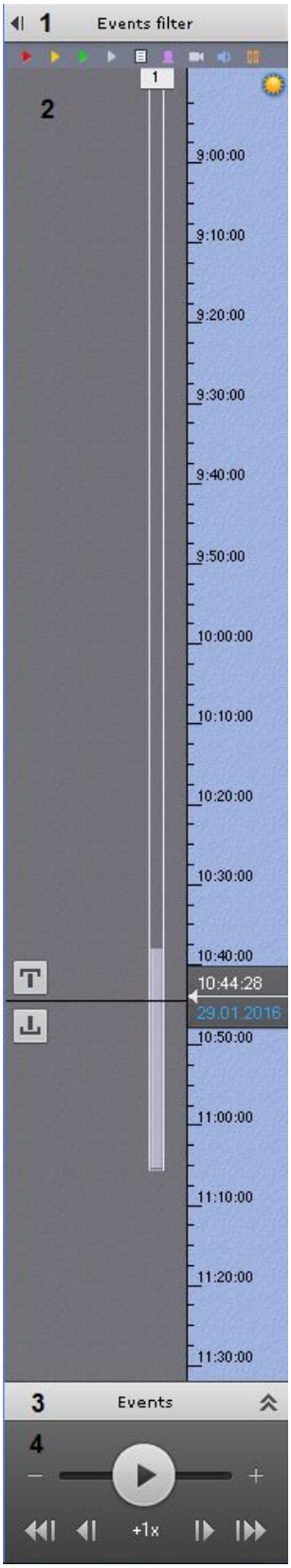
The Archive Navigation Panel is located on the right side of the screen and is automatically displayed when you switch to archive mode (see Switching to Archive Mode).



To show/hide the panel, press the **Playback Panel** button.

8.1.3.2 The Structure and Function of the Archive Navigation Panel

The archive navigation panel is automatically displayed in the right-hand part of the screen when you switch the viewing tile to Archive or Search for Clip by Frame mode.



The archive navigation panel includes the following components:

1. The alarm events filter (**1**).
2. Timeline (**2**).
3. Events List (**3**).
4. Playback panel (**4**).

The archive navigation panel is used for the following functions:

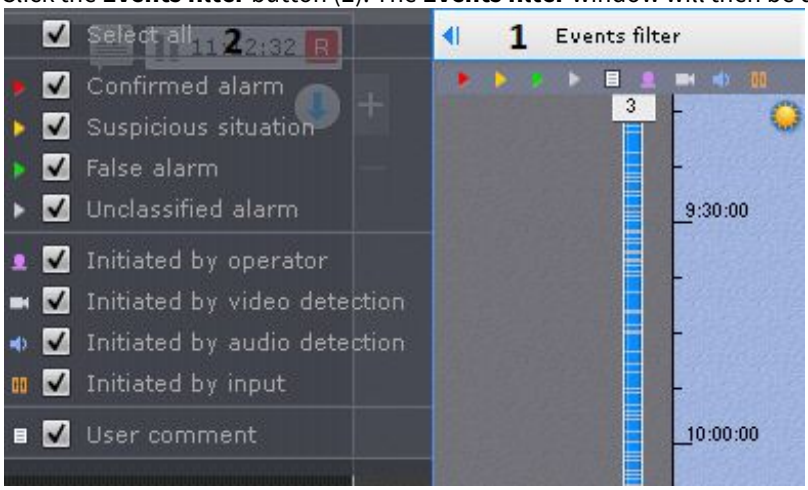
1. Navigating through the archive.
2. Playing back recordings.
3. Selecting playback mode: forward or backward.
4. Setting playback speed.
5. Selecting events for display on the timeline and in the events list.
6. Viewing the list of events of the selected type.

8.1.3.3 Events filter

The **Events filter** component allows selecting the type of events that are displayed on the archive navigation panel.

To select an event type:

1. Click the **Events filter** button (**1**). The **Events filter** window will then be displayed (**2**).



2. Select the checkboxes for the types of alarms which should be displayed on the archive navigation panel, according to their status:
   a. Confirmed alarm.
   b. Suspicious situation.
   c. False alarm.
   d. Unclassified alarm.

   > **Note.**
   >
   > If you clear the checkbox for a certain type of alarm, this type of alarm and the corresponding track are no longer displayed on the timeline.

3. Select the checkboxes for the types of alarms which should be displayed on the archive navigation panel, according to the cause of their initiation:
   a. Initiated by operator.
   b. Initiated by video detection tool (basic or embedded, including their sub-detection tools).
   c. Initiated by audio detection tool (basic, situation analysis, or embedded).
   d. Initiated by input.

   > **Note**
   >
   > By default, all checkboxes are already selected.

> **Attention**
>
> To display alarms on the timeline, select at least one type of alarm event and one initiator

4. Select the checkbox to display operator comments.
5. Click the **Apply** button.

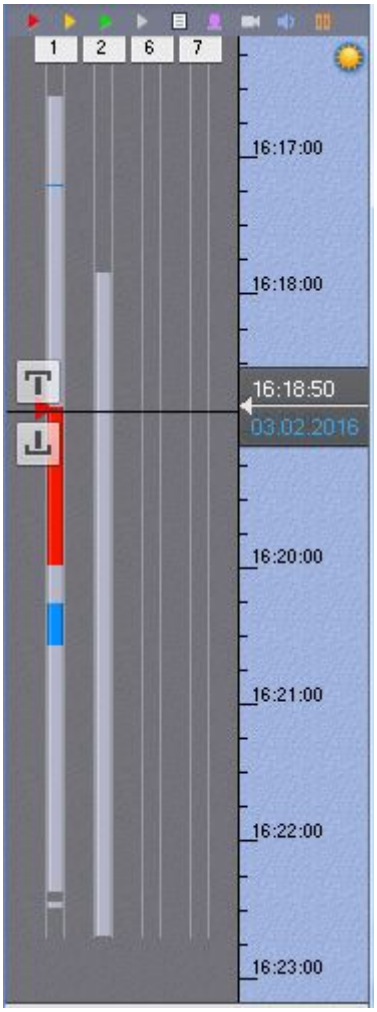
> **Note**
>
> To close Events Filter, click to same button again.

Selection of events is now complete.

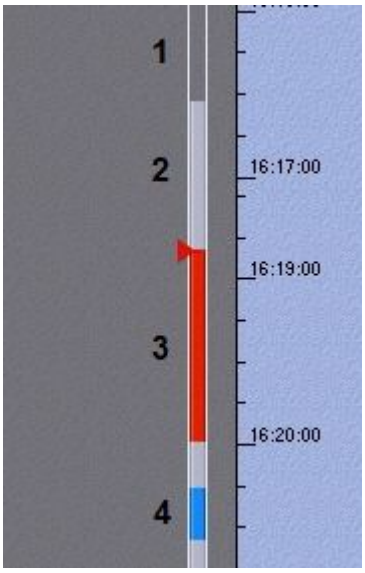
Events of the selected type are now displayed on the timeline (see The Timeline) and in the events list (see Events List).

8.1.3.4 The Timeline

The timeline is a graphical representation of the time axis of the archive and is located in the middle part of the navigation panel.



The timeline contains indicators of the presence of recordings, or tracks.



Tracks are marked in different colors depending on the alarm status or detection tool activation:

Condition	**Track color**
Archive absent (**1**)	Gray
Archive (**2**)	White
Archive present, alarm active (**3**)	Red
Archive present, detection tool activated (no alarm) (**4**)	Blue

Note

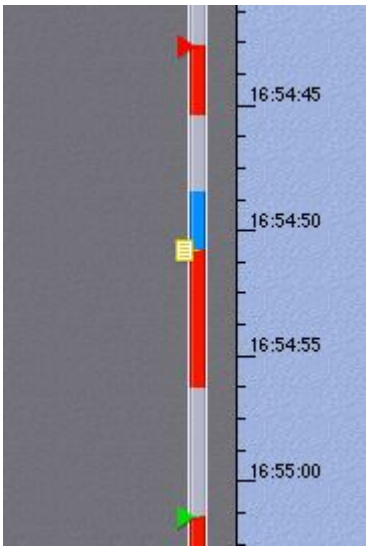
Pre-alarm recordings are white on the timeline, post-alarm footage is blue.

Note

If video recordings overlap or coincide in time, the available footage is prioritized as follows:

1. If there is recorded video, then red colored recordings have the highest priority and white ones have the least priority.
2. Grey footage takes priority over dark grey.

At the moment when an alarm is assigned a status (critical, non-critical, false, or unclassified), a flag is added to the track. A flag is added to the point on the timeline when the alarm began.

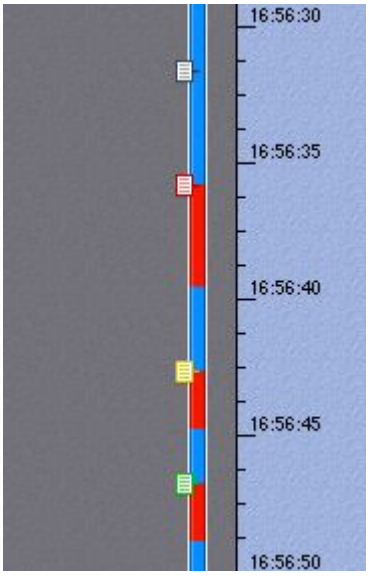


The flag is colored according to the alarm status:

1. Green – false alarm
2. Yellow – non-critical alarm
3. Red – critical alarm
4. Gray – unclassified alarm

> **Note**
>
> Display of any particular alarm event in the list is determined by filter settings (see the section titled Events filter).

Operator comments are displayed with the corresponding icons on the track. An icon is placed on the timeline at the point corresponding to the commented frame (or to the first frame of the interval, if the comment is for an interval).



If comments were left during alarm classification, the icons are displayed in the appropriate colors.

You can scroll and zoom the timeline using the mouse.

To scroll the timeline, move the cursor on its background vertically while holding down the left mouse button. To change the scale of the timeline, right-click the timeline's background and, while holding down the right mouse button, move the cursor down to zoom out or up to zoom in.

The timeline lets you select at which moment to start playback of a recording in the viewing tile. To choose at which moment to begin playback, you can either left-click the indicator and hold it down while dragging it to the desired position, or just left-click the left portion of the timeline.

If there is no recording in the selected position, the indicator will automatically move to the position corresponding to the nearest recording.

> **Note**
>
> You can also set a timeline indicator in the desired position by indicating the exact date and time (see the section titled Navigating Using the Timeline).
> You can also position the timeline indicator with the help of the events list (see the section Events List).

8.1.3.5 Events List

The Events List displays alarms and operator comments.

To display the events list, click the **Events** button.

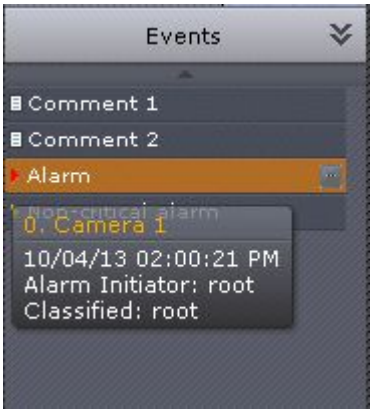
The events list is now displayed.

> **Note**
>
> Whether or not a particular event is displayed in the list depends on the filter settings (see the section Events filter).

> **Note**

The list displays only the alarm events that are currently in the visible portion of the timeline

To hide the events list, click the **Events** button again.
When you place the cursor over an event in the list, detailed event information appears.

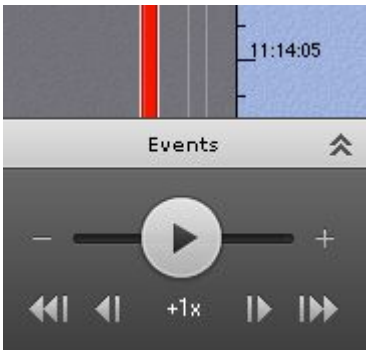


Note

Navigation through the archive by using the events list is described in the section Navigating Using the Events list

8.1.3.6 The Playback Panel

The playback panel is located in the lower part of the navigation panel.



The playback panel contains the following buttons:

1. Go to preceding frame.
2. Go to next frame.
3. Switches to the preceding recording.
4. Switches to the next recording.
5. Play/Pause.

The button also acts as a slider which sets the speed and mode (forward/backward) of playback.

Note

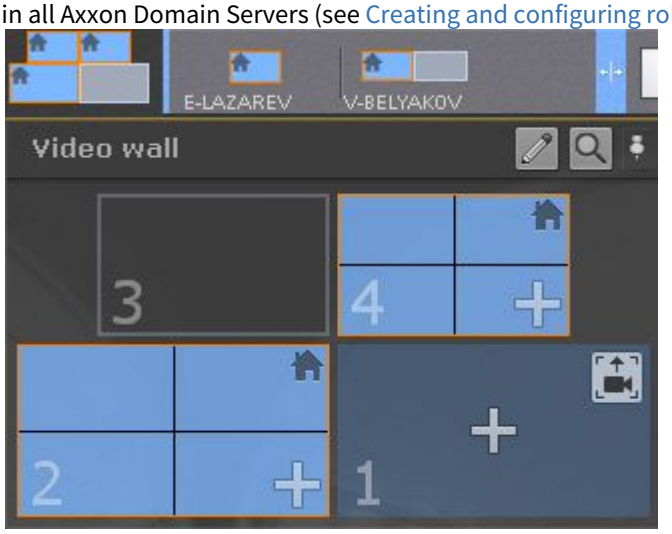
Use of the playback panel is described in detail in the section Navigating Using the Playback Panel.

8.1.4 Video Wall Panel

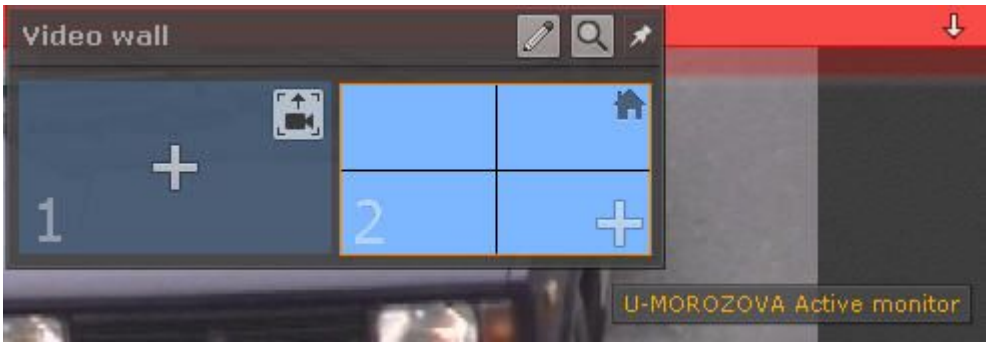
> Configuring Video Wall

The Video Wall panel is automatically displayed at the top of the screen.

The panel is used to set up a video wall from all monitors currently connected to Axxon domain Servers on which video walls management is permitted for the given User. The panel is hidden from users with no permissions for management of video walls in all Axxon Domain Servers (see Creating and configuring roles).



When you hover the mouse pointer over the monitor, the name of the Client to which it belongs and its status will be displayed.



To keep the panel always visible, click the button.

> **Note**
>
> To hide the panel, click the button.

8.1.5 Monitor Panel

The Monitor panel is automatically displayed at the top of the screen.

The panel shows thumbnail views of Client monitors currently connected to Axxon domain Servers on which video walls management is permitted for the given User (see Creating and configuring roles).

To open an expanded monitor view, click on its thumbnail.

If you need to always display expanded monitor views, click .

Note.

To disable expanded views, click .

You can change width of the Monitor panel. To do it, click and drag the panel border .

When you resize the Monitor panel, the Layout panel is automatically changed.

8.1.6 The Layouts panel

The Layouts panel is automatically displayed at the top of the screen.

The panel shows layouts available in the system.

Note

If the client is connected to multiple Axxon domains, only layouts from the main Axxon domain are available.

Layouts Management

8.1.7 Interactive Map

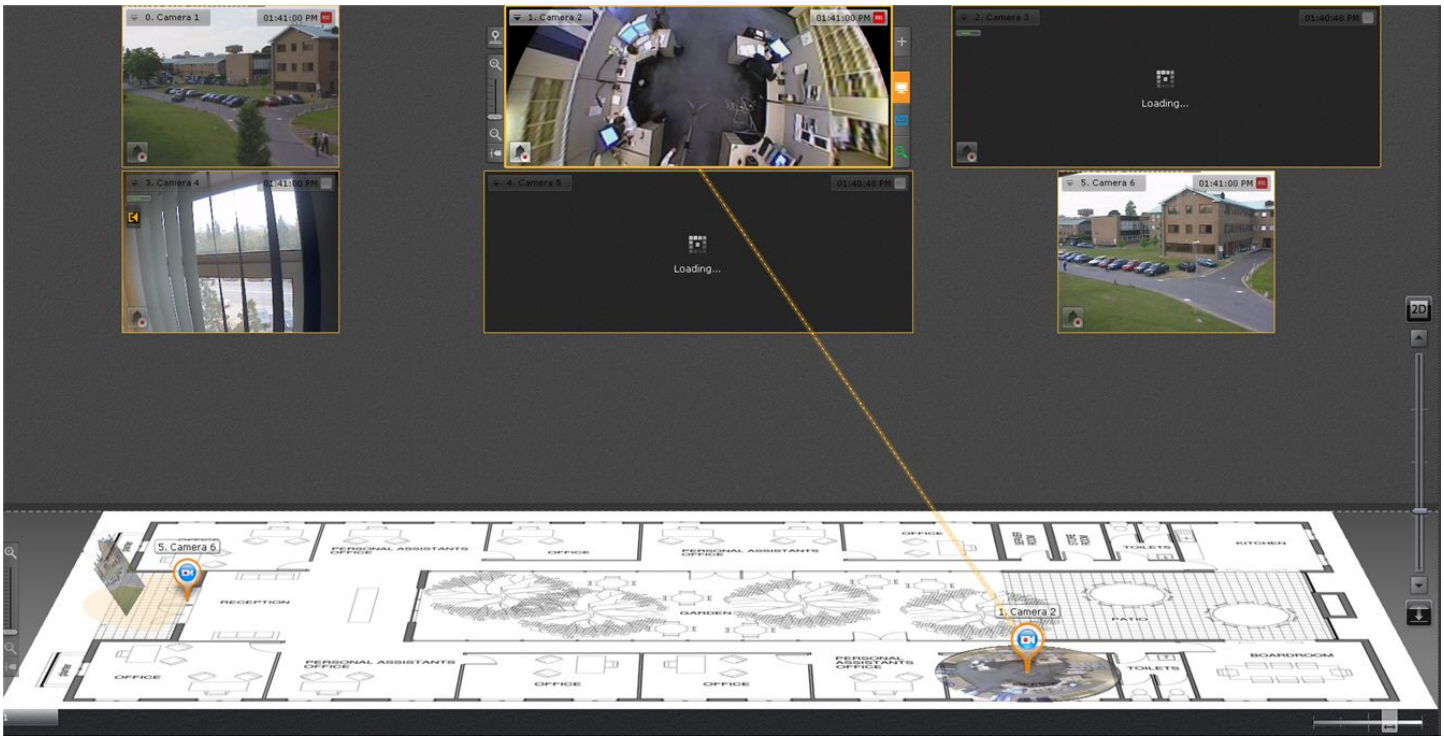
The 3D interactive map is used to visualize the secured facility, control cameras and identify cameras' location.

Interactive maps in Axxon Next can obtain image data from graphics of the site or geospatial data from OpenStreetMap.

Note

To work with OpenStreetMap maps in *Axxon Next*, you need to purchase an OpenStreetMap license.

The map can contain icons for cameras, inputs, and outputs. The area in which live video is displayed and field of view are indicated for each camera.

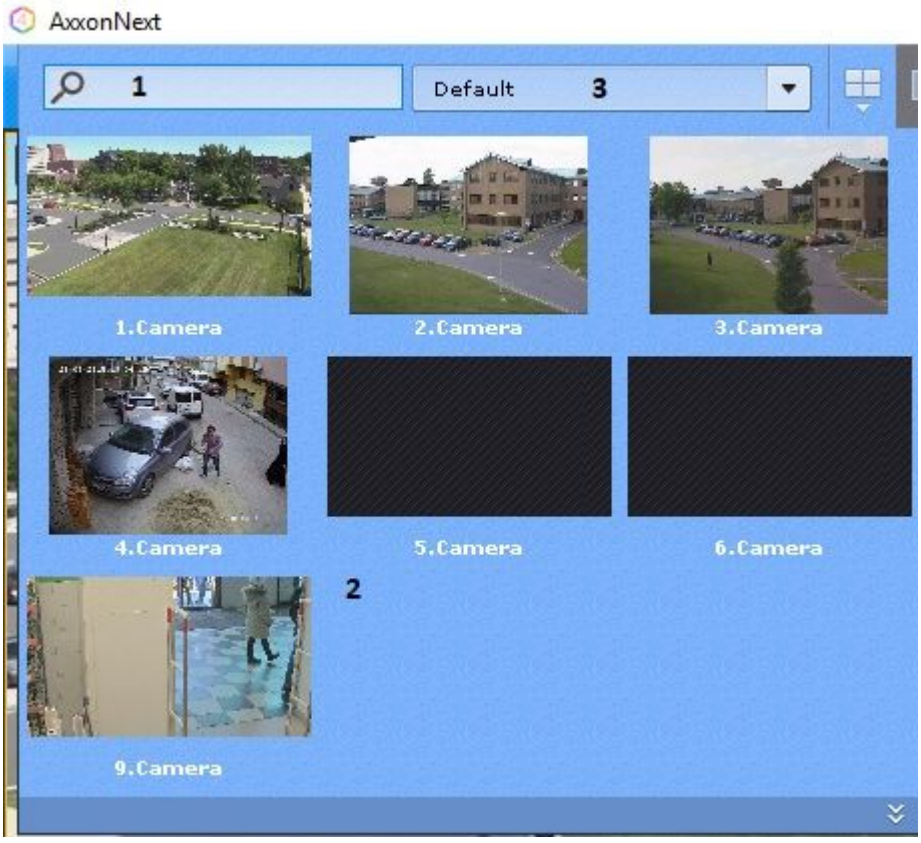


Please refer to the section titled Working with the Interactive Map for further details on how to work with the 3D map.

8.1.8 Camera Search Panel

The **Camera Search Panel** panel lists all video cameras connected to *Axxon Next* VMS. It also allows the user to find cameras.

When the object panel is closed (see Objects Panel), after you click on the search bar (**1**), the area (**2**) opens that lists all cameras within your Axxon domain.



When the object panel is open, the search will be performed inside it. To open the Objects Panel, click the button.

Note

The search result for objects is displayed on the main and additional monitors.

Note

If the client is connected to multiple Axxon domains, cameras from the main Axxon domain are listed by default. To find cameras from another Axxon domain, select the domain from the drop-down list (**3**).

To search for a specific camera, enter its full name or part of it into the search bar.

If you click a camera, a layout opens with the minimum number of cells for displaying the selected camera views.

Note

If the current layout contains the selected camera, the relevant viewing tile becomes active.

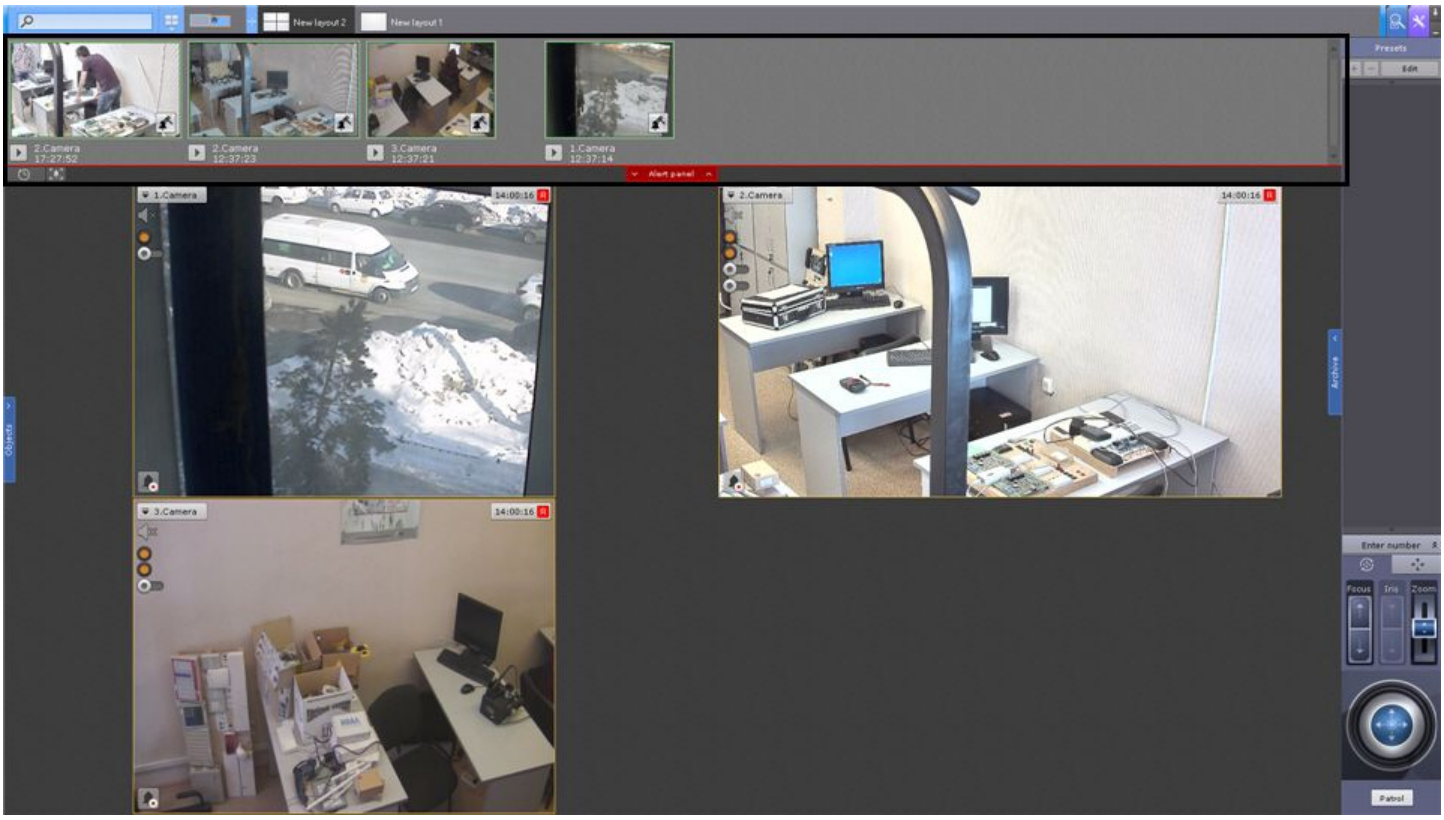
If there is no layout with the selected video camera, a new layout with a single cell is created.

8.1.9 Alarms Panel

Alarms Panel allows users to view and manage alerts / detection events.

Alarms Panel displays video footage for all alerts / detection events in individual Event Preview tiles.

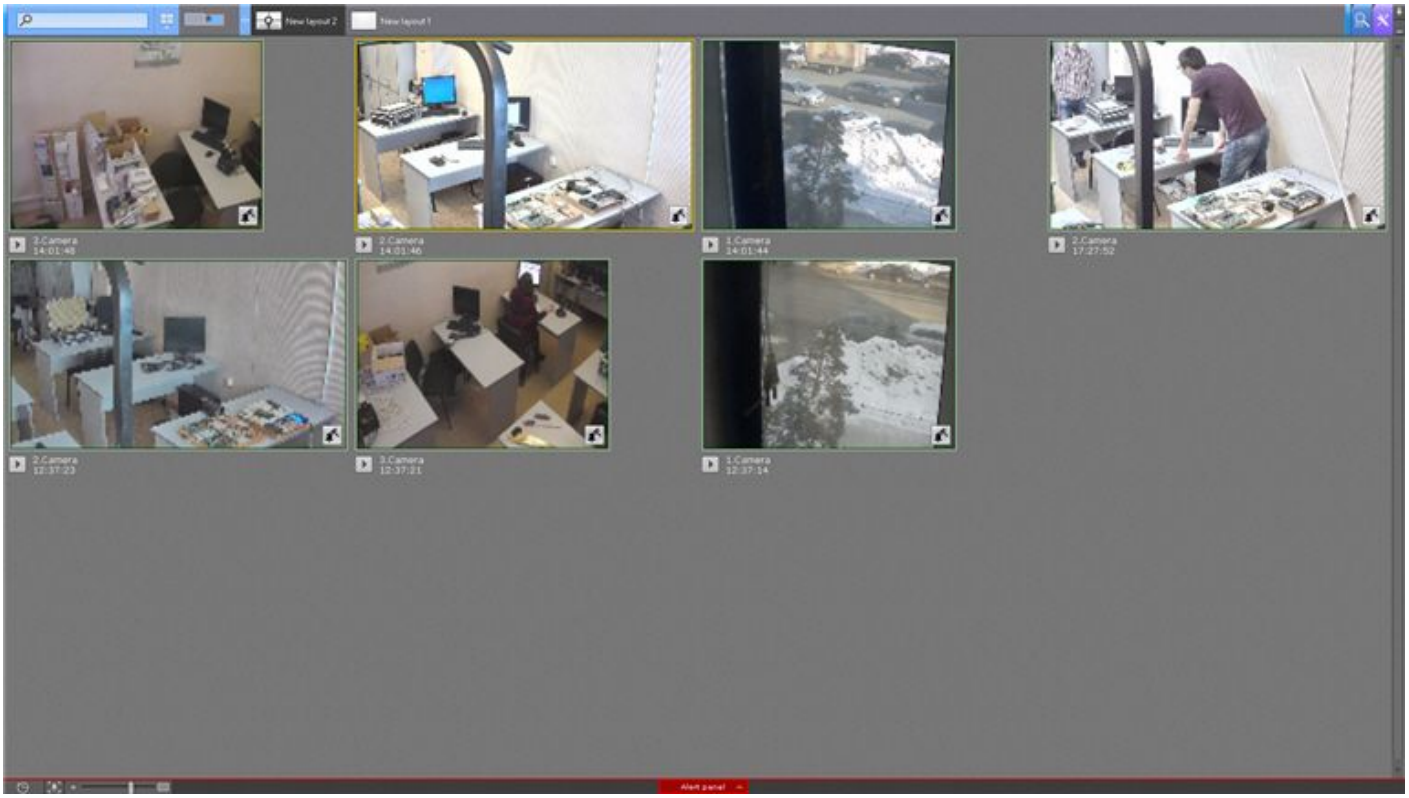
Alarms Panel is at the top of the screen. The default setting is Auto Hide. To open Alarms Panel, click the Alert panel button.



The panel opens downwards, occupying a vertical strip on the screen. You can stretch or shrink it from 10% to 50% of the screen height.

To resize the panel, left-click the Alarms button and hold and drag the pointer up or down.

You can also expand the panel to full screen. This will hide the camera views (layout). To do so, click the button.



You can resize thumbnails of video fragments displayed on the panel.

You can do this when the size of the panel is exceeds the minimum size (10% of the screen height).

To resize Event Previews, use the slider in the bottom left corner of the panel - .

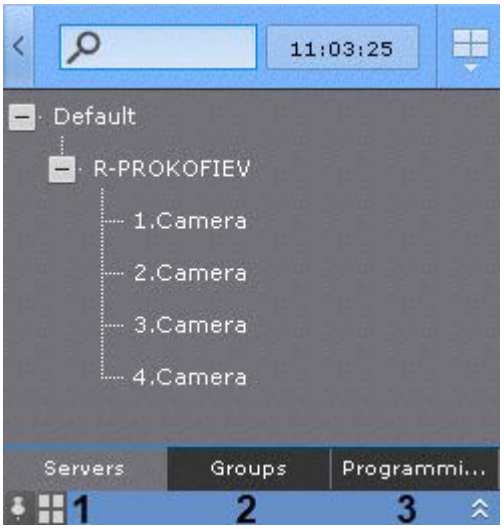
To hide the panel, click the button.

8.1.10 Objects Panel

If you have permissions, Objects Panel displays cameras from all servers in the Axxon domain.

> **Note**
>
> If the Client is connected to multiple Axxon domains, you can see cameras from all Axxon domains according to your permissions.

To open this panel, click the button in the upper left corner of the screen.



To open the site or facility on an additional monitor (see Monitor Management), click the **Object tree** button on the left side of the screen.

> **Note**
>
> On Object Panel, the cameras can be sorted either by name or by a short name (see Configuring camera sorting on Object Panel). You can search for objects inside the panel using the search bar, as in the search panel for video cameras (see Camera Search Panel).

There are two display modes for the camera selected on the panel:

1. The camera cell is displayed in the existing layout (by default, click on).
2. A temporary layout with a camera cell is created (click on).

Switch buttons are in the lower left corner of the screen. The selected display mode is saved until the client is restarted.

If the connection to the video camera is lost, it will be highlighted in red on the Object Panel.

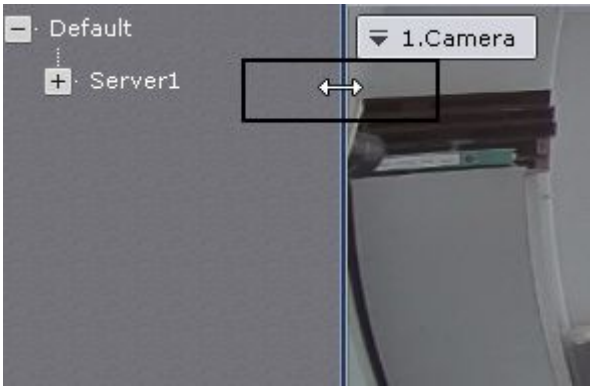
The object tree on the panel can be represented as Servers (**1**), Groups (**2**) and Layouts (**3**).

If you select a camera on the panel, a layout opens with the minimum number of cells for displaying the selected camera views (see Camera Search Panel).

> **Note**
>
> The search results are displayed in the Objects Panel dynamically — as users type and refine their queries (see Camera Search Panel).

To lock the panel, click the button in its bottom left corner. Press the button to unlock the panel.

You can resize the Objects Panel according to your needs. To do this, left-click and drag the right border of the panel.



To hide the panel, click the button.

8.1.11 The PTZ Control Panel

The PTZ control panel is displayed automatically in the right-hand part of the screen when the viewing tile of a PTZ camera is activated in Live Video mode.

> **Note**
>
> The PTZ control panel is displayed only if the **PTZ** object for the particular video camera is enabled (see the section titled The PTZ Object).

The PTZ control panel is used for the following functions:

1. Controlling PTZ video cameras.
2. Setting and switching to camera presets.
3. Launching/stopping PTZ tours.
4. Launching/stopping patrolling.

The PTZ control panel includes the following interface elements:

1. Presets list.
2. PTZ tours list.
3. Dialer
4. PTZ controls for iris, focus, and optical zoom

   > **Note**
   >
   > If a camera does not support a function, the controls for this function cannot be accessed

5. Virtual 3D joystick

Note

The type of virtual 3D joystick and adjustment scale depend on the type of PTZ cameras: discrete or continuous control of Pan, Tilt, Zoom, Focus, and Iris.

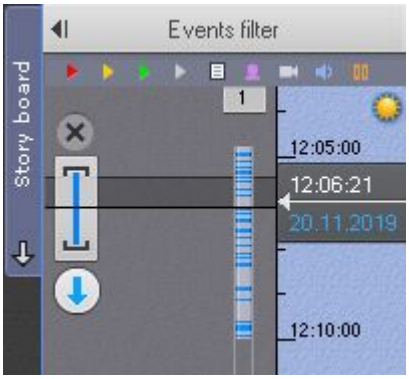
6. Patrol button

Note

Use of the dialer, PTZ controls, joystick, and patrol button is described in the section Controlling a PTZ Camera.

8.1.12 Story board

The Story board becomes available after you set a time interval on the timeline (see Standard video export).



To open the board, click the corresponding button.

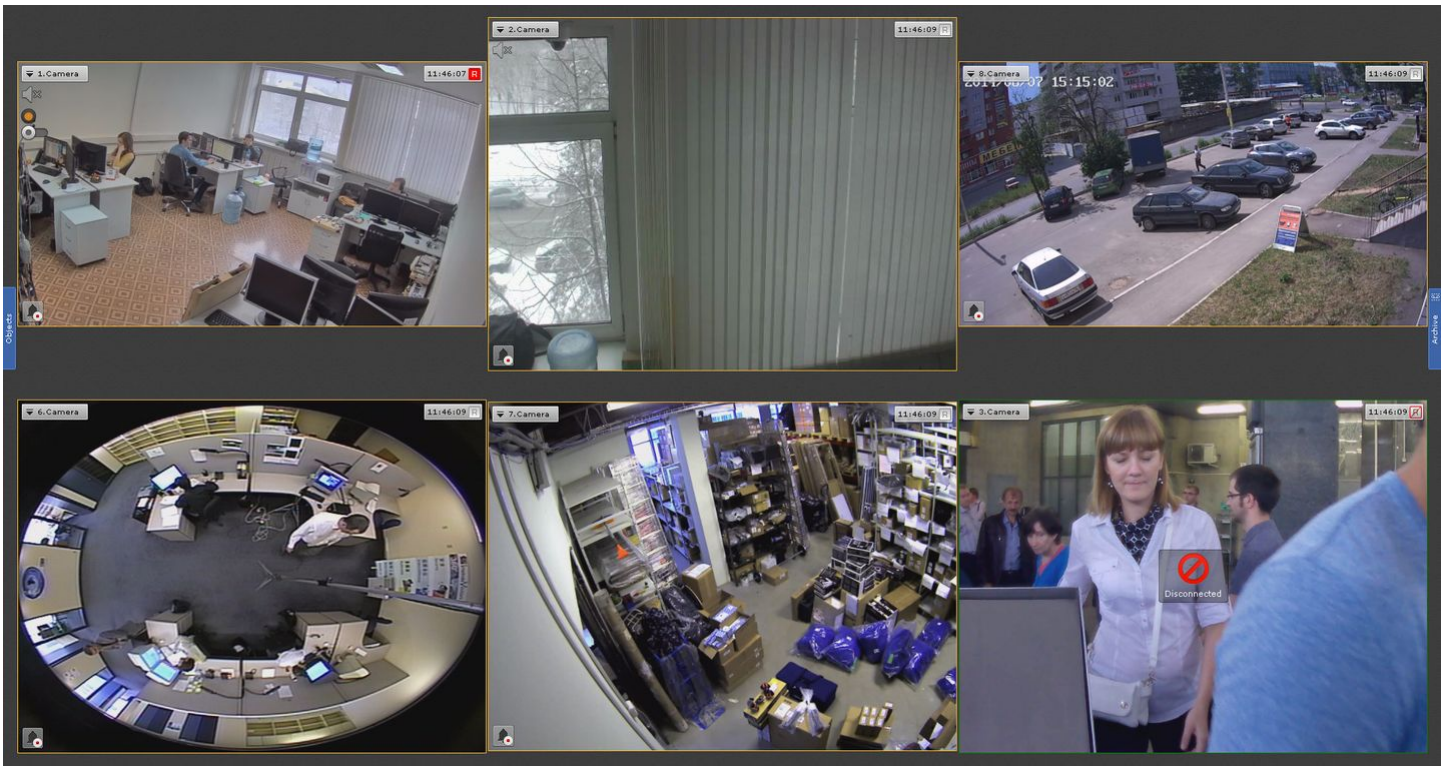
In the Story board, you can check all videos related to an incident to export them with one click (see Exporting all event videoss).

To hide the board, click once more the **Story board** button.

8.2 Video Surveillance

8.2.1 Video Surveillance Modes

The video image from a video camera is displayed on the computer monitor through the Client's interface objects, namely the video surveillance monitor and the viewing tile.



There are four modes for working with a viewing tile:

1. Live Video mode
2. Alarm Management mode
3. Archive mode
4. Archive Search mode

> **Note**
>
> Alarm Management mode is available if an alarm has been initiated in the system.

8.2.2 Functions Available in All Video Surveillance Modes

The following video surveillance functions are available in all video surveillance modes:

1. Selecting a video camera.
2. Scaling the viewing tile.
3. Digitally zooming video images.
4. Processing video images.
5. Rotating video Images.
6. Tracking objects.
7. Operator comments.
8. Viewing titles from POS terminals.
9. Partial decoding of video.

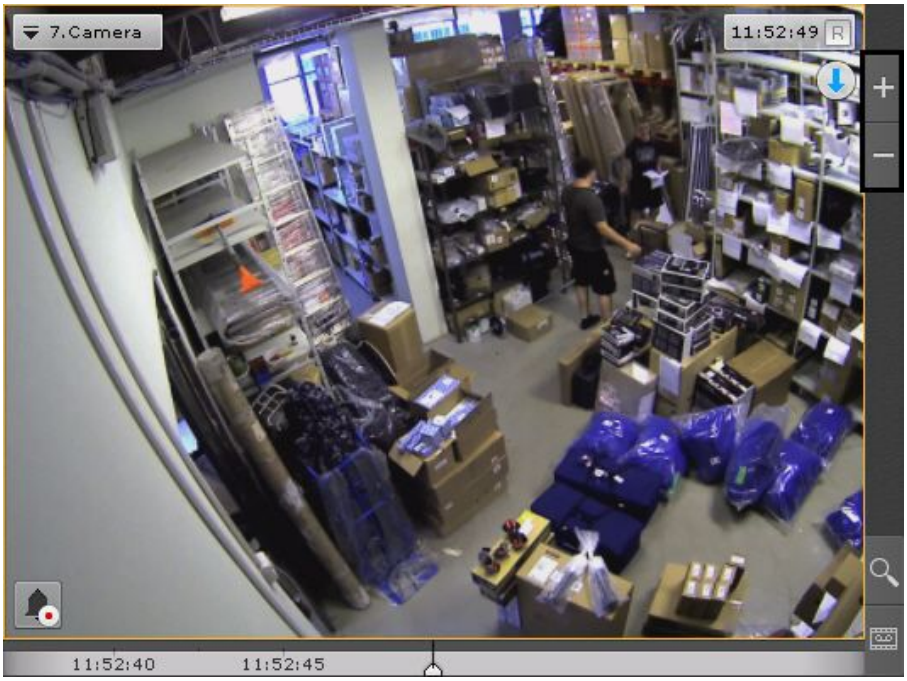
8.2.2.1 Scaling the Viewing Tile

The scale of the viewing tile can be adjusted.

This can be done in one of three ways:

1. Using the buttons in the upper right-hand part of the active viewing tile.
2. Using the buttons in the top panel.
3. Using the mouse.

If you click a viewing tile, you can see size control buttons on the right-hand side.



1. — increases the size of the viewing tile by one step;
2. — resets the size of the viewing tile.

When a viewing tile is enlarged, the scale of the entire layout is increased. Some of the cells are moved off the screen.

Viewing tiles are enlarged as follows:

1. If a viewing tile occupies 100% of any of the sides of the layout (maximum viewing tile size), it cannot be enlarged.
2. If a viewing tile occupies 50% or more (but not 100%) of any of the sides of the layout, it is enlarged as much as possible.
3. If a viewing tile occupies less than 50% on both sides of the layout, it is enlarged in two steps: the first step enlarges the viewing tile to 50% on the corresponding side of the layout and the second step enlarges the viewing tile to the maximum size.

> **Note**
>
> The third case applies to layouts that contain nine or more cells

If a viewing tile is linked to another one or an information board, at the first enlargement step (to 50%), the viewing tile and the other tile / information board are displayed together and occupy all of the screen on one side.

> **Note**
>
> In this case, the first step takes into account the total size of the related cells: the related cells must be less than 50% of both sides of the layout

Also, if you click a viewing tile, you can control its size with the buttons on the top panel:

1. - Resets the size of the viewing tile.
2. - Resizes the tile up to 50% on one side of the layout.
3. - Maximizes the size of the viewing tile.

How to resize the camera window using a mouse:

1. In full screen mode, click anywhere to minimize the window.
2. Otherwise, double click inside the window to display it in full screen mode.

8.2.2.2 Digitally Zooming Video Images

Digital zooming in a video image enables a gradual increase in the magnification of a video image without changing the dimensions of the viewing tile.

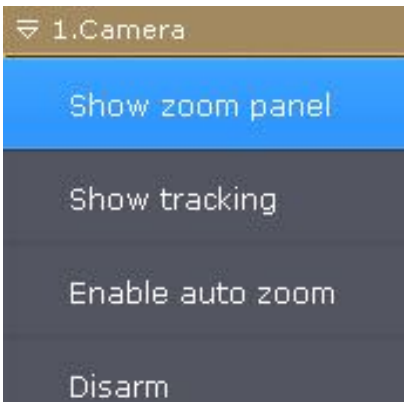
The video image can be enlarged using the following tools:

1. Digital zoom scale
2. Area selection
3. Mouse scroll wheel

8.2.2.2.1 Enlarging a video image using the digital zoom scale

To display the digital zoom scale on the viewing tile screen, select **Show digital zoom** in the context menu of the viewing tile.

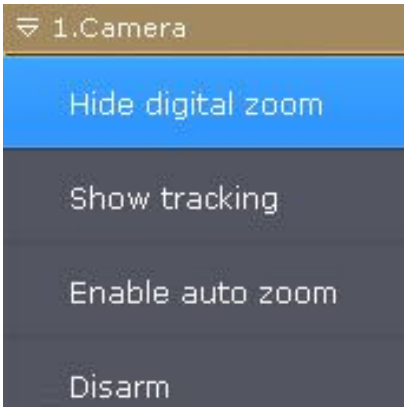
Displaying the zoom control:



Digital zoom scale:

To enlarge a video image, left-click the slider and hold and drag the digital zoom scale up to the desired value. The maximum zoom is 16x. To return back to the original image, move the slider back to its original position.

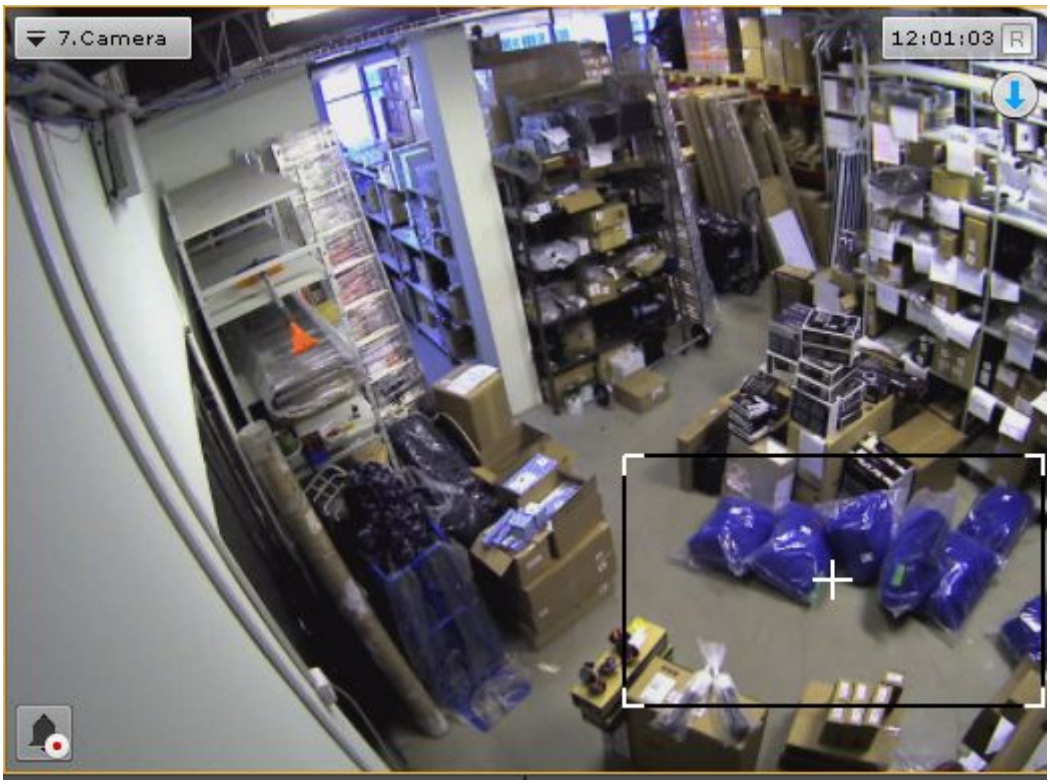
To hide the digital zoom scale, select **Hide digital zoom** in the context menu of the viewing tile. Also, 3 seconds after you scale down the video image to the minimum, the zoom scale will automatically hide.



After hiding the digital zoom scale, the selected zoom level of the image will be preserved when switching between image viewing modes.

8.2.2.2.2 Enlarging a video image through area selection

To enlarge a video image, select the area of the image that you would like to enlarge.



You can select an area by doing the following:

1. Click and hold down the left mouse button inside the viewing tile.
2. Move the mouse cursor to the desired position.
3. Release the left mouse button.

Once you have completed the above actions, the selected area will be displayed across the entire viewing tile.

Note

If you select an area that requires a zoom of more than 16x to display, it will be marked with a red frame. The video image will not be enlarged.

8.2.2.2.3 Enlarging a video image using the mouse scroll wheel

When using the mouse scroll wheel, the video image is enlarged relative to the mouse cursor. A description of this process is provided in the table below.

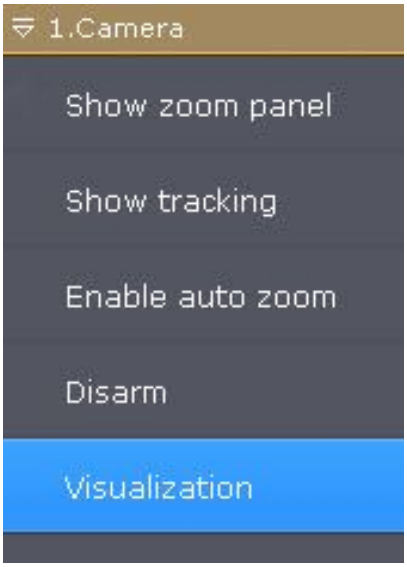
Action	Executed function
Mouse wheel is scrolled forward by one level	The video image is enlarged by 2x
Mouse wheel is scrolled backward by one level	The video image is reduced by 2x

8.2.2.3 Video image processing

In *Axxon Next*, the video image processing functions implemented in the viewing tile enhance the performance and convenience of using the video surveillance system.

The following video image processing functions are available from the viewing tile:

1. Contrast
2. Sharpness
3. Deinterlacing



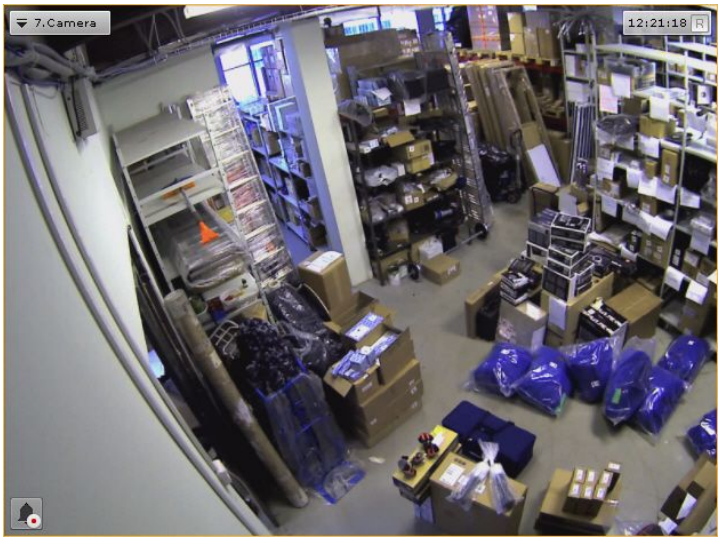
To enable video image processing functions, use the **Visualization** option in the context menu of the viewing tile. Only one image processing function can be enabled at a time.

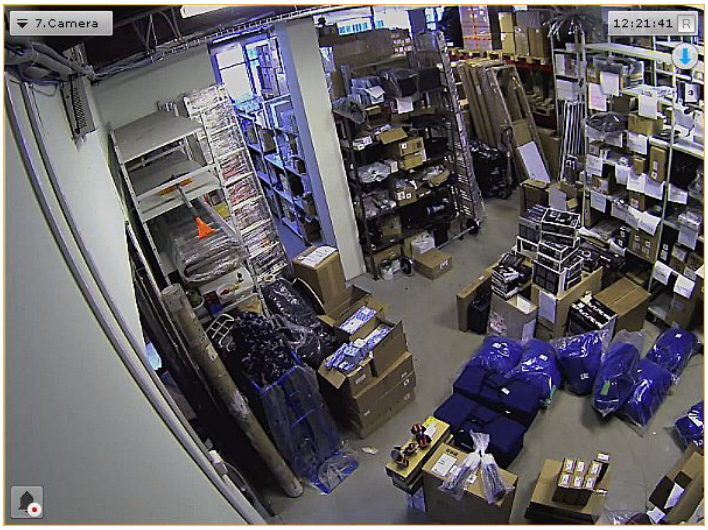
8.2.2.3.1 Changing the Contrast Level

An *Axxon Next* operator is granted access to adjust the contrast of a video image.

To adjust the contrast, select the **Contrast** option in the **Visualization** context menu.

An example of the **Contrast** function is given in the following image.





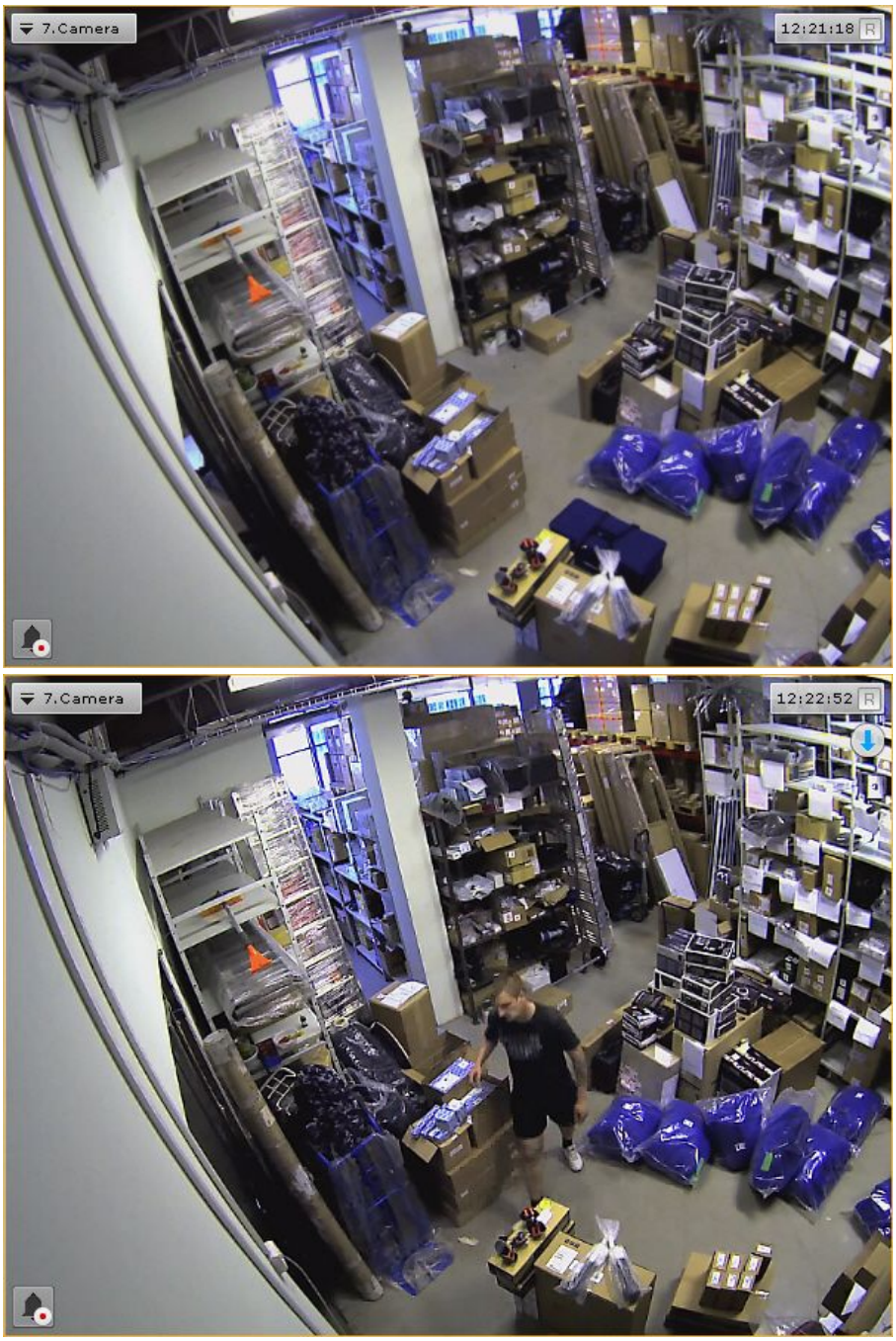
To return to the original image, reselect the **Contrast** option in the **Visualization** context menu.

8.2.2.3.2 Setting the Sharpness Level

An Axxon Next operator is granted access to adjust the sharpness of a video image.

To adjust the sharpness, select the **Sharpness** option in the **Visualization** context menu.

The image in the following picture shows an example of use of the **Sharpness** tool.



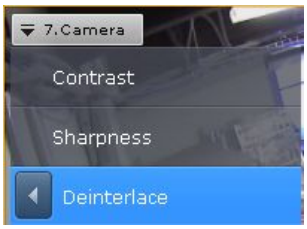
To return to the original image, use the **Sharpness** function again.

8.2.2.3.3 Using Deinterlacing

The **Deinterlacing** tool is used to correct tooth-type distortions (also called "combing artifacts"), which appear on the borders of video image fragments when objects move quickly relative to the background.

An example of a combing artifact is shown in the picture below.

To utilize this tool, select the **Deinterlace** option in the **Visualization** context menu.



The image in the viewing tile will then be corrected.

To disable **Deinterlacing**, reselect the **Deinterlace** option.

8.2.2.4 Rotate Video Image

You can rotate a video 90 °, 180 ° or 270 ° degrees.

Note

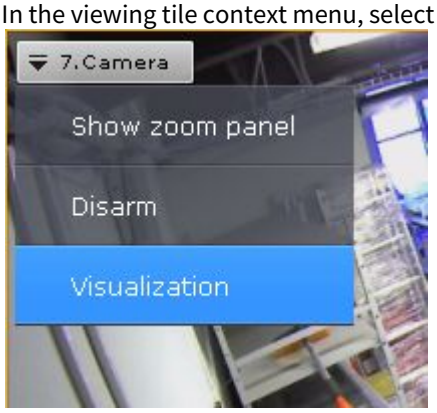
If you enable video rotation, only video in Live Video and Archive modes is rotated:

- NA (not applicable) for video display on the map and on the alarms.

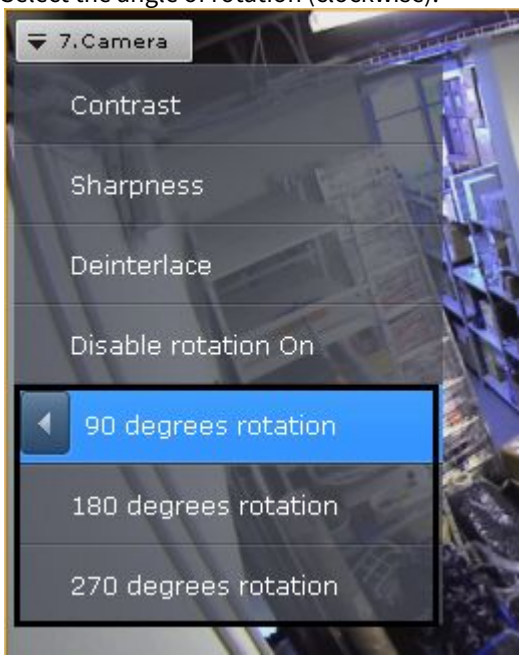
- NA to recording for archives.
- NA for export.
- NA for analytics (metadata).

To rotate video, complete the following steps:

1. In the viewing tile context menu, select **Visualization**.



2. Select the angle of rotation (clockwise).



Video rotation is now complete.

To disable video rotation, select **Visualization**-> **Disable rotation** in the viewing tile context menu.

8.2.2.5 Tracking objects

Object tracking allows a user to visually track the movement of objects in a camera's field of view or in a video recording in an archive.

Attention!

Object Tracking is available if:

1. the object tracker is activated for this camera (see General information on Scene Analytics);
2. the Video Motion Detection tool is activated (see Configuring VMD);

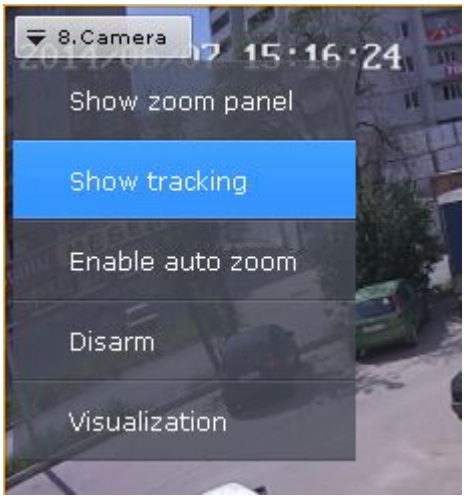
3. at least one of the Embedded Analytic tools is activated (see Embedded Detection Tools).

Object tracking performs the following functions:

1. Recognizes the presence of a moving object and dynamically marks it with a transparent rectangle on the video image.
2. Displays the trajectory of the object's movement.

Motion is detected based on the time gradient of the video image's difference between frames.

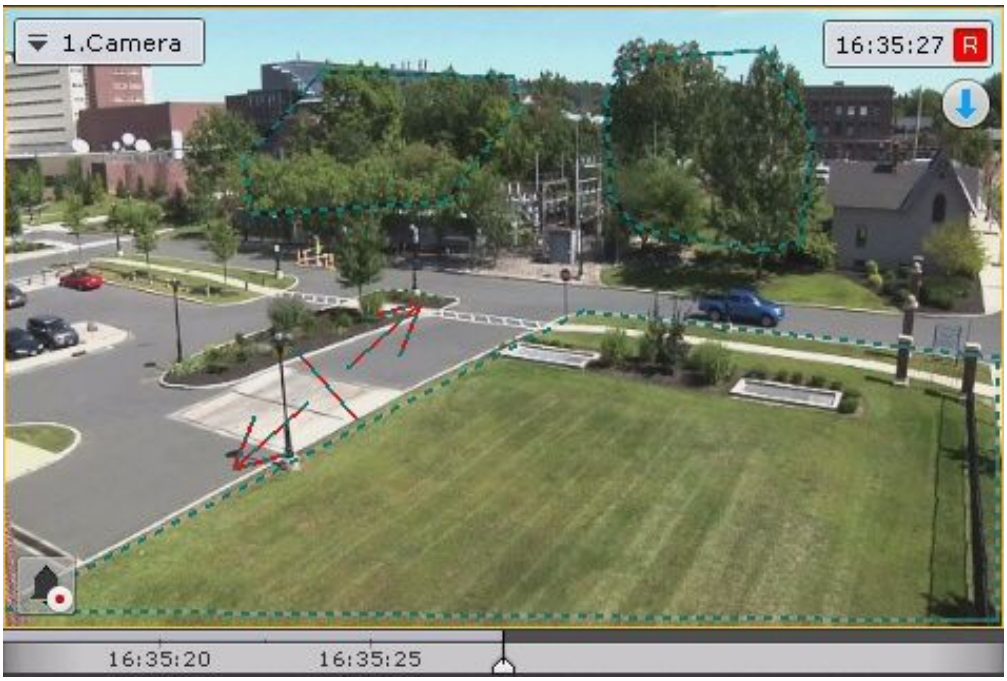
To enable object tracking, select **Show tracking** in the viewing tile context menu.



Object tracking functions will now be activated.

To disable object tracking, click **Hide tracking** in the viewing tile context menu..

If you have created a situation analysis tool for this video camera (see Functions of Scene Analytics), then you can see the detection parameters (areas, lines) in Live Video mode along with object tracking in the camera window.



Note

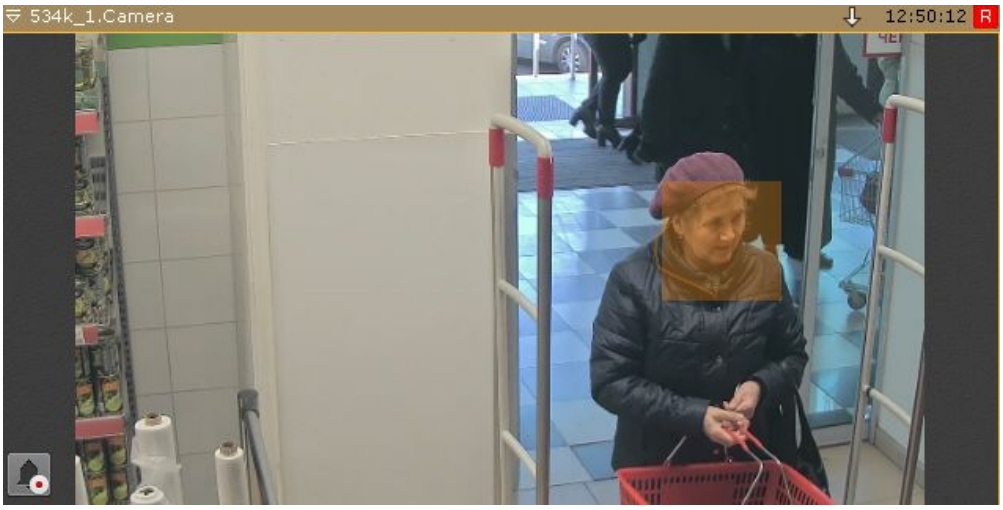
Areas to be excluded from surveillance are outlined in dotted black and green line while detection areas are outlined in black and gray.

If an ANPR detection tool has been created for a camera, the license plates within the video image will be outlined (see Automatic Number Plate Recognition (LPR/ANPR) tools).

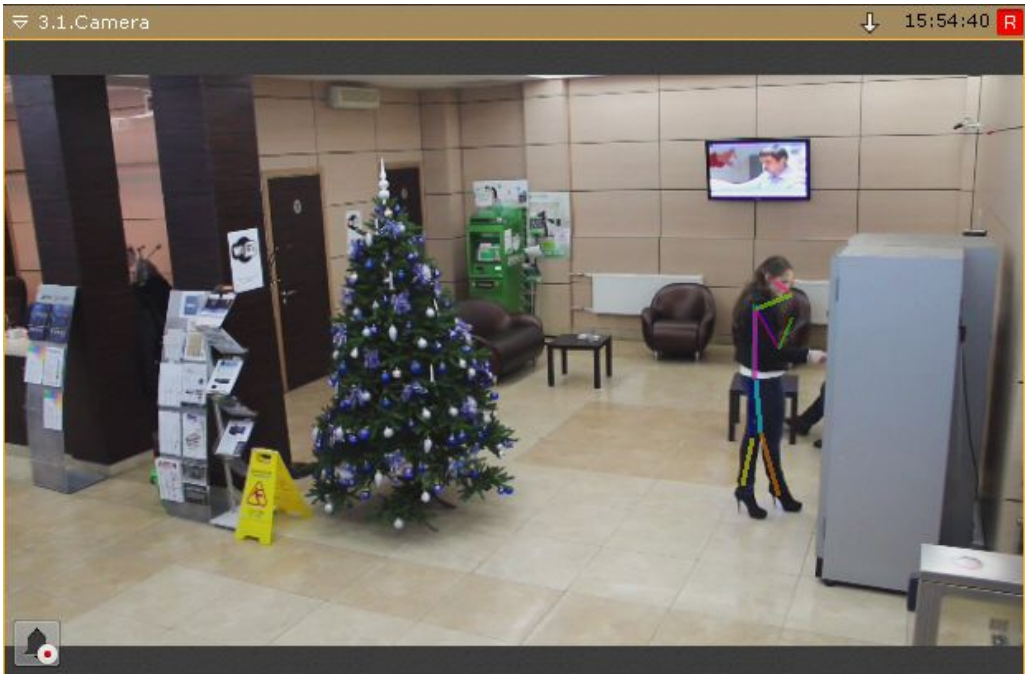
Attention!

To ensure correct display of the outline, set the camera's **Video Buffering** parameter with the range of 500–1000 (see The Video Camera Object).

If a face detection tool has been created for a camera, all faces within the video image will be outlined.



If a pose detection tool (see Configure Pose Detection) has been created for a camera, a human skeleton is highlighted over the video image.



8.2.2.6 Operator comments

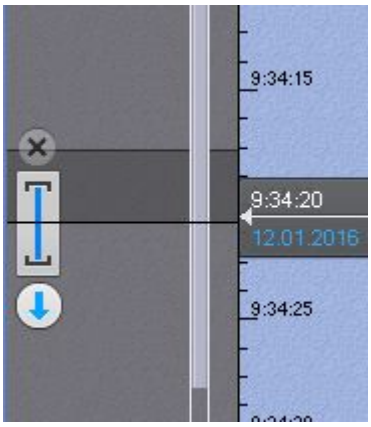
Operator comments on past or ongoing events allow a more complete understanding about the situation at the site.

Comments are displayed during playback (see Viewing recorded video with operator comments) and are marked with tags on the timeline (see The Timeline). Comments can also be searched (see Searching comments).

8.2.2.6.1 Adding comments in different surveillance modes

In Archive and Archive Analysis modes, comments can be added both for specific frames and for intervals of time.

To add a comment for an interval, select an interval on the timeline, place the timeline indicator either inside the interval or at one border of it, and click the button.



Note

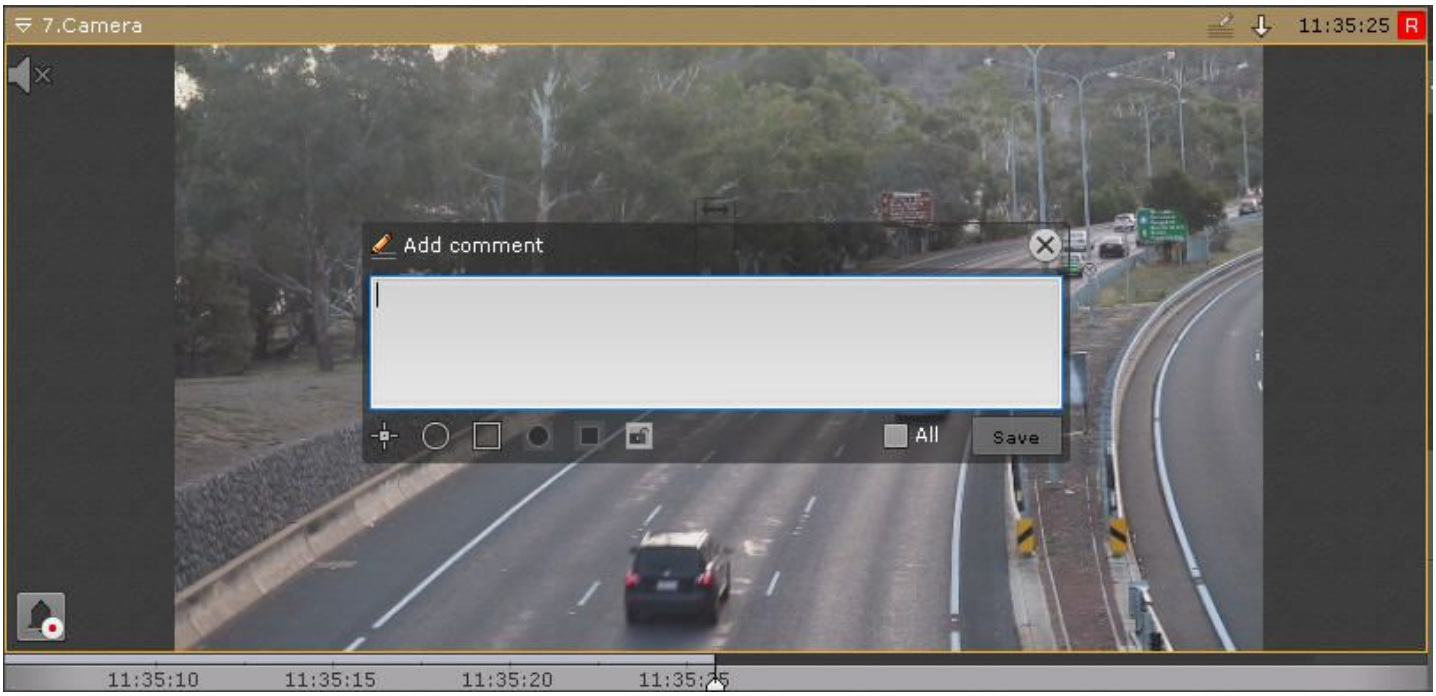
If comments are added during playback in Archive or Archive Analysis mode, playback is paused after the button is clicked.

In Alarm Management mode, operators can be required to give comments after classifying an event (see Configuring Alarm Management Mode) or comments can be left in free form, before event classification, by clicking the button. The comment applies to the entire duration of the alarm.

You can add a comment in real time only if archive recording is enabled.

8.2.2.6.2 Adding a comment

To add a comment, click the button. A dialog box opens for entering a comment.

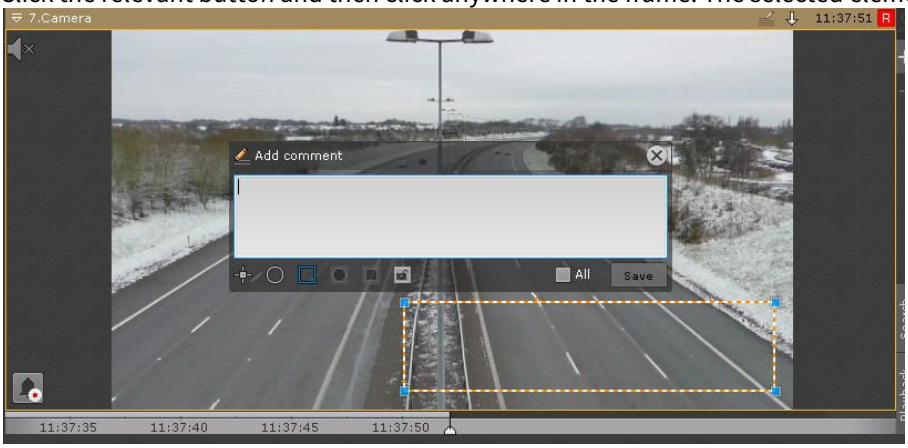


The number of characters in the comment is limited.

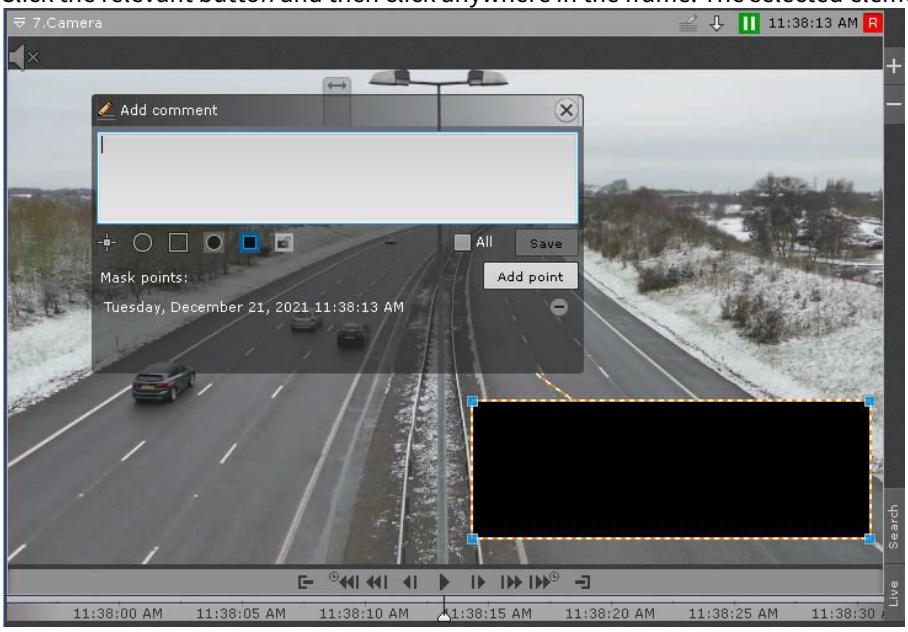
The following parameters can be configured:

1. Position of comment in the frame (the window with the comment is movable by dragging the window title).

2. Transparency of comment window, by adjusting the slider from left to right (from opaque to maximum transparency).
3. Marking the area of interest in the frame, with a dot ( ), oval ( ), or rectangle ( ). To do so:
   a. Click the relevant button and then click anywhere in the frame. The selected element is displayed.



   b. Move the element to the required area of the frame. To do this, left-click on the element and move the cursor without releasing it.
   c. Set the size of the element by stretching its anchor points.
4. Marking the privacy zone — the area of the frame that should be hidden. You can mark it with an oval ( ) or rectangle ( ). To do so:
   a. Click the relevant button and then click anywhere in the frame. The selected element is displayed.



   b. Move the element to the required area of the frame. To do this, left-click on the element and move the cursor without releasing it.
   c. Set the size of the element by stretching its anchor points.
   d. The Mask position will be displayed below the comment. Click the **Add** button. Click to delete a position.

> **Note**
>
> The privacy zone cannot be set in real time.

> **Note**
>
> For one comment, you can specify either the area of interest, or the privacy zone.

5. Protection of an archive interval with a comment from overwriting. To protect archive records with a comment from being deleted, click the button. To cancel protection, click the button (see Setting up record protection).
6. Adding a comment to all cameras on the layout — set the **All** check box.

To save the comment, click the **Save** button. Otherwise, click to cancel.

After being saved, a comment is displayed in the frame as specified. To delete the comment, before you perform any other command in the system, click the button.

8.2.2.7 Switching to other camera via a link in the Camera window

The Camera window may contain links to other cameras (see Adding links to other cameras to the Camera Window).

When you click a link, the corresponding camera is selected, and the Camera window expands.

If a linked camera is not present on the currently selected layout, a layout containing the required camera is selected. If there are multiple layouts containing the required camera, the layout with the least number of windows is selected.

If a linked camera is not present on any layouts, a temporary layout is selected that will be automatically deleted after you proceed to another layout.

If one or more cameras are in Archive or Archive Search modes, after you click the link, you will see it | them also in Archive or Archive Search modes respectively.

8.2.2.8 Viewing titles from POS terminals

If you have configured the titles overlay, the video tiles show titles superimposed on video (see Configuring titles view).

You can have titles from several POS terminals in the same camera window.

> **Attention!**
>
> Captions/titles are displayed only if the camera is located on the current layout.
> If you collapse the Client, then captions are not received.

Note

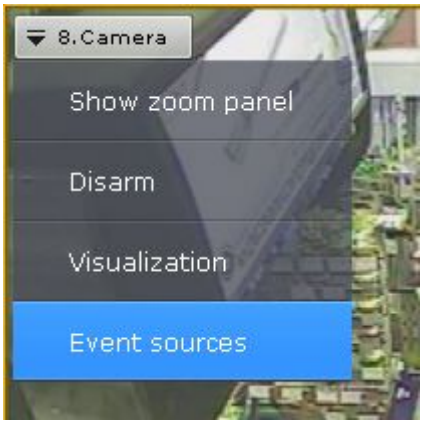
Keywords or lines can be highlighted according to the settings (see Configuring keywords).

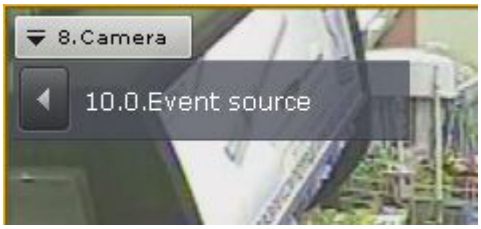
If you view recorded video, titles are synced by time.

Note

With certain captions' output settings (the **Duration** parameter = 0, see Configuring titles view) and low-intensity events at the checkout, you may have a time lag between the captions displayed and the video time stamp.

To disable titles overlay, select **Event Sources** in the context menu of the viewing tile and a POS terminal that you want to hide.





8.2.2.9 Partial decoding of video

Video encoding / compression is a digital video processing technique aimed at reducing the bit rate of streamed video and bandwidth consumption. Video is compressed according to a specific software algorithm - codec.

To compress video signals from IP-devices, standard codecs such as MPEG-4 or vendors' proprietary codecs are used.

Before displaying the compressed video signal on screen, it is automatically decompressed.

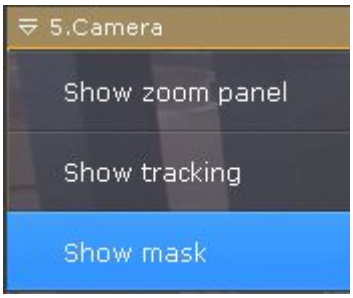
If the resolution of a viewing tile is lower than that of compressed video, only part of the video stream is decoded. This reduces CPU load on Axxon Next clients. Partial decoding does not affect bandwidth requirements. Partial decoding works with MPEG-2, MJPEG and MxPEG.

8.2.2.10 Extra information overlay (Masks)

Some detection tools allow to superimpose on video the following information and patterns:

1. Motion detection (VMD) - Motion Mask.
2. Equipment detection tool (PPE)) and Person-based Privacy Masking - segments of the human body.
3. Fire and Smoke Detection Tools - the sensitivity scale of the detection tool.
4. Neural Counter - highlighting of the recognized objects.
5. Water Level Detection - the water level readings.
6. Queue Detection - highlighting of the queue/line.

To enable viewing with information/patterns/mask overlay, go to the camera window menu and select **Show Mask**.



> **Note**
>
> This option is available only if you have created one of the above-mentioned detection tools for this camera.

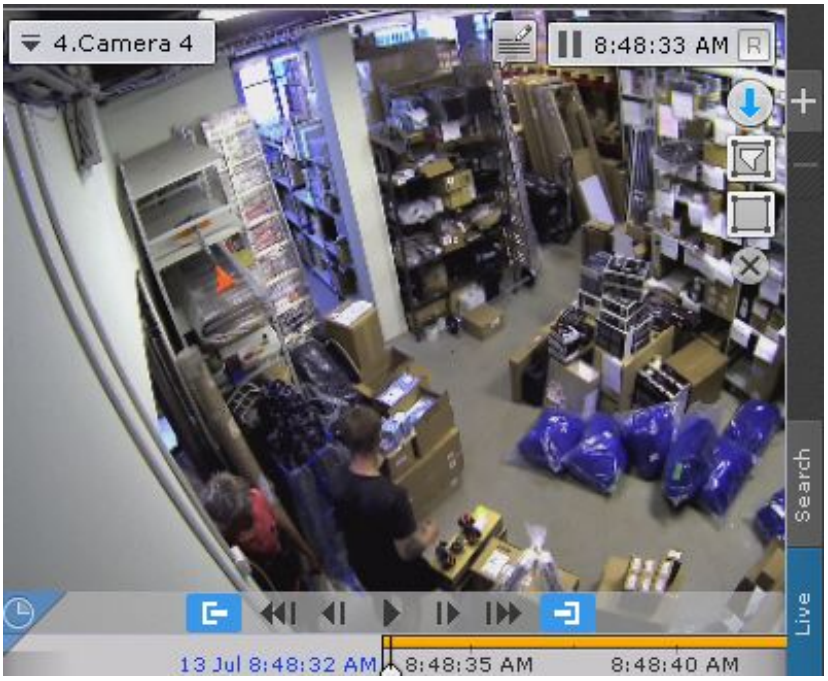
This brings up the desired information onscreen.

To disable this function, click **Hide Mask** in the viewing tile's context menu.

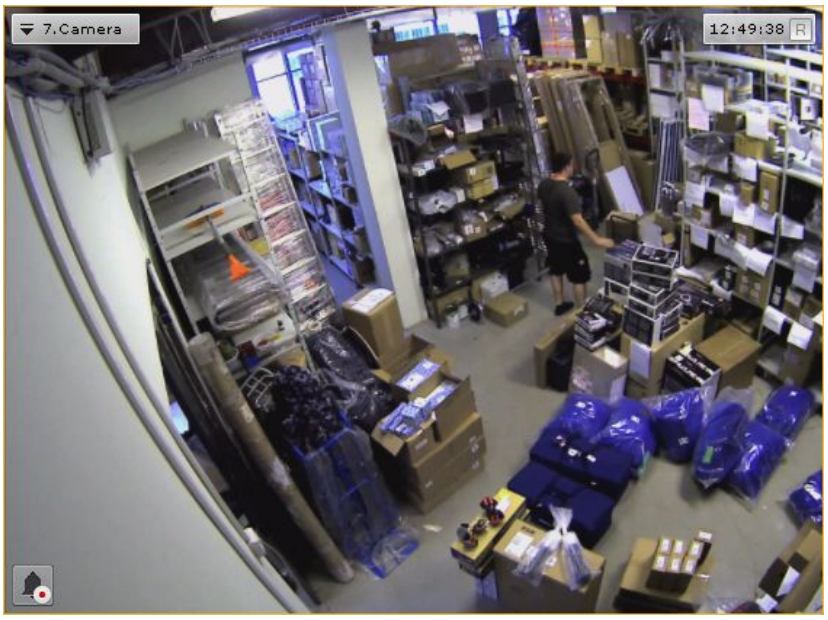
8.2.3 Real-time video surveillance

8.2.3.1 Switching to Live Video Mode

To switch the Camera Window from a different surveillance mode to Live Video viewing mode, click the **Live** tab in the lower-right corner.



The viewing tile will then appear in Live Video mode.



8.2.3.2 Video Surveillance Functions Available in Live Video Mode

In Live Video mode, the following video surveillance functions are accessible:

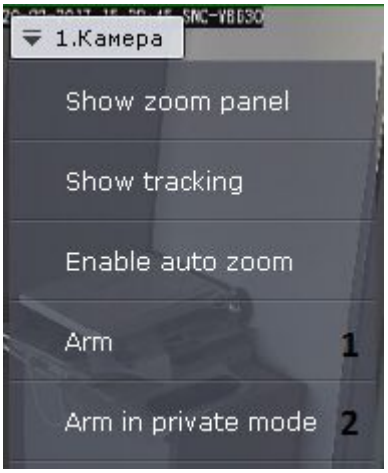
1. Selecting video stream quality in a viewing tile.
2. Autozoom.
3. Functions for tracking of moving objects.
4. Arming/disarming a video camera.
5. Controlling a PTZ Camera.
6. Controlling outputs.
7. Displaying the input status.
8. Autoreplace offline cameras on layouts.
9. Snapshot.
10. Functions Available in All Video Surveillance Modes.

8.2.3.3 Arming and Disarming a Video Camera

In *Axxon Next*, a video camera is armed via all the detection tools registered for that video camera.

To arm a camera, select one of the following two parameters in the context menu of the viewing tile:

1. **Arm** (**1**). In this case, the camera will be available to all users who have access to it.
2. **Arm in private** (**2**). In this case, the camera will not be available to the users with the **Live in Armed mode.**



To disarm a camera , select **Disarm** in the context menu of the viewing tile. The video camera will then be disarmed.

8.2.3.4 Controlling a PTZ Camera

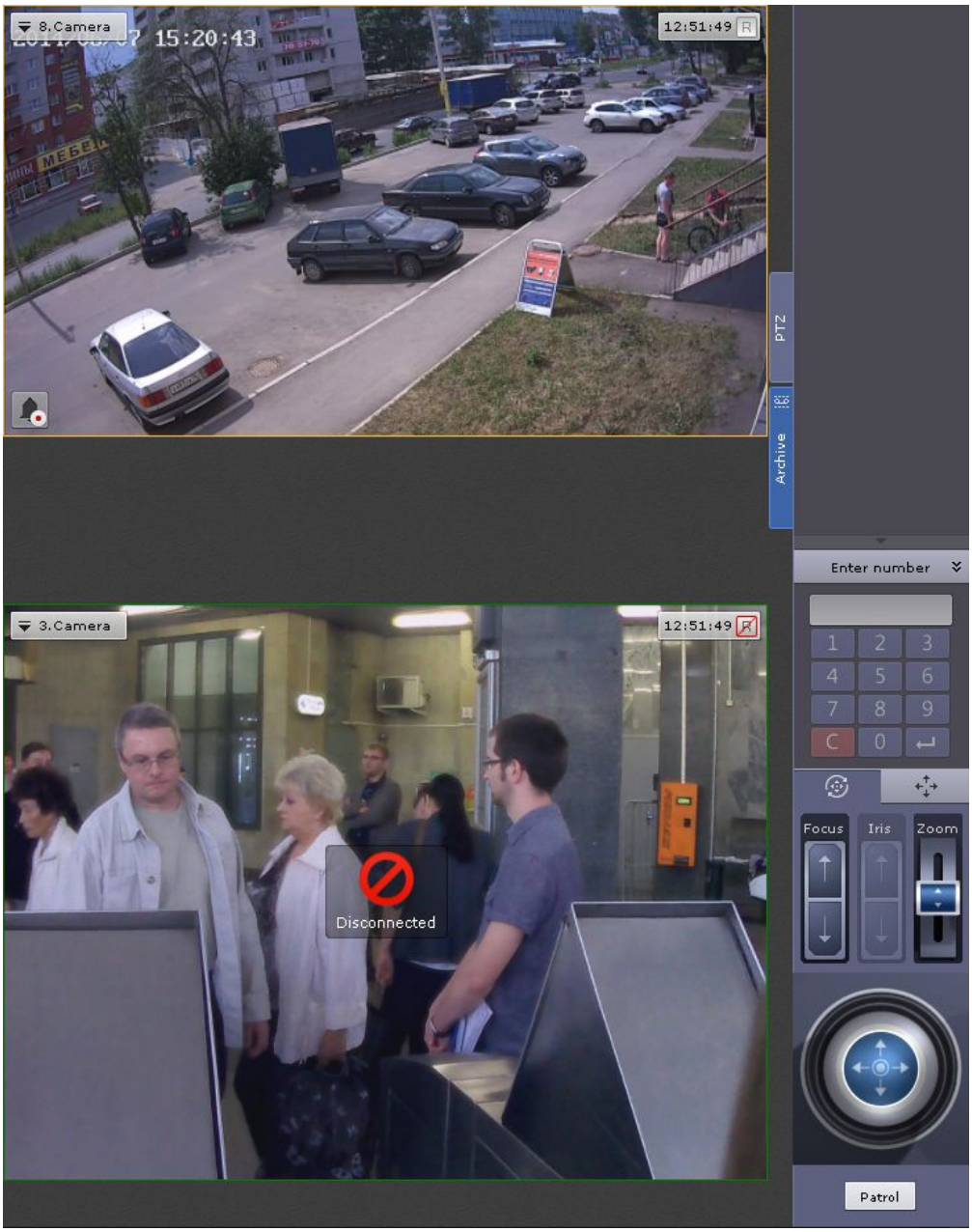
PTZ video camera can be controlled with the PTZ Control Panel or directly in the Viewing Tile (see Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode, Control using Areazoom, Control using Point&Click).

The user gains access to this panel when the viewing tile of a video camera in Live Video mode that supports a PTZ control interface is selected.

Attention!

PTZ camera is controlled in accordance with the priority settings (see Creating and configuring roles). If multiple users have the same control priority, they can control a PTZ camera simultaneously.
If the user with higher priority controls the PTZ camera with the the PTZ control panel (as long as the camera is selected) users with a lower priority can not control it. If the user with higher priority controls the PTZ camera, the relevant information is displayed on the panel.

If you disabled the option to simultaneously control a PTZ camera by multiple users, users with the same priority take over the control on a first-come, first-served basis.
However, a user with equal or higher priority can take over the PTZ control. To do this, click the **Take Control** button.
If the user that controls the PTZ camera is idle a certain time (see Configuring PTZ control), it is automatically unlocked and the control becomes available to all users.



The following actions can be performed using the PTZ device control panel:

1. Use presets.
2. Modify the parameters of the iris, focus, and optical zoom.
3. Modify the horizontal and vertical tilt angle of the video camera.
4. Starting/stopping patrol mode.

> **Note**
>
> Setting presets is described in detail in the section The PTZ Control Panel.

8.2.3.4.1 Presets

8.2.3.4.1.1 Creating and editing presets

The presets list created for a selected video camera is displayed in the upper part of the PTZ control panel in the tab.

For each preset in the list, the following parameters are displayed:

1. The identification number
2. A descriptive name

The presets list is used for the following functions:

1. Creating presets.
2. Editing the identification number and name of an existing preset.
3. Deleting presets.
4. Switching to a preset.

You can create up to 100 presets with numbers from 0 to 99. To create a preset, you must perform the following steps:

1. Place the PTZ camera in the position which is to be saved as a preset.
2. Click . Fields for entering an identification number and a descriptive name for the preset will then appear.

3. Fill in these fields as desired.

> **Attention!**
>
> If a preset with the identification number entered already exists, its parameters, as well as the corresponding PTZ camera position, will be overwritten.

4. Left-click anywhere in the presets list and press Enter to save changes.

Creation of a preset is now complete.

To edit the number and name of an existing preset, you must perform the following steps:

1. Highlight the desired preset in the list.
2. Click

. The identification number and descriptive name fields will then become accessible for editing.
3. Modify the preset number and/or name as desired.
4. Left-click anywhere in the presets list to save changes.

Editing of the preset is now complete.

To delete an existing preset, you must perform the following steps:

1. Highlight the desired preset in the list.
2. Click .

The preset has now been deleted.

To switch to a preset, left-click the corresponding line in the presets list. The camera will then be switched to the desired position.

Note

See the section Selecting a preset.

8.2.3.4.1.2 Selecting a preset

To switch a PTZ camera to a preset, you can use the presets list. To do this, left-click the corresponding line in the given presets list.

To switch a PTZ camera to a preset, you can use the Enter number panel. To display the Enter number panel, click the **Enter number** button.

To switch to a preset using the Enter number panel, you must perform the following steps:

1. Using the numeric buttons (0-9), enter the number of the preset to which you want to switch.
   The entered number is displayed in a special field.

   To delete the last digit entered, click the C button.

2. Click the ↵ button to switch to the preset with the number entered. The camera will then be switched to the desired position.

Switching to a preset using the Enter number panel is now complete.

Note

Examples of entering a number:

5, – Switch to preset number 5;

0, **5**, – Switch to preset number 5.

5, **7**, – Switch to preset number 57.

8.2.3.4.2 PTZ Tours

During a PTZ tour, the camera automatically scrolls between pre-listed preset positions.

Attention!

In Axxon Next, you can set up PTZ tours only for cameras connected via the ONVIF Generic driver (see Generic Drivers (General device, generic)).

The presets list created for a selected video camera is displayed in the upper part of the PTZ control panel in the tab.

8.2.3.4.2.1 Creating and editing PTZ tours

Axxon Next automatically adds PTZ tours created with the camera's web interface.

To add a new tour, do the following:

1. Click the button.
2. Enter a name of the new tour, and click the **OK** button.

3. Select the tour's first preset (**1**).

4. Specify dwelling time in seconds for this preset (**2**).
5. Specify transition speed to this preset in standard units from 1 to 100 (**3**).

> **Attention!**
>
> This parameter is reserved for future Axxon Next software versions.

6. Click the **OK** button.
7. Add all other desired presets in the same way.
8. Click

to return to the PTZ tours list.

To alter a tour, select it in the list and click **Edit**.

To delete a tour, select it and click .

8.2.3.4.2.2 Launching a PTZ tour

To start a tour, do the following:

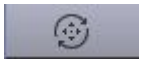
1. Select a tour from the list.

2. Click the **Patrol** button.

To stop a tour, click again the **Patrol** button.

8.2.3.4.3 Control using step buttons and virtual joystick

To control a PTZ camera, you can use both step buttons (discrete PTZ mode) and the virtual joystick (the camera must support continuous PTZ), if the camera supports both modes.

To select, click the  and buttons.

Otherwise, only one of the modes may be used.

> **Note**
>
> If your camera is set to Discrete PTZ Control via Continuous, your control options will be limited to buttons only (see The PTZ Object).

Set the sensitivity level of PTZ step buttons by selecting a value from 1 to 10.

If you press and hold the buttons, the PTZ camera will move continuously.

> **Attention!**
>
> Interaction between PTZ cameras and the Client may cause the cameras to jerk in some cases.
> Cameras also may jerk when they are connected by the Onvif protocol (see Notes on configuring video cameras connected via ONVIF).

Virtual joysticks are controlled as follows:

1. Click and hold down the left mouse button in the central (blue) portion of the joystick.
2. Drag the joystick in the necessary direction.

> **Note**
>
> You can also move the joystick by clicking and holding the left mouse button outside of the joystick border.
> The turn speed depends on the tilt of the joystick: the greater the tilt, the higher the speed.

> **Note**
>
> If you rotate a camera view / viewing tile 180°, you will have PTZ controls inverted.

8.2.3.4.4 Patrolling

Patrolling is an automatic change in the position of a camera along a route defined in the camera's presets list.

> **Note**
>
> You can use a cycle macro to set up patrolling (PTZ camera tour, see Switch to a PTZ camera preset, Wait for timeout, Cyclical macros).

Patrolling must be activated in camera settings (see The PTZ Object). In this case, the operator can stop patrolling by clicking the **Patrolling** button on the PTZ control panel. After the manual PTZ control session is over, patrolling will resume automatically.

If patrolling is switched off in camera settings, you can switch it on by clicking the **Patrolling** button.

> **Attention!**
>
> Manual control takes priority over automatic control. Any interference in the patrolling process cancels it.

To stop patrolling, click the **Patrol** button again.

> **Note**
>
> Any user (regardless of priority, see Creating and configuring roles) can stop patrolling

Patrolling will automatically stop when a manual PTZ control session is over, or after you close the PTZ control panel.

> **Note**
>
> Control session automatically stops after a set idle time (see Configuring PTZ control).

8.2.3.4.5 Controlling Focus, Iris and Optical Zoom

To control focus, iris and optical zoom, use the corresponding sliders.

To control focus, iris, and optical zoom, move the corresponding slider up or down.

If the camera has AF (auto focus), you can see the corresponding button under the slider.

Some devices allow to control optical zoom with the mouse scroll wheel.

To control optical zoom with the mouse, go to **OnScreen PTZ** mode (see Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode), otherwise the zooming will be digital (see Digitally Zooming Video Images).

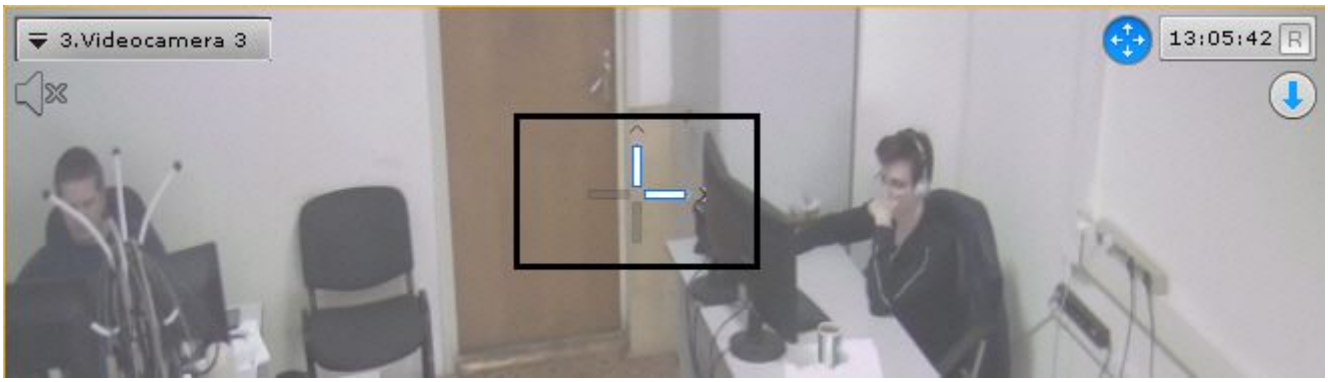
8.2.3.4.6 Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode

The **OnScreen PTZ** mode enables controlling a PTZ video camera by mouse manipulations in the Viewing Tile.

Click to enable this mode

> **Note**
>
> In **OnScreen PTZ** mode, the Areazoom function is disabled (see Control using Areazoom).

To change the viewing angle, click on a video image with the left mouse button and move the mouse pointer in the required direction. During this action the software displays a visual element on the image showing the camera lens movement direction and speed.



The faster you move the mouse, the faster the camera rotation will be.

Click again to disable the **OnScreen PTZ** mode.

8.2.3.4.7 Control using Point&Click

To change the focus of the camera lens, left-click anywhere within the video image in the viewing tile.

> **Attention!**
>
> To operate Point&Click, go to **OnScreen PTZ** mode (see Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode).

Once you have done that, the focus of the camera lens will automatically change to the selected area. The focus is changed using *Axxon Next* algorithms.

> **Note**
>
> This function is available for only some CCTV cameras.
> For more information, contact AxxonSoft.

8.2.3.4.8 Control using Areazoom

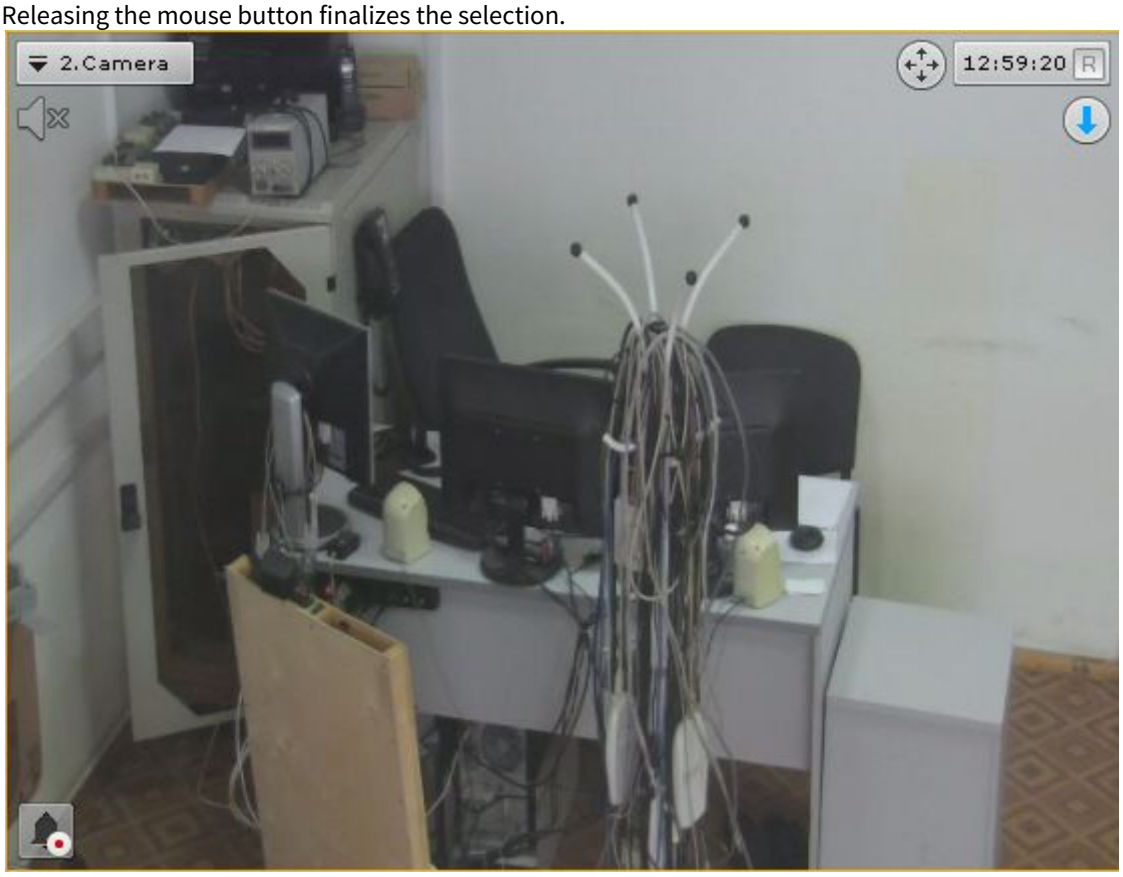
You can focus on a particular area in a video frame.

> **Note**
>
> Areazoom function is unavailable if the **OnScreen PTZ** mode is enabled (see Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode).

To do so:

1. Click a point to focus on it.

2. Holding down the mouse button, moving outward from the center of the focus area, the user sets the size of the area. Releasing the mouse button finalizes the selection.



The lens is reoriented and the image is enlarged so that the selected area now fills the entire viewing tile.

Note

This function is available for only some CCTV cameras.
For more information, contact AxxonSoft.

8.2.3.5 Functions for tracking of moving objects

Axxon Next includes several features for tracking moving objects.

With Tag & Track, an object can be tracked by a PTZ camera under the guidance of panoramic cameras**.**

With Tag & Track Lite, the operator is alerted to the camera in front of which the moving object is most likely to appear next. The camera is predicted based on object trajectory and mapping of cameras to map locations.

8.2.3.5.1 Tag & Track Pro

Tag & Track functionality depends on the PTZ mode that is specified in the settings.

Attention!

To use Tag & Track Pro, make sure your PTZ camera supports Absolute Positioning. The devices that support Tag & Track Pro are listed in the Drivers Pack documentation.
When connecting via the ONVIF protocol, Absolute Positioning support is also required. Contact camera vendor for Information on the Absolute Positioning support in the ONVIF protocol.

Attention!

If manual or control priority mode is selected, for Tag & Track Pro you must activate object tracking in the viewing tile of the overview camera (see the Tracking objects section).

- If automatic mode is selected, the PTZ camera will track all active objects. In this case the PTZ camera switches focus between each object with the specified dwell time.

  Note

  The PTZ camera is positioned so that the moving object is in the center of the frame.

- In manual mode, the PTZ camera tracks an object only after the object is manually selected in the viewing tile (left-click to track). If you click anywhere in overview camera's FOV that contains no tracks, the PTZ camera cancels object tracking and focuses on the specified point.

- If control priority mode is selected, the PTZ camera automatically tracks an object until another object is manually selected for tracking in the viewing tile. If an object is deselected (by clicking again) or if it leaves the field of view of the PTZ camera, automatic mode is re-activated.
- If the PTZ camera is in manual mode, the user controls it with on screen or with a joystick / CCTV keyboard. If the user does not operate the PTZ camera (Control panel hidden), then the Automatic mode is used.

Note

Tag & Trac Pro cannot be used with the OnScreen PTZ mode simultaneously (see Controlling a PTZ Video Camera in the OnScreen PTZ Mode).

8.2.3.5.2 Tag & Track Lite

Attention!

For Tag & Track Lite to work, you must activate object tracking in the viewing tile (see the Tracking objects section).

Tag & Track Lite works as follows:

1. The operator left-clicks an object to start tracking it (the object is outlined with a white frame).

2. After the selected object leaves the field of view of the camera, the video camera's location on the map and trajectory of the object are used to predict the camera in front of which the object is **likely to appear**.
3. The viewing tile of that camera is activated. If the current layout does not contain that camera, a minimal layout with the camera is shown.

   Note.

   If the viewing tile for that camera is currently in archive mode, the tile is switched to Live Video mode and made active.

   Note.

   If video in the viewing tile of the original camera is magnified and the predicted camera is not in the layout, the viewing tile with the camera is made active and the same degree of digital zoom is applied.

   Attention!

   Tag & Track Lite merely predicts, and therefore cannot guarantee, that the object will appear in front of a given camera.

4. To continue tracking the object, select it again in the camera window.

8.2.3.5.3 Simultaneously using Tag & Track Pro and Tag & Track Lite

In some cases, it may be useful for Tag & Track Pro and Tag & Track Lite features to be active at the same time.

For example:

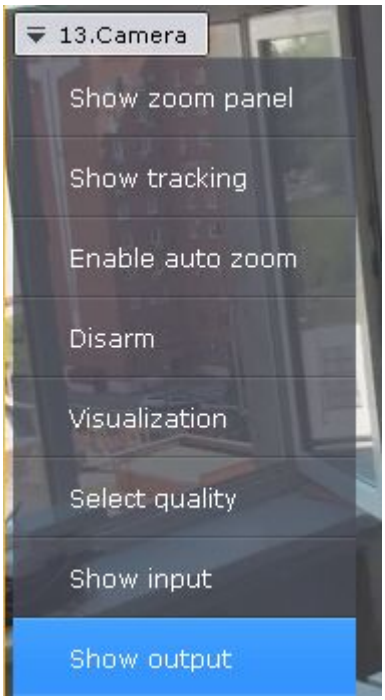
- In Tag & Trac Pro, manual or control priority mode is selected for the PTZ mode.
- In Tag & Track Lite, an object is selected in the field of view of the camera that is designated as the overview camera for Tag & Track Pro.

In this case, both features are active: the object will be tracked by the PTZ camera and its trajectory will be used to predict the camera in front of which it will appear next.

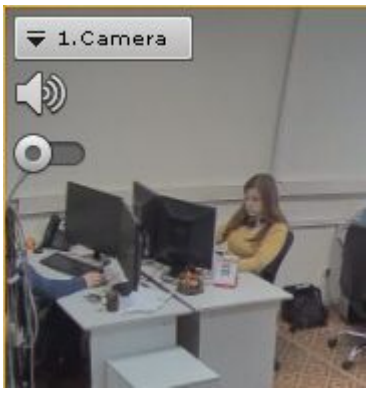
8.2.3.6 Managing Outputs

To control a output, select **Show output** in the context menu of the viewing title.

> **Note**
>
> You must first activate an object before you can control its output.



This opens **Output Switch**.



> **Note**
>
> To hide **Output Switch**, select **Hide output** in the context menu of the viewing tile.

You can toggle the output state by clicking the radio button.

Note

If a output is controlled by several operators simultaneously, the output will remain activated as long as at least one operator requires it.

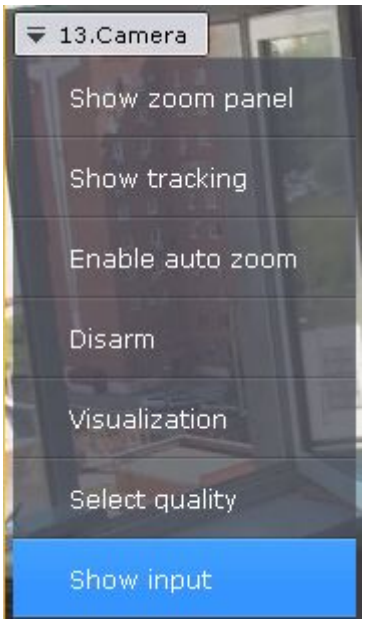
Output Switch	Output status
	Normal
	Activated

8.2.3.7 Displaying the input status

To display the status of a video camera's input, select **Show input** in the context menu of the viewing tile.

Note

You must first activate an object to display the status of its input.



The status of the input will now appear in the viewing tile.

Note

To hide the input status, select **Hide input** in the context menu of the viewing tile.

There are four possible statuses of a input.

Input status	Description
	Video camera is armed, input is in normal status
	Video camera is armed, input is in alarm status
	Video camera is disarmed, input is in normal status
	Video camera is disarmed, input is in alarm status

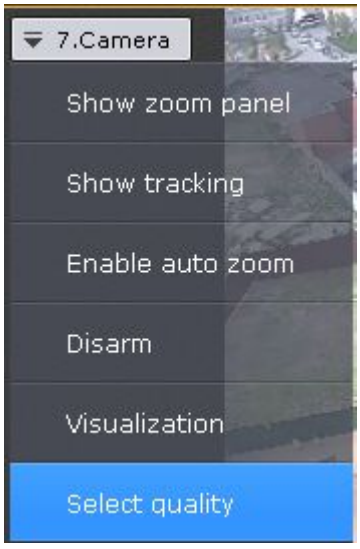
8.2.3.8 Selecting video stream quality in a viewing tile (GreenStream)

If the video camera supports multistreaming, you can select the quality of the video stream that you want to display in viewing tiles.

> **Note**
>
> If the video camera is not configured for multiple video streams, this action is not available (see The Video Camera Object).

To select the video stream quality, do as follows:

1. In the context menu of the viewing tile, select the **Select quality** item.



2. Select the quality of the video stream that you want for display in the viewing tile.

Item	Description
Auto (GreenStream, default)	The camera has two video streams: high quality video stream and low quality video stream. If the size of the cell where the video image from the camera is displayed is close to the low quality resolution with a 10% height or width margin, the video image will be displayed using the low quality stream. In other cases, the high quality video stream will be displayed
High quality	A high quality video stream is used in the video surveillance window (see The Video Camera Object)
Low quality	A low-quality video stream is used in the video surveillance window (see The Video Camera Object). When you enlarge the surveillance window, the video stream switches to a high quality video stream

> **Note**
>
> The automatic video stream selection (the **Auto** item) is unavailable, if automatic resolution selection is set for any stream (see The Video Camera Object).

3. Click in the area between the tiles.

Selection of the video stream quality in the viewing tile is complete.

The HQ symbol in the video surveillance window indicates high quality stream.

8.2.3.9 Autozoom

The **Autozoom** function performs automatic control of digital zoom.

If a viewing tile is inactive and autozoom is enabled, the following actions occur:

1. The smallest rectangular area that contains all tracked objects (even if object tracking is disabled) is chosen.
2. Maximum digital zoom is performed for the selected area.

If autozoom is enabled but there are no moving objects in the video frame, the contents of the viewing tile are shown at their original size.

> **Note**
>
> If the Fit screen function is activated for a viewing tile, the default digital zoom level is used.

Autozoom stops when a viewing tile is selected and resumes when the viewing tile is no longer active.

Autozoom can be enabled both for a single camera and for all video cameras in a layout.

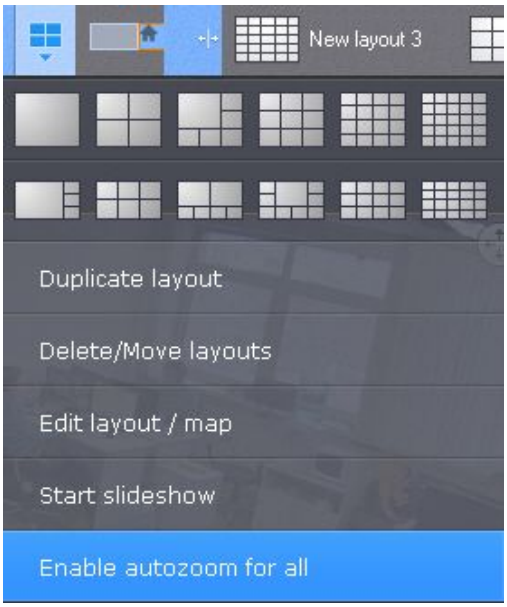
To enable autozoom for a specific camera, in the viewing tile context menu, select **Enable autozoom**.

> **Important**
>
> Autozoom is available if:
> 1. the object tracker is activated for this camera (see General information on Scene Analytics);
> 2. the Video Motion Detection tool is activated (see Configuring VMD);
> 3. at least one of the Embedded Analytic tools is activated (see Embedded Detection Tools).

> **Note**
>
> Autozoom resizing takes into account objects from all tracking sources that are activated for a particular video camera

To disable autozoom, select the corresponding command in the viewing tile context menu.

To enable autozoom for all cameras in a layout, select **Enable autozoom for all**.



To disable autozoom for all cameras in a layout, select **Disable autozoom for all**.

> **Note**
>
> If autozoom is activated for one or more cameras in a layout, by default the menu displays the **Disable autozoom for all** option.

> **Note**
>
> When you switch to the layout editing mode, the auto zoom is disabled for all cameras.

8.2.3.10 Autoreplace Offline Cameras on Layouts

If the main camera goes offline and a sub camera is defined in the settings (see The Video Camera Object), they are automatically replaced: the sub camera shows in the tile in place of the main one.

Cameras are swapped across all layouts in the system.

When connection restores, changes are automatically undone.

8.2.3.11 Snapshot

In Live Video mode, you can "freeze" video. To do so, click the time display (scrubber) in a viewing tile.

This will cause the viewing tile to be highlighted with a blue border. A snowflake icon will appear in the time field.

In this case, the camera window will also have buttons to set the moment of time, if you want to go to Archive mode (see Navigation via the time indicator).

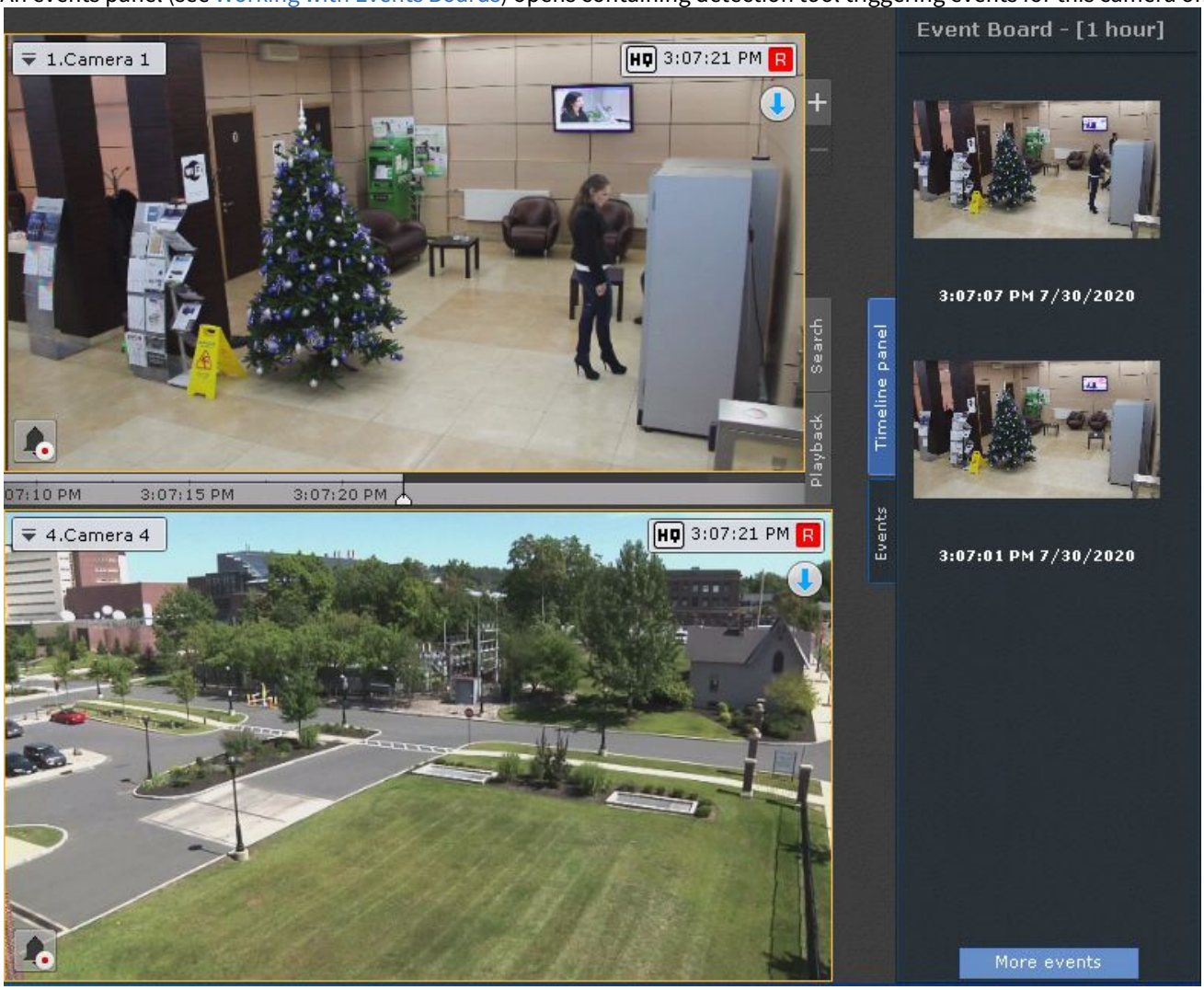
To return to live video, click the display again.

8.2.3.12 Viewing selected camera's detection tool triggering events

You can get quick access to selected camera's detection tool triggering events from any layout. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Select a camera on the layout.

2. Click the **Events** button on the right margin of the screen.
   An events panel (see Working with Events Boards) opens containing detection tool triggering events for this camera only.



To hide the panel, click again the **Events** button.

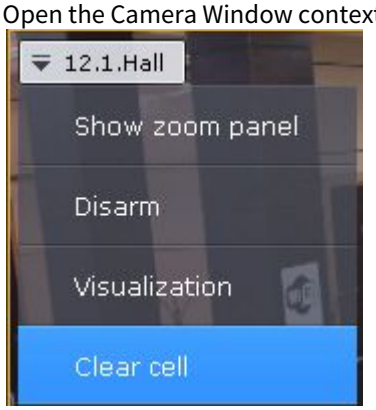
8.2.3.13 Removing a camera from a layout

You can remove a camera from any given layout.

> **Attention!**
>
> These changes are not saved, and the camera will reappear when you call the layout again, or relaunch the Client.

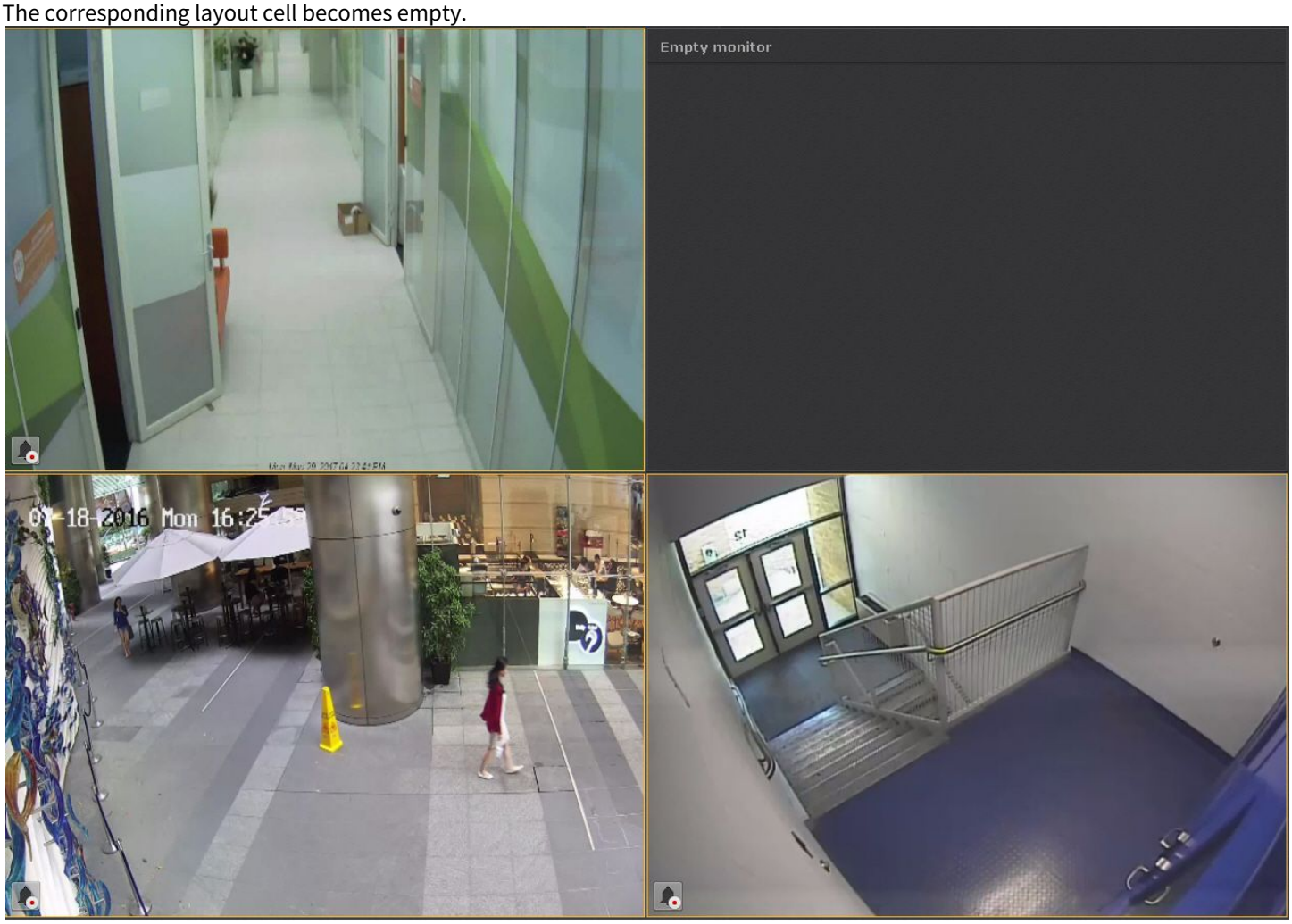
To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Open the Camera Window context menu.



2. Select **Clear Cell**.

The corresponding layout cell becomes empty.



You can further drag and drop a camera from the Objects Panel (see Objects Panel) or Camera Search Panel (see Camera Search Panel).

8.2.4 Video surveillance in archive mode

8.2.4.1 Switching to Archive Mode

To switch from a different surveillance mode to the Archive mode, click the **Playback** tab in the lower-right corner of the Camera Window.

Note

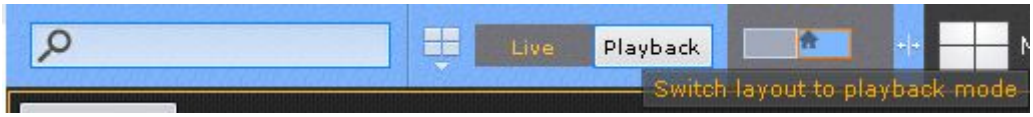
If a camera is not linked to a video archive and has no on-board storage, this tab will be not available.

You can also switch from Live Video mode to Archive mode if you select a position on the advanced archive navigation panel (see Advanced archive navigation panel).

Note

In Live Video mode, if the viewing tile is not active, the tabs for switching to other modes and the advanced archive navigation panel are not displayed. To activate, click the viewing tile

To switch all cameras within a layout to Archive mode, click the **Playback** button on the upper panel.



To return to live viewing, click **Live**.

Furthermore, if all cameras within a layout are in Live Video mode, you have to open the Archive navigation panel to switch the cameras to Archive mode (see Show and Hide the Archive Navigation Panel).

Note

If archive mode is selected as the default video mode for a camera in a layout, when you switch to that layout, the camera is immediately in archive mode (see Selecting the default video mode for a camera).

On first access to Archive mode, the most recently recorded video will be selected on the timeline (see The Timeline). On further accesses to a particular camera archive, the timeline indicator will show the position of the most recent video in the Archive.

Attention!

If you prefer to open the most recently recorded video when accessing the Archive (Video Footage), create a ResetArchivePosition parameter in the following registry key on the Client:
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\AxxonSoft.

Click to create a temporary layout for Archive (video footage) viewing.

The temporary layout is not preserved after you switch to any other layout.

8.2.4.2 Video Surveillance Functions Available in Archive Mode

In archive mode the following video surveillance functions are accessible:

1. Autozoom.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Refer to section Real-time video surveillance for a description of switching to the results of a saved search query and the **Autozoom** function.

2. Selecting an archive for viewing of recordings.
3. Synchronized playback of archives.
4. Compressed playback of archives.
5. Viewing recorded video with operator comments.
6. Viewing external archives.
7. Navigating through the archive.
8. Displaying why situation analysis detection units have been triggered.
9. Viewing the results of a saved search query.
10. Manual archive replication.
11. Tag & Track Lite.
12. Functions Available in All Video Surveillance Modes.

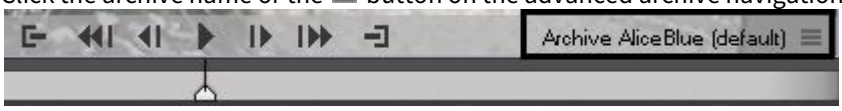
8.2.4.3 Selecting an Archive

You can select video footage to view only if the camera is recording to several archives.

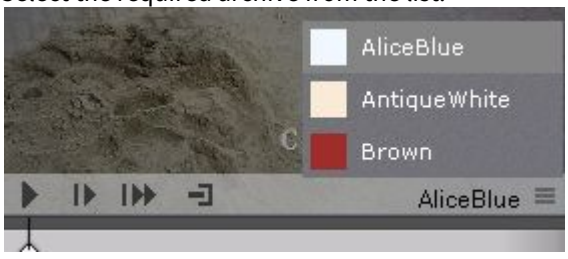
If you do not select an archive, the default archive is played back (see Configuring recording to an archive).

To select another archive for playback:

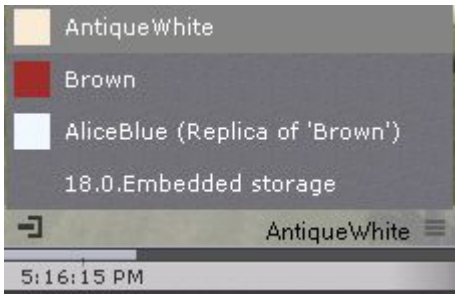
1. Click the archive name or the ☰ button on the advanced archive navigation panel.

2. Select the required archive from the list.

   > **Note**
   >
   > You can select all available Mirror Archives (if any, see Configuring data replication) and on-board storage (if enabled, see The Embedded storage object)



You can now view video footage from the selected archive in the viewing tile.

Attention!

The next time you enter the Archive mode, the selected (not default!) archive will be displayed.

Note

If there is no recording in the selected archive, a message to that effect will appear in the viewing tile.

8.2.4.4 Viewing a combined Archive

In some cases, you might need to record videos from a single camera into multiple Archives.

For example, videos triggered by Detection Tool #1 go into into Archive #1, and videos triggered by Detection Tool #2 are recorded into Archive #2.

For more user convenience, *AxxonNext* offers an option to visually combine records from different Archives.

To view a combined Archive, you need:

1. Go to the Archive selection menu (see Selecting an Archive).
2. Check boxes for the Archives to be combined.

Records from all checked Archives will appear on the timeline. You can apply any system function to a combined Archive.

Note

Clicking on a particular Archive brings you to viewing videos from this Archive only.

Note

If you select multiple archives for a particular camera, and then switch all the layout to Archive mode, all cameras will be set to multi-archive display.

When combining multiple streams from the same camera into one Archive, the highest quality stream is prioritized.

For example, if

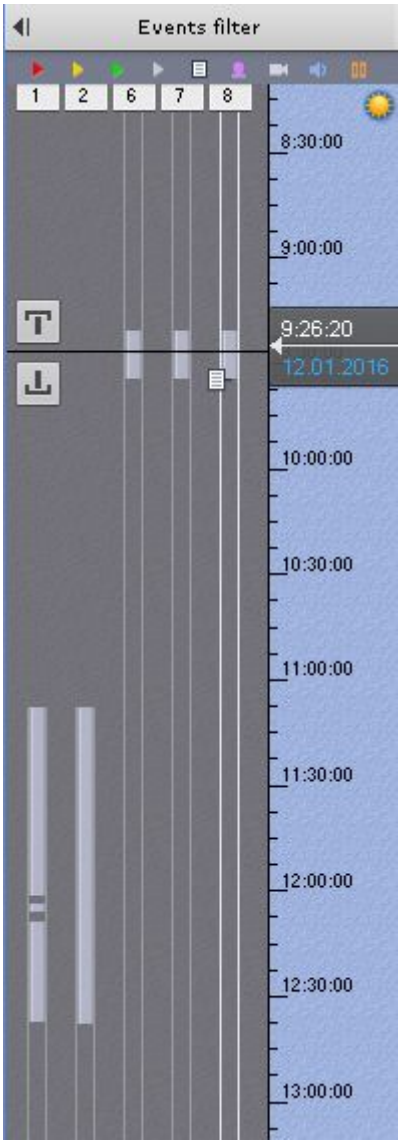
- a lower quality video stream is permanently recorded into Archive #1,
- and a high quality video stream is recorded into Archive #2 by VMD,

then the combined Archive will consist of high quality motion-triggered records and low quality "other" videos.

8.2.4.5 Synchronized playback of archives

Synchronized playback of archives lets you play back archives from several different video cameras simultaneously.

To enable synchronized playback, switch a few video cameras into archive mode. The timeline will then display time axes for the corresponding archives.



Synchronized archive playback is controlled through the playback panel in the same way as playback for a single archive.

8.2.4.6 Compressed playback of archives (TimeCompressor)

During compressed playback (TimeCompressor), the viewing tile simultaneously displays tracked objects from different moments in time within the selected portion of the archive. This lets you quickly look through the archive to find important events and investigate them in more detail.

For condensed playback of archived video from a camera, the following conditions must be true:

1. Camera is bound to an archive (see Configuring recording to an archive).
2. The camera must have at least one active source of metadata (Object Tracker, Video Motion Detection, Embedded Analytics).

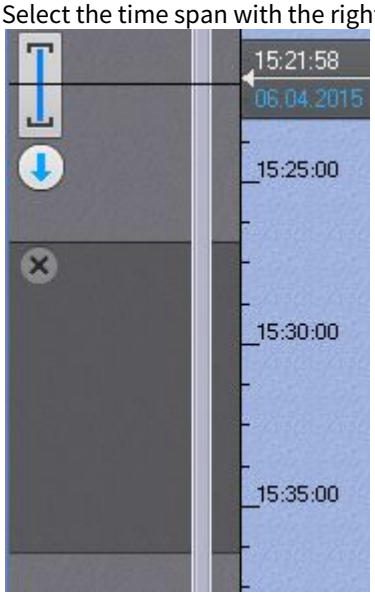
Attention!

For the Object Tracker, you have to select the video stream currently selected for Video Footage recording (see Setting general parameters of Tracker-based Scene Analytics).

8.2.4.6.1 Switching to TimeCompressor mode

To use TimeCompressor, complete the following steps:

1. You can set the time span for viewing video in TimeCompressor on the timeline in one of the following ways:
   a. Set the pointer to the start position. In that case you view the whole archive to the end of it (see the section titled Navigating Using the Timeline).
   b. Select the time span with the right-click.

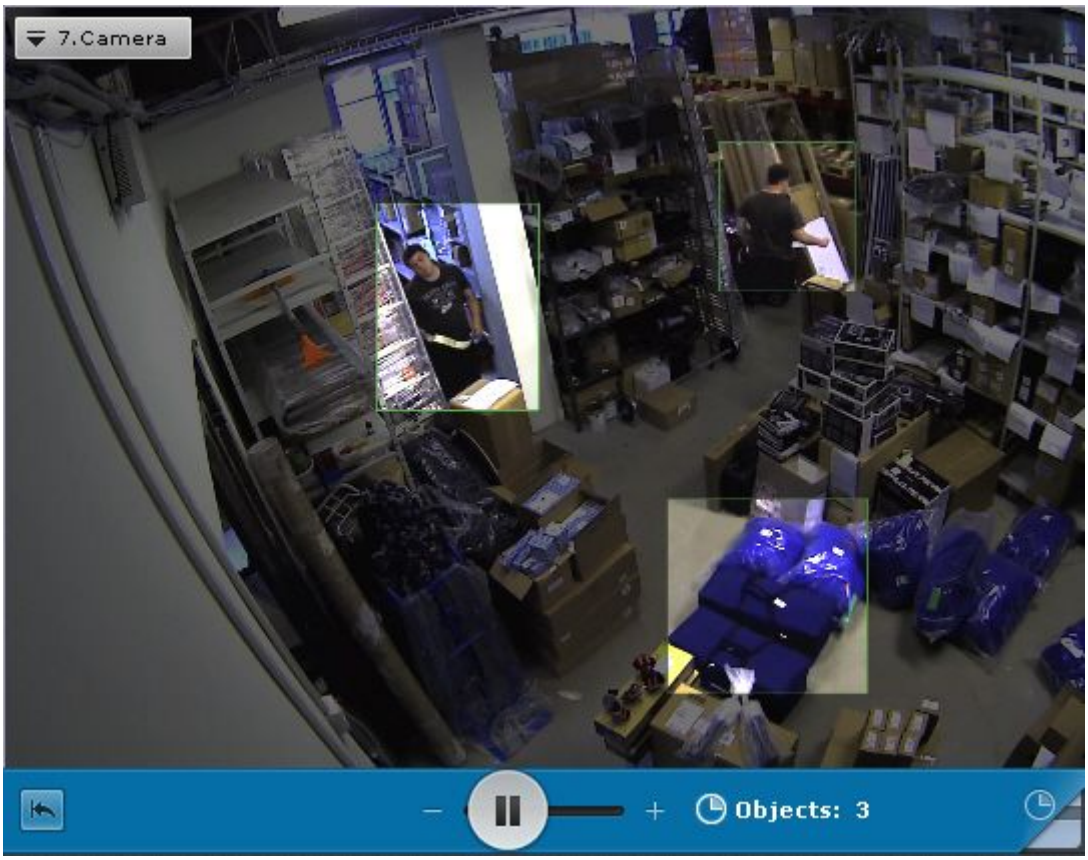


Note

The TimeCompressor mode allows you to view the results of a specific archive search (see Viewing Search Results In TimeCompressor).

2. Click the button on the Advanced Archive Navigation Panel

The archive will now start playing in compressed mode.



Note

Only one video camera can run TimeCompressor at one time. If synchronized playback is started and a video camera is switched to TimeCompressor mode, playback of all other video cameras will be automatically paused.

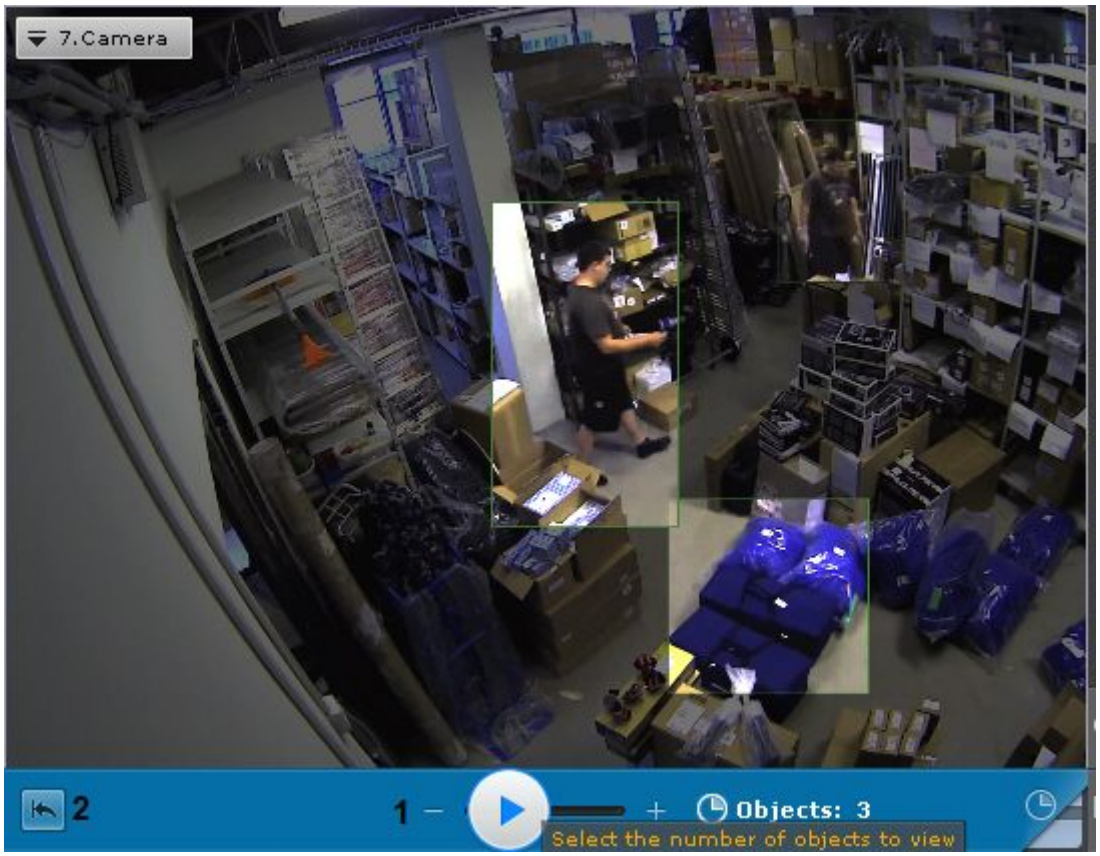
Note

To switch back to the standard archive browsing mode, click the displayed area of the Advanced Archive Navigation Panel .

8.2.4.6.2 Playback control

Playback control in TimeCompressor mode is managed using the advanced navigation panel and the playback panel.

To set the desired number of tracked objects to be simultaneously displayed, set the slider in the appropriate position (**1**). The extreme left position of the slider corresponds to two objects, the extreme right - sixteen.



Note

Once you have configured this setting, playback begins at the beginning of the selected interval.

Note

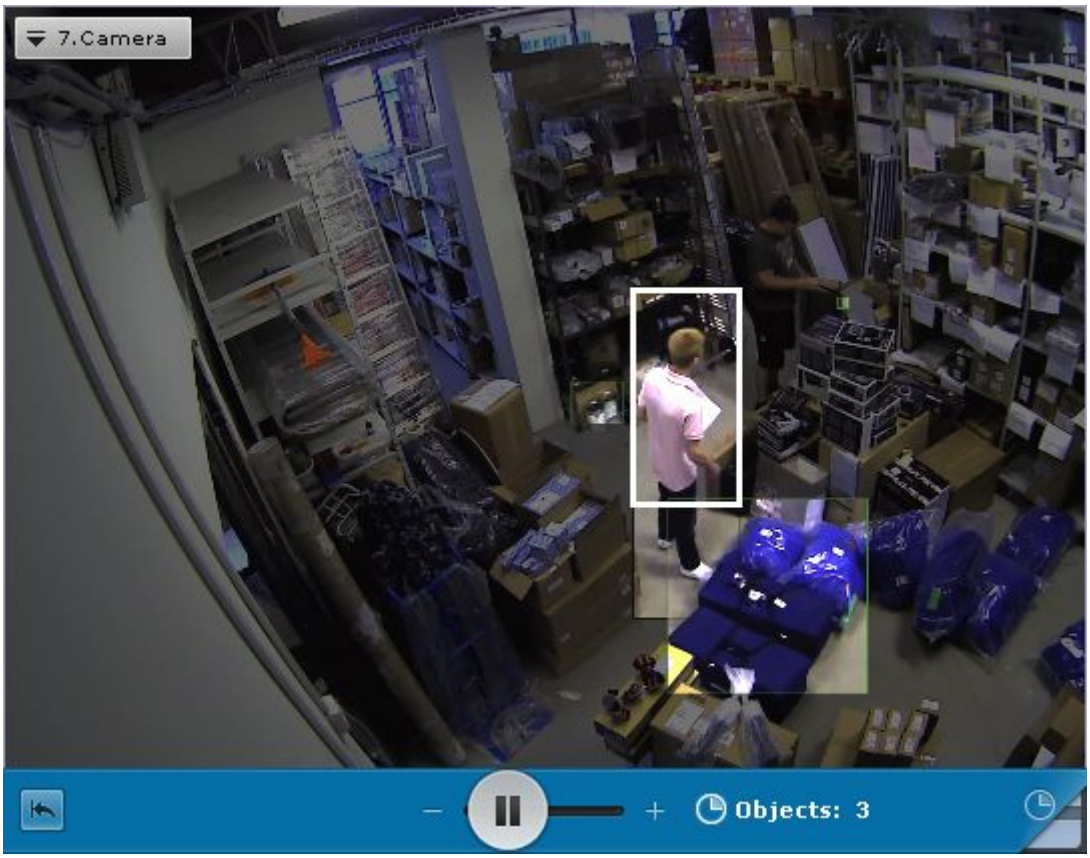
However, according to the logic of the algorithm, the number of displayed objects may be greater.

To stop or start playback, use the and buttons on the playback panel or the identical buttons on the advanced navigation panel.

To start archive playback in TimeCompressor mode starting at the beginning of the selected interval, click the button (**2**).

8.2.4.6.3 Switching back to the original recording of an object

To leave TimeCompressor mode to go back to the original recording of an object, left-click the object.



The system will now automatically switch back to the original recording of the object in standard archive playback mode. Playback of the recording will be paused, and the beginning of the recording will correspond to the moment at which the object was selected.

The period during which the objects remains in the camera's field of view is displayed in the viewing tile.

Note

Once you have switched back to the original recording of the object, you can return to TimeCompressor mode to the place where the switch was made. To do this, click the tab. In this case, playback in TimeCompressor mode will be paused.

8.2.4.7 Viewing recorded video with operator comments

Operator comments are displayed when recorded video is played back in a viewing tile.

Comment text begins display five seconds before the frame for which the comment was added (before the first frame, if the comment was set for an interval), with gradual outlining of the area (or point) that was specified when adding the comment.

When the commented frame is shown or during the commented interval, the area (or point) is also highlighted,

Five seconds after the commented frame (after the end of the interval, if the comment was for an interval), the comment is hidden.

To minimize comments and the displayed area, if any was specified, click the button.

To return to the full comment, click the button.

8.2.4.8 Viewing External Archives

External Archive is time-referenced video footage (see Importing video to Axxon Next).

If you go to Archive mode, the timeline shows available video recordings. If there is no time overlapping for video recordings, the space between them is blank.

If video recordings overlap, they are displayed as one track that spans from the beginning of the first video clip to the end of the second.

If you want to watch this track, both video clips are played sequentially and in full.

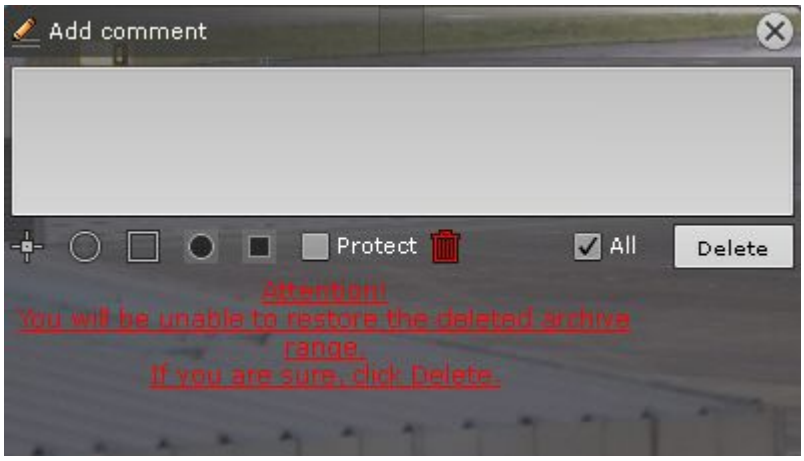
8.2.4.9 Delete a part of an archive

You can delete an arbitrary part of an archive. To do this:

1. Set the time interval for the footage to be deleted from the archive:
   a. on the main timeline, set the indicator to the beginning of the interval, click the button, then set the indicator to the end of the interval and click again; as an alternative, you can right-drag the mouse over the required interval. To delete the interval, click ;
   b. on the additional navigation panel, you can set the time interval the same way using the buttons. You cannot set the interval with the mouse on the additional panel.
2. Click in the Camera window.

3. To delete footage within the specified time interval for all cameras within the archive, check the **All** box .

4. Click .



5. Click the **Delete** button to confirm the deletion.

> **Attention!**
>
> You cannot recover deleted footage.

> **Attention!**
>
> If several archives were selected for viewing (see Viewing a combined Archive), the footage will be deleted from all of them.

After the deletion is complete, the remaining footage may contain some artifacts near the cut points.

8.2.4.10 Navigating in the Archive

You can navigate in the archive using the following interface elements:

1. Timeline
2. Advanced navigation panel
3. Events list
4. Playback panel
5. Time indicator

You can also navigate through the archive by easily flipping through recordings.

8.2.4.10.1 Navigating Using the Timeline

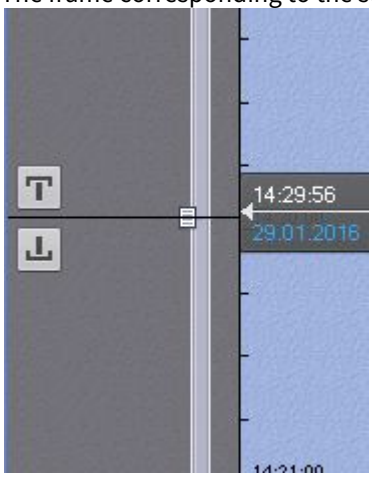
> **Note**
>
> Use of the timeline is described in detail in the section The Timeline.

You can select recordings in the archive for playback in a viewing tile by using the timeline, in one of two ways:

1. Left-click the indicator (**1**) and drag it to the corresponding position on the timeline. Alternatively, you can left-click the left portion of the timeline.

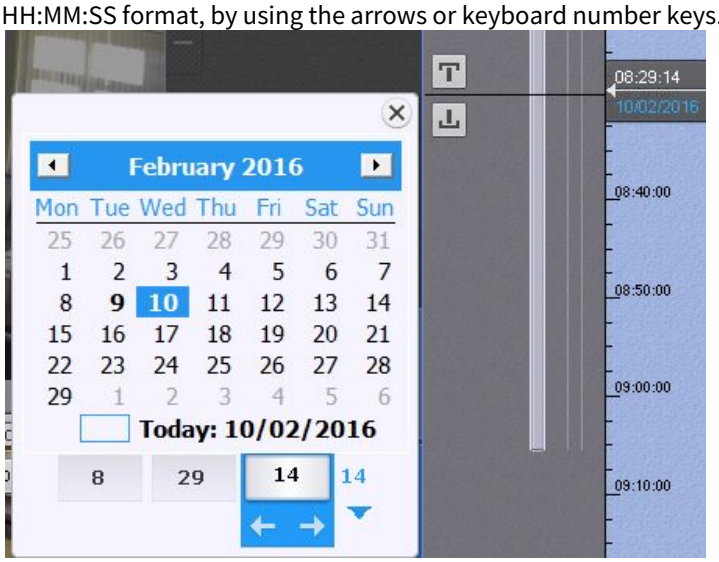
> **Note**
>
> The position on the timeline is a graphical representation of a specific moment in time.

The frame corresponding to the selected position (moment in time) will then be displayed in the viewing tile (**2**).



> **Attention!**
>
> If the system clock is shifted back one hour (for example, in winter saving), the videos from the lost hour will disappear from the timeline but remain accessible.
> For example, at 3 PM the clock is shifted back one hour. If you place the timeline marker anywhere after 02:00:00, videos shot after the shift will be played back.
> If you set the marker to 01:59:59 or earlier, videos shot from 01:59:59 to 02:59:59 (time stamped before the shift) will be played back.

2. Click the indicator. The calendar opens. Select the date to which you want to jump in the archive and specify the time in HH:MM:SS format, by using the arrows or keyboard number keys.



> **Note**
>
> The Tab key can be used to navigate across various elements of the Calendar.

You are then taken to the specified point in the archive.

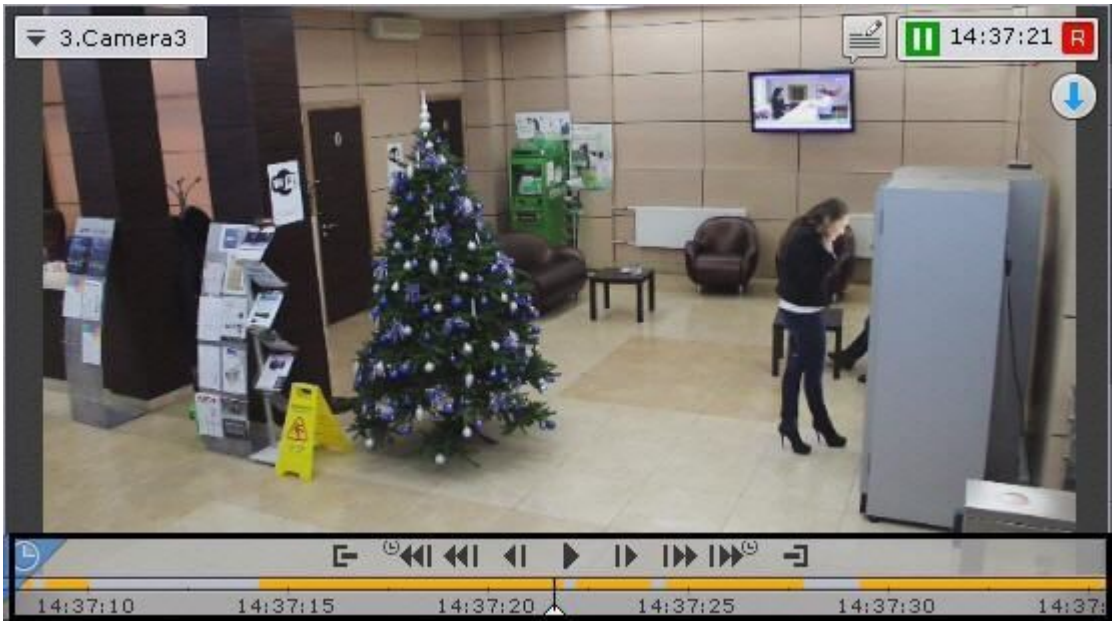
If one video camera is in archive mode and you move the indicator to a point for which there is no video, the indicator will automatically go to the video for the closest point in time. If two or more video cameras are in archive mode, you will not be taken to the video for the closest point in time; the message **No archive** will be shown on screen.

To play back the selected recording, use the playback panel (see the section titled Navigating Using the Playback Panel).

8.2.4.10.2 Navigation using the advanced panel

You can use the advanced navigation panel to select recordings in the archive for playback in the viewing tile. To do this, complete one of the following two actions:

1. Left-click the timeline (**1**) and hold down the button while dragging the scale to the desired position.
2. Left-click the desired moment in time on the timeline.
3. Left-click and hold the desired moment in time on the timeline.



When you left-click and hold left the mouse button and the timeline is moved, you can view the corresponding recording in fast forward. The further left you click, the faster is the playback speed.

> **Note**
>
> The current moment in time is determined by the cursor located in the center of the timeline (**2**). The position of the cursor relative to the timeline never changes.

Once the selected moment is reached, playback stops. The speed of playback depends on the speed of the timeline's movement.

To start archive playback click in the middle of the timeline.To pause playback, click the button or left-click the timeline.

To control playback, use the playback panel (see the section titled Navigating Using the Playback Panel) or the advanced navigation panel.

Playback		Pause	
Item	Description	Item	Description
	Decreases playback speed by one level		Go to the preceding frame
	Decreases playback speed by one level		Go to the next frame
	Go to the previous recording		Go to the previous recording
	Go to the next recording		Go to the next recording

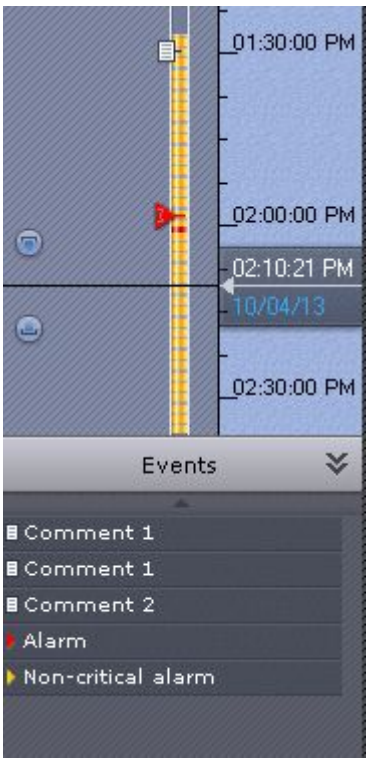
Playback		Pause	
	Jump back by N* seconds		Jump forward by N* seconds
*see Navigation using the advanced panel.			

Attention!

Click and hold the button to jump to the end of the archive.

8.2.4.10.3 Navigating Using the Events list

The Events List and the timeline are dynamically linked: when you select an event in the list, the timeline indicator automatically jumps to the selected position.



For details, see the section titled Events List.

8.2.4.10.4 Navigating Using the Playback Panel

To navigate in the archive using the playback panel, you must first select a recording for playback.

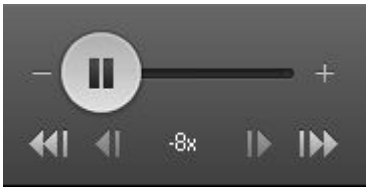
Once a recording is selected, the following operations are accessible:

1. Play recording:
2. Pause/Stop playback:
3. Go to the preceding frame .
4. Go to the next frame .
5. Go to the previous recording .

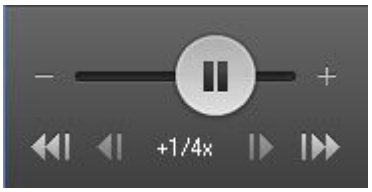
6. Go to the next recording .

You can fast-forward / fast-rewind and change playback direction (forward / back).

Fast-rewind playback.



Slow playback.



For reverse playback of a recording, move the slider to the left of the position corresponding to zero playback speed (the center of the slider); for forward playback, move it to the right. The current playback speed is displayed under the slider. During forward playback of a recording, a **+** sign appears before the speed; during reverse playback, a **-** sign appears. The value **0X** corresponds to zero speed, i.e., no playback; the value **1X** corresponds to the frame rate of recording.

Tp speed up playback by one step, click **+**. To slow down by one step, click **-**. To temporarily change the playback speed, move the slider in the desired direction.

To slow playback N-fold, do as follows:

1. Accelerate playback N-fold:
2. Click the value of the current playback speed below the slider.

This slows the playback N-fold.To return to the fast playback, click the current speed again.

If one camera is in the Archive mode, you can fast forward/backward up to 128 x. If several camers are in the Archive mode, then you can speed up and slow down playback up to 32 x.

8.2.4.10.5 Navigation via the time indicator

The time indicator in a viewing tile can be used to set the time of the current day on the timeline to which you want to navigate in the archive.

To do so, left-click the indicator and specify the time in HH:MM:SS format, by using the arrows or keyboard number keys.

You are then taken to the specified point in the archive.

If one video camera is in archive mode and you try to navigate to a point for which there is no video, you will be automatically taken to the video for the closest point in time. If two or more video cameras are in archive mode, you will not be taken to the video for the closest point in time; the message **No archive** will be shown on screen.

8.2.4.10.6 Keyboard navigation

You can use keyboard shortcuts to navigate through an archive and control video playback.

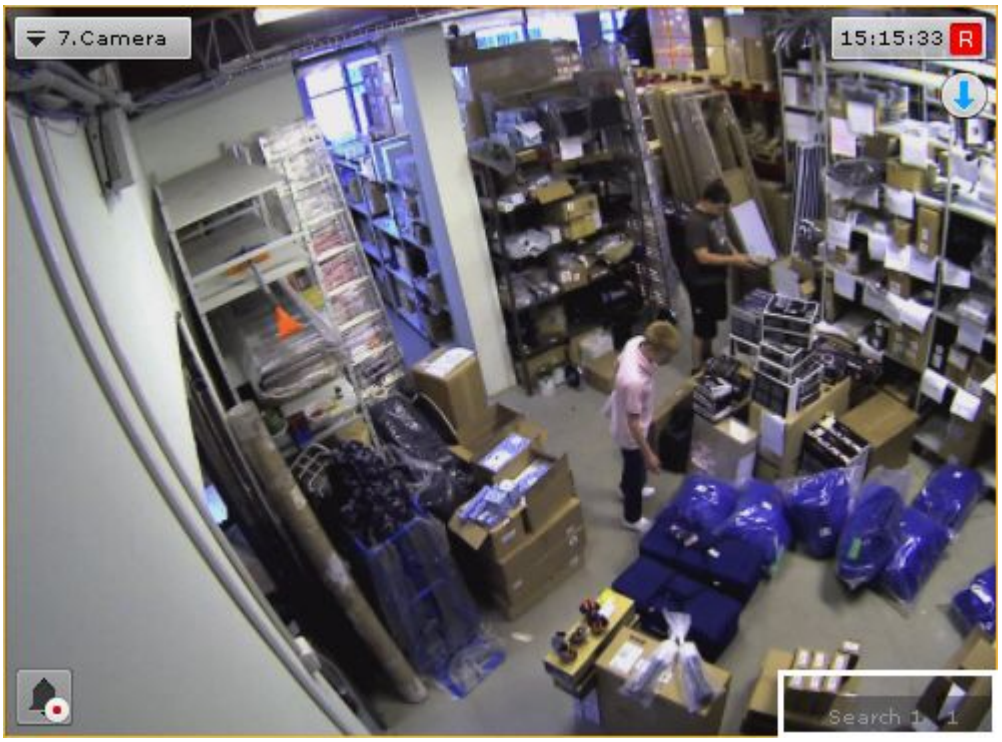
Key or key combination	Resultant action during pause	Resultant action during play
Spacebar	Begins playback	Pauses playback
Ctrl+Spacebar	Uses the current position to set the export interval	Uses the current position to set the export interval
Up-Arrow	Increases playback speed by one level	Increases playback speed by one level
Down-Arrow	Decreases playback speed by one level	Decreases playback speed by one level
Left-Arrow	Moves back to the preceding key frame	-
Right-Arrow	Moves forward to the next key frame	-
Page up	Switches to the preceding recording	Switches to the preceding recording
Page down	Switches to the next recording	Switches to the next recording

8.2.4.11 Displaying the causes of triggered situation analysis detection units

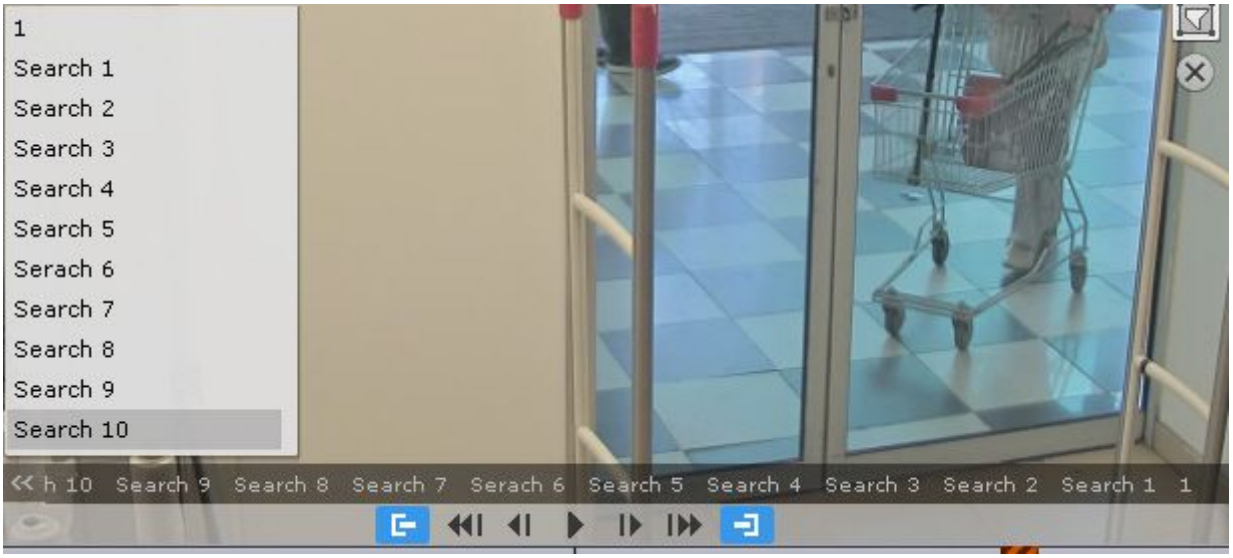
When positioning the archive in the range [-1 sec.; +1 sec.] from when the situation analysis detection unit was triggered, the objects that triggered the detection unit will be marked on the video frame.

8.2.4.12 Viewing the results of a saved search query

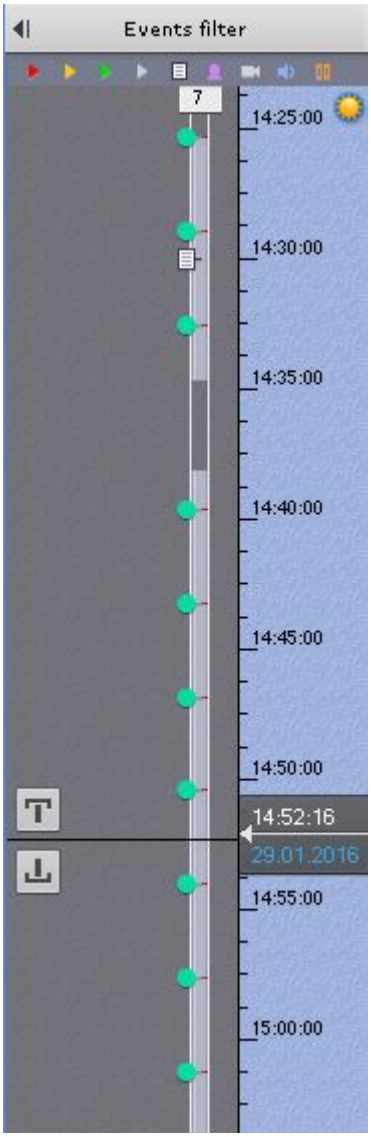
If the system has saved Forensic Search queries for a video camera, tabs for these queries are displayed in the lower-right corner of the corresponding viewing tile.



If not all tabs fit in the viewing tile, a full list of saved Forensic Search queries is available by clicking the button.



Clicking a tab switches to Archive mode, displaying the results of the relevant search on the timeline (the process is similar to viewing search results in Archive Analysis mode).



The standard Archive mode controls are used for navigating between search results (see Navigating in the Archive).

> **Note**
>
> To search in standard archive mode without displaying search results, click the corresponding tab in the viewing tile.

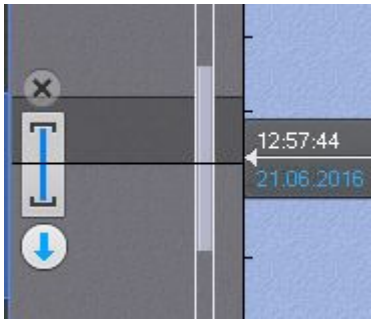
The parameters for the search are displayed when switching from search results to Archive Analysis mode.

8.2.4.13 Manual Archive Replication

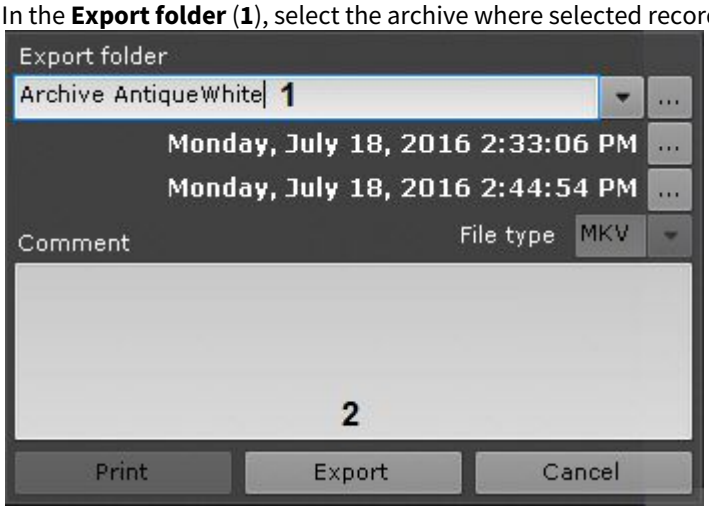
You can protect selected video recordings from being overwritten. To do this:

1. Create a new archive (see Creating Archive) and configure on-demand replication for it (see Configuring data replication).
2. Switch to Archive Mode (see Switching to Archive Mode).

3. Set the time interval on the timeline (see Standard video export). Recordings from this range will be copied to the new file.



4. Click the button .
5. In the **Export folder** (**1**), select the archive where selected recordings will be copied.



> **Attention!**
>
> You can replicate recorded video only to the "right" end (later point in time) of the archive. It is not possible to overwrite existing data in the archive.
> If the selected replication range starts and ends earlier than the starting time of the mirror archive (e.g. you want to copy a hour of video footage from 9 a.m. to 10 a.m., but the mirror archive starts at 11.a.m.), replication will not be possible (the **Export** button is not available).

6. Click the **Export** button (**2**).

Selected recordings have now been copied to the specified file.

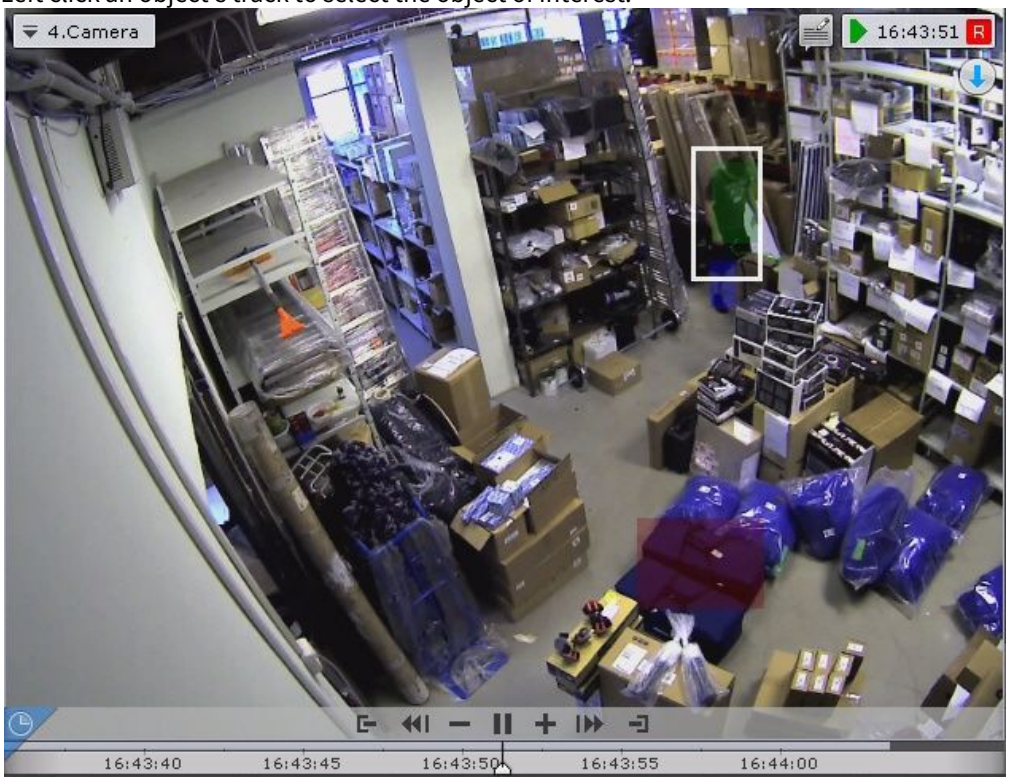
8.2.4.14 Tag & Track Lite in Archive mode

> Configuring Tag & Track Lite
> Tag & Track Lite

> **Attention!**
>
> For Tag & Track Lite to work, you must activate object tracking in the viewing tile (see the Tracking objects section).

Tag & Track Lite in the archive mode works as follows:

1. Left click an object's track to select the object of interest.



2. The most probable camera where the object **may have been** captured next is suggested.
3. After selecting an object, you are switched to the suggested camera. Camera footage will be played back automatically from the moment when the target object was supposed to appear in the FoV.

> **Attention!**
>
> Tag & Track Lite merely predicts, and therefore cannot guarantee, that the object will appear in front of a given camera.

8.2.5 Video surveillance in Alarm Management mode

8.2.5.1 Video surveillance functions available in Alarm Management mode

The following video surveillance functions are available in Alarm Management mode:

1. Forwarding and reversing playback of an alarm at various speeds.
2. Evaluating alarms (assigning a status).
3. Functions Available in All Video Surveillance Modes.

8.2.5.2 Switch to Alarm Management mode

When an alarm is initiated, the system switches to alarm mode automatically at the moment the event is accepted for processing. Operator can escape the Alarm management mode. To return a viewing tile from a different surveillance mode to Alarm Management mode, in the lower-left corner of the tile, click the button.

The viewing tile will then appear in **Alarm Management** mode.

If there are multiple alarms for a camera, Alarm Management mode will open to the most recent alarm.

8.2.5.3 Initiating an Alarm

A system alarm can be initiated in one of two ways:

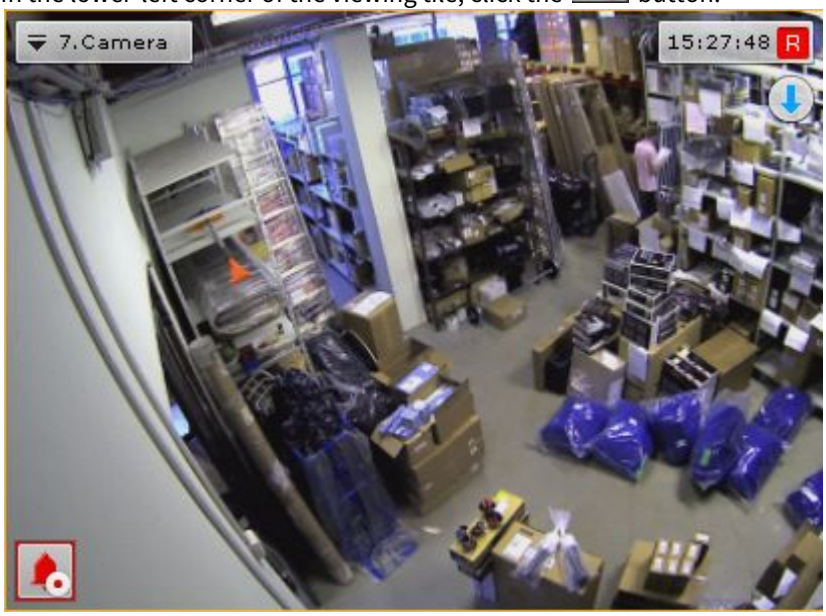
1. Manually (by an operator)
2. Automatically (when a detection tool is triggered is triggered)

> **Note**
>
> You can initiate an alarm only if the specific video camera is linked to the archive.

8.2.5.3.1 Manual Initiation

To initiate an alarm manually, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the lower-left corner of the viewing tile, click the button.



2. The operation will trigger an alarm that appears on Alarms Panel (see Alarms Panel). To classify an alarm, click the button again.

> **Note**
>
> When in Alarm Management mode, the user that initiated the alarm will be indicated at the bottom of the viewing tile.

Manual initiation of an alarm is now complete.

8.2.5.3.2 Automatic Initiation

Automatic rules or macros can be configured to initiate an alarm (see the section titled Trigger an alarm).

If an alarm is initiated automatically, the **Alarms Panel** tab is color-coded

.

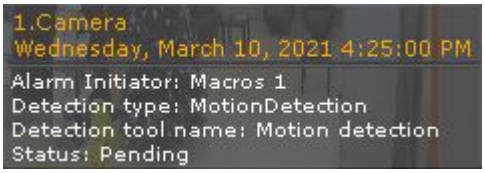
To evaluate the situation, click the Alarms Panel tab, select the event and classify it in Alarms Management (see the section titled Selecting Events for Alarm Management).

8.2.5.4 Working with Alarms Panel

8.2.5.4.1 Viewing Alarms in Event Preview

Each alert / alarm event is displayed on Alarms Panel as follows: Each Event Preview tile shows a thumbnail with the first frame of video footage for the relevant event; the playback button; time stamp of the event and camera ID.

When you hover over the Event Preview tile, all information about the alarm pops up.



If you click the button, the event footage / alarm recording will then be played back in Event Preview in a repeating cycle.

To stop playback, click the button.

On the Alarms Panel, click on the alarm event video window to play back the event video in the camera window.

If the button is activated on the Alarms Panel, the alarm video will appear in a temporary layout containing just the current camera.

If the button is inactive, the video playback will start in the regular layout.

8.2.5.4.2 Outlining Objects that Triggered Detection

In the Event Preview tile, you can outline objects that triggered detection / an alarm. To do so, click the button.

The object is outlined only if the alarm was initiated by detection tools.

To undo object outlining, click the button again.

8.2.5.4.3 Selecting Events for Alarm Management

When you click the Event Preview tile, a layout opens that has the relevant camera's view. The layout is selected automatically with the following algorithm:

1. The system searches for layouts that contain the alarmed camera. The user must have permissions to view it.
2. The system chooses the layout with the minimum number of cells to display the selected video camera.

3. If the required layout does not yet exist, the system creates a new layout with a single video camera.
4. The system switches to the selected layout.
5. The video camera becomes active in the selected layout. The viewing tile is expanded by one level. It switches to the Alarm Management mode. (if you have selected an active alarm) or to the Archive mode. (if you have selected a processed / classified alarm or missed / unclassified).

8.2.5.5 Working with the Alarm Management window

8.2.5.5.1 Alarm Handling Tile Interface Elements

The alarm handling tile is a viewing tile which, besides the standard interface elements (context menu, time indicator, etc.), also contains elements for alarm playback and evaluation:

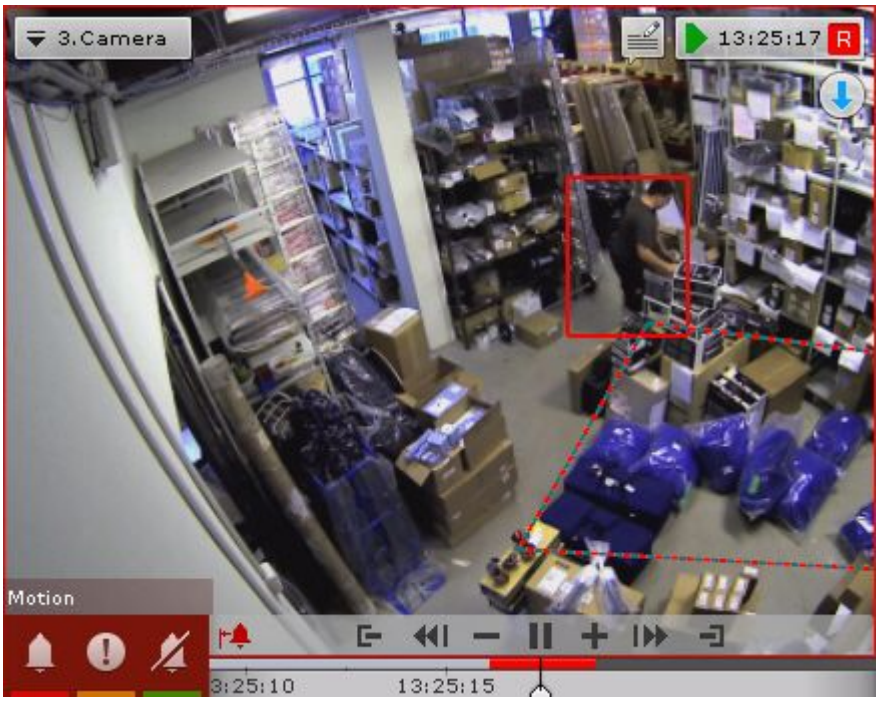
1. Playback panel
2. Timeline
3. A button for quick positioning of the timeline indicator in the position corresponding to the beginning of the alarm.

8.2.5.5.2 Alarm Playback

As soon as an alarm is accepted for evaluation, the alarm recording is played back automatically one time, at 1X speed. Playback is launched either from the moment of the beginning of the alarm, or from the moment corresponding to the position of the alarm flag (only when the alarm is initiated automatically; see the section Trigger an alarm).

If the alarm was initiated automatically, the visual element set for the detection tool which initiated the alarm will be displayed in the viewing tile: or a detection area or virtual tripwire , which triggers the detection tool when it is crossed. The object which caused the trigger will be outlined with a red frame.

Display of an Area visual element:



Display of a Line visual element:

The name of the detection unit that initiated the alarm is displayed in the lower portion of the viewing tile.

To navigate the fragment of an alarm event, use the Advanced Archive Navigation Panel (see Navigation using the advanced panel) or the Playback Panel (see Navigating Using the Playback Panel).

To switch to a required fragment of an alarm event in order to play it again, hold the timeline pointer with the left mouse button and drag it to the required position.

To go to the beginning of the alarm event, click .

8.2.5.5.3 Processing an Alarm

To process an alarm, use the group of colored buttons in the lower left-hand corner of the Alarm Management tile. After processing of the alarm, the viewing tile on the given client automatically switches to Live Video mode. The alarm is no longer in the **Alarms** tab.

> **Attention!**
>
> In the case of multi-user event processing, only the first operator to switch to alarm mode may process the alarm (if he or she has the appropriate permissions). For the rest of the operators, the Alarm Management buttons are not displayed.

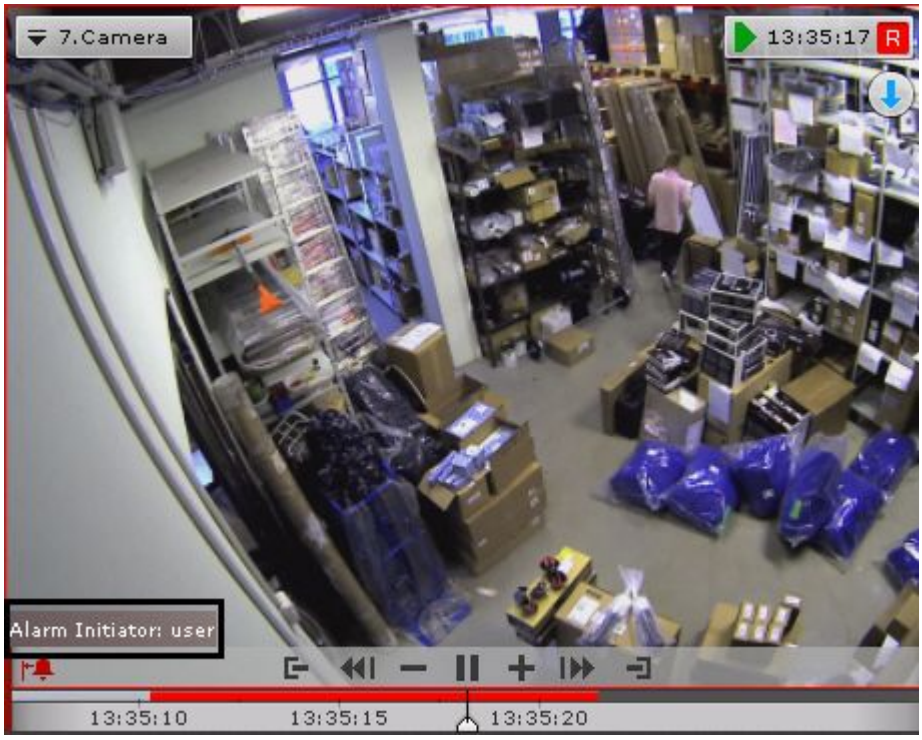
Button	Executed function
	Confirmed alarm
	Suspicious alarm
	False alarm

8.2.5.6 Limitations when working with alarm events in case of multi-user processing

In the case of multi-user processing, only one operator may accept an alarm for processing. Other operators may switch to alarm mode with limited functions for the purpose of playing back the alarm. This can be done in one of two ways:

1. Click the button (see the section Video surveillance in Alarm Management mode).

2. Switch to the **Alarms** tab and select the alarm from the alarms list.



In Alarm Management mode with limited functions, the Alarm Management buttons are not displayed. Instead, the name of the operator who is currently processing the alarm is displayed. The other functions of the alarm handling tile remain unchanged.

After processing of the alarm on another client, on the given client the status assigned to the alarm is displayed in place of the name of the operator.

If a user has accepted an alarm for processing and leaves Alarm Management mode (going to Live Video mode, Archive or Archive Search mode, the viewing tile for another camera, etc.), after an amount of time equal to the operator's idle time after leaving, other users will also have the opportunity to accept the alarm for processing.

If more than one alarm appears for one camera, any operator may access all alarms not yet accepted for processing.

8.2.6 Video surveillance in Archive Search mode

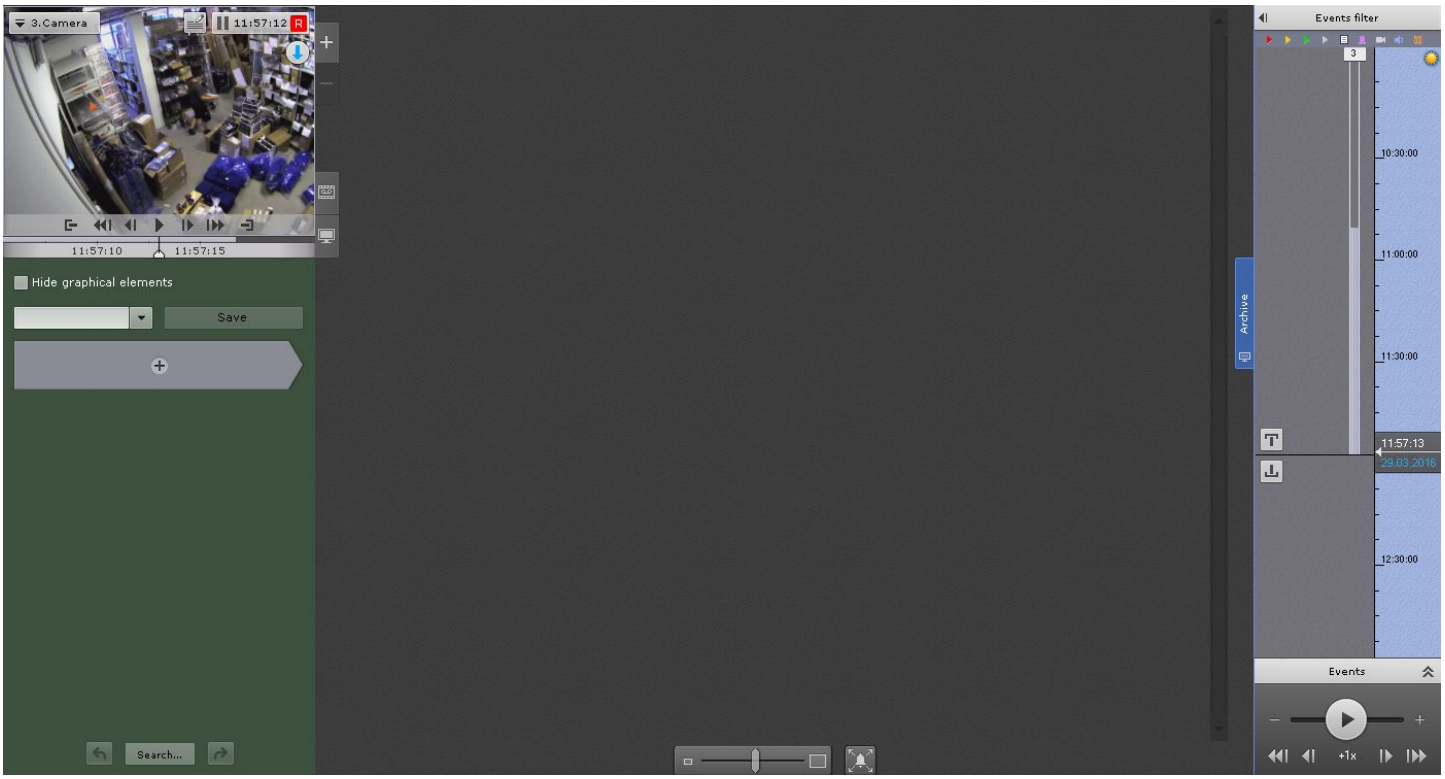
8.2.6.1 Switching to Archive Search mode

To switch the Camera Window from a different surveillance mode to the Archive Search mode, click the **Search** tab in the lower-right corner.

> **Note**
>
> If the video camera is not linked to a video archive, this tab will be unavailable.

> **Note**
>
> In Live Video mode, if the viewing tile is not active, the tabs for switching to other modes are not displayed. To display the tabs, click the viewing tile by using either button of the mouse.

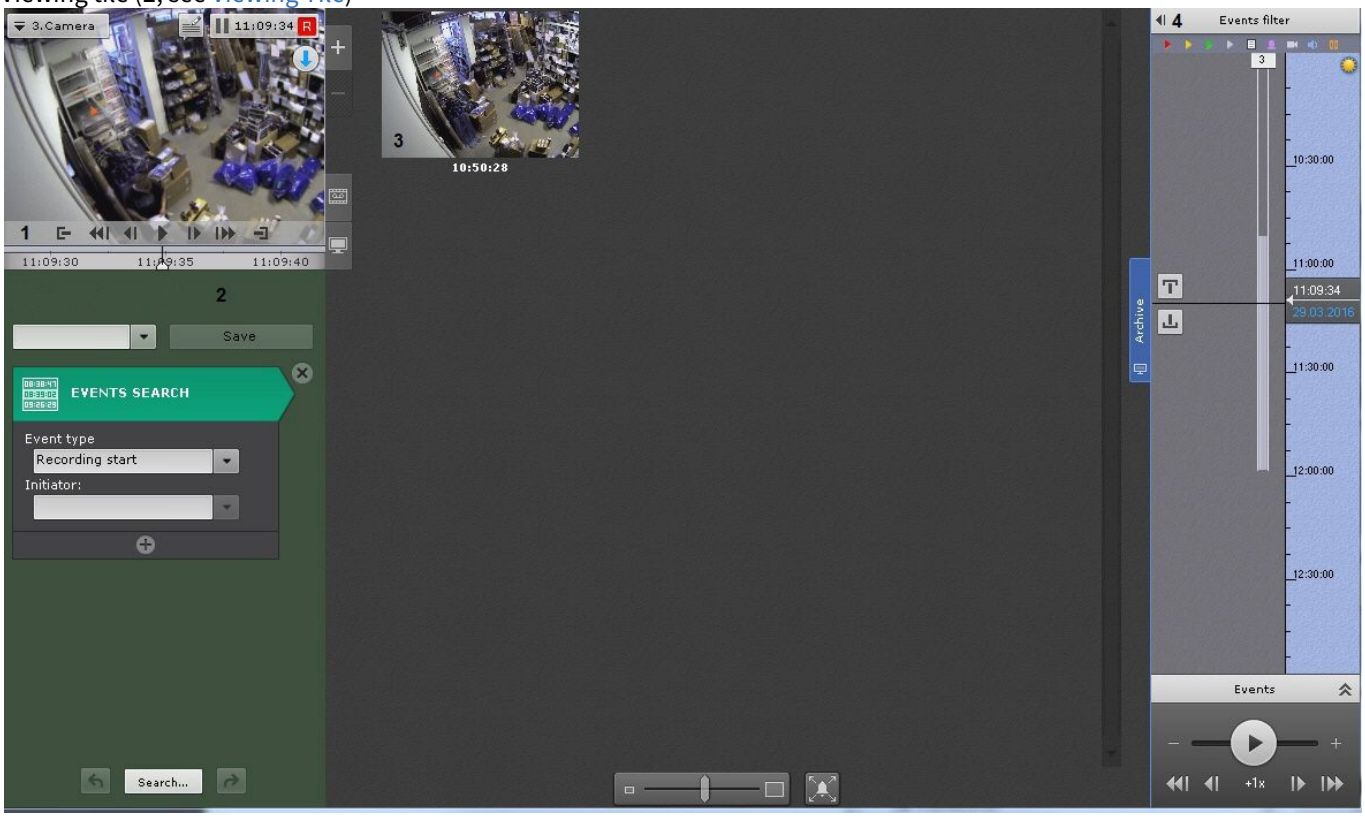
The archive analysis interface will then appear.



8.2.6.2 Archive Search mode interface

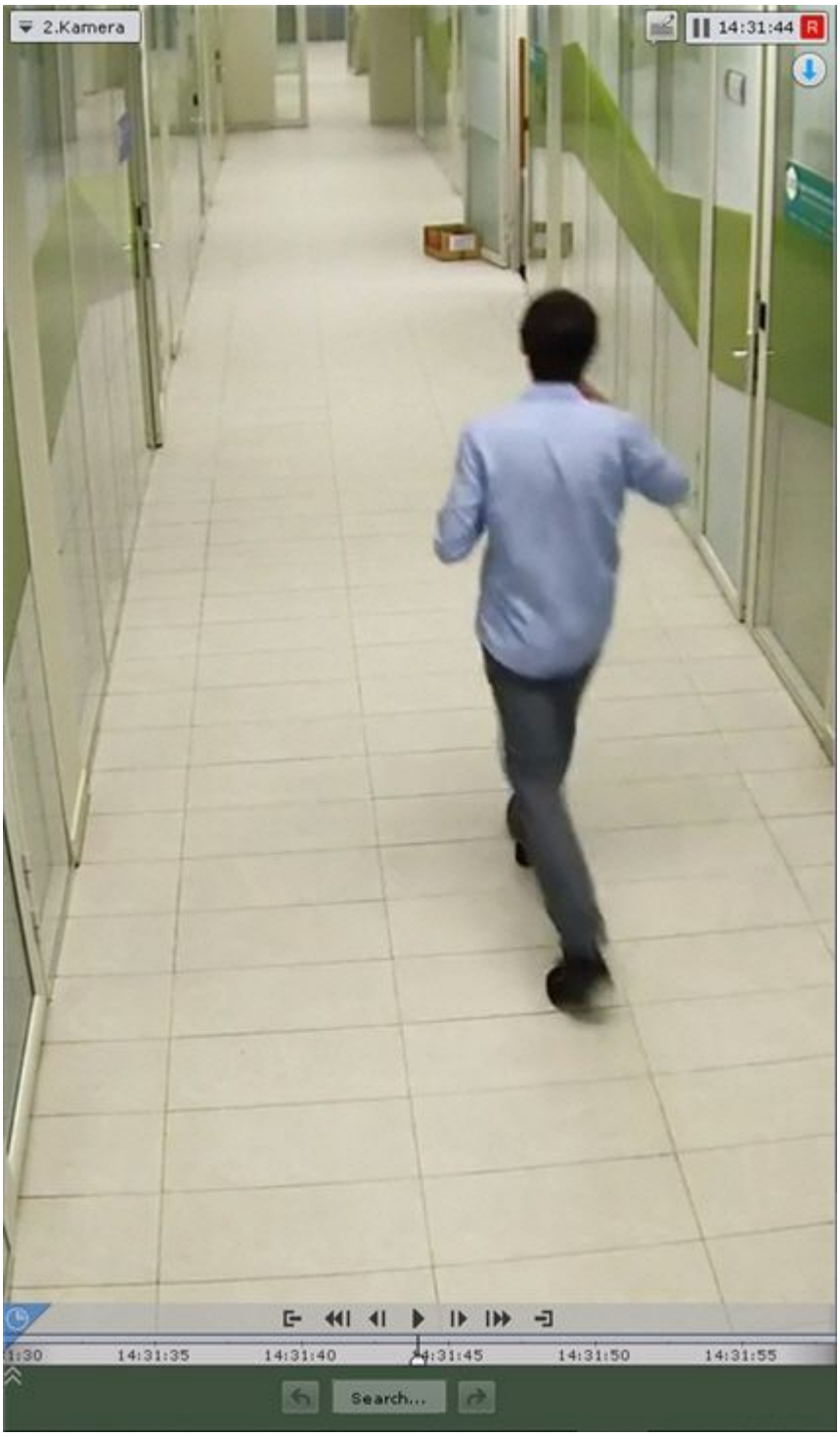
The visual layout of Archive Search mode is divided into the following 4 components:

1. Viewing tile (**1**, see Viewing Tile)



2. Search control panel (**2**, see Search in an archive of a single video camera)
3. Search results panel (**3**, see Viewing search results)
4. archive navigation panel (**4**, see The Archive Navigation Panel)

You can hide search parameters for a portrait-oriented camera. To do so, click the button.



To unhide, press the button.

8.2.6.3 Video surveillance functions available in Archive Search mode

In Archive Search mode, the following video surveillance functions are available:

1. Selecting an archive for video recording analysis.
2. Autozoom.
3. Navigating through the archive.
4. Display of the causes of triggered situation analysis detection units.
5. Viewing recorded video with operator comments.
6. Events search.

7. Forensic search.
8. Time search.
9. Searching comments.
10. Switching between search results.
11. Playing back fragments retrieved by searches of specific moments in time.
12. Zooming in on objects that trigger detection tools.
13. Functions Available in All Video Surveillance Modes.

Note

The functions for navigating through an archive, displaying the causes of situation analysis detection unit triggering, and **Archive Selection** were inherited from archive mode; their descriptions are Video surveillance in archive mode. The Autozoom function is described in the Real-time video surveillance section.

8.2.6.4 Search in an archive of a single video camera

8.2.6.4.1 Selecting the search type

To start a search, click + and choose the search type.

Note

The current *Axxon Next* suite release supports only search of a single type at one time.

Note

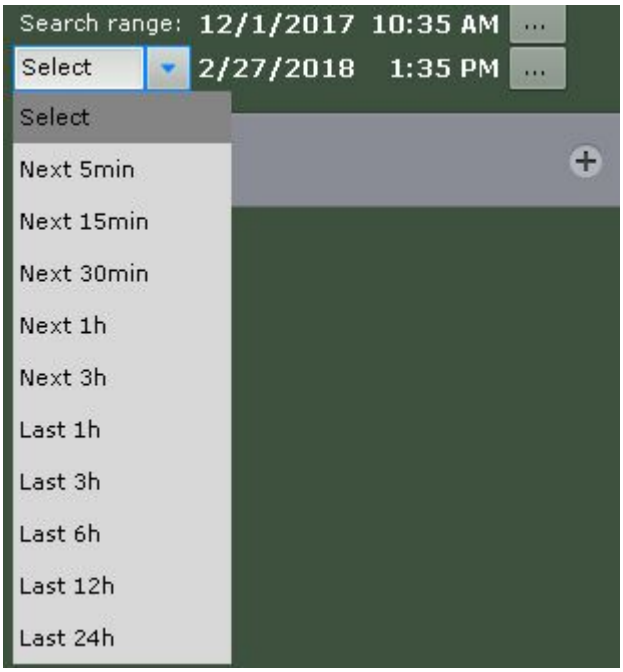
In the on-board storage of the camera, you can only find video episodes with thumbnail search (TimeSlice).

8.2.6.4.2 Setting a search interval

Setting a search interval follows the same procedure for all types of archive search.

By default, the search spans across video footage / archive tracks currently displayed on the timeline (see Navigating Using the Timeline).

To alter the search interval, select the desired value from the **Search Range** dropdown list.



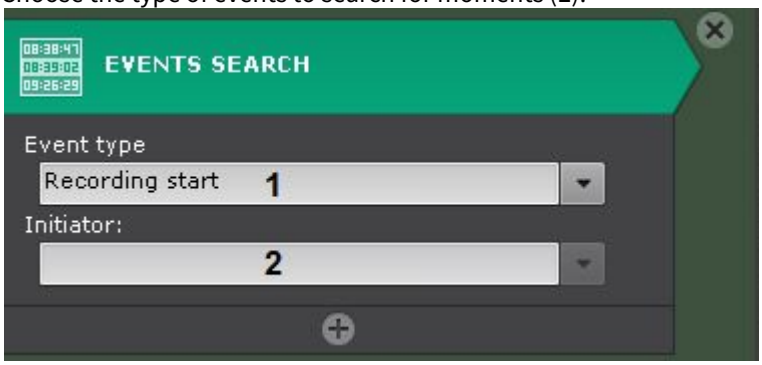
Search Range	Description
Whole Archive	Searches are performed across the entire Archive.
Timeline	Searches span across Archive tracks currently displayed on the timeline.
Range	Searches are performed within the interval currently selected on the timeline. You can set an interval using and buttons.
Last 1h/3h/6h/12h/24h	The searches will be performed within the last hour (or 3, 6, 12, 24 hours) of recorded footage.
Next 5min /15min /30min /1h /3h	The searches will be performed within the following interval: [specified start of the interval; specified start of the interval + 5min / 15min / 30min / 1h / 3h]. To set the beginning time of the interval, click .

8.2.6.4.3 Events search

This type of search lets you select events in the archive based on the type of event.

To do this, complete the following steps:

1. Choose the type of events to search for moments (**1**).



Event	Description
All alarms	The search finds moments in the archive containing all types of alarms
Non-critical alarm	The search finds moments in the archive containing non-critical alarms
Critical alarm	The search finds moments in the archive containing critical alarms
Unclassified alarm	The search finds moments in the archive containing unclassified alarms
False alarm	The search finds moments in the archive containing false alarms
Triggering	The search finds moments when detection units were triggered
Recording start	The search finds the beginning and end of recordings from the specified video camera regardless of the initiator

2. Select an event initiator from a list with the same name (**2**).

> **Note**
>
> An event initiator could be an operator, a video camera input, or any detection unit that is activated in the system. The search results will show the moments in time containing the events that were triggered by the initiator.
> To search for face recognition and ANPR events, select **Realtime recognition**.

3. If necessary, click and add more similar search conditions.
4. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
5. Click the **Search** button.

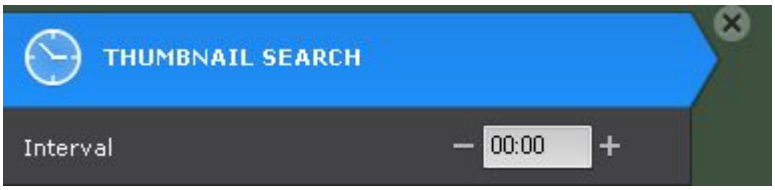
> **Note**
>
> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

This starts a search in the archive based on the defined criteria. Search results are available on the search results panel.

> **Note**
>
> To zoom objects that caused an alarm or triggered a detection unit, select the **Expand alarm object** check box in the lower portion of the search results panel.

8.2.6.4.4 Time search for video fragments (TimeSlice)

The search of fragments by time is meant for quick search of moment of interest by dividing a selected time period into equally sized fragments.



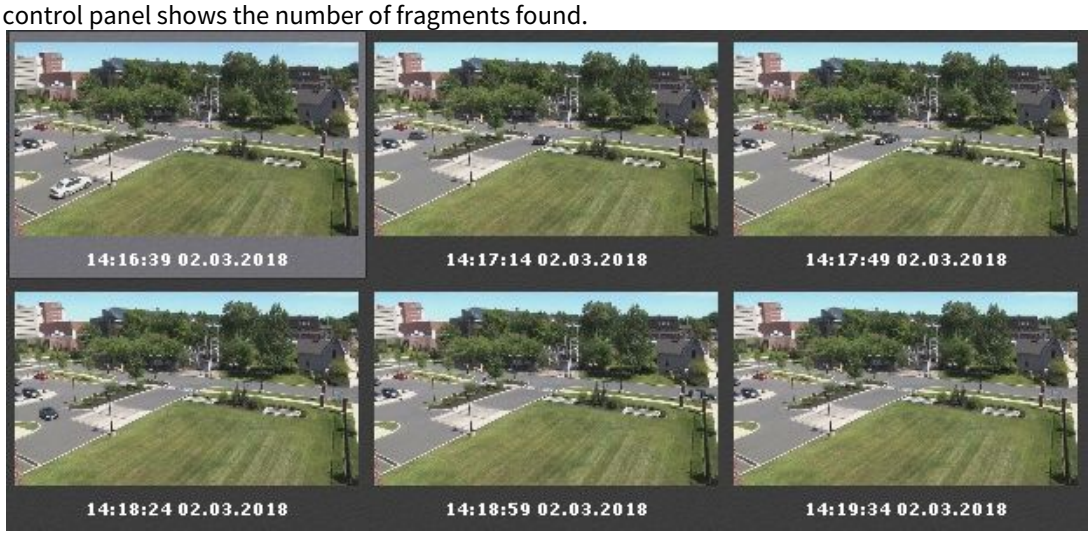
Search by time is performed using the following algorithm:

1. Setting a search interval.
2. In the **Interval** field, specify the duration of the video episodes in the MM:SS format:
   a. If you do not specify the duration (00:00), Time Slice (Thumbnail Search) splits video footage from the selected time interval into 12 equal episodes.
   b. If you set the duration other than 0, Time Slice splits the selected time interval into video clips of the specified duration. The number of slices depends on the specified parameters.

   > **Note**
   >
   > It's recommended to set the interval value to no less than 10 seconds.
3. Start the first search iteration (click the **Search** button).

   > **Note**
   >
   > Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

   The search results panel displays frames that match moments in time that are equally spaced from each other; the search control panel shows the number of fragments found.



4. If the specific moment is not found, then start the second search iteration: double-clicking on the found moment triggers the search in the time interval from this moment to the next one.
5. Keep searching until the specific moment is found.

> **Note**
>
> Information on playback of video fragments is provided in the section titled Playback of video fragments

8.2.6.4.5 Searching comments

Comments search allows filtering for comments that contain certain text.

To search comments:

1. Enter the text that you want to find in comments.

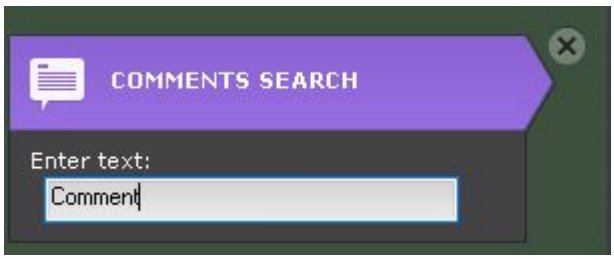
Attention!

You should enter at least three characters to make a search. The search is performed for the entire string of entered text, not for separate words.

Note

To search all comments for the selected interval, do the following:

- in *Axxon Next* 4.6.0.725 or later versions, enter ***** (asterisk) in the search field (it represents any number of any characters);
- in earlier versions of *Axxon Next*, leave the search field blank.



2. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
3. Click the **Search** button.

Note

After starting the search, it can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which replaces the **Search** button.

This starts a search for video fragments based on the defined criteria. The search results pane displays frames, for which there are comments containing the search text. The relevant comment is displayed under each frame.

Note

If the comment was left for an interval, the first frame of the interval is displayed.

8.2.6.4.6 Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest)

Forensic Search lets you search for moments in the archive using the following criteria:

1. Motion in Area.
2. Loitering of an object in a specific area.
3. Simultaneous presence of a large number of objects in a specific area.

4. Crossing of a virtual line by an object's trajectory.
5. Motion from one area to another.

8.2.6.4.6.1 Motion in Area

To perform forensic search for motion in area:

1. In the Viewing Tile, define the area to be analyzed during search in accordance with the selected condition.
   The nodes of an area are connected by a two-colored dotted line.
   By default, an area is defined by 4 nodes with the coordinates (30%, 30%), (70%, 30%), (70%, 70%) and (30%, 70%) as percentages of the width and height of the frame, respectively.

   To edit an area, use the following actions.

Action	Result
Right-click on a line	Creates a new area node
Right-click on a created node	Deletes the area node
Position the cursor on a node and hold down the left mouse button while you move the mouse	Moves the area node

2. Select the metadata source if there are several for this video camera. This parameter will not be displayed if there is only one source.
3. Specify any number of additional parameters by clicking , if necessary (see Configure the search parameters).
4. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
5. Click the **Search** button.

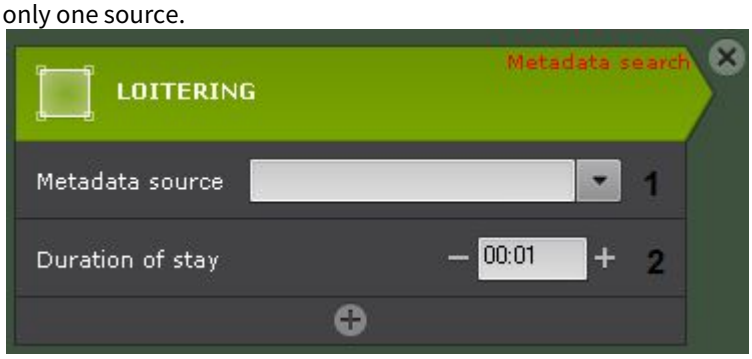
> **Note**
>
> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

The found moments will be displayed in the search results panel.

8.2.6.4.6.2 Loitering of an object in a specific area

To search for moments of an object loitering in an area:

1. In the Viewing Tile, define the area to be analyzed during search in accordance with the selected condition (see Motion in Area).
2. Select the metadata source if there are several for this video camera (**1**). This parameter will not be displayed if there is only one source.



3. Set the minimum duration of stay in the area (**2**, in seconds and minutes). Search results contain recorded video in which the object is present in the area for longer than the indicated time.
4. Specify any number of additional parameters by clicking , if necessary (see Configure the search parameters).
5. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
6. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**
>
> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

The found moments will be displayed in the search results panel.

8.2.6.4.6.3 Simultaneous presence of a large number of objects in a specific area

To search for moments when objects gather in an area:

1. In the Viewing Tile, define the area to be analyzed during search in accordance with the selected condition (see Motion in Area).
2. Select the metadata source if there are several for this video camera (**1**). This parameter will not be displayed if there is only one source.

3. Specify the number of objects allowed in the area (**2**). Search results contain recorded video in which the number of objects in the area exceeds the specified number.
4. Specify any number of additional parameters by clicking , if necessary (see Configure the search parameters).
5. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
6. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**

Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

The found moments will be displayed in the search results panel.

8.2.6.4.6.4 Motion from one area to another

To search for moments when the object moves from one area to another:

1. Set two areas in the Viewing Tile: the area the object moves from and the one it moves to.
   The nodes of each area are connected by a two-colored dotted line. The direction of motion between the areas is indicated by a dotted arrow.
   By default, each area is defined by 4 nodes. The nodes of the first area have the coordinates (20%, 40%), (40%, 40%), (40%, 60%), (20%, 60%), and those of the second have the coordinates (60%, 40%), (80%, 40%), (80%, 60%), (60%, 60%) as percentages of the width and height of the frame, respectively.

   Note

   You can collapse the graphical elements if they block the visual elements and prevent editing them. To hide them, select the **Hide graphical elements** check box.

   Area editing operations are described in the Motion in Area section.
   To change the direction of motion between the areas, click the ⊞ button on the direction arrow.
2. Select the metadata source if there are several for this video camera. This parameter will not be displayed if there is only one source.
3. Specify any number of additional parameters by clicking ⊕, if necessary (see Configure the search parameters).
4. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
5. Click the **Search** button.

   Note

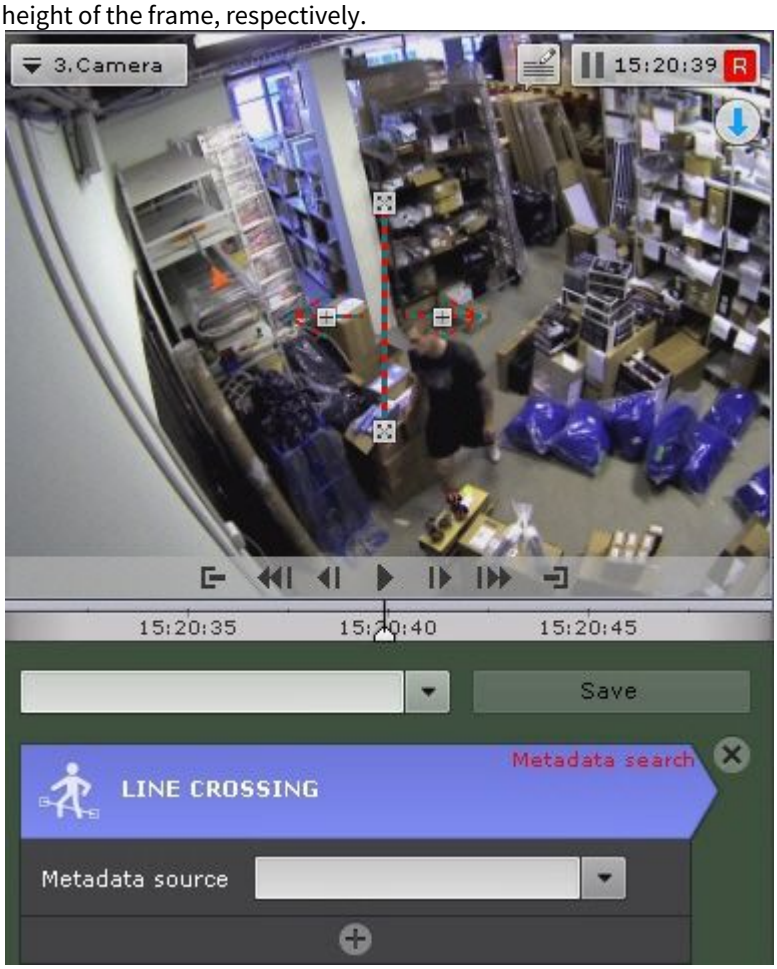
Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

The found moments will be displayed in the search results panel.

8.2.6.4.6.5 Crossing of a virtual line by an object's trajectory

To search for moments when the object crosses a virtual line:

1. Set the virtual line to be crossed in the Viewing Tile.
   The end points of the line are connected by a two-colored dotted line. The direction of the object's motion across the line is indicated by dotted arrows.
   By default, the end points of the line have the coordinates (50%, 30%) and (50%, 70%) as percentages of the width and height of the frame, respectively.



   To move the end point of a line, position the cursor on the end point and hold down the left mouse button as you move the mouse.
   By default, both directions of motion across the virtual line are taken into account when searching the archive. If you do not need to search in a specific direction, click the ⊞ button corresponding to that direction.

> **Attention!**
>
> At least one direction must be selected for the search.

> **Note**
>
> A disregarded direction of object motion is indicated by a dimmed arrow.

2. Select the metadata source if there are several for this video camera. This parameter will not be displayed if there is only one source.

3. Specify any number of additional parameters by clicking ☐, if necessary (see Configure the search parameters).
4. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
5. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**
>
> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

8.2.6.4.6.6 Configure the search parameters

It is not required to specify parameters, but for more precise results, it is possible to set one or more parameters for each criterion:

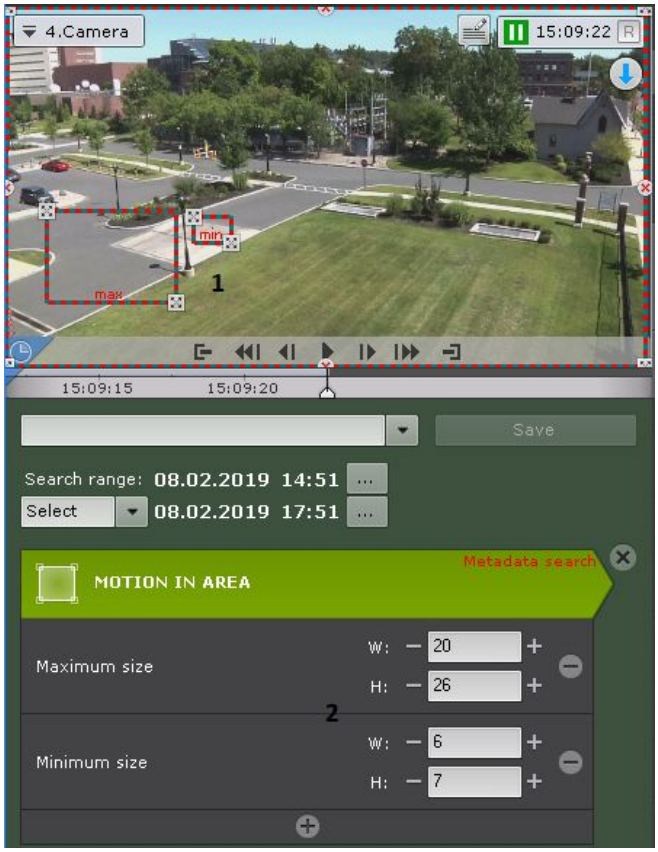
The search criteria	Possible parameters
Motion in Area	Direction of movement Maximum and minimum object size Maximum and minimum object speed Object color Object type Entry/exit from area
Loitering in area	Maximum and minimum object size Object color Object type
Many objects in area	Maximum and minimum object size Object color Object type
Object trajectory crossing a virtual line Motion from area to area	Maximum and minimum object size Maximum and minimum object speed Object color Object type

Configuring minimum and maximum object size
The procedures for setting the minimum and maximum size of a moving object are identical.

The minimum (or maximum) size of a moving object can be set using any of the following methods:

> **Note**
>
> The first method lets you roughly configure the size, and the second method allows you to set the size precisely.

1. Position the cursor on a visual element node and hold down the left mouse button while moving the mouse (**1**).



2. Set the width and height of an object of the minimum (maximum) size using the arrows in the upper and lower margins, respectively. The dimensions of a visual element in the viewing tile can be changed in a similar manner (**2**).

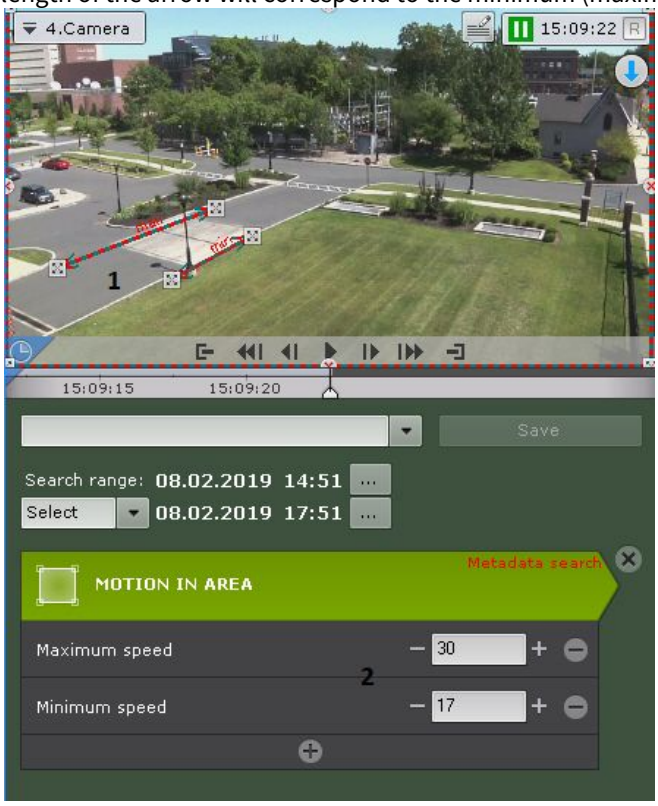
The minimum (maximum) size of an object is now set.

Configuring minimum and maximum object speed
In the *Axxon Next* VMS, the speed is a relative value computed from parameters of different units. The computing algorithm includes both frame width and height. For more accurate search, we recommend you to perform several search iterations while setting speed values empirically.

The procedures for setting the minimum and maximum speed of a moving object are identical.

The minimum (or maximum) speed of a moving object can be set using any of the following methods:

1. Position the cursor on an end point of the arrow and hold down either mouse button while you move the mouse. The length of the arrow will correspond to the minimum (maximum) displacement of the object per second (**1**).



2. Use the arrows to set the minimum (maximum) speed of the object as percentages of the frame per second (**2**).

The minimum (maximum) speed of a moving object is now set.

The following objects will be included in the search results:

- If you set only the maximum speed - the objects that move slower, than the maximum speed.
- If only the minimum speed is specified - the objects that move faster than the minimum speed.
- If both the maximum and the minimum speed are specified - the objects whose speed does not exceed the maximum, but is more than the minimum speed.

Configuring object color
The color range is selected using drag-and-drop on the color palette (click and hold any mouse button, move the mouse, then release the button).

Any click on the palette is interpreted as the beginning of a new range; the previous range will disappear.

Attention!

Axxon Next uses a logic according to which all objects are monochrome. The color of an object in *Axxon Next* is an average of all object colors in the video image.
All objects of specified colors will be included in search results.

Attention!

It is not possible to search by color when using metadata from a motion detection (see Setting up VMD-based Scene Analytics).

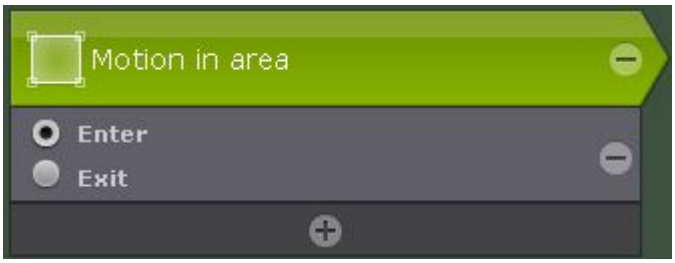
Configuring direction of object movement
By default, when searching the archive, the system searches for motion in all directions. It is possible to prevent searching for motion in one or several specific directions.

Click with either mouse button to designate a direction in which you do not want to perform movement search (privacy mask). The sector corresponding to the direction is then colored gray. If necessary, repeat this action for other directions. To reactivate searches for a masked (gray) direction, click it again with either mouse button.

The required directions of an object's movement are now set.

Configuring object entry/exit from area
"Entry" occurs when an object enters the field of view and crosses its boundaries; "exit" occurs when an object disappears from the field of view and crosses its boundaries.

To find moments when an object enters an area, select **Enter**, or for moments when an object exits an area, select **Exit**.



Choosing the object type
You can search for moving objects of one or several types: a person, a group of people, a vehicle, or an item left behind. To do this, check the corresponding boxes.

Note

The object type is determined by analyzing its appearance. An item that does not move for some time is considered to be abandoned, e.g. a parked car.

Attention!

You cannot search by object type in VMD-generated metadata (see Setting up VMD-based Scene Analytics).

8.2.6.4.7 Titles search

Titles search allows you to find the necessary words in the titles DB received from the POS devices.

To search the titles DB, do as follows:

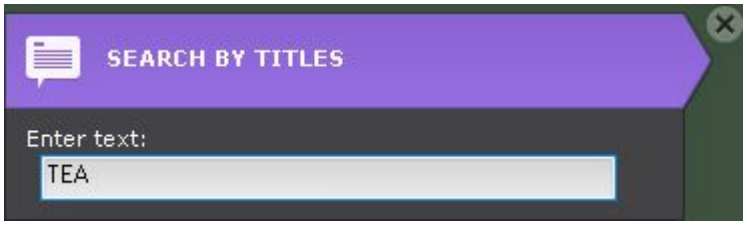
1. Set a time interval for your search (see Setting a search interval).
2. Enter the text that you want to find in the titles. You can search the whole word or part of it.

   Attention!

   You should enter at least three characters to make a search. The search is performed for the entire string of entered text, not for separate words.

   Note

   There is no search by empty string.

3. Click the **Search** button.

   Note

   After starting the search, it can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which replaces the **Search** button.

This starts a search for video fragments based on the defined criteria. The search results pane displays frames for which there are titles containing the search text.

Attention!

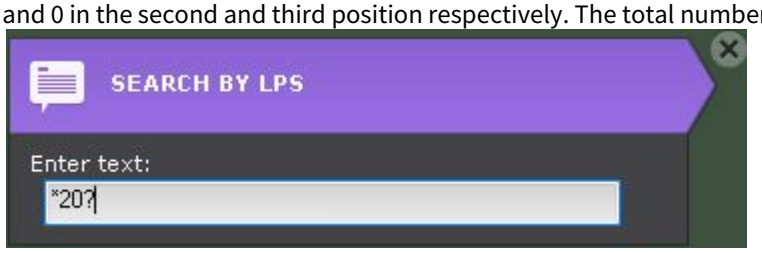
When you search for events, the event time corresponds to the start time of the receipt, rather than the time of occurrence of the search text.

8.2.6.4.8 LPR search

With LPR search you can find video footage of the vehicles with recognized number plates, as well as filter them according to specified criteria.

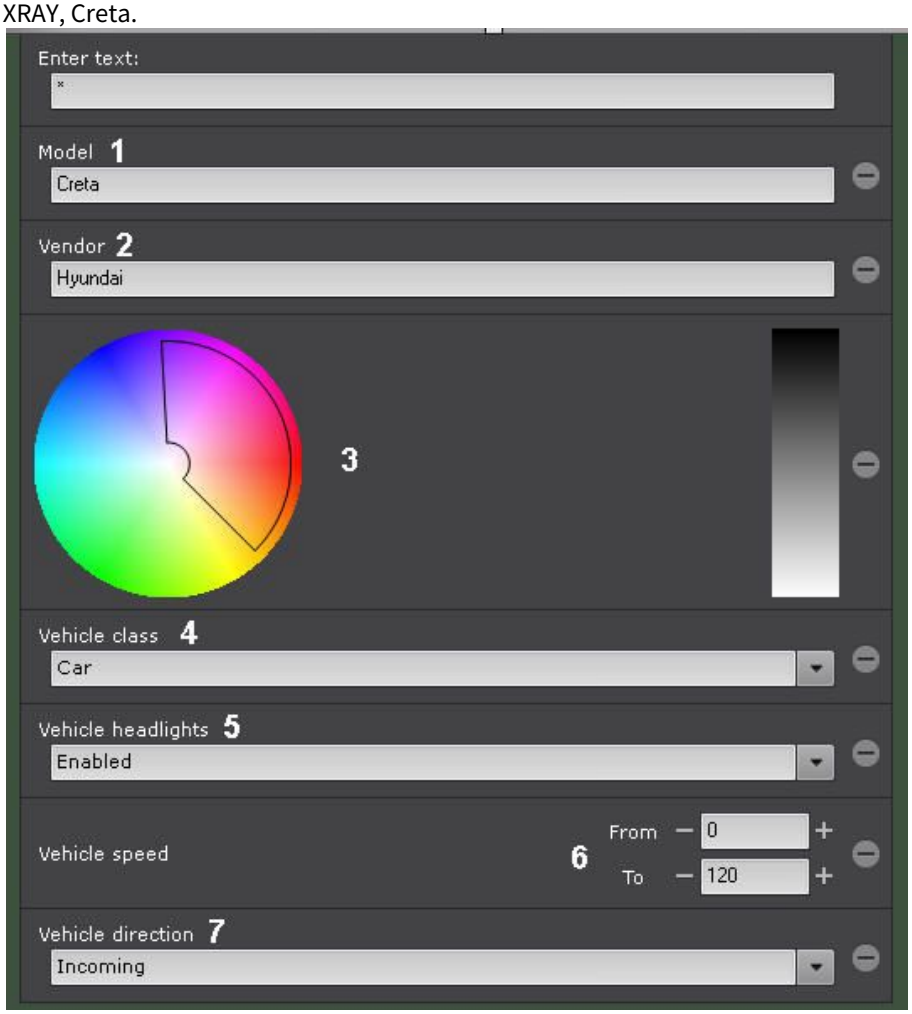
To search recorded video for LPR results:

1. Set a time interval for your search (see Setting a search interval).
2. Enter the number plate. Fuzzy search supported if you enter the number with the ? mask for any one character, and the * mask for any number of characters) For example, a search query ?20* will show all vehicles with license plate containing 2 and 0 in the second and third position respectively. The total number of characters in number plates will be variable.



> **Note**
>
> To search for all recognized number plates, enter * (asterisk).

3. If necessary, set additional search criteria by clicking the button:
   a. **Model** (**1**): enter full name of the car model in Latin letters, case-insensitive. Correct spelling examples: Outlander, XRAY, Creta.



   b. **Vendor** (**2**): enter full name of the car manufacturer in Latin letters, case-insensitive. Correct spelling examples: Mitsubishi, LADA, Hyundai.

> **Note**
>
> A complete list of models and vendors is given in the file: BrandModels.txt.

c. **Color** (**3**): set the color of the vehicle (see Configuring object color).
d. **Vehicle class** (**4**): select the class from the drop-down list — car, truck, bus, motorcycle or mini truck.
e. **Vehicle headlights** (**5**): select the headlights state from the drop-down list — undefined, enabled or disabled.
f. **Vehicle speed** (**6**): in the **From** and **To** fields, set the vehicle speed range in km/h. Possible range: 0 to 450.
g. **Vehicle direction** (**7**): select the vehicle direction from the drop-down list:
    i. Undefined;
    ii. Incoming — the vehicle is moving towards the camera;
    iii. Outgoing — the vehicle is moving away from the camera.

> **Note**
>
> To remove a search criterion, click .

4. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**
>
> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

This starts a search for video fragments based on the defined criteria. The search results panel displays frames with vehicles whose numbers contain the text from the search query and also satisfy the specified additional parameters.

A recognized number plate will be highlighted by a red frame in the Viewing Tile.

8.2.6.4.9 Face search

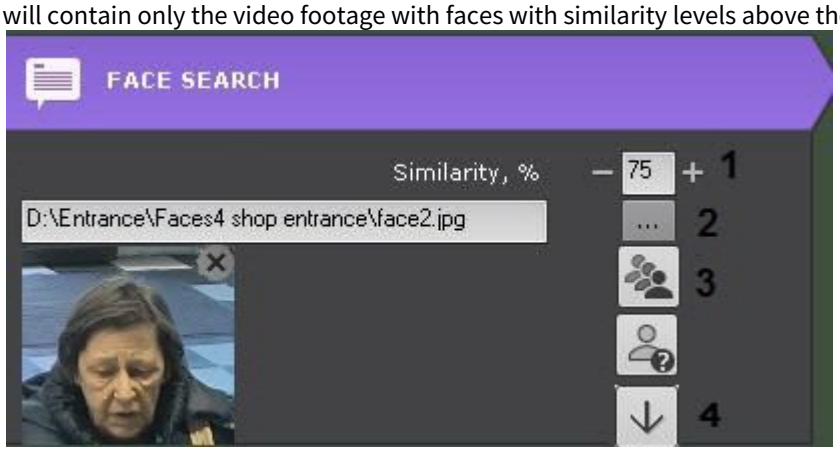
8.2.6.4.9.1 Search for similar face

Face search allows to find faces similar to a given photo in an archive.

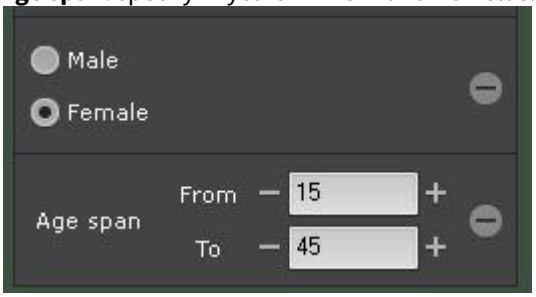
If you perform facial search via the camera window, face track and dimensions are always highlighted.

To perform face search:

1. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
2. Set the minimum similarity level (in %) between the face in the photo and faces from the archive (**1**). The search results will contain only the video footage with faces with similarity levels above the set value.



3. Select a photo with the face to be searched for in the archive (**2**). Supported formats: **png**, **jpg**, **jpeg**, **jpe**. Clicking on a face will select this face as a search parameter. If you do not select a photo, then all faces recognized during the specified time will be displayed. To delete a photo from the search, click .
4. Select, how to sort search results: - by the face match; - by time (**3**).
5. If necessary, set additional search criteria by clicking the button:
   a. **Gender**: select the required option;
   b. **Age span**: specify in years in **From** and **To** fields.



> **Note**
>
> Saving information about gender and age to the database should be enabled in the detection tool settings (see Configuring Face detection).

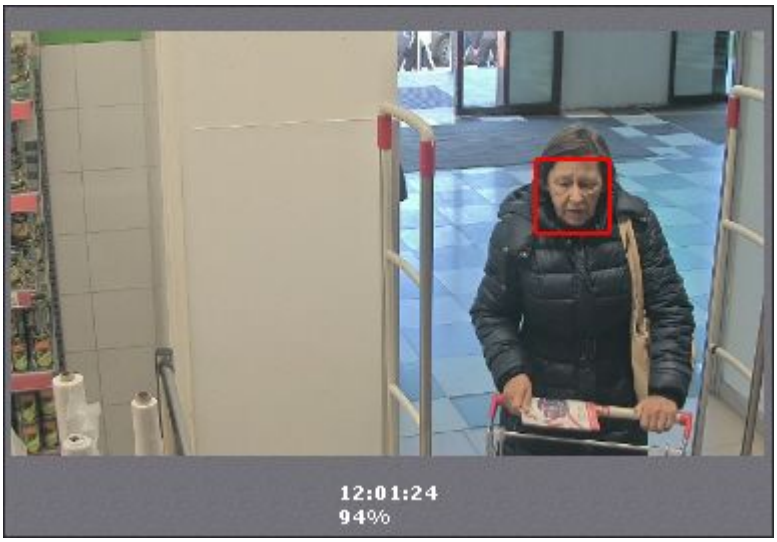
To delete a criterion, click the button.

6. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**
>
> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears instead of the **Search** button.

This starts a search in the archive based on the defined criteria.

The video frames with faces satisfying search conditions will be displayed in the search results panel. A recognized face will be highlighted with a red frame, and the face similarity level (in %) will be shown below.



To instantly export a facial image from the scene, do the following:

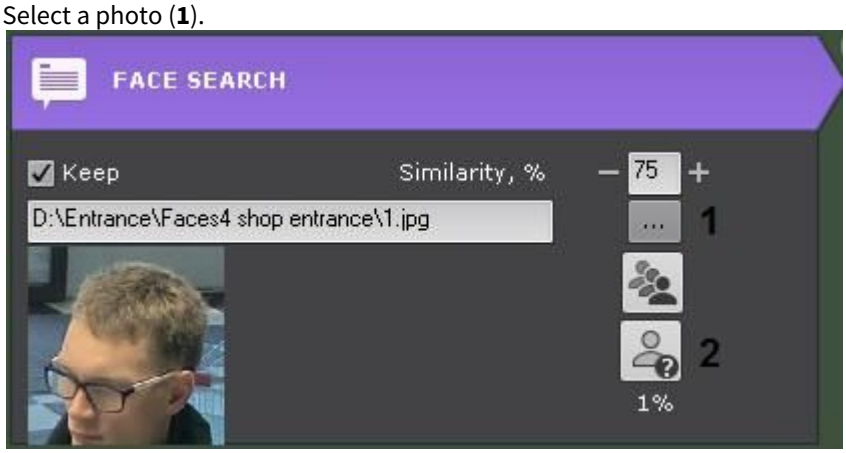
1. Click a face track within the camera window.
2. Click the button (**4**).

The facial image will be saved to a pre-specified folder (see Configuring export options).

8.2.6.4.9.2 Tell "friend" from "foe" by a picture

To determine the "friend"-"foe" status, do as follows:

1. Select a photo (**1**).



2. Click the button.

The Search bar (**2**) will display the probability that the person is a "stranger".

The algorithm is as follows:

1. The person is compared to all the recognized persons in the last 30 days.
2. The number of days (**N**) in which the person was captured by camera and recognized is calculated.
3. The probability is calculated according to the formula (1-**N**/30) * 100.

8.2.6.4.10 Search for contacts with a person

You can search recorded video for all people who contacted with a target person longer than a defined Contact Time.

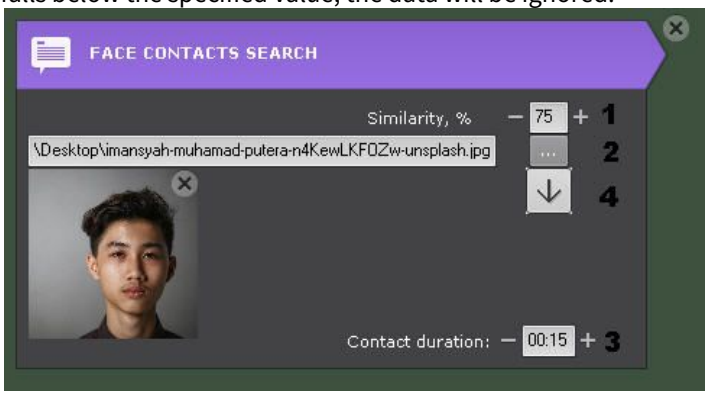
The search algorithm works as follows:

1. Finds all the people in video footage who look like the person from the uploaded photo.
2. Analyzes video episodes, where a person from the photo is captured on camera in scenes where other people are present.

If you run such a search, you can see the face track and its dimensions always highlighted in the camera window.

To search for contacts with a person, do as follows:

1. Set a time span for your search (see Setting a search interval).
2. Enter the value of minimal similarity (in %) of a target face to any recognized face in video footage (**1**). If the match level falls below the specified value, the data will be ignored.



3. Select a photo of the target person whose contacts you want to find out (**2**). Supported formats: **png**, **jpg**, **jpeg**, **jpe**. Clicking on a face will select this face as a search parameter. If you do not select a photo, then all faces recognized during the specified time will be displayed. To delete a photo from the search, click .
4. Set the minimum contact time of other persons in the frame with the person on the photo in MM:SS format (**3**). If the contact time falls below the specified value, the data will be ignored. The maximum contact time is 59 seconds.
5. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**

> Once launched, the search can be stopped at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button which appears in place of the Search button.

This starts a search for video fragments based on the defined criteria.

The search results panel will display video frames that contain persons who have been in contact with the person on the photo. The recognized face will be outlined in red.

To instantly export a facial image from the scene, do the following:

1. Click a face track within the camera window.
2. Click the button (**4**).

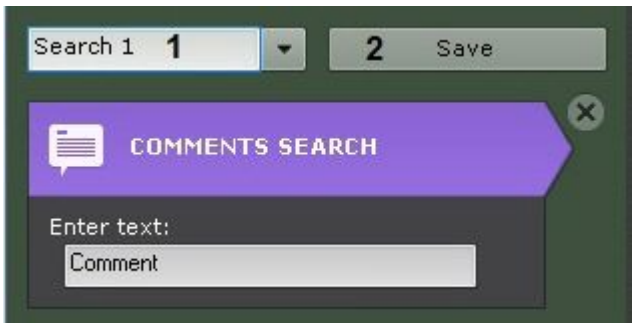
The facial image will be saved to a pre-specified folder (see Configuring export options).

8.2.6.4.11 Saving search queries

Saving a search query allows you to:

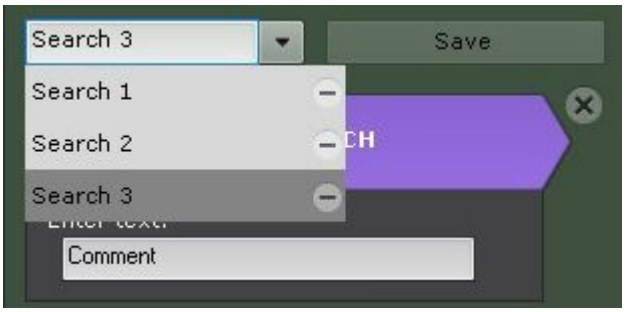
- quickly retrieve its results;
- apply search criteria to other cameras.

To save a search query, specify a name (**1**) and click the **Save** button (**2**). After this, the tab for the search query becomes available in the lower-right corner of the viewing tile in Archive mode (see Viewing the results of a saved search query).



> **Attention!**
>
> The search range can not be saved.

To apply the saved search criteria to another camera's archive, switch the camera to Archive Search mode and select the required search query.



To edit a search query, view the list and select the relevant query.

Changes are not saved until the **Save** button is clicked. If the query name is changed, the query is saved under the new name and the old, unchanged query remains available.

To delete a search query, click the button.

8.2.6.4.12 Switching between search results

If a search was run more than once and the user did not exit Archive Search mode during that time, it is possible to switch between search results.

> **Note**
>
> The number of stored results is limited only by the amount of RAM in the server.

Click on the search control panel to switch to the previous search result, and click to switch to the next result.

Each time you switch between results, the search results panel displays the moments corresponding to the previous/next result.

8.2.6.4.13 Working with search results

8.2.6.4.13.1 Viewing search results

The Search Control Panel shows how many episodes are found when the search is complete.

The search results panel displays the precise moments in an archive that correspond to the defined search criteria. The precise time of each moment is displayed underneath (**1**).

> **Note**
>
> An alarm object is outlined in red.

> **Note**
>
> To copy the time and the start date of the video fragment to the Clipboard, right-click on them.

A scroll bar is located on the right side of the search results panel (**2**). Beneath is a time scale adjuster (**3**).

If you choose a spot on the the timeline, the search results are automatically sorted. The closest episode will be highlighted in search results.

You can filter the search results and keep only the important episodes. To do this:

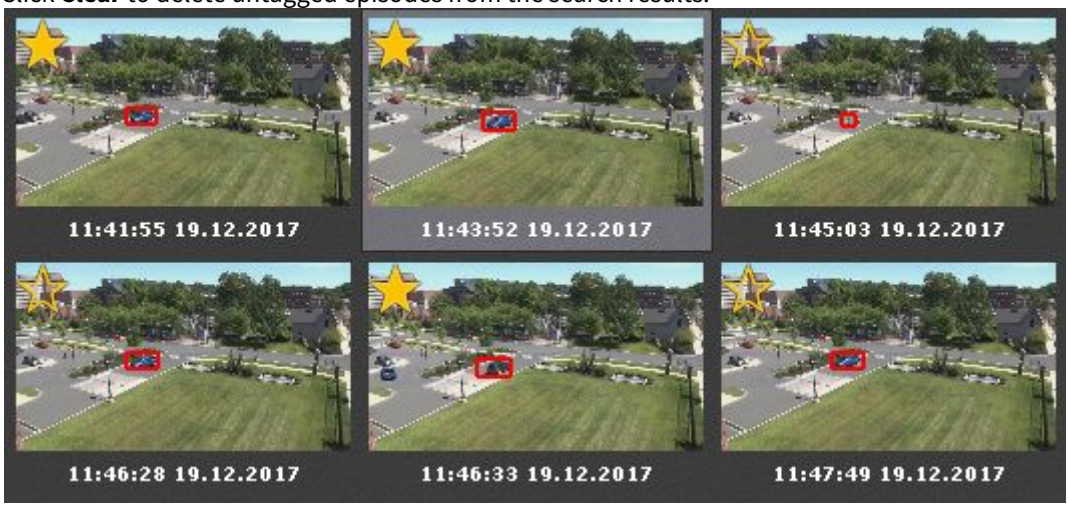
1. Double-click the episode, that you want to keep. Its thumbnail is tagged with a star .

   Note

   To remove the tag, click the star again .

2. Tag all the episodes you want to keep.

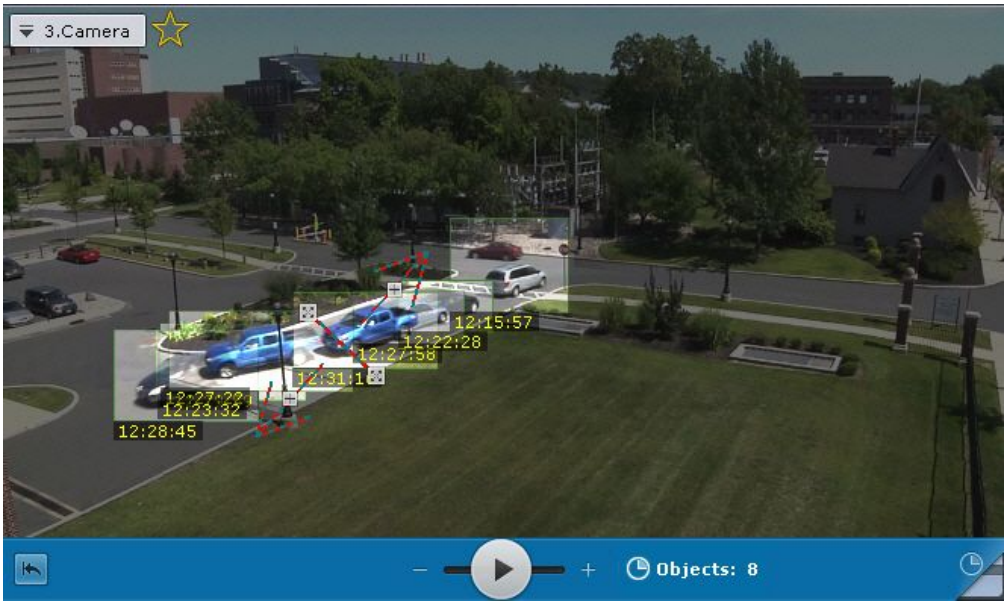
3. Click **Clear** to delete untagged episodes from the search results.



8.2.6.4.13.2 Viewing Search Results In TimeCompressor

When you search recorded video for motion events by metadata (LPR search, Face search, Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest)), you can view results in the TimeCompressor mode.

To do this, click the button on the timeline in the camera window.

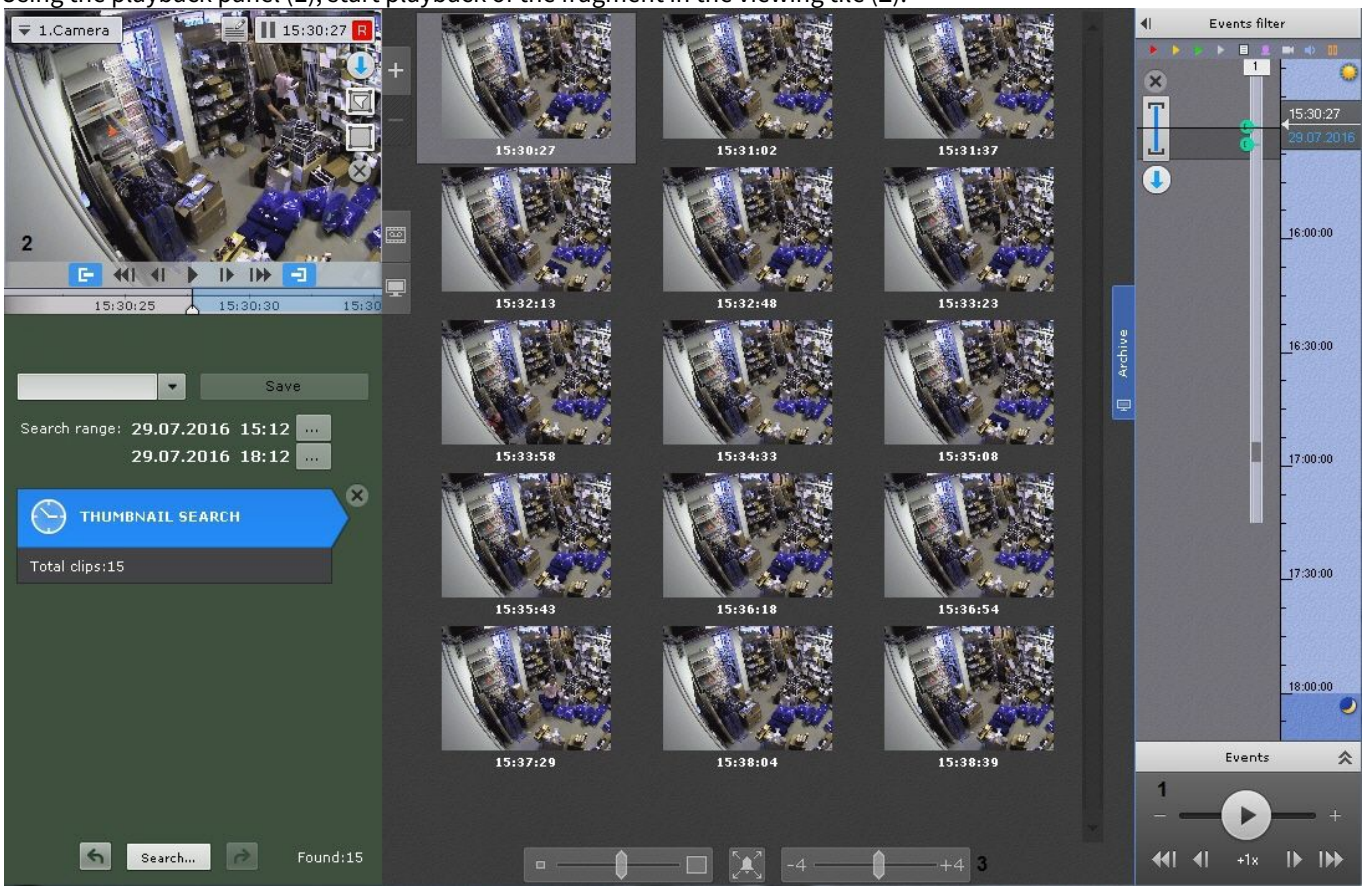


8.2.6.4.13.3 Playback of video fragments

To view the video fragment corresponding to a found moment in the archive, complete the following steps:

1. Left-click the found moment on the search results panel.

2. Using the playback panel (**1**), start playback of the fragment in the viewing tile (**2**).



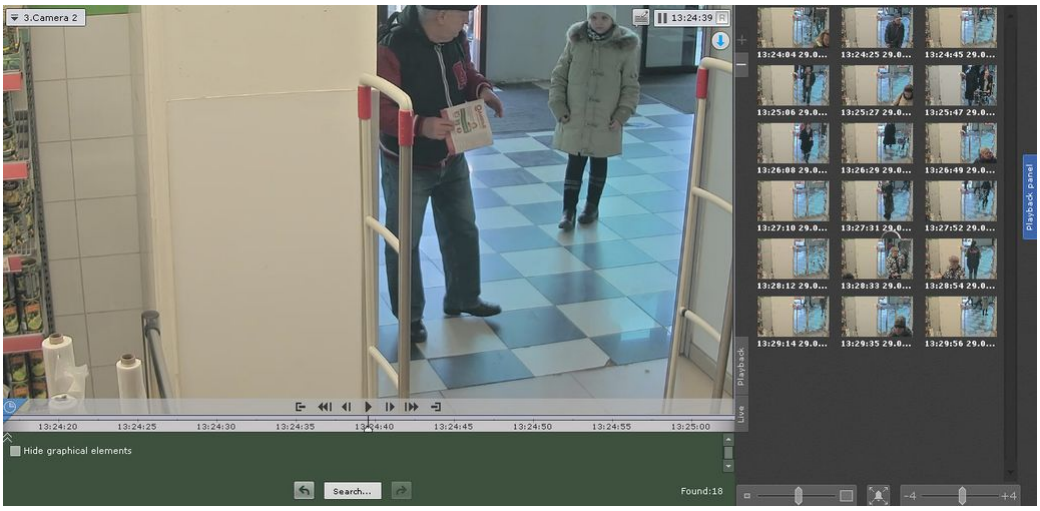
By default, the playback starts with the time specified under the thumbnail. You can use the control (**3**) to change the start time. If the control is in the leftmost position,playback starts 4 seconds earlier then the start time. If the control is in the far right position, playback starts 4 seconds later.

> **Note**
>
> If object tracking is activated in the viewing tile, then the properties of tracked objects (width and height as a percentage of the width or height of the frame) are displayed when viewing video fragments found through forensic search.

Note

To switch between video fragments, use the corresponding buttons on the playback panel or on the advanced navigation panel (see the sections titled Navigation using the advanced panel and Navigating Using the Playback Panel).

Extreme zooming a camera window makes the Search Conditions and Archive Navigation panels become hidden (see Scaling the Viewing Tile).



8.2.6.4.13.4 Enlargement of found moments

When you find moments in archive video, you can enlarge the following:

- Object that triggered the detection tool (during event search).
- Track (during forensic search).
- Commented area of the frame (during comment search).

To do so, above the search results, click the button.

Attention!

Enlargement occurs only in the following cases:

1. If the height and width of the visual item specified in the forensic search settings is less than 1/3 of the frame dimensions.
2. If the tracking object occupies less than 1/3 of the frame (for detection tool search)
3. If the object marked by the comment occupies less than 1/3 of the frame (for comments search)

In all other cases, the found moments are displayed in their entirety.

To close zoom, click the button again.

8.2.6.4.13.5 Exporting the video fragments and repeated search

To export the video fragment corresponding to a found moment in the archive:

1. Double-click the found moment on the search results panel.The interval for export will be set apart from this moment until the next found moment.

   Important

   Double-clicking the found moment will also cause a repeated search within the selected time interval for export.

2. Export the video (see Exporting Video Recordings).

8.2.6.4.14 Heat map

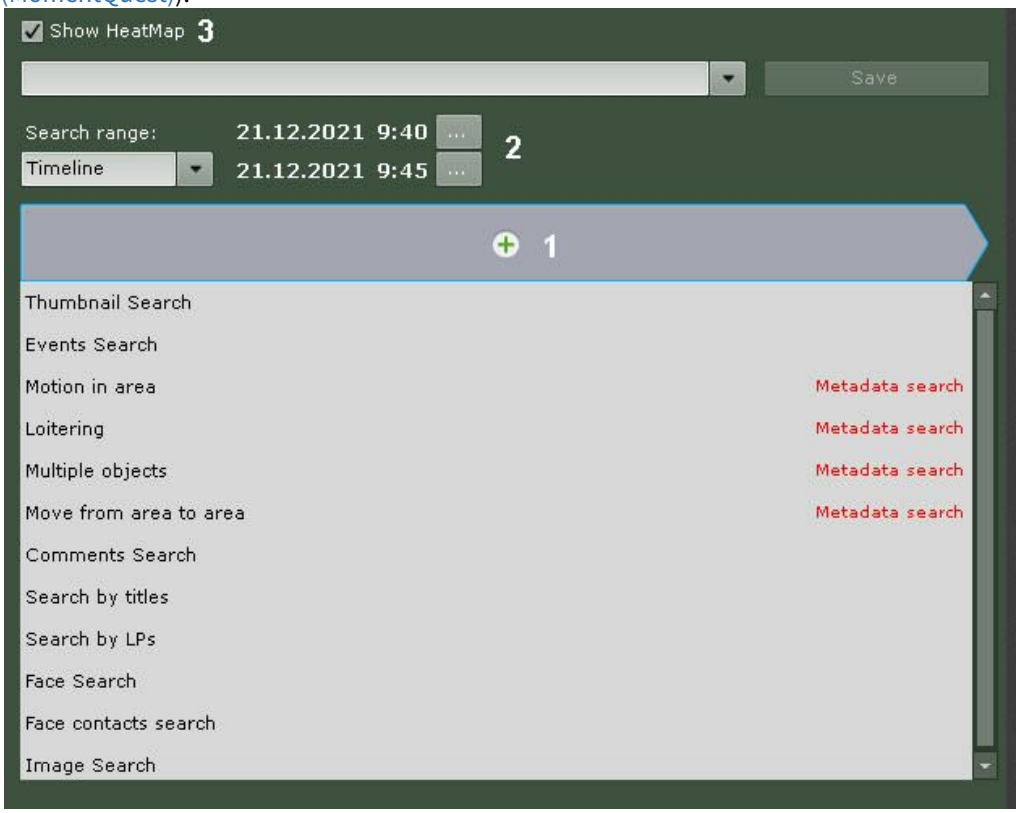
Attention!

At least one metadata source is required for displaying a heat map (for example, an object tracker — see General information on metadata).

The heat map allows you to check the movement activity in the frame and determine the areas where the objects move mostly.

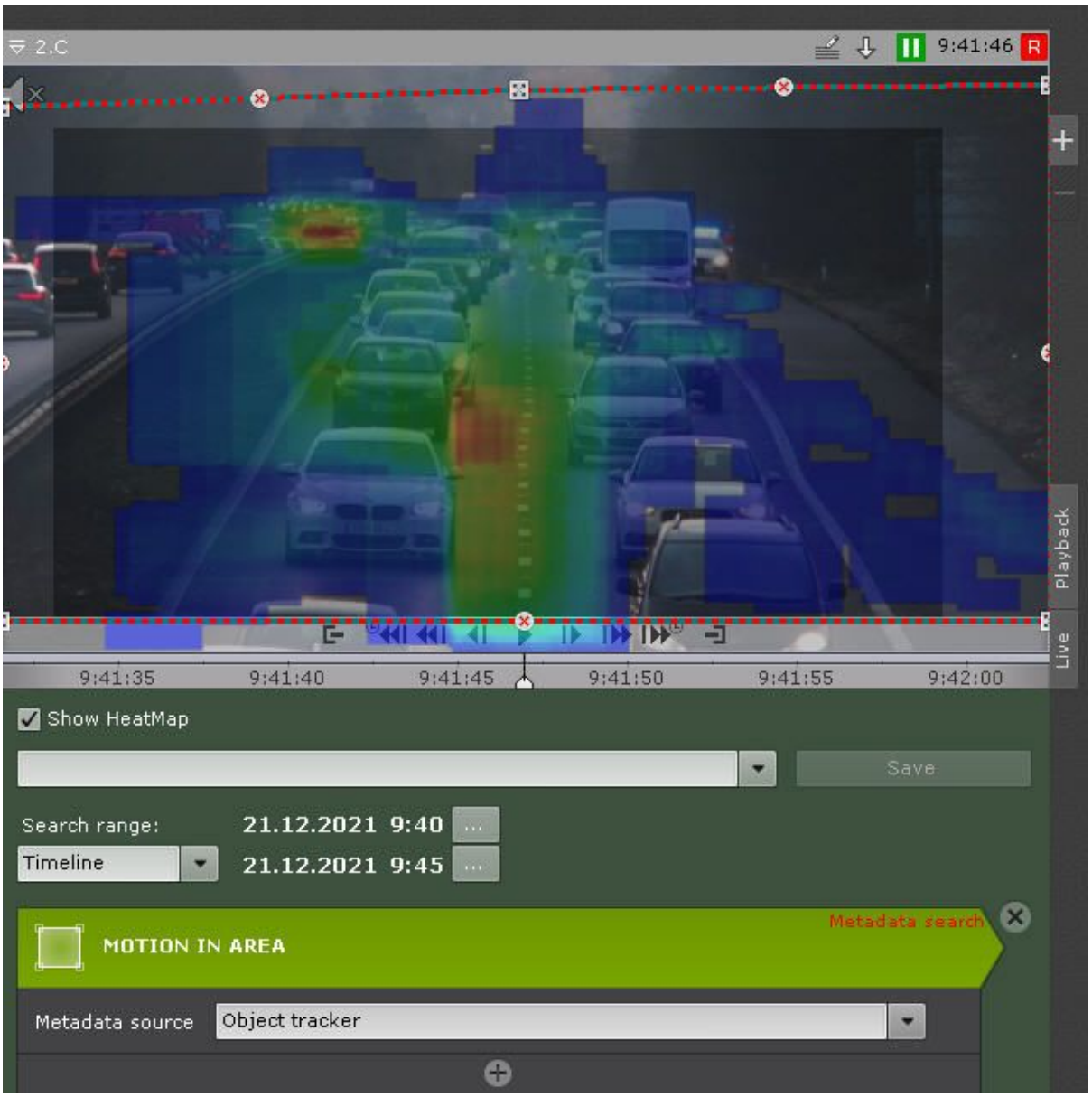
To display a heat map, do the following:

1. Select the type of search using metadata (**1**, see LPR search, Search for similar face, Forensic Search for Fragments (MomentQuest)).



2. Set the time period, according to the data from which the heat map should be generated (**2**, see Setting a search interval).
3. Set the **Show HeatMap** checkbox (**3**).
4. Click the **Search** button.

When the search is completed, a heatmap will be displayed on the map:



The colors on the map change from blue to red depending on the activity:

where blue is low activity, red is high.

8.2.6.4.15 Image Search

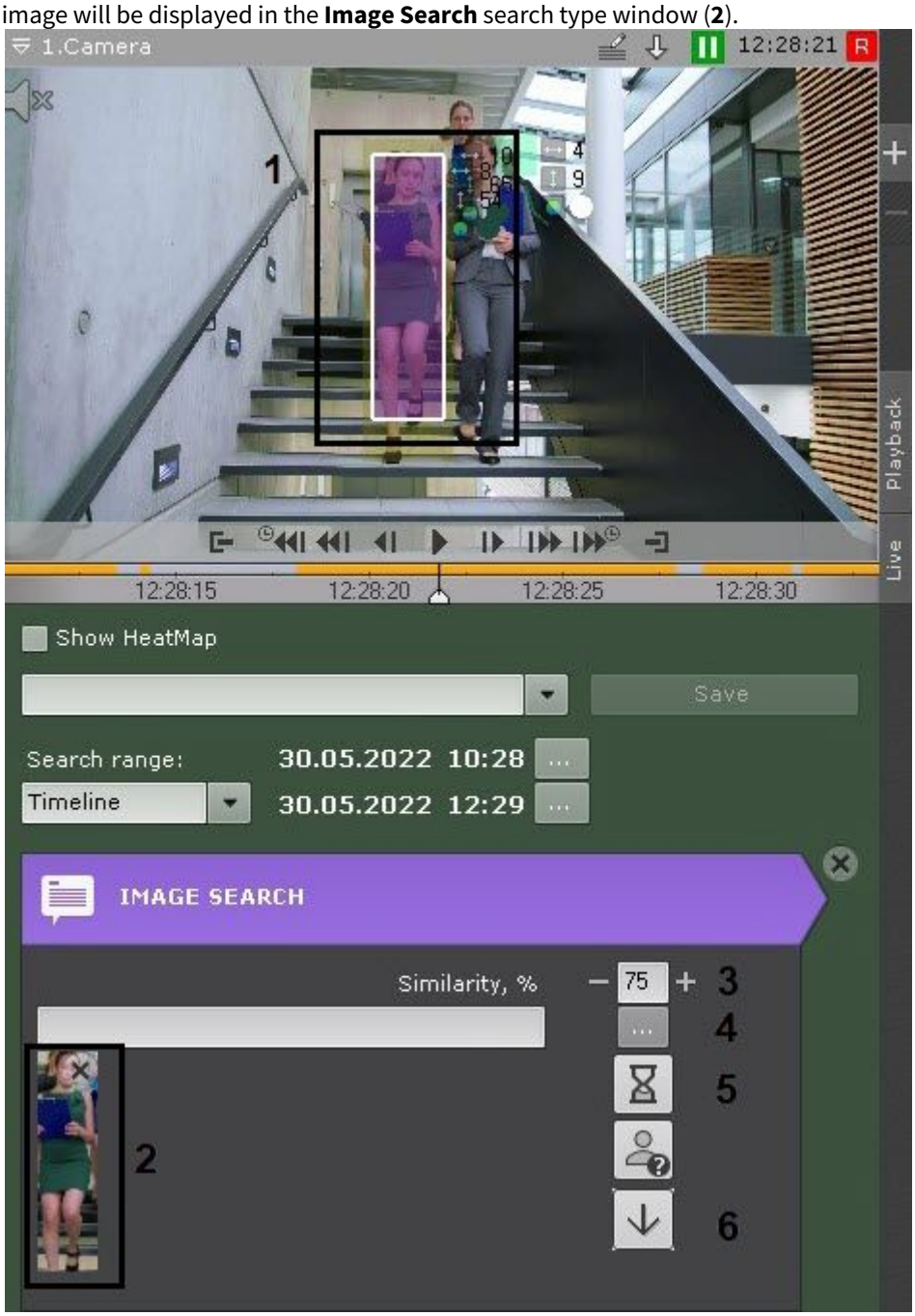
Image Search allows you to find in the archive similar images using a certain track or an image.

> **Attention!**
>
> To use Image Search, it is necessary to configure the neurotracker by enabling the **Similitude search** option in it, and setting the time required for the algorithm to process the track in the **Time of processing similitude track (sec)** field.

You can search by images in the following way:

1. Set the search interval (see Setting a search interval).
2. Select the **Image Search** search type (see Selecting the search type).
3. Select a search method:
    a. Search for a similar image by track:

i. Select a track by left-clicking on an object in the video surveillance window (**1**). When you use image search, the image track is highlighted and its dimensions are displayed in the video surveillance window. The track image will be displayed in the **Image Search** search type window (**2**).



ii. Enter the minimum level of similarity (in percent) of the selected track with images in the archive (**3**). The search results will display only those videos that have images with a similarity level greater than the specified one. To remove a track from the search, click the ✕ button.

b. Search for a similar image by image:

i. Select an image that is similar to the image you want to find in the archive (**4**). Supported formats: png, jpg, jpeg, jpe. If no image is selected, the search results will display all images recognized within the specified time range. To clear the search criteria, click the ✕ button.

ii. Enter the minimum level of similarity (in percent) of the selected image with images in the archive (**3**). The search results will display only those videos that have images with a similarity level greater than the specified one.

> **Note**
>
> When you search for a person, make sure that the track or image displays the person in full height. If the image is not complete, then incorrect recognitions can be included in the search results.

> **Note**
>
> If the search does not give required results at the selected level of similarity, then reduce its value. Note that lowering the similarity level below 50% can lead to incorrect recognitions.

4. Select the type of search results sorting: – by similarity level; – by time (**5**).
5. Click the **Search** button.

> **Note**
>
> Once you start the search, you can stop it at any time. To do this, click the **Stop** button, which is displayed in place of the **Search** button.

The search according to the specified criteria will start.

> **Note**
>
> The first time you search by images, the results will appear with some delay (about 3 minutes).
> Next times, results may be delayed for other reasons. For example, if there is a lot of data in the archive or if the hard disk is overloaded.

The search results panel will display video frames with images that match the search criteria. The recognized image will be highlighted with a red frame, and the level of similarity will be displayed below.

To quickly export an image from a frame:

1. Click on the image track in the surveillance window.
2. Click the button (**6**).

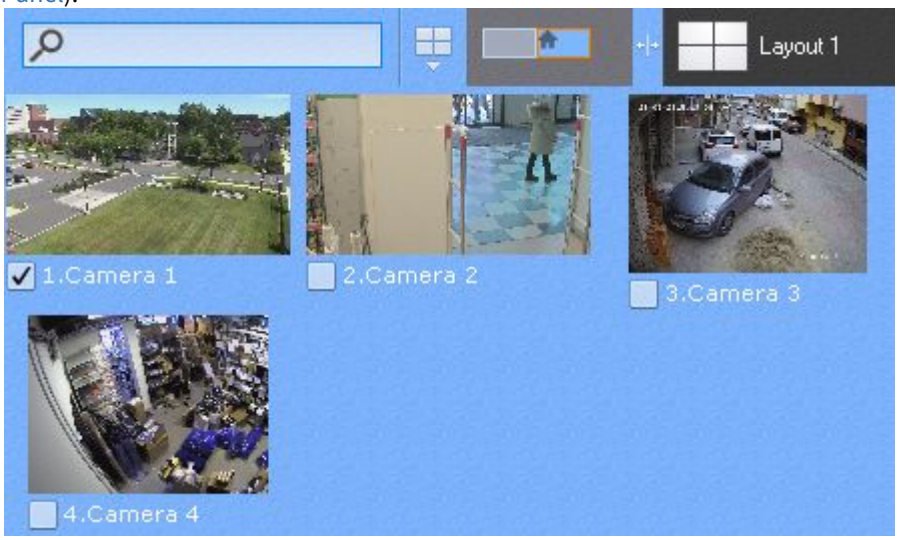
The image will be saved to the folder specified in the settings (see Configuring export options).

8.2.6.5 Simultaneous search in an archive of several video cameras

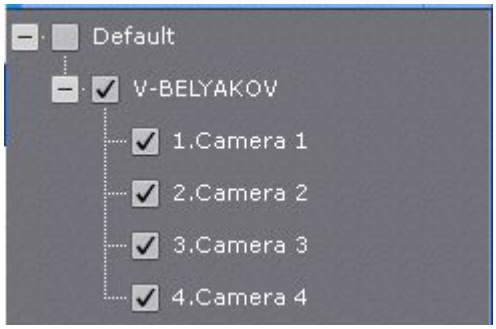
> **Attention!**
>
> The number of video cameras for search is not limited.

To search multiple cameras' Video Footage, do the following:

1. Choose your desired search type and criteria (see Search in an archive of a single video camera).
2. In the Camera Search Panel, check the cameras where Video Footage search has to be performed (see Camera Search Panel).



To check all cameras within an Axxon domain, check the domain's box in the Objects Panel (see Objects Panel).



3. Click the **Search** button.

If you are using Facial Recognition (see Face search) or LPR (see LPR search) to search persons or vehicle numbers in the recorded videos from several video cameras at the same time, their locations and movement patterns will be marked on the interactive map (see Opening and closing the map).

The time and date of recognition will be indicated next to the icon of each video camera.

8.2.7 Working with fisheye cameras

8.2.7.1 Viewing modes for video from fisheye cameras

Axxon Next allows viewing the video stream and video archive from fisheye cameras, dewarping the video image into one of the following formats:

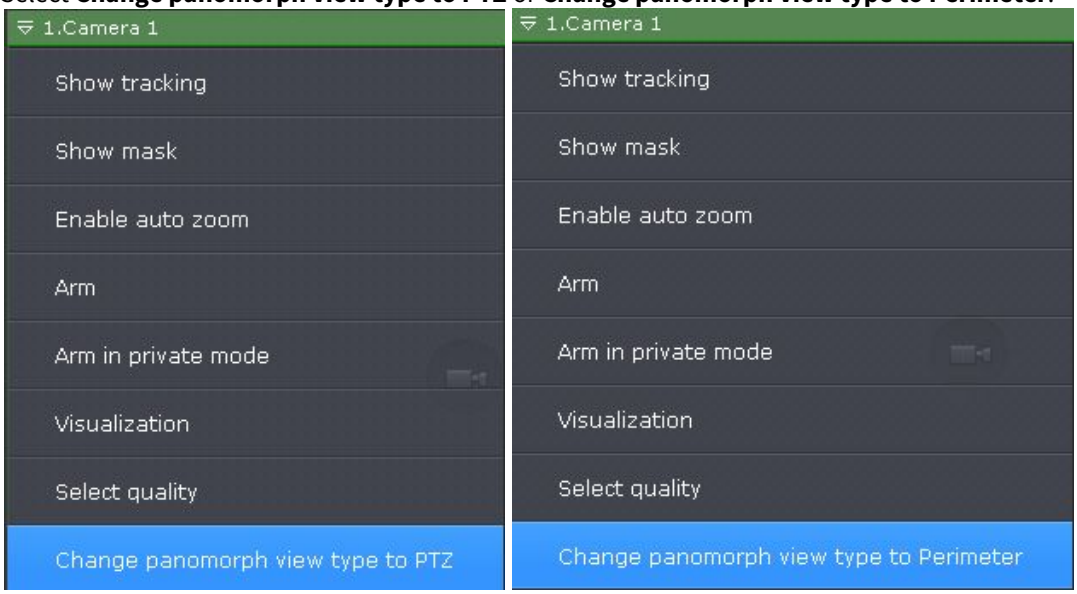
1. 360° panorama.
2. Regional view.
3. 180° panorama (for video camera with an Immervision lens).

8.2.7.1.1 Selecting viewing mode for videos from a fisheye camera

By default, fisheye camera video viewing mode setting is taken from device settings (see Configuring fisheye cameras), or from layout settings (see Selecting default functions for viewing tiles).

To change the viewing mode, do the following:

1. Open the camera's context menu.
2. Select **Change panomorph view type to PTZ** or **Change panomorph view type to Perimeter**.



Note

This setting is not preserved if you switch to another layout.

8.2.7.1.2 360 degree Panorama and Regional view (virtual PTZ)

By default, video from fisheye cameras is displayed in viewing tiles as a 360° panorama.

> **Note**
>
> This display format is only available in Live Video and Archive Video modes

When digital zoom is applied to video (see Digitally Zooming Video Images) by one notch or more, regional viewing begins.

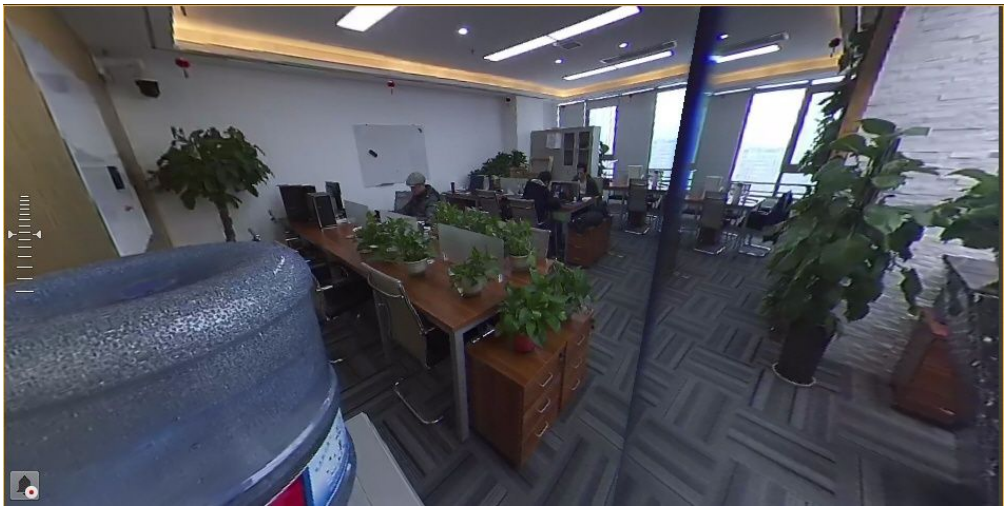
The following actions are available when viewing video in this format:

1. Point & Click functionality (see Control using Point&Click).
2. Change the angle of view of the fisheye camera, by left-clicking in the viewing tile.

In both viewing modes, all standard video surveillance functions are available for the fisheye camera.

When using a dual lens fisheye camera, the default viewing mode is set to two 180° views.

When you zoom in one of the images, both views will be merged into a single panoramic view.



8.2.7.1.3 180 degree Panorama

This viewing mode is available for:

- cameras with Immervision lenses;
- dual lens fisheye cameras.

> **Note**
>
> If the video camera is wall-mounted, the angle of view cannot be configured (see Configuring fisheye cameras).

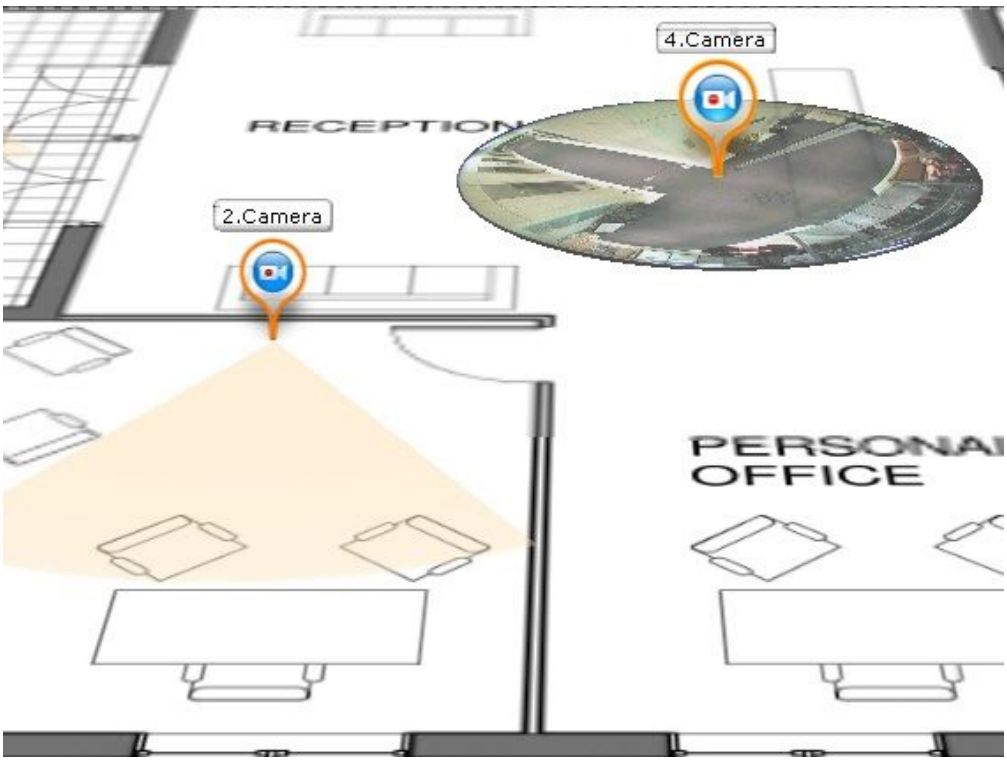
To set the viewing angle, click and hold the button while moving the cursor to the left or right.

Point&Click (see Control using Point&Click) and all standard video viewing functions are available when viewing video in this format.

8.2.7.2 Fisheye cameras on an interactive map

8.2.7.2.1 Viewing video and controlling a fisheye camera from the map

If a fisheye camera is ceiling-mounted (this position is selected in the video camera settings, see Configuring fisheye cameras) and a 360^{o} field of view is specified for it on the map, the video from the camera is displayed on the map in real time.



To refocus the angle of view of a fisheye camera so that a chosen point in the viewing tile becomes the center of the frame, left-click that point (this is the Point & Click function, see Changing the camera lens focus (Point&Click)).

Note

If the viewing tile for the fisheye camera is inactive when it is clicked, the first click on the video on the map activates the viewing tile. The second click activates the Point & Click function

8.2.7.2.2 Fisheye cameras in immersive mode

In immersive mode (see Immersive mode), the video from a fisheye camera is displayed on the entirety of the video surveillance screen, above the map display, as virtual PTZ (see Viewing modes for video from fisheye cameras).

In immersive mode, only the following video surveillance functions are available for fisheye cameras.

1. Digital zoom via mouse scrolling (see Enlarging a video image using the mouse scroll wheel).
2. Point & Click functionality (see Control using Point&Click).
3. To change the angle of view of a fisheye camera, move the mouse around the video image while holding down the left mouse button.

To exit immersive mode, click the button.

8.2.8 Facial recognition and search

Face recognition events are registered in the System Log (see The System Log).

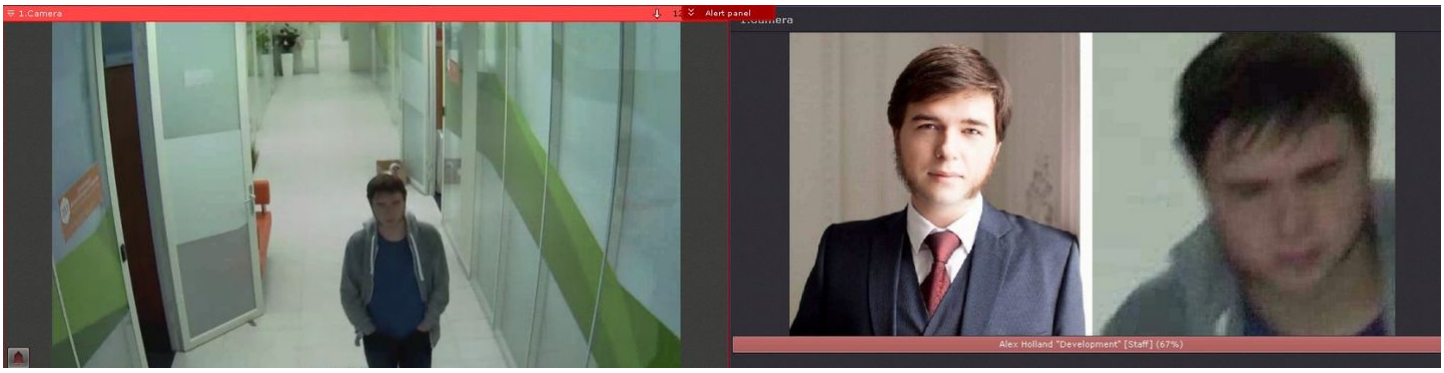
These events can as well be displayed on the Events Board (see Working with Events Boards) or Dialog Board (see Working with Dialog Board).

If you activate the age and gender information collection, its results will be displayed on the panel and saved into the System Log (see Configuring Face detection).

If the Camera window is linked to the Event Board (see Linking cells), you can double click on an event to start the Video Footage search for sequences containing the recognized face.

If you have created any lists of faces, configured an alarm on facial recognition, and linked the Camera window to the dialog board, you will have the following information on screen upon recognition a person that belongs to the list:

1. Reference photo from the List of Faces.
2. Close up shots of faces captured in the scene.
3. Additional information about the person, and similarity percentage between the recognized and reference photos.



If the Dialog Board has a portrait orientation, its lower part will display the alarm video.

The Alarm notification panel will also include:

1. reference photo,
2. thumbnail preview of the source recognition video,
3. name of the list of faces,

4. similarity percentage.

You can search FR events in recorded video from one (see Face search) or multiple cameras (see Simultaneous search in an archive of several video cameras).

You can set the system to mask recognized faces from viewing (see Masking faces).

8.2.9 Vehicle number plate recognition and search

VMS logs every ANPR number (see The System Log).

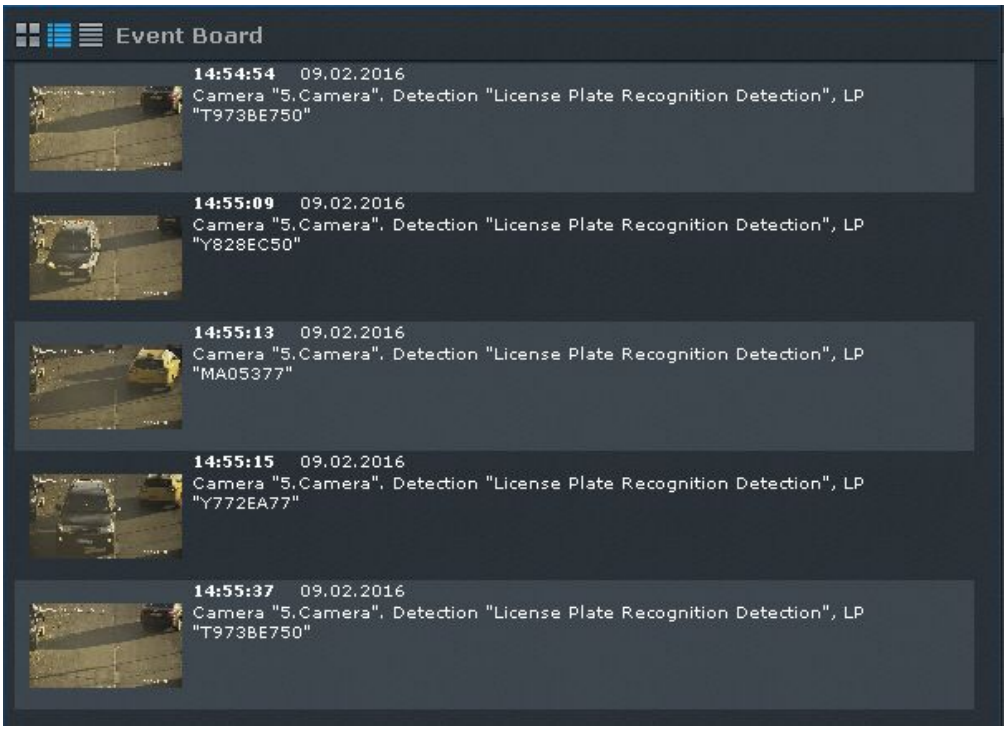
Attention!

Depending on detection tool settings, a delay may occur between the number recognition and the registration of the corresponding event (see Configuring License plate recognition (VT), Configuring License plate recognition (IV)).
The event is time-stamped with the time of recognition, not registration.
For example, if a car passes the camera at 12:05:00, and the detection tool is set to a 10 sec timeout, the event will be registered at 12:05:10 and the event data will include 12:05:00 as the time of recognition.

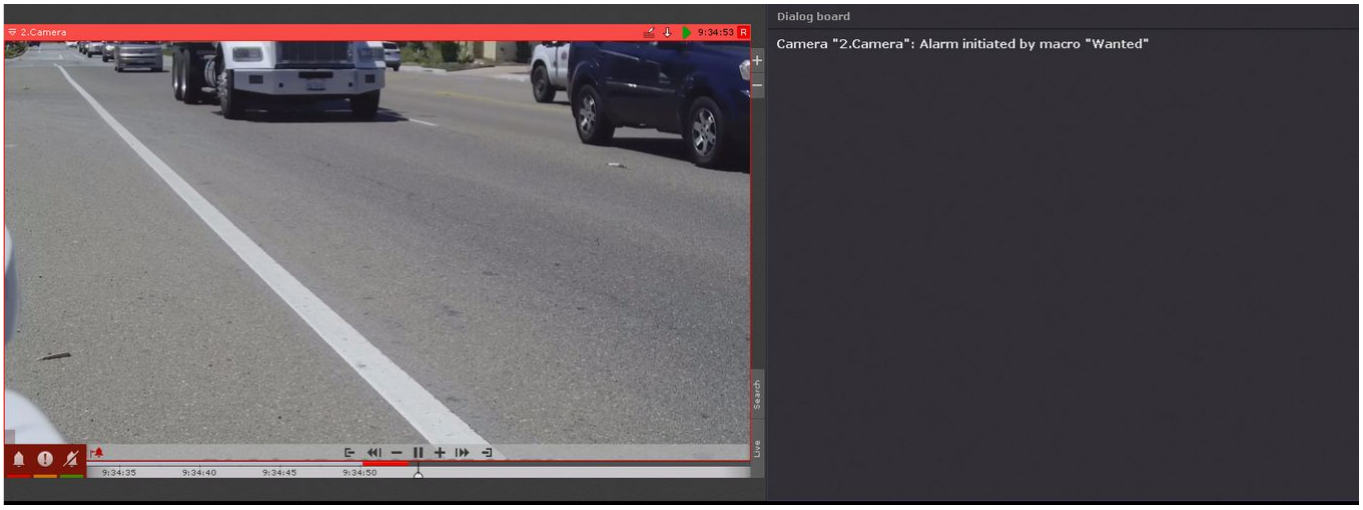
Attention!

The standard license provides a more than 30-sec delay between the number recognition and the corresponding event (see Configuring License plate recognition (VT).

All relevant events can be displayed on the Events Board (see Working with Events Boards) or Dialog Board (see Working with Dialog Board).



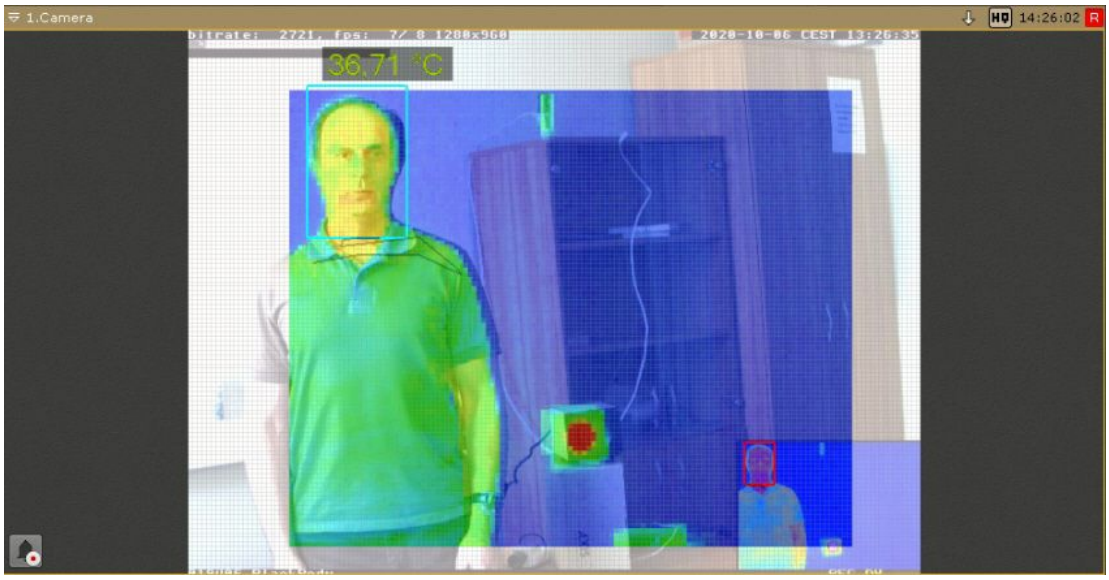
If you have created any LP Lists in your system, you can program automatic responses (e.g. alarm triggering) to LP recognition events related to list's entries (see Configuring real-time vehicle license plate recognition).



8.2.10 Temperature screening

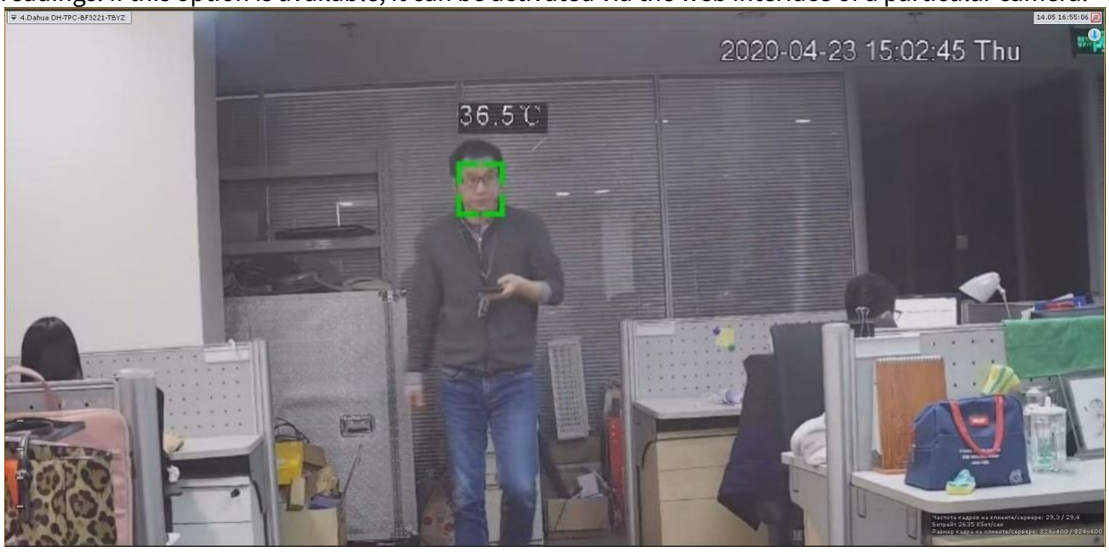
In Axxon Next, only two methods of temperature screening are available:

1. With the use of Mobotix M16 TR cameras. In this case, temperature values are displayed next to each recognized face's bounding box (see Face Detection and Temperature Control with Mobotix M16 TR cameras).



Each face recognition event contains thermal measurement data which can be displayed on the Events Board (see Working with Events Boards).

2. With the use of built-in detection tools of selected camera models (see Embedded Detection Tools).
   Some cameras are capable to display a bounding box over the facial image along with corresponding temperature readings. If this option is available, it can be activated via the web interface of a particular camera.



8.3 Working with information boards

8.3.1 Resizing information boards

You can resize information boards in the same way as viewing tiles (see Scaling the Viewing Tile).

> **Note**
>
> When the Counter Board is enlarged, the graph is enlarged as well, displaying data for a broader range of time. When the size of the Counter Board is reduced, the opposite occurs.
> In both cases, the right-hand border of the graph is constant.

If an information board tile is linked to a viewing tile, at the first enlargement step (to 50%), the viewing tile and information board tile are displayed together and occupy all of the screen on one side.

> **Note**
>
> In this case, the first step takes into account the total size of the related cells: the related cells must be less than 50% of both sides of the layout

8.3.2 Hiding information boards

Operators can hide information boards in a layout, if this is allowed in the settings.

To hide an information board, in its upper-right corner, click the button.

> **Note**
>
> If configured, Dialog Board hides after you click a **Response Button** (see Configure the Dialog Board).

If all cells in the layout have the same size, the space freed up after hiding an information board is allocated to the neighboring cells. Horizontal neighbors have priority over vertical ones.

If free space cannot be distributed horizontally, it is distributed between the vertical neighbors.

In more complicated cases (when cell sizes are different), an attempt is made to distribute the free space between horizontal neighboring cells. If this is not possible, free space is distributed between vertical neighboring cells. If even this second attempt is unsuccessful due to the layout configuration, the space remains empty.

Hidden information boards are displayed in two cases:

1. After switching to another layout and back to the original one
2. When an event occurs that requires the operator's attention A description of such events for each type of information board is given in the following table.

Types of information boards	**Events that trigger board display**
Dialog and Events	An event matching the board filtering settings occurs
Health	Server condition worsens
Counter	New events occur

8.3.3 Automatically switching to layouts with information boards

Automatic switching to a layout with an information board is possible for Events Board, Health Board and Dialog Board (if it is set up to Automated Responses to Events). This option is available when configuring boards of these types.

Automatic switching to a layout with Events Board or Dialog Board occurs when all of the following conditions are met:

1. The current layout does not contain Event/ Dialog Board.
2. An event matching the board filtering settings has occurred in the system.

Automatic switching to a layout with a Health Board occurs when the following conditions are met:

1. The current layout does not contain a Health Board.
2. The status of a monitored server or camera worsens.

The layout with the smallest number of cells is chosen for display. If there are multiple layouts with identical numbers of cells, the layout that comes first in the alphabet is chosen.

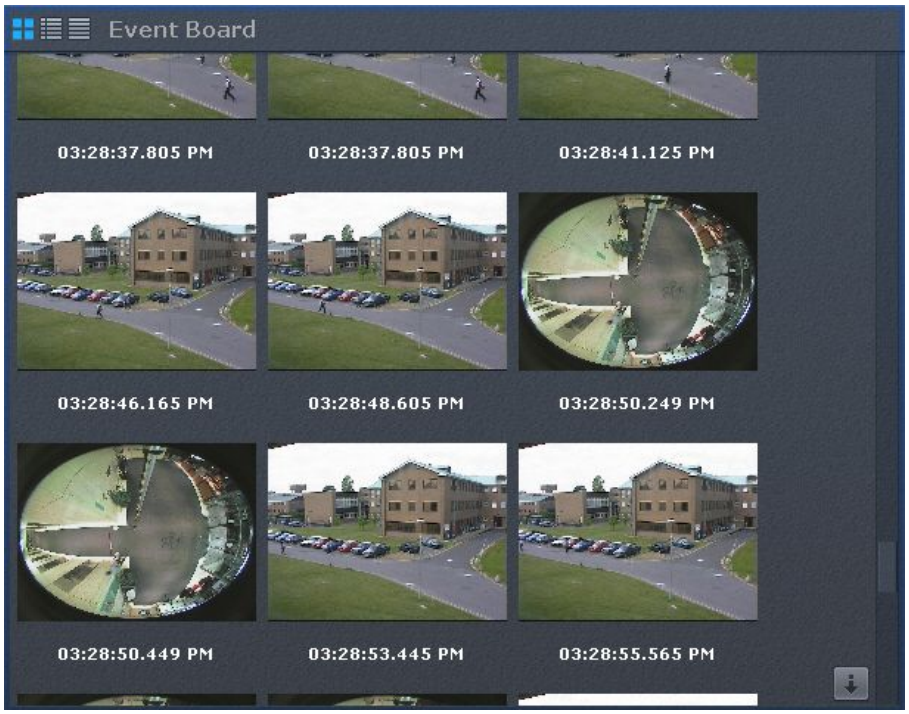
8.3.4 Working with Events Boards

8.3.4.1 Options for displaying information on Events Boards

Events Boards display information about selected system events. Configuration of the events to display is performed in the corresponding section.

Events on the board can be displayed in three ways, chosen via the buttons in the upper-left corner of the board:

1. First frame of events and their time



> **Note**
>
> The frame is not displayed when there is no recording in the archive.

2. First frame of events and text

3. Text only

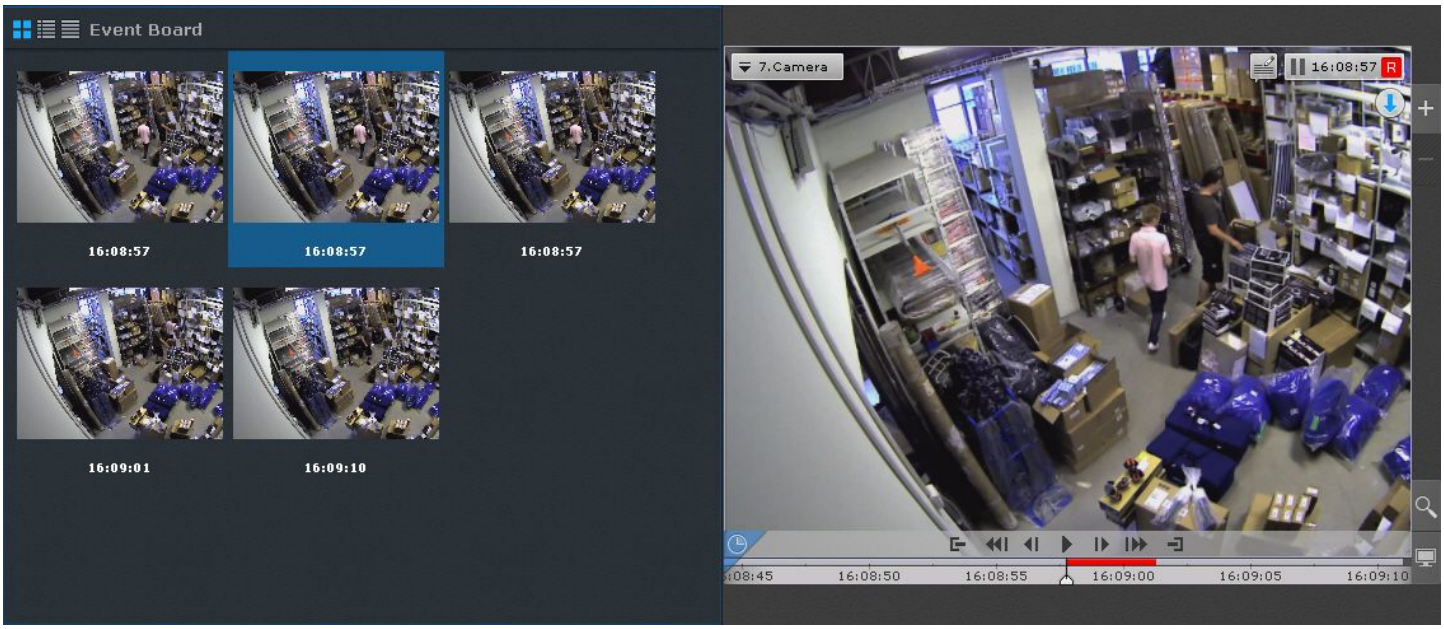
When a layout is switched to, by default the Events Board is displayed as configured in the settings.

At the top of the list are the most recent events. If you are at the end of the list, you can use the button in the panel's top-right corner to go to the most recent events. New events are highlighted for 4 seconds. The panel may include up to 100 events. If the number of events exceeds the maximum permitted value, the newer events will be displayed in place of older ones.

You can also access the events panel on the right side of the screen (see Viewing selected camera's detection tool triggering events). In this case, it includes only detection events for a selected camera.

8.3.4.2 Switching a camera linked to an Events Board to the archives

If an Events Board is linked with a camera, clicking an event will switch the camera to Archive mode at the point in time corresponding to the event.



Note

If there is no archive for a camera when an alarm occurs, the archive is positioned at the closest recorded archive entry.

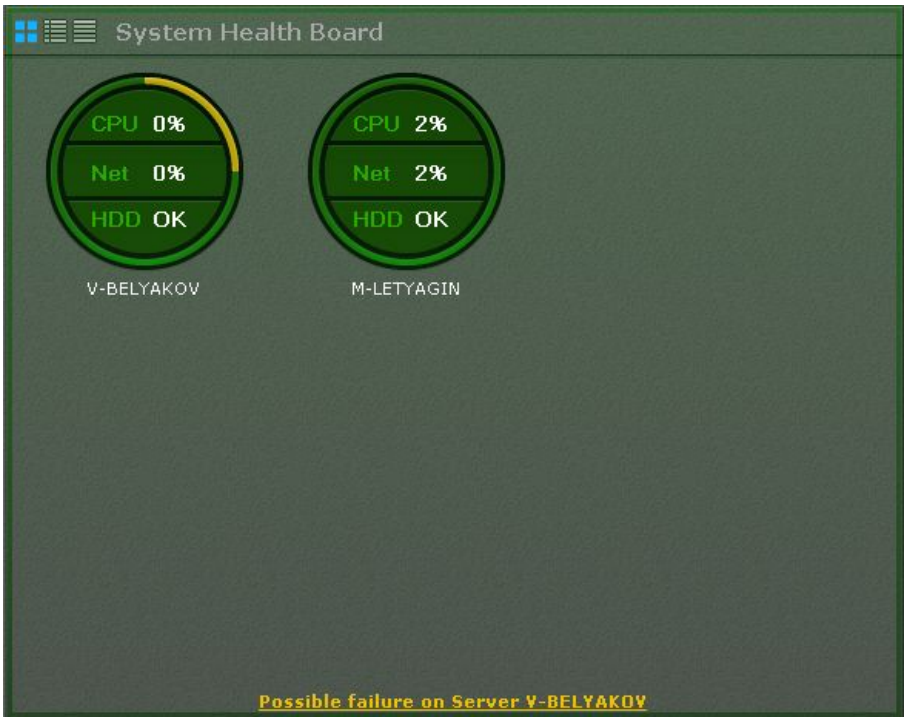
Note

If an Events Board is linked to several cameras, all cameras transition to Archive mode.

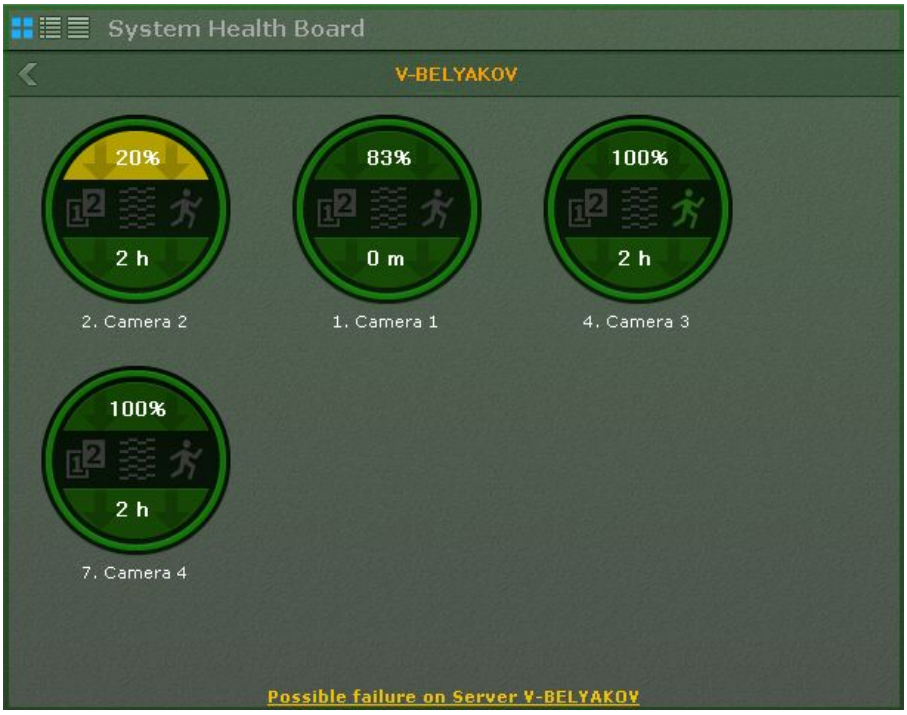
8.3.5 Working with Health Boards

Health Boards display the status of selected system servers and connected cameras.

By default, the panel displays the status of Servers.



To switch to viewing the status of cameras, click the diagram for the relevant server.



Note

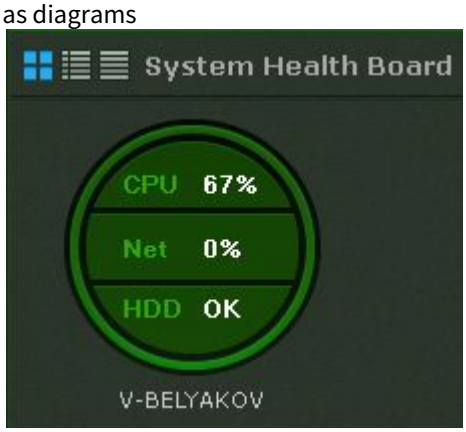
In table mode, you can view server status by clicking the relevant line in the table.

To switch to a view of server status, click the button.

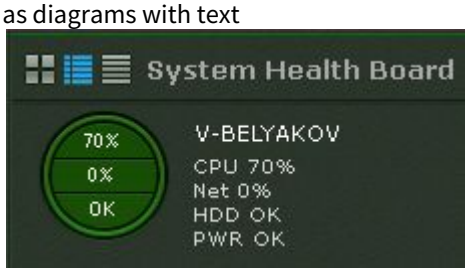
8.3.5.1 Viewing server status

Information about the status of servers can be displayed in three ways, chosen via the buttons in the upper-left corner of the board:

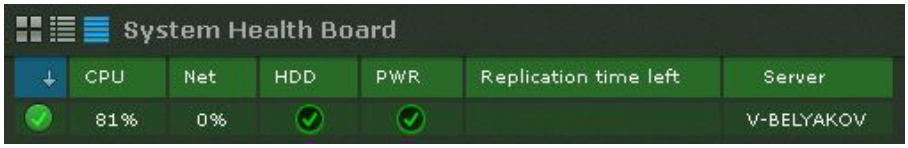
1. as diagrams



2. as diagrams with text



3. as a table



> **Note**
>
> Disconnected Servers are displayed at the end of the list with dimmed brightness.

Tables can be sorted by any column in any direction.

On each server the following metrics are monitored: CPU, Network usage, Disk subsystem status, Power status.

> **Note**
>
> The remaining time of the archive replication is also displayed in the table.

Areas of the diagram change color based on the respective status.

	CPU	**Network**	**HDD**
Red	Load >95%	Connection failure	Critical load on the disk subsystem, data loss when recording to archive over 10%
Yellow	Load from 85% to 94%	At 70% to 100% of capacity	Elevated load on the disk subsystem, data loss when recording to archive under 10%
Green	Load <85%	At less than 70% of capacity	Normal functioning of the disk subsystem (proper operation)

When you switch the server to reserve power, an icon is added to the chart. The icon disappears when you restore the main power.

The edge of the diagram changes color based on the status of the connected cameras (see Viewing camera status).

If the entire edge is green, all cameras are in normal condition. If part of the edge is yellow or red, some cameras have borderline or critical status.

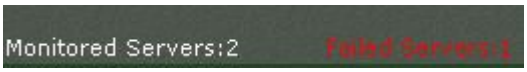
Overall server status is determined from the above parameters as follows:

1. Normal – all components and cameras are normal.
2. Borderline – possible problems with the status of at least one component or camera.
3. Critical – at least one component or camera is in critical condition.

Server information is updated every ten seconds.

If the connection to a server is lost, a corresponding icon is used to depict it.

If all servers are in normal condition, the bottom of the board displays a status bar with information about the number of monitored and distressed servers.



If the status of any server worsens, the status bar is replaced by a message. When the message is clicked, the server status is displayed (if the board is currently displaying camera status).

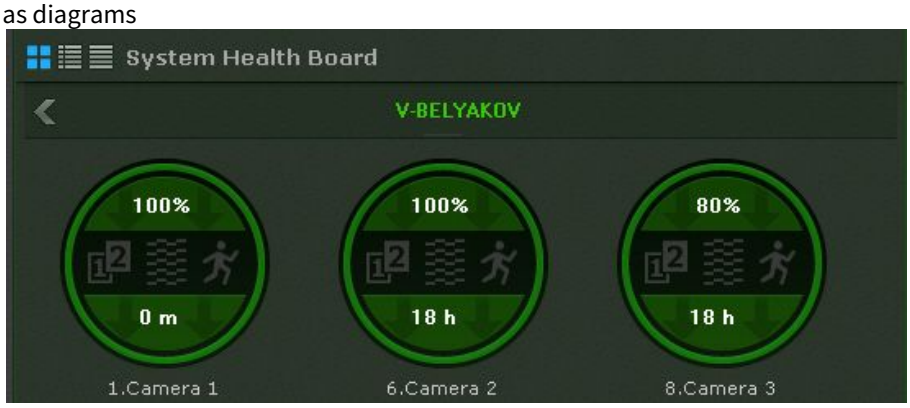
The message then closes and the status bar again appears.

> **Note**
>
> If the status of several servers worsens, a message is shown for the last one.

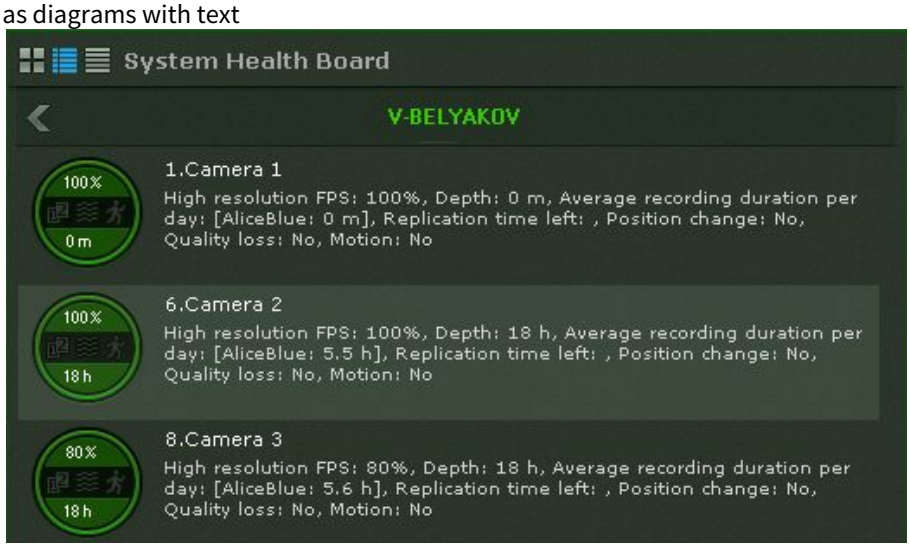
8.3.5.2 Viewing camera status

Information about the status of cameras can be displayed in three ways, chosen via the buttons in the upper-left corner of the board:

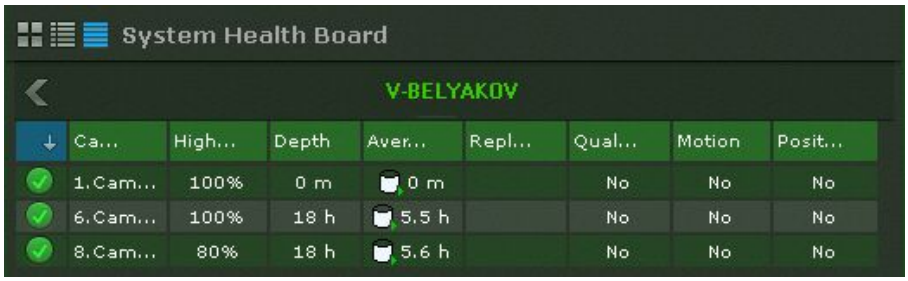
1. as diagrams



2. as diagrams with text



3. as a table



> **Note**
>
> Disconnected cameras are displayed at the end of the list with dimmed brightness.

Tables can be sorted by any column in any direction.

The following information is displayed for each camera:

1. The percentage rate of actual video fps to the camera's high definition stream fps setting (see The Video Camera Object).
2. Status of detection tools (loss of quality, position change, motion)
3. **Depth** refers to the number of hours or days from the start of the earliest video stored in any archive to the end of the most recent video (if archive recording is not configured for the camera, this section is colored gray on the diagram).
4. Average recording time, in hours per day, is the ratio of the total recording time to the age of the archive / retention time (time from the earliest stored video to now).

> **Note**

For constant recording, this parameter value is equal to 24 hours. If the recording takes 50 percent of total time, the value is 12 hours.

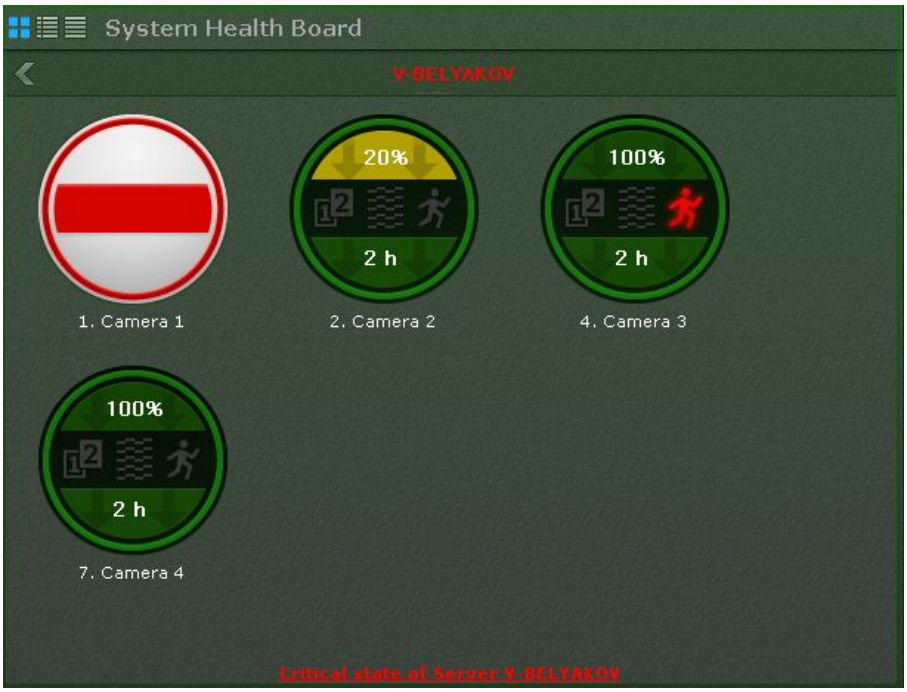
5. Remaining time for replication of the archive.

The camera status is measured based on the signal from the camera and stream rate:

1. Normal – camera signal present, frame rate & to max from 70% to 100% The camera is colored green on the diagram and in the table.
2. Borderline – camera signal present, frame rate & to max from 20% to 70% The camera is colored yellow on the diagram and in the table.
3. Critical – no camera signal or frame rate & to max is less than 20% The camera is colored red on the diagram and in the table.

Information is updated every ten seconds.

If there is no signal from a camera, the appearance of the diagram changes accordingly.



Information about detection tools is received in real time. Depending on the status of detection tools, the corresponding icons change color:

- Green – detection tool status is normal
- Red – detection tool activated
- Gray – detection tool disabled

8.3.6 Working with Statistics Boards

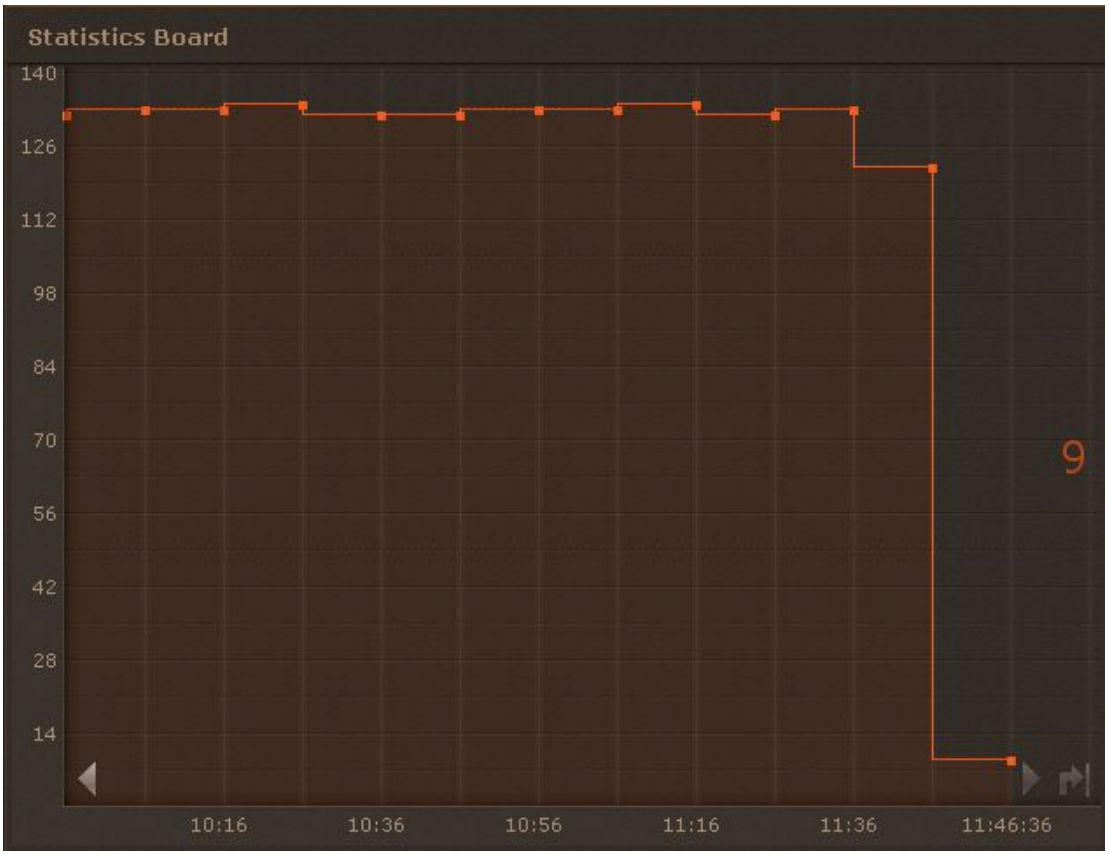
The Statistics Board is a graph of the number of events of a certain type for a specified timeframe. The type of events and amount of time between the points of the graph are configured in the board settings (see Configuring a Statistics Board).

The points of the graph change over time and depend on the current time and interval specified in the settings.

The points are calculated every minute/hour/day/etc. based on the selected unit of measurement (if the interval is specified in minutes, then every minute; if specified in hours, then every hour, and so forth) and is performed as follows:

1. The current time (last point on the graph) is rounded to the nearest whole unit of time (if the interval in the settings is specified in minutes, then the nearest whole minute; if specified in hours, then the nearest whole hour, and so forth).
2. This rounded time is used as the next-to-last point.
3. The formula for the other points is as follows: the adjacent point to the right, minus the interval of time specified in the settings.

For example, the interval is set to **10** minutes on this sample graph here. The current time (**11:46:36**) is the last point on the graph, so after rounding this to the next whole minute we get the value for the next-to-last point: **11:46:00.** Correspondingly, the points before it are **11:36:00**, **11:26:00**, etc.



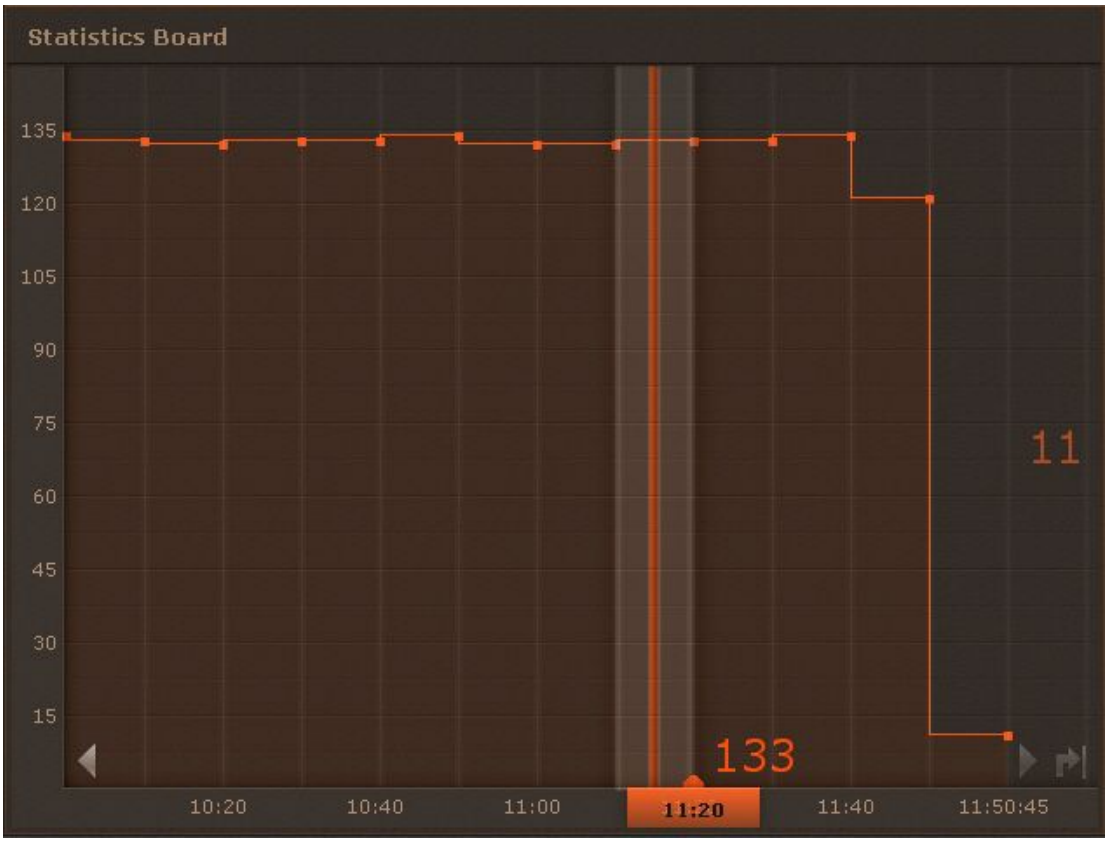
When the current time becomes **11:47:00**, the points will be updated to **11:37:00**, **11:27:00**, etc.

The graph displays the current number of events. The number of events is recalculated every minute and does not depend on the interval chosen.

For example, for this graph the current number of events equals **9**, for the period from **11:46:00** to **11:47:00.**

To scroll through the graph, use the arrows on the graph edges. To jump to the last point on the graph, click the button.

Clicking anywhere on the graph jumps to the nearest point and the relevant value is indicated.



8.3.7 Working with Web Boards

Web Board allows users to view a selected web page in the camera window.

In Web Board, you can view web sites in Internet Explorer.

If the web page does not fit the board, vertical and horizontal scroll bars are displayed. In this case, the upper-left corner of the web page is displayed.

Note

If there is no network connection, no access to the requested page or if there are other problems, Web Board displays standard *Internet* Explorer browser error messages.

8.3.8 Working with Dialog Board

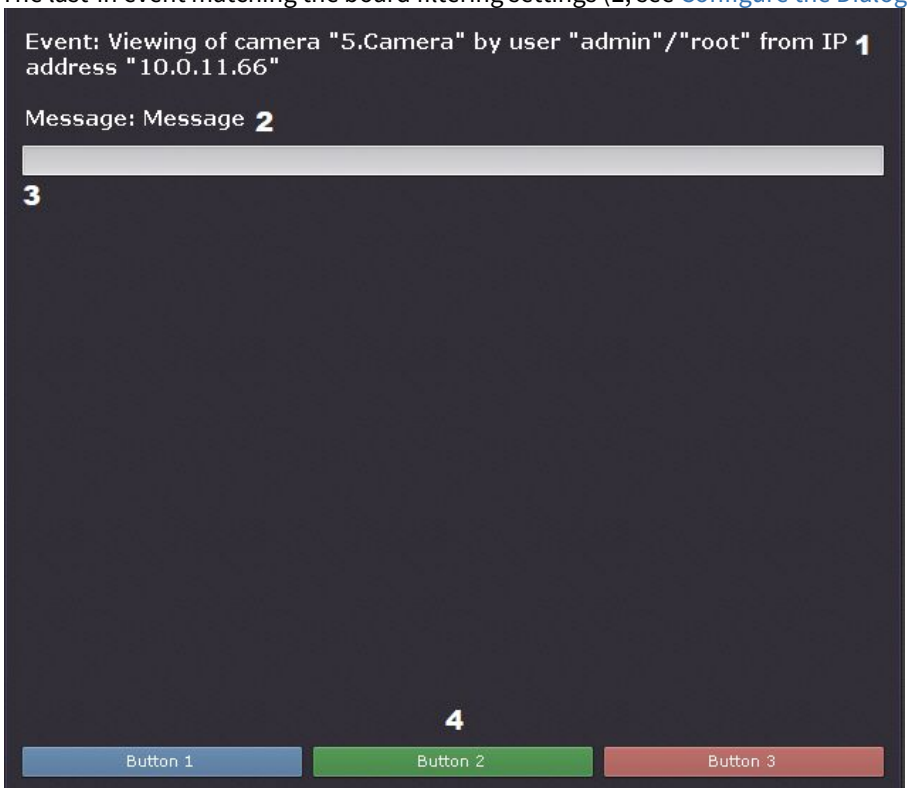
Configure the Dialog Board

Dialog Board works in three modes:

1. Automated Responses to Events.
2. View and Evaluate Alarm.
3. View Video (Active camera).

In Automated Responses to Events, the board shows:

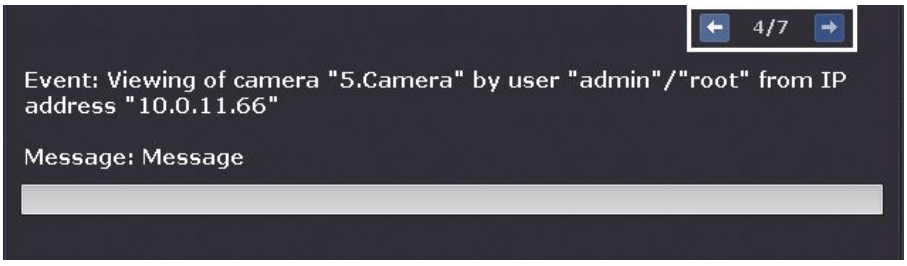
1. The last-in event matching the board filtering settings (**1**, see Configure the Dialog Board).



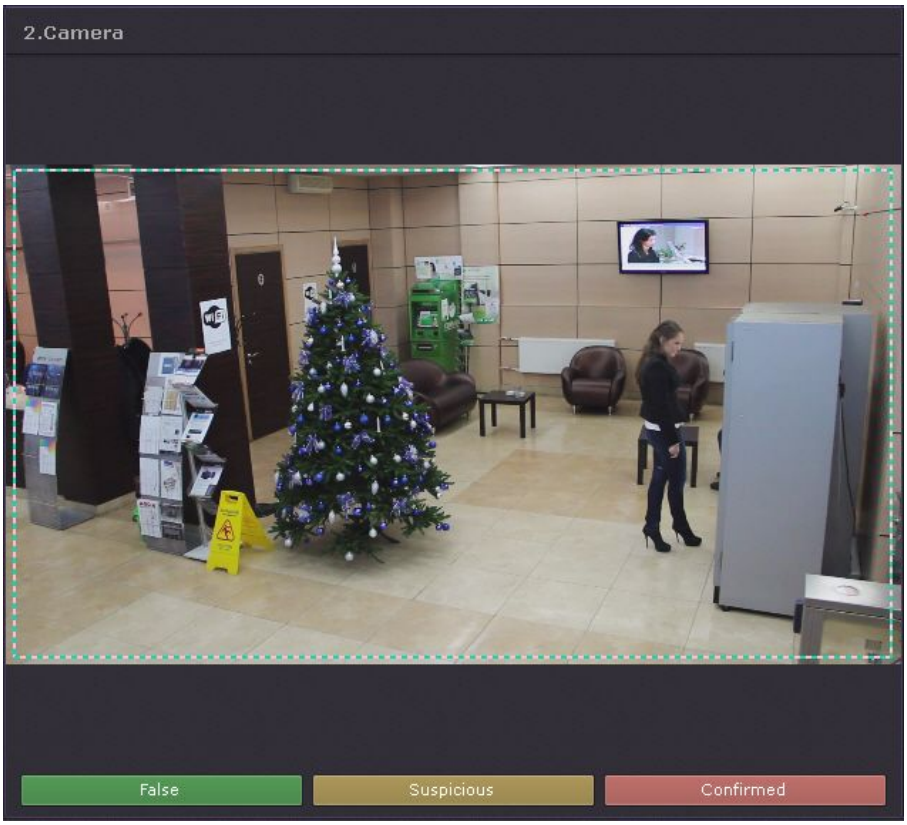
> **Note**
>
> All of the above mentioned elements of the board are optional. You configure the board to show them.

2. Text message as configured (**2**).
3. Comments filed (**3**). Comments input can be optional or mandatory (as configured). Comments are logged to System Log, when you click a response button.
4. Response Buttons (**4**). If you click a response button, the macro starts, and the board auto-hides (if configured, see Hiding information boards).

If the pane has a history of events (see Configure the Dialog Board), you can use browse it with arrows in top-right corner. Event history is erased after you switch to another layout.



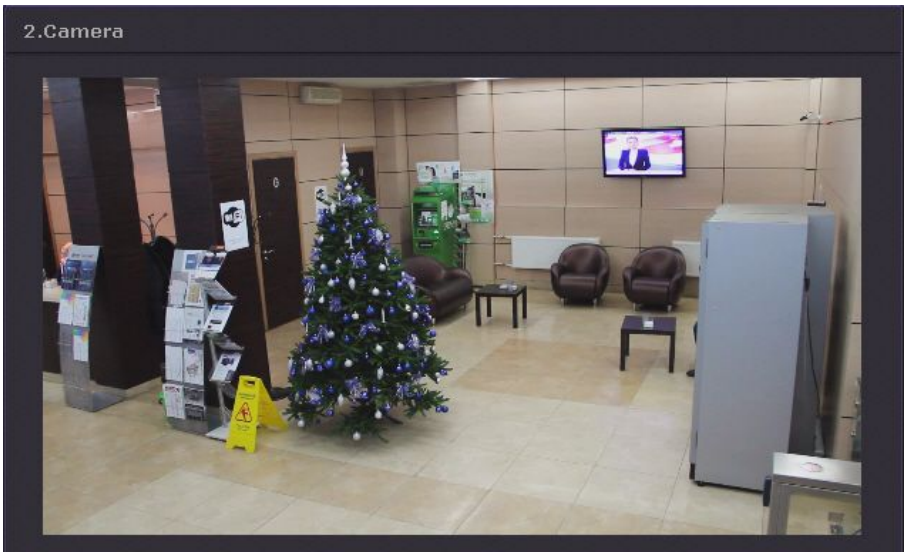
In the second mode, the panel will display an alarm event from the selected or linked camera, depending on the panel setting and the event evaluation buttons.



In the third mode, the panel shows video:

1. from the selected camera;
2. from the stand-by camera for the selected camera.
3. from the stand-by camera for the linked camera.

You can select a camera if you click on its tile on a layout, in the Objects panel (see Objects Panel) or on the map (see Working with the Interactive Map).



The panel can also display a selected still image.

8.4 Layouts Management

The *Axxon Next* user can run the following commands here:

1. Select a layout for display on screen.

2. Start and stop slideshows of layouts. Slideshow is rotation through all available layouts according to an assigned frequency (dwell-time).
3. Create temporary layouts.

You can work with layouts done on the Layouts ribbon (see The Layouts panel).

8.4.1 Changing cameras within a layout

You can change cameras within your current layout. These changes are non-permanent and will persist until you switch to another layout.

You can change:

- any single camera;
- all cameras within the layout.

To change a single camera, drag and drop its icon from the Objects Panel (see Objects Panel) or Camera Search Panel (see Camera Search Panel) to the layout cell of your choice.

The change all cameras within the current layout, select the required number of cameras on the object panel, and drag&drop it to the layout.

> **Note**
>
> To select multiple cameras, use Ctrl or Shift key.

After you drag and drop a group of cameras, the layout will include all cameras from this group; when you drag and drop an Axxon domain, all cameras from this domain will be displayed.

> **Note**
>
> Currently disabled cameras will not be included.

8.4.2 Selection and Slideshow of Layouts

To display a layout, click it with the left mouse button.

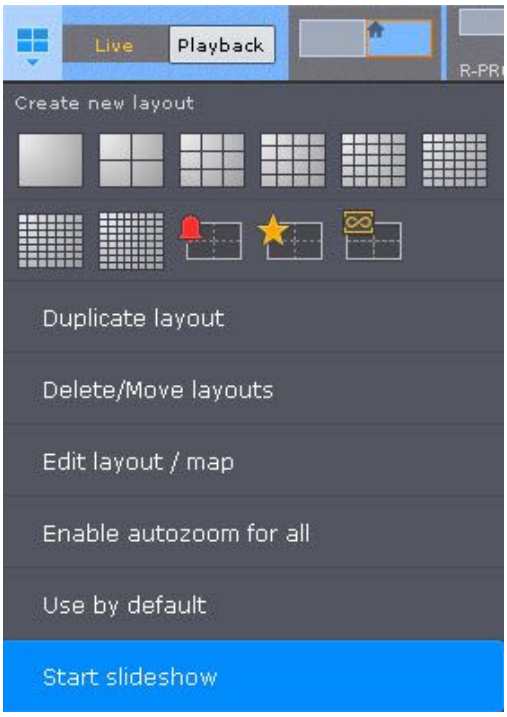
If the client is connected to multiple Axxon domains, layouts for the main Axxon domain are listed by default. To view the layouts of other Axxon domains, select the desired domain on the camera search panel.

If another user has shared the layout, you will see the following icon:

Shared layouts are by default sorted by name on the Layouts panel.

> **Note**
>
> If you hover the mouse cursor over such a layout, you will see the name of the user that has shared it.

To launch a slideshow, click the button, and select **Start slideshow** in the context menu of the layout panel.

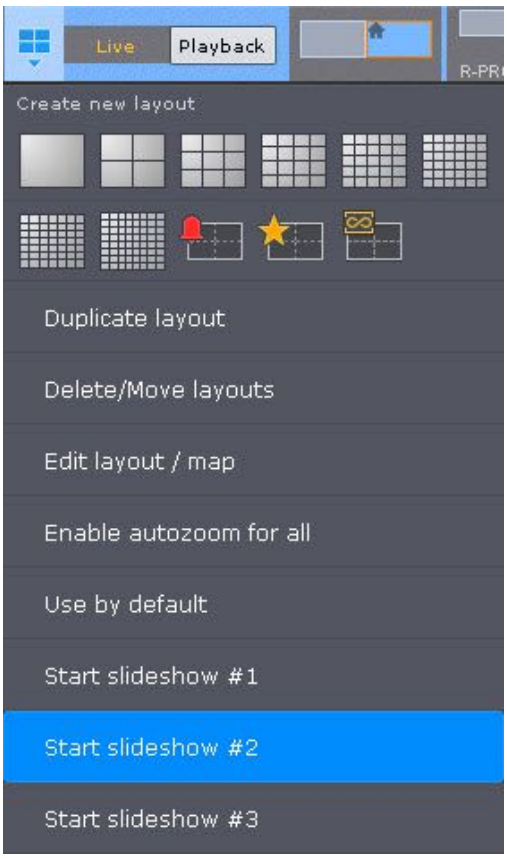


Note

If you have only one layout in VMS, you do not have **Start Slideshow** in the context menu.

This will launch a carousel of all available layouts according to the assigned dwell-time (see Configuring Slideshow parameters). Special Layouts (see Working with Special layouts) are excluded from slideshows.

To launch a user-defined slide show, select the required one from the list.



> **Note**
>
> To launch a slide show on a video wall (see Monitor Management), select the required monitor in the Video Wall Management Panel (see Monitor Panel).

To turn off slideshow mode, select **Stop slideshow** in the context menu of the layouts panel or left-click any viewing tile.

8.4.3 Working with Special layouts

> Configuring special layouts

Alerted Cameras layout

The first 10 seconds after the alert appears in the special layout, it is highlighted.

Cameras disappear from the Alerted Cameras layout in 2 cases:

1. After the alert is classified and the next camera is on (see Processing an Alarm).
2. After the timeout expires (see Configuring Alarm Management Mode).

> **Note**
>
> The alarm sticks to the layout while the Alarm Management window is open and before the timeout expires. If you select a different camera without classifying the alarm, the alarm evaluation timeout resets

New alerted cameras will populate the layout as follows:

1. If there are any free cells on the layouts after you have classified or missed the alert, the first free cell is taken.
2. If there are no free cells on the layout, the new alerted cameras takes the next free cell. If there are no free cells, the alerted camera is added to the waiting list

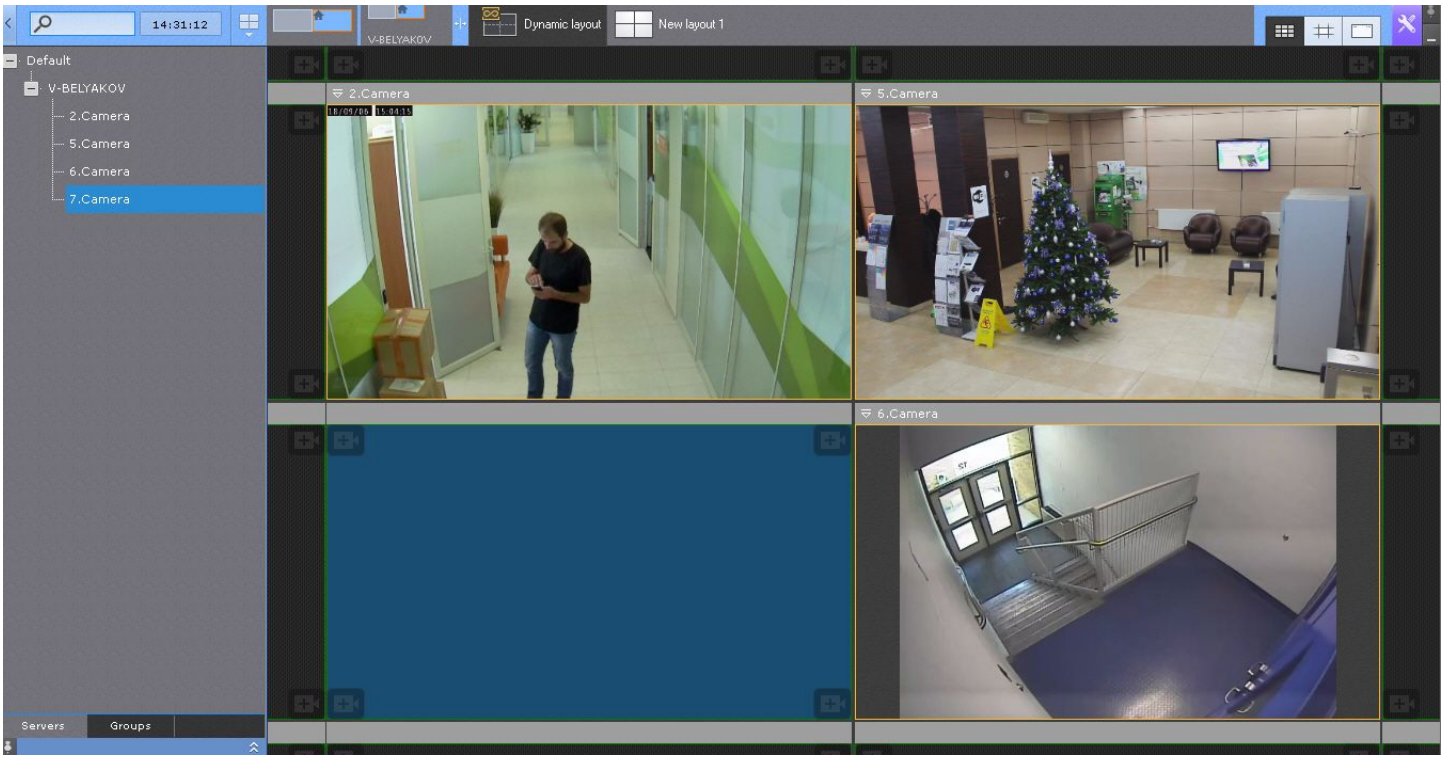
Selected Cameras layout

All selected cameras are displayed on this layout.

Dynamic Layout

By default, Dynamic Layout is empty. You can add cameras from the object panel (see Objects Panel) one by one or several at once (a group, all video cameras of the Server or Axxon Domains).

To do this, select the target unit on the object panel and drag&drop it to the layout. During camera drag&drop, the layout shows the grid. The empty cell with the cursor in it, is highlighted when you drag the camera.



If you switch from Dynamic Layout to any other, all cameras remain in the current mode. Those in the Archive mode, will keep it when you return to Dynamic Layout. The pointer position on Timeline remains intact either.

All changes to Dynamic Layout are preserved until you exit the Client. After you launch the Client, the Dynamic Layout is always empty.

However, you can back up your Dynamic Layout at any given time (see Layout copying).

8.5 Monitor Management

8.5.1 Managing monitors on a local Client

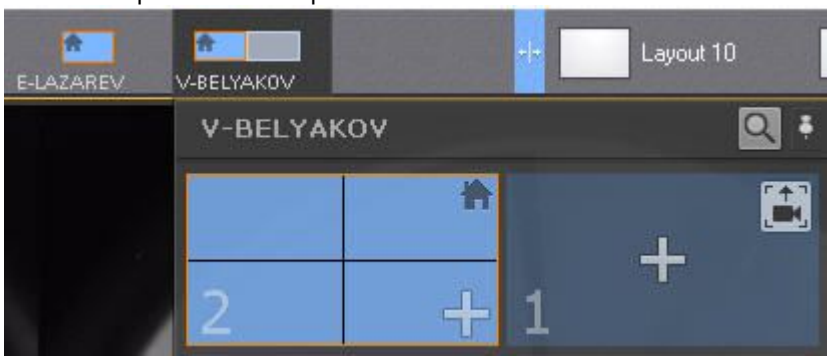
You can display layout on any hardware monitor of a Client. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Click anywhere on the local Client's monitor layout diagram (see the Monitor Panel section).

   Note.

   Client monitor management falls under user rights (see the Creating and configuring roles section).

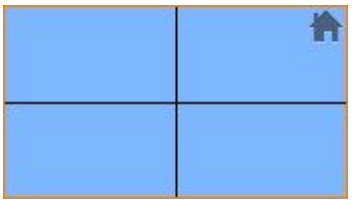
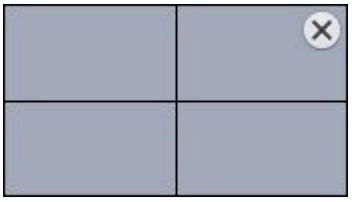
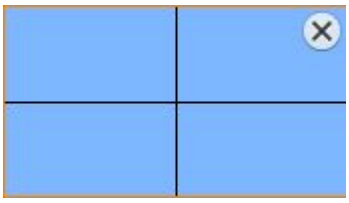
   Monitors' expanded views open.



Note

Each monitor has its unique ID number. To display the ID number of a monitor, click .

The thumbnails may appear differently, depending on the status of the monitors in Axxon Next.

Thumbnail	Monitor status
	Active main monitor
	Inactive main monitor
	Unassigned additional monitor
	Inactive additional monitor (video wall)
	Active additional monitor (video wall)

Note.

The image of the monitors shows the currently open layout.

2. To display the layout on the monitor, you have to:
   a. Click the **+** button on the non-distributed additional video monitor's thumbnail. The additional monitor becomes active, and the layout of the main monitor is duplicated to it.
   b. Set up a layout on an additional monitor (see the Configuring layouts section). You can configure the layout of the additional monitor through the main monitor (the additional monitor must be active). Changes affect only the additional monitor; the layout of the main monitor is not changed.
   c. Click the main monitor's thumbnail. The additional monitor becomes inactive, and the original layout is displayed on the main monitor. If the additional monitor becomes inactive, editing of the layout does not affect it.

3. To display a currently selected camera on the main monitor, do the following:
    a. Click the button on the non-distributed additional video monitor.
    b. Selecting a camera on the primary monitor makes its video feed visible on the additional monitor.

The additional monitors are now configured.

To edit a layout on an additional monitor, do the following:

1. Activate the additional monitor (by clicking its thumbnail).
2. Edit the layout.
3. Make the additional monitor inactive.

You can change the set of cameras to be displayed on the main or additional monitor using the Objects Panel; these changes are not saved, and the initial layout is restored after rebooting the Client. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Open and lock the Monitor panel (see Monitor Panel).
2. Open the Objects Panel (see Objects Panel).
3. Using the Ctrl or Shift keys, select one or several cameras on the panel.
4. Left-click on any selected camera.
5. Drag the camera icon onto a desired cell on the main or additional monitor's layout diagram.
6. Release the mouse button

> **Note**
>
> The result of the object search is displayed on both the main and additional monitors.

Another way to move a video camera to the required cell on the layout diagram of the main or additional monitor, or between them is to grab the camera's icon on the interactive map (see Working with the Interactive Map) or on the object tree.

You can also move a group of cameras, all cameras from a Server or an Axxon Domain.

You can close main and additional monitor views separately. To close an additional monitor in *Axxon Next*, click the button on its thumbnail.

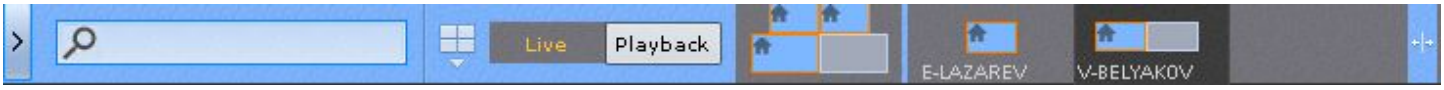
8.5.2 Managing monitors on remote Clients within the Axxon domain

Having appropriate user rights, you can remotely manage monitors on remote Clients connected to a Server within the Axxon domain (see the Creating and configuring roles section).

The following actions are possible:

1. Add a layout to an additional monitor of a remote Client.
2. Select another layout or a camera on the additional monitor.
3. Edit a layout on the main or additional monitor.
4. Shut down the additional monitor.

To display a layout on the additional monitor of a remote Client, click anywhere on the required Client's monitor layout diagram, and select a non-distributed video monitor (see Monitor Panel).



> **Note**
>
> You can add a layout to the additional monitor of a remote Client the same way as you do it for a local Client (see Managing monitors on a local Client).

To select another layout on a remote Client's monitor, do the following:

1. Select the desired layout on the local Client (see Selection and Slideshow of Layouts).
2. Click anywhere on the remote Client's monitor layout diagram, and then on the required monitor's view.

The selected layout will be displayed on a selected monitor of the remote Client.

If a single camera is displayed on the remote Client's additional monitor, you can switch to another camera by selecting it through the local Client.

To edit the remote Client's main or additional monitor layout, do the following:

1. Select (see The Layouts panel) or configure (see Creating and deleting layouts) the desired layout on the local Client.
2. Click anywhere on the remote Client's monitor layout diagram.
3. Click the on the main or secondary monitor layout diagram.

The remote Client's layout is saved, and will be available after rebooting the Client.

You can change the set of cameras to be displayed on the main or additional monitor using the Objects Panel; these changes are not saved, and the initial layout is restored after rebooting the Client. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Open and lock the Monitor panel (see Monitor Panel).
2. Open the Objects Panel (see Objects Panel).
3. Using the Ctrl or Shift keys, select one or several cameras on the panel.
4. Left-click on any selected camera.
5. Drag the camera icon onto a desired cell on the main or additional monitor's layout diagram.
6. Release the mouse button.

Another way to put a camera into a desired cell on the main or secondary monitor layout diagram is to capture the camera's icon on the interactive Map (see Working with the Interactive Map).

You can also move a group of cameras, all cameras from a Server or an Axxon Domain.

To close an additional monitor on a remote Client, click the button on the monitor's thumbnail.

8.6 Audio Monitoring

8.6.1 General Information

Audio monitoring of a situation is carried out using the microphones that correspond to a video camera surveying the situation.

In different viewing tile modes, different audio monitoring functions are accessible:

1. Live playback mode – listening to sound from a microphone in real time; playing back sound from Client microphone on camera speakers.
2. Archive mode, Alarm Management mode, Archive Search mode– playback of sound recorded from a microphone.

> **Note**
>
> In Archive mode and Archive Search mode, an audio recording can be played back only from the microphone corresponding to the currently selected video camera, and only in forward playback mode at a speed of 1x.

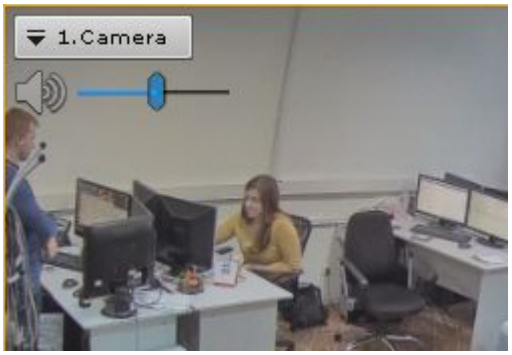
8.6.2 Listening on the Client to sound from a camera microphone

> **Attention!**
>
> The **Microphone** object must be enabled (see the section titled The Microphone Object).

To listen on the Client to sound from the microphone of a camera, left-click to activate the speaker icon in the viewing tile.

> **Note**
>
> Audio from only one camera can be played back at a time

The speaker icon now becomes active and a volume slider appears.



Volume is controlled using the volume adjuster.

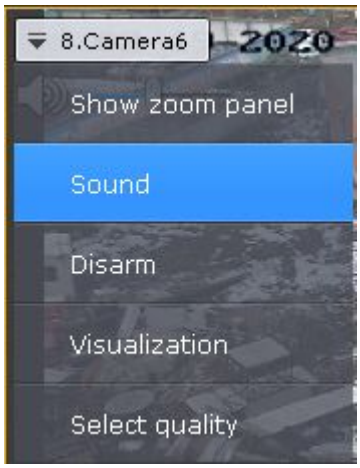
The far left position of the adjuster represents the minimum volume, and the far right position represents the maximum volume.

> **Note**
>
> The *Axxon Next* VMS has an embedded sound booster.

To turn off audio playback, click the speaker icon again.

If a camera has several microphones connected, use the following procedure to select the audio source:

1. Open the camera's context menu.
2. Select **Sound**.



3. Select the microphone you need.

> **Note**
>
> The currently selected microphone is marked as **On**. If you select a **8.0** microphone, the **3,1.0** microphone is set to off, and **8.0** microphone to on.

> **Note**
>
> If a currently specified loudspeaker goes offline, the system automatically switches to another available one.
> After the first loudspeaker goes back online, no automatic switching will occur.
> To automatically activate the first loudspeaker in such a case, you have to create a NGP_PORTSOUND_HOSTAPI system variable and set it to DS (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable).

8.6.3 Playing back sound from Client microphone on camera speakers

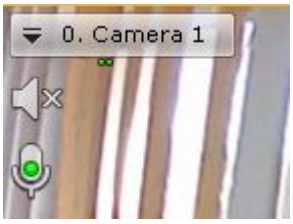
> Audio transmission from the Client's microphone behind NAT to the Server's or camera's loudspeaker

Sound from the Client microphone can be broadcast both on a single camera and on all cameras in a layout.

> **Attention!**
>
> To use this option:
> 1. Configuration of audio on the Client is now completed (see Configuring audio on the Client).
> 2. **Speaker** objects are activated for the corresponding cameras (see The Speaker Object).

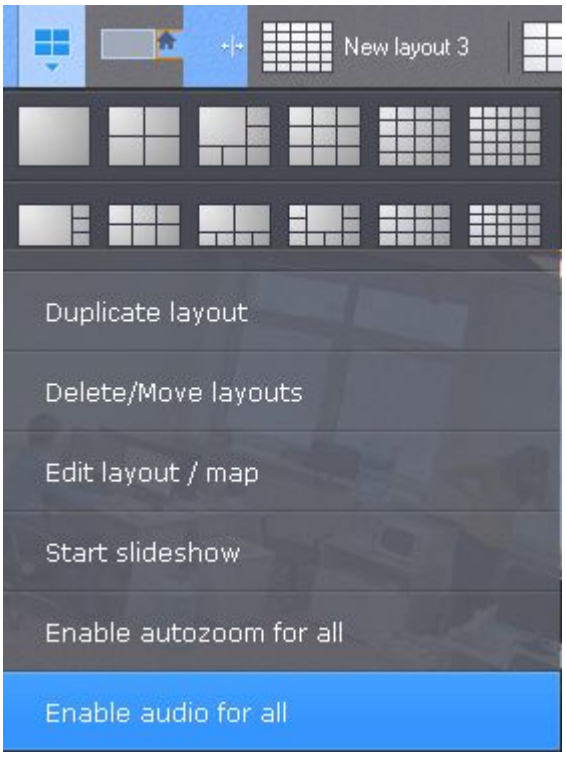
To broadcast sound on the speaker of a single camera, left-click the microphone icon in the viewing tile.

The microphone icon now becomes active.



To turn off broadcasting of sound on a camera speaker, click the microphone icon again.

To broadcast sound on speakers on all cameras in a layout, in the context menu of the layouts ribbon, select **Enable audio for all**.



The microphone icon is then activated for all cameras that have an activated **Speaker** object.

To turn off sound broadcasting on all cameras, select **Disable audio for all**.

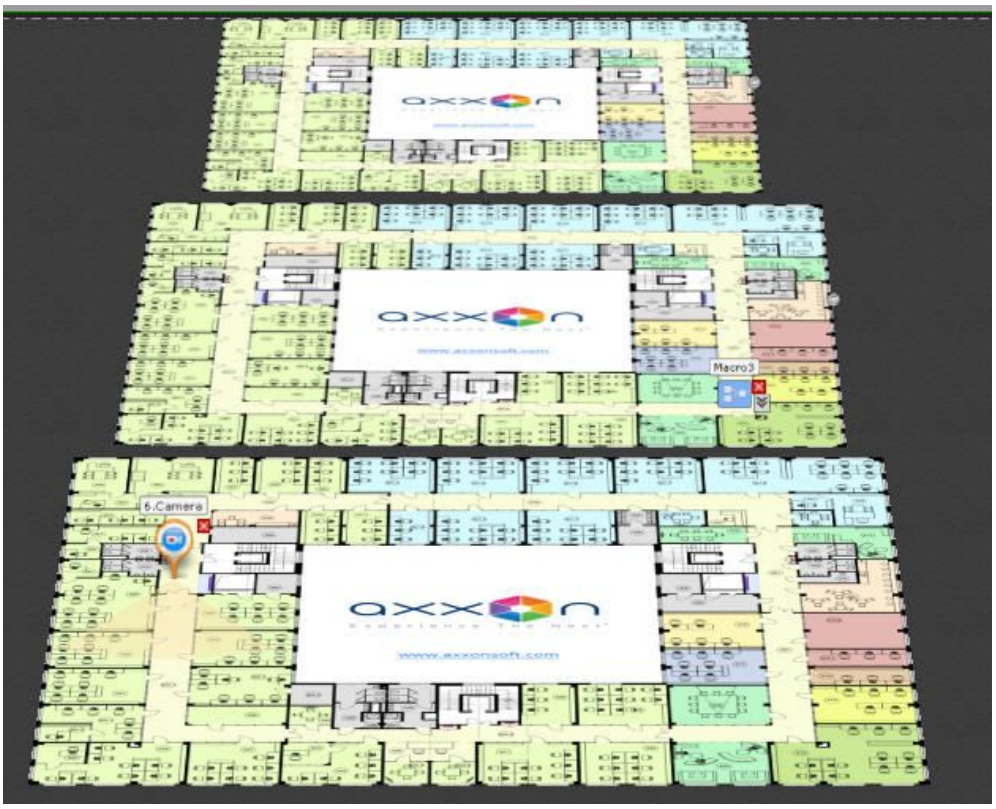
8.7 Working with the Interactive Map

You can use the interactive map in three modes:

1. 3D mode, in which both the map and layout are available
2. 2D mode, in which only the map is available
3. Immersion mode, in which video is overlaid on the map

The map can contain icons for cameras, inputs, outputs, and counters. The area in which live video is displayed and field of view are indicated for each camera.

A map can be either a single layer or have several floors within one map:



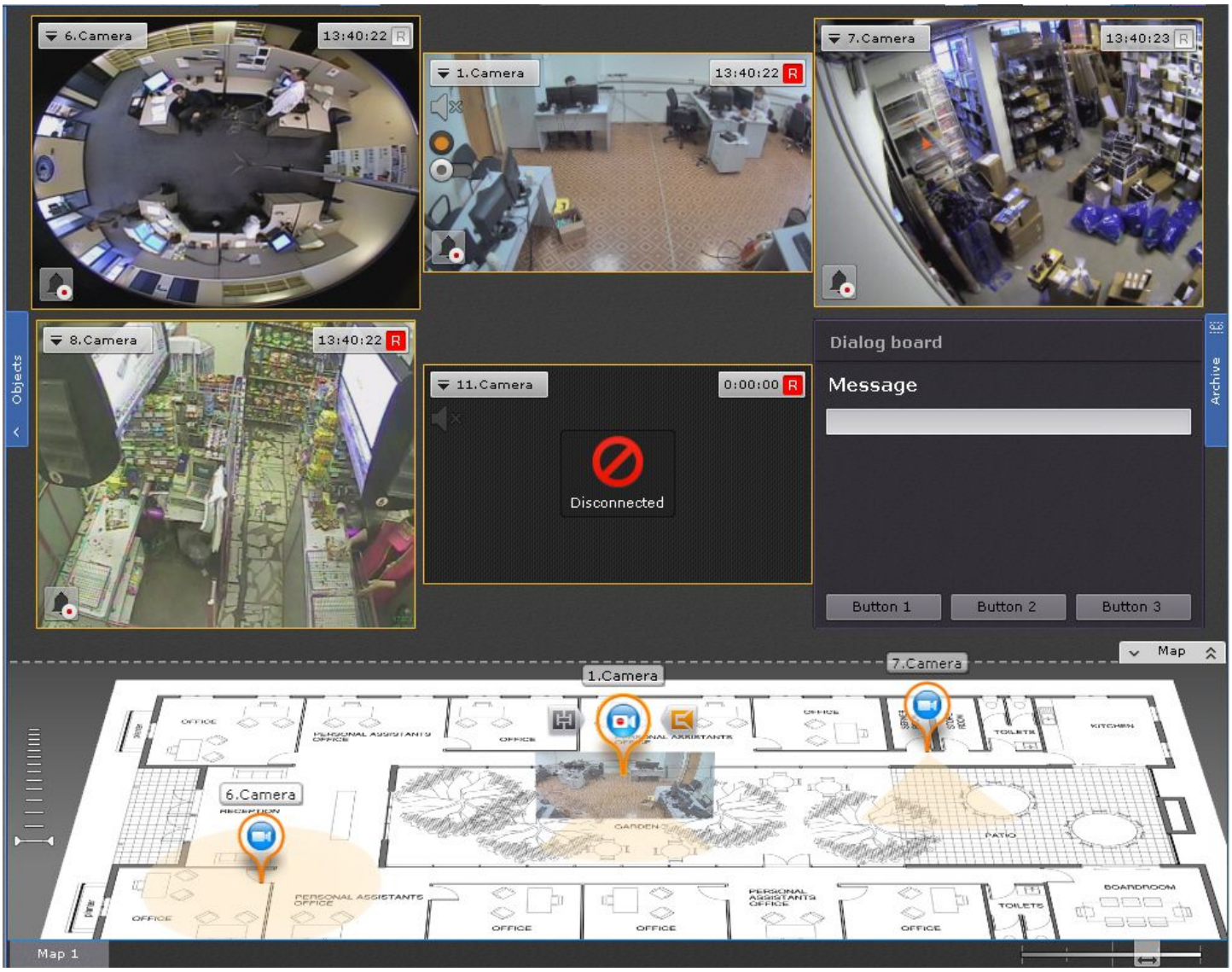
8.7.1 Opening and closing the map

You can switch to Map View from all modes of operation except for Archive Search.

To go Map View, click the **Map** button in the bottom right corner

.

The Map will open in a 3 D view while the current layout contracts to fit the screen area over the map.



To switch to 2D map view and close the layout, click the button to the left of the **Map** button.

If you expand a tile to full screen, the map auto-hides (see Scaling the Viewing Tile).

> **Note**
>
> When you minimize the tile, the map appears again.

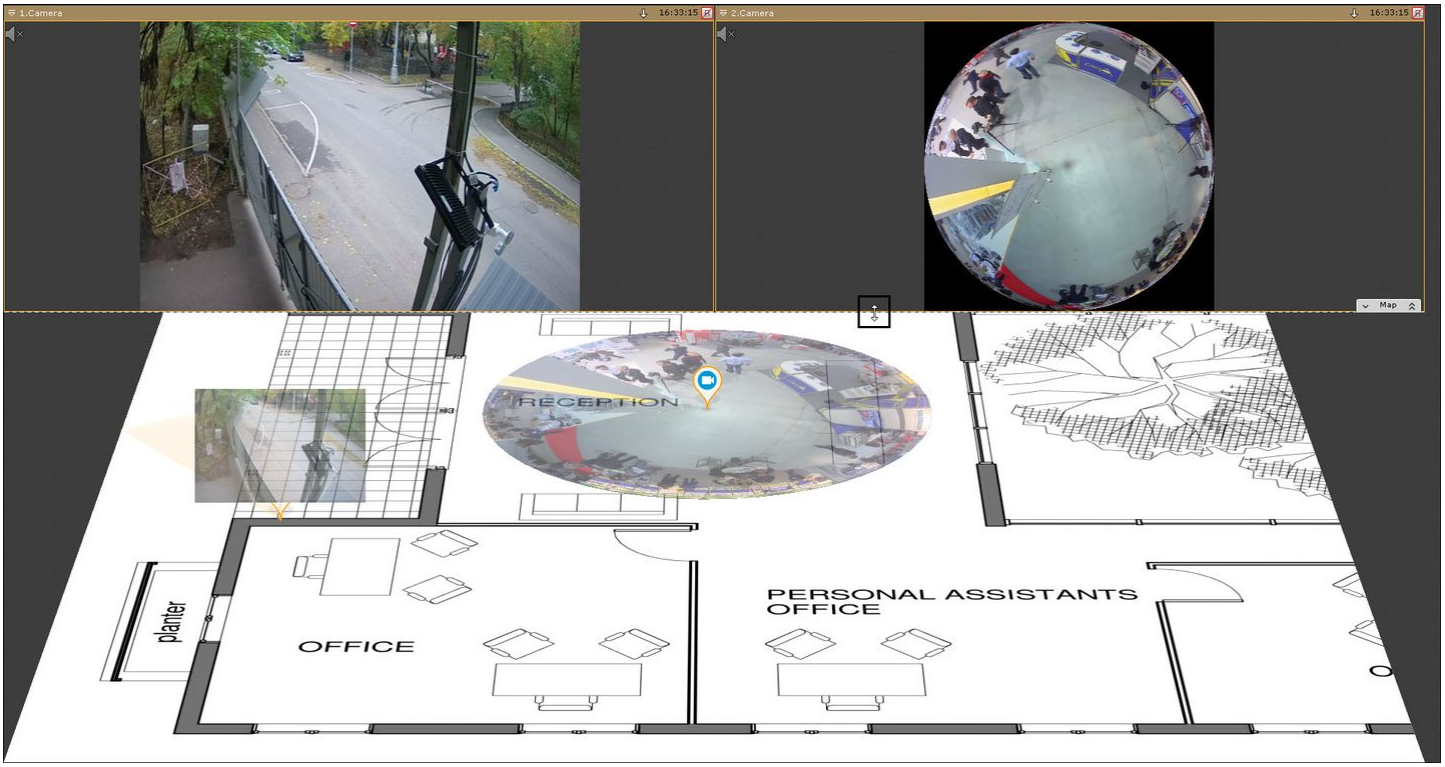
8.7.2 Geo map search

Using the OpenStreetMap web service, you can search for sites or streets within a pre-defined city/town (see Setting keywords for geo map search, refer to the provider's website for details).

To do so, enter the street name in the corresponding field, and press **Enter**.

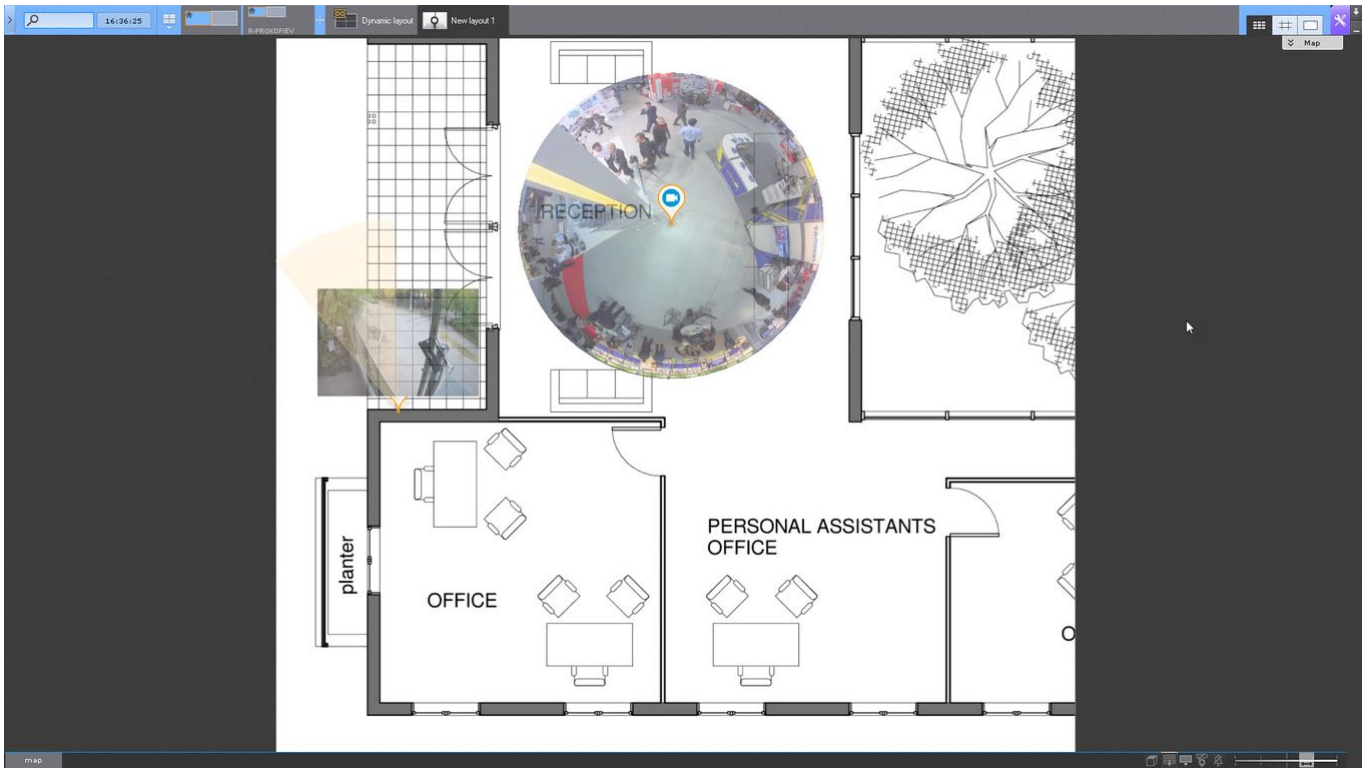
8.7.3 Changing the map tilt

You can change the tilt of the map by adjusting the border between the map and the layout areas.



There are two ways to switch to 2D map view:

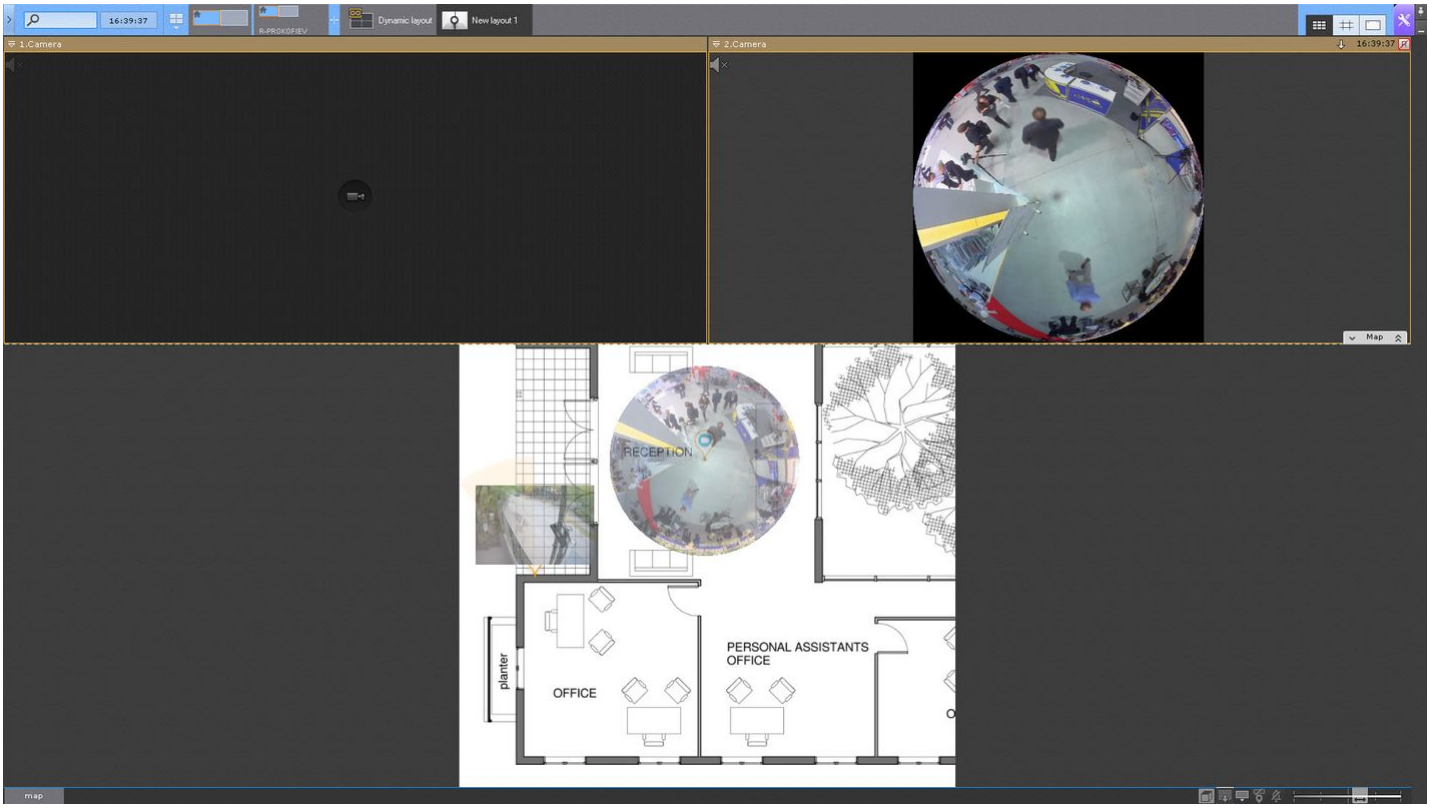
1. Click the button to the right of the **Map** button. In this case the layout will close, and the map will be displayed in full screen.



To return to 3D map view, click the **Map** button. To hide the map, click the button.

2. Click the button on the control bar in the bottom right corner of the screen. In this case the layout will not close, and the map will be displayed in the same place.

> **Note**
>
> If the map is hidden, the control bar in the bottom right corner of the screen will not be available.



To return to 3D map view, click the same button, which will look like this .

8.7.4 Scaling and focusing of map

Map scale and focus can be changed both manually and automatically.

> **Note**
>
> The map is automatically resized and refocused if this function is activated in the settings (see Configuring map autozoom).

Automatic adjustment of map scale and focus occurs when a video camera alarm occurs, if no video camera icon is selected on the map.

In this case, the map is scaled and refocused to center the icon for the alarm camera on the map.

If alarms occur for several video cameras simultaneously, the map scale and position are adjusted to show all icons for the relevant video cameras.

After a video camera alarm ends and there are no alarms for other video cameras, the map scale and position return to their initial status.

Automatic scaling and focusing of the map stops during the following actions:

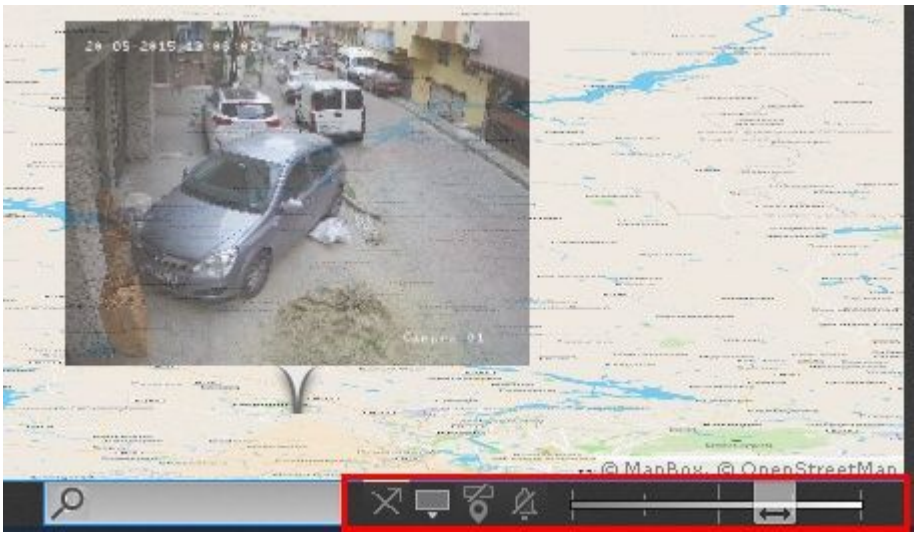
When the user clicks to select the icon of a video camera on the map or viewing tile

To manually adjust the map scale, use the mouse scroll wheel (the cursor must be above the map) or use the map scale slider.

After increasing the scale, you can refocus the map with the mouse (by clicking and holding the left mouse button) in the direction of your choice.

8.7.5 Customizing an Interactive Map

You can change some of the map settings in Live Video. Use the controls in the bottom right corner of the screen.



You can adjust transparency of video display in the Map View using a dedicated slider in the bottom right corner.

The leftmost position corresponds to no video, the rightmost makes the video opaque.

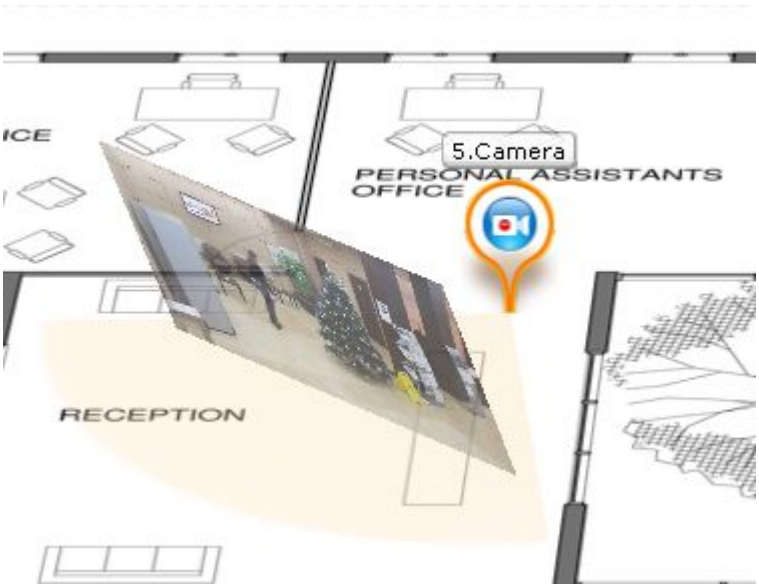
Use the / button to toggle the display of devices' names and their IDs.

To enable/disable camera icon fluttering on alarm, use the / button.

To change the action when you click on the video camera icon on the map, use (takes you to the layout with the camera) / (switches to immersion mode (see Immersive mode)).

To change map view, use the button (3D view) / (flat view).

Video in 3D view:



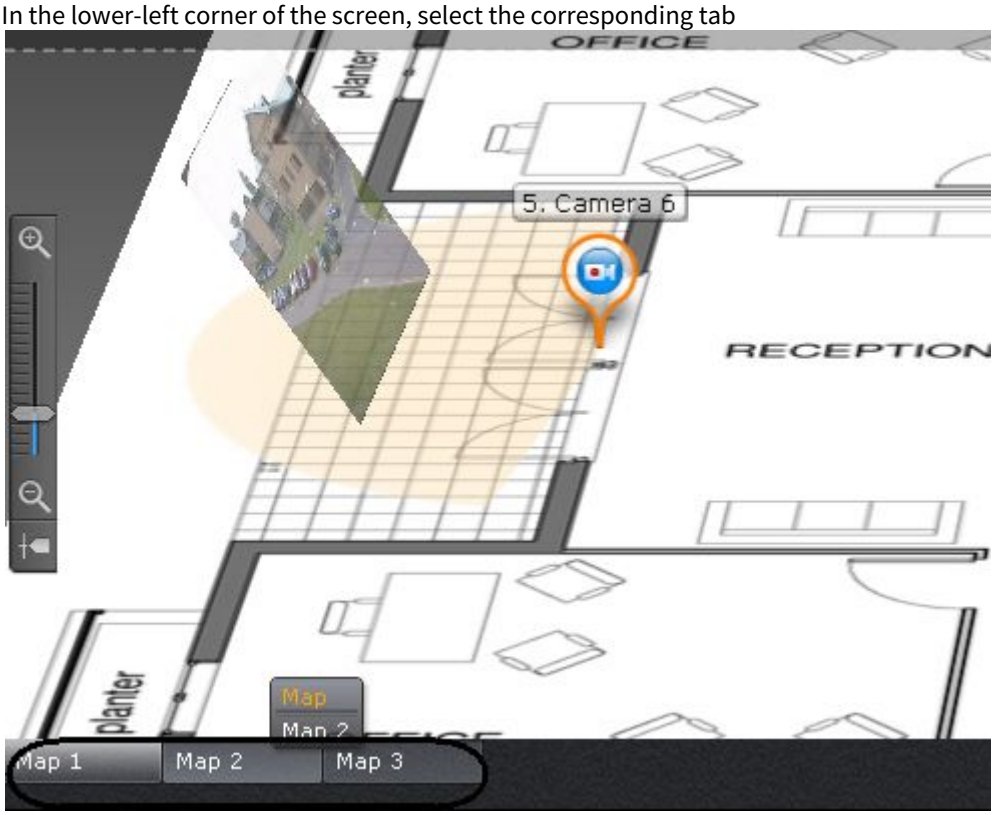
Video in flat view:

8.7.6 Switching between maps

In any mode, you can switch between the maps that have been created in the system.

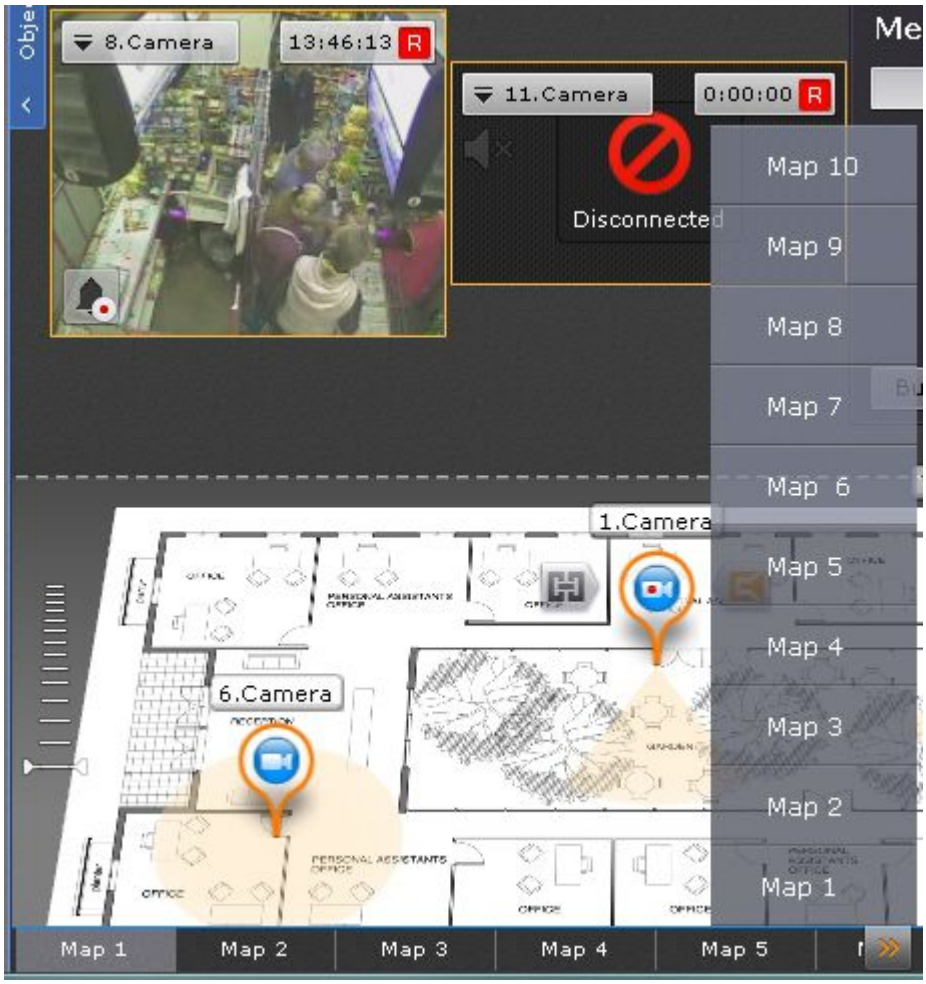
You can switch between maps in two ways:

1. In the lower-left corner of the screen, select the corresponding tab



Note

If many maps have been created, some tabs may not fit on the screen. If this happens, click the button. In the drop-down menu that opens, select a map.



2. By left-clicking a map icon for switching, if it has been created (see Adding switches to another map).
   The icon header shows the name of the destination map.

8.7.7 Immersive mode

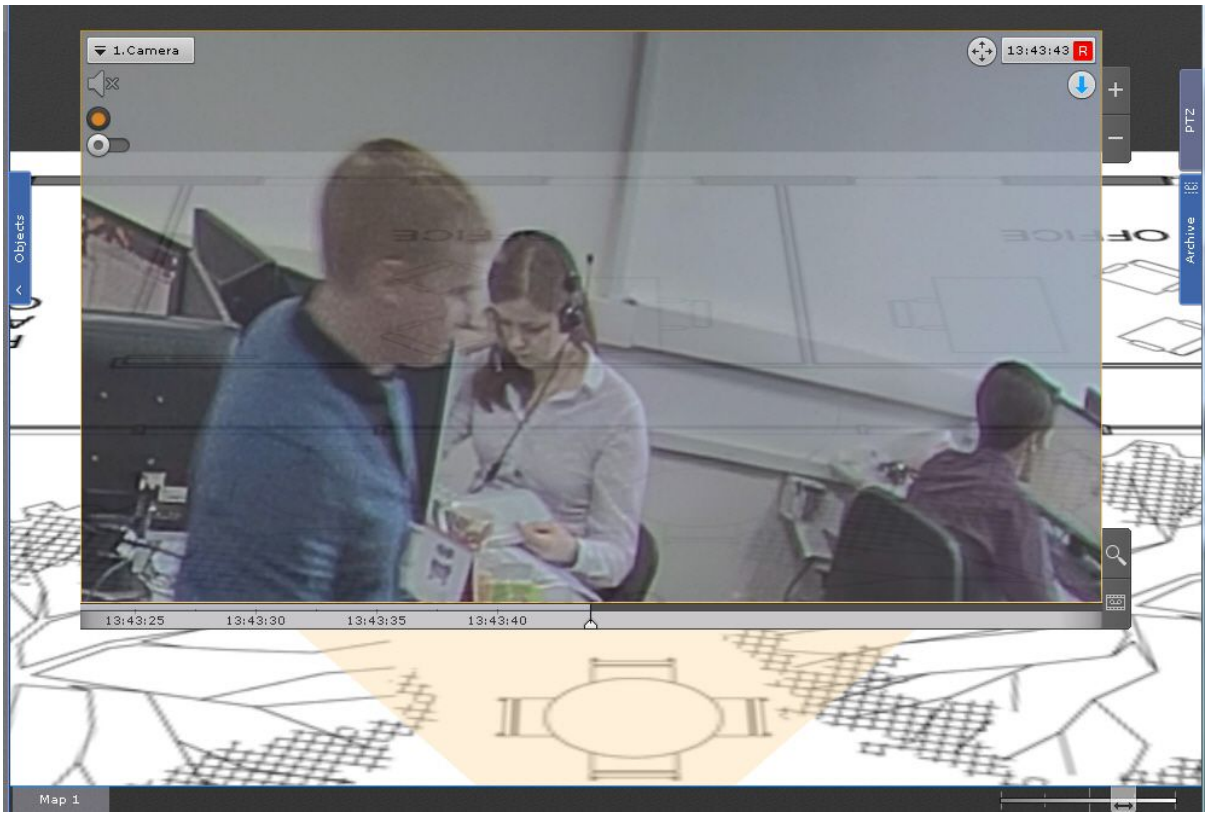
In immersion mode, video from a selected camera is overlaid on the map display.

If links have been created between video and the map (see Configuring cameras in immersion mode), an angle will be chosen so that objects in the video match the objects as depicted on the map.

If links have not been created, the map is shown so that the video is located in the field of view specified for the camera on the map. The field of view is oriented upwards.

To switch to immersion mode, click the button on the left border of the viewing tile or, on the map, left-click a video icon, field of view, or video display area.

> **Note**
>
> The second method is possible if the button is not pressed (see Customizing an Interactive Map).



In immersive mode you can view video from only one video camera at a time.

To select another video camera, do one of the following:

1. Click the video camera icon or its field of view on the map, if possible.
2. Exit immersive mode and select the necessary video camera on the map.

To exit immersive mode, do one of the following:

1. Click the button.
2. Minimize the viewing tile by clicking the button.
3. Click a part of the map that does not contain the camera field of view.

> **Note**
>
> Actions 2 and 3 do not apply if a fisheye camera is in immersive mode (see Fisheye cameras in immersive mode).

8.7.8 Controlling devices from the map

Using the context menu of icons on the map, you can control outputs and logical objects (counters, macros), as well as control video cameras and configure their interface.

Commands for controlling and configuring video camera interface are given in the table below.

Command (context menu item)	Condition	Result after the command is performed
Arm	The camera is disarmed	Icon status:

Private Arm (see Arming and Disarming a Video Camera)	The camera is disarmed	Icon status:
Disarm	The camera is armed	Icon status:
Show video	Video image is not displayed	Video image display:
Hide video	Video image is displayed	Video image is not displayed
Show layout	Additional conditions are not required	The selected camera is displayed on the temporary layout. To display multiple selected cameras on the temporary layout, see Selecting Cameras for a Temporary Layout
Copy	Additional conditions are not required	If you right- or left-click on any cell of the layout, then the video from the copied video camera will be displayed in this cell. The copied camera will be displayed on the layout until you switch to another layout or restart the client

Commands for controlling outputs are given in the table below.

Command (context menu item)	**Condition**	**Icon status after the command is performed**
Turns the output on	Output in normal status	
Disable output	Output is activated	

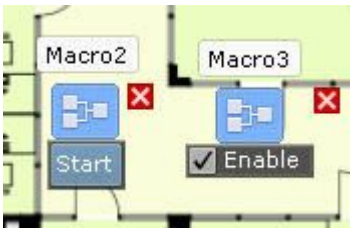
Note

You cannot switch the status of the Output from the map if there are macros with the corresponding action running in the system (see Switch output).

Commands for controlling macros are listed in the table below.

Command (context menu item)	**Condition**	**Command description**
Start	Event-driven macro	Running the macro
Enable	Disabled cyclic macro	Enabling the macro
Disable	Enabled cyclic macro	Disabling the macro

On top of that, you can manage macros with the **Start** button and the **Enable** check box.



Commands for controlling counters are listed in the table below.

Command (context menu item)	Condition	Command description
Stop	The counter is running	Stopping the counter. If the counter is on pause, its value does not change
Start	The counter is stopped	Starting the counter. If the counter is running, its value changes as specified
Clear	Any state	Resets the counter value to 0

8.7.9 Displaying device status

The icons on the map indicate the current status of the corresponding devices.

The table below possible status states of the video camera icon are described in the following list.

Map icon	Camera status
	Camera disarmed, no archive recording
	Camera disarmed, archive recording active
	Camera armed, no archive recording
	Camera armed, archive recording active
	Camera alarm, archive recording active

	Camera connection lost

The table below possible status states of the Output icon are described in the following list.

Map icon	Output status
	Output is activated
	Output in normal status

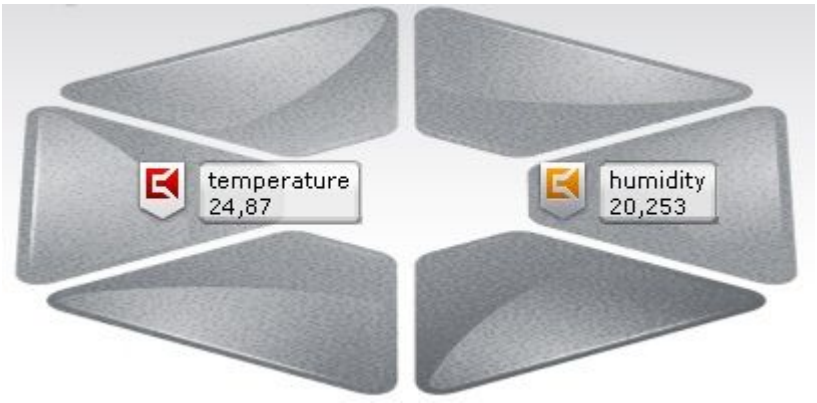
Note

When a macro changes the Output status, the Output icon on the map does not change.

The table below possible status states of the Input icon are described in the following list.

Map icon	Input status
	Video camera is armed, Input is in normal status
	Video camera is armed, Input is in alarm status
	Video camera is disarmed, Input is in normal status
	Video camera is disarmed, Input is in alarm status

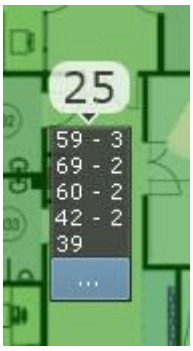
Inputs (sensors) connected to Tibbo boards also show temperature/humidity values on the map.



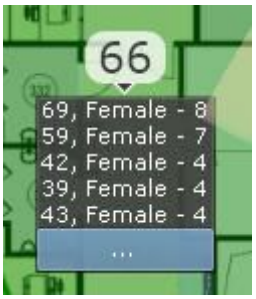
8.7.10 Displaying the counters

Counters on the map show the results of counting some values using events (see Adding counters, Creating and configuring counters):

If grouping by events is configured for the counter, then in addition to the total number of events, the results of counting by groups will be displayed. In this case, the names of the groups correspond to the specified properties of the grouping. In the example below, the **Age** property is set:



If multiple properties are specified for a grouping, then the groups that combine these properties will be displayed. In the example below, the **Gender** and **Age** properties are set:



In the example above, **69** in the first line is the age, **Female** is the gender, and **8** is the number of women at the age of 69. The same goes for the rest of the lines.

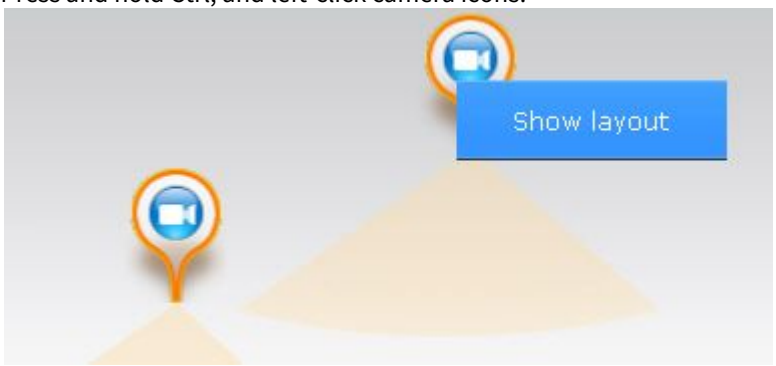
To view all lines, click the button.

8.7.11 Selecting Cameras for a Temporary Layout

You can use the Map to select cameras for viewing their video feeds on a temporary layout.

Do the following:

1. Press and hold Ctrl, and left-click camera icons.



2. Click the **Show Layout** button.

The selected cameras' views appear on the temporary layout which is not preserved after you switch to any other layout.

8.8 Exporting Frames and Video Recordings

Users with the corresponding rights can export snapshots and video. if a Client is connected to multiple Axxon-domains, export of snapshots and video is available only for cameras on the Axxon-domains on which the user has the corresponding rights.

Still frames can be exported to JPG and PDF, videos can be exported to AVI, MP4, MKV and EXE formats.

Exported videos will contain synchro audio.

The name of the exported file contains the following information: name of camera, export date, and export duration.

> **Note.**
>
> The date and time of the event in the file name are given based on the Windows locale settings.

> **Note.**
>
> The file name can be up to 70 characters long.

When exporting a snapshot to PDF, you can also print the document immediately.

A digital watermark is added to exported snapshots and video. Watermark authentication is available in the corresponding bundled utility (see the Digital Signature Verification Utility section).

> **Note**
>
> Exported videos and snapchots are digitally signed with the SHA-256 algorithm.

Titles containing a date and time stamp will be superimposed on exported video.

> **Note.**
>
> Captions are stored in a separate video track and, if necessary, are disabled in the player through software.

8.8.1 Frame export

You can export snapshots at any time when working with a camera in Axxon Next.

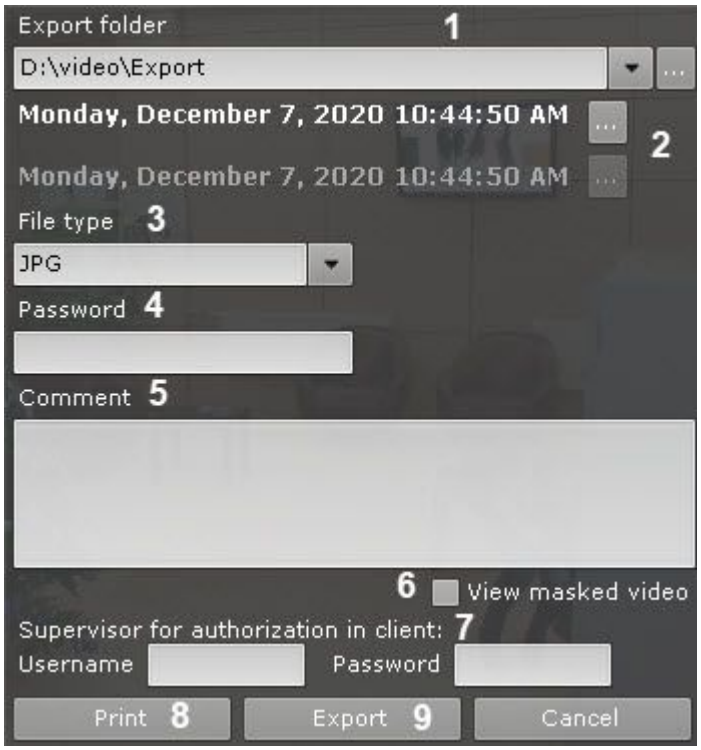
To export a snapshot:

1. If exporting from archive mode or archive analysis mode, specify an export area and mask if necessary (see the Configuring export area and masks section).
2. In the viewing tile, in the upper-right corner, click the button.

   > **Attention!**
   >
   > To instantly export a frame with standard settings, right-click the button.

3. Specify the folder to which you want to export the snapshot (**1**).

   > **Note.**
   >
   > By default, snapshots are exported to the folder specified in the export settings (see the Configuring export section).
   > If you change this folder, the new path to exported files will be kept in memory until the Client restarts.



4. Select the date and time for a snapshot (**2**). The default setting is the frame currently displayed in the viewing tile. If you are watching recorded video, then the snapshot with the frame displayed at the time when you hit the button

> **Note.**
>
> If you are watching live video, then the snapshot with the frame displayed at the time when you hit the button. Date and time fields are not displayed.

5. Select the snapshot format: PDF or JPG (**3**).
6. If you want to export a snapshot to an encrypted zip archive, set a password (**4**).

> **Attention!**
>
> This setting may be overridden by the user role settings (see Creating and configuring roles).

7. If exporting a snapshot to PDF format, you can add comments (**5**).
8. To export unmasked frames from the Video Footage, the user must have appropriate access rights. To perform such an export, check the **View Masked Video** box (**6**).
9. Enter the credentials of the supervisor who confirms the launch of export (**7**).

> **Note**
>
> The supervisor enters their password only if it is required by user rights settings. If no export confirmation is required, these fields will not be displayed.

10. If exporting to PDF, you can immediately send the file to print (**8**). In this case, the snapshot is not saved to disk.
11. To export the snapshot, click the corresponding button (**9**).

Export begins. Progress is shown in the export panel (see the Viewing export progress section).

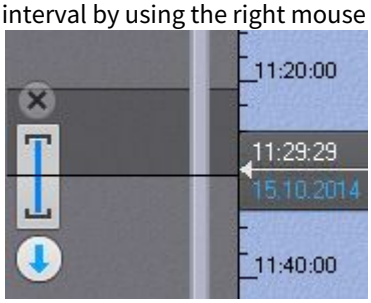
Export of the frame is now complete. The frame exported to JPG will also be placed on the Clipboard.

8.8.2 Exporting Video Recordings

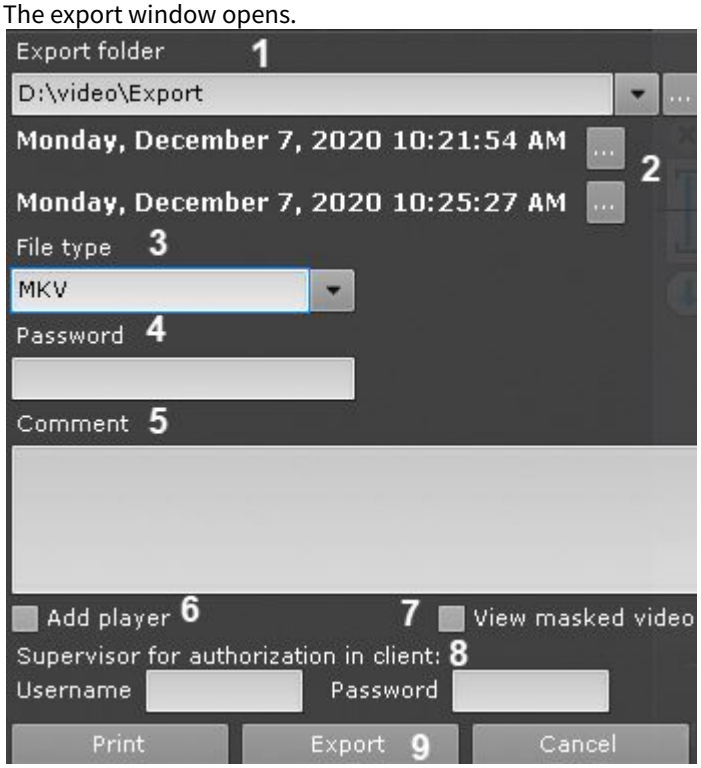
8.8.2.1 Standard video export

Standard export of video takes place as follows:

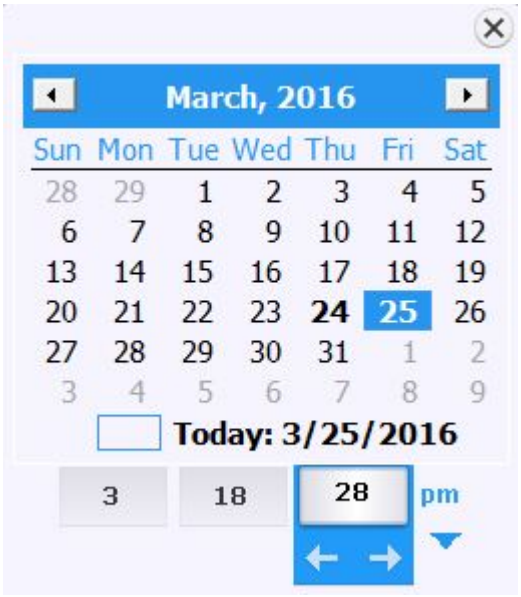
1. An export range (timeframe) is set.
   Set the export interval on the primary or secondary timeline. You can do it later by entering the date and time (see item 3c below):
   a. on the main timeline, move the bar to the beginning of the range that you want to export. Click the button. Move the bar to the end of the range that you want to export. Click the button. You can also select the export interval by using the right mouse button. To clear the interval, click the button;



   b. you can specify the range on the additional navigation panel in the same way, by clicking the buttons. You cannot use the mouse to set the export range on the additional navigation panel.
2. Setting export area and masks (see the Configuring export area and masks).
3. Setting an export format, specifying where to save exported files, and adding comments.
   a. On the timeline or in a viewing tile, click the button.
   The export window opens.



   b. If necessary, change the export path (**1**). By default, the file is exported to the folder specified in the settings (see the Configuring export section). If you change this folder, the new path to exported files will be kept in memory until the Client restarts.
   c. You can set the start and end time of the exported episode in the calendar (**2**).



d. If necessary, specify a different file format for exporting the video (**3**). Videos can be exported into the following 4 formats: MP4, MKV, EXE and AVI.

> **Note.**
>
> Video is exported in MKV format without recompression.
> Video is exported in AVI format with recompression in the selected codec (see point 4). Export to AVI files may take longer time because of recompression.
> In addition, AVI export increases CPU load, especially when you export several files at once (see Simultaneous export of video from multiple cameras, Exporting all event videos).
> When video is exported in EXE format, a self-contained executable file is generated, containing video, playback tools, and necessary codecs.
> When exporting to EXE format, please note that Windows does not allow launching executable files of more than 4 Gb.

e. If you want to export to an encrypted zip archive, set a password (**4**). If you are exporting an .exe file, you will need to enter a password when you open the file.

> **Attention!**
>
> This setting may be overridden by the user role settings (see Creating and configuring roles).

f. If necessary, add comments for the export. The comments will be shown as captions when the exported video is played (**5**).
g. If you export a video to MKV or AVI format, and you need to copy the Axxon Player utility (see The Axxon Player User Guide) to the same folder, check the corresponding box (**6**).
h. To export unmasked videos from the Video Footage, the user must have appropriate access rights. To perform such an export, check the **View Masked Video** box (**7**).
i. Enter the credentials of the supervisor who confirms the launch of export (**8**).

> **Note**
>
> The supervisor enters their password only if it is required by user rights settings. If no export confirmation is required, these fields will not be displayed.

j. Click the **Export** button (**9**).

The export process begins. Progress is shown on the export panel (see the Viewing export progress section).

> **Note.**

You can stop export at any time by clicking the **Stop** button.

Note.

The duration of the exported file can be longer than the specified one, because the keyframe is not always at the beginning of the export interval.

8.8.2.2 Instant video export

You can instantly export video without needing to specify an export range. To do so, click the button in a viewing tile at any time.

Note.

Then specify export settings, as described in the Standard video export section.

If export is performed from Live Video mode, the first frame of the exported video will be the moment when the button was clicked. Export will continue for 10 minutes or until the **Stop** button on the export panel is clicked (see the Viewing export progress section).

If export is performed from archive mode or archive analysis mode, the first frame of the exported video will be the position of the bar on the timeline when the button was clicked. Export will continue for 10 minutes or until the **Stop** button on the export panel is clicked (see the Viewing export progress section).

The length of the exported video clip will depend on the time of export and resources of the Server.

Note.

If export is performed from archive mode or archive analysis mode, you can pre-configure an export area and masks (see the Configuring export area and masks section).

You can instantly export video without needing to specify an export range. To do so, click the button in a viewing tile at any time.

Note.

Then specify export settings, as described in the Standard video export section.

If export is performed from Live Video mode, the first frame of the exported video will be the moment when the button was clicked. Export will continue for 10 minutes or until the **Stop** button on the export panel is clicked (see the Viewing export progress section).

If export is performed from archive mode or archive analysis mode, the first frame of the exported video will be the position of the bar on the timeline when the button was clicked. Export will continue for 10 minutes or until the **Stop** button on the export panel is clicked (see the Viewing export progress section).

The length of the exported video clip will depend on the time of export and resources of the Server.

Note.

If export is performed from archive mode or archive analysis mode, you can pre-configure an export area and masks (see the Configuring export area and masks section).

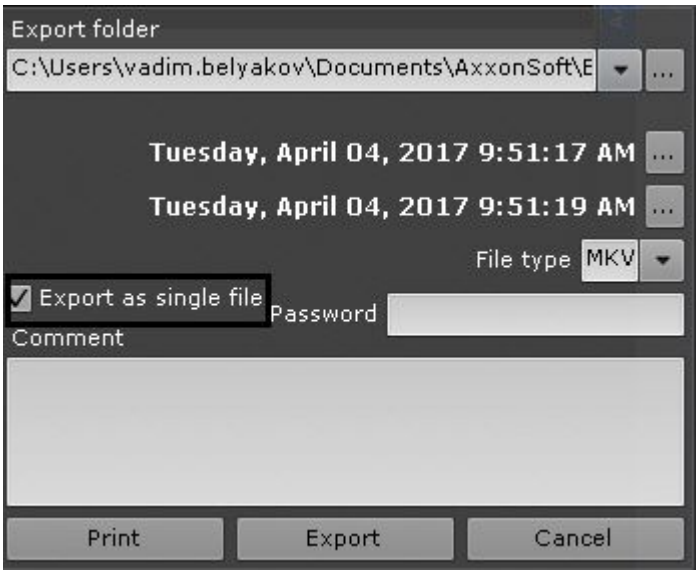
8.8.2.3 Simultaneous export of video from multiple cameras

If multiple cameras in a layout have been switched to archive mode, you can simultaneously export video from all of them.

To do this, select the export interval on the primary timeline or in the calendar and start exporting (see the Standard video export section).

By default, the video is exported to a single file. To export video from different video cameras to separate files, deselect the **Export as single file** check box in the export window.

> **Note.**
>
> When you export to one file, the streams are written in parallel. To view exported video, use a player that allows allows playing multiple instances and different streams in each (for example, VLC).



Video from each camera is exported to a separate file. Comments made during export are added to each exported video.

> **Note.**
>
> For each video you can pre-set an export area and masks (se the Configuring export area and masks section).

8.8.2.4 Exporting all event videos

You can use the Story board (see Story board) for one-click export of an event video from multiple cameras' Video Footage.

To do so, follow the steps below:

1. Click on the thumbnail of interest.
2. Set a time interval on the timeline for export.
   This will add the thumbnail of the selected video clip to the Story board.

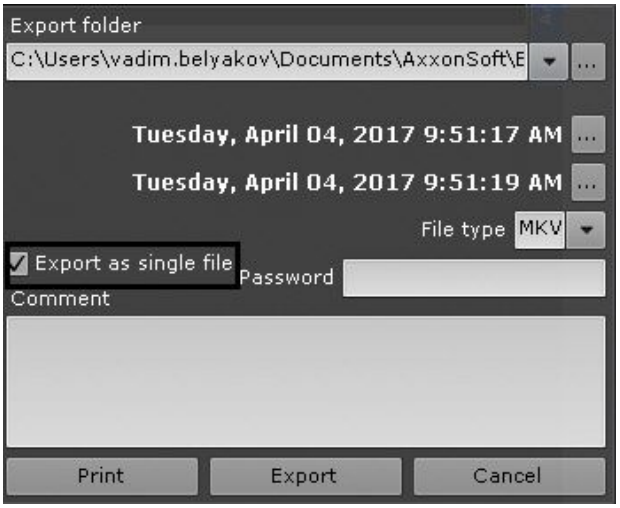
3. Click the **+** button in the middle of the thumbnail. The video clip will be added to the export batch.

> **Note**
>
> To remove it from the batch, click the button.

4. Repeat these steps for all videos of interest.
5. Click the button to export all selected clips.

By default, the video is exported to a single file. To export video from different video cameras to separate files, deselect the **Export as single file** check box in the export window.

> **Note.**
>
> When you export to one file, the streams are written in parallel. To view exported video, use a player that allows allows playing multiple instances and different streams in each (for example, VLC).



This opens the Export window. Follow the same steps as with the standard export procedure (see Standard video export).

> **Note**
>
> We recommend you to export to the EXE format.

8.8.3 Configuring export area and masks

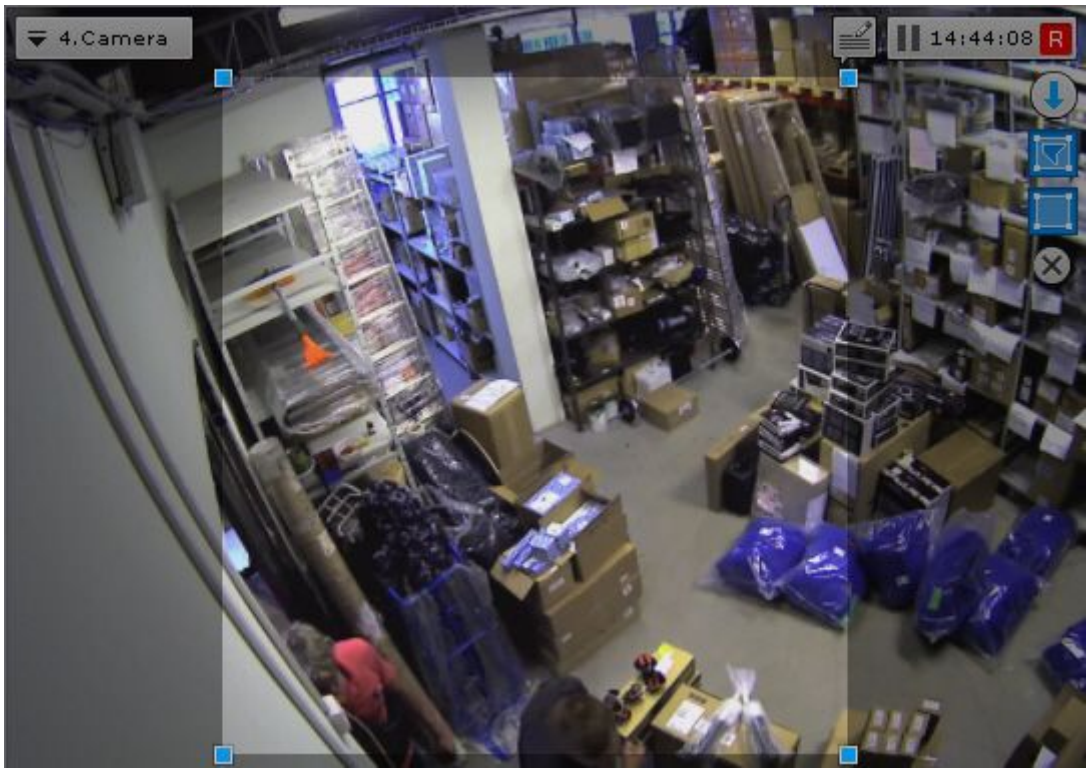
If you are exporting a snapsnot or video from archive mode or archive analysis mode, you can specify an export area and masks.

You can specify an export area and masks at the same time.

By specifying an export area, you export only the portion of the frame that is of interest, while omitting the remainder.

To specify an export area:

1. In a viewing tile, click the button.
   A rectangular area with four corner points is displayed.



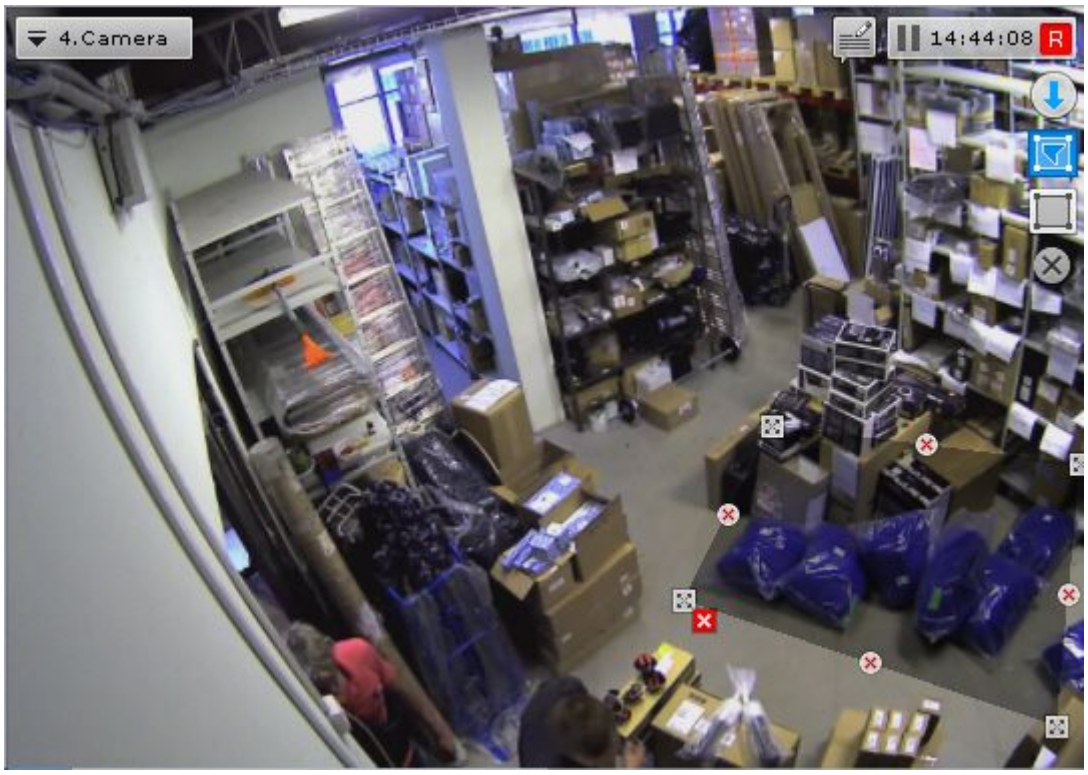
2. Reposition the corner points to specify the area that you want to export. To reposition the corner points, left-click a corner point and drag it.

Configuration of the export area is now complete.

Masking allows you to hide complex or irrelevant areas of the frame so that they do not appear in an exported file. You can set an unlimited number of masks.

To specify a mask:

1. In a viewing tile, click the button.
2. Use the corner points to enclose the area that you want to mask. To add a corner point, left-click the video. You can add an unlimited number of corner points.

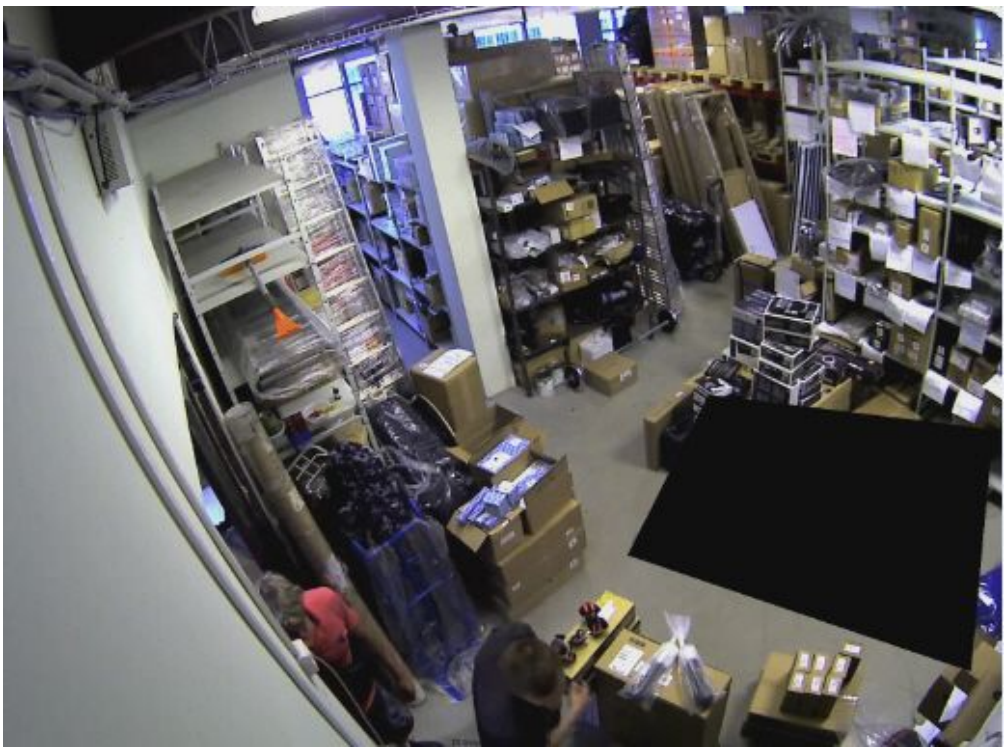


After you add a mask, you can perform the following actions:

- Move corner points (left-click a corner point and drag it).
- Delete corner points (right-click a corner point).
- Delete a mask (click the button).
- Add a new mask.

Mask creation is now complete.

In the exported snapshot or video, the masked area is filled in with black.



8.8.4 Viewing export progress

After export is started, the export progress is displayed on the export panel. The export panel is displayed near the top of the monitor after the export process is started, and is hidden after all messages are closed.

To stop the export process, click the **Stop** button. In this case the file will be saved. The length of the exported fragment will depend on the export time and resources of the Server.

To cancel export, click the **Cancel** button. In this case, the file is not saved.

If several export processes are active, you can switch between them by clicking the buttons. The following information is displayed between them: number of the current export operation / total number of export operations (export progress for all operations).

To close the export progress message, click the button.

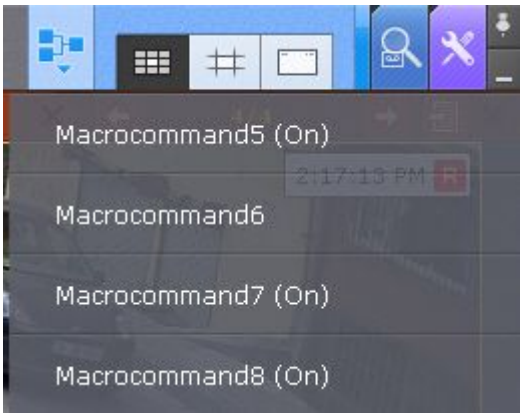
> **Note.**
>
> If export is active, you cannot close the message.

If an error occurs during export, it will be indicated on the dynamic error panel (see Control in Live Video Mode).

8.9 Macros control

You can manage macros from the map (see Controlling devices from the map) or from the menu on the top panel.

A macro may include settings (see Create Macros) to display the control menu in the upper panel.



Those macros that are currently active (enabled as **Always** or within a time schedule, see Create Macros), are marked as **(On)**.

To enable or disable macros you need to select them in the list. When you disable a macro, the mode is changed to **Never**.

> **Note**
>
> If you disable a macro, which is active within the time schedule, then this mode will be restored after reactivation.

> **Note**
>
> The status of the macro in the menu changes only a few seconds after a command is completed.

Event-driven macros can be triggered by using the corresponding buttons on the Dialog board (see Working with Dialog Board) or by using hotkeys.

8.10 Event Control

Event control in the Axxon Next software package can be conducted in three ways:

1. In Live Video mode
2. Using the system log
3. By logging events in external logs

> **Note**
>
> Configuration of logging to external files is carried out through the log management utility (see the section Log Management Utility).

8.10.1 Control in Live Video Mode

Messages about system errors which have occurred are displayed in real time on a dynamic error panel. When there are no unaccepted errors, this panel is not displayed; when there are such errors, it is displayed in Axxon Next's **Layouts** tab.

> **Note**
>
> This feature is configured on the **Permissions** tab (see the section Creating and configuring roles).

To accept an error and delete it from the error panel, click the cross.
To accept all errors and close the error panel, click the cross on the right-hand side of the panel.

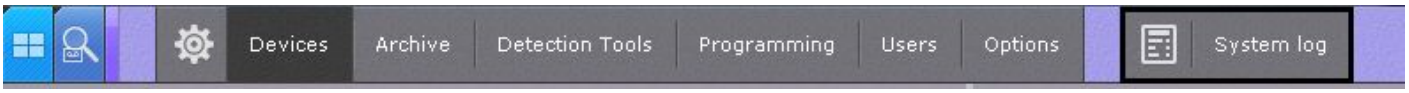
To switch between error messages, click the buttons.

To jump to System Log (see The System Log), and open error messages, click the button.

8.10.2 The System Log

Information about events which have occurred in the system is stored in the system log.

To access the system log, select **Settings** -> **System log** .



When you do this, a window appears which can be used to search, view, and export system log events.

8.10.2.1 Setting Event Search Filters

To view and/or export system log events, first you need to perform a search for them.

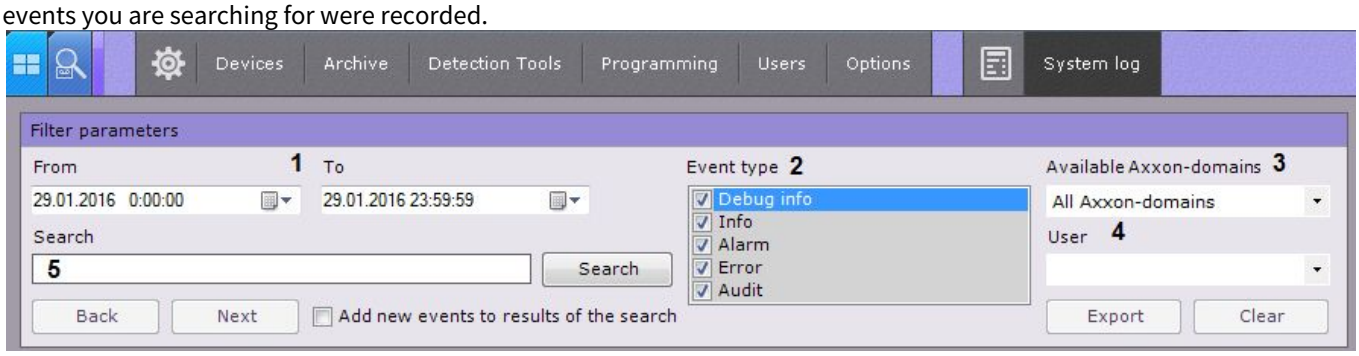
To search for system log events, you need to set one or more filters:

1. Time period during which the events were recorded.
2. Event type:
    a. Information;
    b. Alarm;
    c. Error;
    d. Debug;
    e. Audit - user actions log.
3. A key phrase contained in the system event descriptions.

> **Note**
>
> The time period is a mandatory filter, while the event type and key phrase are optional.

Search filters can be set as follows:

1. In the **To** and **From** fields (**1**) you can enter the date and time of the beginning and end of the period during which the events you are searching for were recorded.



> **Note**
>
> The date format is DD-MM-YYYY and the time format is HH:MM:SS.XXX.

> **Note**
>
> By default, the event search period is defined as the past 24 hours.

2. Selecting event types for search (**2**).
3. Select the Axxon domain where you need to search for events (**3**).
4. If user actions search was selected (the **Audit** type), choose a particular system user (**4**). If no user is selected, the search function will return actions of all system users.
5. Enter the text that matches the events you want to find in the **Search Text** field (**5**). To find license plate numbers, enter the full or partial number. Use **?** (any one character) and ***** (any number of any characters). For example, a search query **? 20*** shows all vehicles with a license plate containing **2** and **0** in the second and third position respectively. The total number of characters in number plates can be arbitrary.

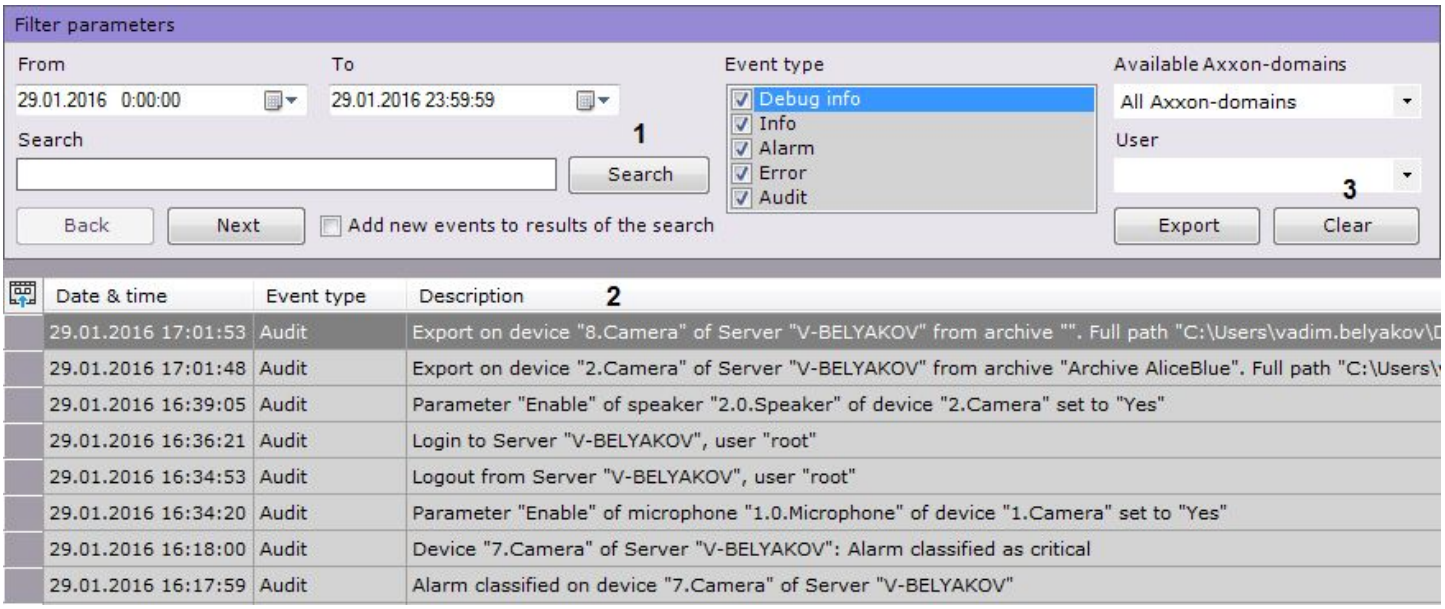
> **Attention!**
>
> You can use OR and AND logical operators when searching data in the system log.
> - to search with the OR logical operator, separate the words with the symbol "|";
> - to search with the AND logical operator, use a space.

The event search filters have been set.

Next you must start the event search (see the section titled Event search procedure).

8.10.2.2 Event search procedure

To start a search for system log events which satisfy the filters which have been set (see the section Setting Event Search Filters), click the **Search** button (**1**).

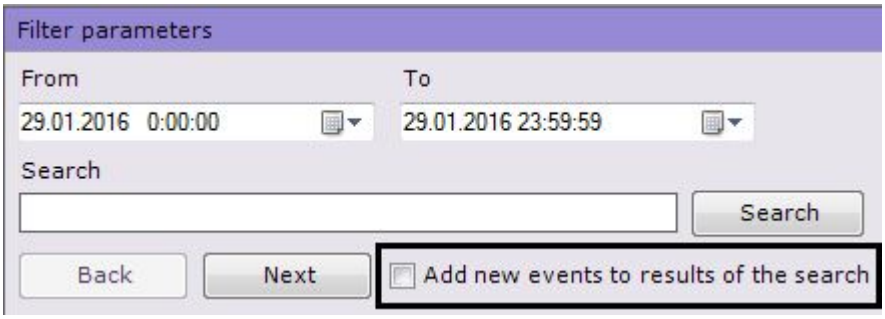


When you do that, a search results table appears (**2**).

To accept all errors and close the error panel, click the **Clear** button (**3**).

8.10.2.3 Refreshing Event Search Results

You can automatically refresh the event search results table, i.e., add events to it which happened after the search was started (see the section Event search procedure). To do this, select the **Add new events to the results of the search** check box.



> **Note**
>
> Select this check box to update events automatically with no need to search again.

8.10.2.4 Viewing Event Search Results

System log event search results are displayed in a table (**1**).

> **Note**
>
> Events in the table are sorted by the date they were registered, beginning with the most recent one.

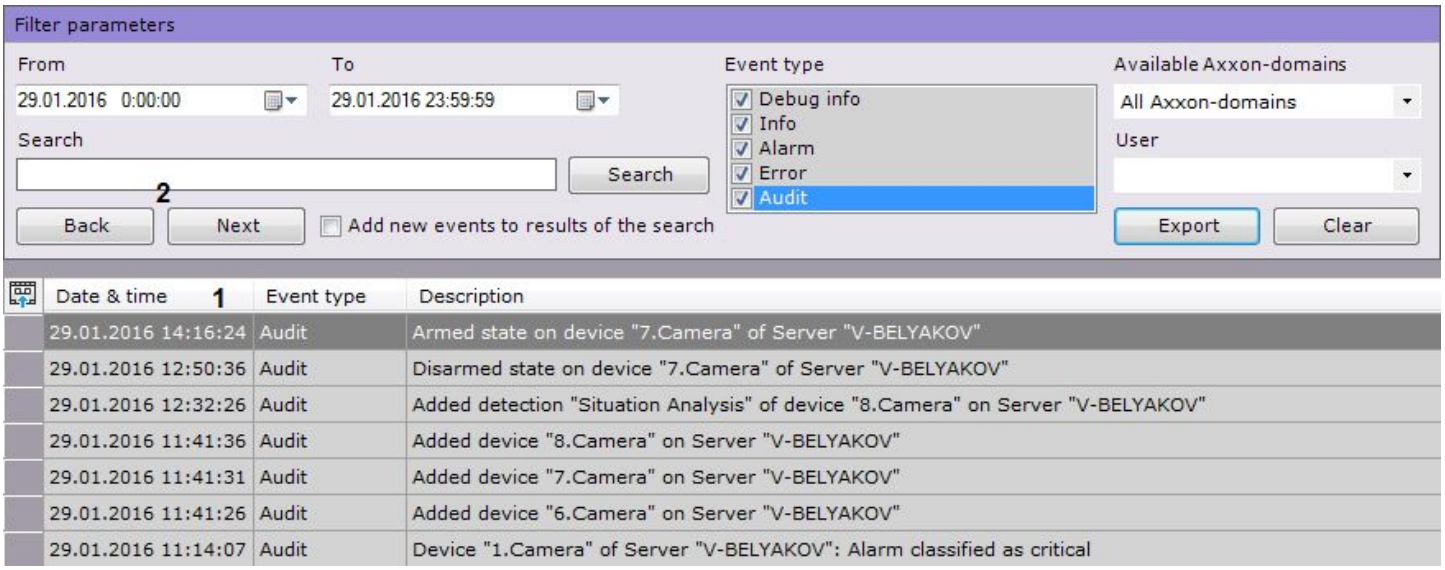


Table column	Contents of column
	Switching to archive video of specific events
Date & time	Date and time the event was recorded in the system in the format DD.MM.YYYY HH:MM:SS
Event type	Event type (information, alarm, debug, error)
Description	System description of the event

The search results table may be more than one page. To navigate through a table which is more than one page, use the following buttons (**2**):

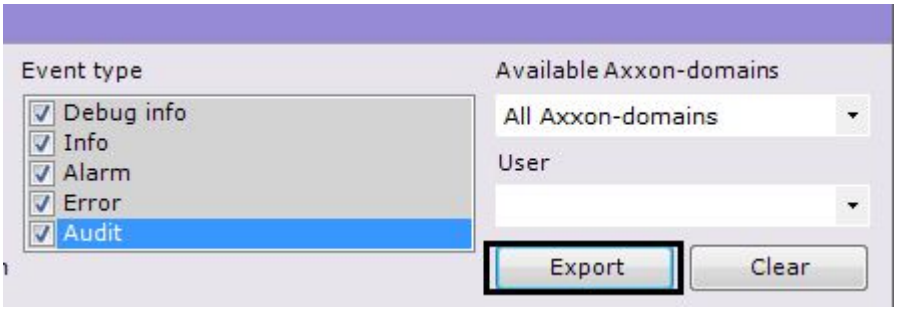
1. **Back** Goes back to the previous page of the table.
2. **Next** Goes to the next page of the table.

> **Note**
>
> Once the *Axxon Next* VMS is installed, the log may show a **Table end violation** error**.** This is part of the installation routine and not a bug.

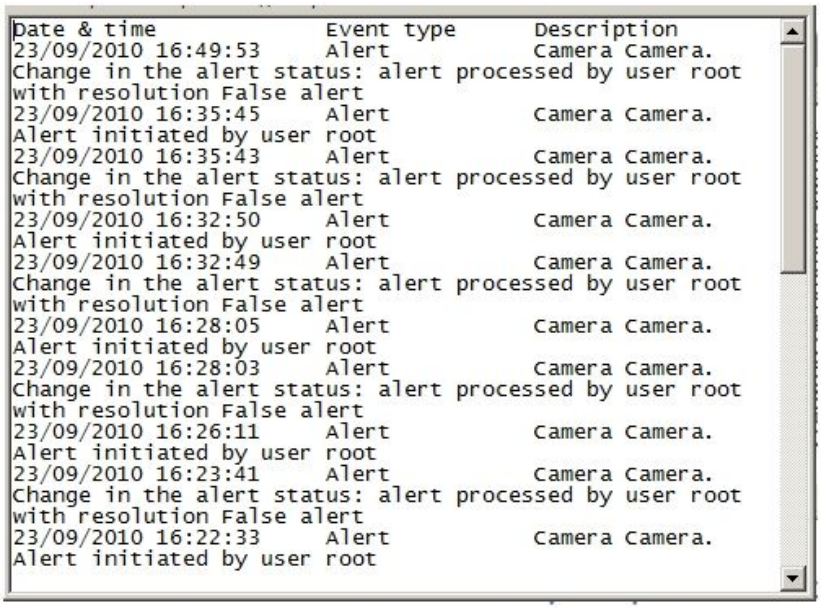
Once the *Axxon Next* VMS is installed, the log may show a **Table end violation** error**.** This is part of the installation routine and not a bug.

8.10.2.5 Exporting Event Search Results

To export the system log event search results, click the **Export** button.



When you do this, the standard Windows “Save as” dialog box appears, using which you can save the search results as a file with a .txt (text) extension or .csv (comma-separated).

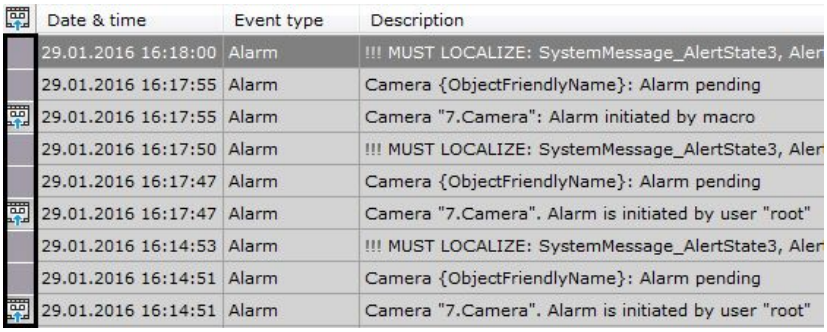


```
Date & time             Event type      Description
23/09/2010 16:49:53     Alert           Camera Camera.
Change in the alert status: alert processed by user root
with resolution False alert
23/09/2010 16:35:45     Alert           Camera Camera.
Alert initiated by user root
23/09/2010 16:35:43     Alert           Camera Camera.
Change in the alert status: alert processed by user root
with resolution False alert
23/09/2010 16:32:50     Alert           Camera Camera.
Alert initiated by user root
23/09/2010 16:32:49     Alert           Camera Camera.
Change in the alert status: alert processed by user root
with resolution False alert
23/09/2010 16:28:05     Alert           Camera Camera.
Alert initiated by user root
23/09/2010 16:28:03     Alert           Camera Camera.
Change in the alert status: alert processed by user root
with resolution False alert
23/09/2010 16:26:11     Alert           Camera Camera.
Alert initiated by user root
23/09/2010 16:23:41     Alert           Camera Camera.
Change in the alert status: alert processed by user root
with resolution False alert
23/09/2010 16:22:33     Alert           Camera Camera.
Alert initiated by user root
```

8.10.2.6 Switching to archive video of specific events

To switch to archive video of specific events, click the icon next to the event or double-click the relevant row.

> **Note**
>
> Archive viewing can be triggered by events coming from cameras, inputs (sensors) and outputs (relays). To make it work, I/O must be linked to a particular camera (see The Input Object, The Output Object).



Date & time	Event type	Description
29.01.2016 16:18:00	Alarm	!!! MUST LOCALIZE: SystemMessage_AlertState3, Aler
29.01.2016 16:17:55	Alarm	Camera {ObjectFriendlyName}: Alarm pending
29.01.2016 16:17:55	Alarm	Camera "7.Camera": Alarm initiated by macro
29.01.2016 16:17:50	Alarm	!!! MUST LOCALIZE: SystemMessage_AlertState3, Aler
29.01.2016 16:17:47	Alarm	Camera {ObjectFriendlyName}: Alarm pending
29.01.2016 16:17:47	Alarm	Camera "7.Camera". Alarm is initiated by user "root"
29.01.2016 16:14:53	Alarm	!!! MUST LOCALIZE: SystemMessage_AlertState3, Aler
29.01.2016 16:14:51	Alarm	Camera {ObjectFriendlyName}: Alarm pending
29.01.2016 16:14:51	Alarm	Camera "7.Camera". Alarm is initiated by user "root"

The system will now switch to archive mode and fetch the video of the selected event.

8.11 Changing user password

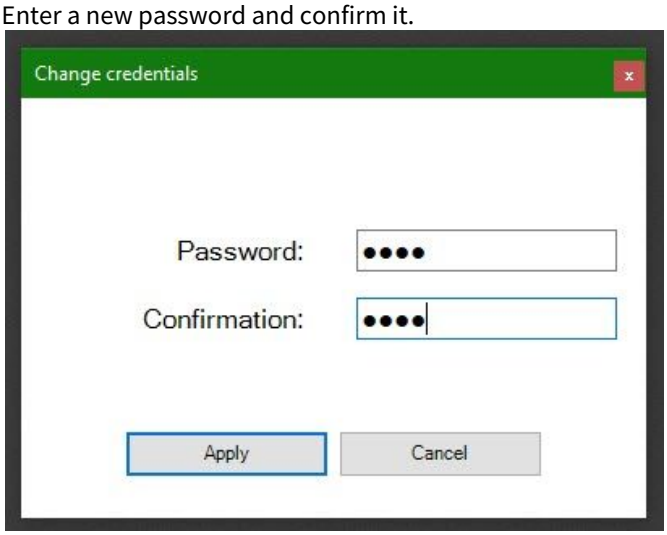
You can change user passwords in *Axxon Next* with a few clicks.

Please follow the steps below:

1. Go to the Settings tab .
2. In the upper-right corner, click the user name.

3. Click **Change password**.

4. Enter a new password and confirm it.



5. Click **Apply**.

The next time log in with a new password.

8.12 Working with Axxon Next Through the Mobile Clients

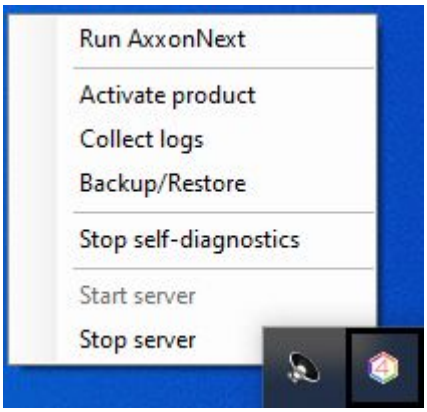
Axxon Next clients are available on the iOS, Android and Windows Mobile operating systems.

For more information on configuring and using the mobile client apps, refer to the corresponding documentation.

9 Description of utilities

9.1 Axxon Next Tray Tool

The *Axxon Next Tray Tool* launches automatically during system startup and displays an icon in the Microsoft Windows taskbar notification area.



> **Note.**
>
> The executable TrayTool.exe is located at <Axxon Next installation folder>\AxxonNext\bin.

With the *Axxon Next Tray Tool* utility, you can quickly start the following applications from the notification area:

- Client,
- Activation Utility,
- Axxon Support Tool,
- Configuration Backup and Restore utility,
- Self-checking Service,
- Server rebooting.

9.2 Activation Utility

License activation for the Axxon Next software package is carried out through the product activation utility.

The activation utility is accessible at **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon Next** -> **Utilities** -> **Program Activation**, or from the tray menu (see the Axxon Next Tray Tool section).

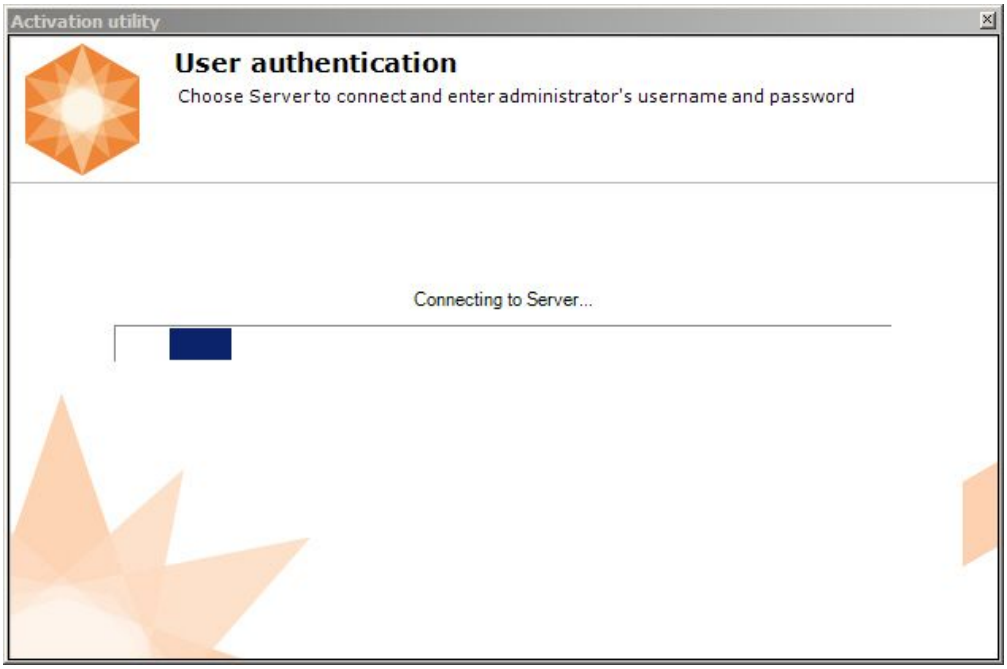
> **Note**
>
> The product activation utility program file LicenseTool.exe is located in the folder <Directory where Axxon Next is installed>\AxxonSoft\AxxonSmart\bin\

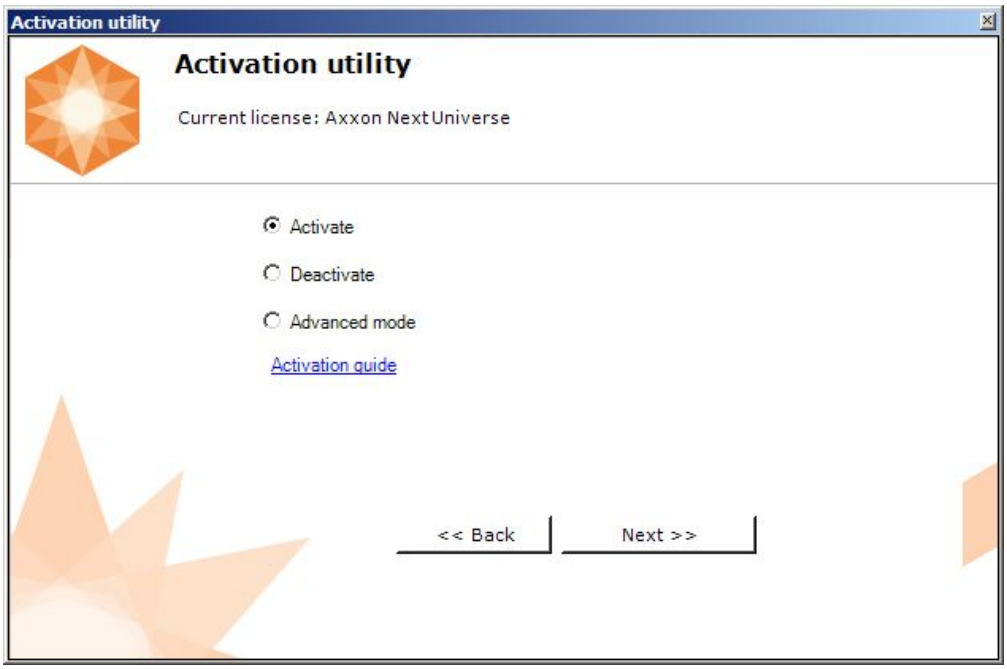
Then you must select the name of one of the Axxon Domain servers to which the license file will be applied (the file is applied to all Axxon Domain servers launched at the moment of activation) and connect to the system, under an administrator's user name and password, to continue the activation process.

When the utility has loaded, its main will be displayed.

Note

To activate Axxon Next, connect to a Server in the Axxon domain. Otherwise, an error message appears.





To activate Axxon Next, please refer to the document titled Activation Guide, which presents step-by-step instructions on activating, updating and upgrading Axxon Next .

It is also recommended that you use the prompts displayed in the product activation utility's dialog boxes.

9.3 Axxon Support Tool

9.3.1 Purpose of the Support.exe Utility

The Support.exe utility is designed to collect information about the configuration and operating status of hardware, the Windows operating system, and the Axxon Next software. The utility generates an archive that can be used by the company's technical support department. In case of malfunctions or errors in the Axxon Next software package, please visit our technical support server at https://support.axxonsoft.com/ and compose a message containing a description of the problem and attach the archive that was generated by the Support.exe utility.

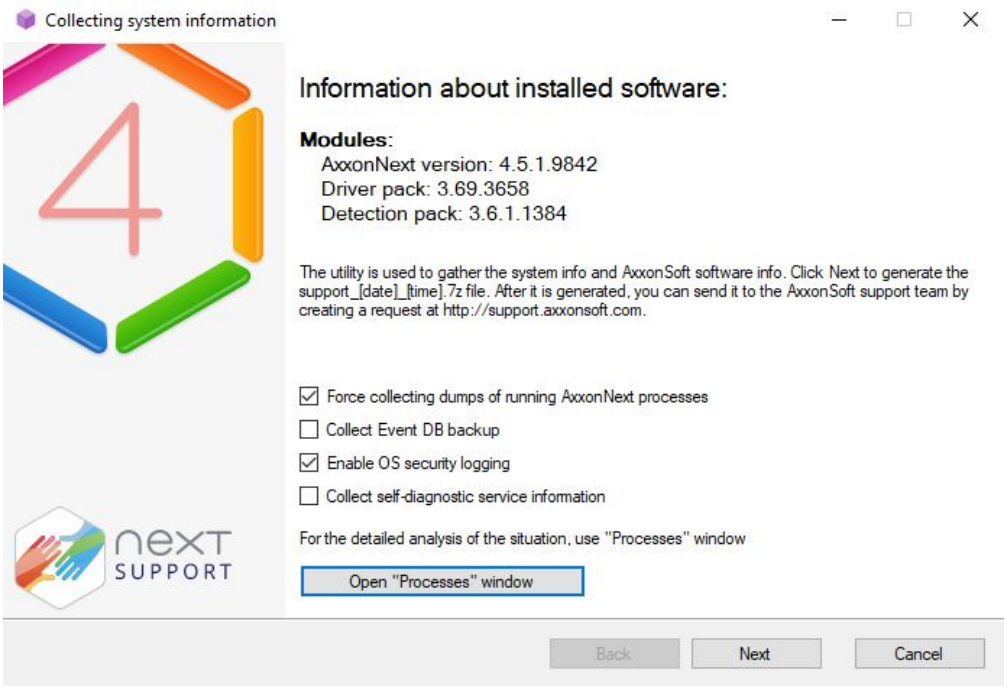
9.3.2 Launching and Closing the Utility

The Support.exe utility is launched using the **Start** menu, which is intended for launching user programs in Windows. Go to **Start → All Programs → Axxon Next → Gathering system information.**

> **Note**
>
> The Support.exe utility is located in the folder <Axxon Next installation directory>\AxxonNext\Support

> **Note**
>
> The Support.exe utility requires administrator rights to run.

The Support.exe utility dialog box will then be displayed.

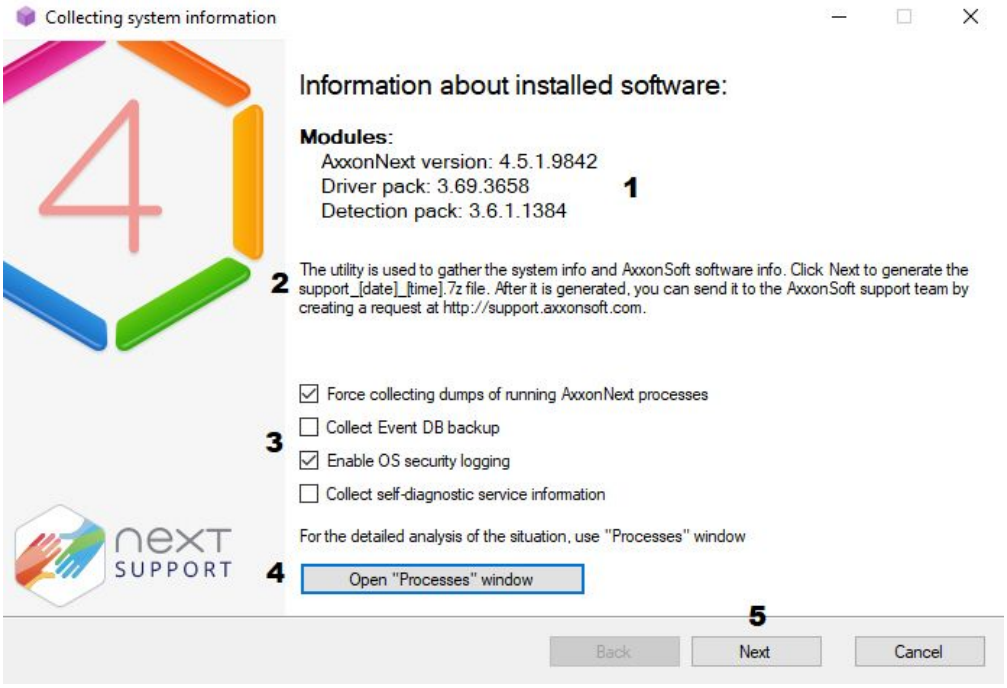


To close the Support.exe utility, click the **Cancel** button or .

9.3.3 Description of the Support.exe utility interface

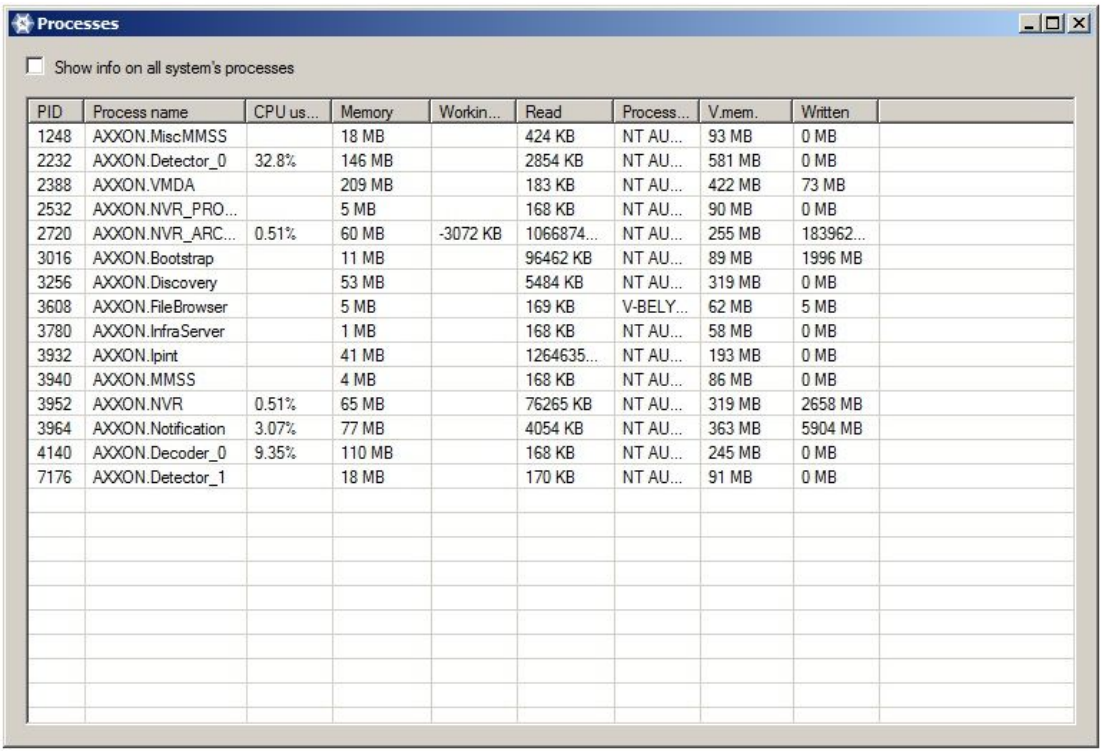
The Support.exe user interface includes the following elements:

1. Summary of installed software (**1**).
2. Short instructions on how to use the Support.exe utility (**2**).
3. Check boxes for configuring data collection (**3**).
4. A button for launching the **Processes** service, which offers an in-depth situation analysis (**4**).
5. A button for starting the information gathering process (**5**).



9.3.4 The Processes Service

The **Processes** service is used for detailed analysis of a situation. To launch it, click the **Open Processes window** button; the **Processes** window will then appear, displaying information about processes running on the computer initiated by the Support.exe utility.



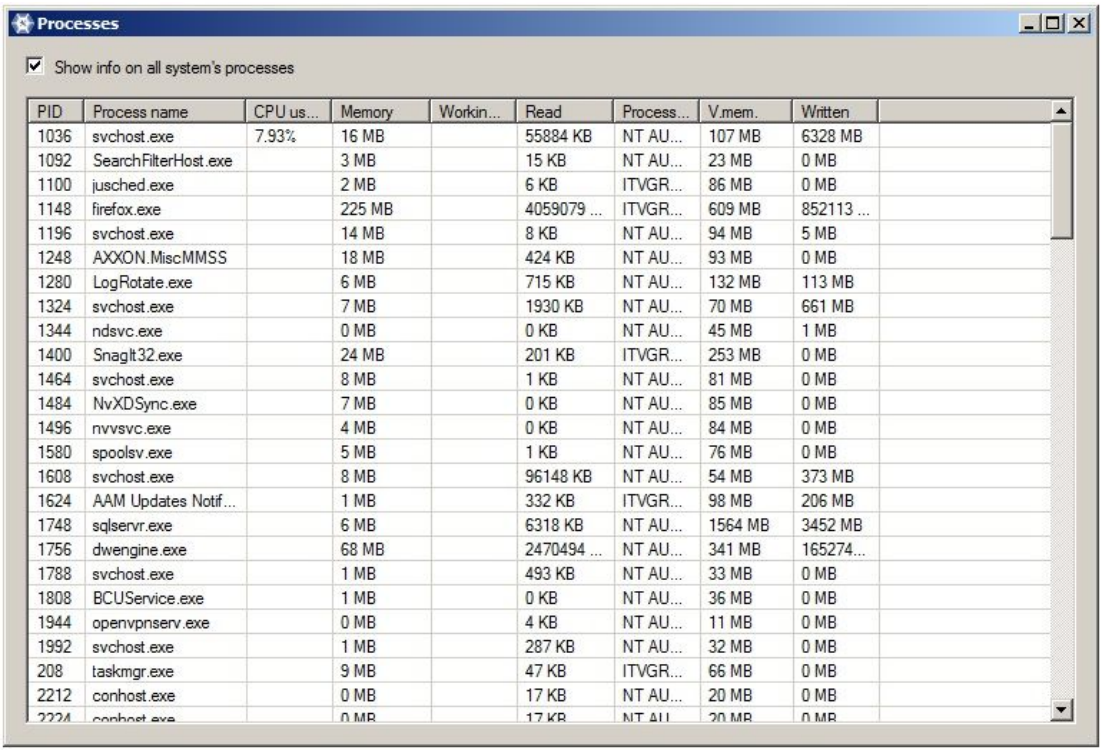
A list of all possible Axxon Next processes is given in the table.

Process	**Description**
AXXON.Discovery	Process that searches for peripheral devices (video cameras, analog video cards, devices connected to a serial port, etc.)
AXXON.VMDA	Process responsible for the metadata database. Writes metadata and searches the archive.
AXXON.MMSS	Web server process
AXXON.Notification	Process for managing events in the system and creating a database of these events
AXXON.AxxonNext	GUI process
AXXON.Bootstrap	Main process responsible for configuration, licensing, storing settings, and starting other processes
AXXON.FileBrowser	Process that provides access to the file system and information about server files
AXXON.NVR	Logic module responsible for alarms and automatic rules
AXXON.InfraServer	Process responsible for interaction between Axxon Next modules

AXXON.Decoder	Process that performs decoding of multimedia streams
AXXON.Detector	Process that performs detection
AXXON.Proxy	Process that performs buffering and grooming of multimedia streams
AXXON.NVR_Archive	Process that writes multimedia data to the archive
AXXON.Ipint	Process that interfaces with the Drivers Pack
AXXON.MiscMMSS	Process that plays back audio on the server audio card

Note

Selecting the **Show info on all system's processes** check box enables viewing of all processes running on the computer.

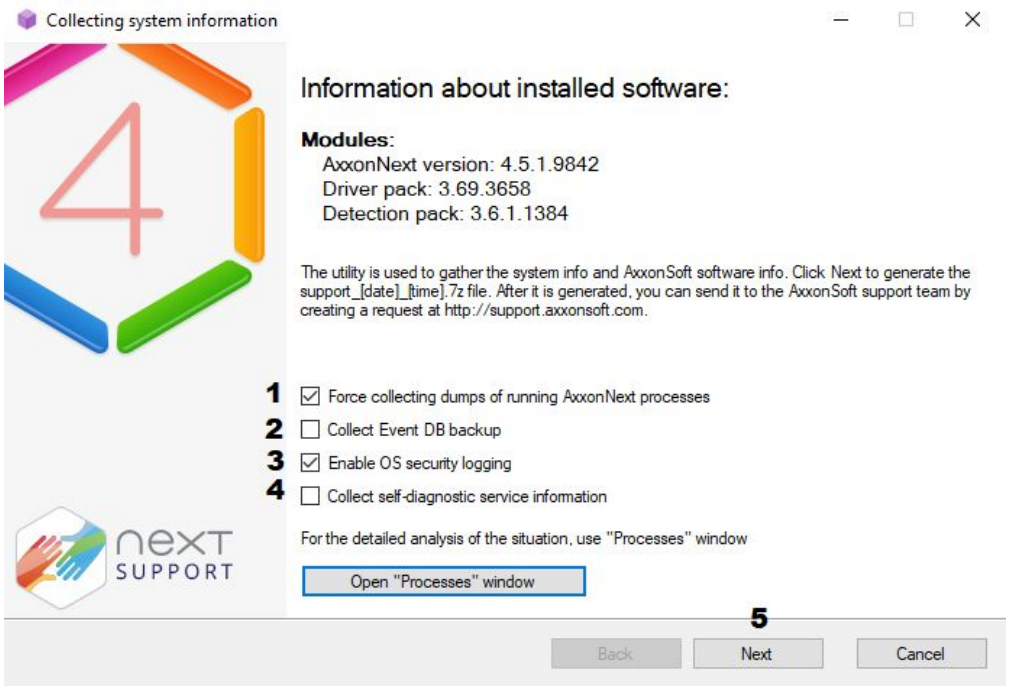


Click the button to close the **Processes** window.

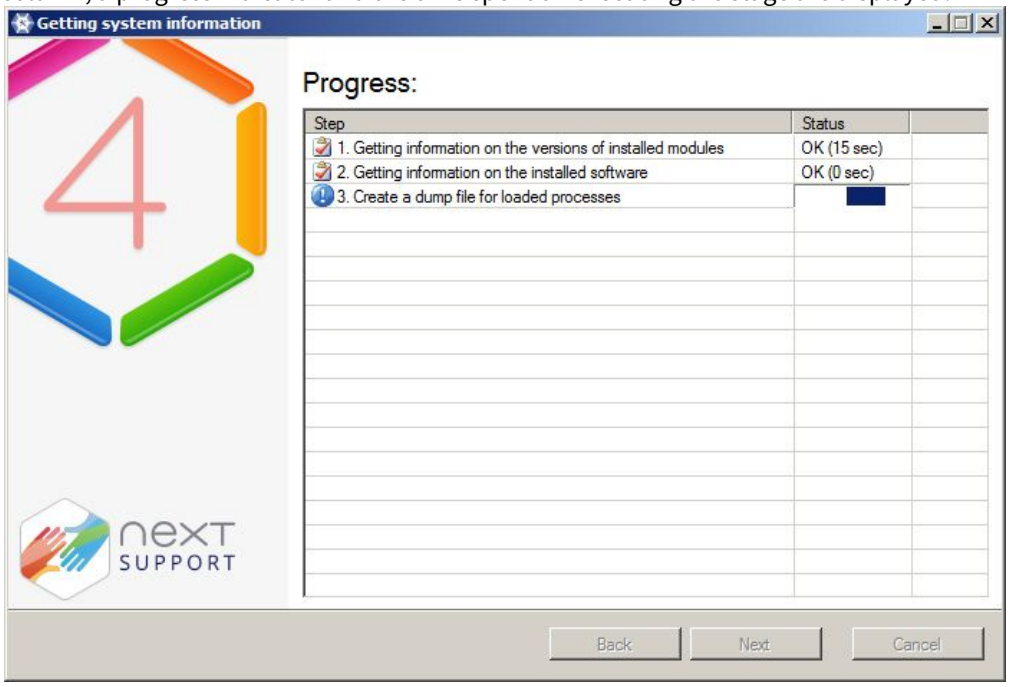
9.3.5 Collecting Data on the Configuration of Servers and Clients Using the Support

To collect data using the Support.exe utility, perform the following:

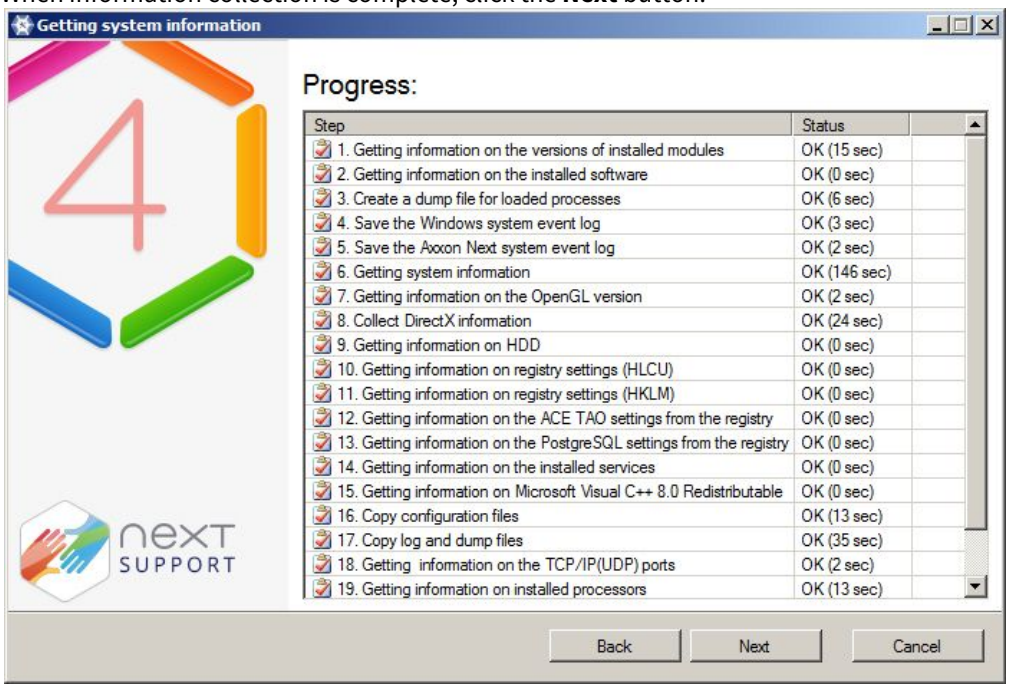
1. Launch the Support.exe utility (see the section Launching and Closing the Utility).



2. By default, a report includes data about already launched Axxon Next processes. To exclude this data from reports, deselect the checkbox (**1**).
3. Select the corresponding checkbox to include a backup copy of events database in reports (**2**).
4. By default, a report includes information about Windows security system. To exclude this data from reports, deselect the checkbox (**3**).
5. Select the corresponding checkbox to include a self-diagnostic service (see Self-diagnostics service) information in reports (**4**).
6. Click the **Next** button (**5**).
   The data collection process will begin. The table that displays the progress of data collection includes two columns: **Step** and **Status**. In the **Step** column, a brief description of the stage of information collection is displayed. In the **Status** column, a progress indicator and the time spent on executing the stage are displayed.

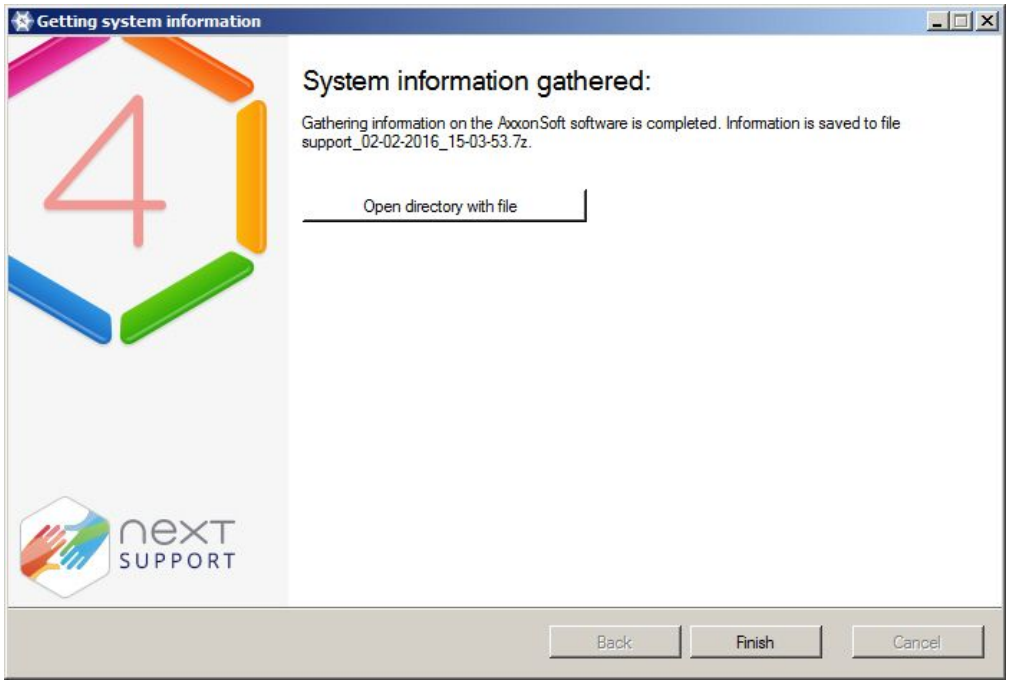


7. When information collection is complete, click the **Next** button.



8. A window containing information about the generated archive **support_[date]_[time].7z** will then appear. You can access the folder containing this archive by clicking the **Open directory with file** button.

> **Note**
>
> The archive is located in the folder <System disk>:\Documents and Settings\<Current User>\My Documents if you're using Windows XP, or in the folder <System disk>:\Users\<Current User>\Documents if you're using Windows Vista.



9. Send an email with the attached **support_[date]_[time].7z archive** to the AxxonSoft technical support department.

9.4 Log Management Utility

By default, information about all system events is recorded in the Axxon Next system log, which is stored in a local database of the server. It is possible to record information about desired events in external logs, which are log files stored in local directories of a server. Log data is archived at set intervals and moved to the log archive. Configuration of these capabilities is carried out through the log management utility.

Axxon Next component	**Log storage directory**
Server	`<Axxon Next installation folder *Axxon Next*>\logs`
Client	`<Letter of system disk>:\Users\<User>\Appdata\Local\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\logs (for Windows 7 and Windows Vista)` <Letter of system disk>:\ <Letter of system disk>:\Documents and Settings\User\Local Settings\Application Data\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\Logs (for Windows XP)

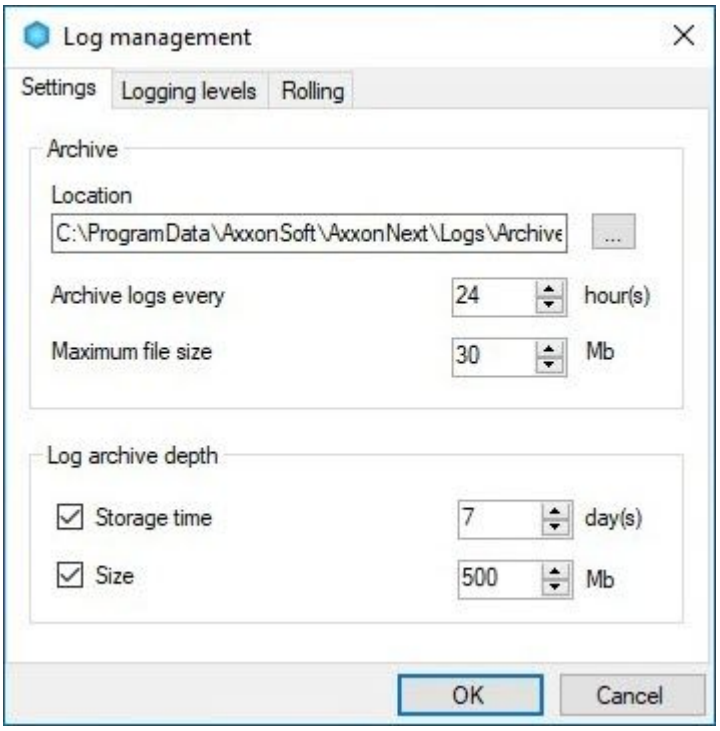
The log management utility is used to configure the following parameters:

1. Parameters for the archive of external logs containing information about system events.
2. Loging levels for the Axxon Next client and server.

9.4.1 Starting and closing the utility

The log management utility can be launched using the **Start** menu, which is intended for launching user programs in Windows. **Start → All Programs → Axxon Next → Utilities → Logs Archiving**.

The log management utility dialog box will then appear.



To close the log management utility, click the **Cancel** button or (accessible in both tabs of the utility).

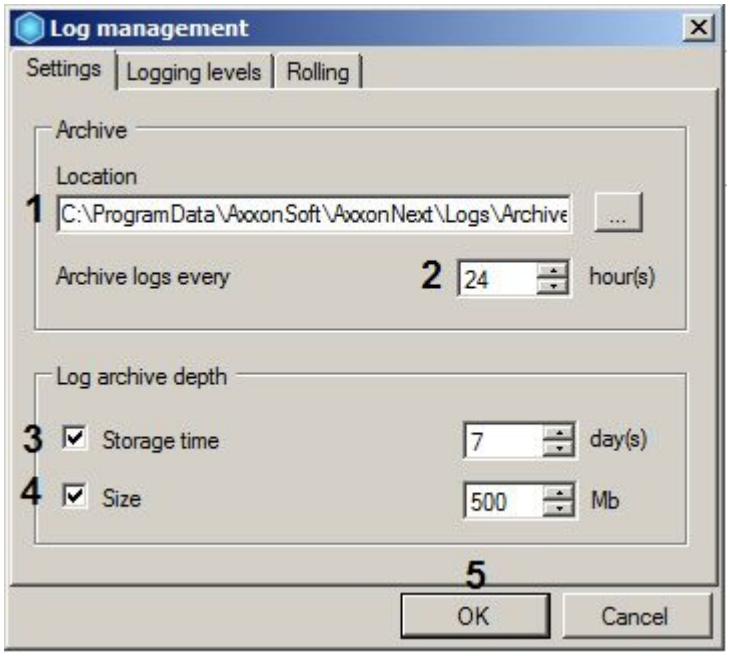
9.4.2 Configuring a Log Archive

Configuring a log archive is carried out in the Settings tab of the log management utility.

To configure a log archive, you must perform the following steps:

1. In the **Archive location** field (**1**), enter the complete path to the directory to which the event logs should be moved after archiving.

> **Note**
>
> To set the path using standard Windows methods, click ...



2. In the **Archive logs every...hours** field (**2**), enter the interval for event log archiving, in hours.
3. In the **Log archive depth** group, set the following parameters:
   a. In the **Storage time** field (**3**), indicate the maximum retention time in days of a log in the archive, after which the log is deleted.
   b. In the **Size** field (**4**), indicate the maximum size of the archive, above which the oldest logs are deleted from the archive.

> **Note**
>
> Archive disk space restrictions take priority over log retention time restrictions. For example, the oldest logs will be automatically deleted even if their retention time has not expired, if the archive size has exceeded the maximum value

> **Note**
>
> If it is not necessary to impose any limitations on log retention period and/or size, clear the corresponding check boxes in the **Log archive depth** (**3**-**4**)

4. Click **OK** (**5**) to save changes.

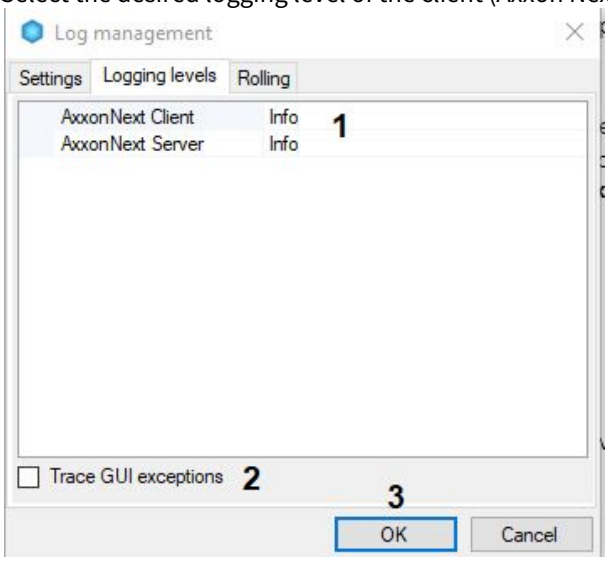
Configuration of the log archive is now complete.

9.4.3 Configuring Logging Levels

logging levels differ in the list of events to be recorded in external logs, as well as the level of event specification (low, medium, high). Configuration of levels is carried out in the **logging levels** tab of the log management utility.

To configure the logging level, you must perform the following steps:

1. Select the desired logging level of the client (Axxon Next Client) and the server (Axxon Next Server) (**1**).



> **Note**
>
> If you change the logging level of a Server, the server will be restarted.

> **Note**
>
> If the Axxon Next VMS is installed in the **Failover Server and Client** configuration, you can log in as either a Client or a Supervisor.

logging level	logging level description
None	Event logging disabled
Error	Low specification level – only system errors are logged
Warning	Low level of detail - only system warnings and system errors are logged
Info	Low level of detail - logs informational messages, system warnings, and system errors
Debug	Medium level of detail - logs debugging events, informational messages, system warnings, and system errors
Trace	High specification level – all system events are logged

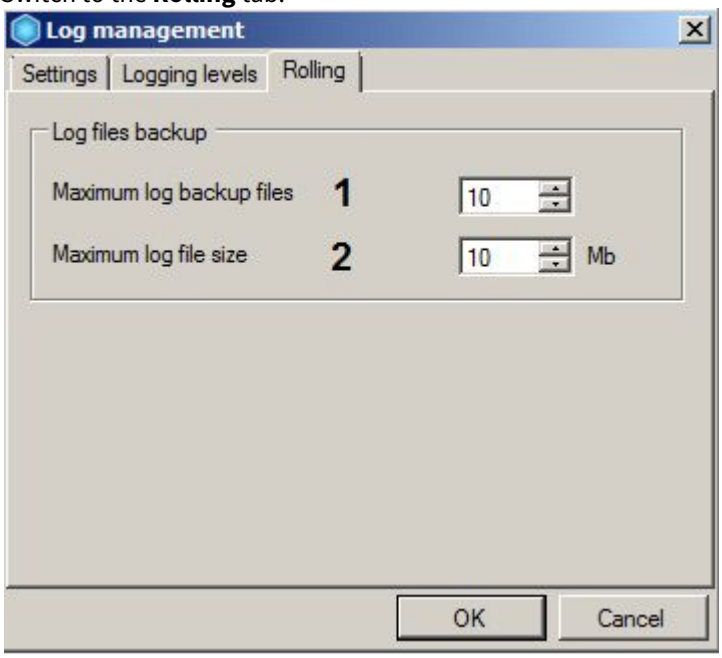
2. If you need to include GUI exceptions into the logs, select the corresponding check box (**2**).
3. Click **OK** (**3**) to save changes.

Configuration of logging levels is complete.

9.4.4 Set the size and maximum number of logs

To adjust the size and maximum number of logs:

1. Switch to the **Rolling** tab.

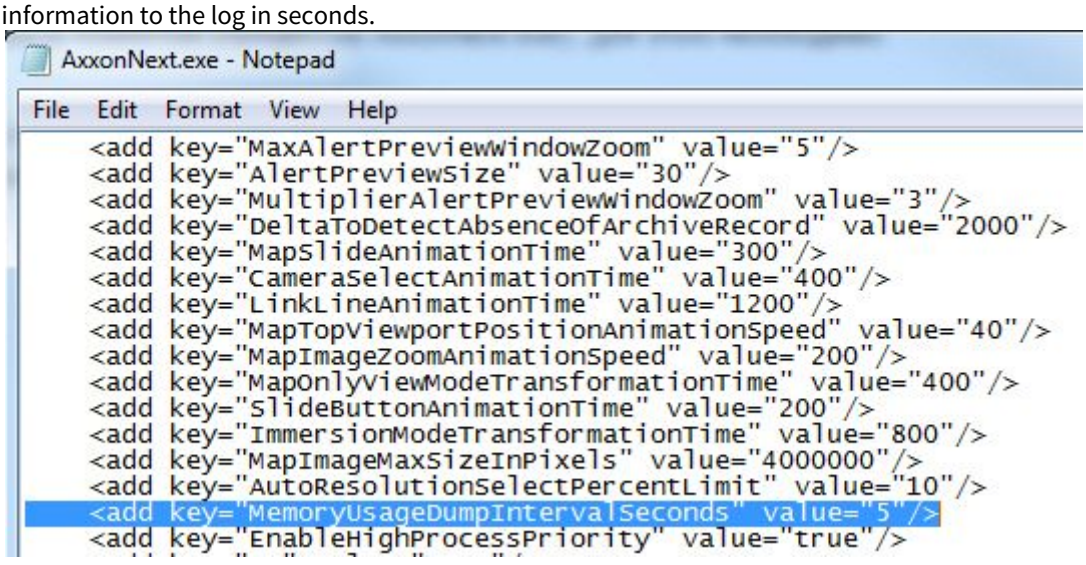


2. Set the maximum number of logs (**1**).
3. Set the maximum size of the log in megabytes (**2**). When the specified size is reached, a new log is created.
4. Click **OK** to save changes.

9.4.5 Configuring Client RAM usage logging

You can log Client RAM usage at specified intervals (AxxonNext.exe process). To do this:

1. Quit Client (see Shutting down an Axxon Next Client).
2. Open the *AxxonNext.exe.config* configuration file, located in the <Installation Directory PC Axxon Next> \ bin., in a text editor.
3. Find the **MemoryUsageDumpIntervalSeconds** option and set a value for it, corresponding to the period of adding the information to the log in seconds.



> **Note**
>
> Value **0** - no information is logged.

4. Save the changes to the file.
5. Run client (see Starting an Axxon Next Client).

Here is an example of the client RAM usage information in the log:

```
*** Memory usage: ***
    Private size  425 MB
    Working set   404 MB
```

Private size - the amount of reserved memory.

Working set - memory footprint.

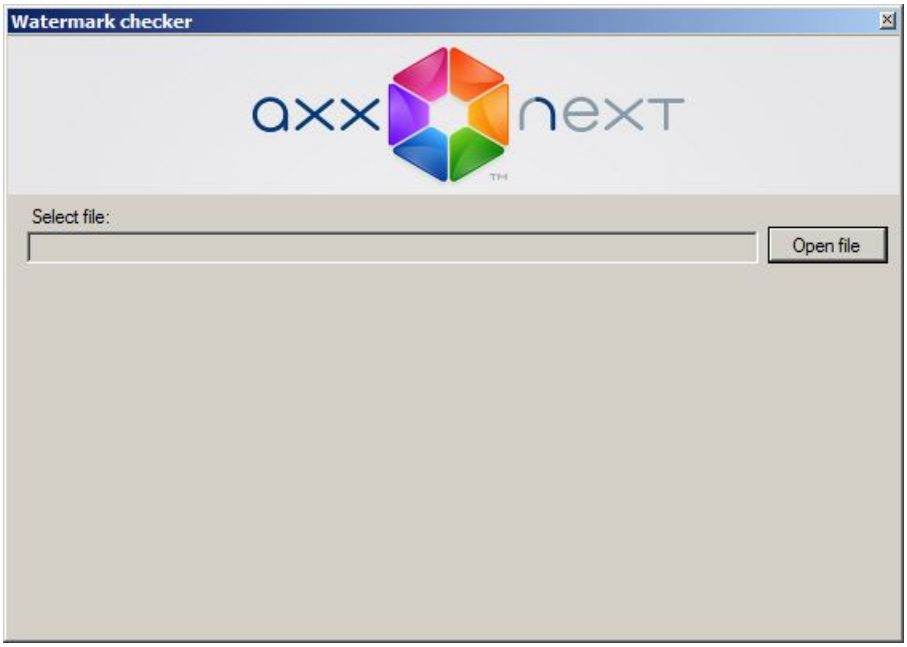
9.5 Digital Signature Verification Utility

This utility verifies the digital signature that is added during export of video and snapshots from Axxon Next.

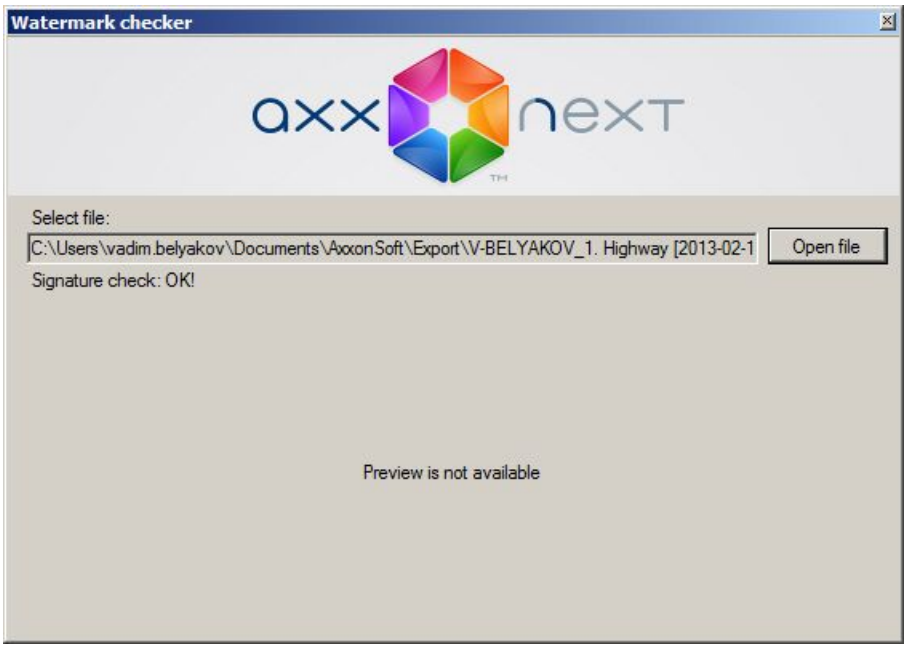
To start the utility, open the standard **Start** menu in Windows: **Start > Programs > Axxon Next > Utilities > Watermark checker**.

> **Note**
>
> The utility executable file WatermarkCheck.exe is also located in the folder <Directory where Axxon Next is installed>\Axxon Next\bin\.

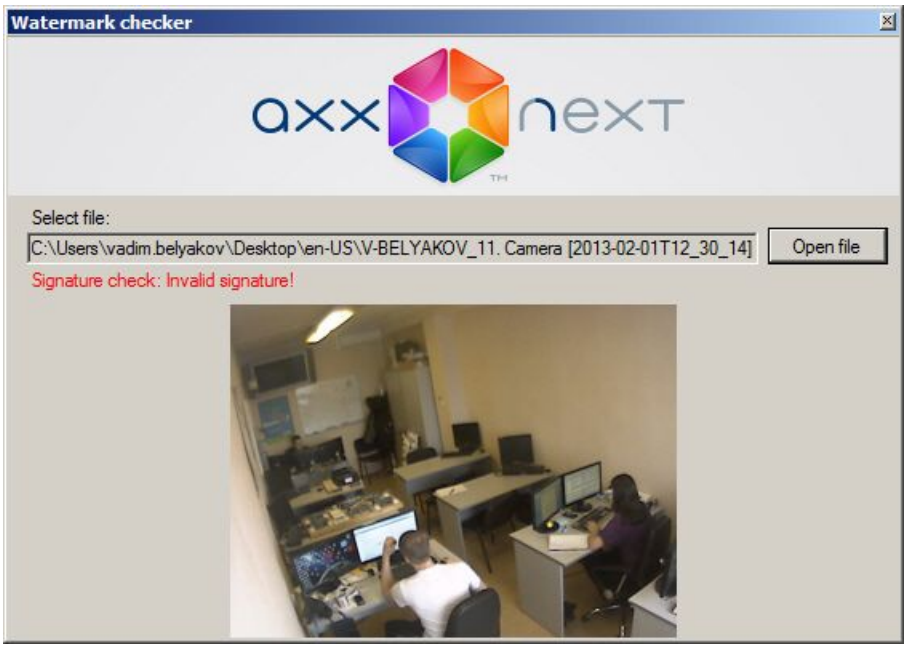
To check a digital signature, click the **Open file** button and select the file of the exported snapshot or video.



If the digital signature is valid, the utility will show the message: **Signature check: OK!**



If it is not valid, the utility will show the message: **Signature check: Invalid signature!**



Note

During verification of a digital signature, the thumbnail of a snapshot is shown in the utility window. Videos cannot be previewed during the verification process

Digital signature verification is now complete.

To quit the utility, click the ☐ button.

9.6 Backup and Restore Utility

9.6.1 Purpose of BackupTool.exe

BackupTool.exe allows system users to save a copy of the system configuration, roll back the configuration to a previous version, and restore the system configuration from a previously created copy.

> **Attention!**
>
> The backup and restore utility may be applied to both the local configuration of a selected Server (including video cameras, archives, detection tools, event sources, logging levels) and the global configuration of the Axxon domain (users, maps, layouts, etc.).

This utility can also be used to change the name of the local Server.

9.6.2 Starting and quitting BackupTool.exe

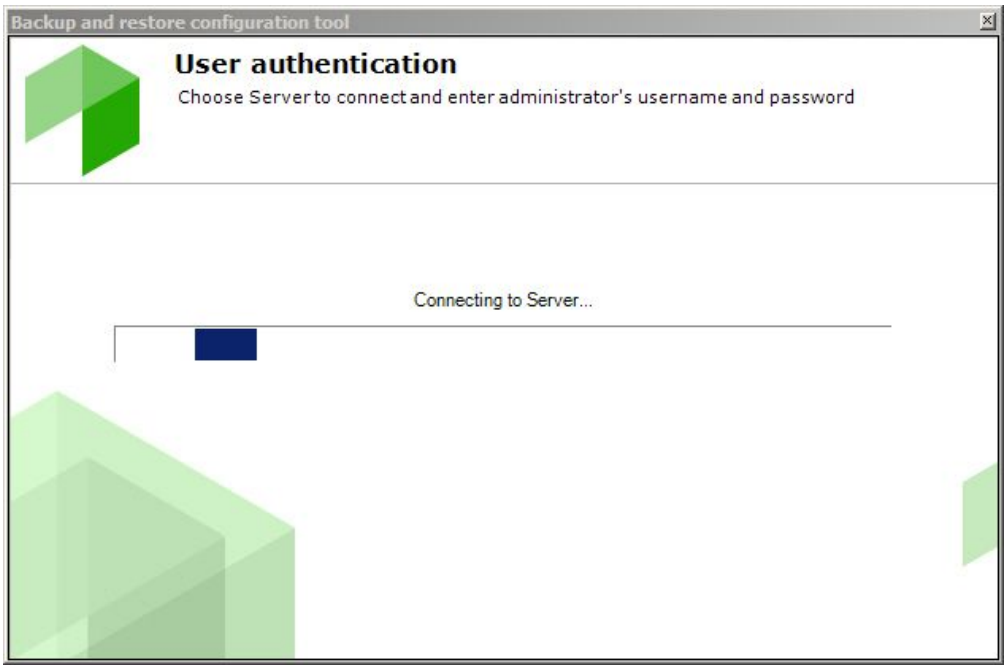
Start BackupTool.exe from **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon Next** -> **Utilities** -> **Backupand Restore**, or from the tray menu (see the Axxon Next Tray Tool section).

> **Note.**
>
> The BackupTool.exe executable is located at <Axxon Next installation folder>\AxxonNext\bin\.

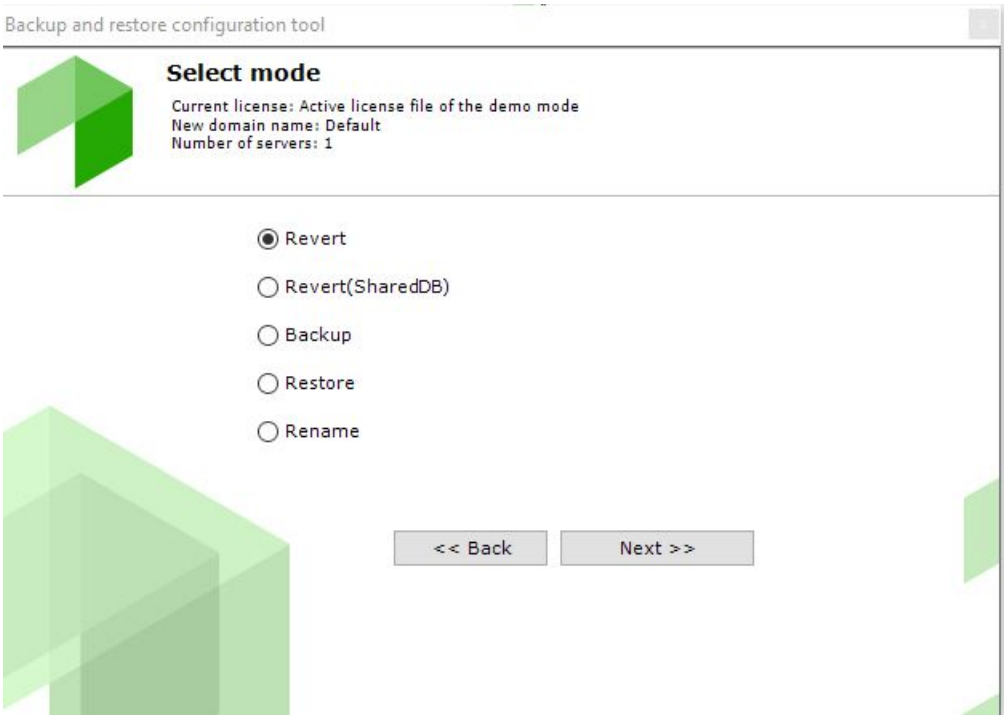
After you perform this action, BackupTool.exe displays a dialog box.

Then select the name of an Axxon-domain Server whose configuration you want to use and log in to it, using the name and password of an Axxon Next administrator.

A progress indicator is displayed.



After loading is complete, the main page of the Backup and Restore Utility is shown.

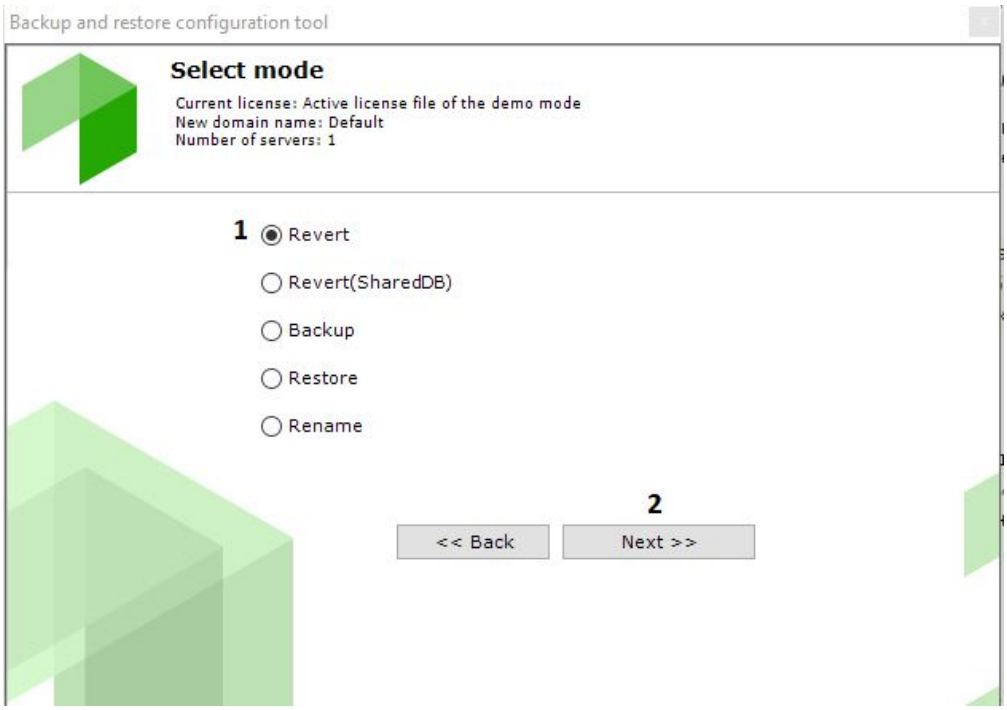


To quit BackupTool.exe, click the ☒ button.

9.6.3 Roll back the local configuration to a selected restore point

The system creates a restore point when the local configuration of the Server is changed (creation / deletion / changing settings of any objects, linking cameras to different archives, etc.). You can roll back your configuration to any available restore point at any time.

To roll back, on the main page of the Backup andRestore Utility, set the switch to the **Revert** position (**1**). To continue, click the **Next >>** button (**2**).

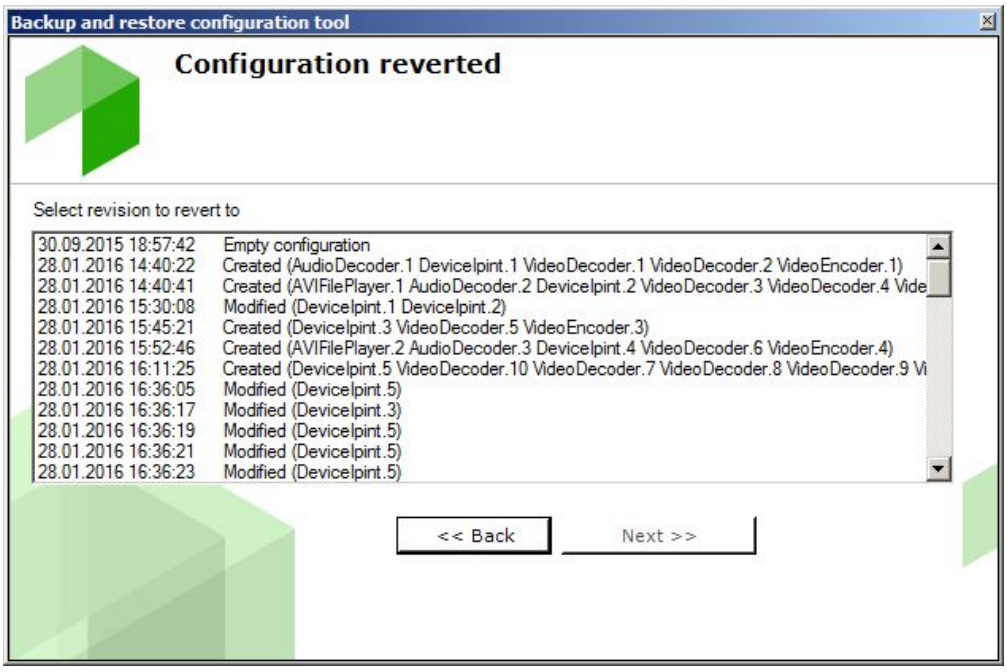


A window then opens, displaying a list of available restore points and their respective creation times, with a description of what was changed.

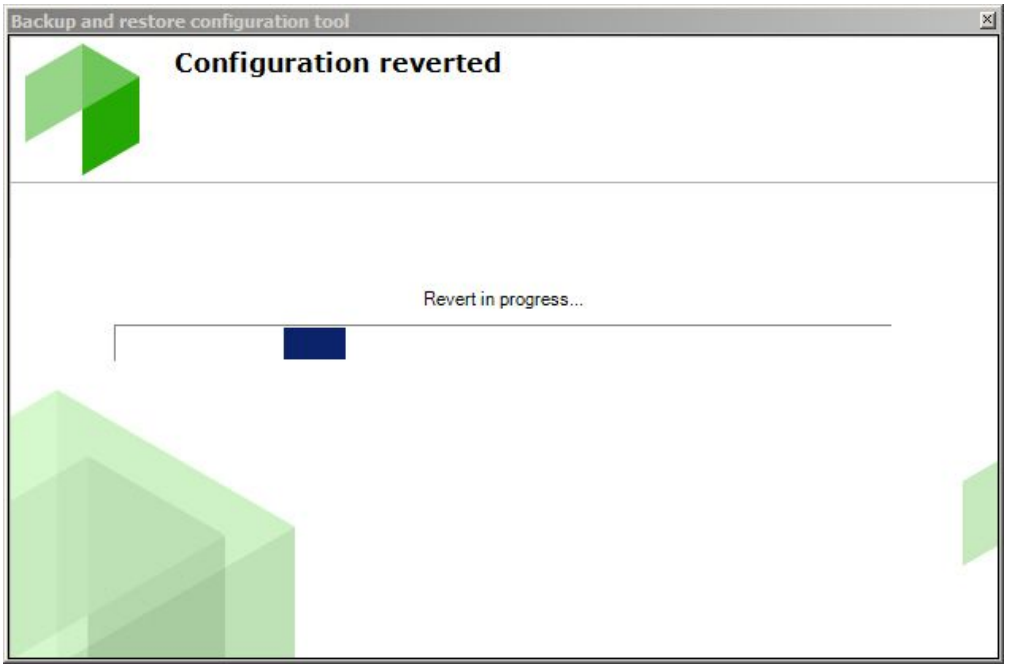
> **Note.**
>
> If multiple changes were made in a configuration but the **Apply** button was clicked only once, only one restore point is created in the list.

In the list, select the restore point to which you want to roll back. To continue, click the **Next** button (**2**).

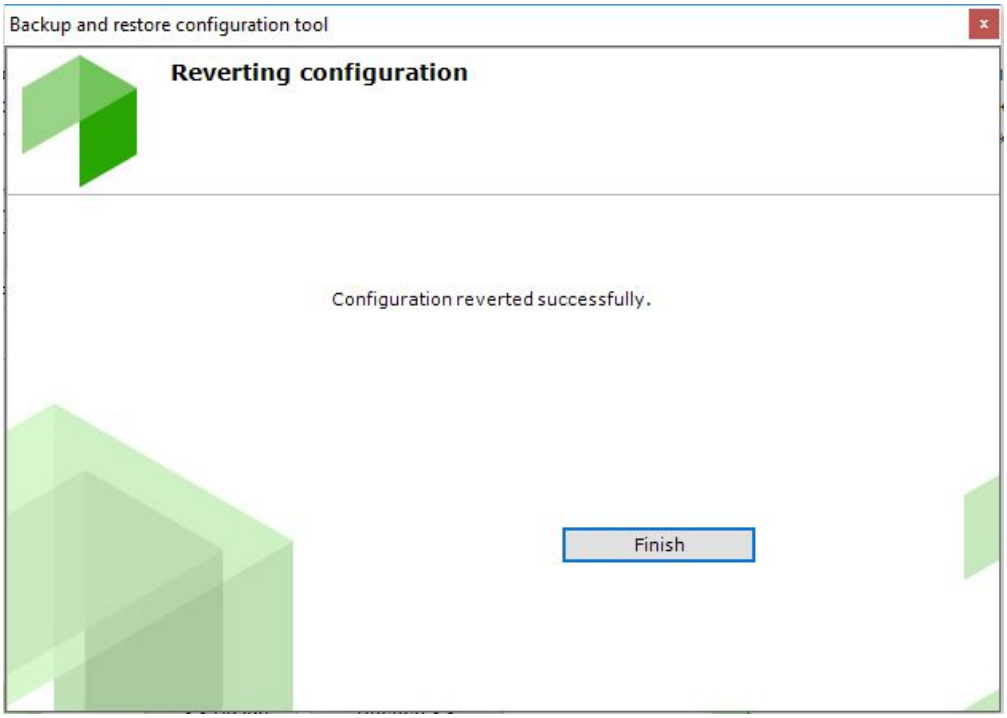
> **Note.**
>
> **Empty configuration** corresponds to when the system was first created.



Rollback of the configuration now begins.



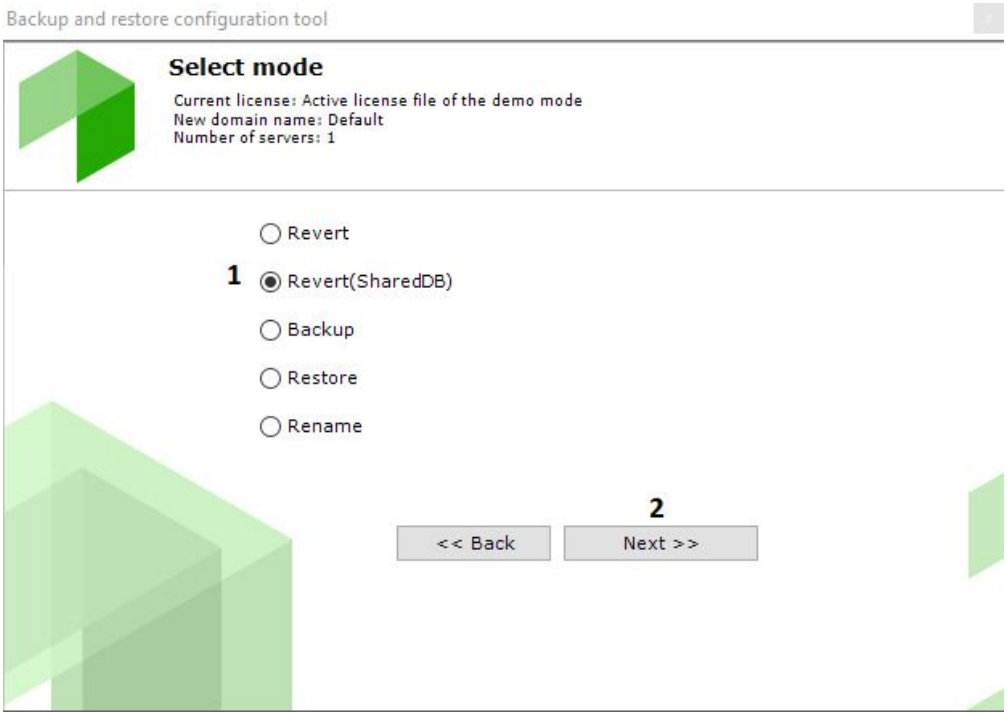
After the operation is completed, a message is shown to notify of successful rollback.



To close the window, click the **Close** button.

9.6.4 Roll back the global configuration to a selected restore point

The system creates a restore point when the global configuration of the Axxon domain is changed (creation / deletion of roles, users, maps, layouts, etc.). You can roll back your configuration to any available restore point at any time. To launch the roll back process, go to the main page of Backup and Restore Utility (**1**) and set the switch to the **Revert (SharedDB)** position. To continue, click **Next >>** (**2**).



Further steps are the same as for rolling back the local configuration (see Roll back the local configuration to a selected restore point).

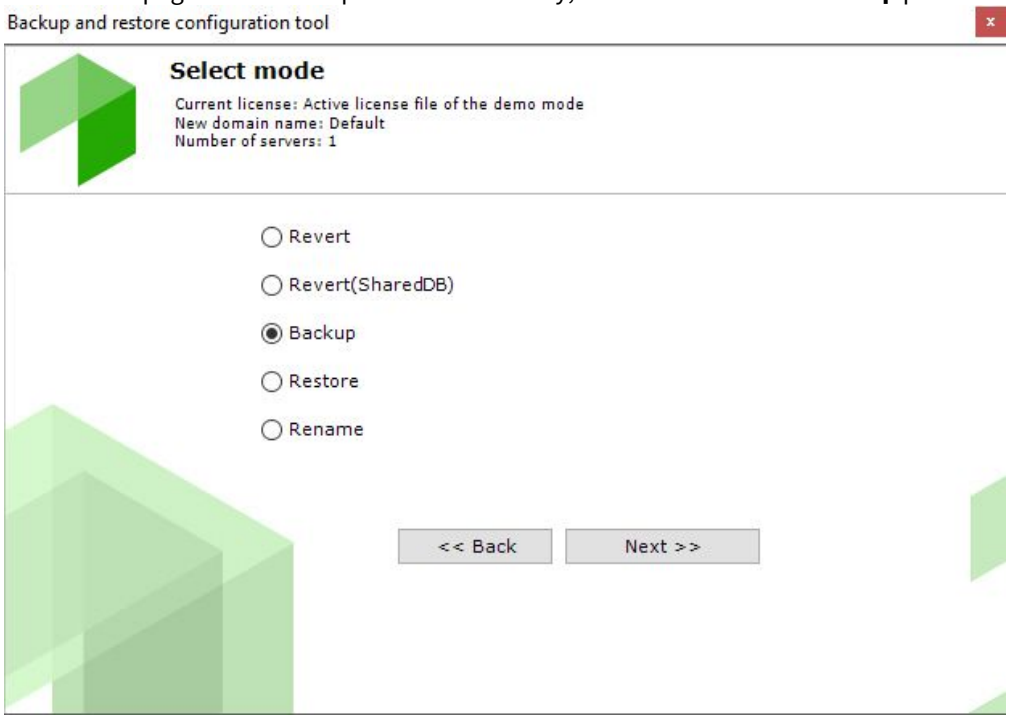
9.6.5 Backing up a configuration

Backing up a configuration involves creating and saving copies of the license key, domain structure, all created objects along with their parameters and relationships with history of changes, as well as database containing users, groups, passwords, and layouts.

> **Attention!**
>
> We recommend you to back up your configuration after any major change in system configuration.

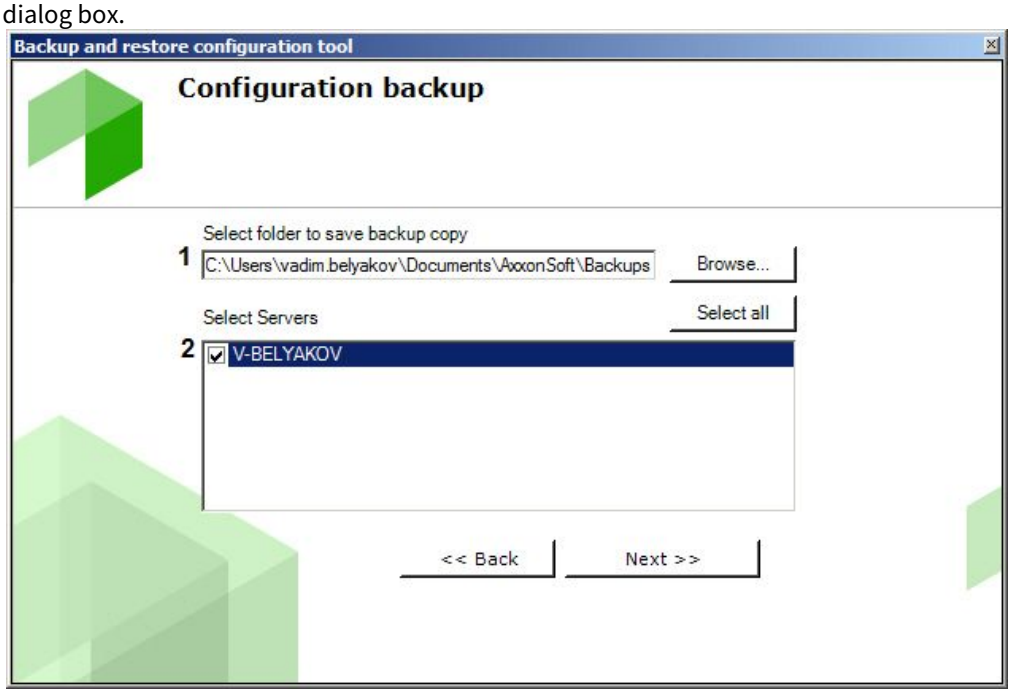
To create a backup of the system configuration:

1. On the main page of the Backup and Restore Utility, set the switch to the **Backup** position.



A window then opens for configuring backup options.

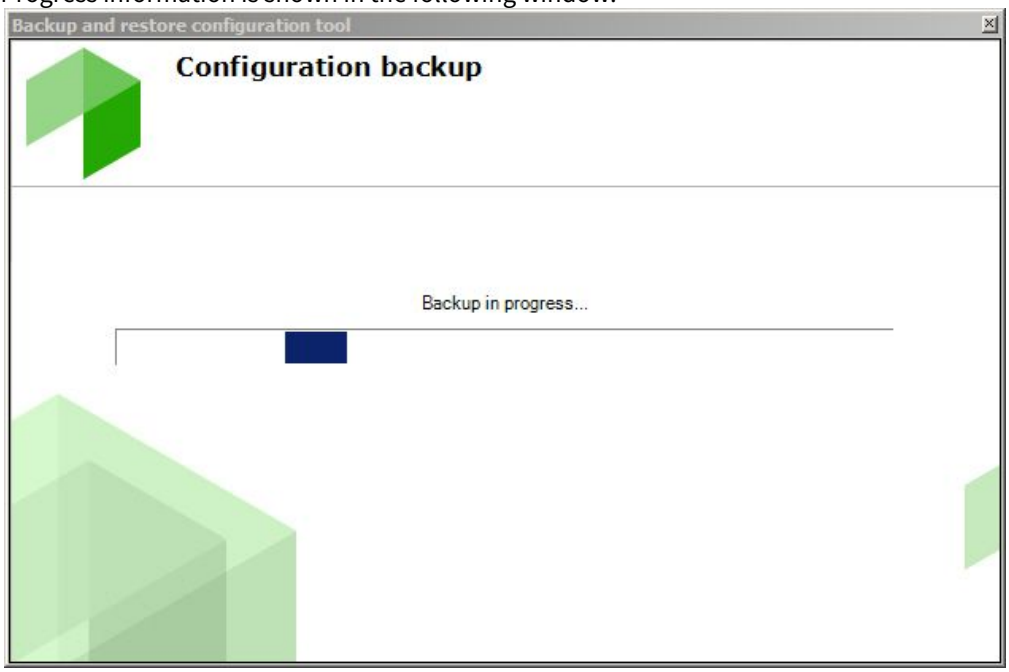
2. In the field (**1**), specify a folder for saving the backup. The default folder is C:\users\username\documents\axxonsoft\backups\. To switch to a different folder, click **Browse** and select a folder in the dialog box.



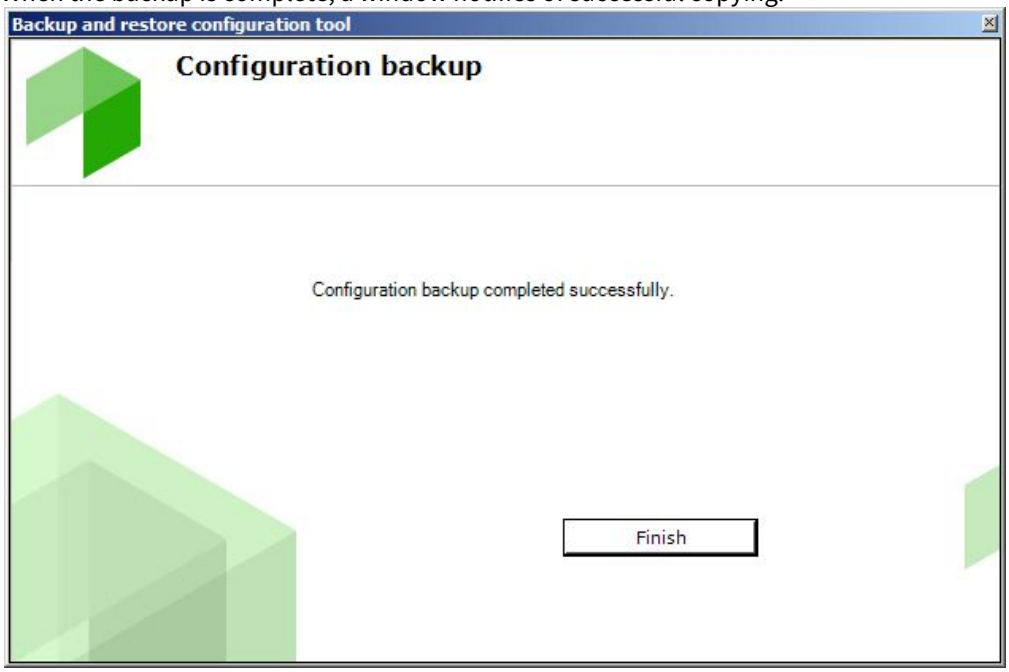
> **Note**
>
> For each copy of the backup configuration, a separate folder is created. The folder name contains the date and time of the backup copy and has the following format: YYYYMMDDHHMMSS. The default time zone is UTC + 0

3. In the other field (**2**), select servers for creating the backup. You can select multiple servers. To select all servers, click the **Select all** button. Start the backup process by clicking the **Next** button.

Progress information is shown in the following window.



4. When the backup is complete, a window notifies of successful copying.



5. To close the window, click the **Close** button.

A backup of the configuration has now been created.

9.6.6 Restoring a configuration

Attention!

We can guarantee that your configuration will be fully recovered if:

- the backup was created on the same software version (including the build number);
- the backup was created on the same PC (for licensing without the Guardant key).

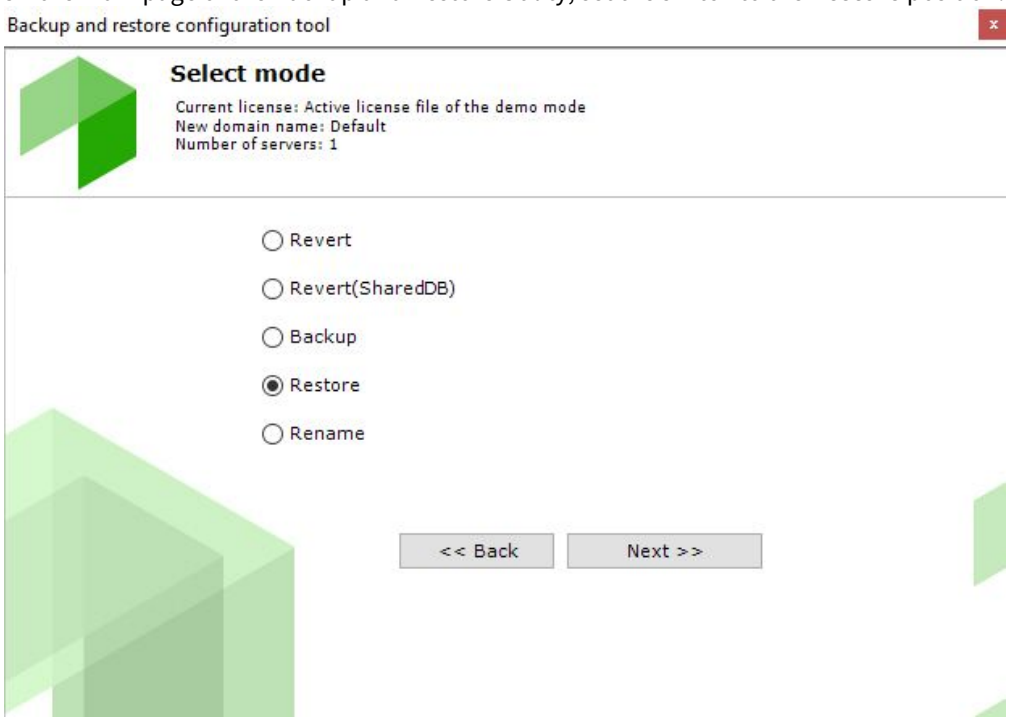
The information about the product version and the PC's HID can be found in a JSON file in the saved configuration folder.

Attention!

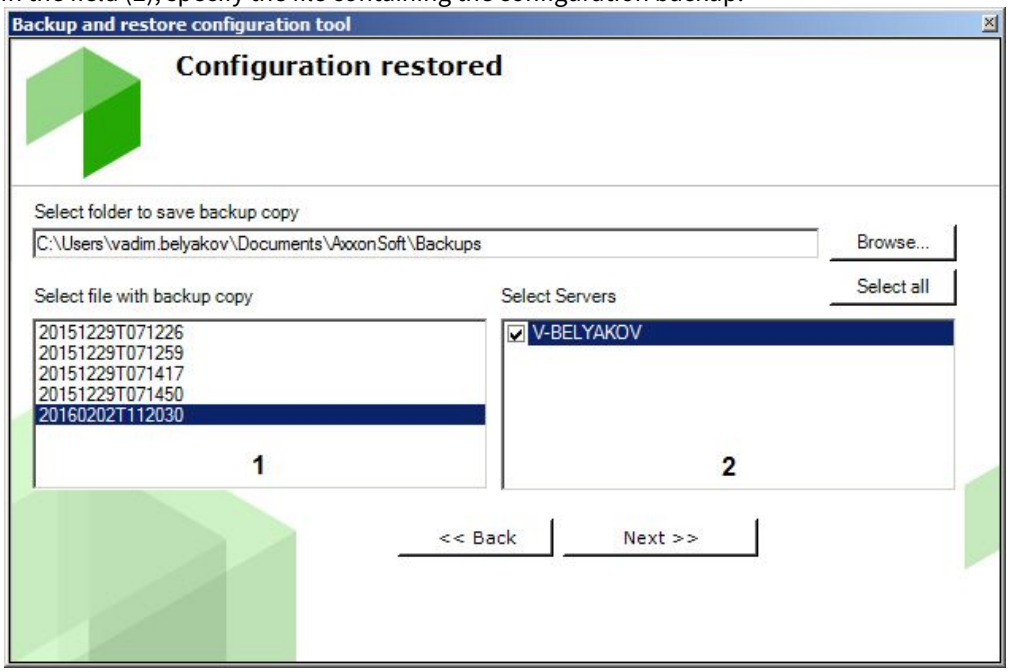
To successfully restore a configuration, please ensure that the current Server name is exactly the same as the Server name in the backup configuration.

To restore a configuration:

1. On the main page of the Backup and Restore Utility, set the switch to the **Restore** position.

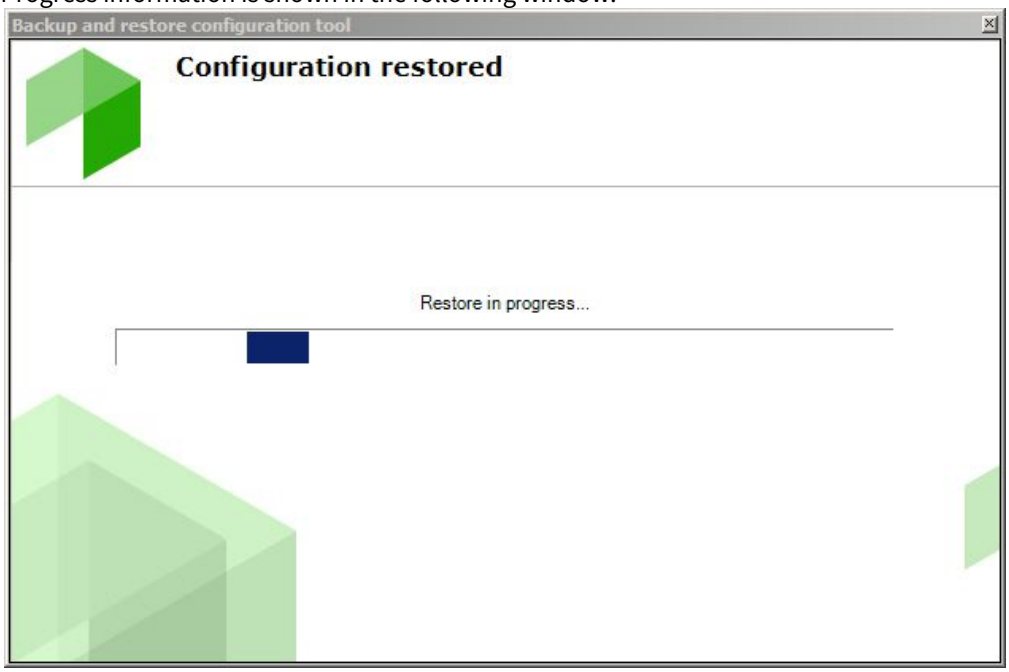


   A window then opens for configuring restoration of the configuration.
2. In the field (**1**), specify the file containing the configuration backup.

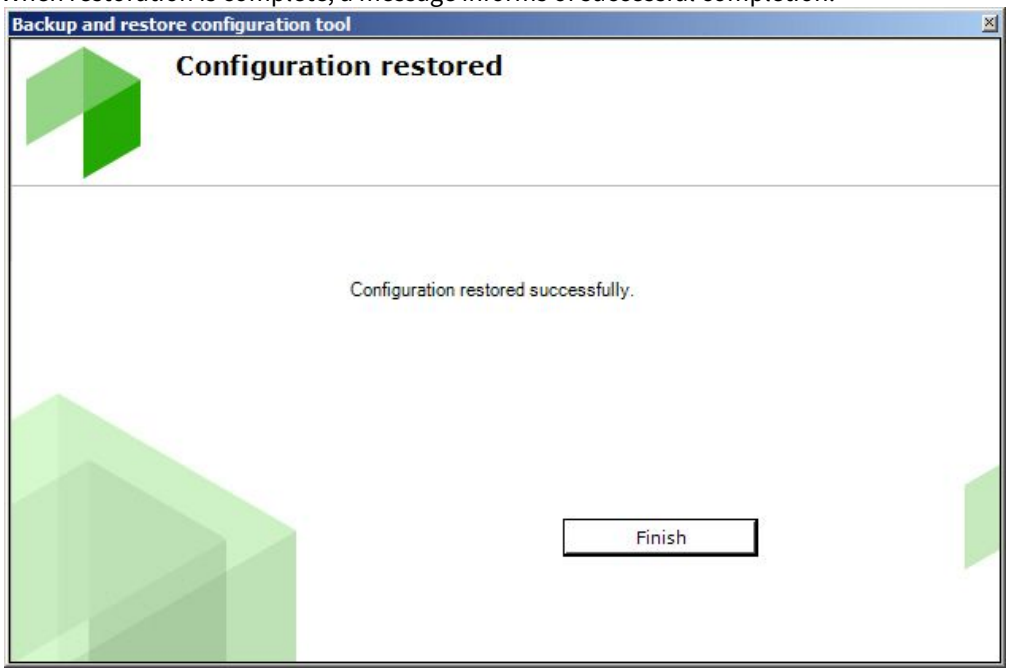


3. After the file is opened, the servers on the current domain are displayed in the other field (**2**). You can select a server in the list only if it is on the domain and the open file contains the corresponding backup. To start restoration, click the **Next** button.

Progress information is shown in the following window.



4. When restoration is complete, a message informs of successful completion.



5. To close the window, click the **Close** button.

Restoration of the configuration is now complete.

> **Attention!**
>
> The *Axxon Next* Server must be restarted after restoring a configuration.

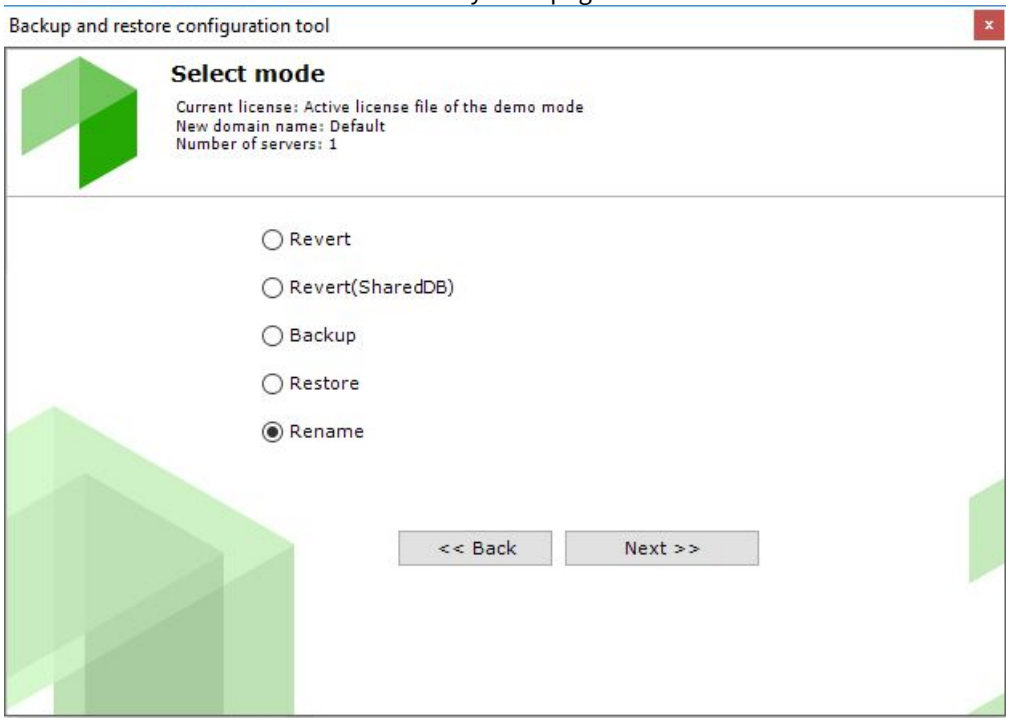
9.6.7 Changing the Server Name

To change the local Server name using the Backup and Restore Utility, perform the following steps:

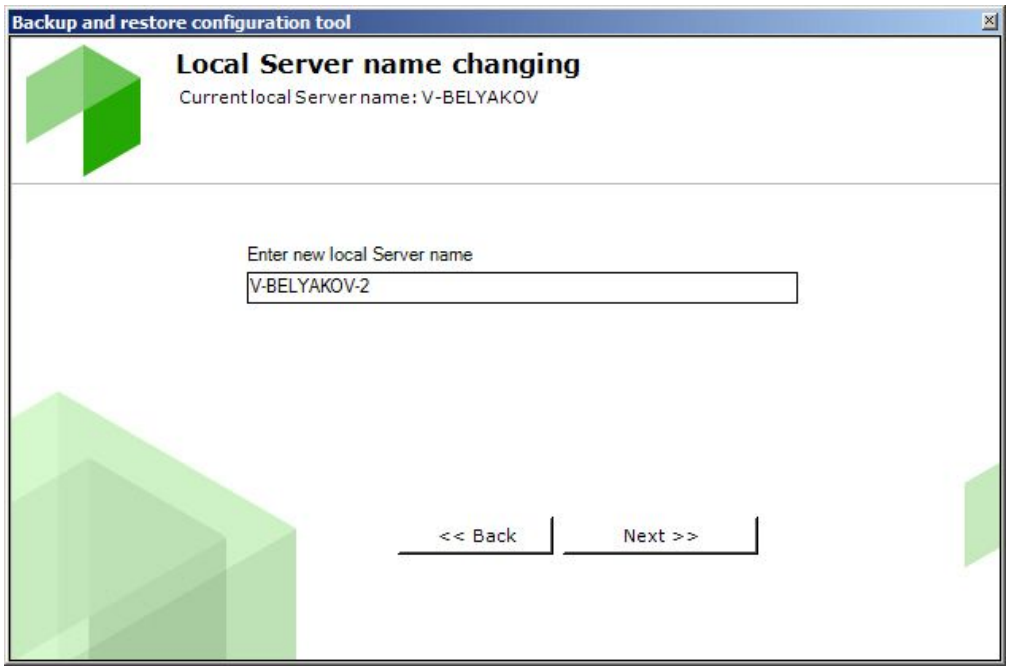
Attention!

After this command is completed, the server is excluded from Axxon domain. You cannot access recorded video (Archive). All custom layouts, maps, automatic rules and macros are deleted.

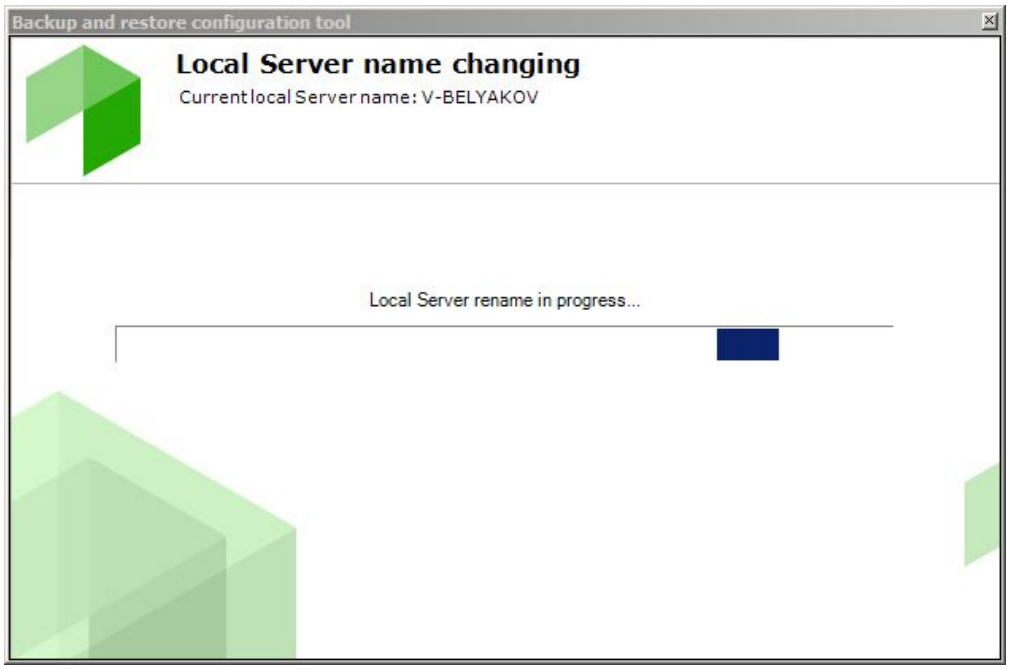
1. Connect to the Server that requires a name change (see Starting and quitting BackupTool.exe).
2. Select **Rename** and click **Next** on the utility main page.



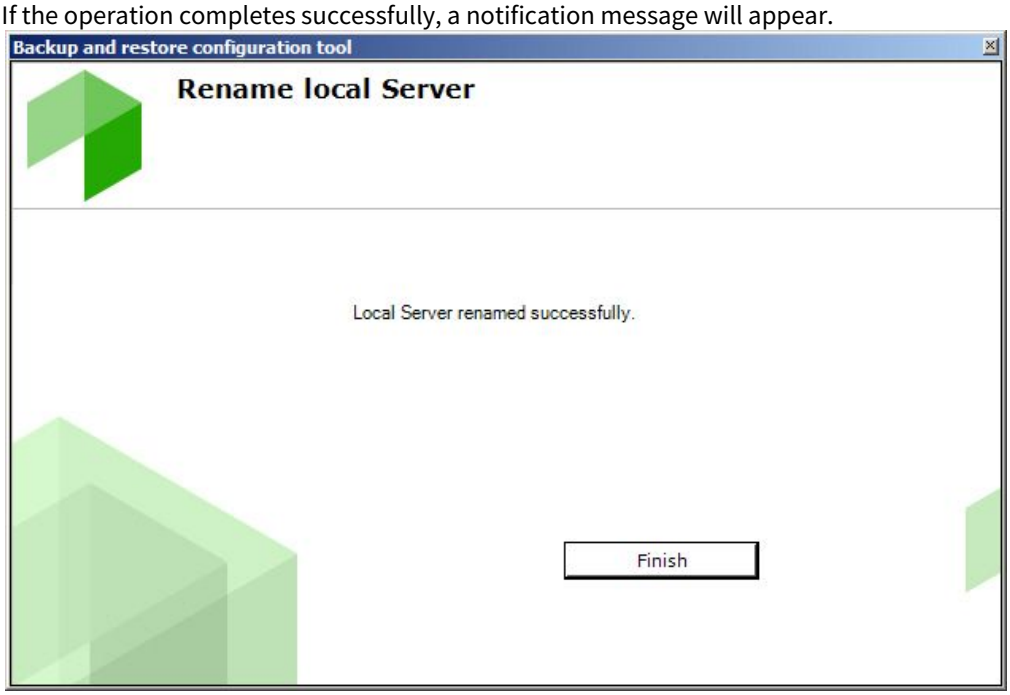
3. Enter the new Server name and click **Next**.



The Server name change process will start.



If the operation completes successfully, a notification message will appear.



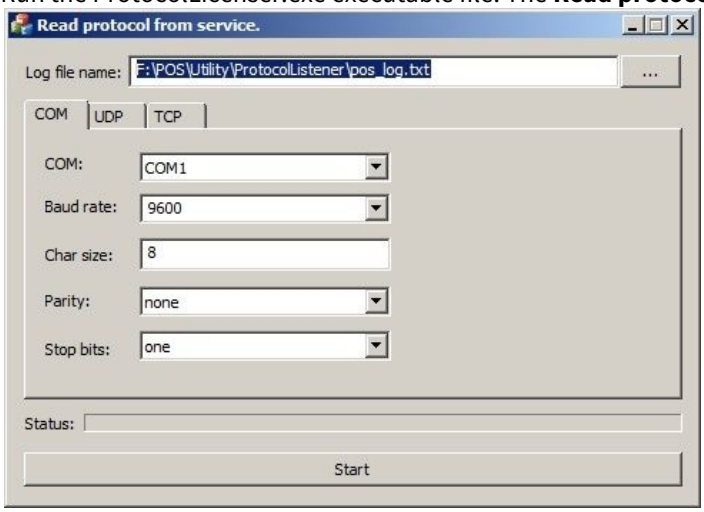
Server name change is complete.

9.7 POS-terminal log collection utility

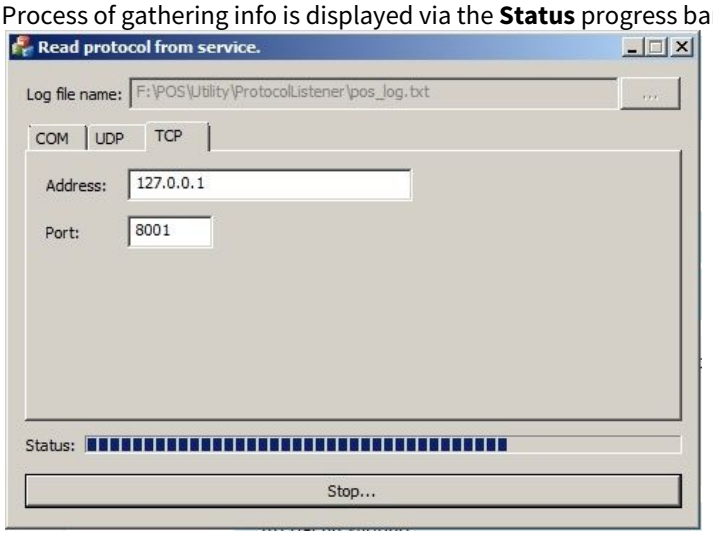
Follow these steps to gather required information about POS terminal using a special utility:

1. If the POS-terminal supports data transmission over Ethernet or via the COM port, download the POS Terminal Data Collection Utility at the AxxonSoft web-site.
2. Extract downloaded archive into any folder.
3. Connect the POS terminal to the computer.

4. Run the ProtocolLicenser.exe executable file. The **Read protocol from service** window opens.



5. In the **Log file name** field specify a full path to the folder where the file with gathered info is to be saved. By default, the file is stored in the folder to which the archive with the utility is unpacked.
6. If the POS-terminal is connected to the computer via COM-port, specify connection parameters in the **COM** tab.
7. If the POS-terminal is connected to the computer via Ethernet, specify connection parameters for TCP or UDP protocol in the corresponding tab.
8. Click **Start** to run log collection.
9. Start using the POS-terminal, i.e. issuing receipts. It is highly recommended to do all the operations including Cancel, Return, etc.
   Process of gathering info is displayed via the **Status** progress bar.



   To finish log collection click **Stop**.

After doing all the operations on the POS-terminal, send the log file with copies of receipts to AxxonSoft.

> **Important!**
>
> If the log file of POS-terminal is to be processed in software, then provide AxxonSoft with protocol description. POS-terminal manufacturer can give this information.

9.8 Console utility for working with archives

vfs_format.exe is a console utility for working with *Axxon Next* archives.

> **Attention!**

For correct operation of the application, you have to remove the corresponding archive volume in Axxon Next without removing the archive files (see Deleting and formatting archive volumes).

The utility is located in < *Axxon Next* installation folder > \bin>.

Attention!

Run the command line as Administrator.

Note

To launch the utility on Linux OS, run the following command:
ngprun start_app vfs_tools + arguments.
To open the argument list, run the vfs_tools --help command.

The utility contains the following options:

Parameter	Description
--help	Help window
--volume	Archive path. **The basic parameter must always be present in the query.** For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAntiqueWhite.afs (for the archive volume as a file) or vfs_format.exe --volume D:\ (for the archive volume as a disk)
--fill	Populating an archive with multiple copies of video footage from another archive. The system fills up a destination archive with multiple copies of a source archive; for easier timeline handling, each new copy is written with 1 minute offset. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume S:\FILEONE.afs --fill G:\
--cache-to-memory	Copying an archive to RAM and further copying to a destination archive. Use with the --fill parameter. This parameter is valid only for archives that could fit to RAM. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume S:\FILEONE.afs --fill G:\ --cache-to-memory
--dump	Collect service information about the archive volume in a TXT or XML file. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAntiqueWhite.afs --dump C:\DumpArc.txt
--expand	Specify the new size of the archive volume in sectors. By default, the size of one sector is 4MB, if the **-format** parameter was not applied. This option is relevant only for the archive volume as a file. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAntiqueWhite.afs --expand 128
--size	Specify the new size of the archive volume in megabytes. This option is relevant only for the archive volume as a file. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAntiqueWhite.afs --size 4096
--format	Split the volume of the archive into sectors of the specified size (in megabytes). For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAntiqueWhite.afs --format 16
--copy	Copying archive volumes. Specify the path and name of the new archive file. If the archive volume is copied as a disk, create a partition, large enough. If you have a smaller partition, then only the most recent entries are copied. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAntiqueWhite.afs --copy C:\NewArc.afs

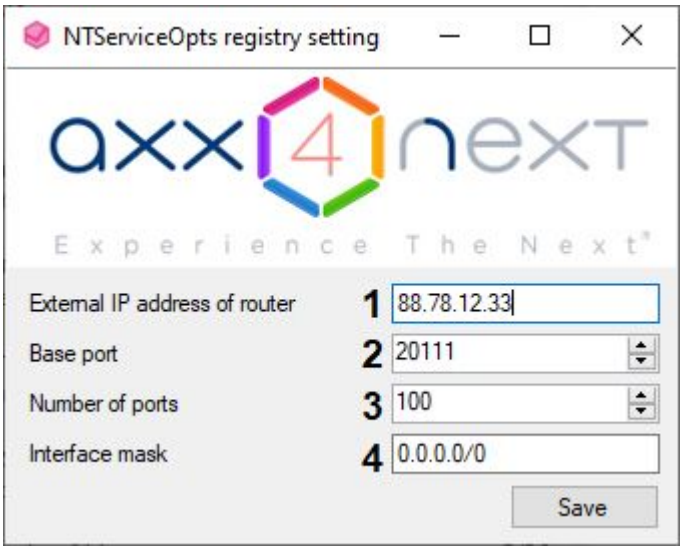
Parameter	Description
--skip-bad-block	Skip the bad sectors when copying the archive volume. This parameter is used only together with **--copy** . For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAliceBlue.afs --copy C:\NewArc.afs --skip-bad-block
--modify-corrupted-flag	Enable / disable re-indexing of the archive volume. **1** - enable reindexing, **0** - disable. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume D:\archiveAliceBlue.afs --modify-corrupted-flag 1
--build-meta	Launch the process of metadata generation for an archive volume (including timeline markers and video footage size per channel). For example: vfs-format.exe --volume D:\ --build-meta **Attention!** Processing large archives may take significant amounts of time.
--clear-meta	Deleting metadata of archive volume. For example: vfs-format.exe --volume D:\ --clear-meta
--log-level	Sets the logging level for this action. Available values: 0 - OFF 10 - ERROR 20 - WARN 40 - INFO 50 - DEBUG 60 - TRACE 100 - ALL
--channel	Specify the archive channel. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume=Q:/archiveAliceBlue.afs --channel=E7C79FA3-E0D4-B6CD-9307-6C24E96C305E You can forced mask the blocks for certain archive channels. **Attention!** Masking of blocks is available only if the archive volume is disabled. For example: vfs_format.exe --volume=Q:/archiveAliceBlue.afs --channel=E7C79FA3-E0D4-B6CD-9307-6C24E96C305E --clear-from=20350101T000000 --clear-to=20370101T000000, where --clear-from – start interval in YYYYMMDDThhmmss format, --clear-to – end interval in YYYYMMDDThhmmss format.

To log error messages, you must add a path for the log file at the end of each query.

For example: vfs_format.exe --volume S:\FILEONE.afs --fill G:\ --log-level=100 > S:\log.txt

9.9 Network settings utility

You can launch the network setup utility from the Windows Start menu: **Start** -> **All Programs** -> **Axxon Next** -> **Utilities** -> **Network settings**.



The utility allows you to:

1. Set the external IP address or DNS name of the router if the Server is located behind the NAT (**1**).

   Note

   You may set multiple interfaces using a comma separated list, such as: "IP Address1 or DNS Name1, IP address2 or DNS Name2".
   For example: 88.78.12.33, ExampleAxxon.ddns.net.

   T
2. Set the port range for operation of the *Axxon Next* Server (**2-3**). To do this, specify the beginning of the range and the number of ports. The number of ports should not be lower than 20.

   Attention!

   Within an Axxon Domain, the port ranges of Servers should not overlap.

   Note

   The number of ports that you select affects the scalability of the system. Keep the following in mind when specifying the number of ports:
   - **6 ports** is a minimum system requirement for machines with Axxon Next.
   - In a 32-bit configuration, for every **32 cameras**, **6 ports are** required (for multistreaming cameras). In a 64-bit configuration, for any number of cameras, **6 ports are** required.
   - **2 ports are** required to write to the **archive**.
   - To use the Object Tracking database (track recording), **1 port** is required.
   - To use basic detection tools, **2 ports are** required.
   - To use Scene Analytics, **2 ports are** required.
   - To use E-mail- (through SMTP), SMS or server audio notification **1 port** is required .
3. Restrict the visibility of Servers from various networks in the Servers list during the *Axxon Next* setup (**4**). Possible values:
   a. "0.0.0.0/0" - Servers from all networks will be visible.
   b. "10.0.1.23/32,192.168.0.7/32" - Only Servers from specified networks will be visible.
   c. "127.0.0.1" - Only Servers from the local network will be visible.

After you save the settings, the Server will be restarted.

10 Appendices

10.1 Appendix 1. Glossary

Active viewing tile - viewing tile currently in use by the user.

AWS (automated workstation) – security system user workstation, a minimally equipped personal computer with Axxon Next software installed.

Archive – all audio/video files stored on a hard disk that can be played and exported to supported formats.

Default archive of a video camera – the archive to which images from a given video camera are recorded during user-initiated alarms.

Audio detection tool – a detection tool is triggered used to analyze the audio signal from a microphone.

Audio recording – 1. the process of recording a digitized audio signal on a hard disk.
2. audio data stored in a specific format on a hard disk.

The audio subsystem encompasses all the tools that provide for the collection of audio data, its processing, and its storage on media.

Video detection tool – a detection tool is triggered used to analyze the video image from a video camera.

Video recording – 1. the process of recording a digitized video signal on a hard disk.
2. video information stored in a specific format on a hard disk.

Video camera – 1. source of a video signal.
2. a system object displaying the properties of an installed video camera and controlling its operation.

The video subsystem encompasses all the tools that provide for the acquisition of video data, its processing, and its storage on media.

Timeline – an interface object used to search for video recordings and navigate an archive.

Input – 1. a physical device intended for receiving information on the status of an object.
2. a system object that displays the properties of an installed Input.

Situation analysis detection – a detection tool is triggered used to analyze the situation in a camera's field of view according to set criteria.

Audio signal detection– a detection tool is triggered which is triggered by an increase in the signal/noise ratio above a set level.

Loss of quality detection– a detection tool is triggered which is triggered by a loss of quality in the video image from a camera.

Position change detection– a detection tool is triggered by a substantial change in the background of a video image indicating a change in the position of the camera in space.

Object disappearance detection– a detection tool is triggered by the disappearance of an object in a set area of a video camera's field of view.

Abandoned object detection– a detection tool is triggered when an object remains motionless in a detection zone for a prolonged period.

No Signal detection– a detection tool is triggered that is triggered by the absence of an audio signal from an audio device.

Line Crossing detection– a detection tool is triggered which is triggered when the trajectory of an object crosses a virtual line in a video camera's field of view.

Object appearance detection– a detection tool is triggered by the appearance of an object in a set area of a video camera's field of view.

Stopping detection– a detection tool is triggered by the cessation of motion in a set area of a video camera's field of view.

Noise detection– a detection tool which is triggered by an decrease in the signal/noise ratio below a set level.

Axxon Domain – a selected group of computers on which the server configuration of the *Axxon Next* software package is installed. Linking the servers in a group makes it possible to set up interaction between them, thus organizing a distributed system.

Detection zone – the area of a video image processed by a detection tool is triggered.

Interface cable - cable used to connect two or more devices together for data transfer.

Interface object - a system object used for interaction between the user and software (data input/output).

Client - designation for a personal computer on which Axxon Next software is installed (or will be installed) as a **Client**. Designation for the graphical shell of the *Axxon Next* software package.

Slideshow – automatic switching of user layouts, or of viewing tiles in a single layout if working with standard layouts.

Licensing - regulating and setting the terms for usage of AxxonSoft software modules.

Detection zone – 1. the area of a video image processed by a detection tool is triggered.
2. a tool which allows the user to mark out an area of the video image which is not to be processed by a detection tool is triggered.

Microphone – 1. a source of audio signals.
2. a system object used to manage the parameters of audio signal reception.

Video surveillance monitor – an interface object used to manage the user interfaces of the Axxon Next software, e.g., layouts, viewing tiles, various panels and context menus, etc.

Viewing tile - interface object displaying the video stream coming from a certain video camera and enabling control of that video camera.

Dial panel – panel (part of the PTZ control panel) used to dial a preset.

Archive navigation panel – all interface objects used to work with an archive, e.g., timeline, list of alarm events, etc.

Control panel – panel made up of tabs accessible to the user, used to navigate from one group of interface objects to another.

Playback control panel – panel containing buttons to control playback of video recordings: Play, Pause, Go to next video recording, etc.

PTZ control panel – all interface objects used to control a certain PTZ device.

Layout control ribbon – panel containing tools to create, edit, and manage layouts.

PTZ device – a system object displaying the properties of an installed PTZ camera device.

> **Note**
>
> Also used to designate a physical device

The PTZ subsystem encompasses all the tools that provide for remote control of a PTZ device and the lens of a video camera.

The analytics subsystem encompasses all the tools that provide for automatic analysis of incoming video and audio data.

The Forensic Search in archive subsystem is a set of tools for searching video recordings in the archive by using video image metadata.

The Output subsystem encompasses all the tools that provide for the triggering of an execution device connected to the embedded Output port of a video camera or IP server when a detection tool is triggered (including one which processes the embedded Input of a video camera or IP server) is triggered.

The notification subsystem encompasses all the tools that provide for notification of the user about events which have occurred in the system.

Event registration subsystem – all the tools that provide for the collection of data about system events, processing, and its storage on media.

Pre-alarm recording is the period of pre-event recording that will be added to the beginning of an alarm event recording.

Preset – preprogrammed positioning of a PTZ device.

Software package – all software and hardware tools used together to build a security system.

Software module – a program or functionally complete component of a program used to perform a specific functional task (perform a user function).

Layout – preserved positioning of viewing tiles relative to each other.

Distributed system – a group consisting of several interacting Axxon Next servers (up to four) and clients (unlimited number). Axxon Next servers are linked within an Axxon Domain.

Output – 1 a physical device/electromechanical switch.
2. a system object that displays the properties of an installed Output.

Server – designation for a personal computer on which the **Server** configuration of Axxon Next software is installed (or will be installed).

Security system – a set of devices used for video surveillance, audio surveillance, and object recognition, all controlled by the Axxon Next software system.

The system log is a log containing system information on events, including system error entries.

Object tracking – a function which allows an operator to visually track the movement of objects in a camera's field of view.

Alarm flag – the flag symbol designating either the moment an alarm event began or a certain moment before the beginning of an alarm event.

Color coding - software-based graphical notification to a security system operator about the current status or operating mode of system objects (equipment, software modules).

Facial vector - mathematical representation of a facial image created upon face capture.

Captured faces - images detected on video by the facial detection tool.

Recognized faces - captured faces that reach a pre-defined degree of similarity against reference facial images.

Reference faces - pre-defined facial images to compare captured faces to.

10.2 Appendix 2. Known issues in the Axxon Next Software Package

10.2.1 Possible Errors During Installation

On page:

- Error starting NGP Host Service
- Errors Connecting to the Postgres Database
- Error installing Drivers Pack
- Window OS 10 installation error
- An error occurred while installing on Windows with the language pack Norsk (bokmål)
- Error uninstalling Axxon Next on systems with Videoinspector installed

10.2.1.1 Error starting NGP Host Service

If port 20111 is busy during installation of Axxon Next (for example, because of nethost.exe processes that have not been unloaded since removal of the previous version), an error message regarding the launch of NGP Host Service appears.

To continue installation, free up port **20111** and try again.

10.2.1.2 Errors Connecting to the Postgres Database

After installation of the Postgres database, the Axxon Next installer may quit prematurely. This situation may be associated with the inability of the installer to connect to the Postgres database, if the firewall is enabled. To prevent this, disable your firewall during installation.

Note

Disabling the firewall during installation can cause another problem: see No signal from video cameras and failure to connect to other servers.

10.2.1.3 Error installing Drivers Pack

In some cases, you may encounter errors while installing Drivers Pack:

```
Installation failed because the Universal C Runtime is not installed. Please run
Windows Update and install all required Windows updates(KB2999226). You can download
the UCRT separately from here: 'https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2999226'
```

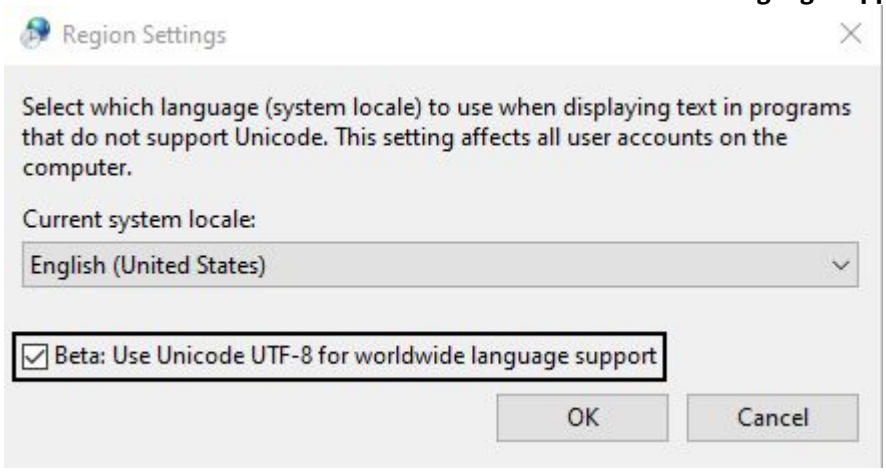
This can be solved by installing the Windows update KB2999226.

10.2.1.4 Window OS 10 installation error

When you install Axxon Next on Windows 10.0.17763 and up you may see the Create Recovery Archive error message.

To fix the error, do as follows:

1. Go to Control Panel → Clock and Region → Region → Administrative tab → Change System Locale
2. Deselect the checkbox **Beta: Use Unicode UTF-8 for worldwide language support**.



3. Reinstall *Axxon Next*.

10.2.1.5 An error occurred while installing on Windows with the language pack Norsk (bokmål)

Installing the Axxon Next server on Windows with the language pack Norsk (bokmål) is not possible due to incompatibility with PostgreSQL.

You must install Norsk Language Pack (Nynorsk).

10.2.1.6 Error uninstalling Axxon Next on systems with Videoinspector installed

In some cases, uninstalling Axxon Next may be impossible if Videoinspector is used.

For Axxon Next to work correctly, you are advised to first uninstall Videoinspector.

10.2.2 Possible Errors During Start-Up

10.2.2.1 The Client cannot be connected to the Server

If a "**Cannot find Server**" message appears after you connect to a Server, do the following:

1. Go to **Control Panel** -> **Regional Settings** -> **More**.
2. Change current language of non-Unicode applications to the one that is present in keyboard settings, and may appear in user name and folders.
3. Reboot the PC.

If a **Connection Error** message appears after you connect to a Server, do the following:

1. Go to **Local Security Policy interface**.
2. Select **Local Policies** -> **Security Settings**.
3. Turn off the following parameter: **System cryptography: use FIPS compliant algorithms for encryption, hashing, and signing**.

Launching the Axxon Next software program with client logging enabled can take a long time when the *ESET NOD32 Antivirus 4* **Real-time file system protection** mode is on.

To solve this problem, add the Axxon Next installation folder and the folder with the client logs (<Letter of system disk>:\Users\<User>\Appdata\Local\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext\logs) to the list of exceptions in ESET NOD32 Antivirus 4.

10.2.3 Possible Errors During Operation

On page:

- All video channels or archives stop working once the license maximum is reached
- No signal from video cameras and failure to connect to other Servers
- Incorrect display of Client interface elements
- Server error on Windows Server 2012
- Emergency shutdown of the Client on Windows 8.1
- Error creating new archives even when license restriction on total capacity is observed
- Axxon Next VMS operation with Windows Defender software
- Upper panel display problem
- High CPU load during OpenGL software emulation
- Axxon Next operation with NetLimiter 2
- Exported videos' playback in Movies and TV application
- Axxon Next operation on Windows N and KN editions

10.2.3.1 All video channels or archives stop working once the license maximum is reached

If the activation key allows using fewer video channels than currently created in the system, it will not be possible to work with all video channels. To resume operation, remove the objects corresponding to the excess video channels and restart the Server.

Note

Restart the Server through the Start menu as follows:
1. **All Programs -> Axxon Next -> Shut Down Server**
2. **All Programs -> Axxon Next -> Start Server**

Similarly, if the activation key allows using archives with a total capacity less than the current one, you should adjust the capacity of the archives to the required amount and then restart the Server.

10.2.3.2 No signal from video cameras and failure to connect to other Servers

If the Windows Firewall (or firewall of other manufacturers) was disabled during installation of *Axxon Next*, *Axxon Next* services and applications will not be automatically added to the list of firewall exceptions.

After you turn on the firewall, you may see no signal from cameras in both main and web Client, and no possibility to connect to other Servers.

To solve this problem, add the following applications to the firewall exceptions: Apphost.exe, NetHost.exe, AxxonNext.exe, and LicenceTool.exe.

10.2.3.3 Incorrect display of Client interface elements

Client interface elements may be distorted on systems with some versions of GeForce drivers (such as 327.23, 337.88) installed.

In some cases this problem is solved by disabling stream optimization for the axxonnext.exe process:

1. Run **Control panel** -> **NVIDIA control panel**-> **3D parameters**-> **Software settings**.
2. Click the **Add** button and select the axxonnext.exe file (*<Axxon Next installation directory >/bin*).
3. Set the **Off** parameter for the **Threaded optimisation** function.
4. Click the **Apply** button.

If this solution does not eliminate the problem, then install an older driver for the graphics card.

10.2.3.4 Server error on Windows Server 2012

You may experience errors when running the Server on Windows Server 2012. To fix the errors:

1. Go to the registry branch HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\Session Manager\SubSystems\.
2. Find the **Windows** parameter and change its value as follows: in the string "SharedSection = 1024,20480, **768** ", replace **768** with **4096**.
3. Save the changes and restart the computer.

10.2.3.5 Emergency shutdown of the Client on Windows 8.1

You may see the Client shutting down on Windows 8.1 with an error: " The name of the failed module: KERNELBASE.dll Exception code: 0xe0434352 ".

In this case, please contact Microsoft support.

10.2.3.6 Error creating new archives even when license restriction on total capacity is observed

If the user creates archives at the same time (in other words, without applying changes) while deleting some existing archives, creation of the archives may be forbidden even if the total archive capacity does not exceed the amount of the license restriction.

> **Note**
>
> This happens because when verifying the license restrictions, the size of created archives is calculated based on the total capacity at the time when changes were applied.

In such a situation, the user should first delete the unnecessary archives and apply changes, then create new archives.

10.2.3.7 Axxon Next VMS operation with Windows Defender software

If you have *Windows Defender* software installed in your system, some problems may occur when accessing and saving data to the archive, as well as significant slowing down of MomentQuest searches.

As a workaround, you can either disable *Windows Defender* or add AppHost.exe, AppHostSvc.exe and vfs_format.exe files to the exceptions list.

10.2.3.8 Upper panel display problem

In some cases, the Client may have a problem displaying the upper panel.

In this case, it is recommended to install the most recent version of Intel graphics subsystem drivers.

10.2.3.9 High CPU load during OpenGL software emulation

If your computer's graphics card does not meet OpenGL requirements (see Limitations of the Axxon Next Software Package), OpenGL can be emulated in software.

But in this case the CPU load may be high.

10.2.3.10 Axxon Next operation with NetLimiter 2

If *NetLimiter 2* is installed in the system, there may be a significantly increased load on the processor when working with *Axxon Next*.

This problem is resolved by removing *NetLimiter 2.*

10.2.3.11 Exported videos' playback in Movies and TV application

Due to the lack of G.711 and G.726 codecs support in Windows 10's "Movies and TV" app, the app doesn not play audio in exported video.

You can use alternative video viewer applications to obtain the full playback.

10.2.3.12 Axxon Next operation on Windows N and KN editions

Axxon Next is not guaranteed to work on Windows N or KN editions. For correct operation, you need to install the Media Feature Pack.

10.3 Appendix 3. Assigning of the domain takes place when the Axxon Next server is installed

The Windows OS will create two accounts when the Axxon Next software package is installed using a **Client and Server** type of configuration.

1. An account with administrator rights which is used by the Axxon Next file browser. The name of this account is set during installation of Axxon Next (see Installation).
   For Axxon Next to function correctly, this account must have Windows administrator rights. If the account is a domain user account, you must also add the account to the **Users** and **Power Users** groups.

   > **Note**
   >
   > The file browser helps to navigate through the Server's file system (such as when choosing disks for log volumes)

   The account can also be used for configuring access rights to the hard disk.
2. Axxonpostgres – an account under which the log data database service is started.

> **Note**
>
> A log database (Postgres) is used for storing system events

10.4 Appendix 4. Using Axxon Next with anti-virus software

On page:

- NOD32
- ESET Smart Security
- AVG
- DrWeb

To ensure the correct operation of Axxon Next, it is recommended to configure the antivirus as follows:

1. Add the following processes to the exclusion list:
    a. consul.exe
    b. nomad.exe
    c. apphost.exe
    d. postgres.exe
2. Add the following folders to the exclusion list:
    a. C:\ProgramData\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext
    b. C:\Program Files\AxxonSoft\AxxonNext
    c. C:\Program Files\Common Files\AxxonSoft
    d. Postgres and metadata folders if they are not default
3. Add the following ports to the exclusion list:
    a. 20109-20210
    b. 4000 (only for Failover installation type)
    c. 4646-4648 (only for Failover installation type)
    d. 8300-8302 (only for Failover installation type)
    e. 8500 (only for Failover installation type)
    f. 8600 (only for Failover installation type)

Depending on the anti-virus software that you use, when you install, start, and use Axxon Next, your anti-virus software may ask for permission for the software components to perform Internet access.

It is recommended that you allow these components to do so for proper functioning of the application.

Recommendations for specific anti-virus programs are given below.

10.4.1 NOD32

When using NOD32 Antivirus, it is strongly recommended to either disable the Web Access Protection service or to add the IP addresses of IP cameras to the list of exceptions for anti-virus scanning.

See also section Possible Errors During Start-Up.

10.4.2 ESET Smart Security

If you use ESET Smart Security, select automatic mode with Firewall exceptions and add the remote servers to the exceptions by creating network rules (for help with creating these rules, refer to the official user guide for the anti-virus software).

10.4.3 AVG

When using AVG on a configuration with many video cameras, it is strongly recommended to add the IP addresses of IP cameras to the list of exceptions. Otherwise, the avgsa.exe process may severely slow down the CPU.
This action can be performed only in the paid version of AVG.

When installing Axxon Next, allow the NetHost.exe and ngpsh.exe processes to run.

10.4.4 DrWeb

If you use DrWeb anti-virus software, perform the following actions before installing Axxon Next:

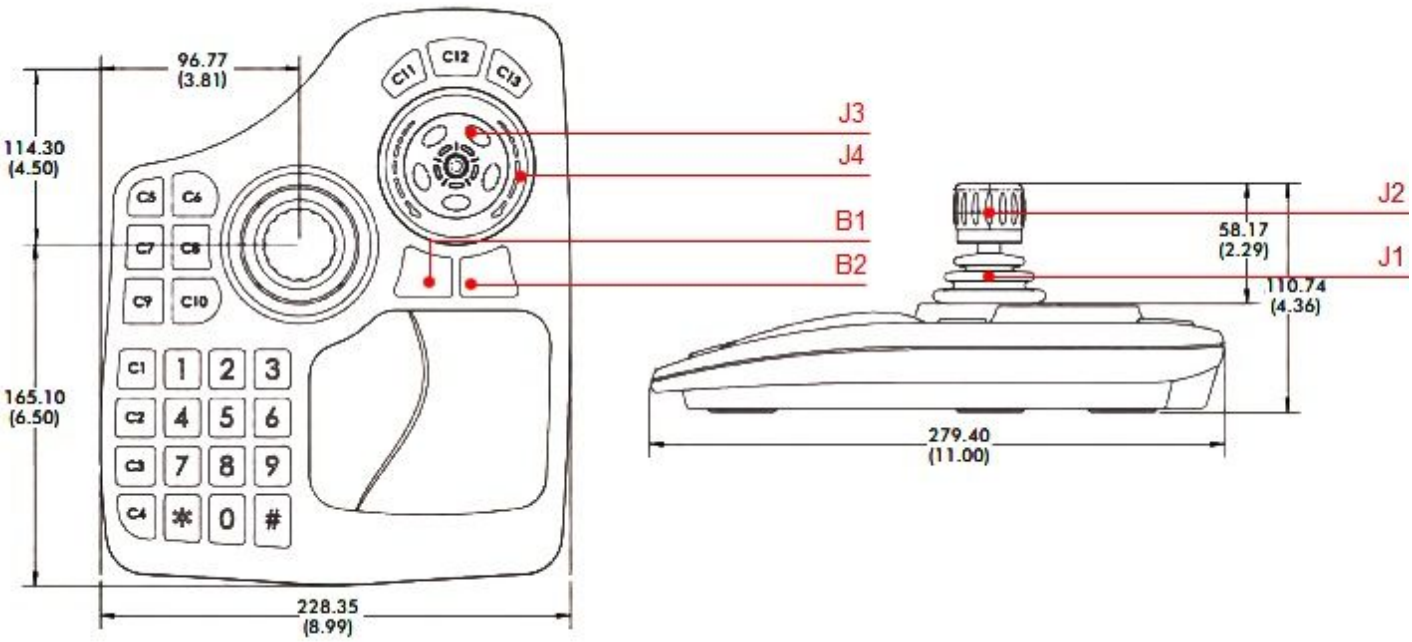
1. Disable automatic start of the DrWeb firewall.
2. In the proactive protection settings, select the option to use custom settings and enable the following options:
    a. Allow low-level disk access
    b. Allow system services
    c. Allow loading drivers
    d. Allow user drivers
    e. Allow Winlogon shell parameters
3. In the SpiDer Gate settings, add the apphost.exe and AxxonNext.exe processes to the list of exceptions for scanning of incoming traffic. If possible, it is recommended to disable scanning of incoming and outgoing traffic.

10.5 Appendix 5. Using CH VM-Desktop USB multifunction controllers with Axxon Next

CH VM-Desktop USB multifunction controllers offer a range of input controls:

- Three-axis joystick for PTZ and digital zoom control (**J1** and **J2**)
- Jog/shuttle dial (**J3** and **J4**)
- 27 keys

- 10 number keys
- * key
- # key
- Programmable keys **C1** to **C13** (keys cannot be remapped in Axxon Next)
- Two additional keys (**B1** and **B2**)



The multifunction controller can be used to operate Axxon Next on the active monitor.

> **Note**
>
> The active monitor is either the main one (if all additional monitors are inactive or not connected) or an additional one, if the additional monitor is active (see Configuring Interfaces on a Multi-Monitor Computer).
> The active monitor can be selected only by using the mouse. If no mouse is present, the multifunction controller will work on the main monitor only.

A description of key functions is given in the table.

Key	When available	Function
J1	Always	PTZ control for the selected camera. If the selected camera does not support PTZ control, the action is ignored.
J2	Always	Optical zoom control for the selected camera. If the selected camera does not support PTZ control, the action is ignored.
J3 (rotate counterclockwise)	Archive mode	Go to previous frame. If playback is active, the action is ignored.
J3 (rotate clockwise)	Archive mode	Go to next frame. If playback is active, the action is ignored.
J4 (rotate counterclockwise)	Archive mode	Go to previous video fragment.
J4 (rotate clockwise)	Archive mode	Go to next video fragment.
J4	Live Video mode	Iris control for the selected camera.
1	Live Video mode	Start/stop patrol mode.
2.3	Live Video mode	Focus control for the selected camera.
*** n #**	Always	Select a camera in a layout. n is the number of the camera to be activated via the number keys. If the camera with the relevant number is not in the current layout, a search is performed for the minimum layout containing the camera; the minimum layout is then displayed. If no such layout exists, a layout with one camera is created.
# n #	Always	Go to layout. n is the layout to be activated via the number keys; the number corresponds to the order in which the layout appears in the list.
C10	Always	Clear number. If the operator did not finish typing the number of a camera or layout (the # key was not pressed), pressing the C10 key clears the previously entered number.
C1	Alarm Management mode	Accept alarm with **False Alarm** resolution.
C2	Alarm Management mode	Accept alarm with **Non-Critical Alarm** resolution.
C3	Alarm Management mode	Accept alarm with **Critical Alarm** resolution.

C4	Always	Manually initiate an alarm and go to Alarm Management mode. Go to Alarm Management mode if an alarm has been previously initiated.
C5	Always	Increase size of layout cell
C6	Always	Reduce size of layout cell
C7	Always	Go to previous layout in the list
C8	Always	Go to next layout in the list
C11	Archive mode	Slow down playback
C12	Archive mode	Start/pause video playback
C13	Archive mode	Speed up playback
B2	Archive mode, Alarm Management mode	Go to Live Video mode (without alarm classification)
B2	Live Video mode	Go to Archive Mode
C9	Archive mode	Open/hide calendar
B1, B2	Open calendar	Cycle through calendar elements (equivalent to pressing the tab key) **days of month - hours - minutes - seconds - am/pm** (**B2** key) and in reverse (by pressing the **B1** key)
J3	Open calendar	Navigate by days and set hours, minutes, seconds, and AM/PM
J4	Open calendar	Navigate by months

10.6 Appendix 6. Hotkeys in Axxon Next

Axxon Next comes with the following default hotkeys:

Function	Hot key
Global General	
Activate panel of cameras	F4
Activate panel of configuration	F5
Activate panel of layouts	F2
Activate panel of video walls	F3
Select item of menu and panels, click Save, Apply, OK	Enter
Navigation. Down	Down

Navigation. Left	Left
Navigation. Right	Right
Navigation. Up	Up
Open menu of current layout	F1
Open panel with list of devices	F7
Open alarm panel	F6
Hide menu/panel, click Cancel	Esc
Lock application	Ctrl + Alt + L
Remove current value	Delete
DIgit 1	D1
Digit 9	D9
Layouts	
Camera selection in current layout	Ctrl + N
Select monitor by number	Shift + N
Select layout by number	Alt + N
Select the previous* camera in current layout cell	
Select the next* camera in current layout cell	
Navigation the cameras, upward shift	Alt + Up
Navigation the cameras, left shift	Alt + Left
Navigation the cameras, downward shift	Alt + Down
Navigation the cameras, right shift	Alt + Right
Move to the previous layout	Shift + Left
Move to the next layout	Shift + Right
Increase layout cell	Ctrl + Add (+)
Decrease layout cell	Ctrl + Subtract (-)
*** by ID**	
Live Video display mode Videocamera	
Open menu of selected camera and select item	F9
Switch to archive mode	Ctrl + Tab
Switch to alarm classification mode	Ctrl + R

Switch to search in archive mode	Ctrl + F
Arm	Ctrl + A
Disarm	Ctrl + D
PTZ	
Move up	NumPad8
Move left	NumPad4
Move down	NumPad2
Move right	NumPad6
Close iris	Next
Focus far	End
Open iris	PageUp
Patrolling	Multiply (*)
Focus near	Home
Zoom in	NumPad9
Zoom out	NumPad3
Archive	
Open menu of selected camera and select item	Ctrl + E
Pause / Play	Ctrl + Space
Switch to Time Compressor mode	Ctrl + T
Go to the previous video clip	Ctrl + Shift + Left
Go to the previous frame	Ctrl + Left
Go to the next video clip	Ctrl + Shift + Right
Go to the next frame	Ctrl + Right
Show calendar	F8
Increase playback speed	Ctrl + Up
Reduce playback speed	Ctrl + Down
TimeCompressor	
Pause / Play	Ctrl + Space
Move home	Ctrl + B
Increase number of objects	Ctrl + Up
Decrease number of objects	Ctrl + Down
Alarms	

Go to the previous frame	Ctrl + Left
Go to the next frame	Ctrl + Right
Resolution False alarm	Ctrl + D3
Resolution Non-critical alarm	Ctrl + D2
Resolution Critical alarm	Ctrl + D1
Increase playback speed	Ctrl + Up
Reduce playback speed	Ctrl + Down

10.7 Appendix 7. Automated configuration backup and restore

You can use the ngpsh.exe utility and json commands to back up and restore your system configuration.

> **Attention!**
>
> These configuration backups are incompatible with those created with the Backup and Configuration Recovery utility, and vice versa.

To create a configuration backup:

1. Use Windows command line to access the <Axxon Next installation directory>\AxxonNext\bin folder.
2. Execute the following command:

```
ngpsh.exe backup backupJson [path_to_backup_folder] [node_name] [local] [shared]
[license] [tickets]
```

Where

Parameter	Description
path_to_backup_folder	**Required parameter.** Specify a folder to save the configuration backup to. You have to use two "\" characters in the path.
node_name	**Required parameter.** Name of a Server whose configuration you want to save.
local	Add it, if you need to save the local configuration for this Server: all created objects along with their parameters, links and changes' histories.
shared	Add it, if you need to save the global configuration for an Axxon domain: users, layouts, etc.
license	Add it, if you need to save a license.
tickets	Add it, if you need to save the Axxon domain structure.

An example:

```
ngpsh.exe backup backupJson c:\\backups Server1 local
```

To restore a configuration from a backup:

```
ngpsh.exe backup restoreJson [path_to_backup_file] [node_name] [local] [shared]
[license] [tickets] [deleteLocal] [deleteShared]
```

Where

Parameter	Description
deleteLocal	Add it, if you need to clear the local configuration from objects not present in the backup copy.
deleteShared	Add it, if you need to clear the global configuration from objects not present in the backup copy.

An example:

```
ngpsh.exe backup restoreJson c:\\backups\Server1.json local
```

10.8 Appendix 8. Configuring and operating the Axxon Next in Linux OS

10.8.1 Linux OS supported versions

Axxon Next supports all 64-bit distribution packages based on Debian 9, Debian 10, and Debian 11, including Ubuntu 18, Ubuntu 19, and Ubuntu 20.

Note

The support of the distribution packages based on Debian 11 is valid for *Axxon Next* 4.5.0 and newer.

Attention!

The stable operation of the Client is not guaranteed on Ubuntu 18 and 19. It is recommended to install only *Axxon Next* Server. Both the Client and *Axxon Next* Server are supported on Ubuntu 20 and newer versions.
If *Axxon Next* is installed on AstraLinux, only the SE 1.6 version is certified and supported.

The Client can be installed only after installing the Server of the same version.

Updating the OS will not affect *Axxon Next* performance. Still, it is recommended to make a backup copy of the configuration before updating the OS (see Backing up a configuration).

Installing the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS
Installing the Axxon Next Client on Linux OS

10.8.2 Axxon Next limitations in Linux OS

The following features are currently not available in *Axxon Next* operating on Linux OS:

1. POS devices (see Configuring POS devices).
2. Intel Quick Sync Video (see Hardware-based decoding with Intel Quick Sync Video).
3. Upgrading Servers within a cluster via the supervisor web interface (see Upgrading Servers within a cluster).
4. Upgrading remote Clients on any OS via Server on Linux OS (see Automatic update of a remote Client).
5. Axxon Next Tray Tool.

10.8.3 Installing sudo

The sudo software is used for installing and configuring *Axxon Next*.

If it is not included in the OS distribution package, then to install it and add the *user*, it is necessary to run the following commands in the root mode:

```
apt-get install sudo
usermod -aG sudo user
reboot
```

10.8.4 Installing the Axxon Next in Linux OS

10.8.4.1 Installing the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS

10.8.4.1.1 Installing from repository

Installation from the repository is performed automatically including all the system components.

For this purpose, do the following:

1. Consequently execute the commands:

   ```
   echo 'deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch main' | sudo tee -a /
   etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
   echo 'deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch backports/main' | sudo
   tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
   echo "deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository next-weekly main backports/main"
    >> /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
   wget --quiet -O - "http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository/
   info@axxonsoft.com.gpg.key" | sudo apt-key --keyring /etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/axxonsoft.gpg
   add - && sudo apt-get update
   ```

   Note

   If the distributives based on Debian 10 are used, it may be necessary to install additional packages:
   ```
   apt-get install wget
   apt-get install gnupg
   ```

2. To install a Server, run the following command:

```
sudo apt-get install axxon-next
```

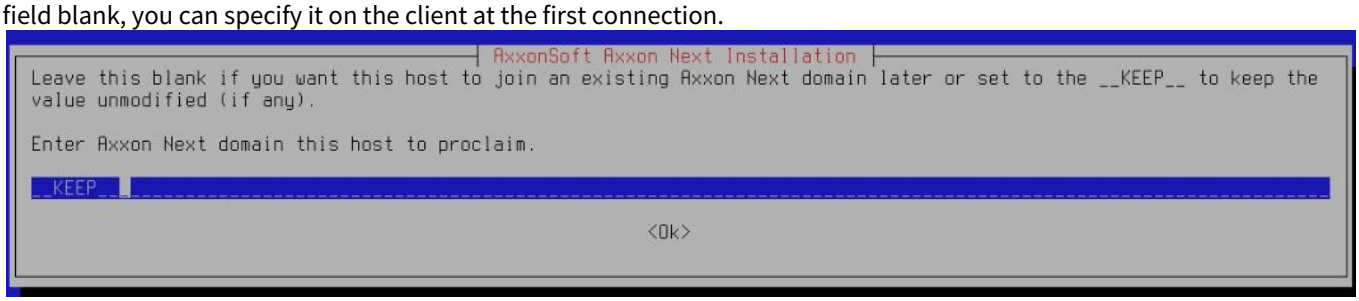
To install a FailOver Server, run the following command:

```
apt-get install axxon-next-raft
```

Attention!

It is not allowed to simultaneously install a regular Server and a FailOver Server.

During the installation, the installer will request the name of the Axxon-domain for the Axxon Next server. If you leave this field blank, you can specify it on the client at the first connection.



10.8.4.1.2 Manual installation

To install the Axxon Next Server manually, do the following:

1. Add the repositories by sequentially executing the following commands:

```
echo 'deb [arch=amd64] http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch main' |
sudo tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
echo 'deb [arch=amd64] http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch backports/
main' | sudo tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
wget --quiet -O - "http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository/
info@axxonsoft.com.gpg.key" | sudo apt-key --keyring /etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/axxonsoft.gpg
add - && sudo apt-get update
```

2. To download the packages, run one of the following commands:
   a. Server only:

```
sudo apt-get install -d axxon-next
```

   b. Server and Client:

```
sudo apt-get install -d axxon-next-client
```

By default, the files are downloaded to the /var/cache/apt/archives folder. If it is necessary to download the files to another folder, run the following command:

```
apt-get install -d axxon-next -o=dir::cache=/home/user/Downloads/
```

In this case, the packages will be downloaded to the /home/user/Downloads folder.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you plan to install the downloaded packages on another computer with no Internet, then the OS version on that computer should match the OS version on which the packages were downloaded.

3. To install the previously downloaded packages, execute the command:

```
sudo dpkg -i /home/user/Downloads/*.deb || sudo apt-get install -f -y
```

where
user - user name;
Downloads - folder with downloaded packages.
Package examples...
Example of packages required to install the server side:

```
axxon-drivers-pack_3.46_amd64.deb
axxon-detector-pack_3.1_amd64.deb
axxon-next-core_4.5.0_amd64.deb
axxon-next_4.5.0_all.deb
```

Example of packages required to install the Server in the Failover mode:

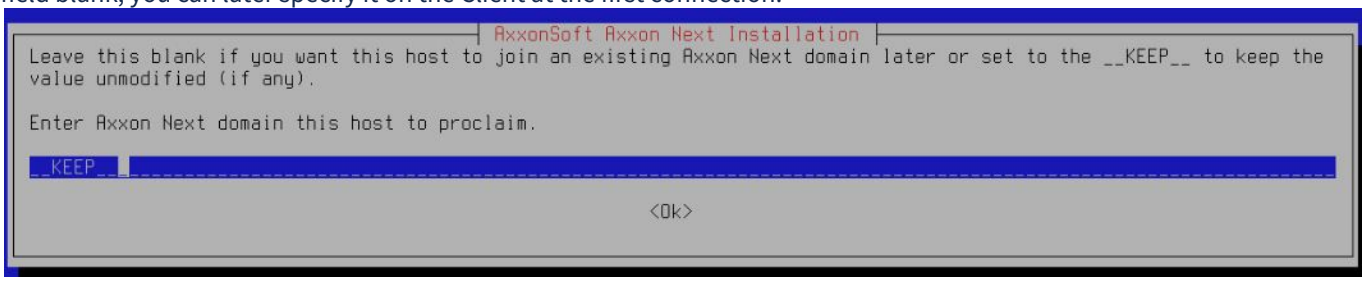
```
axxon-drivers-pack_3.46_amd64.deb
axxon-detector-pack_3.1_amd64.deb
axxon-next-core_4.5.0_amd64.deb
axxon-next-raft_4.5.0_amd64.deb
```

Example of packages required for the Server and Client installation type:

```
axxon-drivers-pack_3.46_amd64.deb
axxon-detector-pack_3.1_amd64.deb
axxon-next_4.5.0_all.deb
axxon-next-core_4.5.0_amd64.deb
axxon-next-client-bin_4.5.0_amd64.deb
axxon-next-client_4.5.0_all.deb
```

> **Attention!**
>
> The folder should not contain other packages.
> It is not allowed to simultaneously install the normal Server and the Failover Server.

During the installation, the installer will request the name of the Axxon-domain for the Axxon Next server. If you leave this field blank, you can later specify it on the Client at the first connection.



4. If necessary, you can change the Server configuration after installation (see Axxon Next Server configuration change).

Installation is complete.

You can install the Detector Pack and Driver Pack from the repository. To do this, sequentially execute the following commands:

```
sudo apt-get install axxon-drivers-pack
sudo apt-get install axxon-detector-pack
```

Attention!

The Detector Pack and Driver Pack must be installed from the repository before installing the main part of Axxon Next. If the Detector Pack and Driver Pack were installed from the repository, it is necessary to remove them from the folder with downloaded installation packages.

10.8.4.2 Installing the Axxon Next Client on Linux OS

Attention!

The stable operation of the Client is not guaranteed on Ubuntu 18 and 19. It is recommended to install only *Axxon Next* Server (see Installing the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS). Both the Client and *Axxon Next* Server are supported on Ubuntu 20 and newer versions.

Attention!

The Client can be installed only after installing the Server of the same version (see Installing the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS).

To install the *Axxon Next* Client on Linux OS, do the following:

1. For the automatic installation from the repository:
   a. Add the repositories by sequentially running the following commands:

```
echo 'deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch main' | sudo tee
-a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
echo 'deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch backports/main' |
sudo tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
echo "deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository next-weekly main
backports/main" >> /etc/apt/sources.list.d/axxonsoft.list
wget --quiet -O - "http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository/
info@axxonsoft.com.gpg.key" | sudo apt-key --keyring /etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/
axxonsoft.gpg add - && sudo apt-get update
```

Attention!

If you install *Axxon Next* on AstraLinux SE 1.6, then instead of the commands from the step 1, you should sequentially run the following commands:

```
echo 'deb http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository stretch main
backports/astra backports/main' | sudo tee -a /etc/apt/sources.list.d/
axxonsoft.list
```

```
wget --quiet -O - "http://download.axxonsoft.com/debian-repository/
info@axxonsoft.com.gpg.key" | apt-key --keyring /etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/
axxonsoft.gpg add - && sudo apt-get update
```

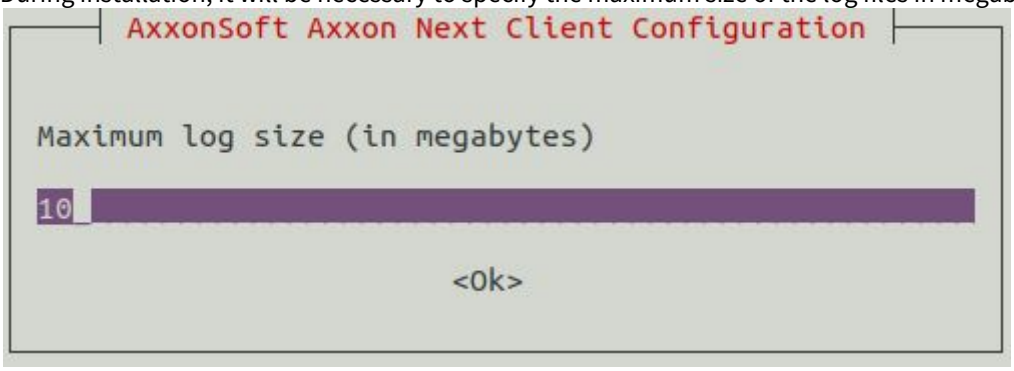
b. If you use Ubuntu 20.04 or Debian 11, then install the mono-complete from the stretch repository:

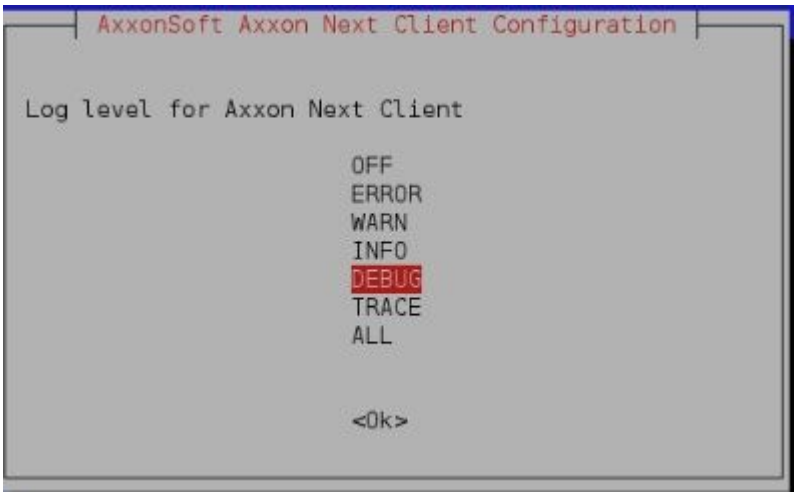
```
apt-get install mono-complete -t stretch
```

c. Run the command:

```
sudo apt-get install axxon-next-client
```

d. During installation, it will be necessary to specify the maximum size of the log files in megabytes and the log level.





Note

The specified value can be changed (see Configuring the Axxon Next Client logging parameters on Linux OS). To do this, run the command:
sudo dpkg-reconfigure axxon-next-client

2. For the manual installation:
   a. Go to the downloaded deb-packages folder.
   b. Run the following commands:

```
sudo dpkg -i axxon-next-client-bin_4.5.1.9763_amd64.deb
sudo dpkg -i axxon-next-client_4.5.1.9763_all.deb
```

where 4.5.1.9763 is the version and the build number.

When the installation is complete, the Client icon will be displayed in the application menu.

Attention!

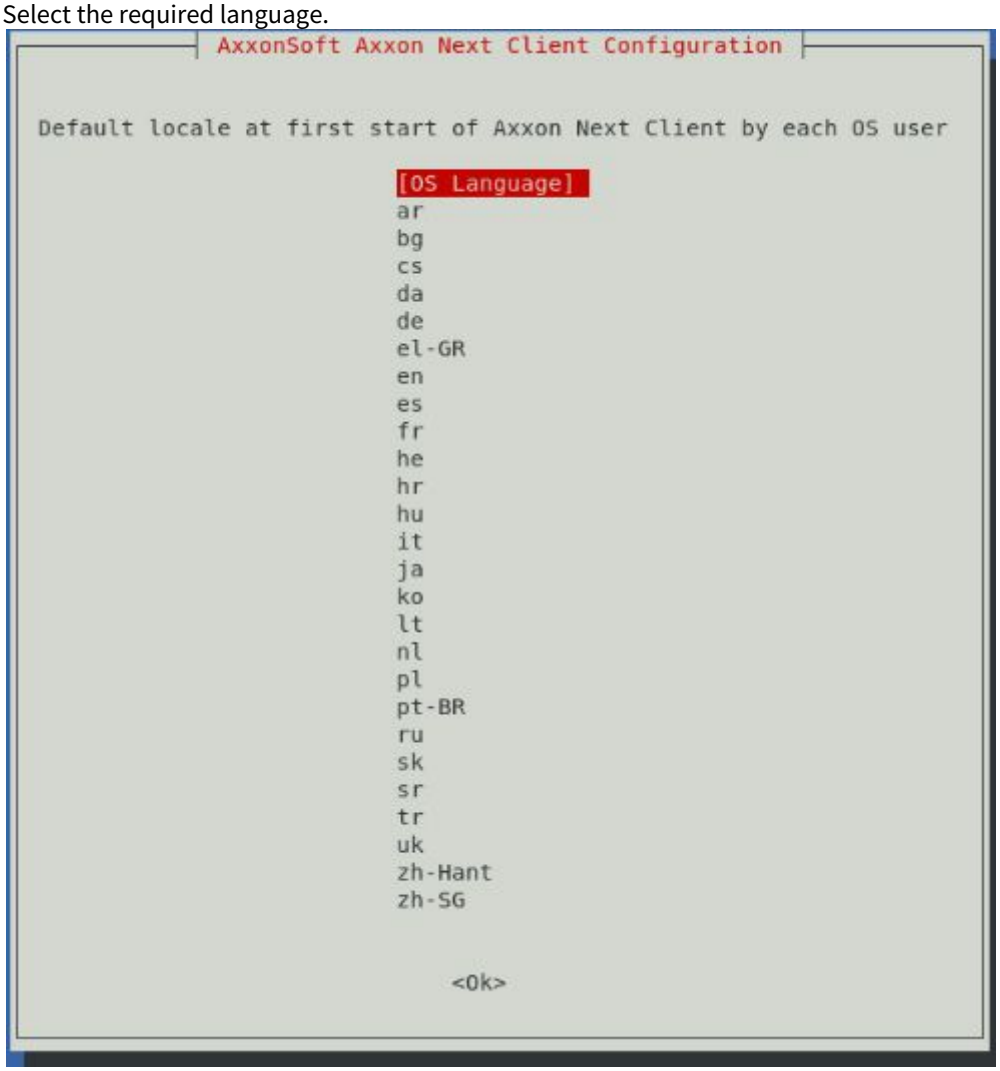
It is not recommended to run the Client as root user or with root permissions.

By default, at the first Client start, the OS interface language will be used. To change the language of the Client interface at the first start, do the following:

1. Run the following command.

```
sudo dpkg-reconfigure axxon-next-client
```

2. Select the required language.



Note

This setting should be configured for each OS user separately .

Attention!

For the next launches the interface language can be changed in the Client settings (see Selecting the interface language).

10.8.4.3 Configuration and log folders

The following folders are being used by default:

1. Logs and Client configuration:

```
/home/USER/.local/share/AxxonSoft/
```

2. Server configuration:

```
/opt/AxxonSoft/AxxonNext/
```

10.8.4.4 Axxon Next Server launch using Docker

To run the Axxon Next Server using Docker, do the following:

1. Install Docker (see Docker installation and Specifics of Docker installation on Ubuntu).
2. Create the Axxon Next container (see Creating the Axxon Next container).

Minimum requirements to run Axxon Next using Docker on Ubuntu:

- Dual core processor;
- 4 GB RAM;
- 200 GB HDD.

10.8.4.4.1 Docker installation

To install the Docker, do the following:

1. Prepare the environment:
   a. Install the packages to use the repository via HTTPS.

```
sudo apt-get install apt-transport-https ca-certificates curl gnupg2 software-
properties-common
```

   b. Add official Docker GPG key.

```
curl -fsSL https://download.docker.com/linux/debian/gpg | sudo apt-key add -
```

```
sudo apt-key fingerprint <0EBFCD88>
```

   c. Configure the repository:
      i. for the x86_64 / amd64 architecture.

```
sudo add-apt-repository "deb [arch=amd64] https://download.docker.com/linux/
debian $(lsb_release -cs) stable"
```

      ii. for the armhf architecture.

```
sudo add-apt-repository "deb [arch=armhf] https://download.docker.com/linux/
debian $(lsb_release -cs) stable"
```

   d. Update the lists.

```
sudo apt-get update
```

2. Install and configure the Docker:
   a. Install docker-ce.

```
sudo apt-get install docker-ce docker-compose
```

   b. Add a user to the Docker.

```
sudo adduser user docker
```

   c. Install git.

```
sudo apt-get install git gettext
```

   d. Go to the directory where the container will be located.

```
cd /home
```

   e. Clone the repository.

```
git clone https://bitbucket.org/Axxonsoft/axxonnext.docker.git
```

   f. Update the repository:
      i. Go to axxonnext.docker folder.

```
cd axxonnext.docker
```

      ii. Download content from git.

```
git pull
```

3. Install the container:
   a. Place the downloaded .deb packages in the /server/build folder of the container.

```
mv /home/user/Downloads/axxon-* /home/axxonnext.docker/server/build/
```

   b. Start building the container.

```
cd /home/axxonnext.docker/server
```

   c. Restart OS after the container is built.

```
sudo reboot
```

The Docker is installed.

10.8.4.4.2 Specifics of Docker installation on Ubuntu

To install the Docker on Ubuntu, do the following:

1. Prepare the environment:
    a. Install the packages to use the repository via HTTPS.

```
sudo apt-get install apt-transport-https ca-certificates curl gnupg2 software-
properties-common
```

    b. Add the official Docker GPG key.

```
curl -fsSL https://download.docker.com/linux/ubuntu/gpg | sudo apt-key add -
```

```
sudo apt-key fingerprint <0EBFCD88>
```

    c. Configure the repository:
        i. for the x86_64 / amd64 architecture.

```
sudo add-apt-repository "deb [arch=amd64] https://download.docker.com/linux/
ubuntu $(lsb_release -cs) stable"
```

        ii. for the armhf architecture.

```
sudo add-apt-repository "deb [arch=armhf] https://download.docker.com/linux/
ubuntu $(lsb_release -cs) stable"
```

    d. Update the lists.

```
sudo apt-get update
```

2. Install and configure the Docker:
    a. Install docker-ce.

```
sudo apt-get install docker-ce docker-compose
```

    b. Add a user to the Docker.

```
sudo adduser user docker
```

    c. Install git.

```
sudo apt-get install git gettext
```

    d. Go to the directory where the container will be located.

```
cd /home
```

    e. Clone the repository.

```
git clone https://bitbucket.org/Axxonsoft/axxonnext.docker.git
```

    f. Update the repository:
        i. Go to axxonnext.docker folder.

```
cd axxonnext.docker
```

ii. Download content from git.

```
git pull
```

3. Install the container:
   a. Place the downloaded .deb packages in the /server/build folder of the container.

```
mv /home/user/Downloads/axxon-* /home/axxonnext.docker/server/build/
```

   b. Start building the container.

```
cd /home/axxonnext.docker/server
```

   c. Restart OS after the container is built.

```
sudo reboot
```

The Docker is installed on Ubuntu.

10.8.4.4.3 Creating the Axxon Next container

To create the Axxon Next container, do the following:

1. Copy the Axxon Next, Detector Pack and Driver Pack deb-packages into the folder ~~/axxonnext.docker/next/build/.
2. Go to the folder ~/axxonnext.docker/next

```
cd ~/axxonnext.docker/next
```

3. Execute the command.

```
./axxon-next.sh build
```

The Axxon Next container build is going to start.

4. To view the list of the built-up containers, execute the following command after the operation is complete.

```
./axxon-next.sh list
```

10.8.4.4.4 Working with the Axxon Next container

- The list of containers.

```
./axxon-next.sh list
```

- Launching the container.

```
./axxon-next.sh start 4.3.2.37
```

- Viewing the container status.

```
./axxon-next.sh status
```

- Stopping the container.

```
./axxon-next.sh stop
```

- Collecting the system data.

```
./axxon-next.sh support
```

The file will be saved in the '~/axxonnext.docker/next/data/' directory.

- Viewing the installed packages version.

```
./axxon-next.sh versions
```

10.8.4.5 Updating the Axxon Next software in Linux OS

To update the Axxon Next software from the repository, it is necessary to execute the following commands in the **root** mode:

```
sudo apt-get update
sudo apt-get upgrade
```

To update the Axxon Next software from the folder, do the following:

1. Go to the folder with the downloaded packages.
2. Execute the following command:

```
sudo dpkg -i *
```

> **Attention!**
>
> After the update is completed, it is necessary to check the access rights of the archive file and the folder where it is stored.
> The **ngp** user should be specified as the owner of both the file and the folder.

10.8.4.6 Uninstalling the Axxon Next software in Linux OS

To uninstall the Axxon Next but save the configuration, run the following command:

```
sudo apt remove axxon-*
```

To completely remove the Axxon Next, run the following commands in sequence:

```
sudo apt --purge remove axxon-* -y
```

```
sudo apt autoremove -y
```

```
sudo rm -r /opt/AxxonSoft/
```

10.8.5 Moving the Axxon Next configuration from Windows OS to Linux OS

To transfer Axxon Next configuration from Windows OS to Linux OS, do the following:

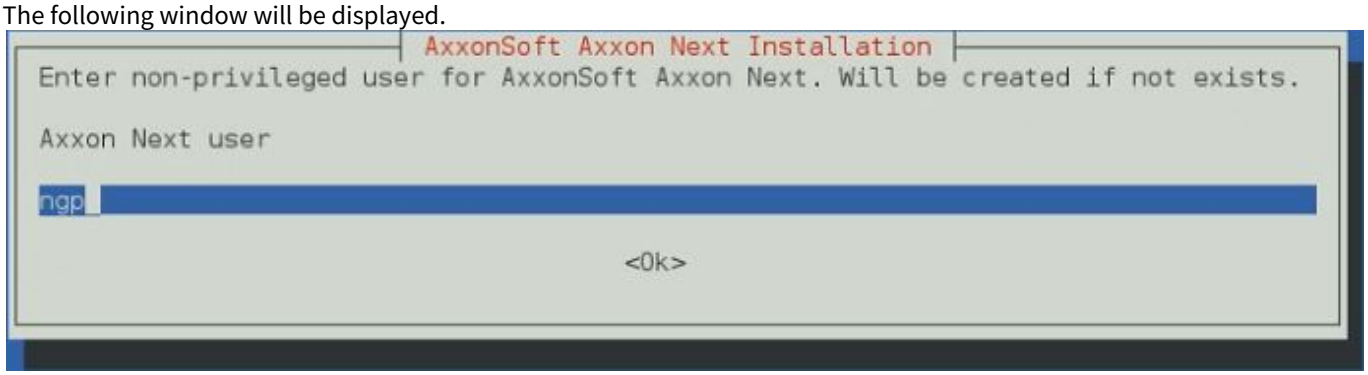
1. Create the backup configuration in Windows OS (see Backing up a configuration).
2. Execute the following command in Linux OS:

   ```
   sudo dpkg-reconfigure axxon-next
   ```

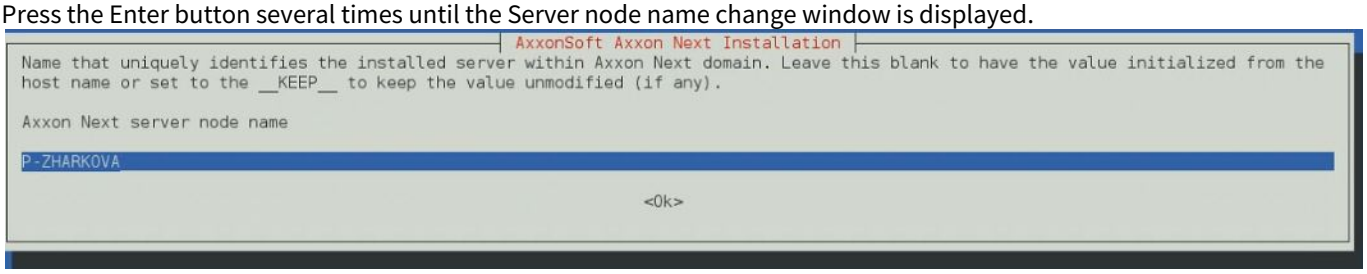
   Attention!

   The Server in Linux OS must belong to some Axxon-domain.

   The following window will be displayed.

3. Press the Enter button several times until the Server node name change window is displayed.

4. Enter the Server node name which is used in Windows OS.
5. Run the backup and configuration recovery utility (see Backup and restore utility) and select the specified Server on its launch.
6. Restore the configuration by selecting the saved backup.
7. Deactivate the license (see Deactivating a license) and distribute the license file again (see Activation by applying license file).

10.8.6 Starting and stopping the Axxon Next Server in Linux OS

Server start:

```
sudo service axxon-next start
```

Server stop:

```
sudo service axxon-next stop
```

Server restart:

```
sudo service axxon-next restart
```

Server status check:

```
sudo service axxon-next status
```

10.8.7 Archive creation features in Linux OS

10.8.7.1 Archive as a disk creation features in Linux OS

To allocate the disk for recording, execute the command in the root mode.

```
sudo su
```

```
fdisk -l
```

where

- /dev/sd**a** - the first physical disk;
- /dev/sda**1** - the first section of the first physical disk;
- /dev/sda**2** - the second section of the first physical disk;
- dev/sd**b** - the second physical disk.

To delete the disk section, do the following:

1. Go to the disk where it is necessary to delete a section.

   ```
   fdisk /dev/sdb
   ```

2. Delete the section.

   ```
   d
   ```

3. Specify the section number.

   ```
   2
   ```

4. Save the changes.

   ```
   w
   ```

To create a section, do the following:

1. Go to the disk where it is necessary to create a section.

   ```
   fdisk /dev/sdb
   ```

2. Create the section.

```
n
```

3. Specify the section: primary (p) or extended (e).

```
p
```

4. Specify the section number.

```
1
```

5. Specify the section size. G - gigabytes, M - megabytes, K - kilobytes.

```
+5G
```

6. . Save the changes.

```
w
```

To create the archive as a disk, do the following:

1. Create a new archive in the Axxon Next Client (see Creating a local archive).
2. Select the archive volume.
3. Specify the path to section in the address window. For example: /dev/sdb1. If it is required to use the whole disk as an archive, specify the /dev/sdc, /dev/sdd and so on.
4. Set the **Format** checkbox and click the **Apply** button.

> **Attention!**
>
> At this point you cannot change the archive size.

10.8.7.2 Archive as a file creation features in Linux OS

By default, in Linux OS the **ngp** user has rights to record only in the /opt/AxxonSoft/AxxonNext/ directory.

To create an archive in another directory, do the following:

1. Create a folder with write permissions.

```
sudo mkdir -m755 /home/archive
```

2. Change the folder owner to **npg** user.

```
sudo chown -R ngp:ngp /home/archive/
```

3. Check the permissions on created folder.

```
ls -lt /home/
```

If there is a string with the ngp user permissions in the result, it is now possible to create an archive as a file in this directory.

```
drw-r--r--  2 ngp    ngp    4096 aug.   8 15:18 archive
```

10.8.7.3 Features of archives with ext and xfs file systems

When you work with archives (both local and network) on ext and xfs file systems, take into account the following features:

1. When you create an archive (see Creating Archive), the displayed free disk space is calculated based on the actual used space.

   Note

   For example, the disk size is 60 GB, and a 10 GB archive is created on it, but it is only 1 GB full.
   When you try to create a second archive on this disk, 59 GB of free space will be displayed, not 50 GB.

2. Availability of the entire archive file size is not guaranteed in cases when other files run out of available space.

   Note

   Due to the ext and xfs file systems features, it is possible to create archives whose total size exceeds the free disk space.

   Attention!

   In such cases, it is necessary for the system administrator to control the free disk space.

10.8.7.4 Features of NAS archives

For connecting to the NAS server, use the following versions of protocols:

- SMB2/SMB3 (2.02, 2.10, 3.00, 3.02, 3.1.1);
- NFSv3, NFSv4.

It is also possible to use the CIFS and iSCSI protocols.

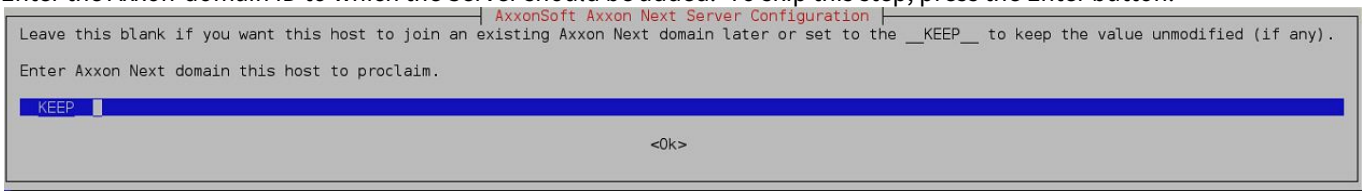
10.8.8 Axxon Next Server configuration change

To change the Server configuration, do the following:

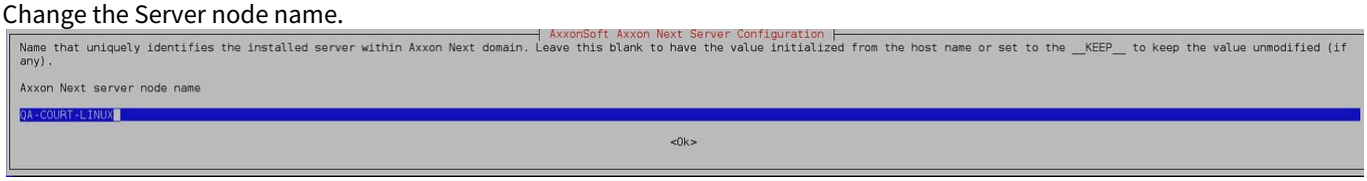
1. Execute the following command.

   ```
   sudo dpkg-reconfigure axxon-next
   ```

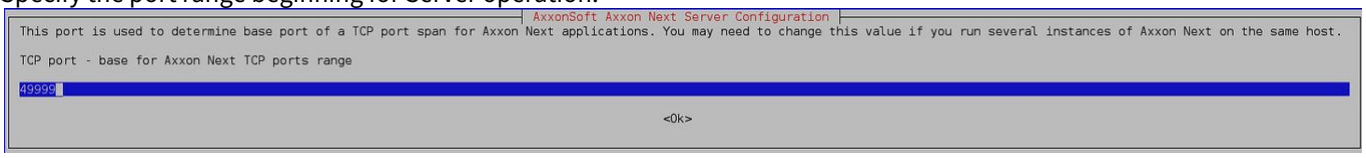
2. Enter the Axxon-domain ID to which the Server should be added. To skip this step, press the Enter button.



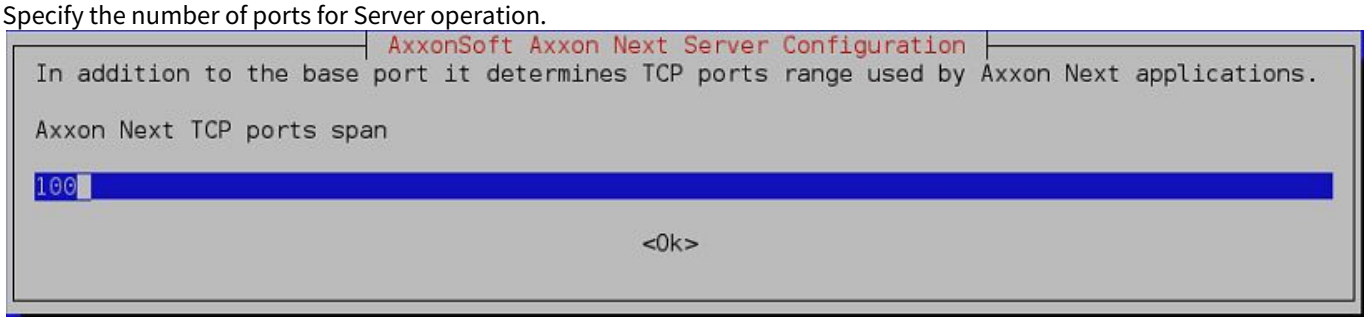
3. Change the Server node name.



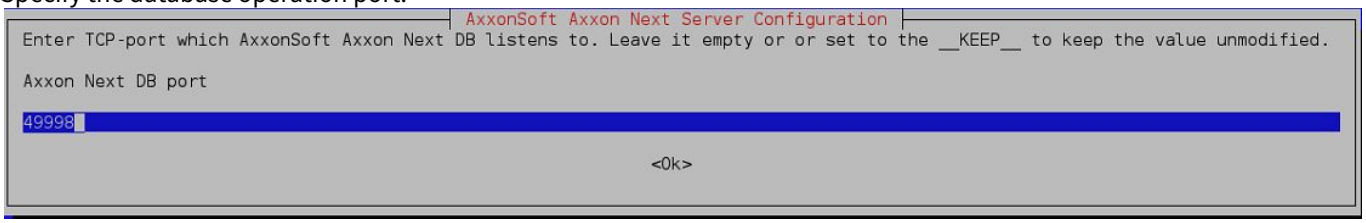
4. Specify the port range beginning for Server operation.



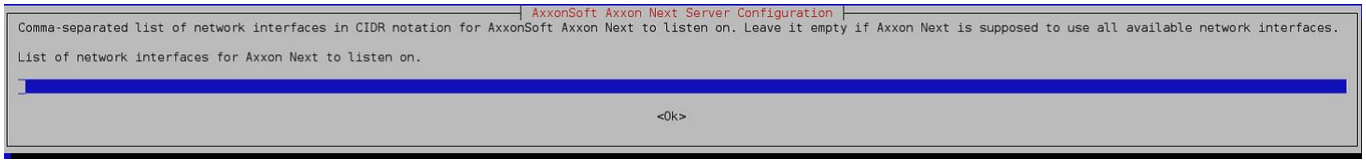
5. Specify the number of ports for Server operation.



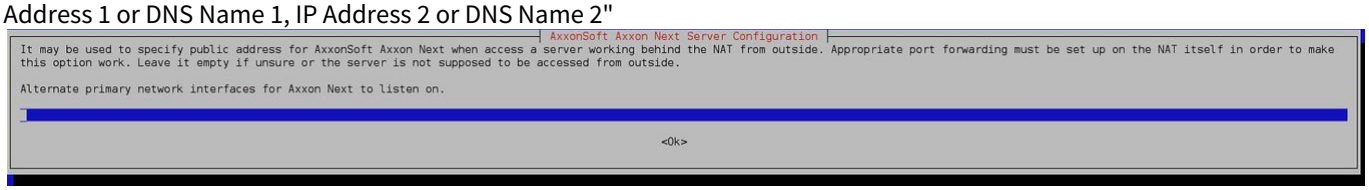
6. Specify the database operation port.



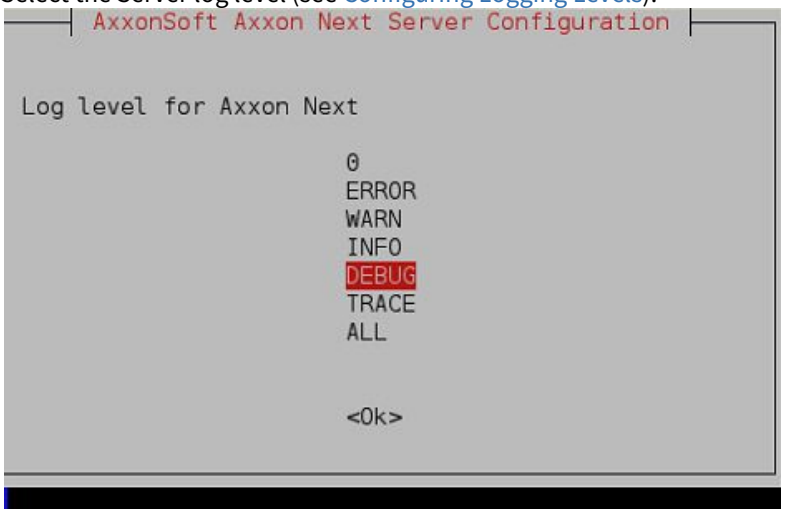
7. Restrict the visibility of Servers from various networks in the Servers list during the *Axxon Next* setup. Possible values:
   a. "0.0.0.0/0" - Servers from all networks will be visible.
   b. "10.0.1.23/32,192.168.0.7/32" - Only Servers from specified networks will be visible.
   c. "127.0.0.1" - Only Servers from the local network will be visible.



8. Set the external address of the switch if the Server is located behind the NAT (**1**). Use the following settings format: "IP Address 1 or DNS Name 1, IP Address 2 or DNS Name 2"



9. Select the Server log level (see Configuring Logging Levels).



10.8.9 Configuring the metadata storage in NAS on Linux OS

To store the metadata in a network attached storage (NAS), do the following:

1. Create a shared network folder.
2. On the Server in Linux OS, create the **netdir** folder. For example, in the **/media** folder:

```
sudo mkdir /media/netdir
```

3. Install the **cifs-utils** utility.

```
sudo apt-get install cifs-utils
```

4. Attach the shared network folder to the created **netdir** folder.

```
sudo mount -t cifs //IP-address/common /media/netdir -o
user=User,password=123,uid=1001,gid=1002,vers=2.0
```

where,

a. IP-address - NAS address,
b. common - shared network folder,
c. user, password - NAS access credentials,
d. uid, gid - id of the user and ngp group; they can be obtained using the following command:

```
id ngp
```

5. In the Axxon Next metadata storage settings, specify the /media/netdir path (see Configuring storage of the system log and metadata).

After you restart Linux OS, the attached folder will be deleted. To configure the network folder to be attached on the OS loading, do the following:

1. Open the /etc/fstab file.

```
sudo nano /etc/fstab
```

2. Add the following string to the file:

```
//IP-address/common /media/netdir cifs user=User,password=123,uid=1001,gid=1002,vers=2.0 0
0
```

3. Save file.

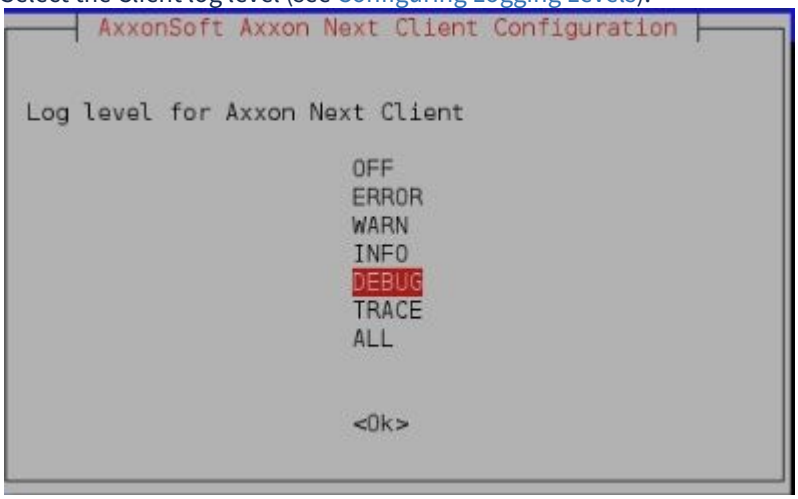
10.8.10 Configuring the Axxon Next Client logging parameters on Linux OS

To change the Axxon Next Client logging parameters, do the following:

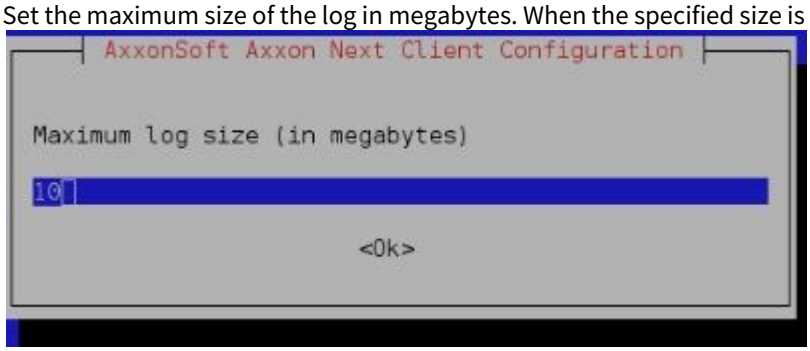
1. Execute the following command.

```
sudo dpkg-reconfigure axxon-next-client
```

2. Select the Client log level (see Configuring Logging Levels).



3. Set the maximum size of the log in megabytes. When the specified size is reached, a new log is created.



10.8.11 License activation for the LP recognition detection in Linux OS

To activate the License Plate (LP) recognition detection (see Configuring License plate recognition (VT)), do the following:

1. Download the Sentinel LDK Run-time Environment:

```
sudo wget --no-check-certificate http://downloads.vitcompany.com/release/Sentinel/8.1/aksusbd-8.13.1.tar.gz
```

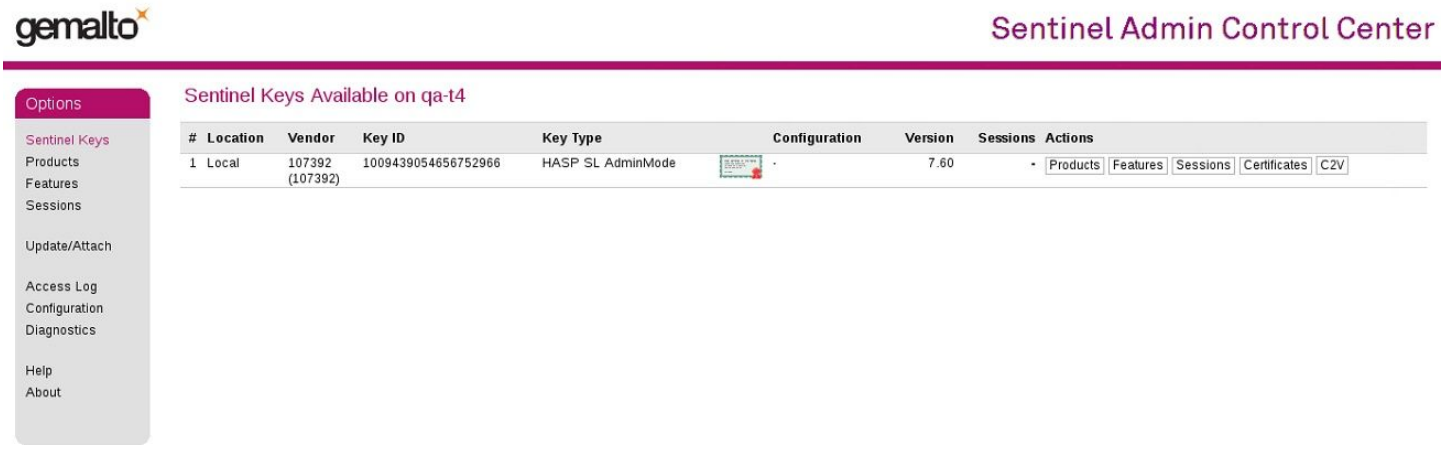
2. Unpack the archive:

```
sudo tar zxvf aksusbd-8.13.1.tar.gz -C ~
```

3. Get the AxxonArchiveSearchll.v2c key file from your AxxonSoft manager.
4. Move the received file to the folder with the unpacked archive.
5. Go to the folder with the unpacked archive and run the following script:

```
cd aksusbd-8.13.1
sudo ./dinst
```

As a result, the installed key will be displayed at the http://127.0.0.1:1947/ address in the Sentinel Admin Control Center web-application.



10.8.12 System data collection in Linux OS

To collect the system data in Linux OS, execute the following command:

```
sudo /opt/AxxonSoft/AxxonNext/bin/support /home/user
```

where

- /opt/AxxonSoft/AxxonNext/bin/support - the utility location directory;
- /home/user - the user's home directory.

10.8.13 Potential problems with Linux OS

10.8.13.1 Problem with displaying a dialog box or drop-down list

In some cases, when you change the configuration of objects for which you need to set a location or select a value from the drop-down list, when you click on the button to select a location or list value, they do not open.

> **Note**
>
> In fact, the location selection window or a drop-down list are opened outside the interface shell, and therefore are not visible to the user.

To resolve this problem, select a different desktop environment and restart Axxon Next. For example, use Gnome Classic instead of Gnome for Debian 11.

10.9 Appendix 9. Using Axxon Next with NAT

10.9.1 Consolidating the Servers from different networks into Axxon domain

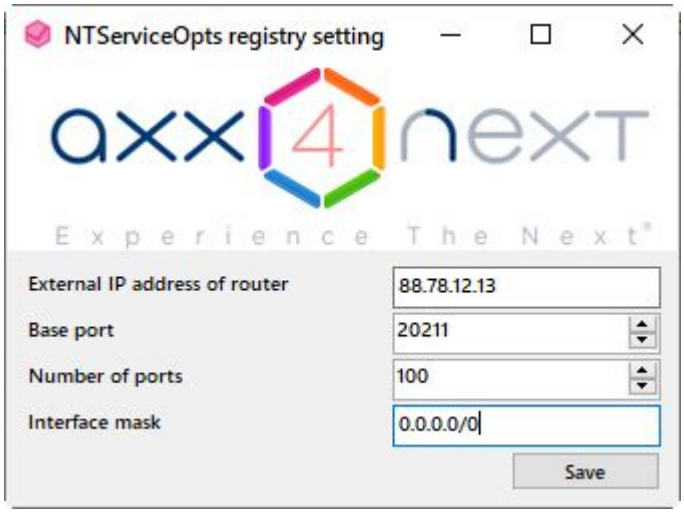
To consolidate the Servers from different networks separated by routers into Axxon domain, do the following:

1. Set the port range for operation and the router's public IP address on each Server that is to be included in the Axxon domain (see Network settings utility).

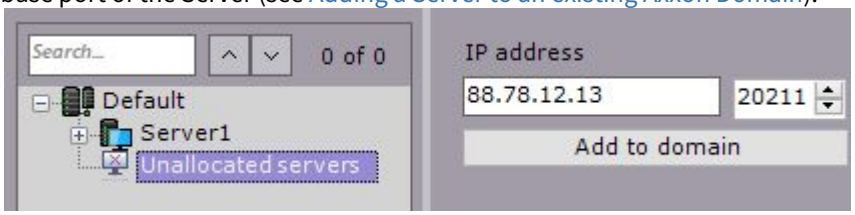
   > **Attention!**
   >
   > The Server port ranges of Axxon Domain should not overlap within the same network.
   > By default, the base port is 20111, and the port range is 20111-20210. Hence, it is necessary to set and forward the port range 20211-20310 for the second Server, the port range 20311-20410 for the third Server, and so on (see Ports used by the Axxon Next Software Package).

Attention!

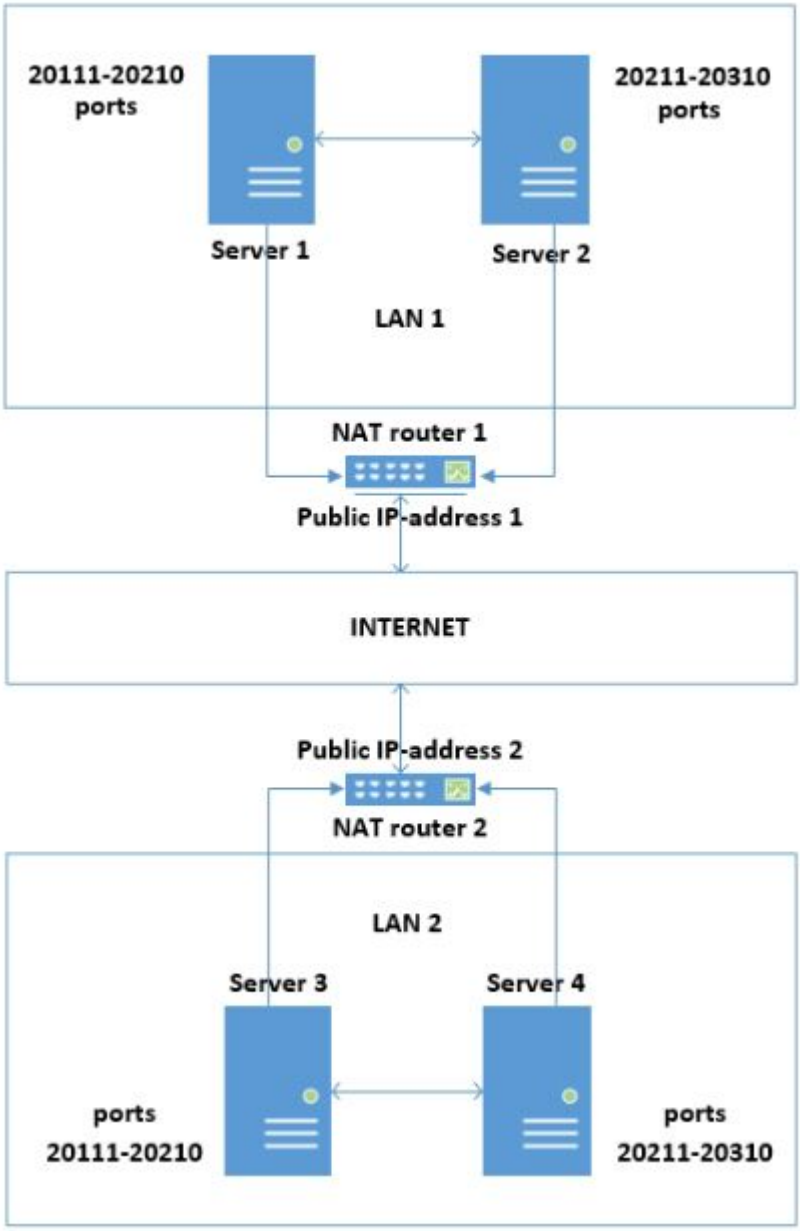
The router's public IP address should be static.



2. For each router, forward the specified ports of the Server, which is located behind this switch, and the gRPC API 20109 port.
3. Connect the Client to the Server from any network (see Starting an Axxon Next Client, Connecting the Client to the Server behind NAT).
4. Manually add other Servers to the Axxon domain using the public IP address of the corresponding router and the external base port of the Server (see Adding a Server to an existing Axxon Domain).



Example:



To combine Servers into one Axxon domain in this configuration, do the following:

1. On Server 1, set the port range 20111-20210 and the public IP address of router 1.
2. On Server 2, set the port range 20211-20310 and the public IP address of router 1.
3. On Server 3, set the port range 20111-20210 and the public IP address of router 2.
4. On Server 4, set the port range 20211-20310 and the public IP address of router 2.
5. On router 1, configure the forwarding of:
    a. the router ports 20111-20210 to the internal IP address of Server 1 and ports 20111-20210;
    b. the router ports 20211-20310 to the internal IP address of Server 2 and ports 20211-20310;
    c. the gRPC API 20109 port (always static) to the internal IP address of Server 1 and the internal IP address of Server 2.
6. On router 2, configure the forwarding of:
    a. the router ports 20111-20210 to the internal IP address of Server 3 and ports 20111-20210;
    b. the router ports 20211-20310 to the internal IP address of Server 4 and ports 20211-20310;
    c. the gRPC API 20109 port (always static) to the internal IP address of Server 3 and the internal IP address of Server 4.
7. Connect to Server 1.
8. Manually add Server 2 to the Axxon domain using the local IP address of Server 2 and port 20211.
9. Manually add Server 3 to the Axxon domain using the public IP address of router 2 and port 20111.
10. Manually add Server 4 to the Axxon domain using the public IP address of router 2 and port 20211.

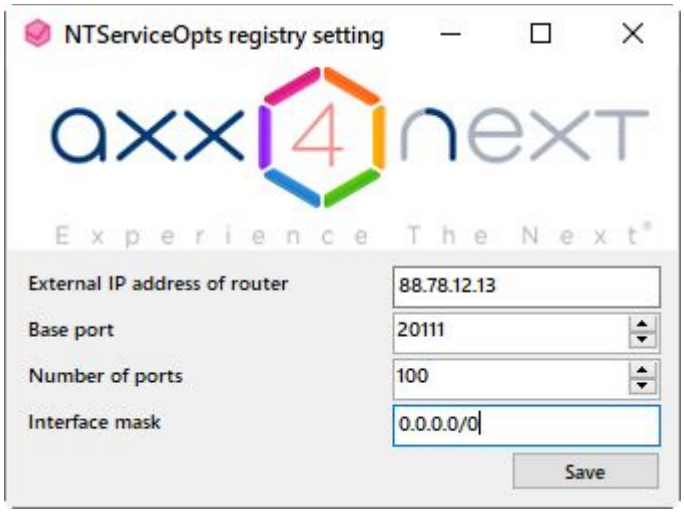
10.9.2 Connecting the Client to the Server behind NAT

To connect the Client to the Server behind NAT, do the following:

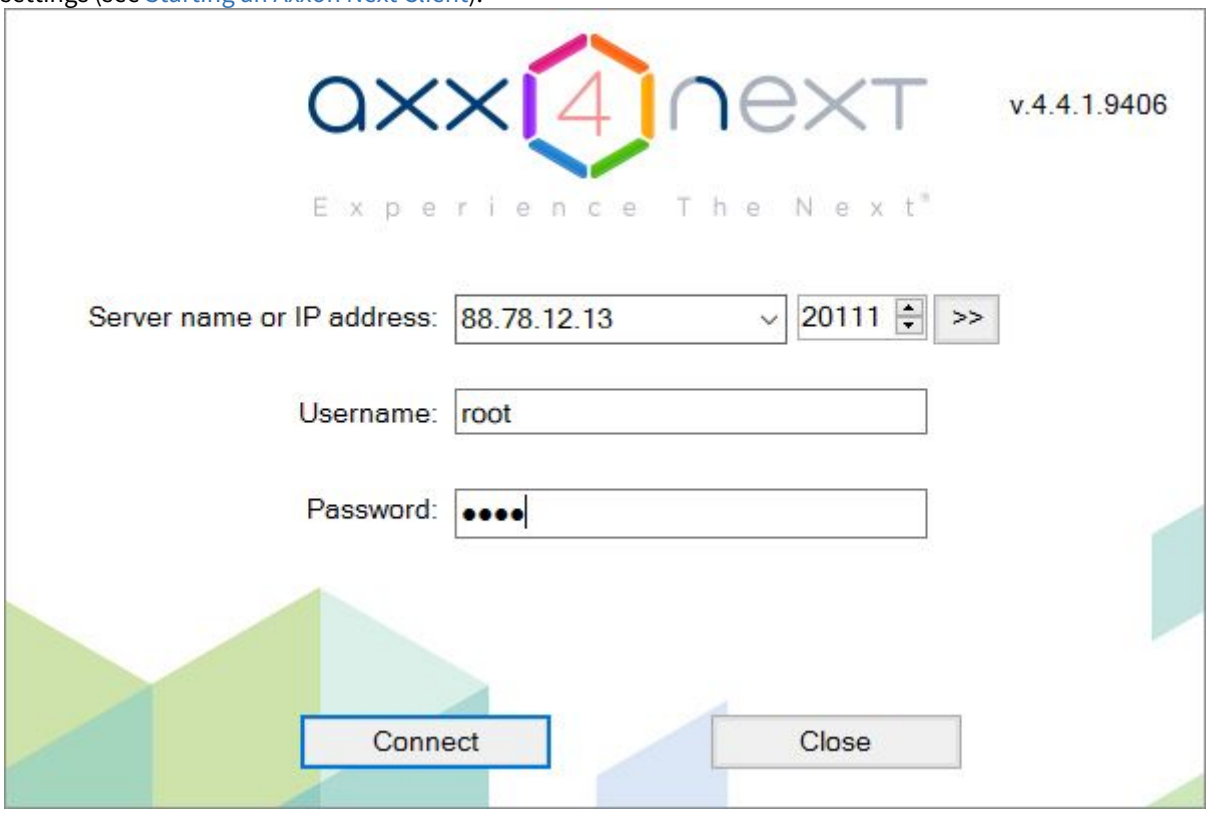
1. On the Server, set the port range of ports for operation and the router's public IP address (see Network settings utility). By default, the base port is 20111, and the port range is 20111-20210 (see Ports used by the Axxon Next Software Package).

   Attention!

   The router's public IP address should be static.



2. On the router, forward the specified Server ports and the gRPC API 20109 port.
3. Launch the Client and specify the router's external IP address and the Server's external base port in the connection settings (see Starting an Axxon Next Client).



Attention!

When connecting the Client from an external network, only those Servers that have access to the external network will be available in the Axxon domain configuration (see Consolidating the Servers from different networks into Axxon domain).

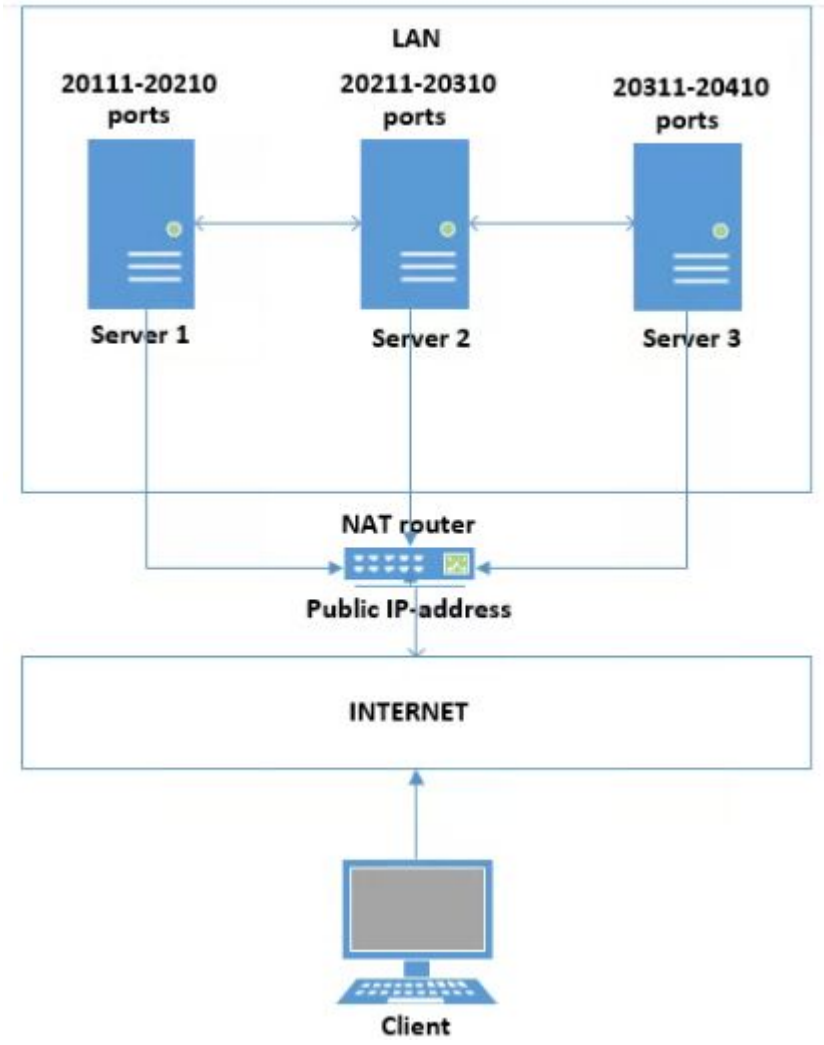
Attention!

In some cases, in security systems with a complex architecture (NAT, VPN), the Client may not receive events from the Server. To fix this, it is necessary to create the system variable NGP_POLL_EVENTS and set the 1 value to it (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable).

Attention!

In a failover system, it is not possible to connect to the node that is behind NAT (see Connecting to a Node and Configuring of an Axxon domain).

Example:



To connect the Client to the Servers behind NAT, do the following:

1. On Server 1, set the port range 20111-20210 and the public IP address of the router.
2. On Server 2, set the port range 20211-20310 and the public IP address of the router.
3. On Server 3, set the port range 20311-20410 and the public IP address of the router.
4. On the router, configure the forwarding of:
    a. the router ports 20111-20210 to the internal IP address of Server 1 and ports 20111-20210;
    b. the router ports 20211-20310 to the internal IP address of Server 2 and ports 20211-20310;

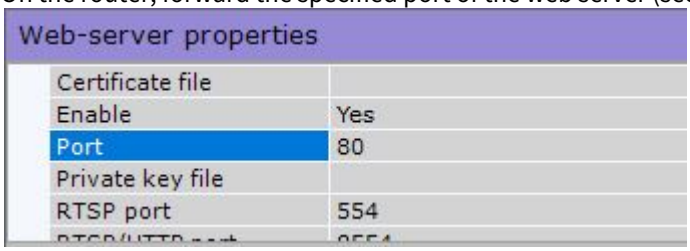
c. the router ports 20311-20410 to the internal IP address of Server 3 and ports 20311-20410;
d. the gRPC API 20109 port (always static) to the internal IP addresses of the Server 1, 2 and 3.

5. When connecting the Client, enter the router's public IP address and port: 20111 to connect to Server 1; port 20211 to connect to Server 2; port 20311 to connect to Server 3.

10.9.3 Connecting the web and mobile Clients to the Server behind NAT

To connect web and mobile Clients to the Server behind NAT, do the following:

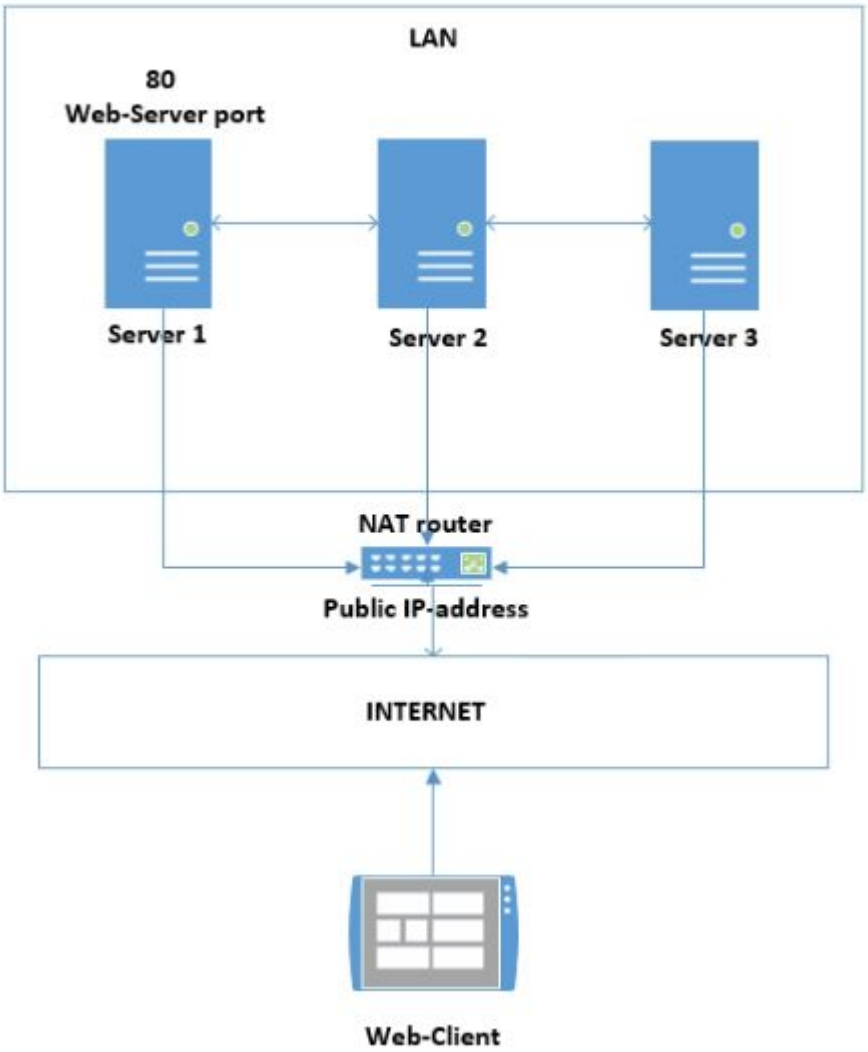
1. On the router, forward the specified port of the web server (see Configuring the web server). The default port is 80.



> **Note**
>
> To access all Servers of the Axxon domain, it is enough to forward any single port of the web server.

2. When connecting using a web browser or mobile Client, use the Server's public IP address and the forwarded port of the web server (see Starting the web client).

Example:



To connect the web Client to the Axxon domain in this configuration, do the following:

1. On the router, forward the port 80 to the internal IP address of Server 1 and port 80.
2. When starting the web Client, use the router's public IP address and port 80.

10.9.4 Audio transmission from the Client's microphone behind NAT to the Server's or camera's loudspeaker

Playing back sound from Client microphone on camera speakers

To transmit audio from the Client's microphone behind NAT to the Server's or camera's loudspeaker, do the following:

1. On the Client, specify a unique port range and an external router's public IP address. Follow the steps below:
   a. Add an NGP_CLIENT_PORT_BASE environmental variable and set its value to the first port number in the range (see Appendix 10. Creating system variable).
   b. Add an NGP_CLIENT_PORT_SPAN environmental variable and set its value to the number of ports in the range.

Attention!

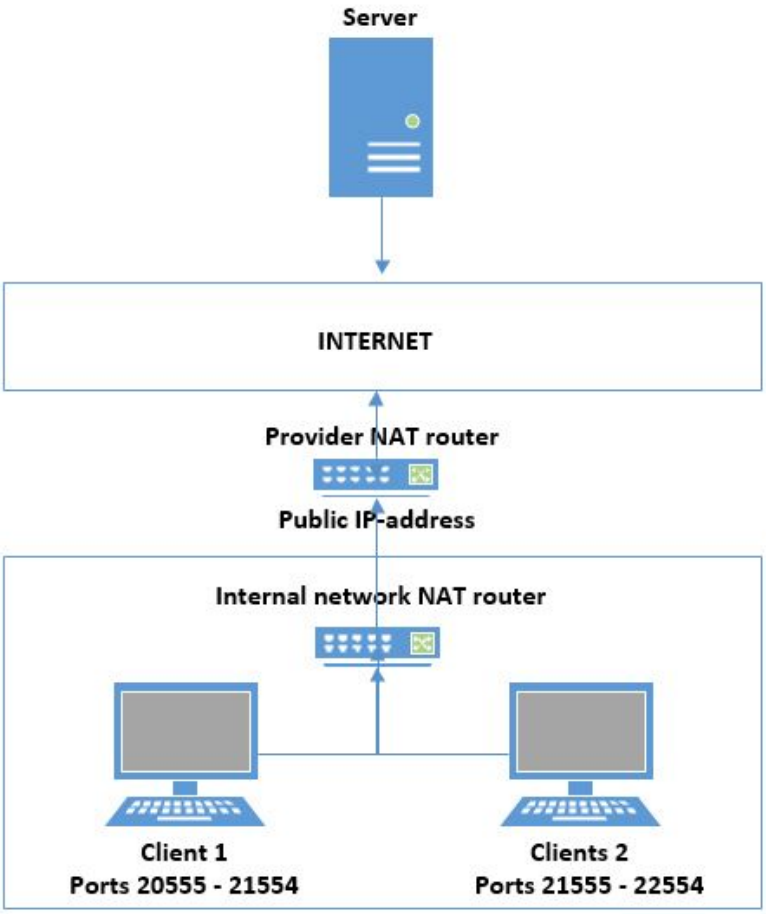
We recommend you to use no less than 100 ports.

Attention!

If you have multiple Clients within your network, their port ranges must not overlap.

c. Add an NGP_ALT_ADDR environmental variable and set its value to the public IP address of the externa router.
2. Configure forwarding of the specified ports on both external and internal router.

Example.



To transmit audio from microphones connected to Client 1 and Client 2 to the Server's or camera's loudspeaker, do the following:

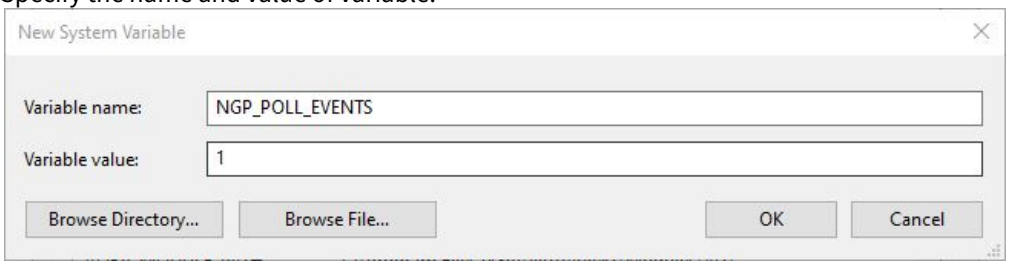
1. On Client 1, set port range to 20555-21554, and the public IP address of your Internet provider's router.
2. On Client 2, set port range to 21555-22554, and the public IP address of your Internet provider's router.
3. Configure port forwarding on the internal router:
   a. ports 20555-21554 to the internal IP address of Client 1 and ports 20555-21554;
   b. ports 21555-22554 to the internal IP address of Client 2 and ports 21555-22554;
4. Configure port forwarding on the provider's router:
   a. router ports 20555-21554 to the IP address of the internal router and ports 20555-21554;
   b. router ports 21555-22554 to the IP address of the internal router and ports 21555-22554;

10.10 Appendix 10. Creating system variable

To add a new system variable:

1. Go to **Control panel** → **System** → **Advanced system settings**.
2. Click the **Environment Variables...** button.
3. Under **System variables** group, click the **New ...** button.

4. Specify the name and value of variable.



5. Click the **OK** button.

11 Working with Axxon Next Through the Web Client

11.1 Web client overview

The web client offers the following options:

1. Viewing live videos.
2. Controlling PTZ cameras.
3. Viewing Archive.
4. Archive search.
5. Listening to a camera's microphone.
6. Exporting still frames and videos.
7. Digital zooming.
8. Working with bookmarks.
9. Viewing Camera and Archive Statistics.

11.2 Hardware and software requirements for the Web Client operation

The Web Client operates correctly with the latest versions of Google Chrome, Firefox, Safari and Microsoft Edge browsers.

> **Note**
>
> Since no 3rd party technologies are used in the Web Client, it may operate with other browsers; in this case, we cannot guarantee its stable operation.

> **Attention!**
>
> Internet Explorer browser is not supported.

To monitor 16 FullHD* camera videos on a single browser tab, you need at least an Intel Core i3 CPU and 1Gb of RAM.

* conditions are:

- dual stream cameras,
- each stream's frame rate is 25 FPS,
- the second stream's resolution is 360p,
- if the layout includes more than one camera, the browser shows streams with lower bitrates.

11.3 Starting the web client

Use of Axxon Next through a web client takes place remotely, through a web browser and the TCP/IP protocol. Remote video surveillance via a web browser does not require installation of Axxon Next.

> **Attention!**
>
> Opera browser supports Web-client starting from version 15.
> In the Windows OS, the Web-client for Safari browser is not supported.

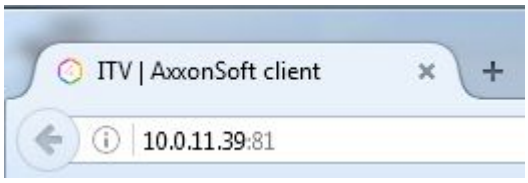
To start the web client:

1. Start a web browser.
2. In the address bar, type the address of the Axxon Next server in the following format: <web server IP address>:<Port>/<Prefix>.

> Connecting the web and mobile Clients to the Server behind NAT

Attention!

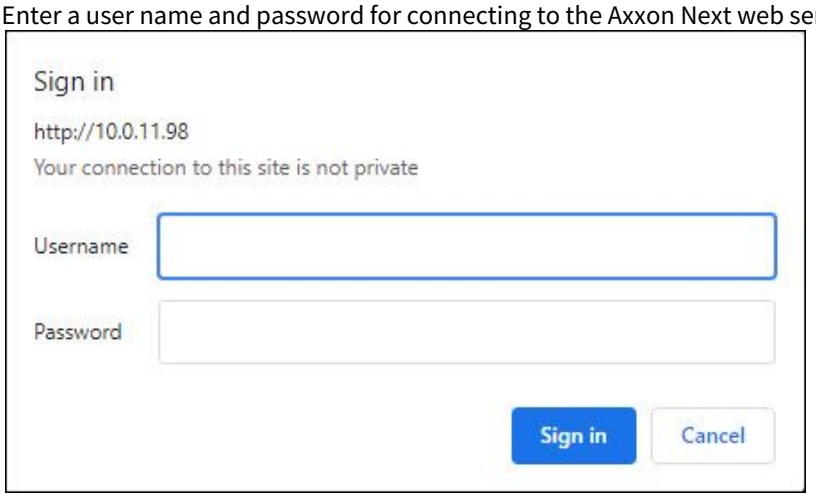
The Server URL is case-sensitive. You have to type in the URL using the exact case of characters specified in settings(see Configuring the web server).



Attention!

If the web server is properly configured (see Configuring the web server), then a secure HTPPS connection is automatically established.

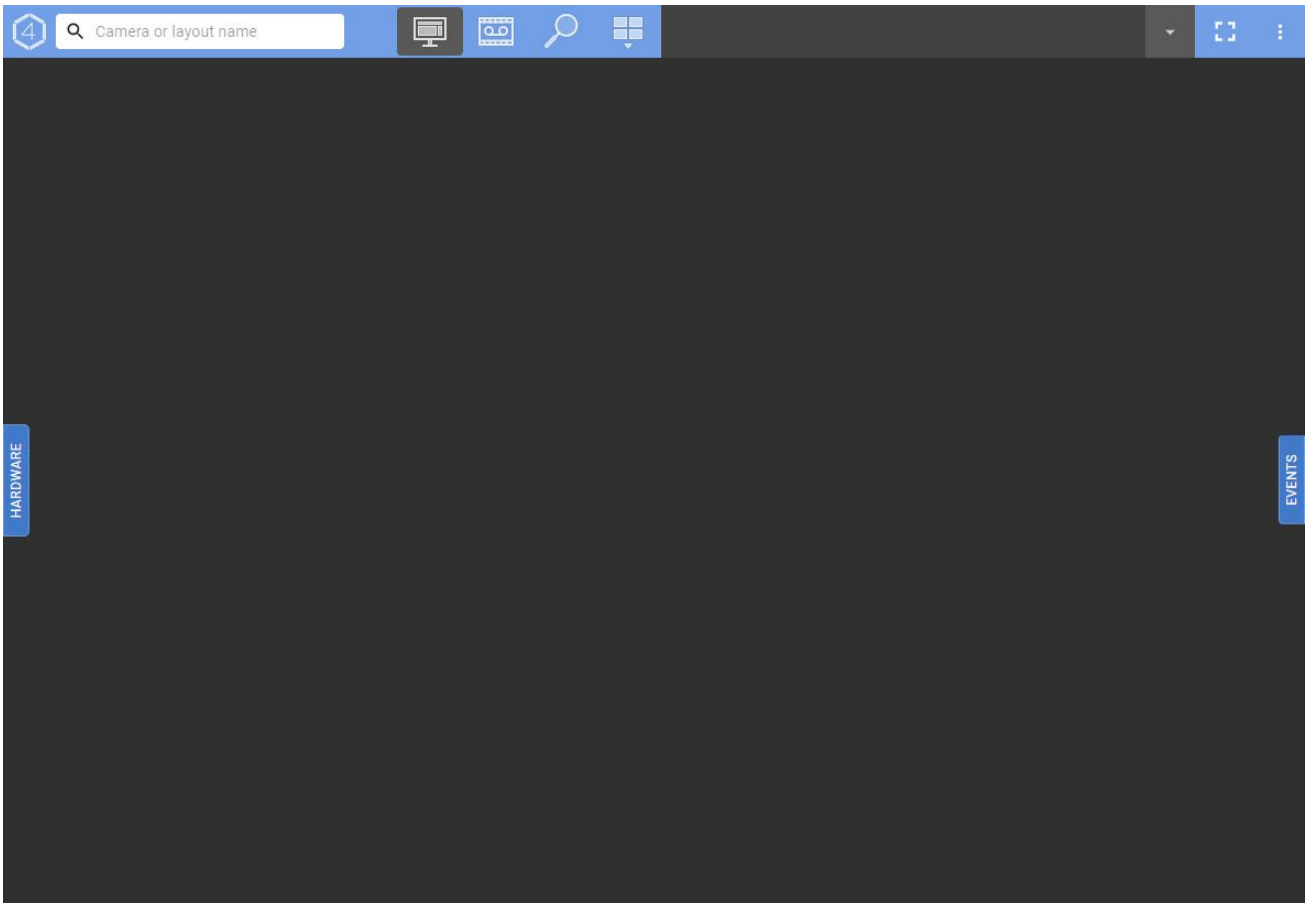
3. Enter a user name and password for connecting to the Axxon Next web server.



Attention!

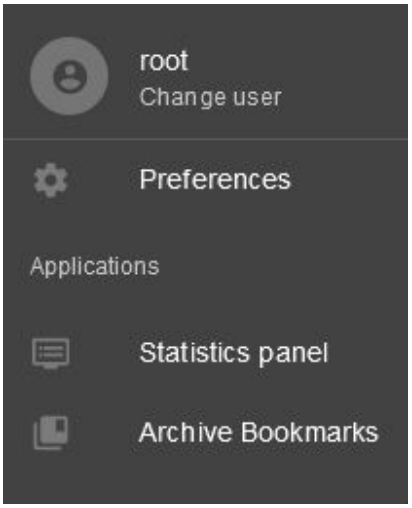
After 5 successive failed authorization attempts, the user is blocked for 10 minutes.

This will show the web client interface. By default, the first listed layout will be displayed. If there are no layouts, the Cameras panel opens on the left and shows the video from the first listed video camera.



To switch between users, press the **Change User** link in the upper-right corner; another authentication will follow.

> **Note**
>
> The name of the current user is indicated near this point.



11.4 Web client's GUI

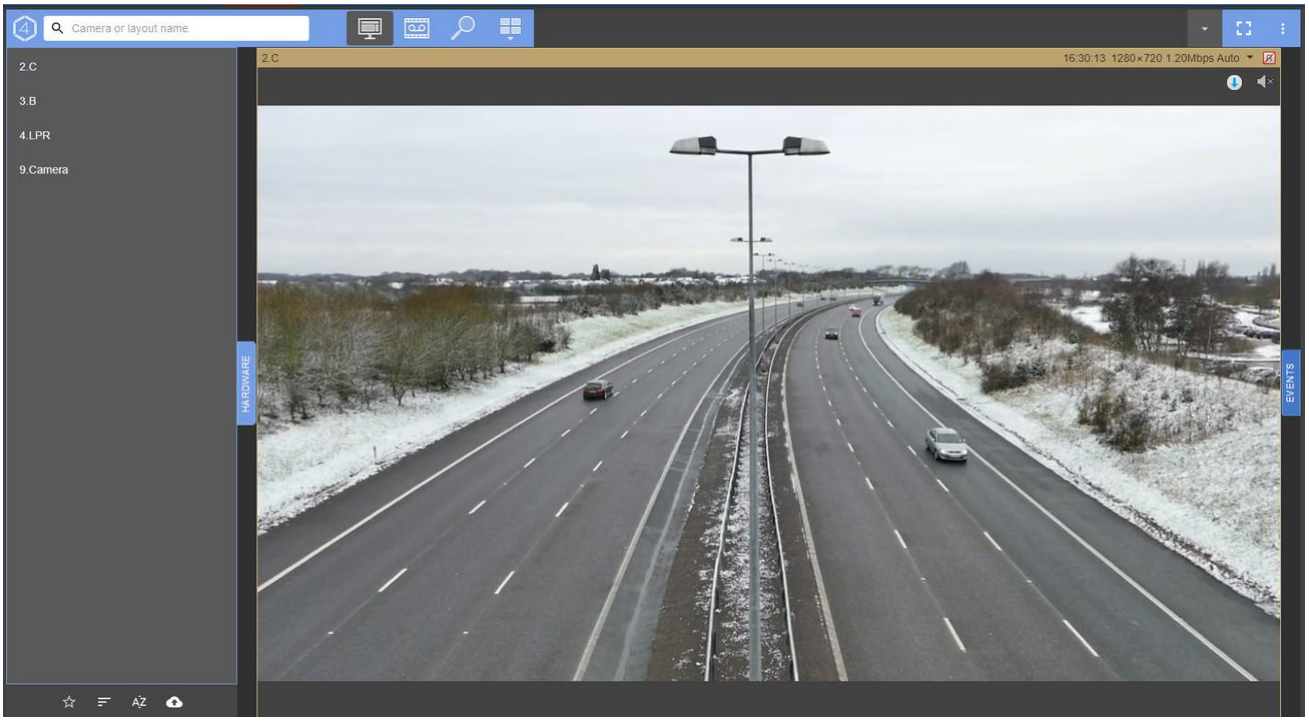
The upper panel of a web client contains the following elements:

- camera pane,
- surveillance mode selection buttons,
- available layouts,

Attention!

The web client offers layouts available to each particular user.
You can create and edit layouts using the Axxon Next Client (see Configuring Layouts).
The number of cameras within a layout is not limited.

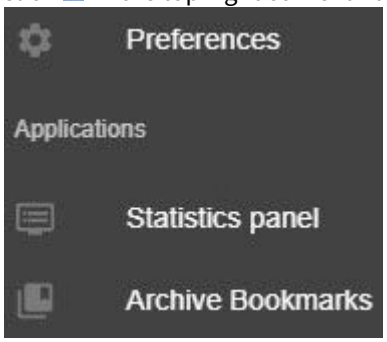
- full screen mode button ,
- Additional menu button .



11.5 Web Client Configuration

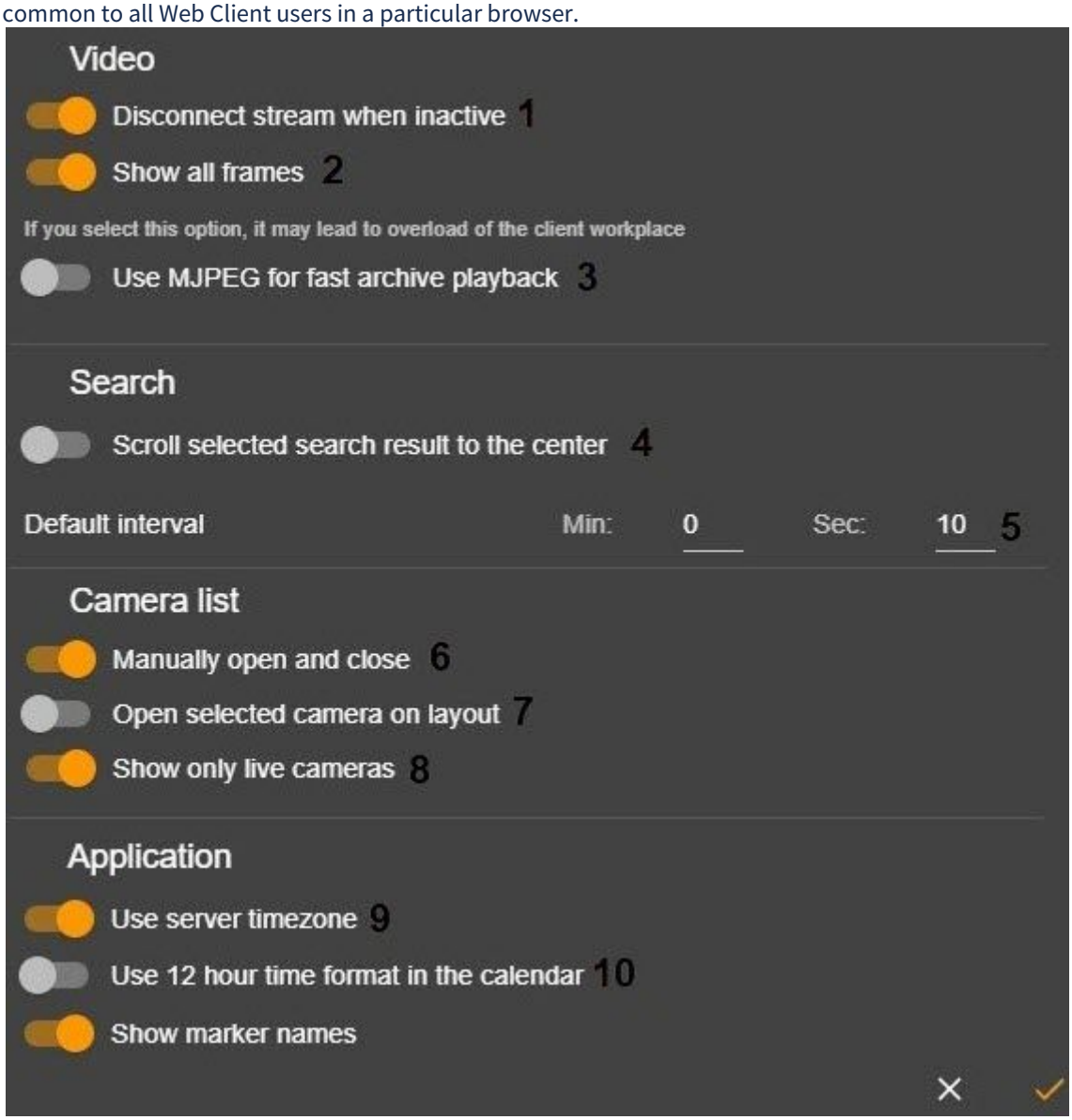
To configure the Web Client, you need to:

1. Click in the top-right corner and select **Preferences**.



2. By default, when you switch to another tab in the browser and minimize it, the video stream transmission stops. In order not to interrupt the video stream transmission, disable the **Disconnect stream when inactive** option (**1**). This setting is

common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.

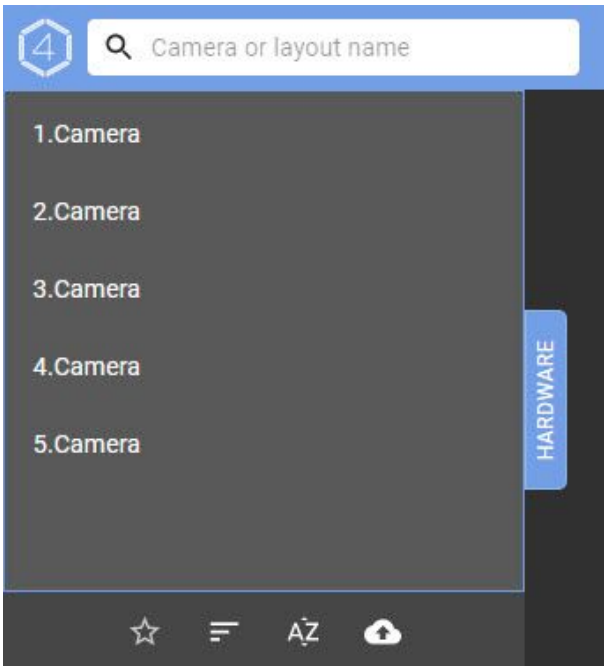


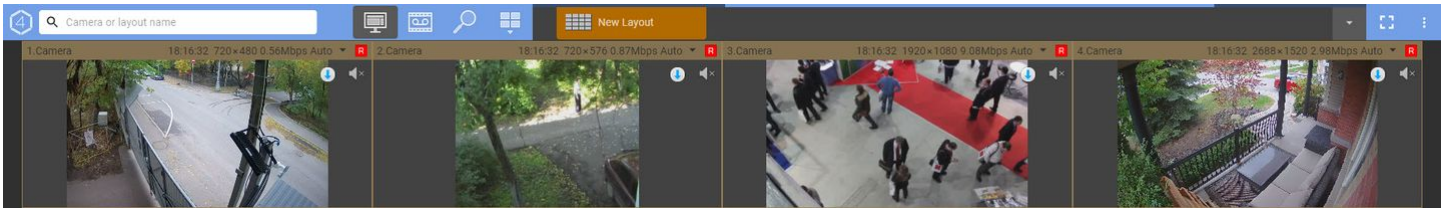
3. By default, if a layout with several cameras is open on the screen, then only key frames (I-frames) are displayed for all H.264 format cameras. If you select a specific video camera, all frames will be displayed. In order to display all frames in H.264 format, regardless of whether a video camera is selected or not, activate the **Show all frames** option (**2**).
4. By default, the H.264 codec is used for fast archive playback. In order to use the MJPEG codec, activate the **Use MGPEG for fast archive playback** option (**3**). This setting is common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.
5. To position the retrieved video in the center of the screen, activate the **Scroll selected search result to the center** option (**4**). This setting is common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.
6. Set the default interval for Time Slice (**5**, see Types of Archive search available via the Web Client).
7. By default, the Cameras panel does not close after you select a device. To minimize the panel, deactivate the **Manually open and close** option (**6**). This setting is common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.
8. When you select a camera in Cameras Panel, the layout featuring this camera's window opens. If there are several such layouts, then the one with fewer cells is selected. To expand camera view to full screen, deactivate the **Open selected camera on layout** option (**7**).
9. By default, only enabled cameras are displayed in the Web Client. In order for the Web Client to display all cameras, deactivate the **Show only live cameras** option (**8**). This setting is common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.
10. By default, the Web Client cameras display the Server time. In order for the Web Client cameras to display the PC time, deactivate the **Use server timezone** option (**9**). This setting is common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.
11. By default, the Web Client displays time in 24-hour format. In order for the time to be displayed in 12-hour format, deactivate the **Use 12 hour time format in the calendar** option (**10**). This setting is common to all Web Client users in a particular browser.

12. Click the button.

11.6 Searching for video cameras in the web client

When you start the Web client, the cameras panel opens on the left. It shows a list of all connected devices.





By default, the panel includes all available cameras. You can create a list of selected cameras. Do the following:

1. Hover the mouse cursor over the camera icon.
2. Click to add the camera to the list. The asterisk becomes filled . Another click on the asterisk excludes the camera from the list.

> **Attention!**
>
> The list of selected cameras is common for all web client users in a particular browser.

Click **Favorites** to show selected cameras only. Click the same button once more to show all available cameras.

Additionally, you can bookmark cameras by preparing a list in an Excel file. To do it, follow the steps below:

1. Create an Excel file containing two columns: **id** for camera IDs and **name** for camera names.

	A	B
1	id	name
2	8	Camera1
3	9	Camera2

2. Click and select the file.

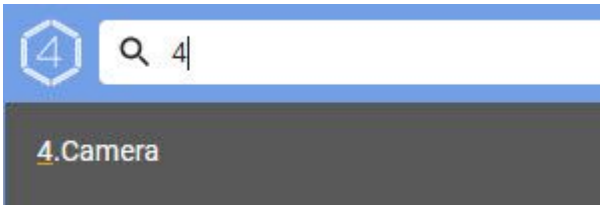
Attention!

After successful loading, only cameras listed in the file will remain bookmarked.

Click to sort the camera list by ID or to sort by name.

To search for a camera, enter the full or partial device name in the **Camera name** box.

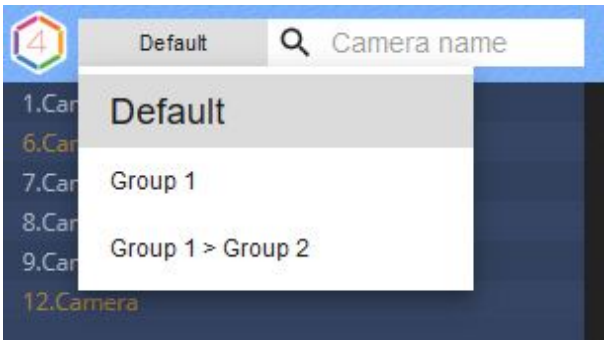
The Cameras panel will display only the cameras that meet your search criteria. All matching items will be highlighted.



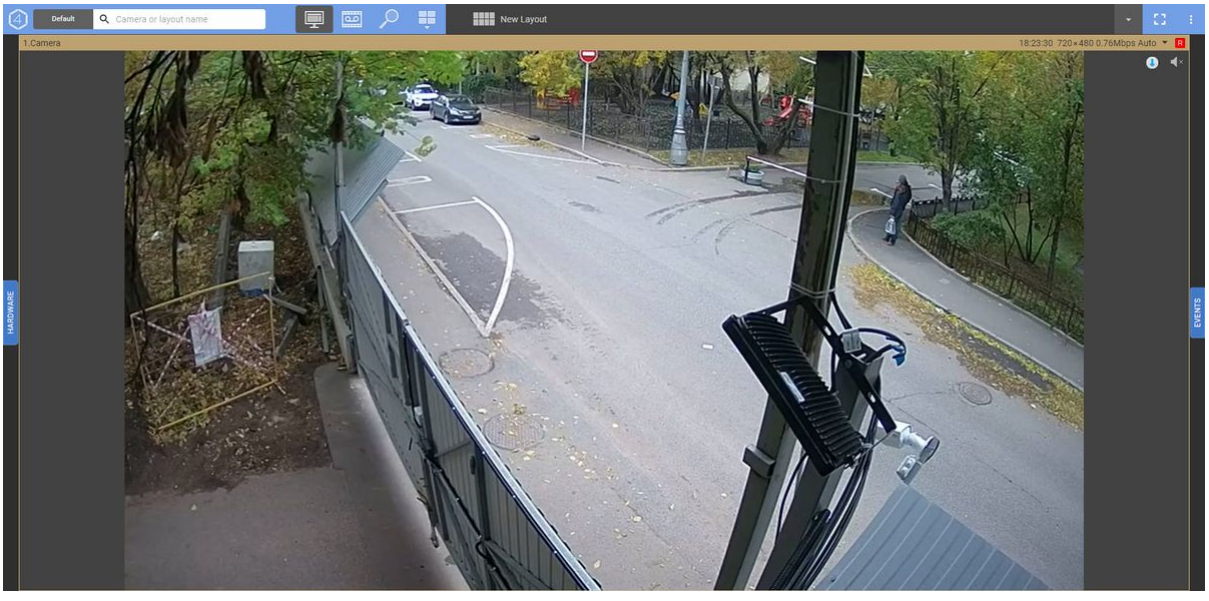
Note

When you add new cameras to your server configuration, they automatically appear in the Web client (no page reloading needed).

To set a group of cameras to be displayed, click the **Default** button and select the required group.



A newly selected camera window displays live video by default.



Each camera window upper right corner contains:

- time display (see Time Display in the main Client);

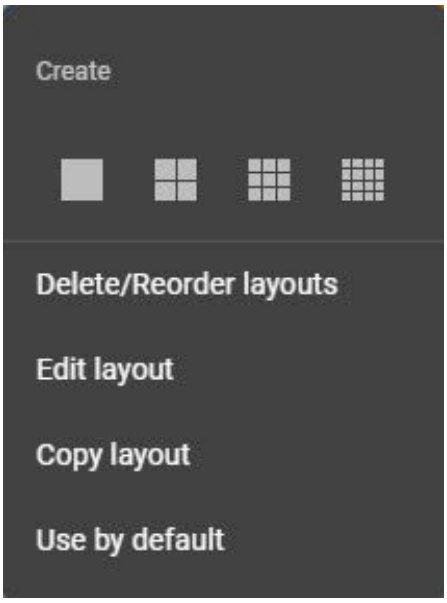
- video stream parameters;
- footage recording indicator.

11.7 Working with layouts in Web Client

11.7.1 Summary of how to work with layouts in Web Client

Configuring Layouts

To create and edit layouts in Web Client click to access the corresponding menu.



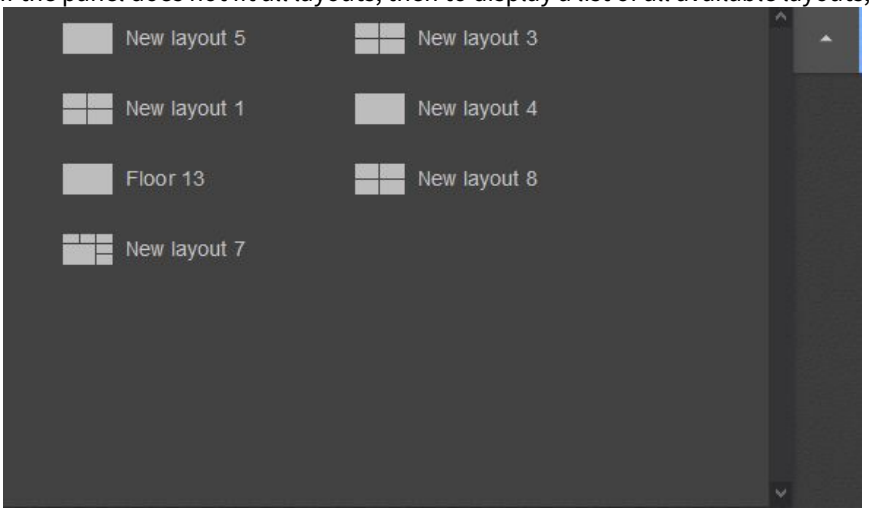
There are a number of things you need to consider when dealing with layouts in Web Client:

1. In Web Client, you cannot edit/share/delete layouts created in the main Client. You can only copy layouts.
2. Layouts created in Web Client will not be available in the main Client.

11.7.2 Selecting and searching for a layout

To go to the layout, click it on the panel.

If the panel does not fit all layouts, then to display a list of all available layouts, in the upper right corner click .



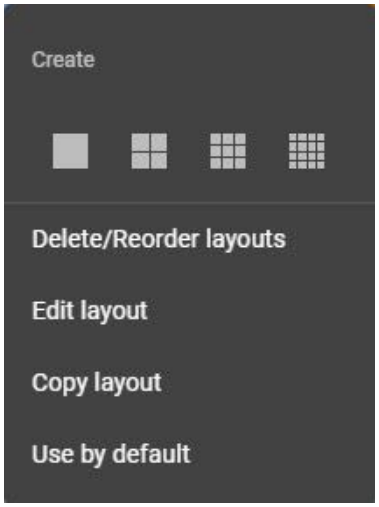
To close the layout list, you need to press a button .

You can also search layouts in the search bar for video cameras. To do this, enter the layout name in part or in full. This will show only those layouts that meet the search conditions.

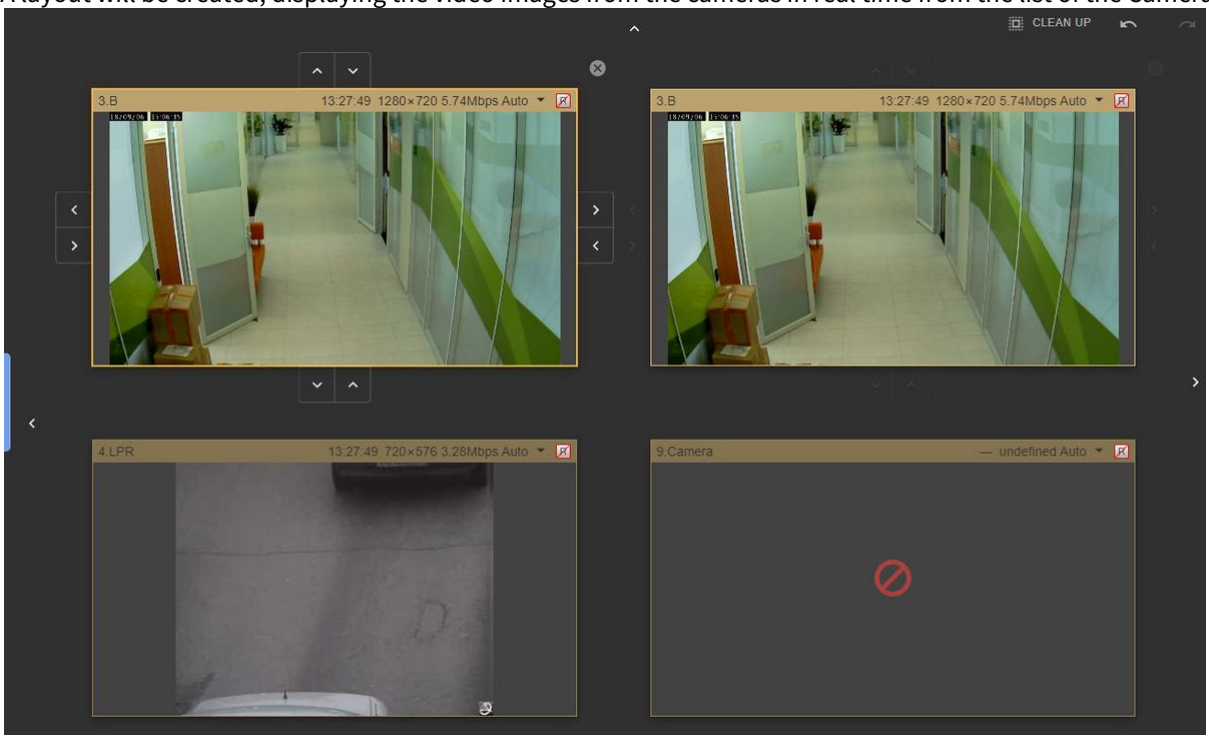
11.7.3 Creating a new layout in Web Client

To create a new layout in Web Client, do as follows:

1. Click the button and choose one of the standard layout types.



A layout will be created, displaying the video images from the cameras in real time from the list of the Cameras panel.

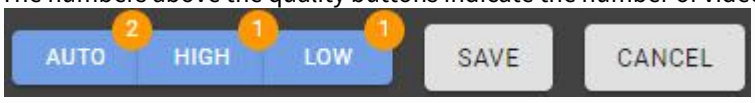


2. You can add new columns or rows of cells using arrows on the layout boundaries (similar to the main Client, see Adding new cells to a layout).

> **Note**
>
> To delete a column or a row of empty cells, click the **Clean Up** button.

> **Note**
>
> When editing a layout, the buttons to undo and redo the last action are available .

3. You can resize the cells using arrows on the cell boundaries (similar to the main Client, see Resizing cells).
4. Add video cameras to the cells. To do this, drag & drop a camera from the Cameras panel (see Searching for video cameras in the web client).
5. Select the default stream for each video camera from the **Quality** list. Use the buttons at the top of the screen to select quality for all camera layouts.

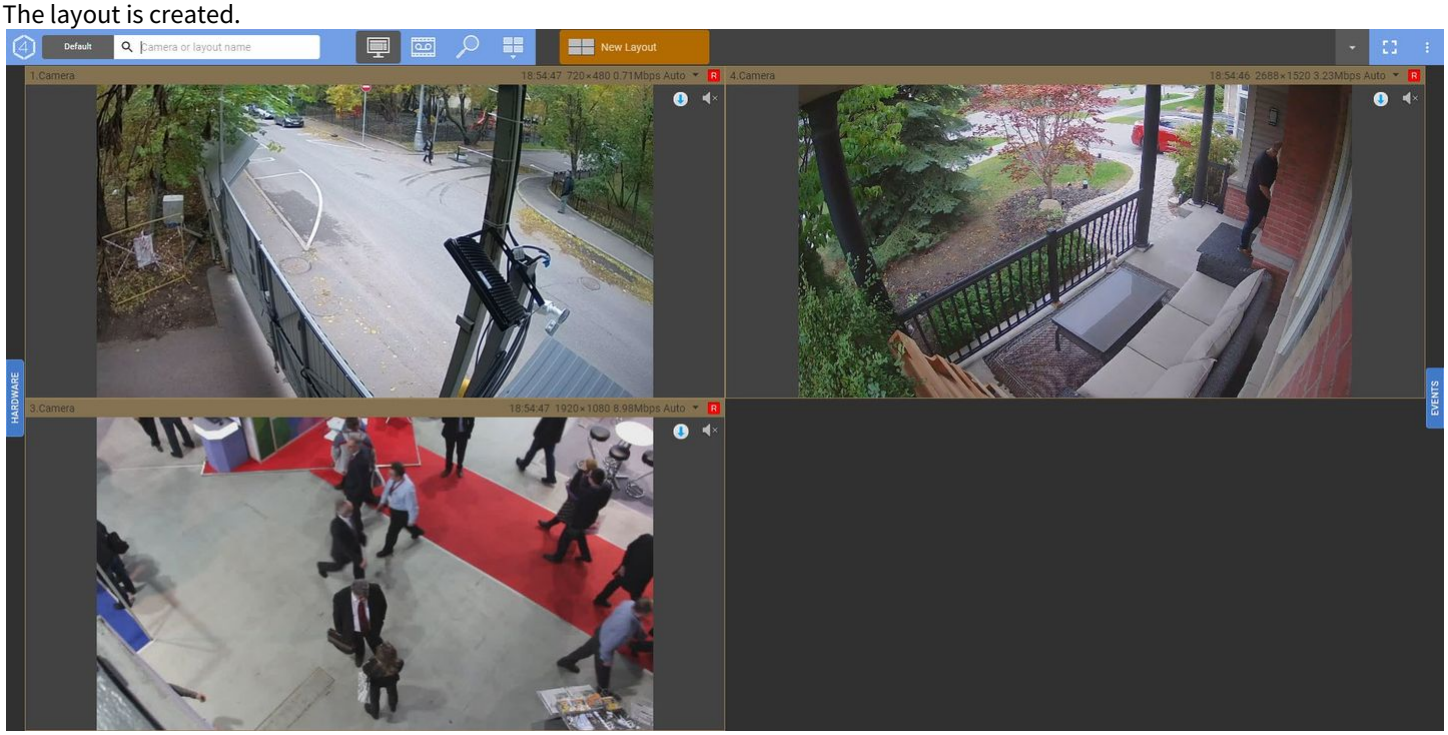
> **Note**
>
> The numbers above the quality buttons indicate the number of video streams of a certain quality.
>
> 
>
>
> In this example, there are four video surveillance windows on the layout: the stream quality is automatically selected in two windows (see Selecting video stream quality in a viewing tile (GreenStream)), one window displays a high-quality video stream, and another window displays a low-quality video stream.

6. Click the **Save** button.

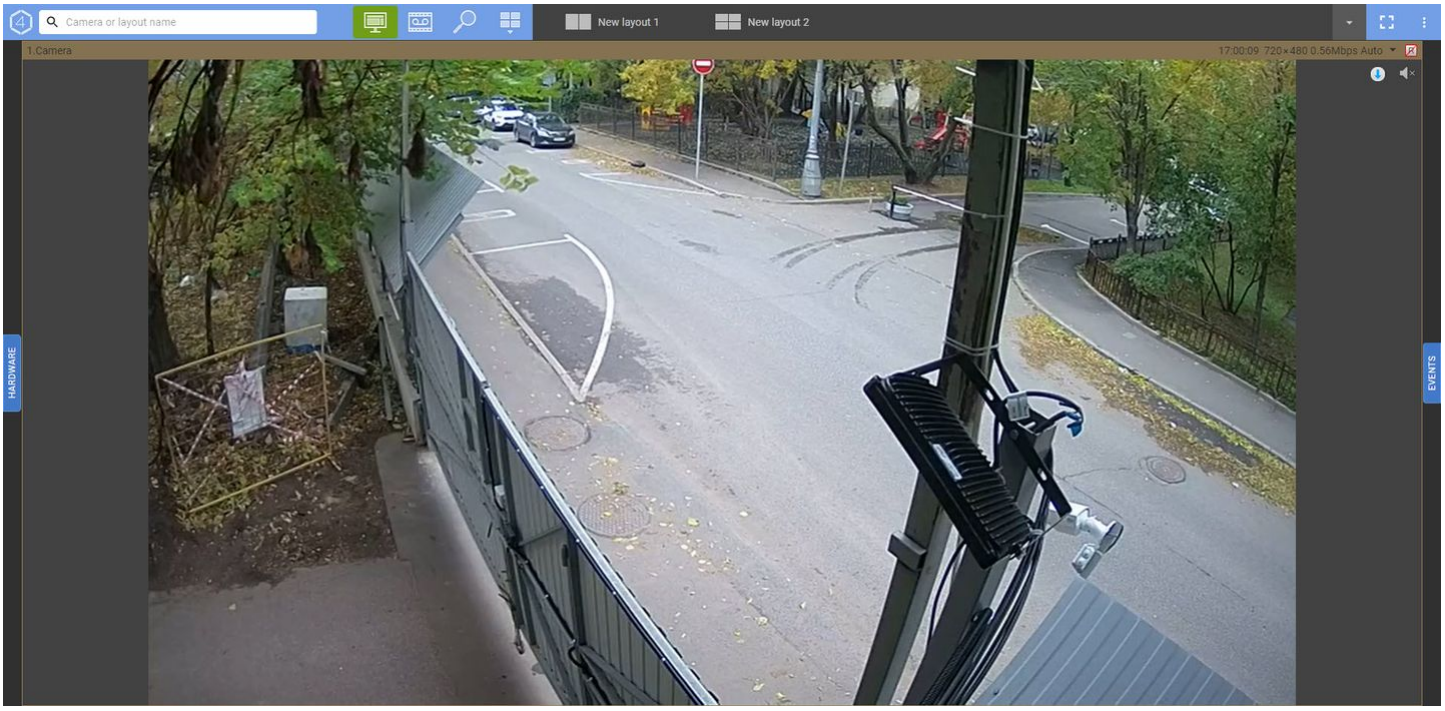
> **Note**

To undo the layout creation, click the **Cancel** button.

The layout is created.



Double left-click on the viewing tile to open a temporary layout with this video window:



To return to the original view of the layout, double-click on the video image again.

11.7.4 Editing and deleting layouts in Web Client

To edit a layout in Web Client, do as follows:

1. Select the layout.

2. Click and select **Edit Layout**.
3. Make changes.
4. Click **Save**.

To rename a layout, do as follows:

1. Double left-click and enter a new name.
2. Click **Save**.

To rearrange the layouts, do as follows:

1. Click and select **Delete/Reorder Layouts**.
2. Drag & drop layouts wherever you want.
3. Click **Save**.

To delete a layout, do as follows:

1. Click and select **Delete/Reorder Layouts**.
2. Click to the right of the layout .

11.7.5 Selecting the default layout in Web Client

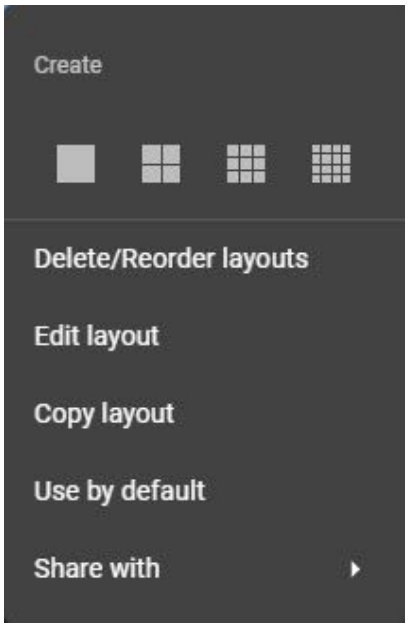
You can select the default layout for each user to be displayed after they launch Web Client.

If no layouts have been created before, the video cameras panel opens on the left and displays the video image from the first video camera in order.

If some layouts have been created previously, the first layout in order will be displayed by default.

To set the default layout, do as follows:

1. Go to the required layout.
2. Click the button and select **Use by Default.**



After that, the layout icon will look like this:

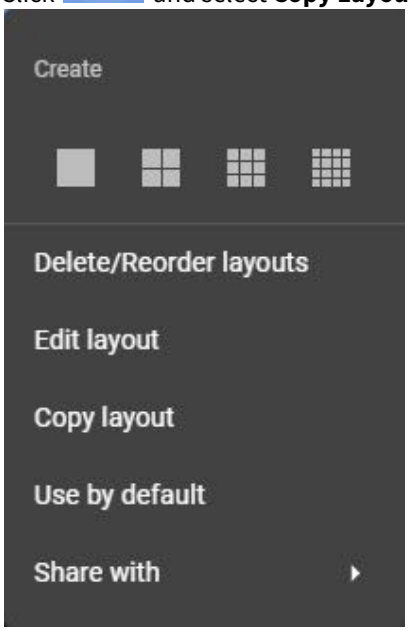
To remove the default layout, click the button and select **Do not use by default**.

11.7.6 Copying layouts in Web Client

Layout copying

To copy a layout in Web Client, do as follows:

1. Select the layout.
2. Click and select **Copy Layout**.



3. You can make changes to the layout.
4. Click **Save**.

11.7.7 Sharing layouts in Web Client

Share Layouts

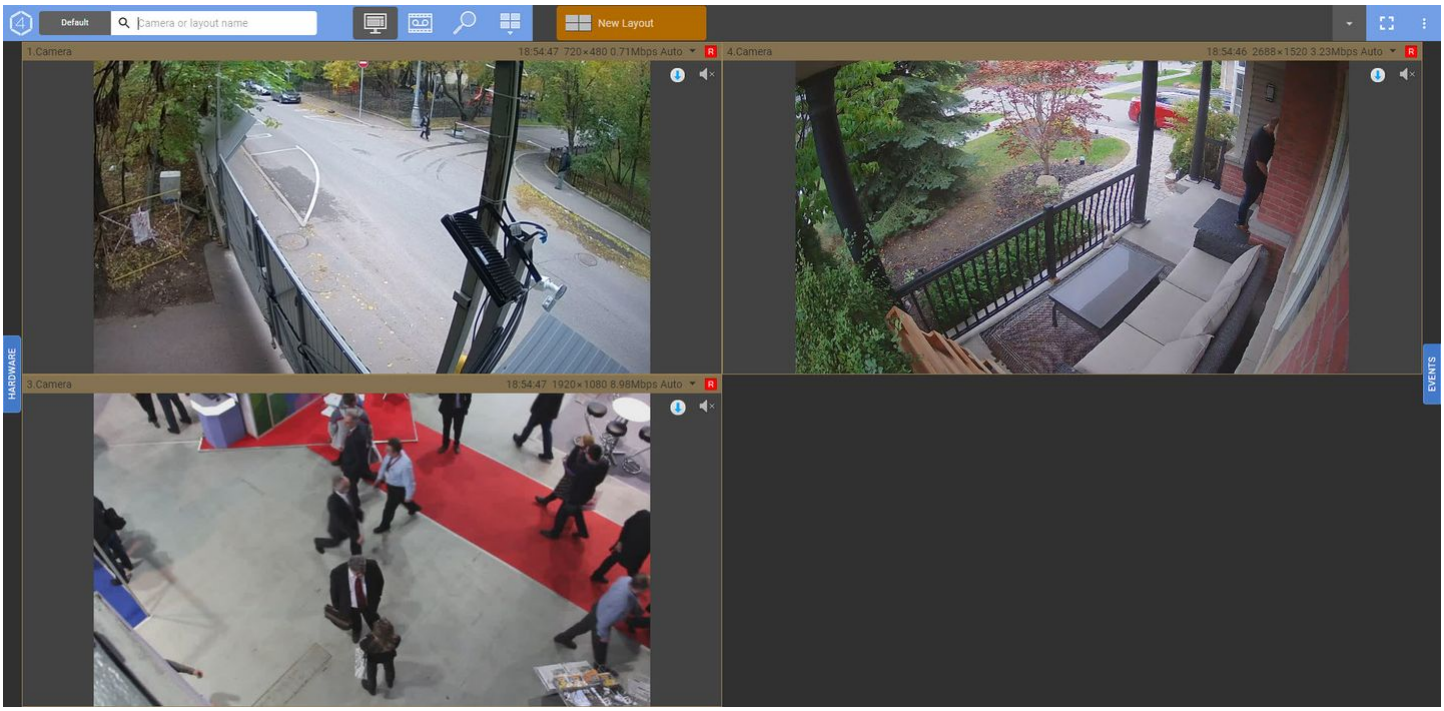
To share a layout in Web Client, do as follows:

1. Select the layout.
2. Click and select **Edit Layout**.
3. Click and in **Share With**, select one or several target roles to share layout with.
4. Click **Save**.

Shared layouts are sealed with the following sign:

11.8 Real-time video surveillance via the Web Client

To view a video image, you should select either a camera on the panel see Searching for video cameras in the web client), or one of the available layouts (see Web client's GUI).



The Web Client supports playback of the following video formats: MJPEG, H.264, H.265. Any other formats are re-coded to MJPEG on the Server.

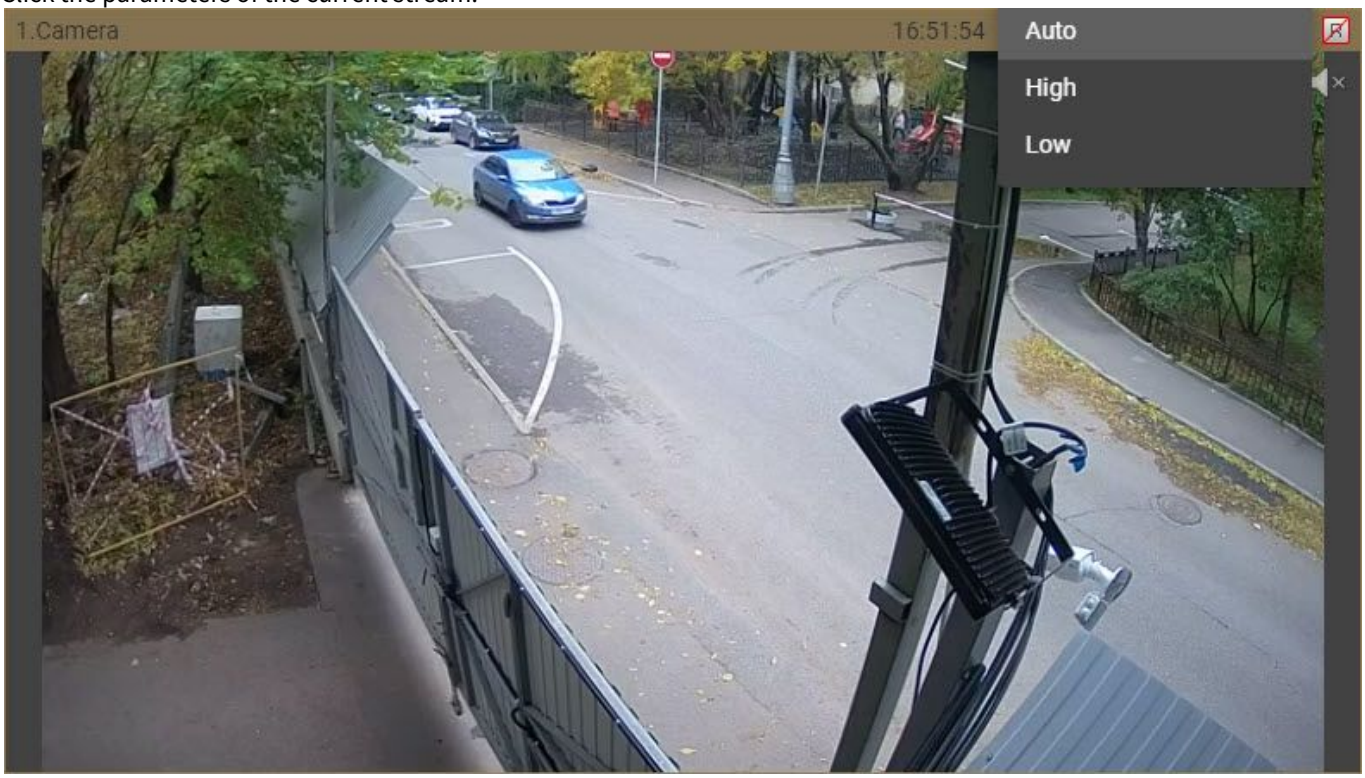
> **Attention!**
>
> H.265 video playback is possible only in Safari browser with hardware acceleration.

You can playback a video in the Web Client with 2 players: JPEG and MP4. If your browser supports MP4 format, the MP4 player is used. Otherwise, your videos will be played back via the JPEG player.

> **Attention!**
>
> If your layout contains several camera windows, only the reference frames may be displayed in H.264 video format cameras, depending on settings (see Web Client Configuration). For the selected camera, all frames will be displayed. In MPEG video format each frame is displayed.

To select a displayed stream in the Web Client manually (see The Video Camera Object), do as follows:

1. Click the parameters of the current stream.



2. Select a stream to be displayed.

Menu item	Description
Auto (GreenStream, default)	The camera has two video streams: high quality video stream and low quality video stream. If the size of the cell where the video image from the camera is displayed is close to the low quality resolution with a 10% height or width margin, the video image will be displayed using the low quality stream. In other cases, the high quality video stream will be displayed
High quality	A high quality video stream is used in the video surveillance window (see The Video Camera Object)
Low quality	A low-quality video stream is used in the video surveillance window (see The Video Camera Object). When you enlarge the surveillance window, the video stream switches to a high quality video stream

Note

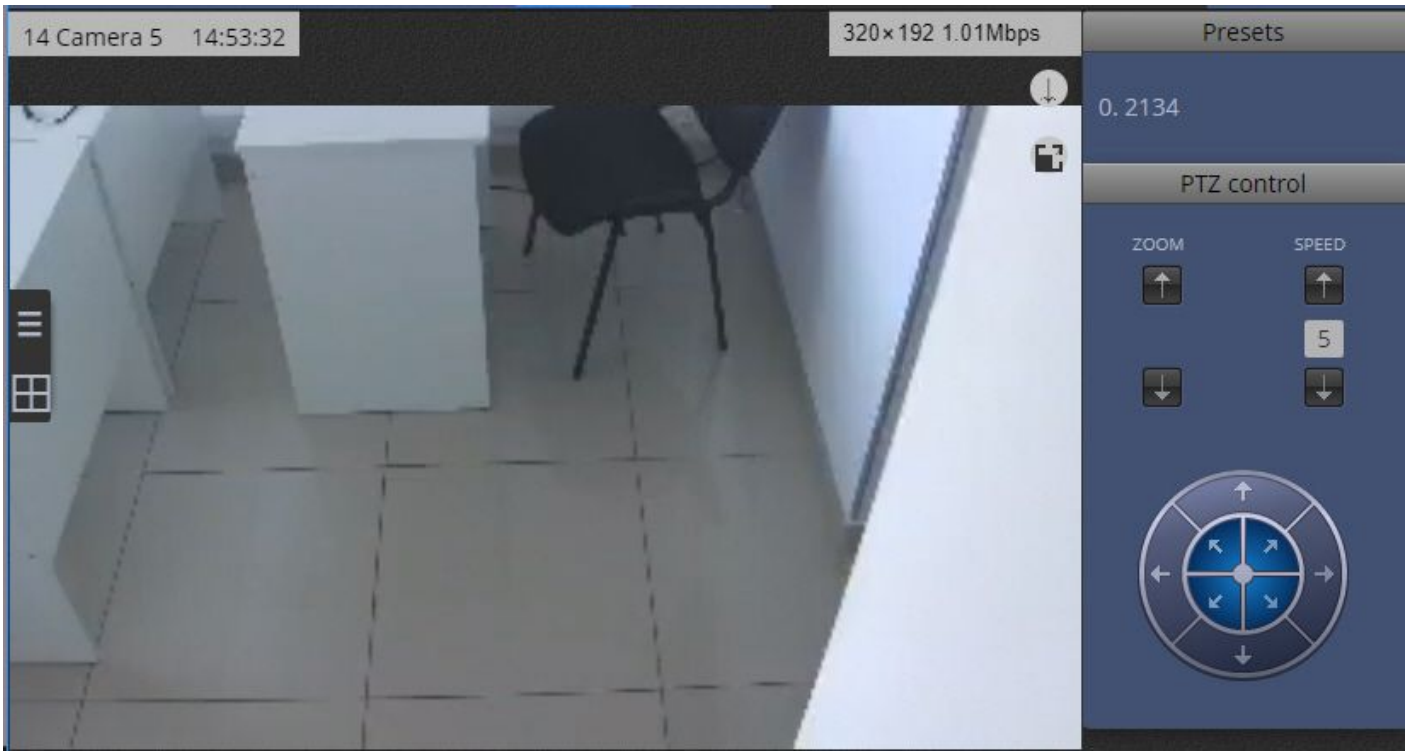
The video stream settings are saved when switching between the layouts, but after the page reloads, the video stream that was specified when creating the layout will be automatically selected.

Click the button for the full screen view. To exit full screen mode, click again the button, or press the **Esc** key.

To open a temporary layout from a certain camera on the layout, double right-click on camera video image. To return to the layout, double-click on the video image again.

11.9 Controlling PTZ cameras through the web client

A PTZ video camera is controlled through the PTZ device control panel.



The following actions can be performed using the PTZ device control panel:

1. Use presets.
2. Adjust optical zoom and positioning speed of the video camera.
3. Modify the horizontal and vertical tilt angle of the video camera.

11.9.1 Controlling a PTZ camera through the web client by using presets

To go to a preset, select the relevant line in the list of presets.

11.9.2 Changing the optical zoom of a PTZ camera in the web client

To change the optical zoom of a PTZ unit, use the buttons in the **zoom** group.

– increase image

– reduce image

– field for displaying speed at which the camera changes the zoom scale

11.9.3 Changing the positioning speed of a PTZ camera in the web client

To change the positioning speed of a PTZ camera, use the buttons in the **Speed** group.

– increase positioning speed

– reduce positioning speed

– field displaying the current positioning speed

11.9.4 Changing the tilt of a PTZ camera in the web client

To change the tilt of a PTZ camera, use the arrows in the **PTZ Control** group.

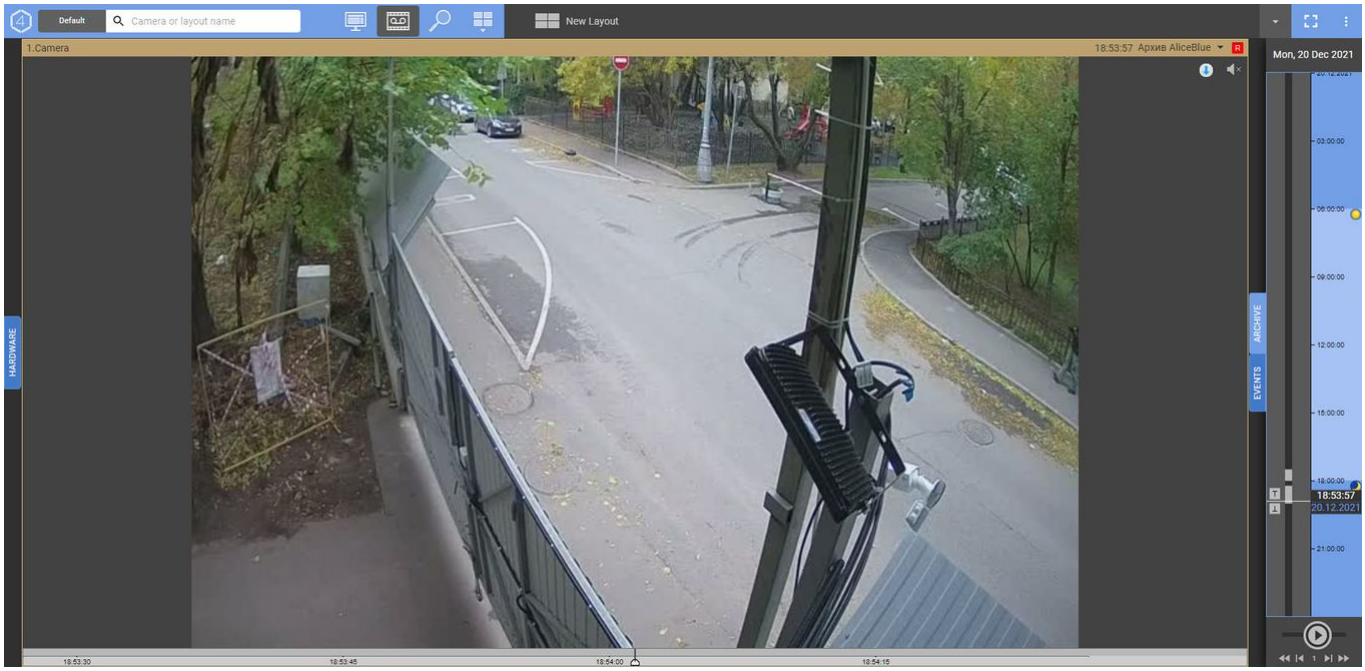
The arrow direction indicates the direction in which the camera lens will be moved when the arrow is clicked.

11.10 Viewing video archives through the web client

To view a camera's Archive, do as follows:

1. Pick a camera on the camera panel or on the layout.

2. Click the button.



> **Note**
>
> Video Footage opened by default is specified as Default Archive in settings (see Configuring recording to an archive).

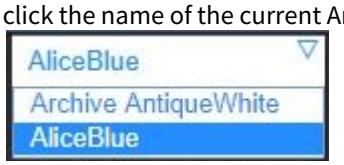
3. The archive navigation panel is then displayed, with the following interface features:
   a. Timeline. Archive navigation via the timeline in the web client is the same as when working in the Axxon Next client (see Navigating Using the Timeline).

   > **Note**
   >
   > Similarly to the regular Client (see The Timeline), alarms are indicated on the timeline as flags, and comments as icons.

   b. Playback control panel. Archive navigation via the playback panel in the web client is the same as when working in the Axxon Next client (see Navigating Using the Playback Panel).

   > **Attention!**
   >
   > Fast reverse playback in H.264 format will be not smooth because of the use of I-frames.

   c. Archive position selection panel. The archive position selection panel is opened by left-clicking the date above the timeline.
4. To select an Archive, do as follows:
   a. click the name of the current Archive;

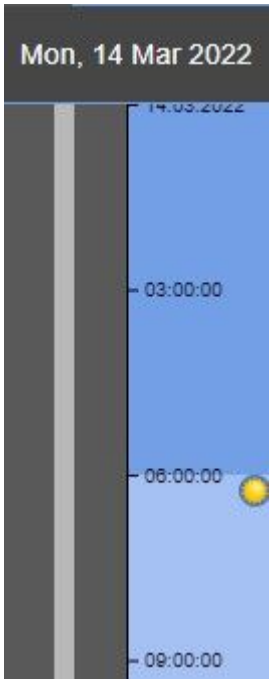
   

   b. pick the Archive of interest.

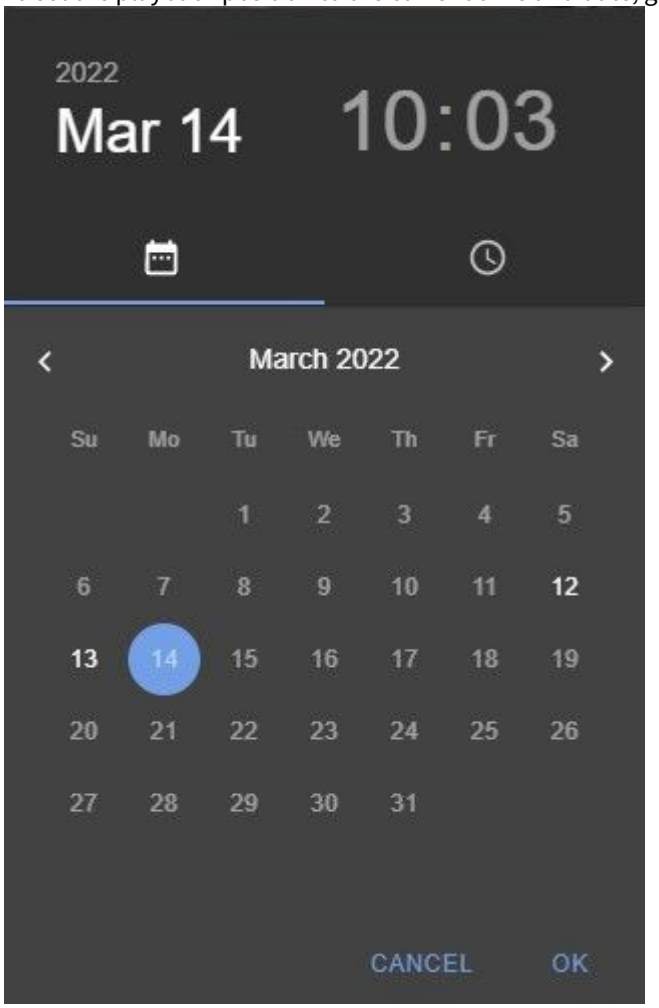
11.11 Archive position selection panel for the web client

To choose a time position in the archive by using the archive position selection panel:

1. Click the date above the timeline to open the position selection panel.



2. To set the playback position to the current time and date, go to step 6.

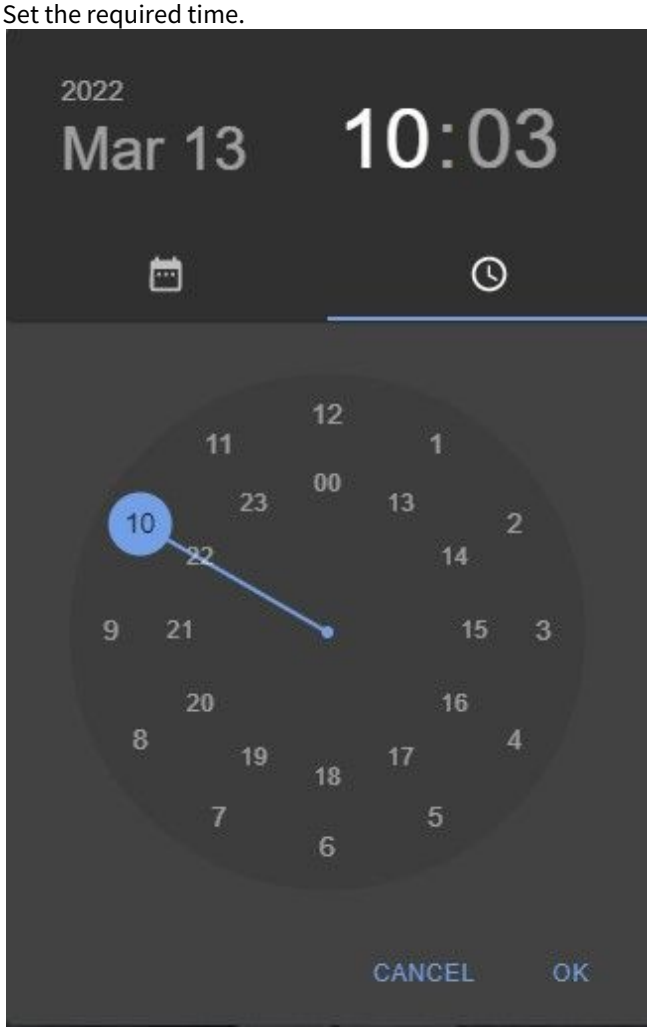


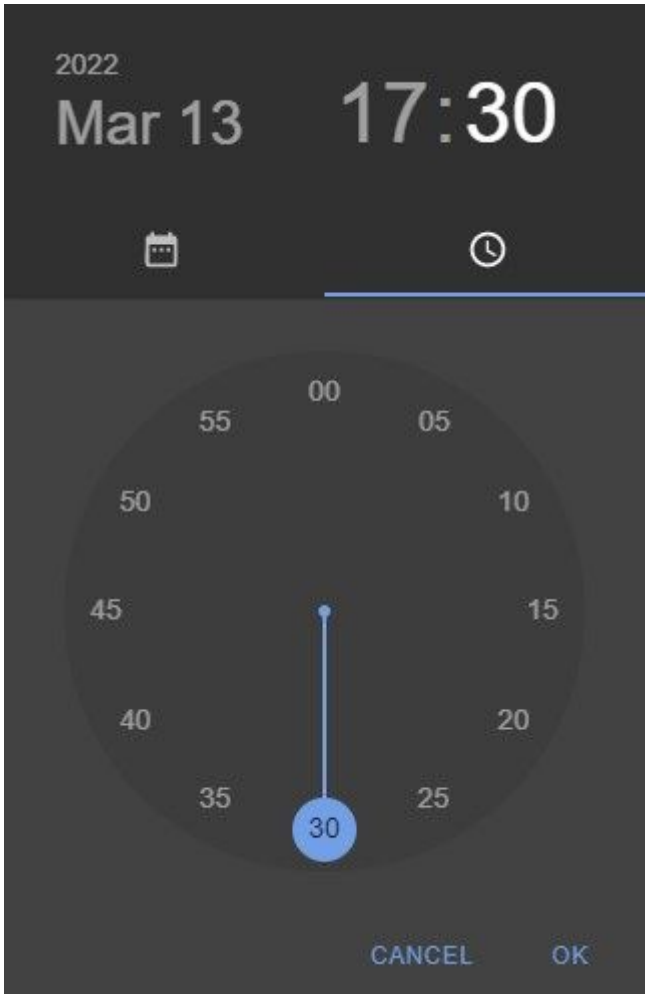
3. Use the ‹ and › buttons to select a month.
4. Click the necessary date on the calendar to select a day.

Note

The days, for which there is video footage are in light shade.

5. Set the required time.





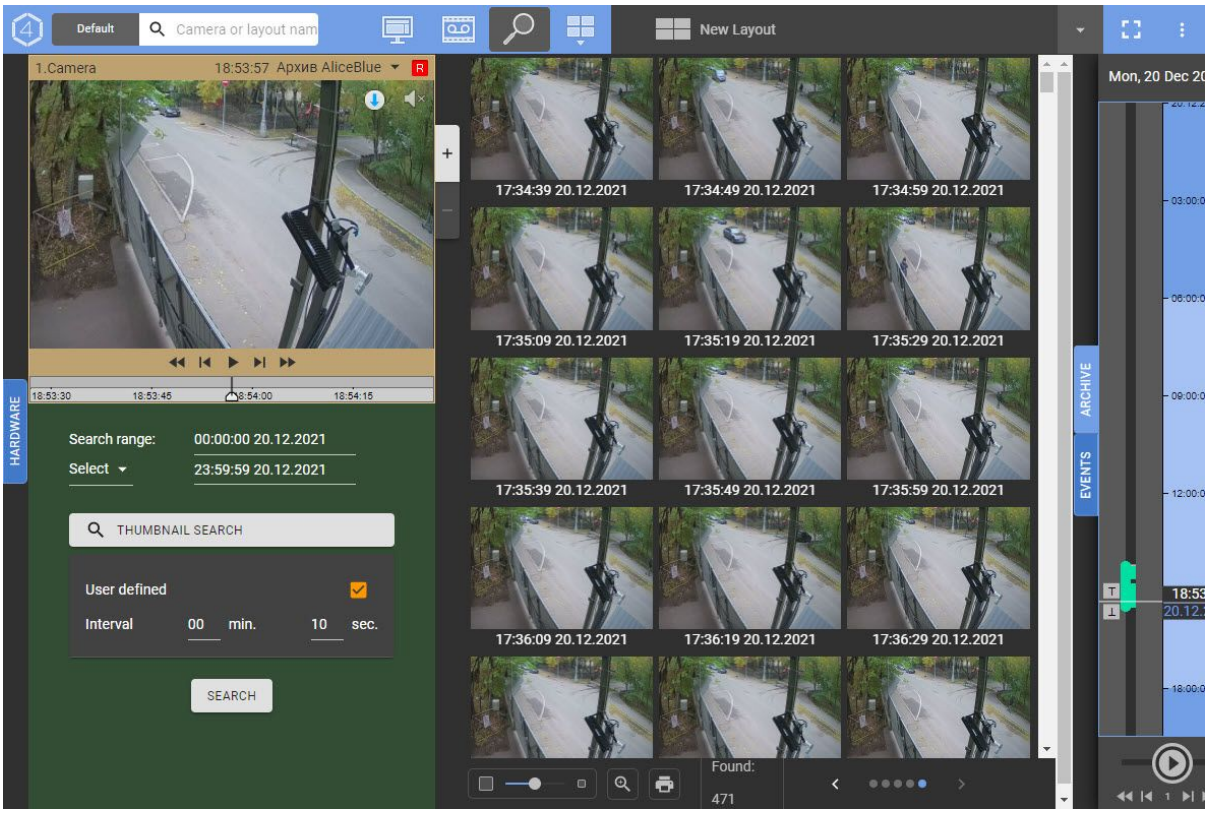
6. To set the playback position, click the **OK** button.

The time position in the archive is now chosen.

11.12 Archive search through the web client

You can perform searches in Video Footage from the web client. To initiate a search, do the following:

1. Pick a camera on the camera panel or layout.
2. Click the button.



You can resize camera windows with buttons.

> **Attention!**
>
> If you select an item from Cameras panel, the search conditions will not be reset (see Searching for video cameras in the web client).

If a search was run more than once, and the user did not exit Archive Search mode during that time, it is possible to switch between search results.

11.12.1 Types of Archive search available via the Web Client

The web client interface offers the following types of search:

1. Motion in an area
2. Line crossing.
3. Motion between areas.
4. Large Number of Objects detection tool.
5. Loitering.
6. Face search.

> **Attention!**
>
> You can load only JPEG images.

7. LPN search.
8. TimeSlice.

> **Note**
>
> The default interval is set in the Web client's settings (see Web Client Configuration).

9. Events search.

Archive search interface and search parameters pane are identical to those in the standalone Client software (see Video surveillance in Archive Search mode).

You can also build a Heat Map with the Web Client (see Building a Heat Map).

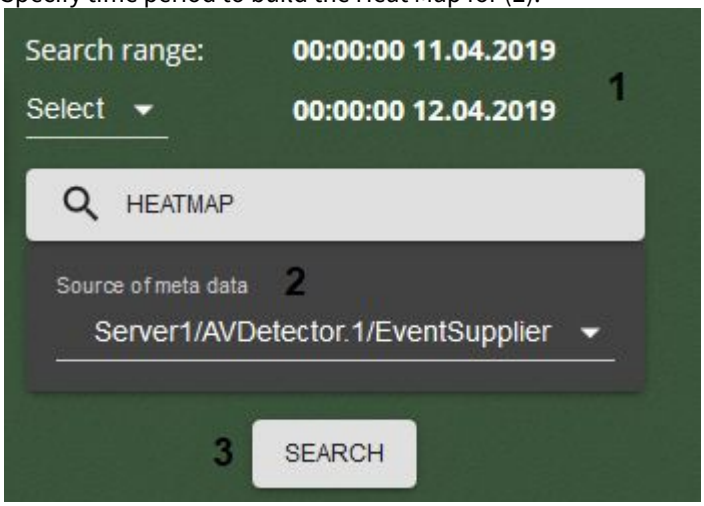
11.12.2 Building a Heat Map

> **Attention!**
>
> To build a Heat Map, you need at least one source of metadata (for example, an Object Tracker).

Heat Maps are useful for evaluation of motion intensity within the scene and determining common trajectories of moving objects.

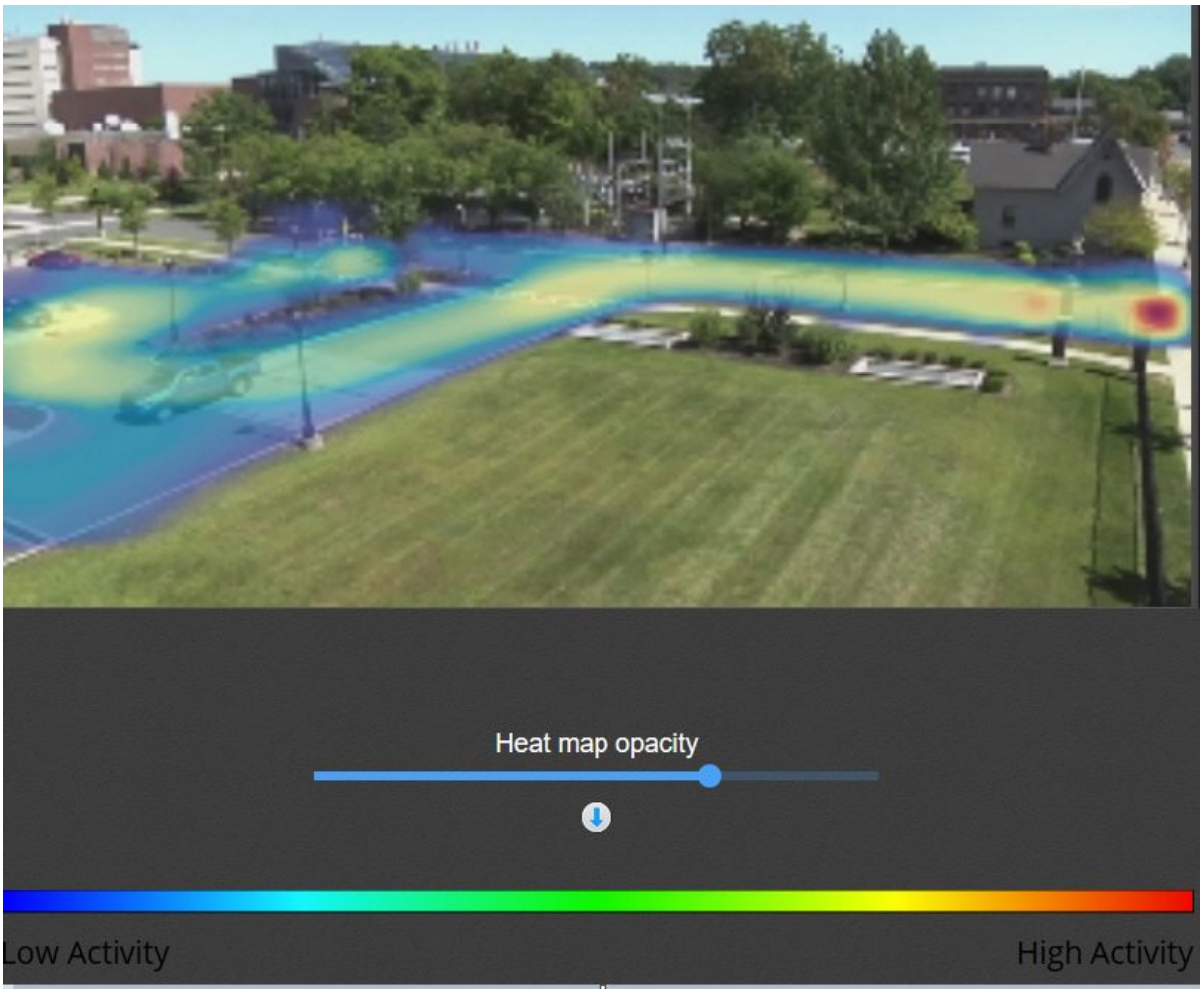
How to build a Heat Map:

1. Proceed to the Archive search.
2. Specify time period to build the Heat Map for (**1**).



3. Click the **+** button and select **Heat Map**.
4. Select the source of metadata (**2**).
5. Click the **Search** button (**3**).

The Heat Map appears in the search results window.



Use the dedicated slider to adjust the transparency of the heat map.

Click to download the heat map.

You can build a report based on the received data.

11.12.3 Simultaneous search in multiple camera Video Footage via the web Client

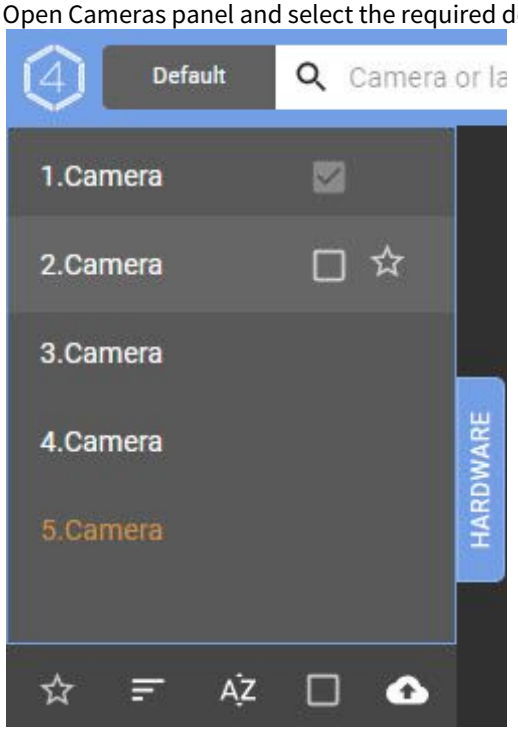
You can use the Web Client for multiple camera Video Footage searching by:

- facial recognition events;
- ANPR events;
- detection tool triggering events;
- TimeSlice.

To simultaneously search multiple cameras' Video Footage, do the following:

1. Proceed to the Video Footage search (see Archive search through the web client).
2. Set the search criteria.

3. Open Cameras panel and select the required devices (see Searching for video cameras in the web client).



> **Note**
>
> To select all cameras, select the appropriate box on the bottom of the page.

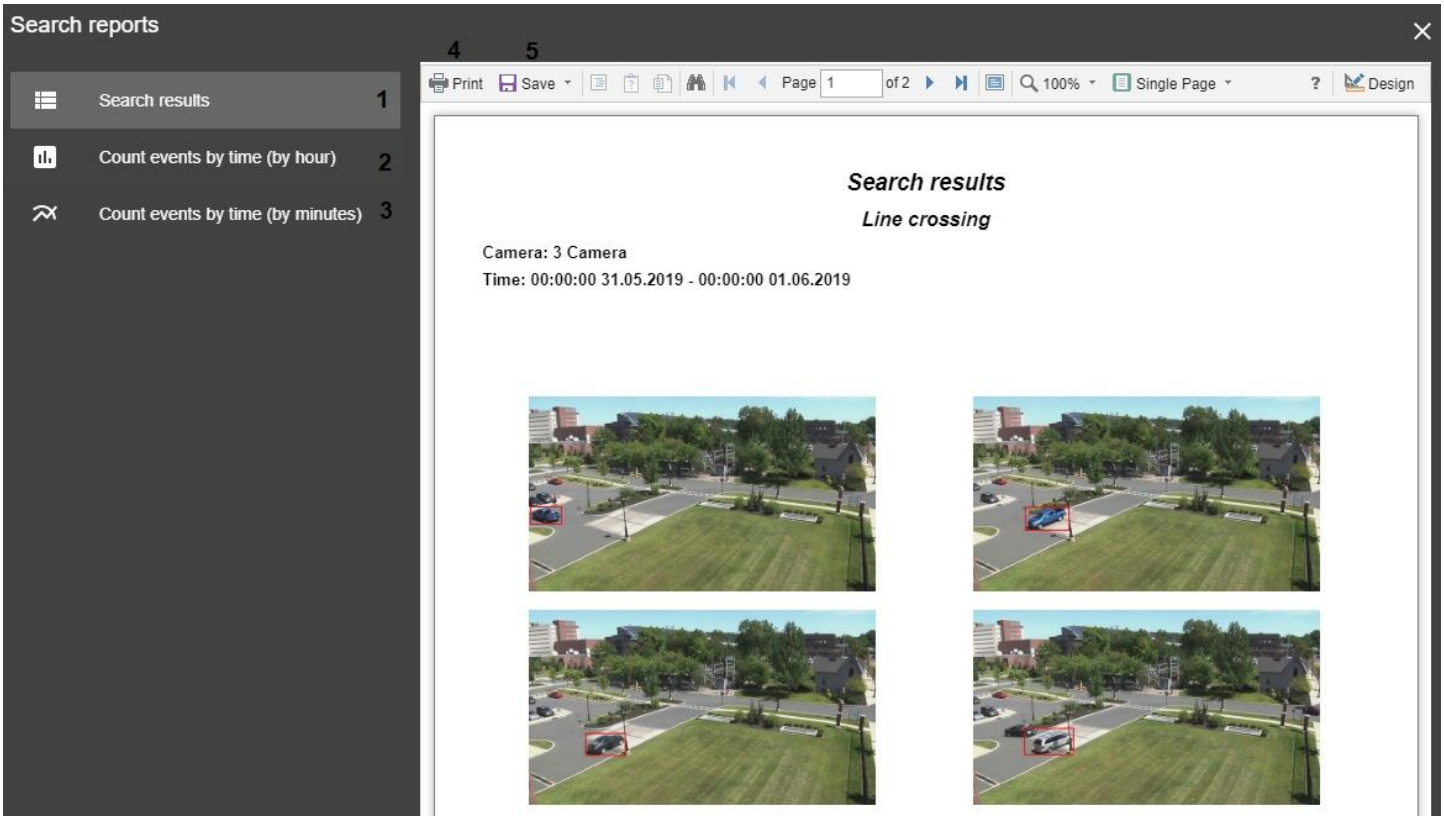
4. Click the **Search** button.

11.12.4 Reporting the search results

The Web Client also includes the Stimulsoft report editor for building reports on retrieved video fragments.

To build a report after you finished searching, click in the bottom part of the screen.

> **Attention!**
>
> The report is limited to first 60 retrieved videos.



There are 3 types of reports available:

1. Retrieved fragments (**1**).
2. Retrieved fragments (number / per hour) (**2**).
3. Retrieved fragments (number / per minute) (**3**).

Click Print (**4**) to hardcopy a report, or **Save** (**5**) to export into an appropriate format.

11.13 Alarm Monitoring via the Web Client

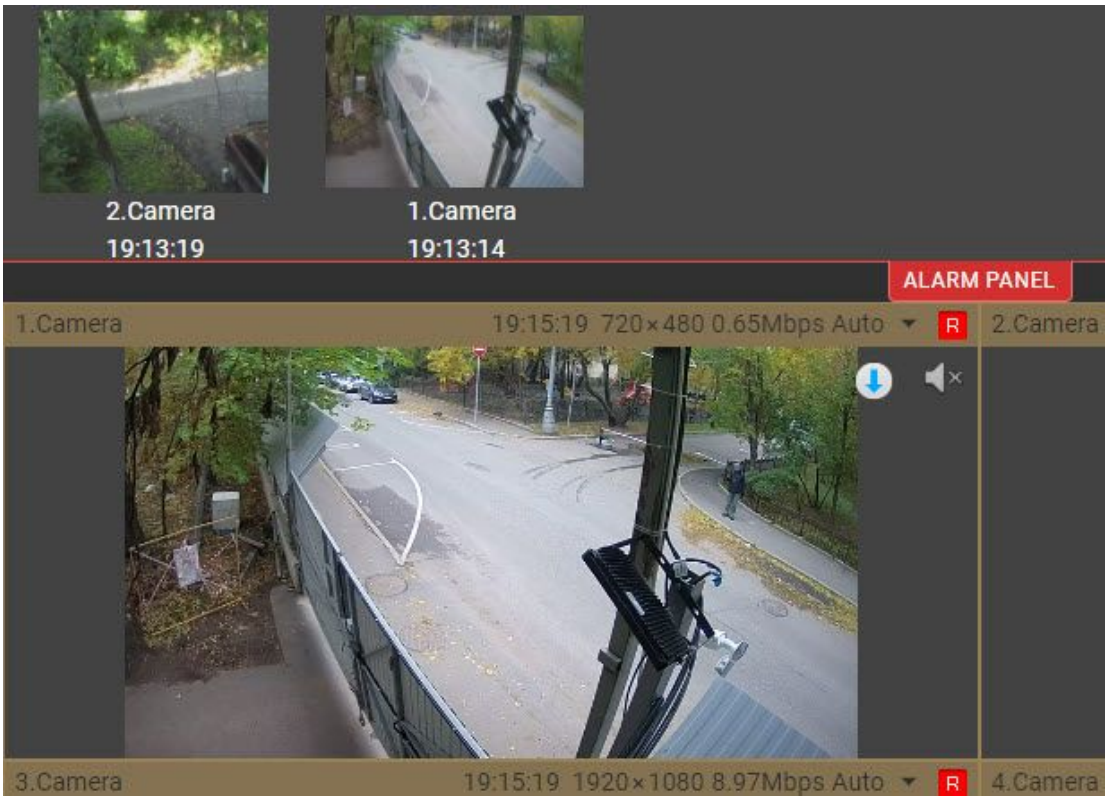
You can use the Web client to monitor active alarms across the entire Axxon domain.

To make the Web client display active alarms, select any camera or a layout (see Searching for video cameras in the web client, Web client's GUI).

> **Note**
>
> The alarms that were triggered before selecting a camera or a layout are only displayed if the user is in the workplace. After you reload the page, go to the open statistics or bookmarks sections, the panel with the current alarms will disappear.

When an alarms goes off, the alarm panel appears on top (like in the Client, see Alarms Panel).

Click **Alarm Panel** to open the panel.



If you click on the alarm thumbnail on the panel, you will go to the archive mode to view the event.

11.14 Listening to a camera's microphone via the web client

> **Attention!**
>
> You can play back audio in mp4 format only.

To listen to a camera's microphone, click the button in the camera window.

After you complete this action, a volume slider appears.

> **Note**
>
> You cannot play back audio from multiple cameras simultaneously.

The higher is the slider position, the higher is the volume.

To mute audio, click the button.

11.15 Digital video zoom in the web client

Digital zoom of video occurs in a viewing tile during viewing of live video as well as when viewing archive video. To increase the zoom level, use the mouse scroll wheel.

The image cannot be made smaller than the source size. The maximum video zoom is 16x.

To select the viewed portion of the frame at a changed scale, drag the mouse outside of the video viewing area.

> **Note**
>
> For PTZ units, you can zoom in by using the buttons in the **zoom** group

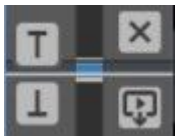
11.16 Export in Web Client

To export a snapshot / frame, click the button while viewing video. A JPG file will be exported to a folder specified in the Server settings.

To export video, do as follows:

1. Switch to Archive mode (see Viewing video archives through the web client).
2. On the timeline, set the timeline indicator to the location that matches the beginning of the export interval. Click the button. Set the indicator to the location that matches the end of the export interval. Click the button.
3. Click the button.

   > **Note**
   >
   > To delete the export interval click the button.

   
4. Select the video format (**1**). You can export videos to avi, mkv, mp4 and exe formats.

5. If you are exporting a video in .avi format, select the compression level (**2**).
   4 – minimum compression, maximum file size;
   6 – maximum compression, minimum file size.
6. If necessary, add comments for the export (**3**). The comments will be shown as captions when the exported video is played.
7. Click the **Export** button (**4**).

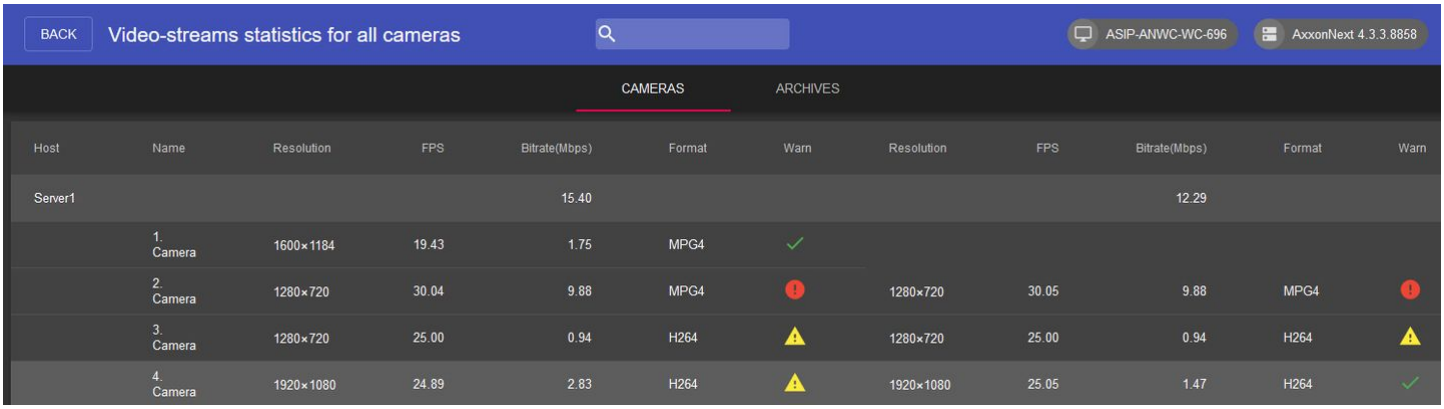
The progress bar is displayed on the drop-down panel as in the Client (see Viewing export progress).

When the export is complete, the panel color changes to green.

To download an exported file, click its name on the panel.

11.17 Viewing Camera and Archive Statistics

To view camera statistics, click in the top right corner, and select **Statistics Panel**.



> **Note**
>
> Loading statistics from large number of cameras may take some time. The loading process is visualized by a progress indicator.

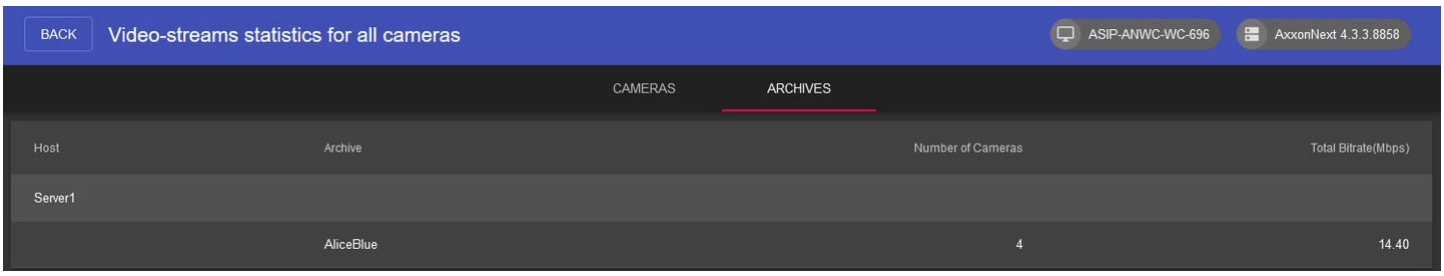
On the **Cameras** tab, the following parameters are displayed for each video stream of each camera:

- resolution;
- frame rate;
- bit rate;
- compression format.

If the bitrate exceeds the expected value, and there is more than 1Mbit per megapixel, the stream is marked with " ".

If the bitrate exceeds the expected value, and there is more than 2Mbit per megapixel, the stream is marked with " ".

On the **Archives** tab, the following information is displayed for each Archive:



- name;
- number of linked cameras;
- cumulative bit rate of linked cameras.

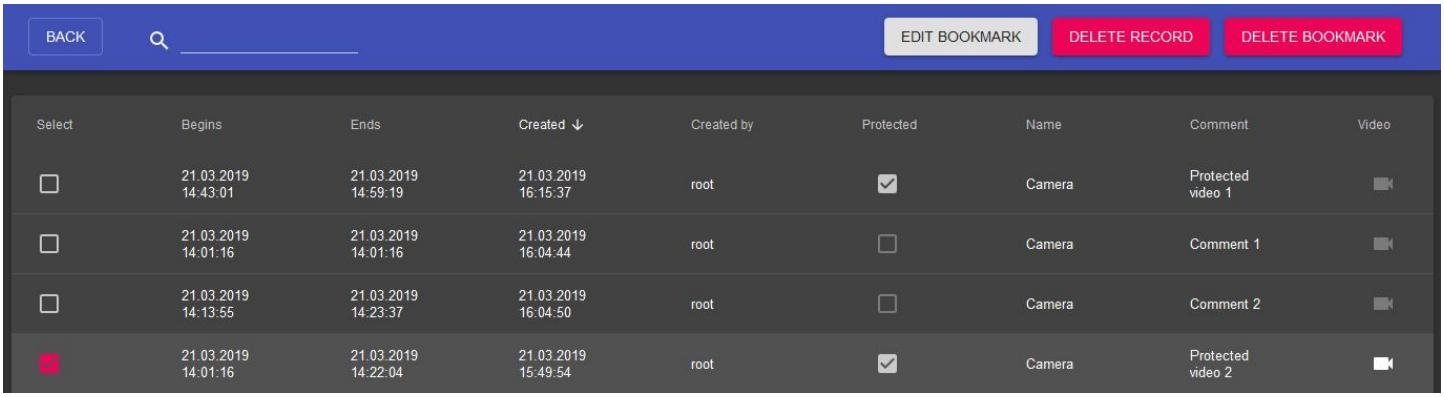
> **Note**
>
> The indicator in the upper right corner displays the AxxonNext Web Client and Server version numbers.

To return to the previous page, click **Back** in the left upper corner of the screen.

11.18 Working with bookmarks in the Web Client

A bookmark represents either a comment to Video Footage (see Operator comments), or a protected video (see Protecting video footage from FIFO overwriting).

To work with bookmarks, click the button in the top right corner of the Web client window, and select the **Archive Bookmarks** option.



Attention!

You can access only the bookmarks on the visible part of the footage archive (see Configuring access restrictions to older footage).
The system does not display bookmarks related to currently re-recorded part of the archive.

You can:

1. Edit a bookmark.
2. Delete a bookmark.
3. Un-protect a protected video.
4. Delete a protected video.

Use the search bar to locate a necessary bookmark.

To proceed to a particular video, click the button in the **Video** column.

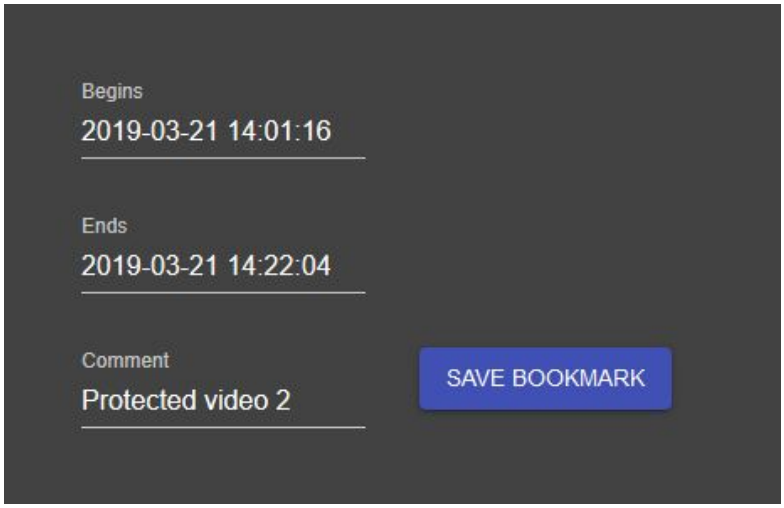
Click **Back** to return to the main page.

11.18.1 Editing a bookmark

To edit a bookmark, do as follows:

1. Select the required bookmark from the list.

2. Click the **Edit bookmark button**.



3. If necessary, you can alter the time interval and/or a text comment.
4. Click **Save Bookmark**.

11.18.2 Deleting a bookmark

To delete a bookmark, select it from the list and click **Delete Bookmark**.

Hold Ctrl key to select multiple bookmarks.

11.18.3 Un-protecting a video

To un-protect a video, clear the **Protected** checkbox beside the bookmark.

11.18.4 Deleting a protected video

To delete a protected video, select a protected bookmark and click the **Delete Video** button.